KS22/KS20 Sub-Family Reference Manual

Supports: MKS22FN256VLL12, MKS22FN256VLH12, MKS22FN256VFT12; MKS22FN128VLL12, MKS22FN128VLH12, MKS22FN128VFT12; MKS20FN256VLL12, MKS20FN256VLH12, MKS20FN256VFT12; MKS20FN128VLL12, MKS20FN128VLH12, MKS20FN128VFT12.

Document Number: KS22P100M120SF0RM
Rev. 3, May 2016

Contents

Section number **Title** **Page**

Chapter 1
About This Manual

Chapter 2
Introduction

Chapter 3
Core Overview

Chapter 4
Memories and Memory Interfaces

Chapter 5
Memory Map

Chapter 6
Clock Distribution

Chapter 7
Reset and Boot

Chapter 8
Power Management

Chapter 9
Security

Chapter 10
Debug

Chapter 11
Signal Multiplexing and Signal Descriptions

Chapter 12

Port Control and Interrupts (PORT)

Chapter 13
System Integration Module (SIM)

Chapter 14
Kinetis Flashloader

Chapter 15
Reset Control Module (RCM)

Chapter 16
System Mode Controller (SMC)

Chapter 17
Power Management Controller (PMC)

Chapter 18
Low-Leakage Wakeup Unit (LLWU)

Chapter 19
Miscellaneous Control Module (MCM)

Chapter 20
Crossbar Switch Lite (AXBS-Lite)

Chapter 21
Peripheral Bridge (AIPS-Lite)

Chapter 22
Direct Memory Access Multiplexer (DMAMUX)

Chapter 23
Enhanced Direct Memory Access (eDMA)

Chapter 24
External Watchdog Monitor (EWM)

Chapter 25
Watchdog timer (WDOG)

Chapter 26
Multipurpose Clock Generator (MCG)

Chapter 27
Oscillator (OSC)

Chapter 28
RTC Oscillator (OSC32K)

Chapter 29
Flash Memory Controller (FMC)

Chapter 30
Flash Memory Module (FTFA)

Chapter 31
Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC)

Chapter 32
Random Number Generator Accelerator (RNGA)

Chapter 33
Analog-to-Digital Converter (ADC)

Chapter 34
Comparator (CMP)

Chapter 35
12-bit Digital-to-Analog Converter (DAC)

Chapter 36
Programmable Delay Block (PDB)

Chapter 37
Timer/PWM Module (TPM)

Chapter 38
Periodic Interrupt Timer (PIT)

Chapter 39
Low Power Timer (LPTMR)

Chapter 40
Real Time Clock (RTC)

Chapter 41
Universal Serial Bus Full Speed OTG Controller (USBFSOTG)

Chapter 42
CAN (FlexCAN)

Chapter 43
Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI)

Chapter 44

Low Power Inter-Integrated Circuit (LPI2C)

Chapter 45
Universal Asynchronous Receiver/Transmitter (UART)

Chapter 46
Low Power Universal Asynchronous Receiver/Transmitter (LPUART)

Chapter 47
Flexible I/O (FlexIO)

Chapter 48
Integrated Interchip Sound (I2S) / Synchronous Audio Interface (SAI)

Chapter 49
General-Purpose Input/Output (GPIO)

Chapter 50
JTAG Controller (JTAGC)

Chapter 1
About This Manual

1.1 Audience

This reference manual is intended for system software and hardware developers and applications programmers who want to develop products with this device. It assumes that the reader understands operating systems, microprocessor system design, and basic principles of software and hardware.

1.2 Organization

This manual has two main sets of chapters.

1. Chapters in the first set contain information that applies to all components on the chip.
2. Chapters in the second set are organized into functional groupings that detail particular areas of functionality.
   - Examples of these groupings are clocking, timers, and communication interfaces.
   - Each grouping includes chapters that provide a technical description of individual modules.

1.3 Module descriptions

Each module chapter has two main parts:

- **Chip-specific:** The first section, *Chip-specific [module name] information*, includes the number of module instances on the chip and possible implementation differences between the module instances, such as differences in FIFO depths or the number of

channels supported. It may also include functional connections between the module instances and other modules. Read this section *first* because its content is crucial to understanding the information in other sections of the chapter.

- **General:** The subsequent sections provide general information about the module, including its signals, registers, and functional description.

NOTE

If there is a conflict between the chip-specific module information (first section) and the general module information (subsequent sections), the chip-specific information supersedes the general information.

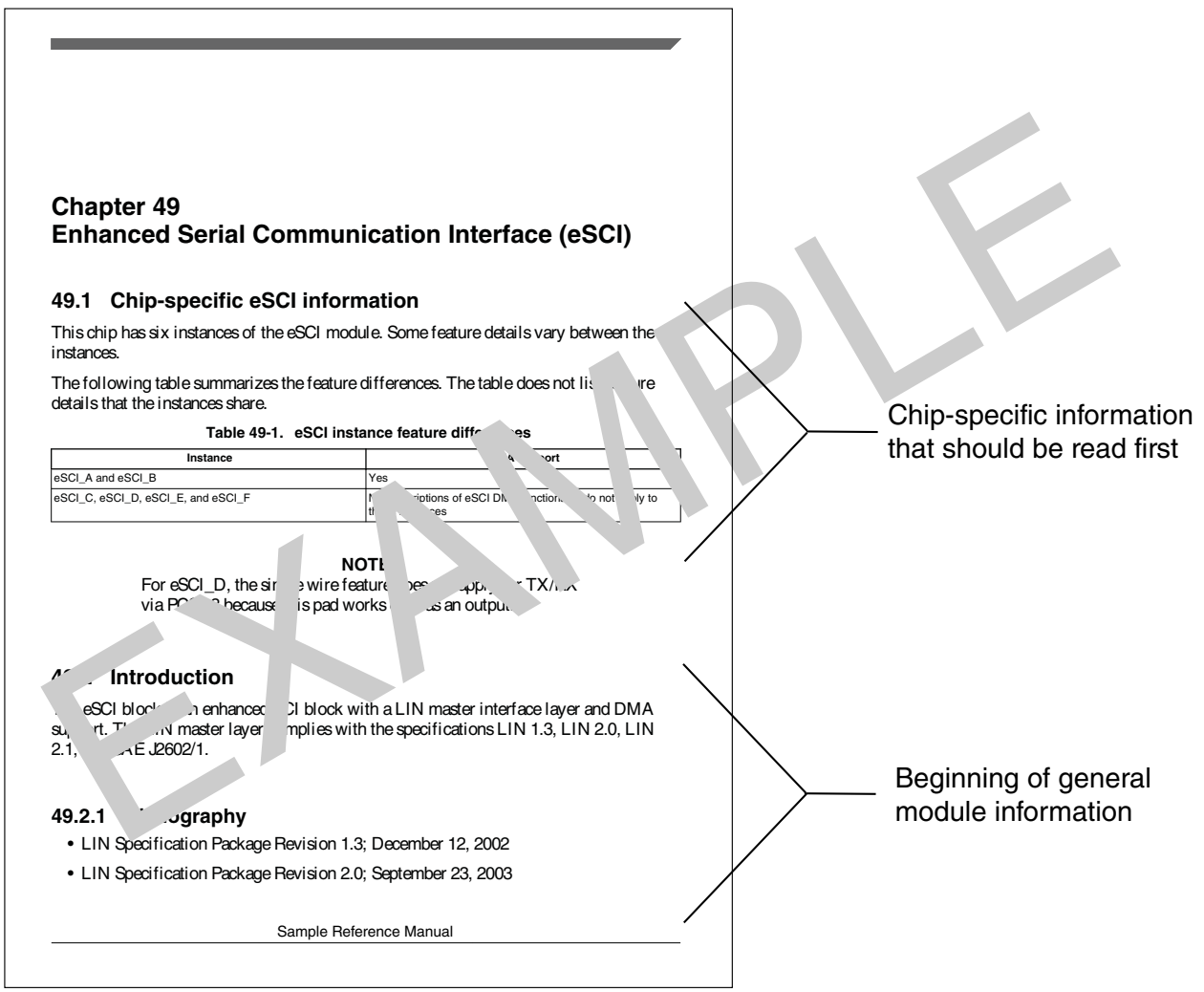
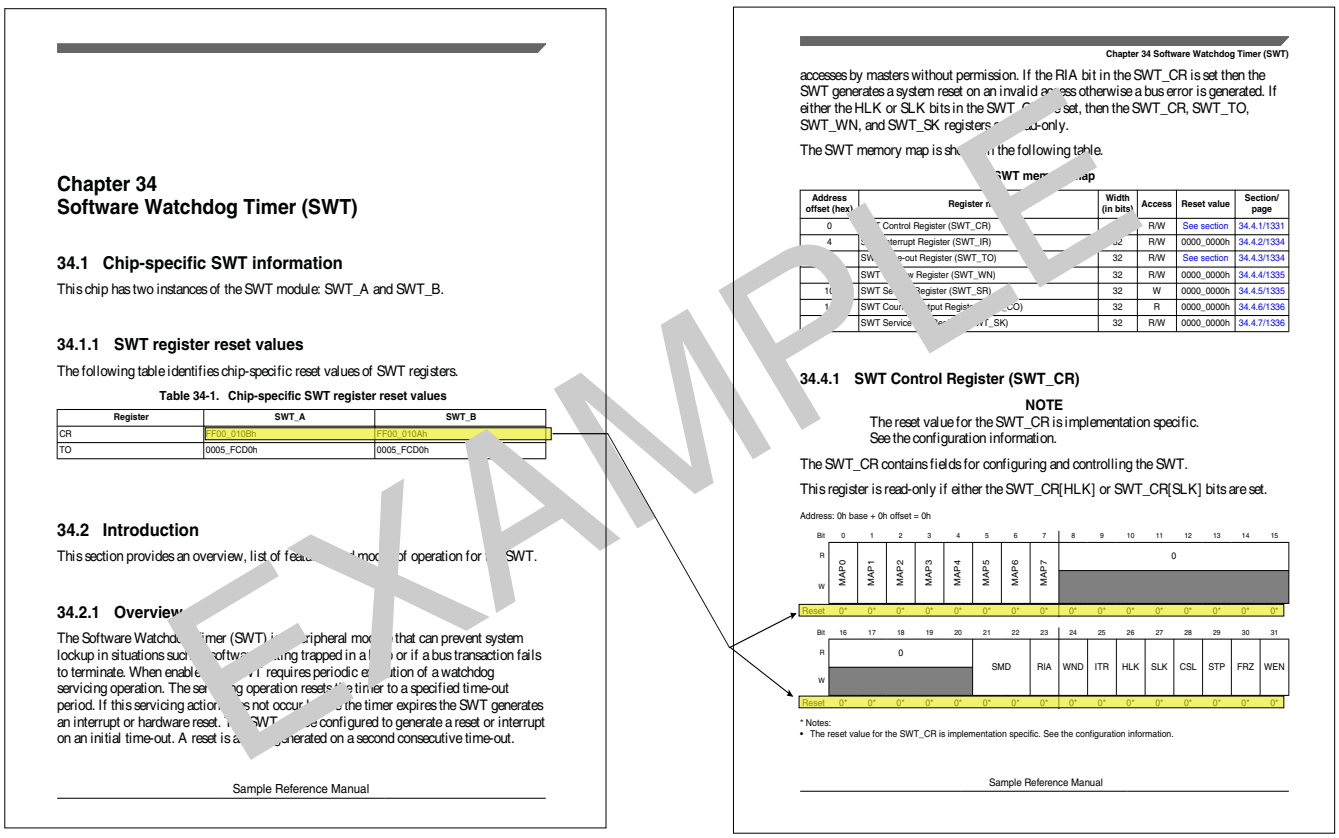


Figure 1-1. Example: chapter chip-specific information and general module information

1.3.1 Example: chip-specific information that supersedes content in the same chapter

The example below shows chip-specific information that supersedes general module information presented later in the chapter. In this case, the chip-specific register reset values supersede the reset values that appear in the register diagram.



Chapter 34
Software Watchdog Timer (SWT)

34.1 Chip-specific SWT information

This chip has two instances of the SWT module: SWT_A and SWT_B.

34.1.1 SWT register reset values

The following table identifies chip-specific reset values of SWT registers.

Table 34-1. Chip-specific SWT register reset values

Register	SWT_A	SWT_B
CR	FF00_010Bh	FF00_010Ah
TO	0005_FCD0h	0005_FCD0h

34.2 Introduction

This section provides an overview, list of feat... mod... of operation for ... SWT.

34.2.1 Overview

The Software Watchd... imer (SWT) i... ripheral mo... that can prevent system lockup in situations suc... softw... ting trapped in a l... or if a bus transaction fails to terminate. When enable... T requires periodic e... tion of a watchdog servicing operation. The se... g operation resets ... timer to a specified time-out period. If this servicing actio... s not occur ... the timer expires the SWT generates an interrupt or hardware reset. ... SWT ... e configured to generate a reset or interrupt on an initial time-out. A reset is a... enerated on a second consecutive time-out.

Sample Reference Manual

Chapter 34 Software Watchdog Timer (SWT)

accesses by masters without permission. If the RIA bit in the SWT_CR is set then the SWT generates a system reset on an invalid a... ess otherwise a bus error is generated. If either the HLK or SLK bits in the SWT_C... set, then the SWT_CR, SWT_TO, SWT_WN, and SWT_SK registers ... d-only.

The SWT memory map is sh... n the following table.

SWT mem... ap

Address offset (hex)	Register n...	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
0	... Control Register (SWT_CR)		R/W	See section	34.4.1/1331
4	S... terrupt Register (SWT_IR)	...2	R/W	0000_0000h	34.4.2/1334
	SW... e-out Register (SWT_TO)	32	R/W	See section	34.4.3/1334
	SWT ... w Register (SWT_WN)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	34.4.4/1335
10	SWT Se... Register (SWT_SR)	32	W	0000_0000h	34.4.5/1335
1...	SWT Coun... tput Regist... CO)	32	R	0000_0000h	34.4.6/1336
	SWT Service ... ...WT_SK)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	34.4.7/1336

34.4.1 SWT Control Register (SWT_CR)

NOTE
The reset value for the SWT_CR is implementation specific.
See the configuration information.

The SWT_CR contains fields for configuring and controlling the SWT.

This register is read-only if either the SWT_CR[HLK] or SWT_CR[SLK] bits are set.

Address: 0h base + 0h offset = 0h

Bit	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
R	MAP0	MAP1	MAP2	MAP3	MAP4	MAP5	MAP6	MAP7	0							
W																
Reset	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*

Bit	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31
R	0					SMD	RIA	WND	ITR	HLK	SLK	CSL	STP	FRZ	WEN	
W																
Reset	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*

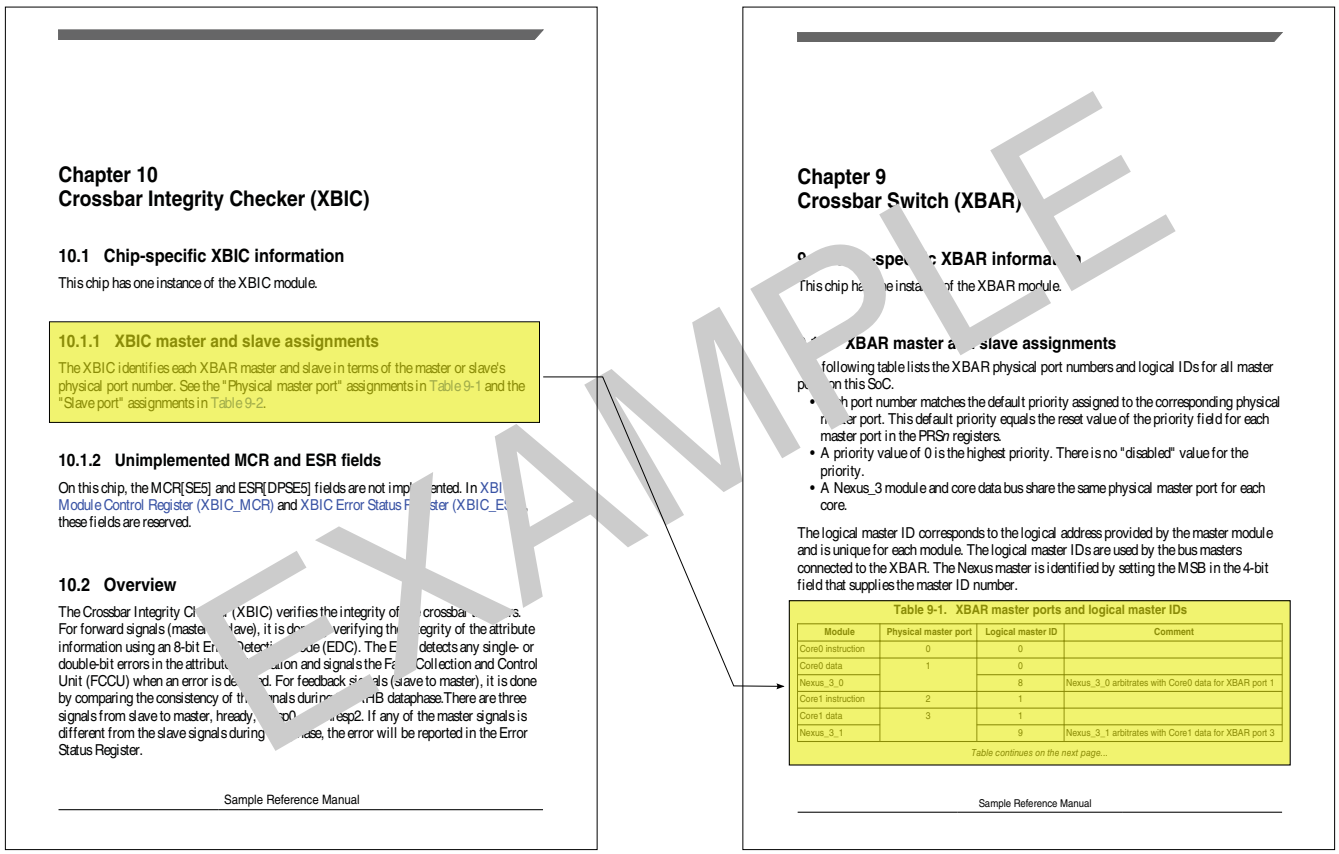
* Notes:
- The reset value for the SWT_CR is implementation specific. See the configuration information.

Sample Reference Manual

Figure 1-2. Example: chip-specific information that supersedes content in the same chapter

1.3.2 Example: chip-specific information that refers to a different chapter

The chip-specific information below refers to another chapter's chip-specific information. In this case, read both sets of chip-specific information before reading further in the chapter.



Chapter 10
Crossbar Integrity Checker (XBIC)

10.1 Chip-specific XBIC information

This chip has one instance of the XBIC module.

10.1.1 XBIC master and slave assignments

The XBIC identifies each XBAR master and slave in terms of the master or slave's physical port number. See the "Physical master port" assignments in Table 9-1 and the "Slave port" assignments in Table 9-2.

10.1.2 Unimplemented MCR and ESR fields

On this chip, the MCR[SE5] and ESR[DPSE5] fields are not implemented. In XBIC Module Control Register (XBIC_MCR) and XBIC Error Status Register (XBIC_ES... these fields are reserved.

10.2 Overview

The Crossbar Integrity Ch... (XBIC) verifies the integrity of ... crossbar ... For forward signals (maste... lave), it is do... verifying th... egrity of the attribute information using an 8-bit Er... Detecti... ue (EDC). The E... detects any single- or double-bit errors in the attribut... ation and signals the Fa... Collection and Control Unit (FCCU) when an error is de... d. For feedback si...ls (slave to master), it is done by comparing the consistency of th...nals during ...nB dataphase.There are three signals from slave to master, hready, ...sp0, ...esp2. If any of the master signals is different from the slave signals during ...ase, the error will be reported in the Error Status Register.

Sample Reference Manual

Chapter 9
Crossbar Switch (XBAR)

9 ...-spe... : XBAR informa...

This chip ha... e insta... of the XBAR module.

... XBAR master a... slave assignments

The following table lists the XBAR physical port numbers and logical IDs for all master p... on this SoC.

- ...h port number matches the default priority assigned to the corresponding physical ...er port. This default priority equals the reset value of the priority field for each master port in the PRSn registers.
- A priority value of 0 is the highest priority. There is no "disabled" value for the priority.
- A Nexus_3 module and core data bus share the same physical master port for each core.

The logical master ID corresponds to the logical address provided by the master module and is unique for each module. The logical master IDs are used by the bus masters connected to the XBAR. The Nexus master is identified by setting the MSB in the 4-bit field that supplies the master ID number.

Table 9-1. XBAR master ports and logical master IDs

Module	Physical master port	Logical master ID	Comment
Core0 instruction	0	0	
Core0 data	1	0	
Nexus_3_0		8	Nexus_3_0 arbitrates with Core0 data for XBAR port 1
Core1 instruction	2	1	
Core1 data	3	1	
Nexus_3_1		9	Nexus_3_1 arbitrates with Core1 data for XBAR port 3

Table continues on the next page...

Sample Reference Manual

Figure 1-3. Example: chip-specific information that refers to a different chapter

1.4 Register descriptions

Module chapters present register information in:

- Memory maps including:
  - Addresses
  - The name and acronym/abbreviation of each register
  - The width of each register (in bits)
  - Each register's reset value
  - The page number on which each register is described
- Register figures
- Field-description tables
- Associated text

The register figures show the field structure using the conventions in the following figure.

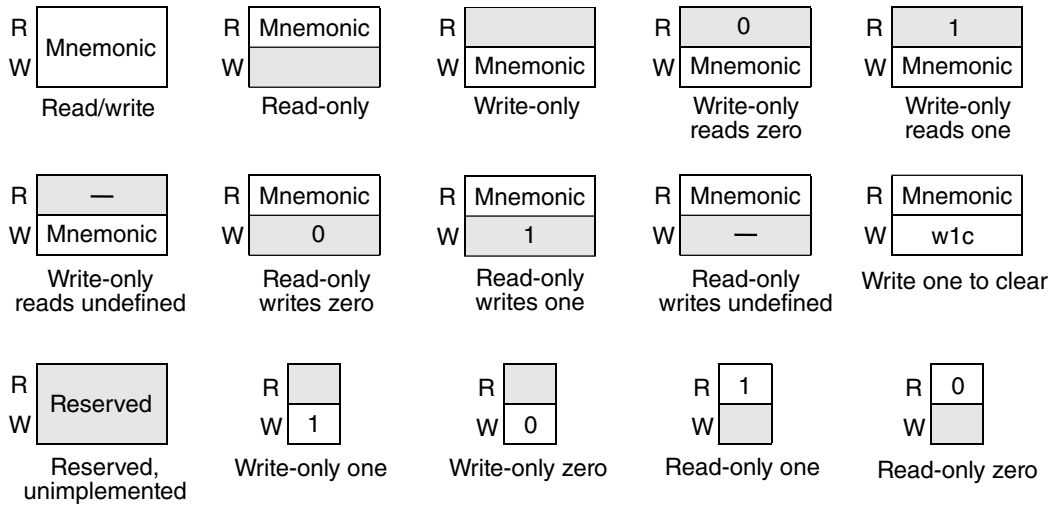


Figure 1-4. Register figure conventions

1.5 Conventions

1.5.1 Numbering systems

The following suffixes identify different numbering systems:

This suffix	Identifies a
b	Binary number. For example, the binary equivalent of the number 5 is written 101b. In some cases, binary numbers are shown with the prefix *0b*.
d	Decimal number. Decimal numbers are followed by this suffix only when the possibility of confusion exists. In general, decimal numbers are shown without a suffix.
h	Hexadecimal number. For example, the hexadecimal equivalent of the number 60 is written 3Ch. In some cases, hexadecimal numbers are shown with the prefix *0x*.

1.5.2 Typographic notation

The following typographic notation is used throughout this document:

Example	Description
placeholder, x	Items in italics are placeholders for information that you provide. Italicized text is also used for the titles of publications and for emphasis. Plain lowercase letters are also used as placeholders for single letters and numbers.
`code`	Fixed-width type indicates text that must be typed exactly as shown. It is used for instruction mnemonics, directives, symbols, subcommands, parameters, and operators. Fixed-width type

Table continues on the next page...

Example	Description
	is also used for example code. Instruction mnemonics and directives in text and tables are shown in all caps; for example, BSR.
SR[SCM]	A mnemonic in brackets represents a named field in a register. This example refers to the Scaling Mode (SCM) field in the Status Register (SR).
REVNO[6:4], XAD[7:0]	Numbers in brackets and separated by a colon represent either: • A subset of a register's named field For example, REVNO[6:4] refers to bits 6–4 that are part of the COREREV field that occupies bits 6–0 of the REVNO register. • A continuous range of individual signals of a bus For example, XAD[7:0] refers to signals 7–0 of the XAD bus.

1.5.3 Special terms

The following terms have special meanings:

Term	Meaning
asserted	Refers to the state of a signal as follows: • An active-high signal is asserted when high (1). • An active-low signal is asserted when low (0).
deasserted	Refers to the state of a signal as follows: • An active-high signal is deasserted when low (0). • An active-low signal is deasserted when high (1). In some cases, deasserted signals are described as *negated*.
reserved	Refers to a memory space, register, field, or programming setting. Writes to a reserved location can result in unpredictable functionality or behavior. • Do not modify the default value of a reserved programming setting, such as the reset value of a reserved register field. • Consider undefined locations in memory to be reserved.
w1c	Write 1 to clear: Refers to a register bitfield that must be written as 1 to be "cleared."

Chapter 2
Introduction

2.1 Overview

This chapter provides high-level descriptions of the modules available on the devices covered by this document.

2.2 Kinetis KS Series Feature Summary

The following table lists the features integrated on the KS series .

Table 2-1. Feature Summary

Feature	Summary for this device
Hardware Characteristics	
Package	48-pin QFN (7 x 7 mm) 64-pin LQFP (10 x 10 mm) 100-pin LQFP (14 x 14 mm)
Voltage range	1.71 V to 3.6 V
Temperature range (T_A)	-40°C to 105°C
Temperature range (T_J)	-40°C to 125°C
System	
Central processing unit (CPU)	ARM Cortex M4
Max. CPU frequency	120 MHz in High Speed Run, 80 MHz in Normal Run
Memory protection unit (MPU)	No
Cache	No
Interrupt controller	Yes
Direct memory access (DMA)	16 channels
DMA request multiplex	Yes
Non-maskable interrupt (NMI)	Yes
Software watchdog	Yes
Hardware watchdog	Yes

Table continues on the next page...

Table 2-1. Feature Summary (continued)

Feature	Summary for this device
	External monitor pin
Low-leakage wake-up unit	16 external wake-up pins with digital glitch filter and 4 internal wake-up sources RESET pin always treated as reset wakeup in LLS and VLLS modes
Random number generator	Yes
Hardware Encryption	No
Debug	2-pin serial wire debug (SWD) IEEE 1149.1 Joint Test Access Group (JTAG) IEEE 1149.7 compact JTAG (cJTAG)
Trace	Trace Port Interface Unit (TPIU) Flash Patch and Breakpoint (FPB) Data Watchpoint and Trace (DWT) Instrumentation Trace Macrocell (ITM)
Boundary scan	Yes
Unique Identification (ID) Number	128-bit wide
Tamper Detect	No
Secure Key Storage	No
Memory	
Total Flash memory	256 KB
Program Flash memory	256 KB
FlexMemory	No
Flash cache	4w x 8s x 64-bit = 256 bytes
Random-access memory (RAM)	64 KB
External SDRAM Controller	No
External NAND Flash Controller	No
Low-leakage standby memory	16 KB in LLS2 and VLLS2 mode 32 Bytes in VBAT domain 32 Bytes in Main supply domain in all VLLS modes
Cyclic redundancy check (CRC)	16- or 32-bit CRC with programmable generator polynomial
External bus interface	No
Clocks	
External crystal oscillator or resonator	Low range, low power or full-swing: 32 - 40 kHz High range, low power or full-swing: 3 - 32 MHz
External square wave input clock	DC to 50 MHz
Internal clock references	32 kHz oscillator 4 MHz oscillator 1 kHz oscillator 48 MHz

Table continues on the next page...

Table 2-1. Feature Summary (continued)

Feature	Summary for this device
Phase-locked loop (PLL)	up to 120 MHz VCO
Frequency-locked loop (FLL)	Range 1: 20 - 25 MHz Range 2: 40 - 50 MHz Range 3: 60 - 75 MHz Range 4: 80 - 100 MHz
48 MHz internal reference (IRC48M)	1.5% accuracy open loop 0.25% accuracy closed loop
Human-Machine Interface (HMI)	
General-purpose input/output (GPIO)	Up to 66 Pin interrupt / DMA request capability Digital glitch filter **on Port D only** Hysteresis, pull up device and pull down device on all input pins Passive input filter on PTA4 and RESET_B input pins only Configurable slew rate on all output pins. High drive configurable option on 8 pins (PTB0, PTB1, PTD4, PTD5, PTD6, PTD7, PTC3, and PTC4).
Analog	
Power management controller (PMC)	Low voltage warning and detect, high voltage detect, with selectable trip points
16-bit analog-to-digital converter 0 (ADC0)	17 single-ended channels 4 differential pair (high accuracy)
Programmable Gain Amplifier (PGA)	No
High-speed comparator (CMP)	1
6-bit digital-to-analog converter (DAC)	1
12-bit DAC	1
Operational amplifier (OPAMP)	No
Transimpedance amplifier (TRIAMP)	No
Programmable voltage reference (VREF)	No
Timers	
Programmable delay block (PDB)	1 trigger per ADC, 2 pre-trigger per ADC, 1 trigger per DAC, 1 pulse-out per CMP
16-bit low-power timer PWM modules(TPM0)	6 channels with DMA support Functional in Stop/VLPS mode
16-bit low-power timer PWM modules(TPM1)	2 channels with DMA support Functional in Stop/VLPS mode
16-bit low-power timer PWM modules(TPM2)	2 channels with DMA support Functional in Stop/VLPS mode
Ethernet 1588 Timer	No

Table continues on the next page...

Table 2-1. Feature Summary (continued)

Feature	Summary for this device
32-bit Programmable interrupt timer (PIT)	4 channels
Carrier modulator timer (CMT)	No
Independent real-time clock (IRTC)	Auxiliary supply 32 kHz external oscillator 32 Byte standby RAM
Low-power timer (LPT)	1-channel, 16-bit pulse counter or Periodic interrupt
Communication Interfaces	
Ethernet controller	No
FlexIO	1 Supports a wide range of protcols including but not limited to UART,I2C, SPI,I2S Functions in STOP/VLPS modes DMA support
Universal Serial Bus (USB) 2.0 FS controller	Low-speed/Full-speed Host, device, and OTG support USB clock recovery (Device only)
Control Area Network (CAN)	2 for KS22, 1 for KS20
Serial peripheral interface (SPI)	2
Low Power Inter-Integrated Circuit (LPI2C)	2
Low Power Universal asynchronous receiver/transmitter 0 (LPUART0)	1
Universal asynchronous receiver/transmitter 0 (UART0)	1 Hardware flow control IrDA ISO-7816 Higher Baud Rates (CPU clock)
UART 1-2	2 Hardware flow control IrDA Higher Baud Rates on UART1 (CPU clock)
Secure Digital (SD) interface	No
Synchronous Audio interface (SAI)	2 Inter-IC Sound (I2S) AC'97 support

2.3 Block Diagram

The following figure shows a top-level block diagram of the SOC superset device.

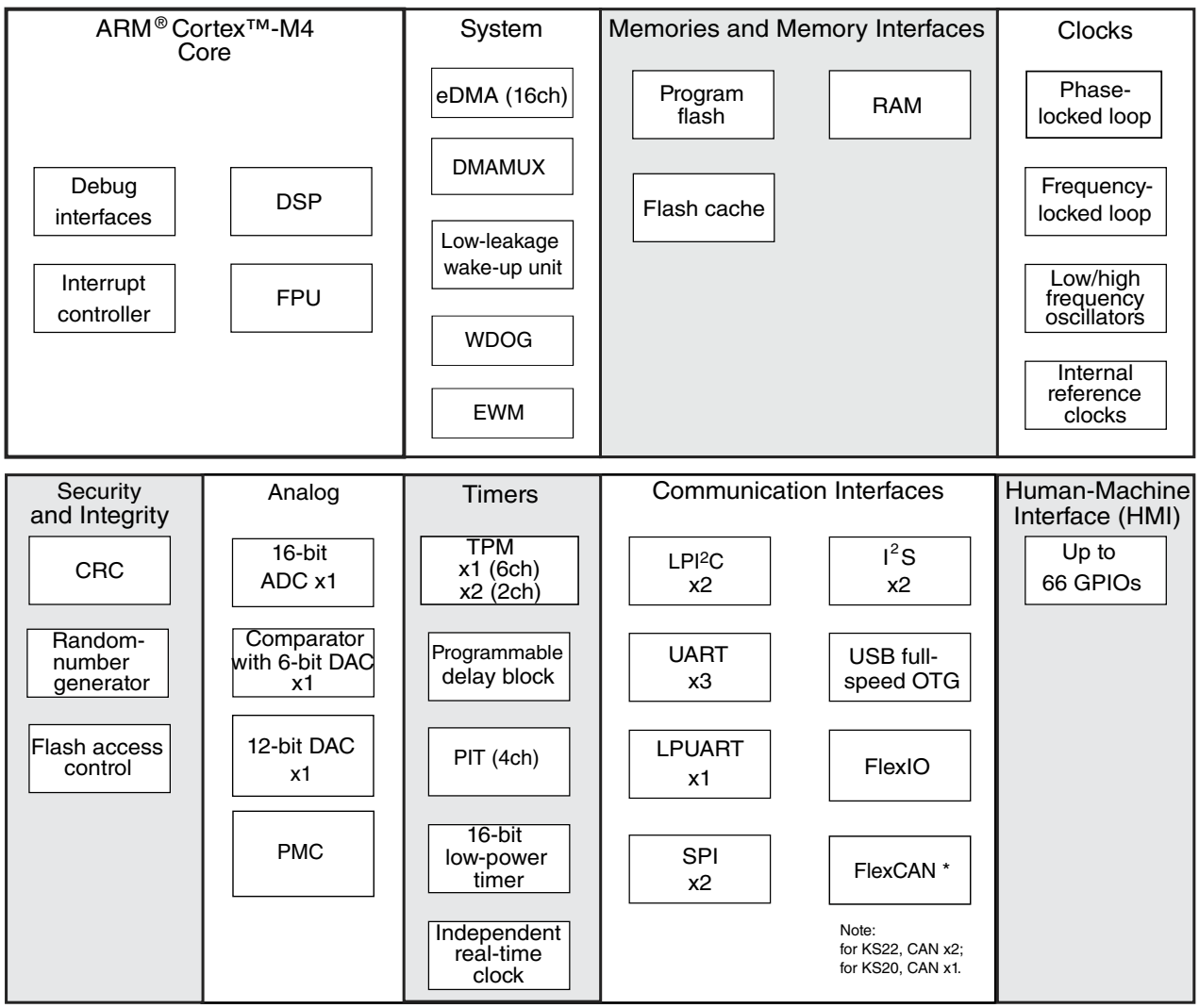


Figure 2-1. SOC Block Diagram

2.4 Module Functional Categories

The modules on this device are grouped into functional categories. The following sections describe the modules assigned to each category in more detail.

Table 2-2. Module functional categories

Module category	Description
ARM® Cortex®-M4 core	• 32-bit MCU core from ARM's Cortex-M class adding DSP instructions and single-precision floating point unit based on ARMv7 architecture
System	• System integration module • Power management and mode controllers • Multiple power modes available based on high speed run, run, wait, stop, and power-down modes • Low-leakage wakeup unit • Miscellaneous control module • Crossbar switch • Peripheral bridge • Direct memory access (DMA) controller with multiplexer to increase available DMA requests. • External watchdog monitor • Watchdog

Memories	• Internal memories include:
	  • Program flash memory
	  • SRAM

Clocks	• Multiple clock generation options available from internally- and externally-generated clocks • System oscillator to provide clock source for the MCU • RTC oscillator to provide clock source for the RTC
Security	• Cyclic Redundancy Check module for error detection
Analog	• High speed analog-to-digital converter • Comparator • Digital-to-analog converter
Timers	• Programmable delay block • Low Power Timer/PWM • Periodic interrupt timer • Low power timer • Independent real time clock
Communications	• USB OTG controller with built-in FS/LS transceiver • CAN • Serial peripheral interface • Low-Power Inter-integrated circuit (LPI^{2}C) • UART • Low-power UART (LPUART) • Integrated interchip sound (I^{2}S) • FlexIO
Human-Machine Interfaces (HMI)	• General purpose input/output controller

2.4.1 ARM® Cortex®-M4 Core Modules

The following core modules are available on this device.

Table 2-3. Core modules

Module	Description
ARM Cortex-M4	The ARM® Cortex®-M4 is the newest member of the Cortex M Series of processors targeting microcontroller cores focused on very cost sensitive, deterministic, interrupt driven environments. The Cortex M4 processor is based on the ARMv7 Architecture and Thumb®-2 ISA and is upward compatible with the Cortex M3, Cortex M1, and Cortex M0 architectures. Cortex M4 improvements include an ARMv7 Thumb-2 DSP (ported from the ARMv7-A/R profile architectures) providing 32-bit instructions with SIMD (single instruction multiple data) DSP style multiply-accumulates and saturating arithmetic.
NVIC	The ARMv7-M exception model and nested-vectored interrupt controller (NVIC) implement a relocatable vector table supporting many external interrupts, a single non-maskable interrupt (NMI), and priority levels. The NVIC replaces shadow registers with equivalent system and simplified programmability. The NVIC contains the address of the function to execute for a particular handler. The address is fetched via the instruction port allowing parallel register stacking and look-up. The first sixteen entries are allocated to ARM internal sources with the others mapping to MCU-defined interrupts.
AWIC	The primary function of the Asynchronous Wake-up Interrupt Controller (AWIC) is to detect asynchronous wake-up events in stop modes and signal to clock control logic to resume system clocking. After clock restart, the NVIC observes the pending interrupt and performs the normal interrupt or event processing.
Debug interfaces	Most of this device's debug is based on the ARM CoreSight™ architecture. Four debug interfaces are supported: • IEEE 1149.1 JTAG • IEEE 1149.7 JTAG (cJTAG) • Serial Wire Debug (SWD) • ARM Real-Time Trace Interface

2.4.2 System Modules

The following system modules are available on this device.

Table 2-4. System modules

Module	Description
System integration module (SIM)	The SIM includes integration logic and several module configuration settings.
System mode controller	The SMC provides control and protection on entry and exit to each power mode, control for the Power management controller (PMC), and reset entry and exit for the complete MCU.
Power management controller (PMC)	The PMC provides the user with multiple power options that allow the user to optimize power consumption for the level of functionality needed. Includes power-on-reset (POR) and integrated low voltage detect (LVD)/high voltage detect (HVD) with reset (brownout) capability and selectable LVD/HVD trip points.

Table continues on the next page...

Table 2-4. System modules (continued)

Module	Description
Low-leakage wakeup unit (LLWU)	The LLWU module allows the device to wake from low leakage power modes (LLS and VLLS) through various internal peripheral and external pin sources.
Miscellaneous control module (MCM)	The MCM includes integration logic
Crossbar switch (XBS)	The XBS connects bus masters and bus slaves, allowing all bus masters to access different bus slaves simultaneously and providing arbitration among the bus masters when they access the same slave.
Peripheral bridges	The peripheral bridge converts the crossbar switch interface to an interface to access a majority of peripherals on the device.
DMA multiplexer (DMAMUX)	The DMA multiplexer selects from many DMA requests down to a smaller number for the DMA controller.
Direct memory access (DMA) controller	The DMA controller provides programmable channels with transfer control descriptors for data movement via dual-address transfers for 8-bit, 16-bit, 32-bit, 16-byte and 32-byte data values.
External watchdog monitor (EWM)	The EWM is a redundant mechanism to the software watchdog module that monitors both internal and external system operation for fail conditions.
Software watchdog (WDOG)	The WDOG monitors internal system operation and forces a reset in case of failure. It can run from an independent 1 KHz low power oscillator with a programmable refresh window to detect deviations in program flow or system frequency.

2.4.3 Memories and Memory Interfaces

The following memories and memory interfaces are available on this device.

Table 2-5. Memories and memory interfaces

Module	Description
Flash memory	• Program flash memory — non-volatile flash memory that can execute program code
Flash memory controller	Manages the interface between the device and the on-chip flash memory.
SRAM	Internal system RAM. Partial SRAM kept powered in LLS2 and VLLS2 low leakage mode.
System register file	32-byte register file that is accessible during all power modes and is powered by VDD.
VBAT register file	32-byte register file that is accessible during all power modes and is powered by VBAT.

2.4.4 Clocks

The following clock modules are available on this device.

Table 2-6. Clock modules

Module	Description
Multi-clock generator (MCG)	The MCG provides several clock sources for the MCU that include: • Phase-locked loop (PLL) — Voltage-controlled oscillator (VCO) • Frequency-locked loop (FLL) — Digitally-controlled oscillator (DCO) • Internal reference clocks — Can be used as a clock source for other on-chip peripherals
48 MHz Internal Reference Clock (IRC48M)	The IRC48M provides an internally generated clock source. Clock Recovery circuitry uses the incoming USB data stream to adjust the internal oscillator and enables the internal oscillator to meet the requirements for USB clock tolerance.
System oscillator	The system oscillator, in conjunction with an external crystal or resonator, generates a reference clock for the MCU.
Real-time clock oscillator	The RTC oscillator has an independent power supply and supports a 32 kHz crystal oscillator to feed the RTC clock. Optionally, the RTC oscillator can replace the system oscillator as the main oscillator source.

2.4.5 Security and Integrity modules

The following security and integrity modules are available on this device:

Table 2-7. Security and integrity modules

Module	Description
Random number generator (RNG)	Supports the key generation algorithm defined in the Digital Signature Standard.
Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC)	Hardware CRC generator circuit using 16/32-bit shift register. Error detection for all single, double, odd, and most multi-bit errors, programmable initial seed value, and optional feature to transpose input data and CRC result via transpose register.

2.4.6 Analog modules

The following analog modules are available on this device:

Table 2-8. Analog modules

Module	Description
16-bit analog-to-digital converters (ADC)	16-bit successive-approximation ADC
Analog comparators	Compares two analog input voltages across the full range of the supply voltage.
6-bit digital-to-analog converters (DAC)	64-tap resistor ladder network which provides a selectable voltage reference for applications where voltage reference is needed.
12-bit digital-to-analog converters (DAC)	Low-power general-purpose DAC, whose output can be placed on an external pin or set as one of the inputs to the analog comparator or ADC.

2.4.7 Timer modules

The following timer modules are available on this device:

Table 2-9. Timer modules

Module	Description
Programmable delay block (PDB)	• 16-bit resolution • 3-bit prescaler • Positive transition of trigger event signal initiates the counter • Supports two triggered delay output signals, each with an independently-controlled delay from the trigger event • Outputs can be OR'd together to schedule two conversions from one input trigger event and can schedule precise edge placement for a pulsed output. This feature is used to generate the control signal for the CMP windowing feature and output to a package pin if needed for applications, such as critical conductive mode power factor correction. • Continuous-pulse output or single-shot mode supported, each output is independently enabled, with possible trigger events • Supports bypass mode • Supports DMA
Timer/PWM Module (TPM)	• Multiple-channel timer which supports input capture, output compare, and the generation of PWM signals to control electric motor and power management applications. • The counter, compare and capture registers are clocked by an asynchronous clock that can remain enabled in low power modes. • DMA support
Periodic interrupt timers (PIT)	• Four general purpose interrupt timers • Interrupt timers for triggering ADC conversions • 32-bit counter resolution • DMA support
Low-power timer (LPTimer)	• Selectable clock for prescaler/glitch filter of 1 kHz (internal LPO), 32.768 kHz (external crystal), or internal reference clock • Configurable Glitch Filter or Prescaler with 16-bit counter • 16-bit time or pulse counter with compare • Interrupt generated on Timer Compare • Hardware trigger generated on Timer Compare
Real-time clock (RTC)	• Independent power supply, POR, and 32 kHz Crystal Oscillator • 32-bit seconds counter with 32-bit Alarm • 16-bit Prescaler with compensation that can correct errors between 0.12 ppm and 3906 ppm

2.4.8 Communication interfaces

The following communication interfaces are available on this device:

Table 2-10. Communication modules

Module	Description
USB OTG (low-/full-speed)	USB 2.0 compliant module with support for host, device, and On-The-Go modes. Includes an on-chip transceiver for full and low speeds.
Controller Area Network (CAN)	Supports the full implementation of the CAN Specification Version 2.0, Part B
Serial peripheral interface (SPI)	Synchronous serial bus for communication to an external device
Low Power Inter-Integrated Circuit (LPI2C)	The LPI2C module provides a low power I2C module that can operate in low power stop modes if required. Also complies with the System Management Bus (SMBus) Specification, version 2.
Universal asynchronous receiver/ transmitters (UART)	Asynchronous serial bus communication interface with programmable 8- or 9-bit data format and support of ISO 7816 smart card interface
LPUART	Low power UART module that retains functionality in stop modes.
I2S	The I^2S is a full-duplex, serial port that allows the chip to communicate with a variety of serial devices, such as standard codecs, digital signal processors (DSPs), microprocessors, peripherals, and audio codecs that implement the inter-IC sound bus (I^2S) and the Intel® AC97 standards
FlexIO	The FlexIO module is capable of supporting emulation of additional UART, SPI, LPI2C, I2S, PWM and other serial modules. The module can remain functional in VLPS mode provided the clock it is using remains enabled.

2.4.9 Human-machine interfaces

The following human-machine interfaces (HMI) are available on this device:

Table 2-11. HMI modules

Module	Description
General purpose input/output (GPIO)	All general purpose input or output (GPIO) pins are capable of interrupt and DMA request generation. All GPIO pins have 3.3 V tolerance.

2.5 Orderable part numbers

The following table summarizes the part numbers of the devices covered by this document.

Table 2-12. Orderable part numbers summary

Device part number	CPU frequency	Pin count	Package	Program flash	SRAM	GPIO	CAN
MKS22FN256VLL12	120 MHz	100	LQFP	256 KB	64 KB	66	2
MKS22FN256VLH12	120 MHz	64	LQFP	256 KB	64 KB	40	2
MKS22FN256VFT12	120 MHz	48	QFN	256 KB	64 KB	35	2
MKS22FN128VLL12	120 MHz	100	LQFP	128 KB	64 KB	66	2
MKS22FN128VLH12	120 MHz	64	LQFP	128 KB	64 KB	40	2
MKS22FN128VFT12	120 MHz	48	QFN	128 KB	64 KB	35	2
MKS20FN256VLL12	120 MHz	100	LQFP	256 KB	64 KB	66	1
MKS20FN256VLH12	120 MHz	64	LQFP	256 KB	64 KB	40	1
MKS20FN256VFT12	120 MHz	48	QFN	256 KB	64 KB	35	1
MKS20FN128VLL12	120 MHz	100	LQFP	128 KB	64 KB	66	1
MKS20FN128VLH12	120 MHz	64	LQFP	128 KB	64 KB	40	1
MKS20FN128VFT12	120 MHz	48	QFN	128 KB	64 KB	35	1

Chapter 3
Core Overview

3.1 ARM Cortex-M4 Core Configuration

This section summarizes how the module has been configured in the chip. Full documentation for this module is provided by ARM and can be found at **arm.com**.

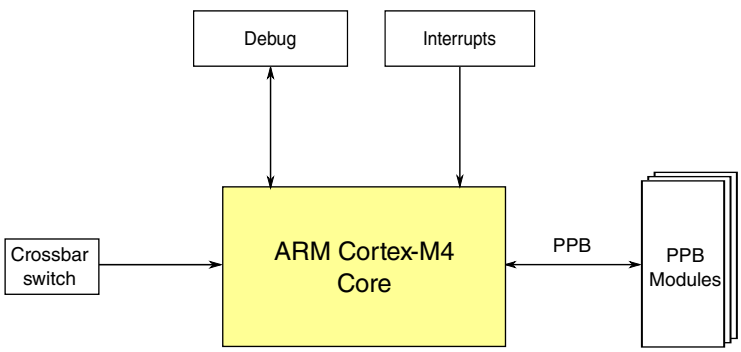


Figure 3-1. Core configuration

Table 3-1. Reference links to related information

Topic	Related module	Reference
Full description	ARM Cortex-M4 core	ARM Cortex-M4 Technical Reference Manual
System memory map		System memory map
Clocking		Clock distribution
Power management		Power management
System/instruction/data bus module	Crossbar switch	Crossbar switch
Debug	IEEE 1149.1 JTAG IEEE 1149.7 JTAG (cJTAG) Serial Wire Debug (SWD) ARM Real-Time Trace Interface	Debug

Table continues on the next page...

Table 3-1. Reference links to related information (continued)

Topic	Related module	Reference
Interrupts	Nested Vectored Interrupt Controller (NVIC)	NVIC
Private Peripheral Bus (PPB) module	Miscellaneous Control Module (MCM)	MCM
Private Peripheral Bus (PPB) module	Single-precision floating point unit (FPU)	FPU

3.1.1 Buses, interconnects, and interfaces

The ARM Cortex-M4 core has four buses as described in the following table.

Bus name	Description
Instruction code (ICODE) bus	The ICODE and DCODE buses are muxed. This muxed bus is called the CODE bus and is connected to the crossbar switch via a single master port.
Data code (DCODE) bus	
System bus	The system bus is connected to a separate master port on the crossbar.
Private peripheral (PPB) bus	The PPB provides access to these modules: • ARM modules such as the NVIC, ITM, DWT, FBP, and ROM table • Miscellaneous Control Module (MCM)

3.1.2 System Tick Timer

The System Tick Timer's clock source is always the core clock, FCLK. This results in the following:

- The CLKSOURCE bit in SysTick Control and Status register is always set to select the core clock.
- Because the timing reference (FCLK) is a variable frequency, the TENMS bit in the SysTick Calibration Value Register is always zero.
- The NOREF bit in SysTick Calibration Value Register is always set, implying that FCLK is the only available source of reference timing.

3.1.3 Debug facilities

This device has extensive debug capabilities including run control and tracing capabilities. The standard ARM debug port that supports JTAG and SWD interfaces. Also the cJTAG interface is supported on this device.

3.1.4 Core privilege levels

The ARM documentation uses different terms than this document to distinguish between privilege levels.

If you see this term...	it also means this term...
Privileged	Supervisor
Unprivileged or user	User

3.2 Nested Vectored Interrupt Controller (NVIC) Configuration

This section summarizes how the module has been configured in the chip. Full documentation for this module is provided by ARM and can be found at **arm.com**.

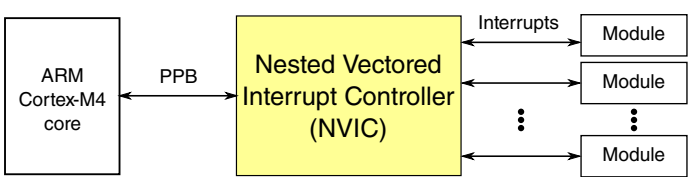


Figure 3-2. NVIC configuration

Table 3-2. Reference links to related information

Topic	Related module	Reference
Full description	Nested Vectored Interrupt Controller (NVIC)	ARM Cortex-M4 Technical Reference Manual
System memory map		System memory map
Clocking		Clock distribution
Power management		Power management
Private Peripheral Bus (PPB)	ARM Cortex-M4 core	ARM Cortex-M4 core

3.2.1 Interrupt priority levels

This device supports 16 priority levels for interrupts. Therefore, in the NVIC each source in the IPR registers contains 4 bits. For example, IPR0 is shown below:

	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	IRQ3				0	0	0	0	IRQ2				0	0	0	0	IRQ1				0	0	0	0	IRQ0				0	0	0	0
W																																

3.2.2 Non-maskable interrupt

The non-maskable interrupt request to the NVIC is controlled by the external $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ signal. The pin the $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ signal is multiplexed on, must be configured for the $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ function to generate the non-maskable interrupt request.

3.2.3 Interrupt channel assignments

The interrupt source assignments are defined in the following table.

- Vector number — the value stored on the stack when an interrupt is serviced.
- IRQ number — non-core interrupt source count, which is the vector number minus 16.

The IRQ number is used within ARM's NVIC documentation.

Table 3-4. Interrupt vector assignments

Address	Vector	IRQ[1]	NVIC non-IPR register number [2]	NVIC IPR register number [3]	Source module	Source description
ARM Core System Handler Vectors						
0x0000_0000	0	–	–	–	ARM core	Initial Stack Pointer
0x0000_0004	1	–	–	–	ARM core	Initial Program Counter
0x0000_0008	2	–	–	–	ARM core	Non-maskable Interrupt (NMI)
0x0000_000C	3	–	–	–	ARM core	Hard Fault
0x0000_0010	4	–	–	–	ARM core	MemManage Fault
0x0000_0014	5	–	–	–	ARM core	Bus Fault
0x0000_0018	6	–	–	–	ARM core	Usage Fault

Table continues on the next page...

Table 3-4. Interrupt vector assignments (continued)

Address	Vector	IRQ[1]	NVIC non-IPR register number [2]	NVIC IPR register number [3]	Source module	Source description
0x0000_001C	7	–	–	–	—	—
0x0000_0020	8	–	–	–	—	—
0x0000_0024	9	–	–	–	—	—
0x0000_0028	10	–	–	–	—	—
0x0000_002C	11	–	–	–	ARM core	Supervisor call (SVCall)
0x0000_0030	12	–	–	–	ARM core	Debug Monitor
0x0000_0034	13	–	–	–	—	—
0x0000_0038	14	–	–	–	ARM core	Pendable request for system service (PendableSrvReq)
0x0000_003C	15	–	–	–	ARM core	System tick timer (SysTick)
Non-Core Vectors						
0x0000_0040	16	0	0	0	DMA	DMA channel 0 transfer complete
0x0000_0044	17	1	0	0	DMA	DMA channel 1 transfer complete
0x0000_0048	18	2	0	0	DMA	DMA channel 2 transfer complete
0x0000_004C	19	3	0	0	DMA	DMA channel 3 transfer complete
0x0000_0050	20	4	0	1	DMA	DMA channel 4 transfer complete
0x0000_0054	21	5	0	1	DMA	DMA channel 5 transfer complete
0x0000_0058	22	6	0	1	DMA	DMA channel 6 transfer complete
0x0000_005C	23	7	0	1	DMA	DMA channel 7 transfer complete
0x0000_0060	24	8	0	2	DMA	DMA channel 8 transfer complete
0x0000_0064	25	9	0	2	DMA	DMA channel 9 transfer complete
0x0000_0068	26	10	0	2	DMA	DMA channel 10 transfer complete
0x0000_006C	27	11	0	2	DMA	DMA channel 11 transfer complete
0x0000_0070	28	12	0	3	DMA	DMA channel 12 transfer complete
0x0000_0074	29	13	0	3	DMA	DMA channel 13 transfer complete
0x0000_0078	30	14	0	3	DMA	DMA channel 14 transfer complete
0x0000_007C	31	15	0	3	DMA	DMA channel 15 transfer complete
0x0000_0080	32	16	0	4	DMA	DMA error interrupt channels 0-15
0x0000_0084	33	17	0	4	MCM	FPU sources
0x0000_0088	34	18	0	4	Flash memory	Command complete
0x0000_008C	35	19	0	4	Flash memory	Read collision
0x0000_0090	36	20	0	5	Mode Controller	Low-voltage detect, low-voltage warning
0x0000_0094	37	21	0	5	LLWU	Low Leakage Wakeup **NOTE:** The LLWU interrupt must not be masked by the interrupt controller to avoid a scenario where the system does not fully

Table continues on the next page...

Table 3-4. Interrupt vector assignments (continued)

Address	Vector	IRQ[1]	NVIC non-IPR register number [2]	NVIC IPR register number [3]	Source module	Source description
						exit stop mode on an LLS recovery.
0x0000_0098	38	22	0	5	WDOG or EWM	Both watchdog modules share this interrupt.
0x0000_009C	39	23	0	5	RNG	Randon Number Generator
0x0000_00A0	40	24	0	6	LPI^{2}C0	—
0x0000_00A4	41	25	0	6	LPI^{2}C1	—
0x0000_00A8	42	26	0	6	SPI0	Single interrupt vector for all sources
0x0000_00AC	43	27	0	6	SPI1	Single interrupt vector for all sources
0x0000_00B0	44	28	0	7	I^{2}S0	Transmit
0x0000_00B4	45	29	0	7	I^{2}S0	Receive
0x0000_00B8	46	30	0	7	LPUART0	Status and error
0x0000_00BC	47	31	0	7	UART0	Single interrupt vector for UART status sources
0x0000_00C0	48	32	1	8	UART0	Single interrupt vector for UART error sources
0x0000_00C4	49	33	1	8	UART1	Single interrupt vector for UART status sources
0x0000_00C8	50	34	1	8	UART1	Single interrupt vector for UART error sources
0x0000_00CC	51	35	1	8	UART2	Single interrupt vector for UART status sources
0x0000_00D0	52	36	1	9	UART2	Single interrupt vector for UART error sources
0x0000_00D4	53	37	1	9	—	—
0x0000_00D8	54	38	1	9	—	—
0x0000_00DC	55	39	1	9	ADC0	—
0x0000_00E0	56	40	1	10	CMP0	—
0x0000_00E4	57	41	1	10	—	—
0x0000_00E8	58	42	1	10	TPM0	—
0x0000_00EC	59	43	1	10	TPM1	—
0x0000_00F0	60	44	1	11	TPM2	—
0x0000_00F4	61	45	1	11	—	—
0x0000_00F8	62	46	1	11	RTC	Alarm interrupt
0x0000_00FC	63	47	1	11	RTC	Seconds interrupt
0x0000_0100	64	48	1	12	PIT	Channel 0
0x0000_0104	65	49	1	12	PIT	Channel 1
0x0000_0108	66	50	1	12	PIT	Channel 2
0x0000_010C	67	51	1	12	PIT	Channel 3

Table continues on the next page...

Table 3-4. Interrupt vector assignments (continued)

Address	Vector	IRQ[1]	NVIC non-IPR register number [2]	NVIC IPR register number [3]	Source module	Source description
0x0000_0110	68	52	1	13	PDB	—
0x0000_0114	69	53	1	13	USB OTG	—
0x0000_0118	70	54	1	13	—	—
0x0000_011C	71	55	1	13	—	—
0x0000_0120	72	56	1	14	DAC0	—
0x0000_0124	73	57	1	14	MCG	—
0x0000_0128	74	58	1	14	Low Power Timer	—
0x0000_012C	75	59	1	14	Port control module	Pin detect (Port A)
0x0000_0130	76	60	1	15	Port control module	Pin detect (Port B)
0x0000_0134	77	61	1	15	Port control module	Pin detect (Port C)
0x0000_0138	78	62	1	15	Port control module	Pin detect (Port D)
0x0000_013C	79	63	1	15	Port control module	Pin detect (Port E)
0x0000_0140	80	64	2	16	Software	Software interrupt[4]
0x0000_0144	81	65	2	16	—	—
0x0000_0148	82	66	2	16	—	—
0x0000_014C	83	67	2	16	—	—
0x0000_0150	84	68	2	17	—	—
0x0000_0154	85	69	2	17	—	—
0x0000_0158	86	70	2	17	FlexIO	Flexible IO
0x0000_015C	87	71	2	17	—	—
0x0000_0160	88	72	2	18	—	—
0x0000_0164	89	73	2	18	—	—
0x0000_0168	90	74	2	18	—	—
0x0000_016C	91	75	2	18	CAN0	OR'ed Message buffer (0-15)
0x0000_0170	92	76	2	19	CAN0	Bus Off
0x0000_0174	93	77	2	19	CAN0	Error
0x0000_0178	94	78	2	19	CAN0	Transmit Warning
0x0000_017C	95	79	2	19	CAN0	Receive Warning
0x0000_0180	96	80	2	20	CAN0	Wake Up
0x0000_0184	97	81	2	20	—	—
0x0000_0188	98	82	2	20	—	—
0x0000_018C	99	83	2	20	—	—
0x0000_0190	100	84	2	21	—	—
0x0000_0194	101	85	2	21	—	—
0x0000_0198	102	86	2	21	—	—
0x0000_019C	103	87	2	21	—	—
0x0000_01A0	104	88	2	22	I^2S1	transmit

Table continues on the next page...

Table 3-4. Interrupt vector assignments (continued)

Address	Vector	IRQ[1]	NVIC non-IPR register number [2]	NVIC IPR register number [3]	Source module	Source description
0x0000_01A4	105	89	2	22	I^2S1	receive
0x0000_01A8	106	90	2	22	—	
0x0000_01AC	107	91	2	22	—	—
0x0000_01B0	108	92	2	23		—
0x0000_01B4	109	93	2	23	—	—
0x0000_01B8	110	94	2	23	CAN1 (for KS22 only)	OR'ed Message buffer (0-15)
0x0000_01BC	111	95	2	23	CAN1 (for KS22 only)	Bus Off
0x0000_01C0	112	96	3	24	CAN1 (for KS22 only)	Error
0x0000_01C4	113	97	3	24	CAN1 (for KS22 only)	Transmit Warning
0x0000_01C8	114	98	3	24	CAN1 (for KS22 only)	Receive Warning
0x0000_01CC	115	99	3	24	CAN1 (for KS22 only)	Wake Up

1. Indicates the NVIC's interrupt source number.
2. Indicates the NVIC's ISER, ICER, ISPR, ICPR, and IABR register number used for this IRQ. The equation to calculate this value is: IRQ div 32
3. Indicates the NVIC's IPR register number used for this IRQ. The equation to calculate this value is: IRQ div 4
4. This interrupt can only be pended or cleared via the NVIC registers.

3.2.3.1 Determining the bitfield and register location for configuring a particular interrupt

Suppose you need to configure the low-power timer (LPTMR) interrupt. The following table is an excerpt of the LPTMR row from Interrupt channel assignments.

Table 3-5. LPTMR interrupt vector assignment

Address	Vector	IRQ[1]	NVIC non-IPR register number [2]	NVIC IPR register number [3]	Source module	Source description
0x0000_0128	74	58	1	14	Low Power Timer	—

1. Indicates the NVIC's interrupt source number.
2. Indicates the NVIC's ISER, ICER, ISPR, ICPR, and IABR register number used for this IRQ. The equation to calculate this value is: IRQ div 32
3. Indicates the NVIC's IPR register number used for this IRQ. The equation to calculate this value is: IRQ div 4

- The NVIC registers you would use to configure the interrupt are:
  - NVICISER1
  - NVICICER1
  - NVICISPR1
  - NVICICPR1
  - NVICIABR1
  - NVICIPR14
- To determine the particular IRQ's bitfield location within these particular registers:
  - NVICISER1, NVICICER1, NVICISPR1, NVICICPR1, NVICIABR1 bit location = IRQ mod 32 = 26
  - NVICIPR14 bitfield starting location = 8 * (IRQ mod 4) + 4 = 20

    Since the NVICIPR bitfields are 4-bit wide (16 priority levels), the NVICIPR14 bitfield range is 20-23

Therefore, the following bitfield locations are used to configure the LPTMR interrupts:

- NVICISER1[26]
- NVICICER1[26]
- NVICISPR1[26]
- NVICICPR1[26]
- NVICIABR1[26]
- NVICIPR14[23:20]

3.3 Asynchronous Wake-up Interrupt Controller (AWIC) Configuration

This section summarizes how the module has been configured in the chip. Full documentation for this module is provided by ARM and can be found at **arm.com**.

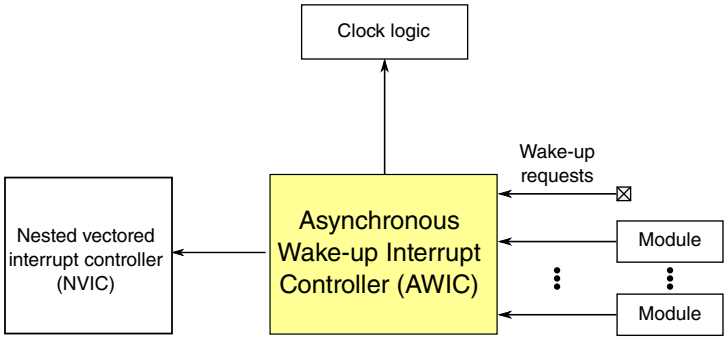


Figure 3-3. Asynchronous Wake-up Interrupt Controller configuration

Table 3-6. Reference links to related information

Topic	Related module	Reference
System memory map		System memory map
Clocking		Clock distribution
Power management		Power management
	Nested Vectored Interrupt Controller (NVIC)	NVIC
Wake-up requests		AWIC wake-up sources

3.3.1 Wake-up sources

The device uses the following internal and external inputs to the AWIC module.

Table 3-7. AWIC Partial Stop, Stop and VLPS Wake-up Sources

Wake-up source	Description
Available system resets	$\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin and WDOG when LPO is its clock source, and JTAG
Low voltage detect	Power Mode Controller
Low voltage warning	Power Mode Controller
High voltage detect	Power Mode Controller
Pin interrupts	Port Control Module - Any enabled pin interrupt is capable of waking the system
ADC	The ADC is functional when using internal clock source
CMP	Since no system clocks are available, functionality is limited, trigger mode provides wakeup functionality with periodic sampling
LPI^{2}C	Functional when using clock source which is active in Stop and VLPS modes
FlexIO	Functional when using clock source which is active in Stop and VLPS modes
TPM	Functional when using clock source which is active in Stop and VLPS modes
UART	Active edge on RXD
LPUART	Functional when using clock source which is active in Stop and VLPS modes
USB FS/LS Controller	Wakeup

Table continues on the next page...

Table 3-7. AWIC Partial Stop, Stop and VLPS Wake-up Sources (continued)

Wake-up source	Description
LPTMR	Functional when using clock source which is active in Stop and VLPS modes
RTC	Functional in Stop/VLPS modes
I2S (SAI)	Functional when using an external bit clock or external master clock
TPM	Functional when using clock source which is active in Stop and VLPS modes
CAN	Wakeup on edge (CANx_RX)
NMI	Non-maskable interrupt

3.4 FPU Configuration

This section summarizes how the module has been configured in the chip.

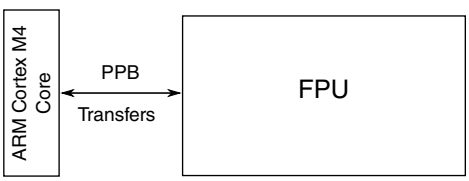


Figure 3-4. FPU configuration

Table 3-8. Reference links to related information

Topic	Related module	Reference
Full description	FPU	ARM Cortex-M4 Technical Reference Manual
System memory map		System memory map
Clocking		Clock Distribution
Power Management		Power Management
Transfers Private Peripheral Bus (PPB)	ARM Cortex M4 core	ARM Cortex-M4 core

3.5 JTAG Controller Configuration

This section summarizes how the module has been configured in the chip.

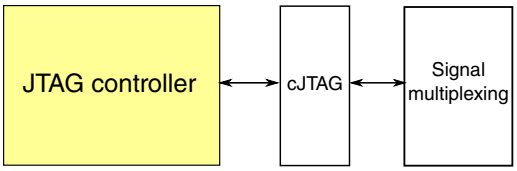


Figure 3-5. JTAGC Controller configuration

Table 3-9. Reference links to related information

Topic	Related module	Reference
Full description	JTAGC	JTAGC
Signal multiplexing	Port control	Signal multiplexing

Chapter 4
Memories and Memory Interfaces

4.1 Flash Memory Configuration

This section summarizes how the module has been configured in the chip.

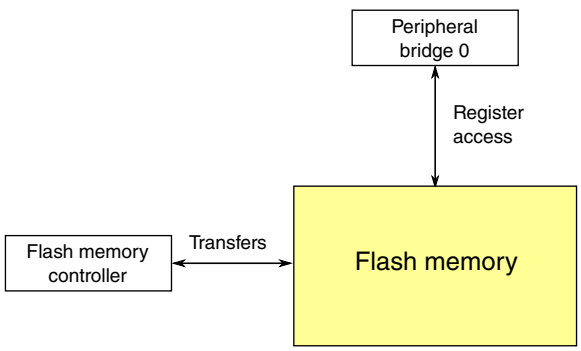


Figure 4-1. Flash memory configuration

Table 4-1. Reference links to related information

Topic	Related module	Reference
Full description	Flash memory	
System memory map		System memory map
Clocking		Clock Distribution
Transfers	Flash memory controller	Flash memory controller
Register access	Peripheral bridge	Peripheral bridge

4.1.1 Flash memory types

This device contains the following types of flash memory:

- Program flash memory — non-volatile flash memory that can execute program code

4.1.2 Flash Memory Sizes

The devices covered in this document contain:

- 1 block of program flash consisting of 2 KB sectors

The amounts of flash memory for the devices covered in this document are:

Device	Program flash (KB)	Block 0 address range
MKS2xFN256Vxx12	256	0x0000_0000–0x0003_FFFF
MKS2xFN128Vxx12	128	0x0000_0000–0x0001_FFFF

4.1.3 Flash Security

How flash security is implemented on this device is described in Chip Security.

4.1.4 Flash Program Restrictions

The flash memory on this device should not be programmed or erased while operating in High Speed Run or VLPR power modes.

4.1.5 Flash Modes

The flash memory is always configured in NVM normal. There are no operating conditions in which the flash is configured for NVM special mode.

4.1.6 Erase All Flash Contents

The flash of the MCU is protected from erasing all of the flash contents by the FTFA_FSEC[MEEN] bits. If the bits are set to 'b10 mass erase is disabled. An Erase All Flash Blocks operation can be launched by software through a series of peripheral bus writes to flash registers. In addition the entire flash memory may be erased external to the flash memory from the SWJ-DP debug port by setting DAP_CONTROL[0]. DAP_STATUS[0] is set to indicate the mass erase command has been accepted. DAP_STATUS[0] is cleared when the mass erase completes.

4.1.7 FTF_FOPT Register

The flash memory's FTF_FOPT register allows the user to customize the operation of the MCU at boot time. See FOPT boot options for details of its definition.

4.2 Flash Memory Controller Configuration

This section summarizes how the module has been configured in the chip.

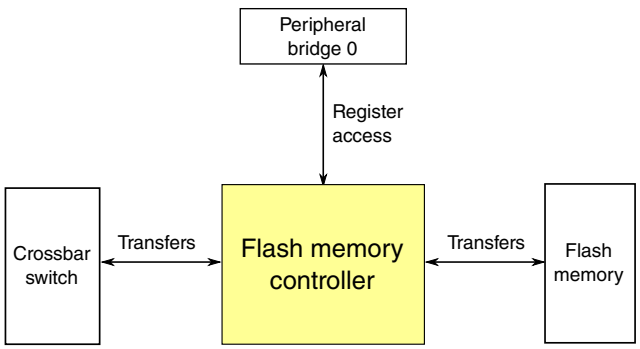


Figure 4-2. Flash memory controller configuration

Table 4-2. Reference links to related information

Topic	Related module	Reference
Full description	Flash memory controller	Flash memory controller
System memory map		System memory map
Clocking		Clock Distribution
Transfers	Flash memory	Flash memory
Transfers	Crossbar switch	Crossbar Switch
Register access	Peripheral bridge	Peripheral bridge

4.2.1 Number of masters

The Flash Memory Controller supports up to eight crossbar switch masters. However, this device has a different number of crossbar switch masters. See Crossbar Switch Configuration for details on the master port assignments.

4.3 SRAM Configuration

This section summarizes how the module has been configured in the chip.

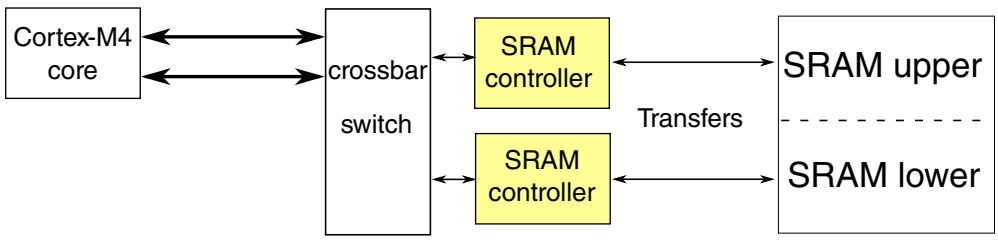


Figure 4-3. SRAM configuration

Table 4-3. Reference links to related information

Topic	Related module	Reference
Full description	SRAM	SRAM
System memory map		System memory map
Clocking		Clock Distribution
Transfers	SRAM controller	SRAM controller
	ARM Cortex-M4 core	ARM Cortex-M4 core

4.3.1 SRAM sizes

This device contains SRAM accessed by bus masters through the cross-bar switch. The on-chip SRAM is split into SRAM_L and SRAM_U regions where the SRAM_L and SRAM_U ranges form a contiguous block in the memory map anchored at address 0x2000_0000. As such:

- SRAM_L is anchored to 0x1FFF_FFFF and occupies the space before this ending address.
- SRAM_U is anchored to 0x2000_0000 and occupies the space after this beginning address.

NOTE

Misaligned accesses across the 0x2000_0000 boundary are not supported in the ARM Cortex-M4 architecture.

The amount of SRAM for the devices covered in this document is shown in the following table.

Device	SRAM_L size (KB)	SRAM_U size (KB)	Total SRAM (KB)	Address Range
MKS2xFN256Vxx12	16	48	64	0x1FFF_C000-0x2000_BFFF
MKS2xFN128Vxx12	16	48	64	0x1FFF_C000-0x2000_BFFF

4.3.2 SRAM retention in low power modes

The SRAM is retained down to LLS3 and VLLS3 mode.

In LLS2 and VLLS2 the 16 KB region of SRAM_U from 0x2000_0000 is powered.

In VLLS1 and VLLS0 no SRAM is retained; however, the 32-byte register file is available.

4.4 System Register File Configuration

This section summarizes how the module has been configured in the chip.

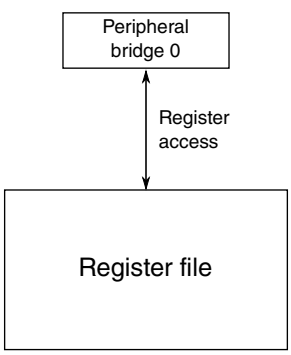


Figure 4-4. System Register file configuration

Table 4-4. Reference links to related information

Topic	Related module	Reference
Full description	Register file	Register file
System memory map		System memory map
Clocking		Clock distribution
Power management		Power management

4.4.1 System Register file

This device includes a 32-byte register file that is powered in all power modes. The System Register file is made up of eight 4-byte registers RFSYS_REG*n*, where *n* ranges from 0 to 7.

Also, it retains contents during low-voltage detect (LVD) and high-voltage detect (HVD) events and is only reset during a power-on reset.

4.5 VBAT Register File Configuration

This section summarizes how the module has been configured in the chip.

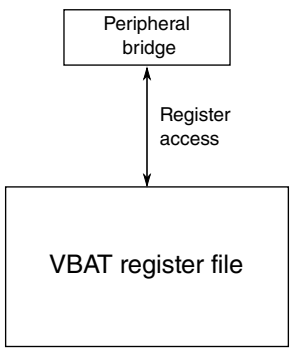


Figure 4-5. VBAT Register file configuration

Table 4-5. Reference links to related information

Topic	Related module	Reference
Full description	VBAT register file	VBAT register file
System memory map		System memory map
Clocking		Clock distribution
Power management		Power management

4.5.1 VBAT register file

This device includes a 32-byte register file that is powered in all power modes and is powered by VBAT. The VBAT Register file is made up of eight 4-byte registers RFVBAT_REG*n*, where *n* ranges from 0 to 7.

It is only reset during VBAT power-on reset.

Chapter 5
Memory Map

5.1 Introduction

This device contains various memories and memory-mapped peripherals which are located in one 32-bit contiguous memory space. This chapter describes the memory and peripheral locations within that memory space.

5.2 System memory map

The following table shows the high-level device memory map. This map provides the complete architectural address space definition for the various sections. Based on the physical sizes of the memories and peripherals, the actual address regions used may be smaller.

The system memory map includes address spaces that are intended for specific purposes.

- There is an aliased region that maps a system address space to the Program flash section. Flash region aliasing is specifically intended for references to read-only data coefficients in the flash while still preserving a full Harvard memory organization in the processor core supporting concurrent instruction fetches (for example, from RAM) and data accesses (from flash via the aliased space).
- The bitbanding functionality supported by the processor core uses aliased regions that map to the basic RAM and peripheral address spaces. This functionality maps each 32-bit word of the aliased address space to a unique bit in the underlying RAM or peripheral address space to support single-bit insert and extract operations from the processor.

Table 5-1. System memory map

System 32-bit Address Range	Destination Slave	Access
0x0000_0000–0x07FF_FFFF	Program flash and read-only data	All masters

Table continues on the next page...

Table 5-1. System memory map (continued)

System 32-bit Address Range	Destination Slave	Access
	(Includes exception vectors in first 1024 bytes)	
0x0800_0000–0x0FFF_FFFF	Reserved	—
0x1000_0000–0x1BFF_FFFF	Reserved	—
0x1C00_0000–0x1FFF_FFFF	SRAM_L: Lower SRAM (ICODE/DCODE)	All masters
0x2000_0000–0x200F_FFFF [2]	SRAM_U: Upper SRAM bitband region	All masters
0x2010_0000–0x21FF_FFFF	Reserved	–
0x2200_0000–0x23FF_FFFF	Aliased to SRAM_U bitband	Cortex-M4 core only
0x2400_0000-0x2FFF_FFFF	Reserved	–
0x3000_0000-0x33FF_FFFF [1]	Program Flash and read-only data	Cortex-M4 core only
0x3400_0000-0x3FFF_FFFF	Reserved	–
0x4000_0000–0x4007_FFFF	Bitband region for peripheral bridge 0 (AIPS-Lite0)	Cortex-M4 core & DMA
0x4008_0000–0x400F_EFFF	Reserved	–
0x400F_F000–0x400F_FFFF	Bitband region for general purpose input/output (GPIO)	Cortex-M4 core & DMA
0x4010_0000–0x41FF_FFFF	Reserved	–
0x4200_0000–0x42FF_FFFF	Aliased to peripheral bridge (AIPS-Lite) bitband	Cortex-M4 core only
0x4300_0000–0x43FD_FFFF	Reserved	–
0x43FE_0000–0x43FF_FFFF	Aliased to general purpose input/output (GPIO) bitband	Cortex-M4 core only
0x4400_0000–0xDFFF_FFFF	Reserved	–
0xE000_0000–0xE00F_FFFF	Private peripherals	Cortex-M4 core only
0xE010_0000–0xFFFF_FFFF	Reserved	–

1. This map provides the complete architectural address space definition for the flash. Based on the physical sizes of the memories implemented for a particular device, the actual address regions used may be smaller. See Flash Memory Sizes for details.
2. This range varies depending on amount of SRAM implemented for a particular device. See SRAM sizes for details.

NOTE

1. Access rights to AIPS-Lite peripheral bridge and general purpose input/output (GPIO) module address space is limited to the core, DMA .
2. ARM Cortex-M4 core access privileges also includes accesses via the debug interface.

5.2.1 Aliased bit-band regions

The SRAM_U, AIPS-Lite, and general purpose input/output (GPIO) module resources reside in the Cortex-M4 processor bit-band regions.

The processor also includes two 32 MB aliased bit-band regions associated with the two 1 MB bit-band spaces. Each 32-bit location in the 32 MB space maps to an individual bit in the bit-band region. A 32-bit write in the alias region has the same effect as a read-modify-write operation on the targeted bit in the bit-band region.

Bit 0 of the value written to the alias region determines what value is written to the target bit:

- Writing a value with bit 0 set writes a 1 to the target bit.
- Writing a value with bit 0 clear writes a 0 to the target bit.

A 32-bit read in the alias region returns either:

- a value of 0x0000_0000 to indicate the target bit is clear
- a value of 0x0000_0001 to indicate the target bit is set

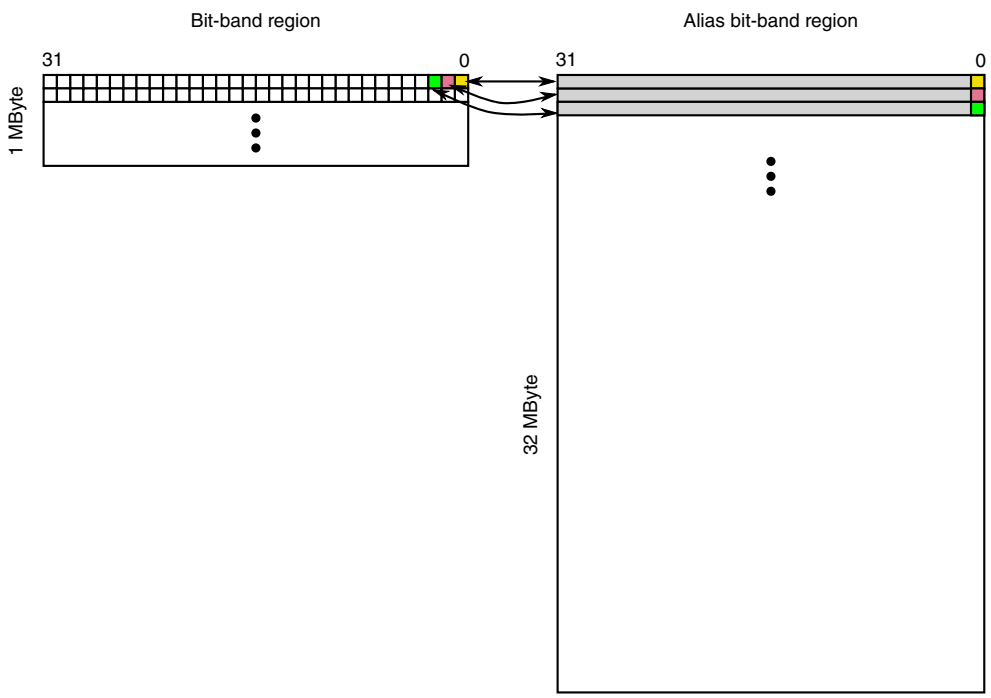


Figure 5-1. Alias bit-band mapping

NOTE

Each bit in bit-band region has an equivalent bit that can be manipulated through bit 0 in a corresponding long word in the alias bit-band region.

5.2.2 Flash Access Control Introduction

The Flash Access Control (FAC) is a NXP or third-party configurable memory protection scheme optimized to allow end users to utilize software libraries while offering programmable restrictions to these libraries. The flash memory is divided into equal size segments that provide protection to proprietary software libraries. The protection of these segments is controlled as the FAC provides a cycle-by-cycle evaluation of the access rights for each transaction routed to the on-chip flash memory. Configurability allows an increasing number of protected segments while supporting two levels of vendors adding their proprietary software to a device.

Flash access control aligns to the three privilege levels supported by ARM Cortex-M family products where the most secure state - supervisor/privileged secure - aligns to the execute-only and supervisor-only access control. The unsecure state of user non-secure aligns to no access control states set, and the mid-level state where user secure aligns to using the access control of execute-only.

Control for this protection scheme is implemented in Program Once NVM locations and is configurable through a Program Once flash command operations. The NVM locations controlling FAC are unaffected by Erase All Blocks flash command and debug interface initiated mass erase operations.

NOTE

The FAC protection scheme has eight XACC and eight SACC registers to control up to 64 segments. For program flash sizes 128KB or less, the memory is divided into 32 segments, controlled by the four lower-order XACC and SACC registers.

5.3 Flash Memory Map

The flash memory and the flash registers are located at different base addresses as shown in the following figure. The base address for each is specified in System memory map.

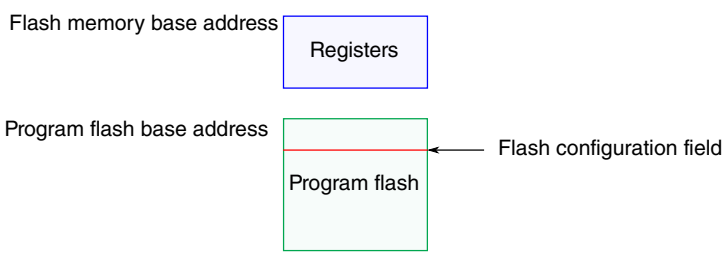


Figure 5-2. Flash memory map

The on-chip Flash is implemented in a portion of the allocated Flash range to form a contiguous block in the memory map beginning at address 0x0000_0000. See Flash Memory Sizes for details of supported ranges.

Accesses to the flash memory ranges outside the amount of Flash on the device causes the bus cycle to be terminated with an error followed by the appropriate response in the requesting bus master. Read collision events in which flash memory is accessed while a flash memory resource is being manipulated by a flash command also generates a bus error response.

5.3.1 Alternate Non-Volatile IRC User Trim Description

The following non-volatile locations (4 bytes) are used for custom IRC user trim supported by some development tools. An alternate IRC trim to the factory loaded trim can be stored at this location. To override the factory trim, user software must load new values into the MCG trim registers. The address below is just for example.

Non-Volatile Byte Address (example)	Alternate IRC Trim Value
0x0000_03FC	Reserved
0x0000_03FD	Reserved
0x0000_03FE (bit 0)	SCFTRIM
0x0000_03FE (bit 4:1)	FCTRIM
0x0000_03FE (bit 5)	FCFTRIM
0x0000_03FF	SCTRIM

5.4 SRAM memory map

The on-chip RAM is split in two regions: SRAM_L and SRAM_U. The RAM is implemented such that the SRAM_L and SRAM_U ranges form a contiguous block in the memory map. See SRAM Configuration for details.

Accesses to the SRAM_L and SRAM_U memory ranges outside the amount of RAM on the device causes the bus cycle to be terminated with an error followed by the appropriate response in the requesting bus master.

5.5 Peripheral bridge (AIPS-Lite) memory map

Modules that are disabled via their clock gate control bits in the SIM registers disable the associated AIPS slots. Access to any address within an unimplemented or disabled peripheral bridge slot results in a transfer error termination.

For programming model accesses via the peripheral bridges, there is generally only a small range within the 4 KB slots that is implemented. Accessing an address that is not implemented in the peripheral results in a transfer error termination.

5.5.1 Read-after-write sequence and required serialization of memory operations

In some situations, a write to a peripheral must be completed fully before a subsequent action can occur. Examples of such situations include:

- Exiting an interrupt service routine (ISR)
- Changing a mode
- Configuring a function

In these situations, the application software must perform a read-after-write sequence to guarantee the required serialization of the memory operations:

1. Write the peripheral register.
2. Read the written peripheral register to verify the write.
3. Continue with subsequent operations.

NOTE

One factor contributing to these situations is processor write buffering. The processor architecture has a programmable configuration bit to disable write buffering: ACTLR[DISDEFWBUF]. However, disabling buffered writes is likely to degrade system performance much more than simply performing the required memory serialization for the situations that truly require it.

5.5.2 Peripheral Bridge 0 (AIPS-Lite 0) Memory Map

Table 5-2. Peripheral bridge 0 slot assignments

System 32-bit base address	Slot number	Module
0x4000_0000	0	—
0x4000_1000	1	—
0x4000_2000	2	—

Table continues on the next page...

Table 5-2. Peripheral bridge 0 slot assignments (continued)

System 32-bit base address	Slot number	Module
0x4000_3000	3	—
0x4000_4000	4	—
0x4000_5000	5	—
0x4000_6000	6	—
0x4000_7000	7	—
0x4000_8000	8	DMA controller
0x4000_9000	9	DMA controller transfer control descriptors
0x4000_A000	10	—
0x4000_B000	11	—
0x4000_C000	12	—
0x4000_D000	13	—
0x4000_E000	14	—
0x4000_F000	15	—
0x4001_0000	16	—
0x4001_1000	17	—
0x4001_2000	18	—
0x4001_3000	19	—
0x4001_4000	20	—
0x4001_5000	21	—
0x4001_6000	22	—
0x4001_7000	23	—
0x4001_8000	24	—
0x4001_9000	25	—
0x4001_A000	26	—
0x4001_B000	27	—
0x4001_C000	28	—
0x4001_D000	29	—
0x4001_E000	30	—
0x4001_F000	31	Flash memory controller
0x4002_0000	32	Flash memory
0x4002_1000	33	DMA channel mutiplexer
0x4002_2000	34	—
0x4002_3000	35	—
0x4002_4000	36	FlexCAN 0
0x4002_5000	37	FlexCAN 1 (only for KS22)
0x4002_6000	38	—
0x4002_7000	39	—
0x4002_8000	40	—
0x4002_9000	41	Random Number Generator (RNGA)

Table continues on the next page...

Table 5-2. Peripheral bridge 0 slot assignments (continued)

System 32-bit base address	Slot number	Module
0x4002_A000	42	LPUART0
0x4002_B000	43	—
0x4002_C000	44	SPI 0
0x4002_D000	45	SPI 1
0x4002_E000	46	—
0x4002_F000	47	I2S 0
0x4003_0000	48	I2S 1
0x4003_1000	49	—
0x4003_2000	50	CRC
0x4003_3000	51	—
0x4003_4000	52	—
0x4003_5000	53	—
0x4003_6000	54	Programmable delay block (PDB)
0x4003_7000	55	Periodic interrupt timers (PIT)
0x4003_8000	56	TPM 0
0x4003_9000	57	TPM 1
0x4003_A000	58	TPM 2
0x4003_B000	59	Analog-to-digital converter (ADC) 0
0x4003_C000	60	—
0x4003_D000	61	Real-time clock (RTC)
0x4003_E000	62	VBAT register file
0x4003_F000	63	DAC0
0x4004_0000	64	Low-power timer (LPTMR)
0x4004_1000	65	System register file
0x4004_2000	66	—
0x4004_3000	67	—
0x4004_4000	68	—
0x4004_5000	69	—
0x4004_6000	70	—
0x4004_7000	71	SIM low-power logic
0x4004_8000	72	System integration module (SIM)
0x4004_9000	73	Port A multiplexing control
0x4004_A000	74	Port B multiplexing control
0x4004_B000	75	Port C multiplexing control
0x4004_C000	76	Port D multiplexing control
0x4004_D000	77	Port E multiplexing control
0x4004_E000	78	—
0x4004_F000	79	—
0x4005_0000	80	—

Table continues on the next page...

Table 5-2. Peripheral bridge 0 slot assignments (continued)

System 32-bit base address	Slot number	Module
0x4005_1000	81	—
0x4005_2000	82	Software watchdog
0x4005_3000	83	—
0x4005_4000	84	—
0x4005_5000	85	—
0x4005_6000	86	—
0x4005_7000	87	—
0x4005_8000	88	—
0x4005_9000	89	—
0x4005_A000	90	—
0x4005_B000	91	—
0x4005_C000	92	—
0x4005_D000	93	—
0x4005_E000	94	—
0x4005_F000	95	FlexIO
0x4006_0000	96	—
0x4006_1000	97	External watchdog
0x4006_2000	98	—
0x4006_3000	99	—
0x4006_4000	100	Multi-purpose Clock Generator (MCG)
0x4006_5000	101	System oscillator (OSC)
0x4006_6000	102	LPI^{2}C 0
0x4006_7000	103	LPI^{2}C 1
0x4006_8000	104	—
0x4006_9000	105	—
0x4006_A000	106	UART 0
0x4006_B000	107	UART 1
0x4006_C000	108	UART 2
0x4006_D000	109	—
0x4006_E000	110	—
0x4006_F000	111	—
0x4007_0000	112	—
0x4007_1000	113	—
0x4007_2000	114	USB OTG FS/LS
0x4007_3000	115	Analog comparator (CMP) / 6-bit digital-to-analog converter (DAC)
0x4007_4000	116	—
0x4007_5000	117	—
0x4007_6000	118	—
0x4007_7000	119	—

Table continues on the next page...

Table 5-2. Peripheral bridge 0 slot assignments (continued)

System 32-bit base address	Slot number	Module
0x4007_8000	120	—
0x4007_9000	121	—
0x4007_A000	122	—
0x4007_B000	123	—
0x4007_C000	124	Low-leakage wakeup unit (LLWU)
0x4007_D000	125	Power management controller (PMC)
0x4007_E000	126	System Mode controller (SMC)
0x4007_F000	127	Reset Control Module (RCM)
0x400F_F000		GPIO controller

5.6 Private Peripheral Bus (PPB) memory map

The PPB is part of the defined ARM bus architecture and provides access to select processor-local modules. These resources are only accessible from the core; other system masters do not have access to them.

Table 5-3. PPB memory map

System 32-bit Address Range	Resource
0xE000_0000–0xE000_0FFF	Instrumentation Trace Macrocell (ITM)
0xE000_1000–0xE000_1FFF	Data Watchpoint and Trace (DWT)
0xE000_2000–0xE000_2FFF	Flash Patch and Breakpoint (FPB)
0xE000_3000–0xE000_DFFF	Reserved
0xE000_E000–0xE000_EFFF	System Control Space (SCS) (for NVIC and FPU)
0xE000_F000–0xE003_FFFF	Reserved
0xE004_0000–0xE004_0FFF	Trace Port Interface Unit (TPIU)
0xE004_1000–0xE004_1FFF	Reserved
0xE004_2000–0xE004_2FFF	Reserved
0xE004_3000–0xE004_3FFF	Reserved
0xE004_4000–0xE007_FFFF	Reserved
0xE008_0000–0xE008_0FFF	Miscellaneous Control Module (MCM)
0xE008_1000–0xE008_1FFF	Reserved
0xE008_2000–0xE00F_EFFF	Reserved
0xE00F_F000–0xE00F_FFFF	ROM Table - allows auto-detection of debug components

Chapter 6
Clock Distribution

6.1 Introduction

The MCG module controls which clock source is used to derive the system clocks. The clock generation logic divides the selected clock source into a variety of clock domains, including the clocks for the system bus masters, system bus slaves, and flash memory . The clock generation logic also implements module-specific clock gating to allow granular shutoff of modules.

The primary clocks for the system are generated from the MCGOUTCLK clock. The clock generation circuitry provides several clock dividers that allow different portions of the device to be clocked at different frequencies. This allows for trade-offs between performance and power dissipation.

Various modules, such as the USB OTG Controller, have module-specific clocks that can be generated from the IRC48MCLK or MCGPLLCLK or MCGFLLCLK clock. In addition, there are various other module-specific clocks that have other alternate sources. Clock selection for most modules is controlled by the SOPT registers in the SIM module.

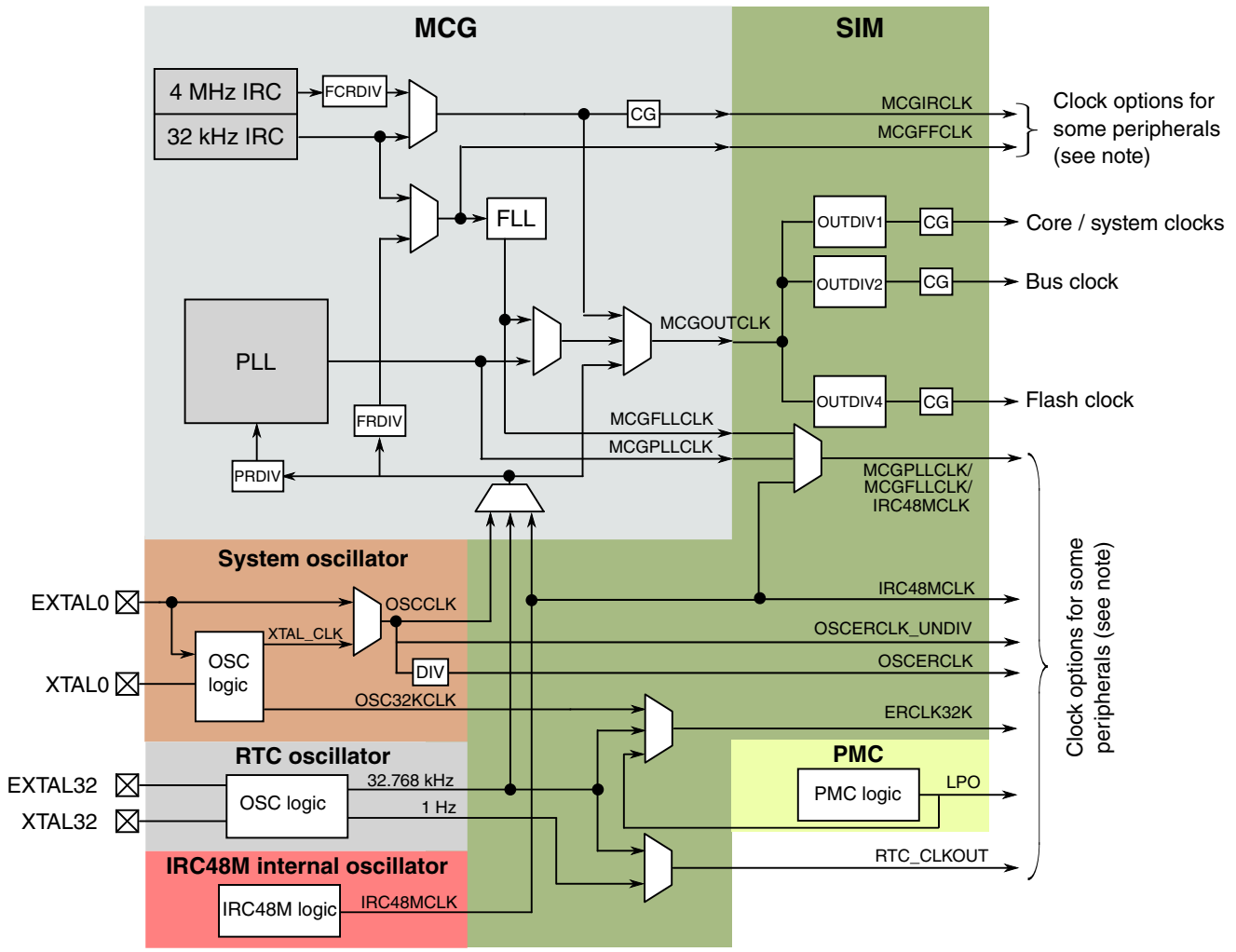
6.2 Programming model

The selection and multiplexing of system clock sources is controlled and programmed via the MCG module. The setting of clock dividers and module clock gating for the system are programmed via the SIM module. Reference those sections for detailed register and bit descriptions.

6.3 High-Level device clocking diagram

The following system oscillator, MCG, and SIM module registers control the multiplexers, dividers, and clock gates shown in the below figure:

	OSC	MCG	SIM
Multiplexers	MCG_C*x*	MCG_C*x*	SIM_SOPT1, SIM_SOPT2
Dividers	—	MCG_C*x*	SIM_CLKDIV*x*
Clock gates	OSC_CR	MCG_C1	SIM_SCGC*x*



CG — Clock gate
Note: See subsequent sections for details on where these clocks are used.

Figure 6-1. Clocking diagram

6.4 Clock definitions

The following table describes the clocks in the previous block diagram.

Clock name	Description
Core clock	MCGOUTCLK divided by OUTDIV1 clocks the ARM Cortex-M4 core
Platform clock	MCGOUTCLK divided by OUTDIV1, clocks the crossbar switch and NVIC.
System clock	MCGOUTCLK divided by OUTDIV1, clocks the bus masters directly. In addition, this clock is used for UART0 and UART1.
Bus clock	MCGOUTCLK divided by OUTDIV2 clocks the bus slaves and peripheral (excluding memories)
Flash clock	MCGOUTCLK divided by OUTDIV4 clocks the flash memory
MCGIRCLK	MCG output of the slow or fast internal reference clock
MCGFFCLK	MCG output of the slow internal reference clock or a divided MCG external reference clock.
MCGOUTCLK	MCG output of either IRC, MCGFLLCLK , MCGPLLCLK or MCG's external reference clock that sources the core, system, bus, and flash clock. It is also an option for the debug trace clock.
MCGFLLCLK	MCG output of the FLL. MCGFLLCLK may clock some modules.
MCGPLLCLK	MCG output of the PLL. MCGFLLCLK or MCGPLLCLK may clock some modules.
IRC48MCLK	Internal 48 MHz oscillator that can be used as a reference to the MCG and also may clock some on-chip modules.
OSCCLK	System oscillator output of the internal oscillator or sourced directly from EXTAL
OSCERCLK	System oscillator output sourced from OSCCLK that may clock some on-chip modules. Dividable by 1, 2, 4, or 8.
OSC32KCLK	System oscillator 32kHz output
ERCLK32K	Clock source for some modules that is chosen as OSC32KCLK or the RTC clock.
RTC clock	RTC oscillator output for the RTC module
LPO	PMC 1kHz output

6.4.1 Device clock summary

The following table provides more information regarding the on-chip clocks.

Table 6-1. Clock Summary

Clock name	High Speed Run mode clock frequency	Run mode clock frequency	VLPR mode clock frequency	Clock source	Clock is disabled when…
MCGOUTCLK	Up to 120 MHz	Up to 120 MHz	Up to 4 MHz	MCG	In all stop modes except for partial stop modes and during PLL locking when

Table continues on the next page...

Table 6-1. Clock Summary (continued)

Clock name	High Speed Run mode clock frequency	Run mode clock frequency	VLPR mode clock frequency	Clock source	Clock is disabled when…
					MCGOUTCLK derived from PLL.
MCGFLLCLK	Up to 100 MHz	Up to 100 MHz	N/A	MCG	MCG clock controls do not enable. Overriding forced disable in all low powers modes (including STOP and VLPx modes).
MCGPLLCLK	Up to 120 MHz	Up to 120 MHz	N/A	MCG	MCG clock controls do not enable, in Stop mode but PLLSTEN=0, or in VLPS, LLS and VLLSx modes
Core clock	Up to 120 MHz	Up to 80 MHz	Up to 4 MHz	MCGOUTCLK clock divider	In all wait and stop modes
System clock	Up to 120 MHz	Up to 80 MHz	Up to 4 MHz	MCGOUTCLK clock divider	In all stop modes and Compute Operation
Bus clock	Up to 60 MHz	Up to 50 MHz	Up to 4 MHz	MCGOUTCLK clock divider	In all stop modes except for partial STOP2 mode, and Compute Operation
Flash clock	Up to 26.67 MHz	Up to 26.67 MHz	Up to 1 MHz in BLPE, Up to 800 kHz in BLPI	MCGOUTCLK clock divider	In all stop modes except for partial STOP2 mode
Internal reference (MCGIRCLK)	30-40 kHz or 4 MHz	30-40 kHz or 4 MHz	4 MHz only	MCG	MCG_C1[IRCLKEN] cleared, Stop or VLPS mode and MCG_C1[IREFSTEN] cleared, or LLS/VLLS mode
External reference (OSCERCLK)	Up to 50 MHz (bypass), 30-40 kHz, or 3-32 MHz (crystal)	Up to 50 MHz (bypass), 30-40 kHz, or 3-32 MHz (crystal)	Up to 16 MHz (bypass), 30-40 kHz (low-range crystal) or Up to 16 MHz (high-range crystal)	System OSC	System OSC's OSC_CR[ERCLKEN] cleared, or Stop mode and OSC_CR[EREFSTEN] cleared
External reference 32kHz (ERCLK32K)	30-40 kHz	30-40 kHz	30-40 kHz	System OSC or LPO or RTC OSC depending on SIM_SOPT1[OSC32KSEL]	System OSC's OSC_CR[ERCLKEN] cleared

Table continues on the next page...

Table 6-1. Clock Summary (continued)

Clock name	High Speed Run mode clock frequency	Run mode clock frequency	VLPR mode clock frequency	Clock source	Clock is disabled when…
					or RTC's RTC_CR[OSCE] cleared
Internal 48 MHz clock (IRC48MCLK)	48 MHz	48 MHz	N/A	IRC48M	USB MCG or SIM control does not enable. Overriding forced disable in VLPS, LLSx, VLLSx.
RTC_CLKOUT	1 Hz or 32 kHz	1 Hz or 32 kHz	1 Hz or 32 kHz	RTC clock	RTC_CLKOUT is disabled in LLS and VLLSx modes. Overriding clocking is possible via SIM_SOPT1[OSC32KOUT] to drive CLKOUT32K out in all low power modes.
CLKOUT32K	32 kHz	32 kHz	32 kHz	ERCLK32K - which is system OSC or LPO or RTC OSC depending on SIM_SOPT1[OSC32KSEL]	SIM_SOPT1[OSC32KOUT] not configured to drive ERCLK32K out.
LPO	1 kHz	1 kHz	1 kHz	PMC	in VLLS0
USB FS clock	48 MHz	48 MHz	N/A	IRC48MCLK or MCGPLLCLK or MCGFLLCLK with fractional clock divider, or USB_CLKIN	USB FS OTG is disabled
I2S master clock	Up to 25 MHz	Up to 25 MHz	Up to 12.5 MHz	System clock , MCGPLLCLK, MCGFLLCLK , IRC48MCLK, OSCERCLK with fractional clock divider, or I2S_CLKIN	I^2S is disabled
TRACE clock	Up to 120 MHz	Up to 120 MHz	Up to 4 MHz	System clock or MCGOUTCLK	Trace is disabled
LPUART0 clock	Up to 120MHz	Up to 100MHz	Up to 16MHz	MCGPLLCLK or MCGFLLCLK or IRC48MCLK or MCGIRCLK or	LPUART0 is disabled

Table continues on the next page...

Table 6-1. Clock Summary (continued)

Clock name	High Speed Run mode clock frequency	Run mode clock frequency	VLPR mode clock frequency	Clock source	Clock is disabled when…
				OSCERCLK	
FlexIO clock	Up to 120MHz	Up to 100MHz	Up to 16MHz	MCGPLLCLK or MCGFLLCLK or IRC48MCLK or MCGIRCLK or OSCERCLK or I2S0_MCLK or System Clock	FlexIO is disabled
LPI2C clock	Up to 60MHz	Up to 60MHz	Up to 16MHz	MCGPLLCLK or MCGFLLCLK or IRC48MCLK or MCGIRCLK or OSCERCLK	LPI2Cx is disabled
TPM clock	Up to 60MHz	Up to 60MHz	Up to 4MHz	MCGPLLCLK or MCGFLLCLK or IRC48MCLK or MCGIRCLK or OSCERCLK	All TPMs are disabled
FlexCAN clock	Up to 60MHz	Up to 50MHz	Up to 4MHz	Bus clk or OSCERCLK	FlexCANx is disabled

6.5 Internal clocking requirements

The clock dividers are programmed via the SIM module's CLKDIV registers. Each divider is programmable from a divide-by-1 through divide-by-16 setting. The following requirements must be met when configuring the clocks for this device:

1. The core and system clock frequencies must be 120 MHz or slower in HSRUN, 80 MHz or slower in RUN.
2. The bus clock frequency must be programmed to 60 MHz or less in HSRUN, 50 MHz or less in RUN, and an integer divide of the core clock. The core clock to bus clock ratio is limited to a max value of 8.
3. The flash clock frequency must be programmed to 26.67 MHz or less, less than or equal to the bus clock, and an integer divide of the core clock. The core clock to flash clock ratio is limited to a max value of 8.

The following are a few of the more common clock configurations for this device:

Option 1:

Clock	Frequency
Core clock	50 MHz
System clock	50 MHz
Bus clock	50 MHz
Flash clock	25 MHz

Option 2: Run

Clock	Frequency
Core clock	80 MHz
System clock	80 MHz
Bus clock	40 MHz
Flash clock	26.67 MHz

Option 3: High Speed Run

Clock	Frequency
Core clock	120 MHz
System clock	120 MHz
Bus clock	60 MHz
Flash clock	24 MHz

6.5.1 Clock divider values after reset

Each clock divider is programmed via the SIM module's CLKDIV*n* registers. The flash memory's FTF_FOPT[LPBOOT] bit controls the reset value of the core clock, system clock, bus clock, and flash clock dividers as shown below:

FTF_FOPT [LPBOOT]	Core/system clock	Bus clock	Flash clock	Description
0	0x7 (divide by 8)	0x7 (divide by 8)	0xF (divide by 16)	Low power boot
1	0x0 (divide by 1)	0x0 (divide by 1)	0x1 (divide by 2)	Fast clock boot

This gives the user flexibility for a lower frequency, low-power boot option. The flash erased state defaults to fast clocking mode, since where the low power boot (FTF_FOPT[LPBOOT]) bit resides in flash is logic 1 in the flash erased state.

To enable the low power boot option program FTF_FOPT[LPBOOT] to zero. During the reset sequence, if LPBOOT is cleared, the system is in a slow clock configuration. Upon any system reset, the clock dividers return to this configurable reset state.

6.5.2 VLPR mode clocking

The clock dividers cannot be changed while in VLPR mode. They must be programmed prior to entering VLPR mode to guarantee:

- the core/system and bus clocks are less than or equal to 4 MHz, and
- the flash memory clock is less than or equal to 1 MHz

NOTE

When the MCG is in BLPI and clocking is derived from the Fast IRC, the clock divider controls, MCG_SC[FCRDIV] and SIM_CLKDIV1[OUTDIV4], must be programmed such that the resulting flash clock nominal frequency is 800 kHz or less. In this case, one example of correct configuration is MCG_SC[FCRDIV]=000b and SIM_CLKDIV1[OUTDIV4]=0100b, resulting in a divide by 5 setting.

6.6 Clock Gating

The clock to each module can be individually gated on and off using the SIM module's SCGC*x* registers. These bits are cleared after any reset, which disables the clock to the corresponding module to conserve power. Prior to initializing a module, set the corresponding bit in SCGC*x* register to enable the clock. Before turning off the clock, make sure to disable the module.

Any bus access to a peripheral that has its clock disabled generates an error termination.

6.7 Module clocks

The following table summarizes the clocks associated with each module.

Table 6-2. Module clocks

Module	Bus interface clock	Internal clocks	I/O interface clocks
Core modules			

Table continues on the next page...

Table 6-2. Module clocks (continued)

Module	Bus interface clock	Internal clocks	I/O interface clocks
ARM Cortex-M4 core	System clock	Core clock	—
NVIC	System clock	—	—
DAP	System clock	—	—
ITM	System clock	—	—
cJTAG, JTAGC	—	—	JTAG_CLK
System modules			
DMA	System clock	—	—
DMA Mux	Bus clock	—	—
Port control	Bus clock	LPO	—
Crossbar Switch	System clock	—	—
Peripheral bridges	System clock	Bus clock, Flash clock	—
LLWU, PMC, SIM, RCM	Flash clock	LPO	—
Mode controller	Flash clock	—	—
MCM	System clock	—	—
EWM	Bus clock	LPO	—
Watchdog timer	Bus clock	LPO	—
Clocks			
MCG	Flash clock	MCGOUTCLK, MCGPLLCLK, MCGFLLCLK, MCGIRCLK, OSCCLK, RTC OSC, IRC48MCLK	—
OSC	Bus clock	OSCERCLK, OSCCLK, OSCERCLK_UNDIV, OSC32KCLK	—
IRC48M	—	IRC48MCLK	—
Memory and memory interfaces			
Flash Controller	System clock	Flash clock	—
Flash memory	Flash clock	—	—
Security			
CRC	Bus clock	—	—
RNGA	Bus clock	—	—
Analog			
ADC	Bus clock	OSCERCLK , IRC48MCLK	—
CMP	Bus clock	—	—
DAC	Bus clock	—	—
Timers			
TPM	Bus clock	TPM clock	TPM_CLKIN0, TPM_CLKIN1
PDB	Bus clock	—	—
PIT	Bus clock	—	—
LPTMR	Flash clock	LPO, OSCERCLK, MCGIRCLK, ERCLK32K	—

Table continues on the next page...

Table 6-2. Module clocks (continued)

Module	Bus interface clock	Internal clocks	I/O interface clocks
RTC	Flash clock	EXTAL32	—
Communication interfaces			
USB FS OTG	System clock	USB FS clock	—
DSPI	Bus clock	—	DSPI_SCK
LPI^{2}C	Bus clock	LPI2C clock	I2C_SCL
UART0, UART1	System clock	—	—
UART2	Bus clock	—	—
LPUART0	Bus clock	LPUART0 clock	—
I^{2}S	Bus clock	I^{2}S master clock	I2S_TX_BCLK, I2S_RX_BCLK
FlexCAN	Bus clock	FlexCAN clock	—
FlexIO	Bus clock	FlexIO clock	—
Human-machine interfaces			
GPIO	Platform clock	—	—

6.7.1 PMC 1-kHz LPO clock

The Power Management Controller (PMC) generates a 1-kHz clock that is enabled in all modes of operation, including all low power modes except VLLS0. This 1-kHz source is commonly referred to as LPO clock or 1-kHz LPO clock.

6.7.2 IRC 48MHz clock

The integrated 48 MHz internal reference clock source (IRC48MCLK) is available in High Speed Run, Run, WAIT and Stop modes of operation. IRC48MCLK is also available in Compute Only, PSTOP2 and PSTOP1 modes of operation when entered from Run mode. IRC48MCLK is forced disabled when the MCU transitions into VLPS, LLSx, and VLLSx low power modes.

NOTE

IRC48MCLK is not forced disabled in Stop modes and should be disabled by software prior to Stop entry unless it is required. IRC48MCLK is not forced disabled in VLPR and should be disabled by software prior to VLPR entry.

IRC48MCLK is enabled via any of the following control settings while operating in these modes:

- USB Control register enables — enabled when USB_CLK_RECOVER_IRC_EN[IRC_EN]=1
- MCG Control register selects IRC48 MHz clock (enabled when MCG_C7[OSCSEL]=10) *and* either MCG is configured in an external clocking mode (PBE, BLPE, PEE, FBE or FEE) or MCG_C5[PLLCLKEN0] = 1.
- SIM Control register selects IRC48 MHz clock — enabled when SIM_SOPT2[PLLFLLSEL]=11

In USB Device applications, the IRC48M block can be enabled in USB Clock Recovery mode in which the internal IRC48M oscillator is tuned to match the clock extracted from the incoming USB data stream. This functionality provides the capability of generating a high precision 48MHz clock source without requiring an on-chip PLL or an associated off-chip crystal circuit.

If the USB Device connection is removed from the Host, the IRC48M USB Clock Recovery functionality stops tuning the internal IRC48M oscillator since the clock extracted from the USB data stream is disconnected. The 48MHz clock source frequency does not shift after the USB Device is removed from the USB Host. If the IRC48M clock is selected as the source of the PLL with MCG_C7[OSCSEL]=10 then the clock frequency of the system clocks can shift as the USB device connects to the USB Host starting clock recovery tuning.

The IRC48MCLK is also available for use as:

- an oscillator reference to the MCG - from which core, system, bus, and flash clock sources can be derived
- an ADC alternate clock source
- clock source for LPUART communications
- clock source for I2S/SAI communications
- clock source for TPM communications
- clock source for FlexIO communications
- clock source for LPI2C communications

6.7.3 WDOG clocking

The WDOG may be clocked from two clock sources as shown in the following figure.

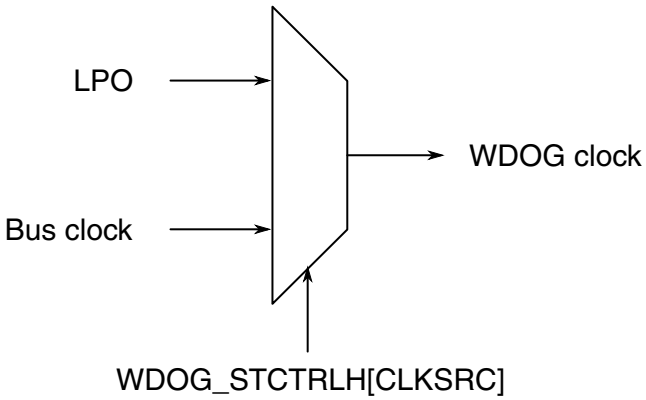


Figure 6-2. WDOG clock generation

6.7.4 Debug trace clock

The debug trace clock source can be clocked as shown in the following figure.

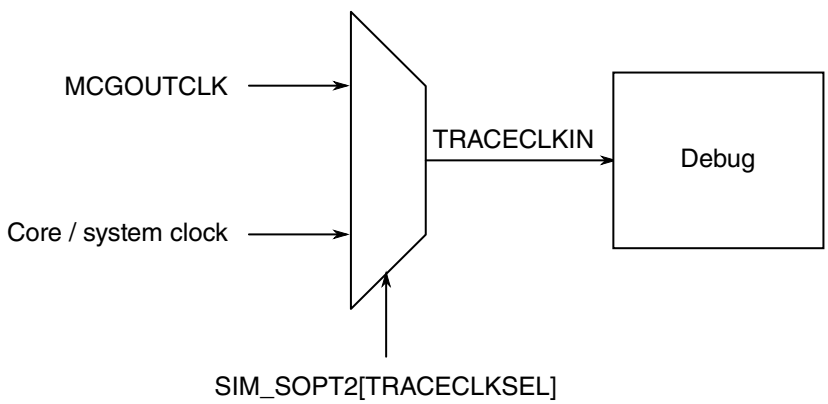


Figure 6-3. Trace clock generation

6.7.5 PORT digital filter clocking

The digital filters in can be clocked as shown in the following figure.

NOTE

In stop mode, the digital input filters are bypassed unless they are configured to run from the 1 kHz LPO clock source.

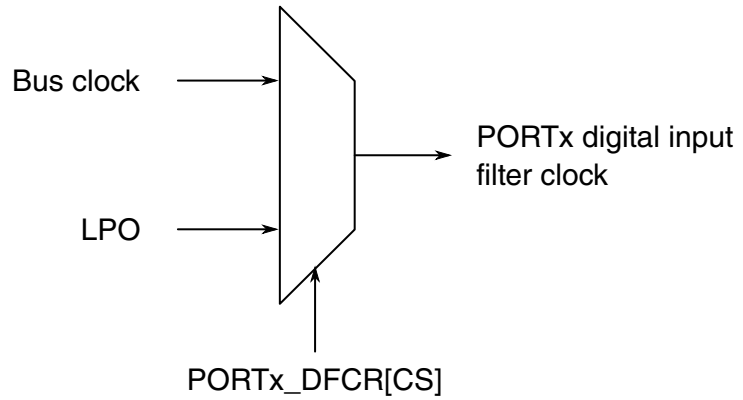


Figure 6-4. PORTx digital input filter clock generation

6.7.6 LPTMR clocking

The prescaler and glitch filters in each of the LPTMR*x* modules can be clocked as shown in the following figure.

NOTE

The chosen clock must remain enabled if the LPTMR*x* is to continue operating in all required low-power modes.

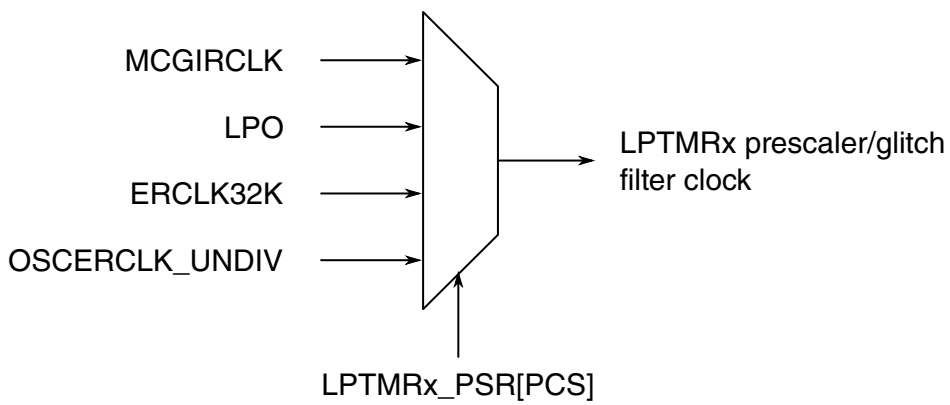


Figure 6-5. LPTMRx prescaler/glitch filter clock generation

6.7.7 RTC_CLKOUT and CLKOUT32K clocking

When the RTC is enabled, the RTC_CLKOUT signal can be configured to drive to an external pin via the associated pin muxing control, as shown below.

NOTE

RTC_CLKOUT is disabled in LLSx and VLLSx modes.

CLKOUT32K, controlled by SIM_SOPT1[OSC32KOUT], can also be driven on the pins where the RTC_CLKOUT signal is an option, overriding the existing pin mux configuration for that pin. The CLKOUT32K function is available in all modes of operation. In VLLS0 mode only the RTC oscillator is available.

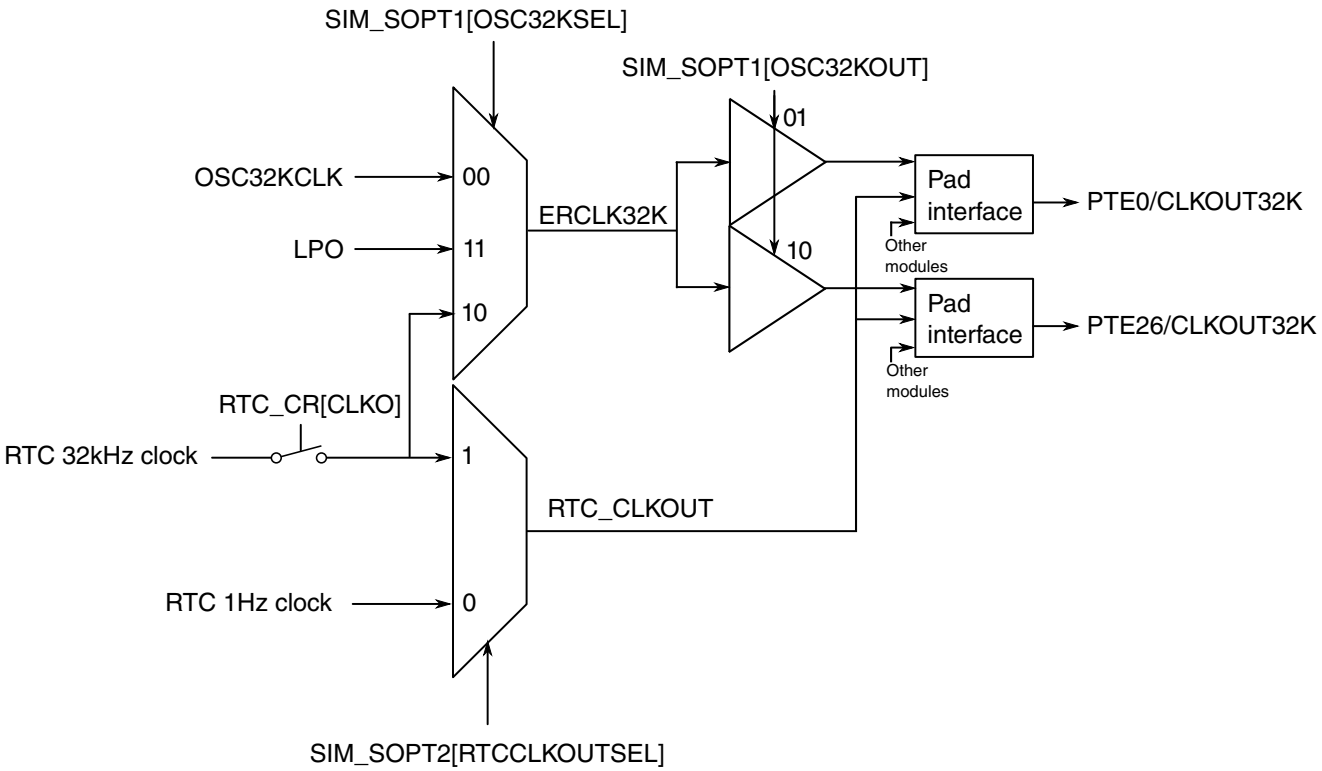


Figure 6-6. RTC_CLKOUT and CLKOUT32K generation

6.7.8 USB FS OTG Controller clocking

NOTE

For the USB FS OTG controller to operate, the minimum system clock frequency is 20 MHz.

The USB OTG controller also requires a 48 MHz clock. The clock source options are shown below.

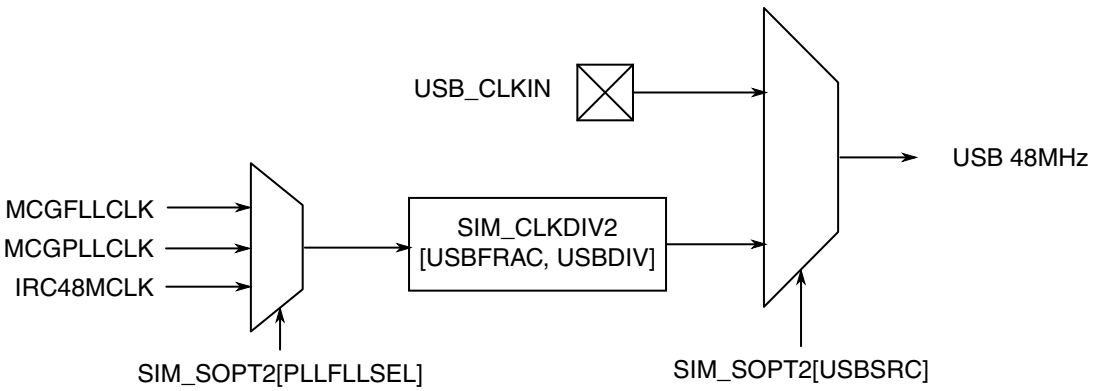


Figure 6-7. USB 48 MHz clock source

NOTE

The MCGFLLCLK does not meet the USB jitter specifications for certification. The IRC48MCLK is only usable as a USB clock source in USB Device operation with the USB Clock Recover function enabled.

6.7.9 UART clocking

UART0 and UART1 modules operate from the core/system clock, which provides higher performance level for these modules. All other UART modules operate from the bus clock.

6.7.10 LPUART0 clocking

The LPUART0 module has a selectable clock as shown in the following figure.

NOTE

The chosen clock must remain enabled if the LPUART0 is to continue operating in all required low-power modes.

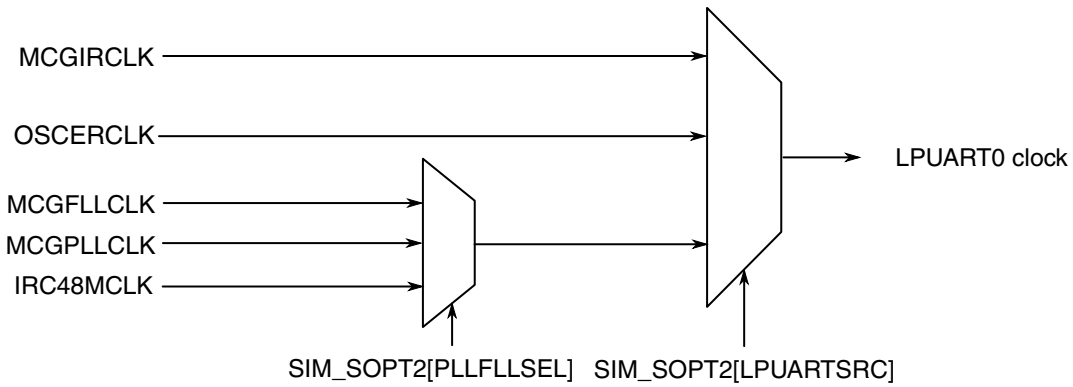


Figure 6-8. LPUART0 clock generation

6.7.11 I²S/SAI clocking

The audio master clock (MCLK) is used to generate the bit clock when the receiver or transmitter is configured for an internally generated bit clock. The audio master clock can also be output to or input from a pin. The transmitter and receiver have the same audio master clock inputs.

Each SAI peripheral can control the input clock selection, pin direction and divide ratio of one audio master clock.

The I²S/SAI transmitter and receiver support asynchronous bit clocks (BCLKs) that can be generated internally from the audio master clock or supplied externally. The module also supports the option for synchronous operation between the receiver and transmitter product or between two separate I²S/SAI peripherals.

The transmitter and receiver can independently select between the bus clock and the audio master clocks to generate the bit clock.

The MCLK and BCLK source options appear in the following figure.

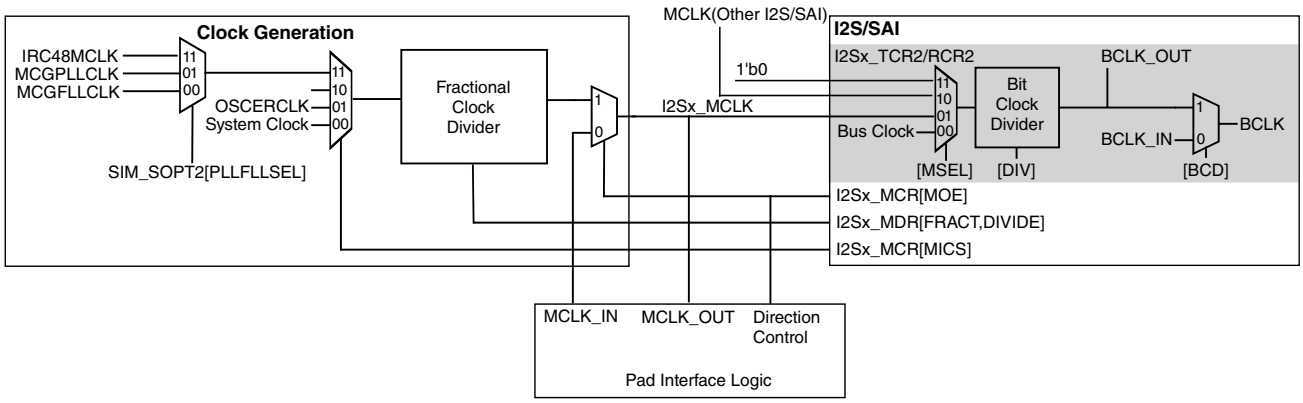


Figure 6-9. I²S/SAI clock generation

6.7.12 FlexIO clocking

The FlexIO timers and shifters have a selectable clock as shown in the following figure.

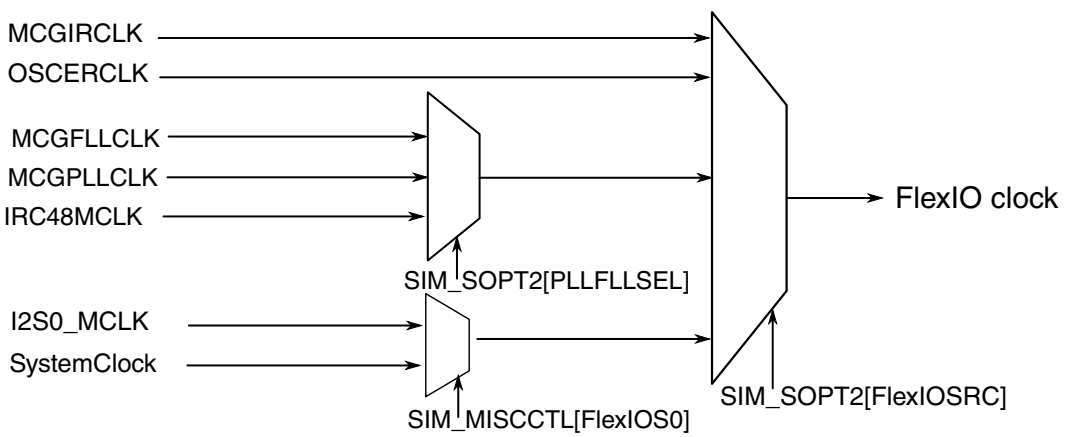


Figure 6-10. FlexIO clock generation

NOTE

The chosen clock must remain enabled if FlexIO is to continue operation in required low-power modes.

6.7.13 LPI2C clocking

Each LPI2C module has a selectable clock as shown in the following figure.

NOTE

The chosen clock must remain enabled if the LPI2C is to continue operating in all required low-power modes.

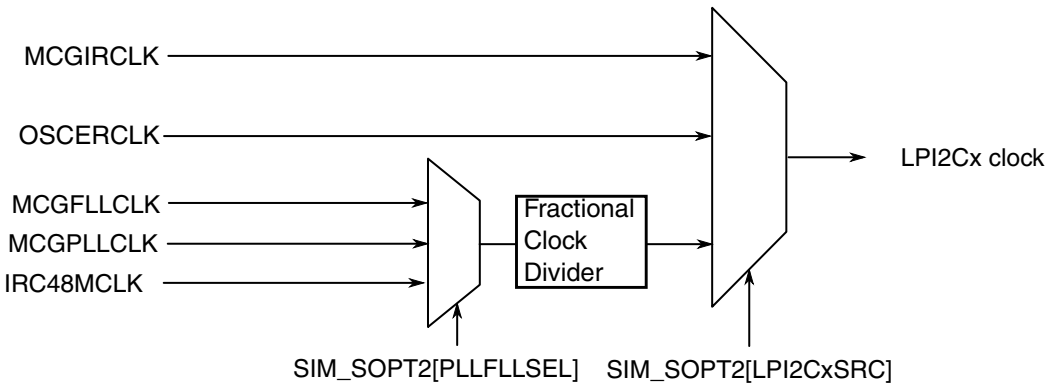


Figure 6-11. LPI2C clock generation

6.7.14 TPM clocking

The counter for the TPM modules have a selectable clock as shown in the following figure.

NOTE

The chosen clock must remain enabled if the TPM*x* is to continue operating in all required low-power modes.

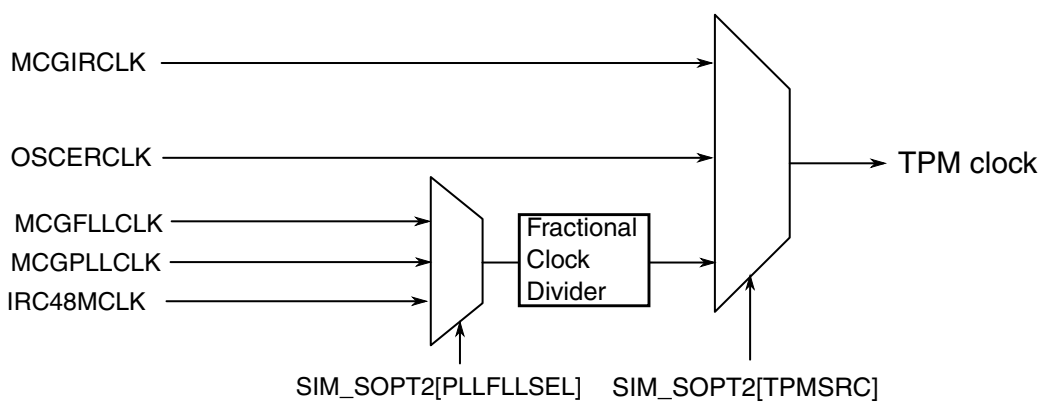


Figure 6-12. TPM clock generation

6.7.15 FlexCAN clocking

The clock for the FlexCAN's protocol engine can be selected as shown in the following figure.

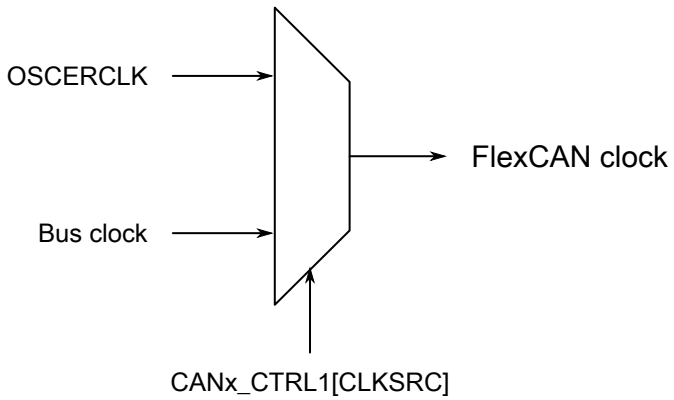


Figure 6-13. FlexCAN clock generation

Chapter 7
Reset and Boot

7.1 Introduction

The following reset sources are supported in this MCU:

Table 7-1. Reset sources

Reset sources	Description
POR reset	• Power-on reset (POR)
System resets	• External pin reset (PIN) • Low-voltage detect (LVD), and high-voltage detect (HVD) • Computer operating properly (COP) watchdog reset • Low leakage wakeup (LLWU) reset • Multipurpose clock generator loss of clock (LOC) reset • Multipurpose clock generator loss of lock (LOL) reset • Stop mode acknowledge error (SACKERR) • Software reset (SW) • Lockup reset (LOCKUP) • MDM DAP system reset
Debug reset	• JTAG reset • nTRST reset

Each of the system reset sources has an associated bit in the system reset status (SRS) registers. See the Reset Control Module for register details.

The MCU exits reset in functional mode where the CPU is executing code. See Boot options for more details.

7.2 Reset

This section discusses basic reset mechanisms and sources. Some modules that cause resets can be configured to cause interrupts instead. Consult the individual peripheral chapters for more information.

7.2.1 Power-on reset (POR)

When power is initially applied to the MCU or when the supply voltage drops below the power-on reset re-arm voltage level (V_{POR}), the POR circuit causes a POR reset condition.

As the supply voltage rises, the LVD circuit holds the MCU in reset until the supply has risen above the LVD low threshold (V_{LVDL}). The POR and LVD bits in SRS0 register are set following a POR.

7.2.2 System reset sources

Resetting the MCU provides a way to start processing from a known set of initial conditions. System reset begins with the on-chip regulator in full regulation and system clocking generation from an internal reference. When the processor exits reset, it performs the following:

- Reads the start SP (SP_main) from vector-table offset 0
- Reads the start PC from vector-table offset 4
- LR is set to 0xFFFF_FFFF

The on-chip peripheral modules are disabled and the non-analog I/O pins are initially configured as disabled. The pins with analog functions assigned to them default to their analog function after reset.

During and following a reset, the JTAG pins have their associated input pins configured as:

- TDI in pull-up (PU)
- TCK in pull-down (PD)
- TMS in PU

and associated output pin configured as:

- TDO with no pull-down or pull-up

Note that the nTRST signal is initially configured as disabled, however once configured to its JTAG functionality its associated input pin is configured as:

- nTRST in PU

7.2.2.1 External pin reset (PIN)

On this device, $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ is a dedicated pin. This pin is open drain and has an internal pullup device. Asserting $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ wakes the device from any mode. During a pin reset, the RCM's SRS0[PIN] bit is set.

7.2.2.1.1 $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin filter

The $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin filter supports filtering from both the 1 kHz LPO clock and the bus clock. RCM_RPFC[RSTFLTSS], RCM_RPFC[RSTFLTSRW], and RCM_RPFW[RSTFLTSEL] control this functionality; see the RCM chapter. The filters are asynchronously reset by Chip POR. The reset value for each filter assumes the $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin is negated.

For all stop modes where LPO clock is still active (Stop, VLPS, LLS, VLLS3, VLLS2, and VLLS1), the only filtering option is the LPO-based digital filter. The filtering logic either switches to bypass operation or has continued filtering operation depending on the filtering mode selected. When entering VLLS0, the $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin filter is disabled and bypassed.

The LPO filter has a fixed filter value of 3. Due to a synchronizer on the input data, there is also some associated latency (2 cycles). As a result, 5 cycles are required to complete a transition from low to high or high to low.

7.2.2.2 Low-voltage detect (LVD), and high-voltage detect (HVD)

The chip includes a system for managing low voltage conditions to protect memory contents and control MCU system states during supply voltage variations. The system consists of a power-on reset (POR) circuit and an LVD circuit with a user-selectable trip voltage. The LVD system is always enabled in hsrun, normal run, wait, or stop mode. The LVD system is disabled when entering VLPx, LLS, or VLLSx modes.

The LVD can be configured to generate a reset upon detection of a low voltage condition by setting the PMC's LVDSC1[LVDRE] bit to 1. The low voltage detection threshold is determined by the PMC's LVDSC1[LVDV] field. After an LVD reset has occurred, the LVD system holds the MCU in reset until the supply voltage has risen above the low voltage detection threshold. The RCM's SRS0[LVD] bit is set following either an LVD reset or POR.

The HVD function is quite similar to the LVD, and shares the same RCM status bitfield (RCM_SRS[LVD]). For more details, see HVD reset operation.

7.2.2.3 Computer operating properly (COP) watchdog timer

The computer operating properly (COP) watchdog timer (WDOG) monitors the operation of the system by expecting periodic communication from the software. This communication is generally known as servicing (or refreshing) the COP watchdog. If this periodic refreshing does not occur, the watchdog issues a system reset. The COP reset causes the RCM's SRS0[WDOG] bit to set.

7.2.2.4 Low leakage wakeup (LLWU)

The LLWU module provides the means for a number of external pins, the $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin, and a number of internal peripherals to wake the MCU from low leakage power modes. The LLWU module is functional only in low leakage power modes.

- In LLS mode, only the $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin via the LLWU can generate a system reset.
- In VLLSx modes, all enabled inputs to the LLWU can generate a system reset.

After a system reset, the LLWU retains the flags indicating the input source of the last wakeup until the user clears them.

NOTE

Some flags are cleared in the LLWU and some flags are required to be cleared in the peripheral module. Refer to the individual peripheral chapters for more information.

7.2.2.5 Multipurpose clock generator loss-of-clock (LOC)

The MCG module supports an external reference clock.

If the C6[CME] bit in the MCG module is set, the clock monitor is enabled. If the external reference falls below f_{loc_low} or f_{loc_high}, as controlled by the C2[RANGE] field in the MCG module, the MCU resets. The RCM's SRS0[LOC] bit is set to indicate this reset source.

NOTE

To prevent unexpected loss of clock reset events, all clock monitors should be disabled before entering any low power modes, including VLPR and VLPW.

7.2.2.6 MCG loss-of-lock (LOL) reset

The MCG includes a PLL loss-of-lock detector. The detector is enabled when configured for PEE and lock has been achieved. If the MCG_C8[LOLRE] bit in the MCG module is set and the PLL lock status bit (MCG_S[LOLS0]) becomes set, the MCU resets. The RCM_SRS0[LOL] bit is set to indicate this reset source.

NOTE

This reset source does not cause a reset if the chip is in any stop mode.

7.2.2.7 Stop mode acknowledge error (SACKERR)

This reset is generated if the core attempts to enter stop mode, but not all modules acknowledge stop mode within 1025 cycles of the 1 kHz LPO clock.

A module might not acknowledge the entry to stop mode if an error condition occurs. The error can be caused by a failure of an external clock input to a module.

7.2.2.8 Software reset (SW)

The SYSRESETREQ bit in the NVIC application interrupt and reset control register can be set to force a software reset on the device. (See ARM's NVIC documentation for the full description of the register fields, especially the VECTKEY field requirements.) Setting SYSRESETREQ generates a software reset request. This reset forces a system reset of all major components except for the debug module. A software reset causes the RCM's SRS1[SW] bit to set.

7.2.2.9 Lockup reset (LOCKUP)

The LOCKUP gives immediate indication of seriously errant kernel software. This is the result of the core being locked because of an unrecoverable exception following the activation of the processor’s built in system state protection hardware.

The LOCKUP condition causes a system reset and also causes the RCM's SRS1[LOCKUP] bit to set.

7.2.2.10 MDM-AP system reset request

Set the system reset request bit in the MDM-AP control register to initiate a system reset. This is the primary method for resets via the JTAG/SWD interface. The system reset is held until this bit is cleared.

Set the core hold reset bit in the MDM-AP control register to hold the core in reset as the rest of the chip comes out of system reset.

7.2.3 MCU Resets

A variety of resets are generated by the MCU to reset different modules.

7.2.3.1 VBAT POR

The VBAT POR asserts on a VBAT POR reset source. It affects only the modules within the VBAT power domain: RTC and VBAT Register File. These modules are not affected by the other reset types.

7.2.3.2 POR Only

The POR Only reset asserts on the POR reset source only. It resets the PMC and System Register File.

The POR Only reset also causes all other reset types (except VBAT POR) to occur.

7.2.3.3 Chip POR not VLLS

The Chip POR not VLLS reset asserts on POR and LVD reset sources. It resets parts of the SMC and SIM. It also resets the LPTMR.

The Chip POR not VLLS reset also causes these resets to occur: Chip POR, Chip Reset not VLLS, and Chip Reset (including Early Chip Reset).

7.2.3.4 Chip POR

The Chip POR asserts on POR, LVD, and VLLS Wakeup reset sources. It resets the Reset Pin Filter registers and parts of the SIM and MCG.

The Chip POR also causes the Chip Reset (including Early Chip Reset) to occur.

7.2.3.5 Chip Reset not VLLS

The Chip Reset not VLLS reset asserts on all reset sources except a VLLS Wakeup that does not occur via the RESET_b pin. It resets parts of the SMC, LLWU, and other modules that remain powered during VLLS mode.

The Chip Reset not VLLS reset also causes the Chip Reset (including Early Chip Reset) to occur.

7.2.3.6 Early Chip Reset

The Early Chip Reset asserts on all reset sources. It resets only the flash memory module. It negates before flash memory initialization begins ("earlier" than when the Chip Reset negates).

7.2.3.7 Chip Reset

Chip Reset asserts on all reset sources and only negates after flash initialization has completed and the RESET_b pin has also negated. It resets the remaining modules (the modules not reset by other reset types).

7.2.4 Reset Pin

For all reset sources except a VLLS Wakeup that does not occur via the $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin, the $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin is driven low by the MCU for at least 128 bus clock cycles and until flash initialization has completed.

After flash initialization has completed, the $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin is released, and the internal Chip Reset negates after the $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin is pulled high. Keeping the $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin asserted externally delays the negation of the internal Chip Reset.

7.2.5 Debug resets

The following sections detail the debug resets available on the device.

7.2.5.1 JTAG reset

The JTAG module generate a system reset when certain IR codes are selected. This functional reset is asserted when EXTEST, HIGHZ and CLAMP instructions are active. The reset source from the JTAG module is released when any other IR code is selected. A JTAG reset causes the RCM's SRS1[JTAG] bit to set.

7.2.5.2 nTRST reset

The nTRST pin causes a reset of the JTAG logic when asserted. Asserting the nTRST pin allows the debugger to gain control of the TAP controller state machine (after exiting LLS or VLLSx) without resetting the state of the debug modules.

The nTRST pin does not cause a system reset.

7.2.5.3 Resetting the Debug subsystem

Use the CDBGRSTREQ bit within the SWJ-DP CTRL/STAT register to reset the debug modules. However, as explained below, using the CDBGRSTREQ bit does not reset all debug-related registers.

CDBGRSTREQ resets the debug-related registers within the following modules:

- SWJ-DP
- AHB-AP
- TPIU
- MDM-AP (MDM control and status registers)

CDBGRSTREQ does not reset the debug-related registers within the following modules:

- CM4 core (core debug registers: DHCSR, DCRSR, DCRDR, DEMCR)
- FPB
- DWT
- ITM
- NVIC
- Crossbar bus switch
- AHB-AP[1]
- Private peripheral bus[1]

1. CDBGRSTREQ does not affect AHB resources so that debug resources on the private peripheral bus are available during System Reset.

7.3 Boot

This section describes the boot sequence, including sources and options.

7.3.1 Boot sources

This device only supports booting from internal flash. Any secondary boot must go through an initialization sequence in flash.

7.3.2 Boot options

The device always exits reset in single chip functional mode with the CPU executing code.

7.3.3 FOPT boot options

The flash option register (FOPT) in the flash memory module allows the user to customize the operation of the MCU at boot time. The register contains read-only bits that are loaded from the NVM's option byte in the flash configuration field. The user can reprogram the option byte in flash to change the FOPT values that are used for subsequent resets. For more details on programming the option byte, refer to the flash memory chapter.

The MCU uses the FOPT register bits to configure the device at reset as shown in the following table.

NOTE

Reserved bits in the option byte should be left in their default erased state of logic 1. FOPT[7:0] = 0x00 is not a valid configuration. FOPT register is written to 0xFF if the contents of NVM's option byte in the flash configuration field is 0x00.

Table 7-2. Flash Option Register Bit Definitions

Bit Num	Field	Value	Definition
7-6	Reserved	Reserved for future expansion.	
5	FAST_INIT	Select initialization speed on POR, VLLSx, and any system reset.	

Table continues on the next page...

Table 7-2. Flash Option Register Bit Definitions (continued)

Bit Num	Field	Value	Definition
		0	Slower initialization. The Flash initialization will be slower with the benefit of reduced average current during this time. The duration of the recovery will be controlled by the clock divider selection determined by the LPBOOT setting.
		1	Fast Initialization.The Flash has faster recoveries at the expense of higher current during these times.
4-3	Reserved	Reserved for future expansion.	
2	NMI_DIS	Enable/disable control for the NMI function.	
		0	NMI interrupts are always blocked. The associated pin continues to default to NMI pin controls with internal pullup enabled.
		1	NMI pin/interrupts reset default to enabled.
1	Reserved	Reserved for future expansion.	
0	LPBOOT	Control the reset value of OUTDIVx values in SIM_CLKDIV1 register. Larger divide value selections produce lower average power consumption during POR, VLLSx recoveries and reset sequencing and after reset exit. The recovery times are also extended if the FAST_INIT option is not selected.	
		0	Low-power boot: OUTDIVx values in SIM_CLKDIV1 register are auto-configured at reset exit for higher divide values that produce lower power consumption at reset exit. • Core and system clock divider (OUTDIV1) and bus clock divider (OUTDIV2) are 0x7 (divide by 8) • Flash clock divider (OUTDIV4)is 0xF (divide by 16)
		1	Normal boot: OUTDIVx values in SIM_CLKDIV1 register are auto-configured at reset exit for higher frequency values that produce faster operating frequencies at reset exit. • Core and system clock divider (OUTDIV1) and bus clock divider (OUTDIV2) are 0x0 (divide by 1) • Flash clock divider (OUTDIV4)is 0x1 (divide by 2)

7.3.4 Boot sequence

At power up, the on-chip regulator holds the system in a POR state until the input supply is above the POR threshold. The system continues to be held in this static state until the internally regulated supplies have reached a safe operating voltage as determined by the LVD. The Mode Controller reset logic then controls a sequence to exit reset.

1. A system reset is held on internal logic, the $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin is driven out low, and the MCG is enabled in its default clocking mode.
2. Required clocks are enabled (Core Clock, System Clock, Flash Clock, and any Bus Clocks that do not have clock gate control reset to disabled).
3. The system reset on internal logic continues to be held, but the Flash Controller is released from reset and begins initialization operation while the Reset Control logic continues to drive the $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin out low.

4. Early in reset sequencing the NVM option byte is read and stored to the Flash Memory module's FOPT register. If the LPBOOT is programmed for an alternate clock divider reset value, the system/core clock is switched to a slower clock speed.
5. When Flash Initialization completes, the $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin is released. If $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ continues to be asserted (an indication of a slow rise time on the $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin or external drive in low), the system continues to be held in reset. Once the $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin is detected high, the Core clock is enabled and the system is released from reset.
6. When the system exits reset, the processor sets up the stack, program counter (PC), and link register (LR). The processor reads the start SP (SP_main) from vector-table offset 0. The core reads the start PC from vector-table offset 4. LR is set to 0xFFFF_FFFF. What happens next depends on the NMI input and the FOPT[NMI_DIS] field in the Flash Memory module:
   - If the NMI input is high or the NMI function is disabled in the NMI_DIS field, the CPU begins execution at the PC location.
   - If the NMI input is low and the NMI function is enabled in the NMI_DIS field, this results in an NMI interrupt. The processor executes an Exception Entry and reads the NMI interrupt handler address from vector-table offset 8. The CPU begins execution at the NMI interrupt handler.

Subsequent system resets follow this same reset flow.

Chapter 8
Power Management

8.1 Introduction

This chapter describes the various chip power modes and functionality of the individual modules in these modes.

8.2 Clocking modes

Information found here describes the various clocking modes supported on this device.

8.2.1 Partial Stop

Partial Stop is a clocking option that can be taken instead of entering Stop mode and is configured in the SMC Stop Control Register (SMC_STOPCTRL). The Stop mode is only partially entered, which leaves some additional functionality alive at the expense of higher power consumption. Partial Stop can be entered from either Run mode or VLP Run mode.

When configured for PSTOP2, only the core and system clocks are gated and the bus clock remains active. The bus masters and bus slaves clocked by the system clock enter Stop mode, but the bus slaves clocked by bus clock remain in Run (or VLP Run) mode. The clock generators in the MCG and the on-chip regulator in the PMC also remain in Run (or VLP Run) mode. Exit from PSTOP2 can be initiated by a reset, an asynchronous interrupt from a bus master or bus slave clocked by the system clock, or a synchronous interrupt from a bus slave clocked by the bus clock. If configured, a DMA request (using the asynchronous DMA wakeup) can also be used to exit Partial Stop for the duration of a DMA transfer before the device is transitioned back into PSTOP2.

When configured for PSTOP1, both the system clock and bus clock are gated. All bus masters and bus slaves enter Stop mode, but the clock generators in the MCG and the on-chip regulator in the PMC remain in Run (or VLP Run) mode. Exit from PSTOP1 can be initiated by a reset or an asynchronous interrupt from a bus master or bus slave. If configured, an asynchronous DMA request can also be used to exit Partial Stop for the duration of a DMA transfer before the device is transitioned back into PSTOP1.

PSTOP1 is functionally similar to Stop mode, but offers faster wake-up at the expense of higher power consumption. Another benefit is that it keeps all of the MCG clocks enabled, which can be useful for some of the asynchronous peripherals that can remain functional in Stop modes.

8.2.2 DMA Wakeup

The DMA can be configured to wake the device on a DMA request whenever it is placed in Stop mode. The wake-up is configured per DMA channel and is supported in Compute Operation, PSTOP, STOP, and VLPS low power modes.

When a DMA wake-up is detected in PSTOP, STOP or VLPS then the device will initiate a normal exit from the low power mode. This can include restoring the on-chip regulator and internal power switches, enabling the clock generators in the MCG, enabling the system and bus clocks (but not the core clock) and negating the stop mode signal to the bus masters and bus slaves. The only difference is that the CPU will remain in the low power mode with the CPU clock disabled.

During Compute Operation, a DMA wake-up will initiate a normal exit from Compute Operation. This includes enabling the clocks and negating the stop mode signal to the bus masters and bus slaves. The core clock always remains enabled during Compute Operation.

Since the DMA wakeup will enable the clocks and negate the stop mode signals to all bus masters and slaves, software needs to ensure that bus masters and slaves that are not involved with the DMA wake-up and transfer remain in a known state. That can be accomplished by disabling the modules before entry into the low power mode or by setting the Doze enable bit in selected modules.

Once the DMA request that initiated the wake-up negates and the DMA completes the current transfer, the device will transition back to the original low-power mode. This includes requesting all non-CPU bus masters to enter Stop mode and then requesting bus slaves to enter Stop mode. In STOP and VLPS modes, MCG and PMC would then also enter their appropriate modes.

NOTE

If the requested DMA transfer cannot cause the DMA request to negate, then the device will remain in a higher power state until the low power mode is fully exited.

An enabled DMA wake-up can cause an aborted entry into the low power mode, if the DMA request asserts during the stop mode entry sequence (or reentry if the request asserts during a DMA wakeup) and can cause the SMC to assert its Stop Abort flag. Once the DMA wake-up completes, entry into the low power mode will restart.

An interrupt that occurs during a DMA wake-up will cause an immediate exit from the low power mode (this is optional for Compute Operation) without impacting the DMA transfer.

A DMA wake-up can be generated by either a synchronous DMA request or an asynchronous DMA request. Not all peripherals can generate an asynchronous DMA request in stop modes, although in general if a peripheral can generate synchronous DMA requests and also supports asynchronous interrupts in stop modes, then it can generate an asynchronous DMA request.

8.2.3 Compute Operation

Compute Operation is an execution or compute-only mode of operation that keeps the CPU enabled with full access to the SRAM and Flash read port, but places all other bus masters and bus slaves into their stop mode. Compute Operation can be enabled in Run mode, HSRUN mode, or VLP Run mode.

NOTE

Do not enter any stop mode without first exiting Compute Operation.

Because Compute Operation reuses the stop mode logic (including the staged entry with bus masters disabled before bus slaves), any bus master or bus slave that can remain functional in stop mode also remains functional in Compute Operation, including generation of asynchronous interrupts and DMA requests. When enabling Compute Operation in Run mode, module functionality for bus masters and slaves is the equivalent of STOP mode. When enabling Compute Operation in VLP Run mode, module functionality for bus masters and slaves is the equivalent of VLPS mode. The MCG, PMC, SRAM and Flash read port are not affected by Compute Operation, although the Flash register interface is disabled.

During Compute Operation, the AIPS peripheral space is disabled and attempted accesses generate bus errors. The private peripheral bus (PPB) remains accessible during Compute Operation, including the MCM, System Control Space (SCS) (for NVIC), and SysTick. Although access to the GPIO registers is supported, the GPIO port data input registers do not return valid data since clocks are disabled to the Port Control and Interrupt modules. By writing to the GPIO port data output registers, it is possible to control those GPIO ports that are configured as output pins.

Compute Operation is controlled by the CPO register in the MCM, which is only accessible to the CPU. Setting or clearing the CPOREQ bit in the MCM initiates entry or exit into Compute Operation. Compute Operation can also be configured to exit automatically on detection of an interrupt, which is required in order to service most interrupts. Only the core system interrupts (exceptions, including NMI and SysTick) and any edge sensitive interrupts can be serviced without exiting Compute Operation.

When entering Compute Operation, the CPOACK status bit indicates when entry has completed. When exiting Compute Operation in Run mode, the CPOACK status bit negates immediately. When exiting Compute Operation in VLP Run mode, the exit is delayed to allow the PMC to handle the change in power consumption. This delay means the CPOACK bit is polled to determine when the AIPS peripheral space can be accessed without generating a bus error.

The DMA wakeup is also supported during Compute Operation and causes the CPOACK status bit to clear and the AIPS peripheral space to be accessible for the duration of the DMA wakeup. At the completion of the DMA wakeup, the device transitions back into Compute Operation.

8.2.4 Peripheral Doze

Several peripherals support a Peripheral Doze mode, where a register bit can be used to disable the peripheral for the duration of a low-power mode. The flash memory can also be placed in a low-power state during Peripheral Doze via a register bit in the SIM.

Peripheral Doze is defined to include all of the modes of operation listed below.

- The CPU is in Wait mode.
- The CPU is in Stop mode, including the entry sequence and for the duration of a DMA wakeup.
- The CPU is in Compute Operation, including the entry sequence and for the duration of a DMA wakeup.

Peripheral Doze can therefore be used to disable selected bus masters or slaves for the duration of WAIT or VLPW mode. It can also be used to disable selected bus slaves immediately on entry into any stop mode (or Compute Operation), instead of waiting for the bus masters to acknowledge the entry as part of the stop entry sequence. Finally, it can be used to disable selected bus masters or slaves that should remain inactive during a DMA wakeup.

If the flash memory is not being accessed during WAIT and PSTOP modes, then the Flash Doze mode can be used to reduce power consumption, at the expense of a slightly longer wake-up when executing code and vectors from flash. It can also be used to reduce power consumption during Compute Operation when executing code and vectors from SRAM.

8.2.5 Clock Gating

To conserve power, the clocks to most modules can be turned off using the SCGCx registers in the SIM module. These bits are cleared after any reset, which disables the clock to the corresponding module. Prior to initializing a module, set the corresponding bit in the SCGCx register to enable the clock. Before turning off the clock, make sure to disable the module. For more details, refer to the clock distribution and SIM chapters.

8.3 Power Modes Description

The power management controller (PMC) provides multiple power options to allow the user to optimize power consumption for the level of functionality needed.

Depending on the stop requirements of the user application, a variety of stop modes are available that provide state retention, partial power down or full power down of certain logic and/or memory. I/O states are held in all modes of operation. The following table compares the various power modes available.

For Run and VLPR mode there is a corresponding wait and stop mode. Wait modes are similar to ARM sleep modes. Stop modes (VLPS, STOP) are similar to ARM sleep deep mode. The very low power run (VLPR) operating mode can drastically reduce runtime power when the maximum bus frequency is not required to handle the application needs.

Stop mode entry is not supported directly from HSRUN and requires transition to Run prior to an attempt to enter a stop mode.

The three primary modes of operation are run, wait and stop. The WFI instruction invokes both wait and stop modes for the chip. The primary modes are augmented in a number of ways to provide lower power based on application needs.

Table 8-1. Chip power modes

Chip mode	Description	Core mode	Normal recovery method
Normal run	Default mode out of reset; on-chip voltage regulator is on.	Run	-
High Speed run	Allows maximum performance of chip. In this state, the MCU is able to operate at a faster frequency compared to normal run mode.	Run	-
Normal Wait - via WFI	Allows peripherals to function while the core is in sleep mode, reducing power. NVIC remains sensitive to interrupts; peripherals continue to be clocked.	Sleep	Interrupt
Normal Stop - via WFI	Places chip in static state. Lowest power mode that retains all registers while maintaining LVD protection. NVIC is disabled; AWIC is used to wake up from interrupt; peripheral clocks are stopped.	Sleep Deep	Interrupt
VLPR (Very Low Power Run)	On-chip voltage regulator is in a low power mode that supplies only enough power to run the chip at a reduced frequency. Reduced frequency Flash access mode (1 MHz); LVD off; internal oscillator provides a low power 4 MHz source for the core, the bus and the peripheral clocks.	Run	-
VLPW (Very Low Power Wait) -via WFI	Same as VLPR but with the core in sleep mode to further reduce power; NVIC remains sensitive to interrupts (FCLK = ON). On-chip voltage regulator is in a low power mode that supplies only enough power to run the chip at a reduced frequency.	Sleep	Interrupt
VLPS (Very Low Power Stop)-via WFI	Places chip in static state with LVD operation off. Lowest power mode with ADC and pin interrupts functional. Peripheral clocks are stopped, but LPTimer, RTC, CMP, DAC can be used. NVIC is disabled (FCLK = OFF); AWIC is used to wake up from interrupt. On-chip voltage regulator is in a low power mode that supplies only enough power to run the chip at a reduced frequency. All SRAM is operating (content retained and I/O states held).	Sleep Deep	Interrupt
LLS3 (Low Leakage Stop3)	State retention power mode. Most peripherals are in state retention mode (with clocks stopped), but LLWU, LPTimer, RTC, CMP, DAC can be used. NVIC is disabled; LLWU is used to wake up. **NOTE:** The LLWU interrupt must not be masked by the interrupt controller to avoid a scenario where the system does not fully exit stop mode on an LLS recovery. All SRAM is operating (content retained and I/O states held).	Sleep Deep	Wakeup Interrupt[1]
LLS2 (Low Leakage Stop2)	State retention power mode. Most peripherals are in state retention mode (with clocks stopped), but LLWU, LPTimer, RTC, CMP, DAC can be used. NVIC is disabled; LLWU is used to wake up. **NOTE:** The LLWU interrupt must not be masked by the interrupt controller to avoid a scenario where the system does not fully exit stop mode on an LLS recovery. A portion of SRAM_U remains powered on (content retained and I/O states held).	Sleep Deep	Wakeup Interrupt[1]
VLLS3 (Very Low Leakage Stop3)	Most peripherals are disabled (with clocks stopped), but LLWU, LPTimer, RTC, CMP, DAC can be used. NVIC is disabled; LLWU is used to wake up.	Sleep Deep	Wakeup Reset

Table continues on the next page...

Table 8-1. Chip power modes (continued)

Chip mode	Description	Core mode	Normal recovery method
	SRAM_U and SRAM_L remain powered on (content retained and I/O states held).		
VLLS2 (Very Low Leakage Stop2)	Most peripherals are disabled (with clocks stopped), but LLWU, LPTimer, RTC, CMP, DAC can be used. NVIC is disabled; LLWU is used to wake up. SRAM_L is powered off. A portion of SRAM_U remains powered on (content retained and I/O states held).	Sleep Deep	Wakeup Reset[2]
VLLS1 (Very Low Leakage Stop1)	Most peripherals are disabled (with clocks stopped), but LLWU, LPTimer, RTC, CMP, DAC can be used. NVIC is disabled; LLWU is used to wake up. All of SRAM_U and SRAM_L are powered off. The 32-byte system register file and 32-byte VBAT register file remain powered for customer-critical data.	Sleep Deep	Wakeup Reset[2]
VLLS0 (Very Low Leakage Stop 0)	Most peripherals are disabled (with clocks stopped), but LLWU and RTC can be used. NVIC is disabled; LLWU is used to wake up. All of SRAM_U and SRAM_L are powered off. The 32-byte system register file and 32-byte VBAT register file remain powered for customer-critical data. The POR detect circuit can be optionally powered off.	Sleep Deep	Wakeup Reset[2]
BAT (backup battery only)	The chip is powered down except for the VBAT supply. The RTC and the 32-byte VBAT register file for customer-critical data remain powered.	Off	Power-up Sequence

1. Resumes normal run mode operation by executing the LLWU interrupt service routine.
2. Follows the reset flow with the LLWU interrupt flag set for the NVIC.

8.4 Entering and exiting power modes

The WFI instruction invokes wait and stop modes for the chip. The processor exits the low-power mode via an interrupt. The Nested Vectored Interrupt Controller (NVIC) describes interrupt operation and what peripherals can cause interrupts.

NOTE

The WFE instruction can have the side effect of entering a low-power mode, but that is not its intended usage. See ARM documentation for more on the WFE instruction.

Recovery from VLLSx is through the wake-up Reset event. The chip wake-ups from VLLSx by means of reset, an enabled pin or enabled module. See the table "LLWU inputs" in the LLWU configuration section for a list of the sources.

The wake-up flow from VLLSx is through reset. The wakeup bit in the SRS registers in the RCM is set indicating that the chip is recovering from a low power mode. Code execution begins; however, the I/O pins are held in their pre low power mode entry states, and the system oscillator and MCG registers are reset (even if EREFSTEN had been set before entering VLLSx). Software must clear this hold by writing a 1 to the ACKISO bit in the Regulator Status and Control Register in the PMC module.

NOTE

To avoid unwanted transitions on the pins, software must re-initialize the I/O pins to their pre-low-power mode entry states *before* releasing the hold.

If the oscillator was configured to continue running during VLLSx modes, it must be re-configured before the ACKISO bit is cleared. The oscillator configuration within the MCG is cleared after VLLSx recovery and the oscillator will stop when ACKISO is cleared unless the register is re-configured.

8.5 Power mode transitions

The following figure shows the power mode transitions. Any reset always brings the chip back to the normal run state. In run, wait, and stop modes active power regulation is enabled. The VLPx modes offer a lower power operating mode than normal modes. VLPR and VLPW are limited in frequency. The LLS and VLLSx mode(s) are the lowest power stop modes based on amount of logic or memory that is required to be retained by the application.

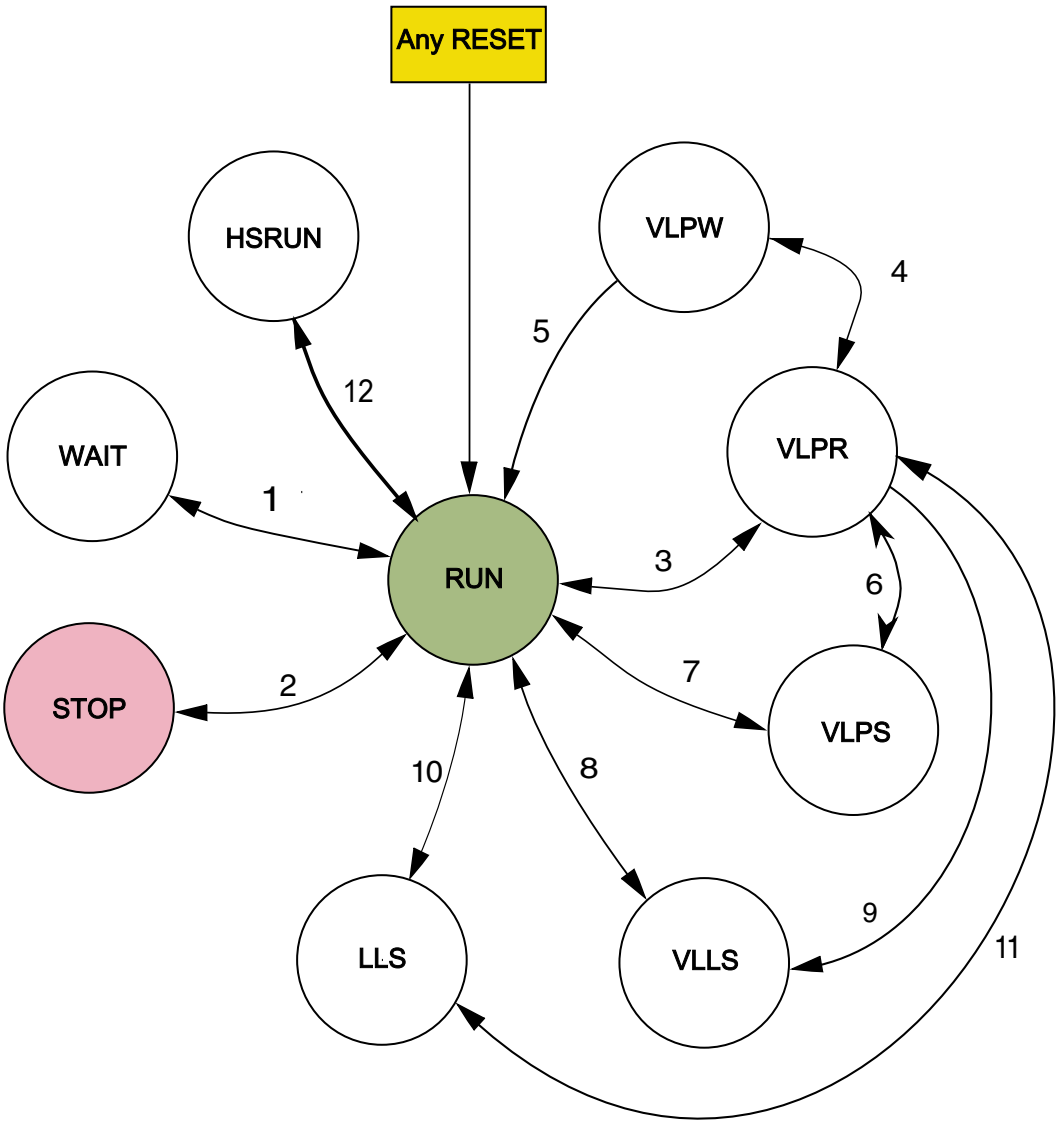


Figure 8-1. Power mode state transition diagram

8.6 Power modes shutdown sequencing

When entering stop or other low-power modes, the clocks are shut off in an orderly sequence to safely place the chip in the targeted low-power state. All low-power entry sequences are initiated by the core executing an WFI instruction. The ARM core's outputs, SLEEPDEEP and SLEEPING, trigger entry to the various low-power modes:

- System level wait and VLPW modes equate to: SLEEPING & $\overline{\text{SLEEPDEEP}}$
- All other low power modes equate to: SLEEPING & SLEEPDEEP

When entering the non-wait modes, the chip performs the following sequence:

- Shuts off Core Clock and System Clock to the ARM Cortex-M4 core immediately.
- Polls stop acknowledge indications from the non-core crossbar masters (DMA), supporting peripherals (SPI, PIT, RNG) and the Flash Controller for indications that System Clocks, Bus Clock and/or Flash Clock need to be left enabled to complete a previously initiated operation, effectively stalling entry to the targeted low power mode. When all acknowledges are detected, System Clock, Bus Clock and Flash Clock are turned off at the same time.
- MCG and Mode Controller shut off clock sources and/or the internal supplies driven from the on-chip regulator as defined for the targeted low power mode.

In wait modes, most of the system clocks are not affected by the low power mode entry. The Core Clock to the ARM Cortex-M4 core is shut off. Some modules support stop-in-wait functionality and have their clocks disabled under these configurations.

The debugger modules support a transition from stop, wait, VLPS, and VLPW back to a halted state when the debugger is enabled. This transition is initiated by setting the Debug Request bit in MDM-AP control register. As part of this transition, system clocking is re-established and is equivalent to normal run/VLPR mode clocking configuration.

8.7 Flash Program Restrictions

The flash memory on this device should not be programmed or erased while operating in High Speed Run or VLPR power modes.

8.8 Module Operation in Low Power Modes

The following table illustrates the functionality of each module while the chip is in each of the low power modes. The standard behavior is shown with some exceptions for Compute Operation (CPO) and Partial Stop2 (PSTOP2).

(Debug modules are discussed separately; see Debug in Low Power Modes.) Number ratings (such as 2 MHz and 1 Mbit/s) represent the maximum frequencies or maximum data rates per mode. Also, these terms are used:

- FF = Full functionality. In VLPR and VLPW the system frequency is limited, but if a module does not have a limitation in its functionality, it is still listed as FF.
- Async operation = Fully functional with alternate clock source, provided the selected clock source remains enabled
- static = Module register states and associated memories are retained.
- powered = Memory is powered to retain contents.
- low power = Memory is powered to retain contents in a lower power state

- OFF = Modules are powered off; module is in reset state upon wakeup. For clocks, OFF means disabled.
- wakeup = Modules can serve as a wakeup source for the chip.

Table 8-2. Module operation in low power modes

Modules	VLPR	VLPW	Stop	VLPS	LLSx	VLLSx
Core modules						
NVIC	FF	FF	static	static	static	OFF
System modules						
Mode Controller	FF	FF	FF	FF	FF	FF
LLWU[1]	static	static	static	static	FF	FF[2]
Regulator	low power	low power	ON	low power	low power	low power in VLLS2/3, OFF in VLLS0/1
LVD	disabled	disabled	ON	disabled	disabled	disabled
Brown-out Detection	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON in VLLS1/2/3, optionally disabled in VLLS0[3]
DMA	FF Async operation in CPO	FF	Async operation	Async operation	static	OFF
Watchdog	FF	FF	FF	FF	static	OFF
EWM	FF static in CPO	static	static FF in PSTOP2	static	static	OFF
Clocks						
1kHz LPO	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON in VLLS1/2/3, OFF in VLLS0
System oscillator (OSC)	OSCERCLK max of 16 MHz crystal	OSCERCLK max of 16 MHz crystal	OSCERCLK optional	OSCERCLK max of 16 MHz crystal	limited to low range/low power	limited to low range/low power in VLLS1/2/3, OFF in VLLS0
MCG	4 MHz IRC	4 MHz IRC	static - MCGIRCLK optional ; PLL optionally on but gated	static - MCGIRCLK optional (4 MHz IRC only).	static - no clock output	OFF
Core clock	4 MHz max	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
Platform clock	4 MHz max	4 MHz max	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
System clock	4 MHz max OFF in CPO	4 MHz max	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
Bus clock	4 MHz max OFF in CPO	4 MHz max	OFF MHz max in PSTOP2 from RUN	OFF	OFF	OFF

Table continues on the next page...

Table 8-2. Module operation in low power modes (continued)

Modules	VLPR	VLPW	Stop	VLPS	LLSx	VLLSx
			4 MHz max in PSTOP2 from VLPR			
Memory and memory interfaces						
Flash	1 MHz max access - no program/erase No register access in CPO	low power	low power	low power	OFF	OFF
System RAM (SRAM_U and SRAM_L)	low power	low power	low power	low power	low power in LLS3, partial in LLS2	low power in VLLS3, partial in VLLS2; otherwise OFF
VBAT Register file	powered	powered	powered	powered	powered	powered
System Register files	powered	powered	powered	powered	powered	powered
Communication interfaces						
USB FS/LS	static, wakeup on resume	static, wakeup on resume	static, wakeup on resume	static, wakeup on resume	static	OFF
UART0, UART1	250 kbit/s static, wakeup on edge in CPO	250 kbit/s	static, wakeup on edge	static, wakeup on edge	static	OFF
UART2	250kbit/s static, wakeup on edge in CPO	250 kbit/s	static, wakeup on edge FF in PSTOP2	static, wakeup on edge	static	OFF
LPUART0	4 Mbps Async operation in CPO	4 Mbps	Async operation FF in PSTOP2	Async operation	static	OFF
SPI	1 Mbit/s (slave) 2 Mbit/s (master) static in CPO	1 Mbit/s (slave) 2 Mbit/s (master)	static FF in PSTOP2	static	static	OFF
LPI2C	400 kbit/s FF, Async operation in CPO	400 kbit/s FF	Async operation	Async operation	static	OFF
CAN	500 kbit/s wakeup in CPO	500 kbit/s	wakeup FF in PSTOP2	wakeup	static	OFF
I^2S	FF Async operation in CPO	FF	Async operation with external clock FF in PSTOP2	FF with external clock[5]	static	OFF
FlexIO	FF	FF	Async operation	Async operation	static	OFF

Table continues on the next page...

Table 8-2. Module operation in low power modes (continued)

Modules	VLPR	VLPW	Stop	VLPS	LLSx	VLLSx
			FF in PSTOP2			
Security						
CRC	FF static in CPO	FF	static	static	static	OFF
RNG	FF static in CPO	FF static in CPO	static	static	static	OFF
Timers						
TPM	FF	FF	Async operation FF in PSTOP2	Async operation	static	OFF
PIT	FF static in CPO	FF	static FF in PSTOP2	static	static	OFF
PDB	FF static in CPO	FF	static FF in PSTOP2	static	static	OFF
LPTMR	FF	FF	Async operation FF in PSTOP2	Async operation	Async operation	Async operation[6]
RTC - 32kHz OSC[4]	FF Async operation in CPO	FF	Async operation FF in PSTOP2	Async operation	Async operation	Async operation[7]
Analog						
16-bit ADC	FF ADACK and ALTCLK clocks only in CPO	FF	ADACK, ALTCLK, and ALTCLK2 clocks only FF in PSTOP2	ADACK and ALTCLK clocks only	static	OFF
CMP[8]	FF HS or LS compare in CPO	FF	HS or LS compare FF in PSTOP2	HS or LS compare	LS compare	LS compare in VLLS1/2/3, OFF in VLLS0
6-bit DAC	FF static in CPO	FF	static FF in PSTOP2	static	static	static, OFF in VLLS0
12-bit DAC	FF static in CPO	FF	static FF in PSTOP2	static	static	static
Human-machine interfaces						
GPIO	FF GPIO write only in CPO	FF	static output, wakeup input FF in PSTOP2	static output, wakeup input	static, pins latched	OFF, pins latched

1. Using the LLWU module, the external pins available for this chip do not require the associated peripheral function to be enabled. It only requires the function controlling the pin (GPIO or peripheral) to be configured as an input to allow a transition to occur to the LLWU.
2. Since LPO clock source is disabled, filters will be bypassed during VLLS0
3. The SMC_STOPCTRL[PORPO] bit in the SMC module controls this option.
4. These components remain powered in BAT power mode.
5. Use an externally generated bit clock or an externally generated audio master clock (including EXTAL).
6. System OSC and LPO clock sources are not available in VLLS0. Pulse counting is available in all modes.

7. RTC_CLKOUT is not available. CLKOUT32K can be configured as an alternate path of supplying 32 kHz.
8. CMP in stop or VLPS supports high speed or low speed external pin to pin or external pin to DAC compares. CMP in LLSx or VLLSx only supports low speed external pin to pin or external pin to DAC compares. Windowed, sampled & filtered modes of operation are not available while in stop, VLPS, LLSx, or VLLSx modes.

Chapter 9
Security

9.1 Introduction

This device implements security based on the mode selected from the flash module. The following sections provide an overview of flash security and details the effects of security on non-flash modules.

9.2 Flash Security

The flash module provides security information to the MCU based on the state held by the FSEC[SEC] bits. The MCU, in turn, confirms the security request and limits access to flash resources. During reset, the flash module initializes the FSEC register using data read from the security byte of the flash configuration field.

NOTE

The security features apply only to external accesses via debug. CPU accesses to the flash are not affected by the status of FSEC.

In the unsecured state all flash commands are available to the programming interfaces (JTAG), as well as user code execution of Flash Controller commands. When the flash is secured (FSEC[SEC] = 00, 01, or 11), programmer interfaces are only allowed to launch mass erase operations and have no access to memory locations.

Further information regarding the flash security options and enabling/disabling flash security is available in the Flash Memory Module.

9.3 Security Interactions with other Modules

The flash security settings are used by the SoC to determine what resources are available. The following sections describe the interactions between modules and the flash security settings or the impact that the flash security has on non-flash modules.

9.3.1 Security Interactions with Debug

When flash security is active the JTAG port cannot access the memory resources of the MCU. Boundary scan chain operations work, but debugging capabilities are disabled so that the debug port cannot read flash contents.

Although most debug functions are disabled, the debugger can write to the Flash Mass Erase in Progress bit in the MDM-AP Control register to trigger a mass erase (Erase All Blocks) command. A mass erase via the debugger is allowed even when some memory locations are protected.

When mass erase is disabled, mass erase via the debugger is blocked.

Chapter 10
Debug

10.1 Introduction

This device's debug is based on the ARM coresight architecture and is configured in each device to provide the maximum flexibility as allowed by the restrictions of the pinout and other available resources.

Four debug interfaces are supported:

- IEEE 1149.1 JTAG
- IEEE 1149.7 JTAG (cJTAG)
- Serial Wire Debug (SWD)
- ARM Real-Time Trace Interface

The basic Cortex-M4 debug architecture is very flexible. The following diagram shows the topology of the core debug architecture and its components.

Figure 10-1. Cortex-M4 Debug Topology

The following table presents a brief description of each one of the debug components.

Table 10-1. Debug Components Description

Module	Description
SWJ-DP	Modified Debug Port with support for SWD, JTAG
AHB-AP	AHB Master Interface from JTAG to debug module and SOC system memory maps
MDM-AP	Provides centralized control and status registers for an external debugger to control the device.
ROM Table	Identifies which debug IP is available.
Core Debug	Singlestep, Register Access, Run, Core Status
ITM	S/W Instrumentation Messaging + Simple Data Trace Messaging + Watchpoint Messaging
DWT (Data and Address Watchpoints)	4 data and address watchpoints

Table continues on the next page...

Table 10-1. Debug Components Description (continued)

Module	Description
FPB (Flash Patch and Breakpoints)	The FPB implements hardware breakpoints and patches code and data from code space to system space. The FPB unit contains two literal comparators for matching against literal loads from Code space, and remapping to a corresponding area in System space. The FPB also contains six instruction comparators for matching against instruction fetches from Code space, and remapping to a corresponding area in System space. Alternatively, the six instruction comparators can individually configure the comparators to return a Breakpoint Instruction (BKPT) to the processor core on a match, so providing hardware breakpoint capability.
TPIU (Trace Port Inteface Unit)	Asynchronous Mode (1-pin) = TRACE_SWO (available on JTAG_TDO)

10.1.1 References

For more information on ARM debug components, see these documents:

- ARMv7-M Architecture Reference Manual
- ARM Debug Interface v5.1
- ARM CoreSight Architecture Specification

10.2 The Debug Port

The configuration of the cJTAG module, JTAG controller, and debug port is illustrated in the following figure:

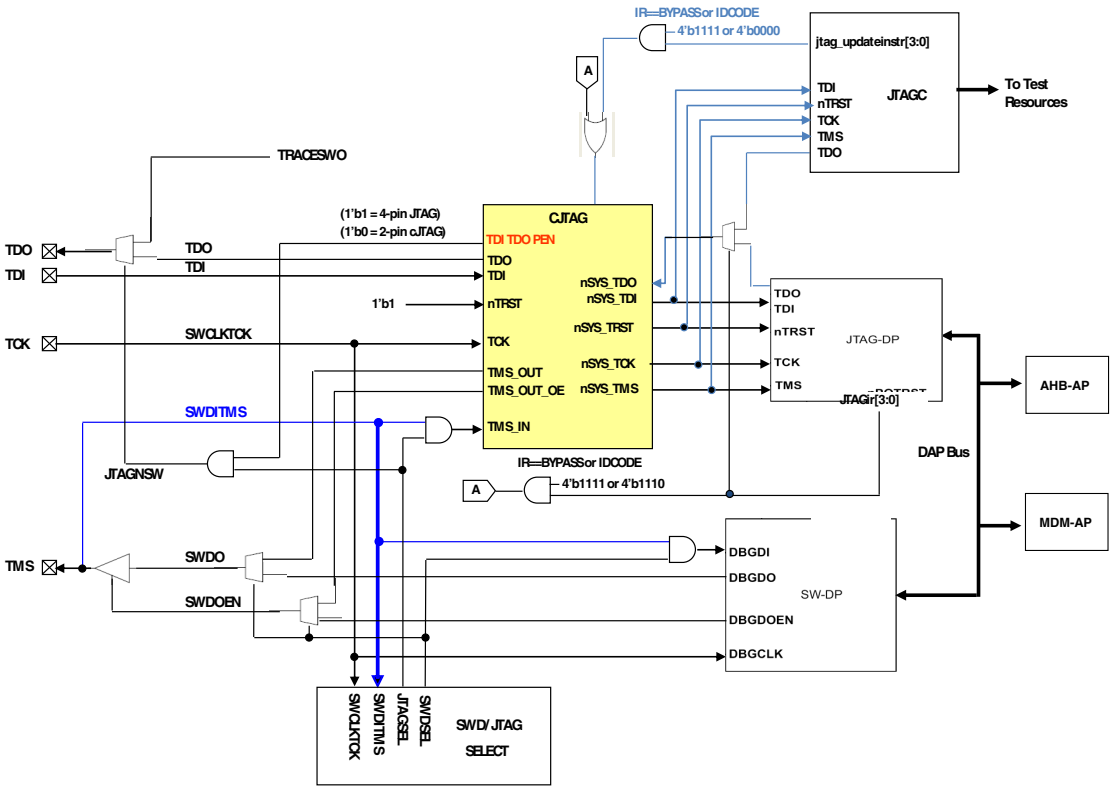


Figure 10-2. Modified Debug Port

The debug port comes out of reset in standard JTAG mode and is switched into either cJTAG or SWD mode by the following sequences. Once the mode has been changed, unused debug pins can be reassigned to any of their alternative muxed functions.

10.2.1 JTAG-to-SWD change sequence

1. Send more than 50 TCK cycles with TMS (SWDIO) =1
2. Send the 16-bit sequence on TMS (SWDIO) = 0111_1001_1110_0111 (MSB transmitted first)
3. Send more than 50 TCK cycles with TMS (SWDIO) =1

NOTE

See the ARM documentation for the CoreSight DAP Lite for restrictions.

10.2.2 JTAG-to-cJTAG change sequence

1. Reset the debug port

2. Set the control level to 2 via zero-bit scans
3. Execute the Store Format (STFMT) command (00011) to set the scan format register to 1149.7 scan format

10.3 Debug Port Pin Descriptions

The debug port pins default after POR to their JTAG functionality with the exception of JTAG_TRST_b and can be later reassigned to their alternate functionalities. In cJTAG and SWD modes JTAG_TDI and JTAG_TRST_b can be configured to alternate GPIO functions.

Table 10-2. Debug port pins

Pin Name	JTAG Debug Port		cJTAG Debug Port		SWD Debug Port		Internal Pull-up\Down
	Type	Description	Type	Description	Type	Description	
JTAG_TMS/ SWD_DIO	I	JTAG Test Mode Selection	I	cJTAG Data	I/O	Serial Wire Data	Pull-up
JTAG_TCLK/ SWD_CLK	I	JTAG Test Clock	I	cJTAG Clock	I	Serial Wire Clock	Pull-down
JTAG_TDI	I	JTAG Test Data Input	-	-	-	-	Pull-up
JTAG_TDO/ TRACE_SWO	O	JTAG Test Data Output	O	Trace output over a single pin	O	Trace output over a single pin	N/C
JTAG_TRST_b	I	JTAG Reset	I	cJTAG Reset	-	-	Pull-up

10.4 System TAP connection

The system JTAG controller is connected in parallel to the ARM TAP controller. The system JTAG controller IR codes overlay the ARM JTAG controller IR codes without conflict. Refer to the IR codes table for a list of the available IR codes. The output of the TAPs (TDO) are muxed based on the IR code which is selected. This design is fully JTAG compliant and appears to the JTAG chain as a single TAP. At power on reset, ARM's IDCODE (IR=4'b1110) is selected.

10.4.1 IR Codes

Table 10-3. JTAG Instructions

Instruction	Code[3:0]	Instruction Summary
IDCODE	0000	Selects device identification register for shift
SAMPLE/PRELOAD	0010	Selects boundary scan register for shifting, sampling, and preloading without disturbing functional operation
SAMPLE	0011	Selects boundary scan register for shifting and sampling without disturbing functional operation
EXTEST	0100	Selects boundary scan register while applying preloaded values to output pins and asserting functional reset
HIGHZ	1001	Selects bypass register while three-stating all output pins and asserting functional reset
CLAMP	1100	Selects bypass register while applying preloaded values to output pins and asserting functional reset
ARM_IDCODE	1110	ARM JTAG-DP Instruction
BYPASS	1111	Selects bypass register for data operations
Factory debug reserved	0101, 0110, 0111, 1101	Intended for factory debug only
ARM JTAG-DP Reserved	1000, 1010, 1011, 1110	These instructions will go the ARM JTAG-DP controller. Please look at ARM JTAG-DP documentation for more information on these instructions.
Reserved [3]	All other opcodes	Decoded to select bypass register

3. The manufacturer reserves the right to change the decoding of reserved instruction codes in the future

10.5 JTAG status and control registers

Through the ARM Debug Access Port (DAP), the debugger has access to the status and control elements, implemented as registers on the DAP bus as shown in the following figure. These registers provide additional control and status for low power mode recovery and typical run-control scenarios. The status register bits also provide a means for the debugger to get updated status of the core without having to initiate a bus transaction across the crossbar switch, thus remaining less intrusive during a debug session.

It is important to note that these DAP control and status registers are not memory mapped within the system memory map and are only accessible via the Debug Access Port (DAP) using JTAG, cJTAG, or SWD. The MDM-AP is accessible as Debug Access Port 1 with the available registers shown in the table below.

Table 10-4. MDM-AP Register Summary

Address	Register	Description
0x0100_0000	Status	See MDM-AP Status Register

Table continues on the next page...

Table 10-4. MDM-AP Register Summary (continued)

0x0100_0004	Control	See MDM-AP Control Register
0x0100_00FC	ID	Read-only identification register that always reads as 0x001C_0000

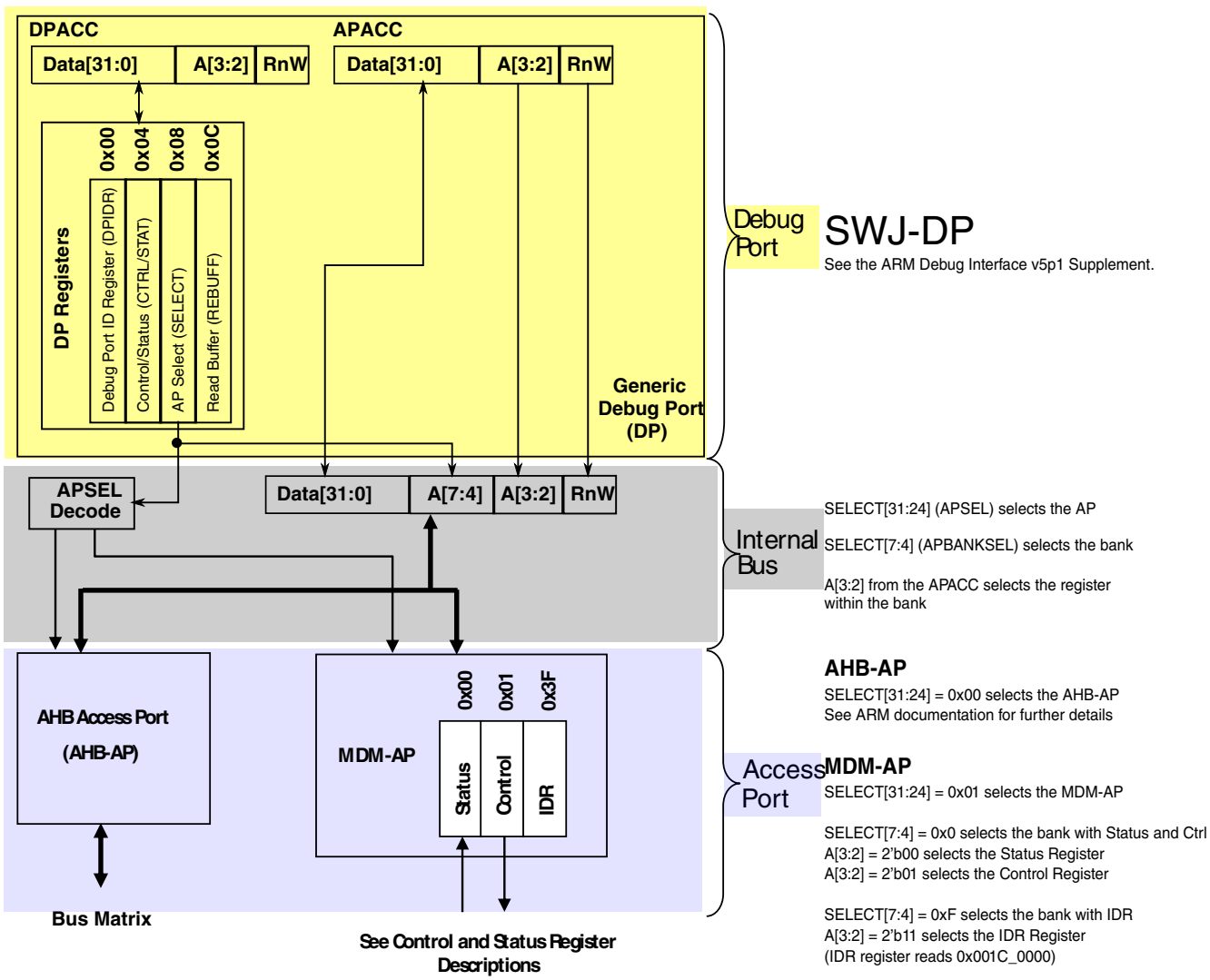


Figure 10-3. MDM AP Addressing

10.5.1 MDM-AP Control Register

Table 10-5. MDM-AP Control register assignments

Bit	Name	Secure[1]	Description
0	Flash Mass Erase in Progress	Y	Set to cause mass erase. Cleared by hardware after mass erase operation completes.

Table continues on the next page...

Table 10-5. MDM-AP Control register assignments (continued)

Bit	Name	Secure[1]	Description
			When mass erase is disabled (via MEEN settings), the erase request does not occur and the Flash Mass Erase in Progress bit continues to assert until the next system reset.
1	Debug Disable	N	Set to disable debug. Clear to allow debug operation. When set it overrides the C_DEBUGEN bit within the DHCSR and force disables Debug logic.
2	Debug Request	N	Set to force the Core to halt. If the Core is in a stop or wait mode, this bit can be used to wakeup the core and transition to a halted state.
3	System Reset Request	N	Set to force a system reset. The system remains held in reset until this bit is cleared.
4	Core Hold Reset	N	Configuration bit to control Core operation at the end of system reset sequencing. 0 Normal operation - release the Core from reset along with the rest of the system at the end of system reset sequencing. 1 Suspend operation - hold the Core in reset at the end of reset sequencing. Once the system enters this suspended state, clearing this control bit immediately releases the Core from reset and CPU operation begins.
5	VLLSx Debug Request (VLLDBGREQ)	N	Set to configure the system to be held in reset after the next recovery from a VLLSx mode. This bit holds the in reset when VLLSx modes are exited to allow the debugger time to re-initialize debug IP before the debug session continues. The Mode Controller captures this bit logic on entry to VLLSx modes. Upon exit from VLLSx modes, the Mode Controller will hold the in reset until VLLDBGACK is asserted. The VLLDBGREQ bit clears automatically due to the POR reset generated as part of the VLLSx recovery.
6	VLLSx Debug Acknowledge (VLLDBGACK)	N	Set to release a being held in reset following a VLLSx recovery This bit is used by the debugger to release the system reset when it is being held on VLLSx mode exit. The debugger re-initializes all debug IP and then assert this control bit to allow the Mode Controller to release the from reset and allow CPU operation to begin. The VLLDBGACK bit is cleared by the debugger or can be left set because it clears automatically due to the POR reset generated as part of the next VLLSx recovery.
7	LLS, VLLSx Status Acknowledge	N	Set this bit to acknowledge the DAP LLS and VLLS Status bits have been read. This acknowledge automatically clears the status bits. This bit is used by the debugger to clear the sticky LLS and VLLSx mode entry status bits. This bit is asserted and cleared by the debugger.

1. Command available in secure mode

10.5.2 MDM-AP Status Register

Table 10-6. MDM-AP Status register assignments

Bit	Name	Description
0	Flash Mass Erase Acknowledge	The Flash Mass Erase Acknowledge bit is cleared after POR or any debug reset. The bit is also cleared at launch of a mass erase command due to write of Flash Mass Erase in Progress bit in MDM AP Control Register. The Flash Mass Erase Acknowledge is set after Flash control logic has started the mass erase operation. When mass erase is disabled (via MEEN settings), an erase request due to seting of Flash Mass Erase in Progress bit is not acknowledged.
1	Flash Ready	Indicate Flash has been initialized and debugger can be configured even if system is continuing to be held in reset via the debugger.
2	System Security	Indicates the security state. When secure, the debugger does not have access to the system bus or any memory mapped peripherals. This bit indicates when the part is locked and no system bus access is possible.
3	System Reset	Indicates the system reset state. 0 System is in reset 1 System is not in reset
4	Reserved	
5	Mass Erase Enable	Indicates if the MCU can be mass erased or not 0 Mass erase is disabled 1 Mass erase is enabled
6	Backdoor Access Key Enable	Indicates if the MCU has the backdoor access key enabled. 0 Disabled 1 Enabled
7	LP Enabled	Decode of LPLLSM control bits to indicate that VLPS, LLS, or VLLSx are the selected power mode the next time the ARM Core enters Deep Sleep. 0 Low Power Stop Mode is not enabled 1 Low Power Stop Mode is enabled Usage intended for debug operation in which Run to VLPS is attempted. Per debug definition, the system actually enters the Stop state. A debugger should interpret deep sleep indication (with SLEEPDEEP and SLEEPING asserted), in conjuntion with this bit asserted as the debugger-VLPS status indication.
8	Very Low Power Mode	Indicates current power mode is VLPx. This bit is not ‘sticky’ and should always represent whether VLPx is enabled or not. This bit is used to throttle JTAG TCK frequency up/down.
9	LLS Mode Exit	This bit indicates an exit from LLS mode has occurred. The debugger will lose communication while the system is in LLS (including access to this register). Once communication is reestablished, this bit indicates that the system had been in LLS. Since the debug modules held their state during LLS, they do not need to be reconfigured. This bit is set during the LLS recovery sequence. The LLS Mode Exit bit is held until the debugger has had a chance to recognize that LLS was exited and is cleared by a write of 1 to the LLS, VLLSx Status Acknowledge bit in MDM AP Control register.

Table continues on the next page...

Table 10-6. MDM-AP Status register assignments (continued)

Bit	Name	Description
10	VLLSx Modes Exit	This bit indicates an exit from VLLSx mode has occurred. The debugger will lose communication while the system is in VLLSx (including access to this register). Once communication is reestablished, this bit indicates that the system had been in VLLSx. Since the debug modules lose their state during VLLSx modes, they need to be reconfigured. This bit is set during the VLLSx recovery sequence. The VLLSx Mode Exit bit is held until the debugger has had a chance to recognize that a VLLS mode was exited and is cleared by a write of 1 to the LLS, VLLSx Status Acknowledge bit in MDM AP Control register.
11 – 15	Reserved for future use	Always read 0.
16	Core Halted	Indicates the Core has entered debug halt mode
17	Core SLEEPDEEP	Indicates the Core has entered a low power mode
18	Core SLEEPING	SLEEPING==1 and SLEEPDEEP==0 indicates wait or VLPW mode. SLEEPING==1 and SLEEPDEEP==1 indicates stop or VLPS mode.
19 – 31	Reserved for future use	Always read 0.

10.6 Debug Resets

The debug system receives the following sources of reset:

- JTAG_TRST_b from an external signal. This signal is optional and may not be available in all packages.
- Debug reset (CDBGRSTREQ bit within the SWJ-DP CTRL/STAT register) in the TCLK domain that allows the debugger to reset the debug logic.
- TRST asserted via the cJTAG escape command.
- System POR reset

Conversely the debug system is capable of generating system reset using the following mechanism:

- A system reset in the DAP control register which allows the debugger to hold the system in reset.
- SYSRESETREQ bit in the NVIC application interrupt and reset control register
- A system reset in the DAP control register which allows the debugger to hold the Core in reset.

10.7 AHB-AP

AHB-AP provides the debugger access to all memory and registers in the system, including processor registers through the NVIC. System access is independent of the processor status. AHB-AP does not do back-to-back transactions on the bus, so all transactions are non-sequential. AHB-AP can perform unaligned and bit-band transactions. AHB-AP transactions bypass the FPB, so the FPB cannot remap AHB-AP transactions. SWJ/SW-DP-initiated transaction aborts drive an AHB-AP-supported sideband signal called HABORT. This signal is driven into the Bus Matrix, which resets the Bus Matrix state, so that AHB-AP can access the Private Peripheral Bus for last ditch debugging such as read/stop/reset the core. AHB-AP transactions are little endian.

For a short period at the start of a system reset event the system security status is being determined and debugger access to all AHB-AP transactions is blocked. The MDM-AP Status register is accessible and can be monitored to determine when this initial period is completed. After this initial period, if system reset is held via assertion of the RESET pin, the debugger has access via the bus matrix to the private peripheral bus to configure the debug IP even while system reset is asserted. While in system reset, access to other memory and register resources, accessed over the Crossbar Switch, is blocked.

10.8 ITM

The ITM is an application-driven trace source that supports printf style debugging to trace Operating System (OS) and application events, and emits diagnostic system information. The ITM emits trace information as packets. There are four sources that can generate packets. If multiple sources generate packets at the same time, the ITM arbitrates the order in which packets are output. The four sources in decreasing order of priority are:

1. Software trace -- Software can write directly to ITM stimulus registers. This emits packets.
2. Hardware trace -- The DWT generates these packets, and the ITM emits them.
3. Time stamping -- Timestamps are emitted relative to packets. The ITM contains a 21-bit counter to generate the timestamp. The Cortex-M4 clock or the bitclock rate of the Serial Wire Viewer (SWV) output clocks the counter.
4. Global system timestamping. Timestamps can optionally be generated using a system-wide 48-bit count value.

10.9 Core Trace Connectivity

The ITM can route its data to the TPIU. (See the MCM (Miscellaneous Control Module) for controlling the routing to the TPIU.) This configuration enables the use of trace with low cost tools while maintaining the compatibility with trace probes.

10.10 TPIU

The TPIU acts as a bridge between the on-chip trace data from the Instrumentation Trace Macrocell (ITM) to a data stream, encapsulating IDs where required, that is then captured by a Trace Port Analyzer (TPA). The TPIU is specially designed for low-cost debug.

10.11 DWT

The DWT is a unit that performs the following debug functionality:

- It contains four comparators that you can configure as a hardware watchpoint, a PC sampler event trigger, or a data address sampler event trigger. The first comparator, DWT_COMP0, can also compare against the clock cycle counter, CYCCNT. The second comparator, DWT_COMP1, can also be used as a data comparator.
- The DWT contains counters for:
  - Clock cycles (CYCCNT)
  - Folded instructions
  - Load store unit (LSU) operations
  - Sleep cycles
  - CPI (all instruction cycles except for the first cycle)
  - Interrupt overhead

NOTE

An event is emitted each time a counter overflows.

- The DWT can be configured to emit PC samples at defined intervals, and to emit interrupt event information.

10.12 Debug in Low Power Modes

In low power modes in which the debug modules are kept static or powered off, the debugger cannot gather any debug data for the duration of the low power mode. In the case that the debugger is held static, the debug port returns to full functionality as soon as the low power mode exits and the system returns to a state with active debug. In the case that the debugger logic is powered off, the debugger is reset on recovery and must be reconfigured once the low power mode is exited.

Power mode entry logic monitors Debug Power Up and System Power Up signals from the debug port as indications that a debugger is active. These signals can be changed in RUN, VLPR, WAIT and VLPW. If the debug signal is active and the system attempts to enter stop or VLPS, FCLK continues to run to support core register access. In these modes in which FCLK is left active the debug modules have access to core registers but not to system memory resources accessed via the crossbar.

With debug enabled, transitions from Run directly to VLPS are not allowed and result in the system entering Stop mode instead. Status bits within the MDM-AP Status register can be evaluated to determine this pseudo-VLPS state. Note with the debug enabled, transitions from Run--> VLPR --> VLPS are still possible but also result in the system entering Stop mode instead.

In VLLS mode all debug modules are powered off and reset at wakeup. In LLS mode, the debug modules retain their state but no debug activity is possible.

NOTE

When using cJTAG and entering LLS mode, the cJTAG controller must be reset on exit from LLS mode.

Going into a VLLSx mode causes all the debug controls and settings to be reset. To give time to the debugger to sync up with the HW, the MDM-AP Control register can be configured hold the system in reset on recovery so that the debugger can regain control and reconfigure debug logic prior to the system exiting reset and resuming operation.

10.12.1 Debug Module State in Low Power Modes

The following table shows the state of the debug modules in low power modes. These terms are used:

- FF = Full functionality. In VLPR and VLPW the system frequency is limited, but if a module does not have a limitation in its functionality, it is still listed as FF.

- static = Module register states and associated memories are retained.
- OFF = Modules are powered off; module is in reset state upon wakeup.

Table 10-7. Debug Module State in Low Power Modes

Module	STOP	VLPR	VLPW	VLPS	LLS	VLLSx
Debug Port	FF	FF	FF	OFF	static	OFF
AHB-AP	FF	FF	FF	OFF	static	OFF
ITM	FF	FF	FF	OFF	static	OFF
TPIU	FF	FF	FF	OFF	static	OFF
DWT	FF	FF	FF	OFF	static	OFF

10.13 Debug & Security

When security is enabled (FSEC[SEC] != 10), the debug port capabilities are limited in order to prevent exploitation of secure data. In the secure state the debugger still has access to the MDM-AP Status Register and can determine the current security state of the device. In the case of a secure device, the debugger also has the capability of performing a mass erase operation via writes to the MDM-AP Control Register if mass erase is enabled. In the case of a secure device that has mass erase disabled (FSEC[MEEN] = 10), attempts to mass erase via the debug interface are blocked.

When mass erase is disabled (FSEC[MEEN]= 10), the debugger does not have the capability of performing a mass erase operation via writes to MDM-AP Control Register.

Chapter 11
Signal Multiplexing and Signal Descriptions

11.1 Introduction

To optimize functionality in small packages, pins have several functions available via signal multiplexing. This chapter illustrates which of this device's signals are multiplexed on which external pin.

The Port Control block controls which signal is present on the external pin. Reference that chapter to find which register controls the operation of a specific pin.

11.2 Pinout

11.2.1 Signal Multiplexing and Pin Assignments

The following table shows the signals available on each pin and the locations of these pins on the devices supported by this document. The Port Control Module is responsible for selecting which ALT functionality is available on each pin.

NOTE

For KS20, only CAN0 exists. For KS22, there are two instances of CAN module (CAN0 and CAN1).

100 LQFP	64 LQFP	48 QFN	Pin Name	Default	ALT0	ALT1	ALT2	ALT3	ALT4	ALT5	ALT6	ALT7
1	1	1	PTE0/ CLKOUT32K	ADC0_SE4a	ADC0_SE4a	PTE0/ CLKOUT32K	SPI1_PCS1	UART1_TX			LPI2C1_SDA	RTC_ CLKOUT
2	2	2	PTE1/ LLWU_P0	ADC0_SE5a	ADC0_SE5a	PTE1/ LLWU_P0	SPI1_SOUT	UART1_RX			LPI2C1_SCL	SPI1_SIN
3	—	3	PTE2/ LLWU_P1	ADC0_SE6a	ADC0_SE6a	PTE2/ LLWU_P1	SPI1_SCK	UART1_CTS_ b				
4	—	4	PTE3	ADC0_SE7a	ADC0_SE7a	PTE3	SPI1_SIN	UART1_RTS_ b				SPI1_SOUT

100 LQFP	64 LQFP	48 QFN	Pin Name	Default	ALT0	ALT1	ALT2	ALT3	ALT4	ALT5	ALT6	ALT7
5	—	5	PTE4/ LLWU_P2	DISABLED		PTE4/ LLWU_P2	SPI1_PCS0	LPUART0_TX				LPI2C1_SDA
6	—	6	PTE5	DISABLED		PTE5	SPI1_PCS2	LPUART0_RX				LPI2C1_SCL
7	—	—	PTE6	DISABLED		PTE6	SPI1_PCS3	LPUART0_ CTS_b	I2S0_MCLK			USB_SOF_ OUT
8	3	7	VDD	VDD	VDD							
9	4	8	VSS	VSS	VSS							
10	5	9	USB0_DP	USB0_DP	USB0_DP							
11	6	10	USB0_DM	USB0_DM	USB0_DM							
12	7	11	USBVDD	USBVDD	USBVDD							
13	—	—	NC	NC	NC							
14	8	—	ADC0_DP1	ADC0_DP1	ADC0_DP1							
15	—	—	ADC0_DM1	ADC0_DM1	ADC0_DM1							
16	—	—	ADC0_DP2	ADC0_DP2	ADC0_DP2							
17	—	—	ADC0_DM2	ADC0_DM2	ADC0_DM2							
18	9	—	ADC0_DP0	ADC0_DP0	ADC0_DP0							
19	10	—	ADC0_DM0	ADC0_DM0	ADC0_DM0							
20	11	—	ADC0_DP3	ADC0_DP3	ADC0_DP3							
21	12	—	ADC0_DM3	ADC0_DM3	ADC0_DM3							
22	13	12	VDDA	VDDA	VDDA							
23	14	12	VREFH	VREFH	VREFH							
24	15	13	VREFL	VREFL	VREFL							
25	16	13	VSSA	VSSA	VSSA							
26	17	—	CMP0_IN5	CMP0_IN5	CMP0_IN5							
27	18	—	DAC0_OUT/ ADC0_SE23	DAC0_OUT/ ADC0_SE23	DAC0_OUT/ ADC0_SE23							
28	19	14	XTAL32	XTAL32	XTAL32							
29	20	15	EXTAL32	EXTAL32	EXTAL32							
30	21	16	VBAT	VBAT	VBAT							
31	—	—	PTE24	ADC0_SE17	ADC0_SE17	PTE24	CAN1_TX	TPM0_CH0	I2S1_TX_FS	LPI2C0_SCL	EWM_OUT_b	
32	—	—	PTE25	ADC0_SE18	ADC0_SE18	PTE25	CAN1_RX	TPM0_CH1	I2S1_TX_ BCLK	LPI2C0_SDA	EWM_IN	
33	—	—	PTE26/ CLKOUT32K	DISABLED		PTE26/ CLKOUT32K			I2S1_TXD0		RTC_ CLKOUT	USB_CLKIN
34	22	17	PTA0	JTAG_TCLK/ SWD_CLK		PTA0	UART0_CTS_ b	TPM0_CH5		EWM_IN		JTAG_TCLK/ SWD_CLK
35	23	18	PTA1	JTAG_TDI		PTA1	UART0_RX		CMP0_OUT	LPI2C1_ HREQ	TPM1_CH1	JTAG_TDI
36	24	19	PTA2	JTAG_TDO/ TRACE_SWO		PTA2	UART0_TX				TPM1_CH0	JTAG_TDO/ TRACE_SWO
37	25	20	PTA3	JTAG_TMS/ SWD_DIO		PTA3	UART0_RTS_ b	TPM0_CH0		EWM_OUT_b		JTAG_TMS/ SWD_DIO
38	26	21	PTA4/ LLWU_P3	NMI_b		PTA4/ LLWU_P3		TPM0_CH1			I2S0_MCLK	NMI_b

100 LQFP	64 LQFP	48 QFN	Pin Name	Default	ALT0	ALT1	ALT2	ALT3	ALT4	ALT5	ALT6	ALT7
39	27	—	PTA5	DISABLED		PTA5	USB_CLKIN	TPM0_CH2			I2S0_TX_BCLK	JTAG_TRST_b
40	—	—	VDD	VDD	VDD							
41	—	—	VSS	VSS	VSS							
42	28	—	PTA12	DISABLED		PTA12	CAN0_TX	TPM1_CH0			I2S0_TXD0	
43	29	—	PTA13/ LLWU_P4	DISABLED		PTA13/ LLWU_P4	CAN0_RX	TPM1_CH1			I2S0_TX_FS	
44	—	—	PTA14	DISABLED		PTA14	SPI0_PCS0	UART0_TX			I2S0_RX_BCLK	
45	—	—	PTA15	DISABLED		PTA15	SPI0_SCK	UART0_RX			I2S0_RXD0	
46	—	—	PTA16	DISABLED		PTA16	SPI0_SOUT	UART0_CTS_b			I2S0_RX_FS	
47	—	—	PTA17	DISABLED		PTA17	SPI0_SIN	UART0_RTS_b			I2S0_MCLK	
48	30	22	VDD	VDD	VDD							
49	31	23	VSS	VSS	VSS							
50	32	24	PTA18	EXTAL0	EXTAL0	PTA18			TPM_CLKIN0			
51	33	25	PTA19	XTAL0	XTAL0	PTA19			TPM_CLKIN1		LPTMR0_ALT1	
52	34	26	RESET_b	RESET_b	RESET_b							
53	35	27	PTB0/ LLWU_P5	ADC0_SE8	ADC0_SE8	PTB0/ LLWU_P5	LPI2C0_SCL	TPM1_CH0			FXIO0_D4	UART0_RX
54	36	28	PTB1	ADC0_SE9	ADC0_SE9	PTB1	LPI2C0_SDA	TPM1_CH1		EWM_IN	FXIO0_D5	UART0_TX
55	37	29	PTB2	ADC0_SE12	ADC0_SE12	PTB2	LPI2C0_SCL	UART0_RTS_b			FXIO0_D6	CAN1_RX
56	38	30	PTB3	ADC0_SE13	ADC0_SE13	PTB3	LPI2C0_SDA	UART0_CTS_b			FXIO0_D7	CAN1_TX
57	—	—	PTB9	DISABLED		PTB9	SPI1_PCS1	LPUART0_CTS_b				
58	—	—	PTB10	DISABLED		PTB10	SPI1_PCS0	LPUART0_RX	I2S1_TX_BCLK			
59	—	—	PTB11	DISABLED		PTB11	SPI1_SCK	LPUART0_TX	I2S1_TX_FS			
60	—	—	VSS	VSS	VSS							
61	—	—	VDD	VDD	VDD							
62	39	31	PTB16	DISABLED		PTB16	SPI1_SOUT	UART0_RX	TPM_CLKIN0		EWM_IN	I2S1_TXD0 (Note: 100LQFP only)
63	40	—	PTB17	DISABLED		PTB17	SPI1_SIN	UART0_TX	TPM_CLKIN1		EWM_OUT_b	FXIO0_D0
64	41	32	PTB18	DISABLED		PTB18	CAN0_TX	TPM2_CH0	I2S0_TX_BCLK			FXIO0_D1
65	42	33	PTB19	DISABLED		PTB19	CAN0_RX	TPM2_CH1	I2S0_TX_FS			FXIO0_D2
66	—	—	PTB20	DISABLED		PTB20					CMP0_OUT	FXIO0_D4
67	—	—	PTB21	DISABLED		PTB21					FXIO0_D5	
68	—	—	PTB22	DISABLED		PTB22					FXIO0_D6	

100 LQFP	64 LQFP	48 QFN	Pin Name	Default	ALT0	ALT1	ALT2	ALT3	ALT4	ALT5	ALT6	ALT7
69	—	—	PTB23	DISABLED		PTB23		SPI0_PCS5			FXIO0_D7	
70	43	—	PTC0	ADC0_SE14	ADC0_SE14	PTC0	SPI0_PCS4	PDB0_EXTRG	USB_SOF_OUT		FXIO0_D3	SPI0_PCS0
71	44	34	PTC1/ LLWU_P6	ADC0_SE15	ADC0_SE15	PTC1/ LLWU_P6	SPI0_PCS3	UART1_RTS_b	TPM0_CH0		I2S0_TXD0	LPUART0_RTS_b
72	45	35	PTC2	ADC0_SE4b	ADC0_SE4b	PTC2	SPI0_PCS2	UART1_CTS_b	TPM0_CH1		I2S0_TX_FS	LPUART0_CTS_b
73	46	36	PTC3/ LLWU_P7	DISABLED		PTC3/ LLWU_P7	SPI0_PCS1	UART1_RX	TPM0_CH2	CLKOUT	I2S0_TX_BCLK	LPUART0_RX
74	47	—	VSS	VSS	VSS							
75	48	—	VDD	VDD	VDD							
76	49	37	PTC4/ LLWU_P8	DISABLED		PTC4/ LLWU_P8	SPI0_PCS0	UART1_TX	TPM0_CH3		LPI2C0_HREQ	LPUART0_TX
77	50	38	PTC5/ LLWU_P9	DISABLED		PTC5/ LLWU_P9	SPI0_SCK	LPTMR0_ALT2	I2S0_RXD0		CMP0_OUT	TPM0_CH2
78	51	39	PTC6/ LLWU_P10	CMP0_IN0	CMP0_IN0	PTC6/ LLWU_P10	SPI0_SOUT	PDB0_EXTRG	I2S0_RX_BCLK		I2S0_MCLK	LPI2C0_SCL
79	52	40	PTC7	CMP0_IN1	CMP0_IN1	PTC7	SPI0_SIN	USB_SOF_OUT	I2S0_RX_FS			LPI2C0_SDA
80	53	—	PTC8	CMP0_IN2	CMP0_IN2	PTC8	LPI2C0_SCLS		I2S0_MCLK		FXIO0_D0	I2S1_RXD0
81	54	—	PTC9	CMP0_IN3	CMP0_IN3	PTC9	LPI2C0_SDAS		I2S0_RX_BCLK		FXIO0_D1	I2S1_RX_BCLK
82	55	—	PTC10	DISABLED		PTC10	LPI2C1_SCL		I2S0_RX_FS		FXIO0_D2	I2S1_RX_FS
83	56	—	PTC11/ LLWU_P11	DISABLED		PTC11/ LLWU_P11	LPI2C1_SDA				FXIO0_D3	I2S1_MCLK
84	—	—	PTC12	DISABLED		PTC12	LPI2C1_SCLS		TPM_CLKIN0			FXIO0_D0
85	—	—	PTC13	DISABLED		PTC13	LPI2C1_SDAS		TPM_CLKIN1			FXIO0_D1
86	—	—	PTC14	DISABLED		PTC14			LPUART0_RTS_b			FXIO0_D2
87	—	—	PTC15	DISABLED		PTC15			LPUART0_CTS_b			FXIO0_D3
88	—	—	VSS	VSS	VSS							
89	—	—	VDD	VDD	VDD							
90	—	—	PTC16	DISABLED		PTC16	CAN1_RX	LPUART0_RX				FXIO0_D4
91	—	—	PTC17	DISABLED		PTC17	CAN1_TX	LPUART0_TX				FXIO0_D5
92	—	—	PTC18	DISABLED		PTC18		LPUART0_RTS_b				
93	57	41	PTD0/ LLWU_P12	DISABLED		PTD0/ LLWU_P12	SPI0_PCS0	UART2_RTS_b			LPUART0_RTS_b	FXIO0_D6
94	58	42	PTD1	ADC0_SE5b	ADC0_SE5b	PTD1	SPI0_SCK	UART2_CTS_b			LPUART0_CTS_b	FXIO0_D7
95	59	43	PTD2/ LLWU_P13	DISABLED		PTD2/ LLWU_P13	SPI0_SOUT	UART2_RX			LPUART0_RX	LPI2C0_SCL
96	60	44	PTD3	DISABLED		PTD3	SPI0_SIN	UART2_TX			LPUART0_TX	LPI2C0_SDA
97	61	45	PTD4/ LLWU_P14	DISABLED		PTD4/ LLWU_P14	SPI0_PCS1	UART0_RTS_b	TPM0_CH4		EWM_IN	SPI1_PCS0

100 LQFP	64 LQFP	48 QFN	Pin Name	Default	ALT0	ALT1	ALT2	ALT3	ALT4	ALT5	ALT6	ALT7
98	62	46	PTD5	ADC0_SE6b	ADC0_SE6b	PTD5	SPI0_PCS2	UART0_CTS_b	TPM0_CH5		EWM_OUT_b	SPI1_SCK
99	63	47	PTD6/ LLWU_P15	ADC0_SE7b	ADC0_SE7b	PTD6/ LLWU_P15	SPI0_PCS3	UART0_RX				SPI1_SOUT
100	64	48	PTD7	DISABLED		PTD7		UART0_TX				SPI1_SIN

11.2.2 Pinouts

The following figure shows the pinout diagram for the devices supported by this document. Many signals may be multiplexed onto a single pin. To determine what signals can be used on which pin, see the previous "signal multiplexing and pin assignments" section.

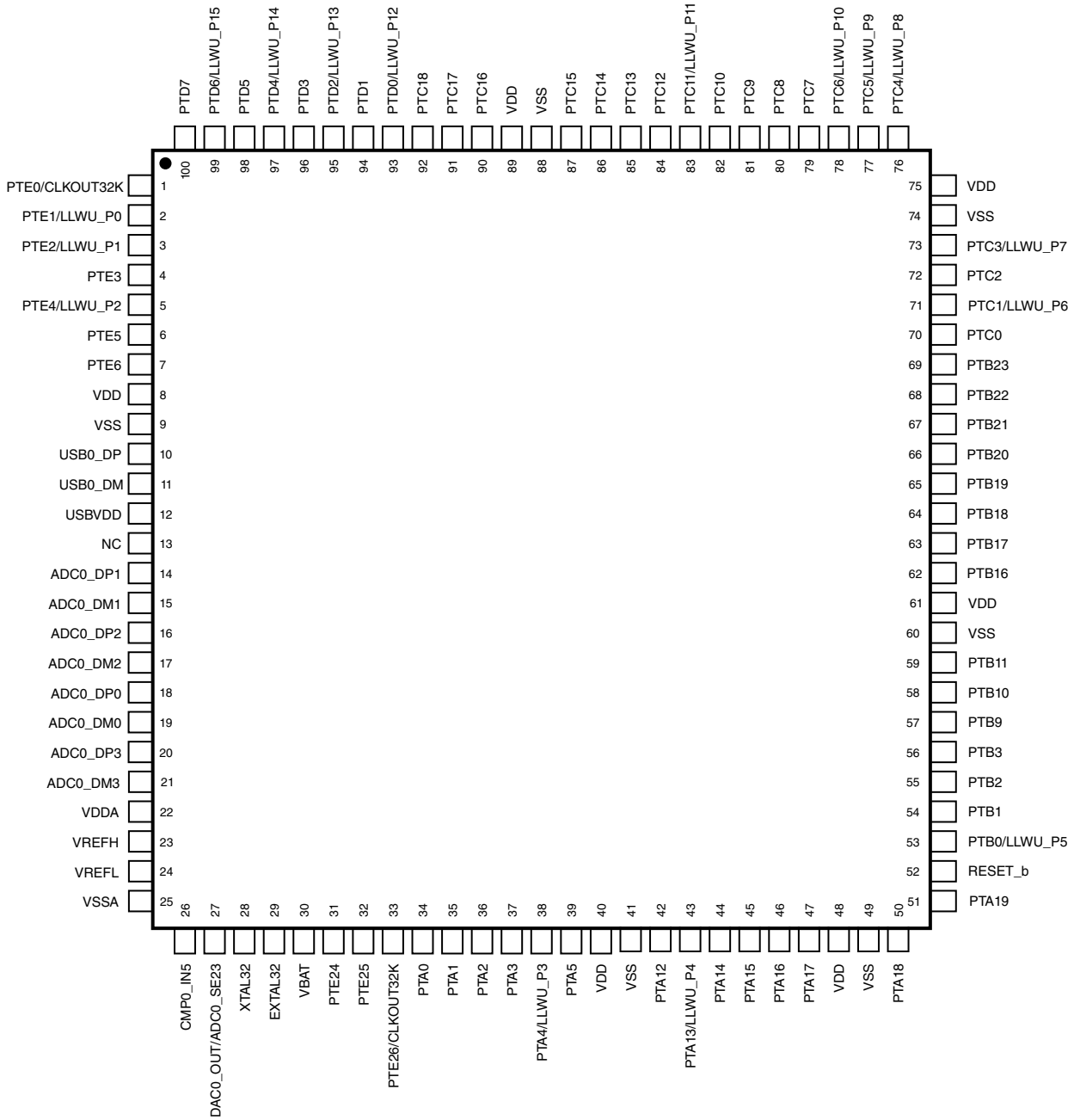


Figure 11-1. 100 LQFP Pinout Diagram

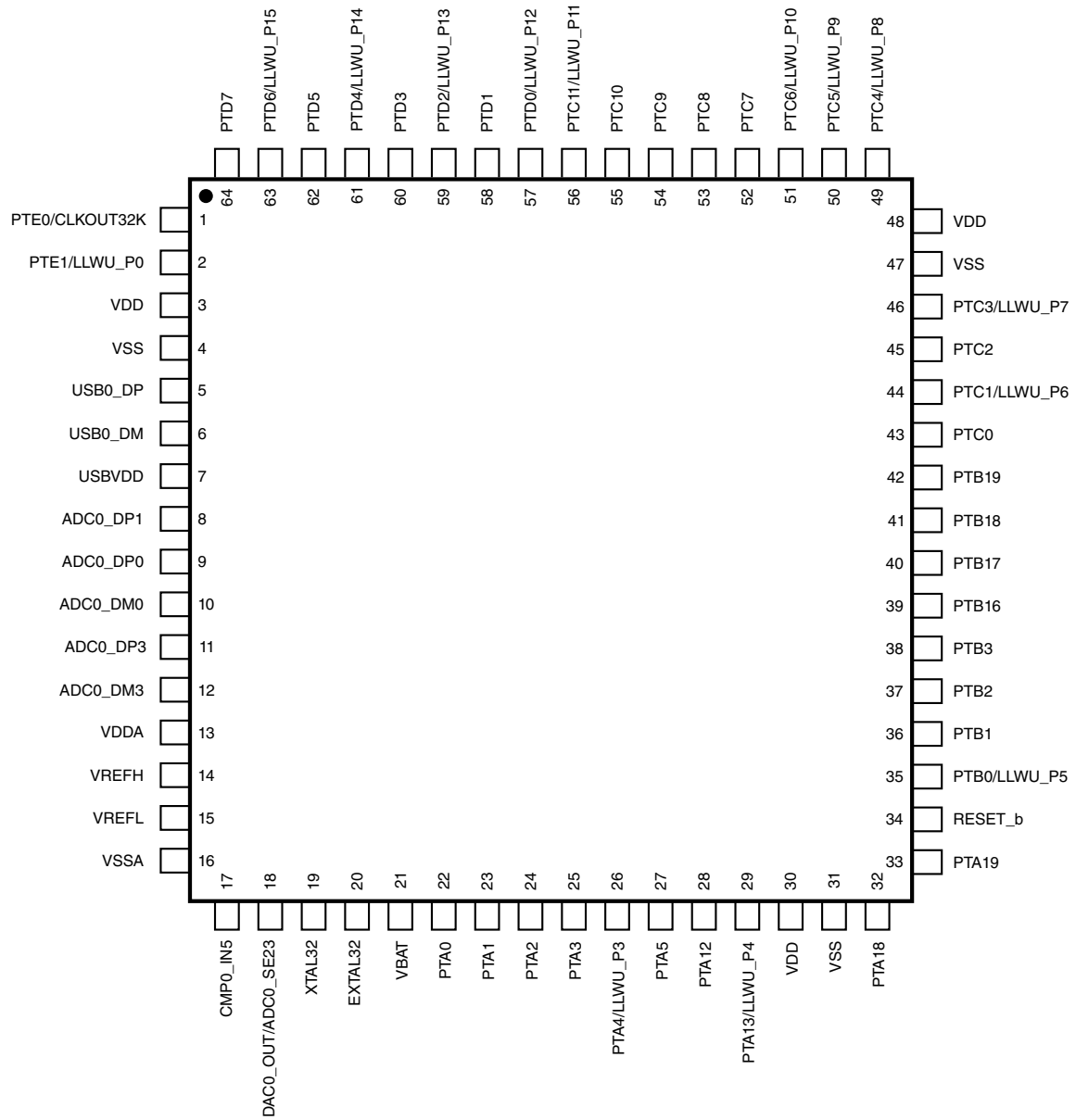


Figure 11-2. 64 LQFP Pinout Diagram

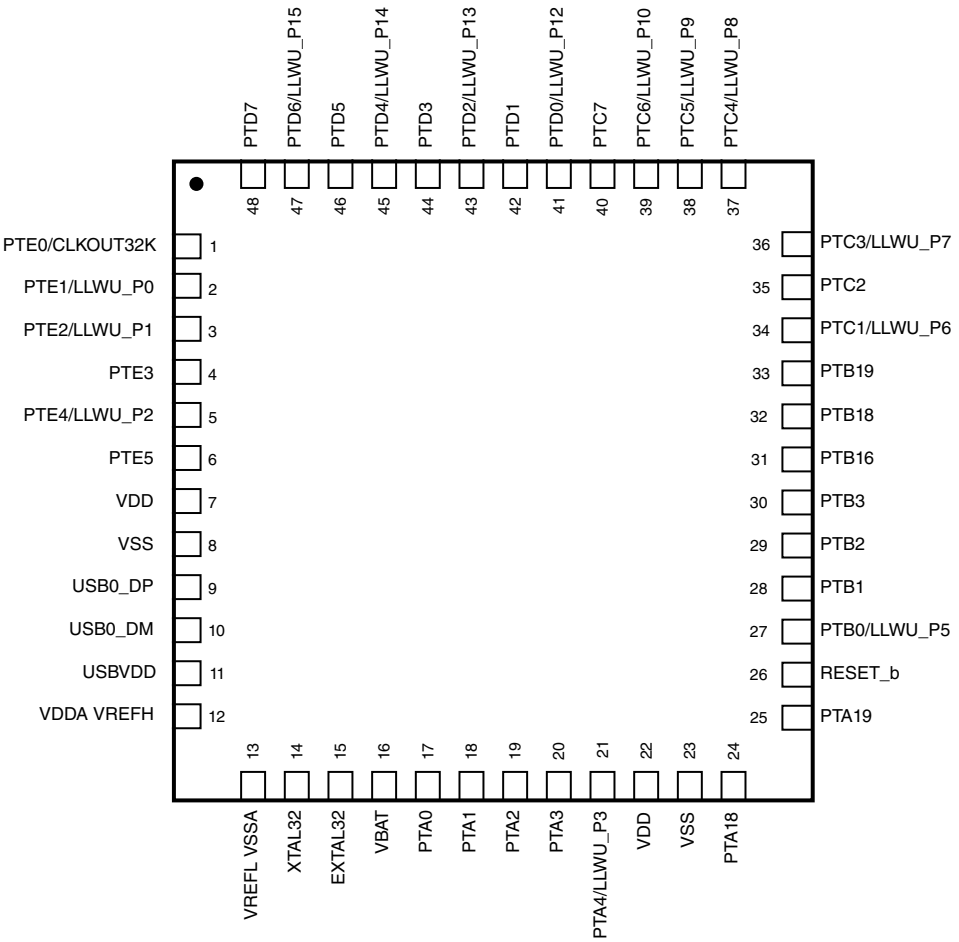


Figure 11-3. 48 QFN Pinout Diagram

11.3 Module Signal Description Tables

The following sections correlate the chip-level signal name with the signal name used in the module's chapter. They also briefly describe the signal function and direction.

11.3.1 Core Modules

Table 11-1. JTAG Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
JTAG_TMS	JTAG_TMS/ SWD_DIO	JTAG Test Mode Selection	I
JTAG_TCLK	JTAG_TCLK/ SWD_CLK	JTAG Test Clock	I
JTAG_TDI	JTAG_TDI	JTAG Test Data Input	I
JTAG_TDO	JTAG_TDO/ TRACE_SWO	JTAG Test Data Output	O
JTAG_TRST	JTAG_TRST_b	JTAG Reset	I

Table 11-2. SWD Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
SWD_DIO	JTAG_TMS/ SWD_DIO	Serial Wire Data	I
SWD_CLK	JTAG_TCLK/ SWD_CLK	Serial Wire Clock	I

Table 11-3. TPIU Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
TRACE_SWO	JTAG_TDO/ TRACE_SWO	Trace output data from the ARM CoreSight debug block over a single pin	O

11.3.2 System Modules

Table 11-4. EWM Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
EWM_IN	EWM_in	EWM input for safety status of external safety circuits. The polarity of EWM_in is programmable using the EWM_CTRL[ASSIN] bit. The default polarity is active-low.	I
$\overline{\text{EWM\_OUT}}$	$\overline{\text{EWM\_out}}$	EWM reset out signal	O

11.3.3 Clock Modules

Table 11-5. OSC Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
EXTAL0	EXTAL	External clock/Oscillator input	I
XTAL0	XTAL	Oscillator output	O

Table 11-6. RTC OSC Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
EXTAL32	EXTAL32	32.768 kHz oscillator input	I
XTAL32	XTAL32	32.768 kHz oscillator output	O

11.3.4 Analog

Table 11-7. ADC 0 Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
ADC0_DP[3:0]	DADP3–DADP0	Differential Analog Channel Inputs	I
ADC0_DM[3:0]	DADM3–DADM0	Differential Analog Channel Inputs	I
ADC0_SEn	AD*n*	Single-Ended Analog Channel Inputs	I
VREFH	V_{REFSH}	Voltage Reference Select High	I
VREFL	V_{REFSL}	Voltage Reference Select Low	I
VDDA	V_{DDA}	Analog Power Supply	I
VSSA	V_{SSA}	Analog Ground	I

Table 11-8. CMP 0 Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
CMP0_IN[5:0]	IN[5:0]	Analog voltage inputs	I
CMP0_OUT	CMPO	Comparator output	O

Table 11-9. DAC 0 Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
DAC0_OUT	—	DAC output	O

11.3.5 Timer Modules

Table 11-10. PDB 0 Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
PDB0_EXTRG	EXTRG	External Trigger Input Source If the PDB is enabled and external trigger input source is selected, a positive edge on the EXTRG signal resets and starts the counter.	I

Table 11-11. LPTMR 0 Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
LPTMR0_ALT[2:1]	LPTMR0_ALT*n*	Pulse Counter Input pin	I

Table 11-12. RTC Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
VBAT	—	Backup battery supply for RTC and VBAT register file	I
RTC_CLKOUT	RTC_CLKOUT	1 Hz square-wave output or OSCERCLK	O

Table 11-13. TPM 0 Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
TPM_CLKIN[1:0]	TPM_EXTCLK	External clock. TPM external clock can be selected to increment the TPM counter on every rising edge synchronized to the counter clock.	I
TPM0_CH[5:0]	TPM_CHn	TPM channel (n = 5 to 0). A TPM channel pin is configured as output when configured in an output compare or PWM mode and the TPM counter is enabled, otherwise the TPM channel pin is an input.	I/O

Table 11-14. TPM 1 Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
TPM_CLKIN[1:0]	TPM_EXTCLK	External clock. TPM external clock can be selected to increment the TPM counter on every rising edge synchronized to the counter clock.	I
TPM1_CH[1:0]	TPM_CHn	TPM channel (n = 5 to 0). A TPM channel pin is configured as output when configured in an output compare or PWM mode and the TPM counter is enabled, otherwise the TPM channel pin is an input.	I/O

Table 11-15. TPM 2 Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
TPM_CLKIN[1:0]	TPM_EXTCLK	External clock. TPM external clock can be selected to increment the TPM counter on every rising edge synchronized to the counter clock.	I
TPM2_CH[1:0]	TPM_CHn	TPM channel (n = 5 to 0). A TPM channel pin is configured as output when configured in an output compare or PWM mode and the TPM counter is enabled, otherwise the TPM channel pin is an input.	I/O

11.3.6 Communication Interfaces

Table 11-16. USB FS OTG Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
USB0_DM	usb_dm	USB D- analog data signal on the USB bus.	I/O
USB0_DP	usb_dp	USB D+ analog data signal on the USB bus.	I/O
USB_CLKIN	—	Alternate USB clock input	I
USB_SOF_OUT	—	USB start of frame signal. Can be used to make the USB start of frame available for external synchronization.	O

Table 11-17. CAN 0 Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
CAN0_RX	CAN Rx	CAN Receive Pin	Input
CAN0_TX	CAN Tx	CAN Transmit Pin	Output

Table 11-18. CAN 1 (for KS22 only) Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
CAN1_RX	CAN Rx	CAN Receive Pin	Input
CAN1_TX	CAN Tx	CAN Transmit Pin	Output

Table 11-19. SPI 0 Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
SPI0_PCS0	PCS0/$\overline{SS}$	Peripheral Chip Select 0 (O)	I/O

Table continues on the next page...

Table 11-19. SPI 0 Signal Descriptions (continued)

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
SPI0_PCS[3:1]	PCS[1:3]	Peripheral Chip Selects 1–3	O
SPI0_PCS4	PCS4	Peripheral Chip Select 4	O
SPI0_PCS5	PCS5/ $\overline{\text{PCSS}}$	Peripheral Chip Select 5 /Peripheral Chip Select Strobe	O
SPI0_SIN	SIN	Serial Data In	I
SPI0_SOUT	SOUT	Serial Data Out	O
SPI0_SCK	SCK	Serial Clock (O)	I/O

Table 11-20. SPI 1 Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
SPI1_PCS0	PCS0/$\overline{\text{SS}}$	Peripheral Chip Select 0 (O)	I/O
SPI1_PCS[3:1]	PCS[1:3]	Peripheral Chip Selects 1–3	O
SPI1_SIN	SIN	Serial Data In	I
SPI1_SOUT	SOUT	Serial Data Out	O
SPI1_SCK	SCK	Serial Clock (O)	I/O

Table 11-21. LPI^{2}C 0 Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
LPI2C0_SCL	SCL	LPI2C clock line.	I/O
LPI2C0_SDA	SDA	LPI2C data line.	I/O
LPI2C0_HREQ	HREQ	Host request, can initiate an LPI2C master transfer if asserted and the I2C bus is idle.	I
LPI2C0_SCLS	SCLS	Secondary I2C clock line. If LPI2C master/slave are configured to use separate pins, this the LPI2C slave SCL pin.	I/O
LPI2C0_SDAS	SDAS	Secondary I2C data line. If LPI2C master/slave are configured to use separate pins, this the LPI2C slave SDA pin.	I/O

Table 11-22. LPI^{2}C 1 Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
LPI2C1_SCL	SCL	LPI2C clock line.	I/O
LPI2C1_SDA	SDA	LPI2C data line.	I/O
LPI2C1_HREQ	HREQ	Host request, can initiate an LPI2C master transfer if asserted and the I2C bus is idle.	I
LPI2C1_SCLS	SCLS	Secondary I2C clock line. If LPI2C master/slave are configured to use separate pins, this the LPI2C slave SCL pin.	I/O

Table continues on the next page...

Table 11-22. LPI2C 1 Signal Descriptions (continued)

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
LPI2C1_SDAS	SDAS	Secondary I2C data line. If LPI2C master/slave are configured to use separate pins, this the LPI2C slave SDA pin.	I/O

Table 11-23. LPUART Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
LPUART0_TX	LPUART_TX	Transmit data. This pin is normally an output, but is an input (tristated) in single wire mode whenever the transmitter is disabled or transmit direction is configured for receive data.	O/I
LPUART0_RX	LPUART_RX	Receive data	I
$\overline{\text{LPUART0\_CTS}}$	LPUART_CTS	Clear to send	I
$\overline{\text{LPUART0\_CTS}}$	LPUART_RTS	Request to send	I

Table 11-24. UART 0 Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
$\overline{\text{UART0\_CTS}}$	$\overline{\text{CTS}}$	Clear to send	I
$\overline{\text{UART0\_RTS}}$	$\overline{\text{RTS}}$	Request to send	O
UART0_TX	TXD	Transmit data	O
UART0_RX	RXD	Receive data	I

Table 11-25. UART 1 Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
$\overline{\text{UART1\_CTS}}$	$\overline{\text{CTS}}$	Clear to send	I
$\overline{\text{UART1\_RTS}}$	$\overline{\text{RTS}}$	Request to send	O
UART1_TX	TXD	Transmit data	O
UART1_RX	RXD	Receive data	I

Table 11-26. UART 2 Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
$\overline{\text{UART2\_CTS}}$	$\overline{\text{CTS}}$	Clear to send	I
$\overline{\text{UART2\_RTS}}$	$\overline{\text{RTS}}$	Request to send	O
UART2_TX	TXD	Transmit data	O
UART2_RX	RXD	Receive data	I

Table 11-27. I²S0 Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
I2S0_MCLK	SAI_MCLK	Audio Master Clock. The master clock is an input when externally generated and an output when internally generated.	I/O
I2S0_RX_BCLK	SAI_RX_BCLK	Receive Bit Clock. The bit clock is an input when externally generated and an output when internally generated.	I/O
I2S0_RX_FS	SAI_RX_SYNC	Receive Frame Sync. The frame sync is an input sampled synchronously by the bit clock when externally generated and an output generated synchronously by the bit clock when internally generated.	I/O
I2S0_RXD	SAI_RX_DATA	Receive Data. The receive data is sampled synchronously by the bit clock.	I
I2S0_TX_BCLK	SAI_TX_BCLK	Transmit Bit Clock. The bit clock is an input when externally generated and an output when internally generated.	I/O
I2S0_TX_FS	SAI_TX_SYNC	Transmit Frame Sync. The frame sync is an input sampled synchronously by the bit clock when externally generated and an output generated synchronously by the bit clock when internally generated.	I/O
I2S0_TXD	SAI_TX_DATA	Transmit Data. The transmit data is generated synchronously by the bit clock and is tristated whenever not transmitting a word.	O

Table 11-28. I²S1 Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
I2S1_MCLK	SAI_MCLK	Audio Master Clock. The master clock is an input when externally generated and an output when internally generated.	I/O
I2S1_RX_BCLK	SAI_RX_BCLK	Receive Bit Clock. The bit clock is an input when externally generated and an output when internally generated.	I/O
I2S1_RX_FS	SAI_RX_SYNC	Receive Frame Sync. The frame sync is an input sampled synchronously by the bit clock when externally generated and an output generated synchronously by the bit clock when internally generated.	I/O
I2S1_RXD	SAI_RX_DATA	Receive Data. The receive data is sampled synchronously by the bit clock.	I
I2S1_TX_BCLK	SAI_TX_BCLK	Transmit Bit Clock. The bit clock is an input when externally generated and an output when internally generated.	I/O
I2S1_TX_FS	SAI_TX_SYNC	Transmit Frame Sync. The frame sync is an input sampled synchronously by the bit clock when externally generated and an output generated synchronously by the bit clock when internally generated.	I/O
I2S1_TXD	SAI_TX_DATA	Transmit Data. The transmit data is generated synchronously by the bit clock and is tristated whenever not transmitting a word.	O

Table 11-29. FlexIO Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
FXIO0_D*n*	FXIO_D*n* (*n*=0...7)	Bidirectional FlexIO Shifter and Timer pin inputs/outputs	I/O

11.3.7 Human-Machine Interfaces (HMI)

Table 11-30. GPIO Signal Descriptions

Chip signal name	Module signal name	Description	I/O
PTA[31:0]	PORTA31–PORTA0	General-purpose input/output	I/O
PTB[31:0][1]	PORTB31–PORTB0	General-purpose input/output	I/O
PTC[31:0][1]	PORTC31–PORTC0	General-purpose input/output	I/O
PTD[31:0][1]	PORTD31–PORTD0	General-purpose input/output	I/O
PTE[31:0][1]	PORTE31–PORTE0	General-purpose input/output	I/O

1. The available GPIO pins depends on the specific package. See the signal multiplexing section for which exact GPIO signals are available.

Chapter 12
Port Control and Interrupts (PORT)

12.1 Chip-specific Information for this Module

12.1.1 Signal Multiplexing Integration

This section summarizes how the module is integrated into the device. For a comprehensive description of the module itself, see the module's dedicated chapter.

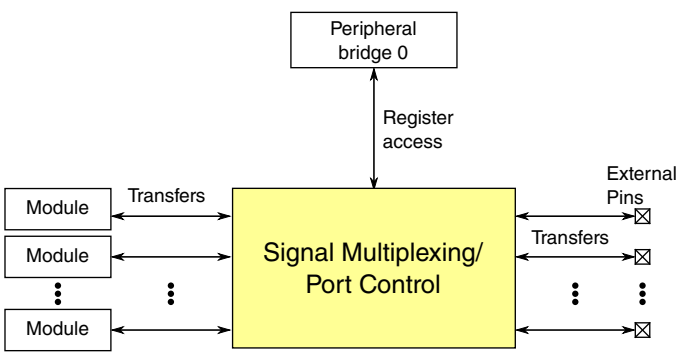


Figure 12-1. Signal multiplexing integration

Table 12-1. Reference links to related information

Topic	Related module	Reference
Full description	Port control	Port control
System memory map		System memory map
Clocking		Clock Distribution
Register access	Peripheral bus controller	Peripheral bridge

12.1.1.1 Port control and interrupt module features

- 32-pin ports

NOTE

Not all pins are available on the device. See the following section for details.

- Each 32-pin port is assigned one interrupt.

Table 12-2. Ports summary

Feature	Port A	Port B	Port C	Port D	Port E
Pull select control	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Pull select at reset	PTA1/PTA2/PTA3/ PTA4=Pull up, Others=Pull down	Pull down	Pull down	Pull down	Pull down
Pull enable control	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Pull enable at reset	PTA0/PTA1/PTA2/ PTA3/ PTA4=Enabled; Others=Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled
Slew rate enable control	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Slew rate enable at reset	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled
Passive filter enable control	PTA4=Yes; Others=No	No	No	No	No
Passive filter enable at reset	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled
Open drain enable control	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Open drain enable at reset	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled
Drive strength enable control	No	PTB0/PTB1 only	PTC3/PTC4 only	PTD4/PTD5/PTD6/ PTD7 only	No
Drive strength enable at reset	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled
Pin mux control	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Pin mux at reset	PTA0/PTA1/PTA2/ PTA3/PTA4=ALT7; Others=ALT0	ALT0	ALT0	ALT0	ALT0
Lock bit	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Interrupt and DMA request	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Digital glitch filter	No	No	No	Yes	No

NOTE

Digital filter is only available on Port D for this device. Therefore, digital fileter related registers (such as DFER, DFCR, DFWR) are not applicable for Port A, B, C and E.

12.1.1.2 Clock gating

The clock to the port control module can be gated on and off using the SCGC5[PORTx] bits in the SIM module. These bits are cleared after any reset, which disables the clock to the corresponding module to conserve power. Prior to initializing the corresponding module, set SCGC5[PORTx] in the SIM module to enable the clock. Before turning off the clock, make sure to disable the module. For more details, refer to the clock distribution chapter.

12.1.1.3 Signal multiplexing constraints

1. A given peripheral function must be assigned to a maximum of one package pin. Do not program the same function to more than one pin.
2. To ensure the best signal timing for a given peripheral's interface, choose the pins in closest proximity to each other.

12.2 Introduction

12.3 Overview

The Port Control and Interrupt (PORT) module provides support for port control, digital filtering, and external interrupt functions.

Most functions can be configured independently for each pin in the 32-bit port and affect the pin regardless of its pin muxing state.

There is one instance of the PORT module for each port. Not all pins within each port are implemented on a specific device.

12.3.1 Features

The PORT module has the following features:

- Pin interrupt

    - Interrupt flag and enable registers for each pin
    - Support for edge sensitive (rising, falling, both) or level sensitive (low, high) configured per pin
    - Support for interrupt or DMA request configured per pin
    - Asynchronous wake-up in low-power modes
    - Pin interrupt is functional in all digital pin muxing modes
- Digital input filter on selected pins
    - Digital input filter for each pin, usable by any digital peripheral muxed onto the pin
    - Individual enable or bypass control field per pin
    - Selectable clock source for digital input filter with a five bit resolution on filter size
    - Functional in all digital pin multiplexing modes
- Port control
    - Individual pull control fields with pullup, pulldown, and pull-disable support
    - Individual drive strength field supporting high and low drive strength
    - Individual slew rate field supporting fast and slow slew rates
    - Individual input passive filter field supporting enable and disable of the individual input passive filter
    - Individual open drain field supporting enable and disable of the individual open drain output
    - Individual mux control field supporting analog or pin disabled, GPIO, and up to six chip-specific digital functions
    - Pad configuration fields are functional in all digital pin muxing modes.

12.3.2 Modes of operation

12.3.2.1 Run mode

In Run mode, the PORT operates normally.

12.3.2.2 Wait mode

In Wait mode, PORT continues to operate normally and may be configured to exit the Low-Power mode if an enabled interrupt is detected. DMA requests are still generated during the Wait mode, but do not cause an exit from the Low-Power mode.

12.3.2.3 Stop mode

In Stop mode, the PORT can be configured to exit the Low-Power mode via an asynchronous wake-up signal if an enabled interrupt is detected.

In Stop mode, the digital input filters are bypassed unless they are configured to run from the LPO clock source.

12.3.2.4 Debug mode

In Debug mode, PORT operates normally.

12.4 External signal description

The table found here describes the PORT external signal.

Table 12-3. Signal properties

Name	Function	I/O	Reset	Pull
PORTx[31:0]	External interrupt	I/O	0	-

NOTE

Not all pins within each port are implemented on each device.

12.5 Detailed signal description

The table found here contains the detailed signal description for the PORT interface.

Table 12-4. PORT interface—detailed signal description

Signal	I/O	Description	
PORTx[31:0]	I/O	External interrupt.	
		State meaning	Asserted—pin is logic 1. Negated—pin is logic 0.
		Timing	Assertion—may occur at any time and can assert asynchronously to the system clock. Negation—may occur at any time and can assert asynchronously to the system clock.

12.6 Memory map and register definition

Any read or write access to the PORT memory space that is outside the valid memory map results in a bus error. All register accesses complete with zero wait states.

PORT memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4004_9000	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR0)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_9004	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR1)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_9008	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR2)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_900C	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR3)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_9010	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR4)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_9014	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR5)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_9018	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR6)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_901C	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR7)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_9020	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR8)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_9024	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR9)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_9028	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR10)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_902C	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR11)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_9030	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR12)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_9034	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR13)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_9038	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR14)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_903C	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR15)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_9040	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR16)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_9044	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR17)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_9048	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR18)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_904C	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR19)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_9050	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR20)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_9054	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR21)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_9058	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR22)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_905C	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR23)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_9060	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR24)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_9064	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR25)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_9068	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR26)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_906C	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR27)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_9070	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR28)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_9074	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR29)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_9078	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR30)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186

Table continues on the next page...

PORT memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4004_907C	Pin Control Register n (PORTA_PCR31)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_9080	Global Pin Control Low Register (PORTA_GPCLR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	12.6.2/189
4004_9084	Global Pin Control High Register (PORTA_GPCHR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	12.6.3/189
4004_90A0	Interrupt Status Flag Register (PORTA_ISFR)	32	w1c	0000_0000h	12.6.4/190
4004_90C0	Digital Filter Enable Register (PORTA_DFER)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	12.6.5/190
4004_90C4	Digital Filter Clock Register (PORTA_DFCR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	12.6.6/191
4004_90C8	Digital Filter Width Register (PORTA_DFWR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	12.6.7/191
4004_A000	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR0)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_A004	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR1)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_A008	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR2)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_A00C	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR3)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_A010	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR4)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_A014	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR5)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_A018	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR6)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_A01C	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR7)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_A020	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR8)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_A024	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR9)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_A028	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR10)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_A02C	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR11)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_A030	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR12)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_A034	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR13)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_A038	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR14)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_A03C	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR15)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_A040	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR16)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_A044	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR17)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_A048	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR18)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_A04C	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR19)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_A050	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR20)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_A054	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR21)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_A058	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR22)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_A05C	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR23)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_A060	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR24)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_A064	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR25)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_A068	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR26)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_A06C	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR27)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186

Table continues on the next page...

PORT memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4004_A070	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR28)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_A074	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR29)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_A078	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR30)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_A07C	Pin Control Register n (PORTB_PCR31)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_A080	Global Pin Control Low Register (PORTB_GPCLR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	12.6.2/189
4004_A084	Global Pin Control High Register (PORTB_GPCHR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	12.6.3/189
4004_A0A0	Interrupt Status Flag Register (PORTB_ISFR)	32	w1c	0000_0000h	12.6.4/190
4004_A0C0	Digital Filter Enable Register (PORTB_DFER)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	12.6.5/190
4004_A0C4	Digital Filter Clock Register (PORTB_DFCR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	12.6.6/191
4004_A0C8	Digital Filter Width Register (PORTB_DFWR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	12.6.7/191
4004_B000	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR0)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_B004	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR1)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_B008	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR2)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_B00C	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR3)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_B010	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR4)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_B014	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR5)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_B018	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR6)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_B01C	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR7)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_B020	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR8)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_B024	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR9)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_B028	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR10)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_B02C	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR11)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_B030	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR12)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_B034	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR13)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_B038	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR14)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_B03C	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR15)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_B040	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR16)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_B044	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR17)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_B048	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR18)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_B04C	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR19)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_B050	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR20)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_B054	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR21)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_B058	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR22)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_B05C	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR23)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_B060	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR24)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186

Table continues on the next page...

PORT memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4004_B064	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR25)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_B068	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR26)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_B06C	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR27)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_B070	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR28)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_B074	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR29)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_B078	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR30)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_B07C	Pin Control Register n (PORTC_PCR31)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_B080	Global Pin Control Low Register (PORTC_GPCLR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	12.6.2/189
4004_B084	Global Pin Control High Register (PORTC_GPCHR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	12.6.3/189
4004_B0A0	Interrupt Status Flag Register (PORTC_ISFR)	32	w1c	0000_0000h	12.6.4/190
4004_B0C0	Digital Filter Enable Register (PORTC_DFER)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	12.6.5/190
4004_B0C4	Digital Filter Clock Register (PORTC_DFCR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	12.6.6/191
4004_B0C8	Digital Filter Width Register (PORTC_DFWR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	12.6.7/191
4004_C000	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR0)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_C004	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR1)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_C008	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR2)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_C00C	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR3)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_C010	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR4)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_C014	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR5)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_C018	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR6)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_C01C	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR7)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_C020	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR8)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_C024	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR9)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_C028	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR10)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_C02C	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR11)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_C030	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR12)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_C034	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR13)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_C038	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR14)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_C03C	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR15)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_C040	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR16)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_C044	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR17)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_C048	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR18)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_C04C	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR19)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_C050	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR20)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_C054	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR21)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186

Table continues on the next page...

PORT memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4004_C058	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR22)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_C05C	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR23)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_C060	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR24)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_C064	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR25)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_C068	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR26)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_C06C	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR27)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_C070	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR28)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_C074	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR29)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_C078	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR30)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_C07C	Pin Control Register n (PORTD_PCR31)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_C080	Global Pin Control Low Register (PORTD_GPCLR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	12.6.2/189
4004_C084	Global Pin Control High Register (PORTD_GPCHR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	12.6.3/189
4004_C0A0	Interrupt Status Flag Register (PORTD_ISFR)	32	w1c	0000_0000h	12.6.4/190
4004_C0C0	Digital Filter Enable Register (PORTD_DFER)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	12.6.5/190
4004_C0C4	Digital Filter Clock Register (PORTD_DFCR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	12.6.6/191
4004_C0C8	Digital Filter Width Register (PORTD_DFWR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	12.6.7/191
4004_D000	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR0)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_D004	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR1)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_D008	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR2)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_D00C	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR3)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_D010	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR4)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_D014	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR5)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_D018	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR6)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_D01C	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR7)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_D020	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR8)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_D024	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR9)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_D028	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR10)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_D02C	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR11)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_D030	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR12)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_D034	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR13)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_D038	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR14)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_D03C	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR15)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_D040	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR16)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_D044	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR17)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_D048	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR18)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186

Table continues on the next page...

PORT memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4004_D04C	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR19)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_D050	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR20)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_D054	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR21)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_D058	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR22)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_D05C	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR23)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_D060	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR24)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_D064	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR25)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_D068	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR26)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_D06C	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR27)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_D070	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR28)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_D074	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR29)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_D078	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR30)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_D07C	Pin Control Register n (PORTE_PCR31)	32	R/W	See section	12.6.1/186
4004_D080	Global Pin Control Low Register (PORTE_GPCLR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	12.6.2/189
4004_D084	Global Pin Control High Register (PORTE_GPCHR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	12.6.3/189
4004_D0A0	Interrupt Status Flag Register (PORTE_ISFR)	32	w1c	0000_0000h	12.6.4/190
4004_D0C0	Digital Filter Enable Register (PORTE_DFER)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	12.6.5/190
4004_D0C4	Digital Filter Clock Register (PORTE_DFCR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	12.6.6/191
4004_D0C8	Digital Filter Width Register (PORTE_DFWR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	12.6.7/191

12.6.1 Pin Control Register n (PORTx_PCR*n*)

NOTE

See the Signal Multiplexing and Pin Assignment chapter for the reset value of this device.

See the GPIO Configuration section for details on the available functions for each pin.

Do not modify pin configuration registers associated with pins not available in your selected package. All unbonded pins not available in your package will default to DISABLE state for lowest power consumption.

Address: Base address + 0h offset + (4d × i), where i=0d to 31d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0							ISF	0				IRQC			
W								w1c								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	LK	0			MUX				0	DSE	ODE	PFE	0	SRE	PE	PS
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	*	*	*	*	0	*	0	*	0	*	*	*

* Notes:
- MUX field: Varies by port. See Signal Multiplexing and Signal Descriptions chapter for reset values per port.
- DSE field: Varies by port. See the Signal Multiplexing and Signal Descriptions chapter for reset values per port.
- PFE field: Varies by port. See Signal Multiplexing and Signal Descriptions chapter for reset values per port.
- SRE field: Varies by port. See Signal Multiplexing and Signal Descriptions chapter for reset values per port.
- PE field: Varies by port. See Signal Multiplexing and Signal Descriptions chapter for reset values per port.
- PS field: Varies by port. See Signal Multiplexing and Signal Descriptions chapter for reset values per port.

PORTx_PCR*n* field descriptions

Field	Description
31–25 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
24 ISF	Interrupt Status Flag The pin interrupt configuration is valid in all digital pin muxing modes.

Table continues on the next page...

PORTx_PCR*n* field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Configured interrupt is not detected. 1 Configured interrupt is detected. If the pin is configured to generate a DMA request, then the corresponding flag will be cleared automatically at the completion of the requested DMA transfer. Otherwise, the flag remains set until a logic 1 is written to the flag. If the pin is configured for a level sensitive interrupt and the pin remains asserted, then the flag is set again immediately after it is cleared.
23–20 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
19–16 IRQC	Interrupt Configuration The pin interrupt configuration is valid in all digital pin muxing modes. The corresponding pin is configured to generate interrupt/DMA request as follows: 0000 Interrupt Status Flag (ISF) is disabled. 0001 ISF flag and DMA request on rising edge. 0010 ISF flag and DMA request on falling edge. 0011 ISF flag and DMA request on either edge. 0100 Reserved. 0101 Reserved. 0110 Reserved. 0111 Reserved. 1000 ISF flag and Interrupt when logic 0. 1001 ISF flag and Interrupt on rising-edge. 1010 ISF flag and Interrupt on falling-edge. 1011 ISF flag and Interrupt on either edge. 1100 ISF flag and Interrupt when logic 1. 1101 Reserved. 1110 Reserved. 1111 Reserved.
15 LK	Lock Register 0 Pin Control Register fields [15:0] are not locked. 1 Pin Control Register fields [15:0] are locked and cannot be updated until the next system reset.
14–12 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
11–8 MUX	Pin Mux Control Not all pins support all pin muxing slots. Unimplemented pin muxing slots are reserved and may result in configuring the pin for a different pin muxing slot. The corresponding pin is configured in the following pin muxing slot as follows: 0000 Pin disabled. 0001 Alternative 1 (GPIO). 0010 Alternative 2 (chip-specific). 0011 Alternative 3 (chip-specific). 0100 Alternative 4 (chip-specific). 0101 Alternative 5 (chip-specific). 0110 Alternative 6 (chip-specific). 0111 Alternative 7 (chip-specific).

Table continues on the next page...

PORTx_PCR*n* field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	1000 Alternative 8 (chip-specific). 1001 Alternative 9 (chip-specific). 1010 Alternative 10 (chip-specific). 1011 Alternative 11 (chip-specific). 1100 Alternative 12 (chip-specific). 1101 Alternative 13 (chip-specific). 1110 Alternative 14 (chip-specific). 1111 Alternative 15 (chip-specific).
7 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
6 DSE	Drive Strength Enable Drive strength configuration is valid in all digital pin muxing modes. 0 Low drive strength is configured on the corresponding pin, if pin is configured as a digital output. 1 High drive strength is configured on the corresponding pin, if pin is configured as a digital output.
5 ODE	Open Drain Enable Open drain configuration is valid in all digital pin muxing modes. 0 Open drain output is disabled on the corresponding pin. 1 Open drain output is enabled on the corresponding pin, if the pin is configured as a digital output.
4 PFE	Passive Filter Enable Passive filter configuration is valid in all digital pin muxing modes. 0 Passive input filter is disabled on the corresponding pin. 1 Passive input filter is enabled on the corresponding pin, if the pin is configured as a digital input. Refer to the device data sheet for filter characteristics.
3 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
2 SRE	Slew Rate Enable Slew rate configuration is valid in all digital pin muxing modes. 0 Fast slew rate is configured on the corresponding pin, if the pin is configured as a digital output. 1 Slow slew rate is configured on the corresponding pin, if the pin is configured as a digital output.
1 PE	Pull Enable Pull configuration is valid in all digital pin muxing modes. 0 Internal pullup or pulldown resistor is not enabled on the corresponding pin. 1 Internal pullup or pulldown resistor is enabled on the corresponding pin, if the pin is configured as a digital input.
0 PS	Pull Select Pull configuration is valid in all digital pin muxing modes. 0 Internal pulldown resistor is enabled on the corresponding pin, if the corresponding PE field is set. 1 Internal pullup resistor is enabled on the corresponding pin, if the corresponding PE field is set.

12.6.2 Global Pin Control Low Register (PORTx_GPCLR)

Only 32-bit writes are supported to this register.

Address: Base address + 80h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																0															
W	GPWE																GPWD															
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PORTx_GPCLR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 GPWE	Global Pin Write Enable Selects which Pin Control Registers (15 through 0) bits [15:0] update with the value in GPWD. If a selected Pin Control Register is locked then the write to that register is ignored. 0 Corresponding Pin Control Register is not updated with the value in GPWD. 1 Corresponding Pin Control Register is updated with the value in GPWD.
GPWD	Global Pin Write Data Write value that is written to all Pin Control Registers bits [15:0] that are selected by GPWE.

12.6.3 Global Pin Control High Register (PORTx_GPCHR)

Only 32-bit writes are supported to this register.

Address: Base address + 84h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																0															
W	GPWE																GPWD															
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PORTx_GPCHR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 GPWE	Global Pin Write Enable Selects which Pin Control Registers (31 through 16) bits [15:0] update with the value in GPWD. If a selected Pin Control Register is locked then the write to that register is ignored. 0 Corresponding Pin Control Register is not updated with the value in GPWD. 1 Corresponding Pin Control Register is updated with the value in GPWD.
GPWD	Global Pin Write Data Write value that is written to all Pin Control Registers bits [15:0] that are selected by GPWE.

12.6.4 Interrupt Status Flag Register (PORTx_ISFR)

The pin interrupt configuration is valid in all digital pin muxing modes. The Interrupt Status Flag for each pin is also visible in the corresponding Pin Control Register, and each flag can be cleared in either location.

Address: Base address + A0h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	ISF																															
W	w1c																															
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PORTx_ISFR field descriptions

Field	Description
ISF	Interrupt Status Flag Each bit in the field indicates the detection of the configured interrupt of the same number as the field. 0 Configured interrupt is not detected. 1 Configured interrupt is detected. If the pin is configured to generate a DMA request, then the corresponding flag will be cleared automatically at the completion of the requested DMA transfer. Otherwise, the flag remains set until a logic 1 is written to the flag. If the pin is configured for a level sensitive interrupt and the pin remains asserted, then the flag is set again immediately after it is cleared.

12.6.5 Digital Filter Enable Register (PORTx_DFER)

The corresponding bit is read only for pins that do not support a digital filter. Refer to the Chapter of Signal Multiplexing and Signal Descriptions for the pins that support digital filter.

The digital filter configuration is valid in all digital pin muxing modes.

Address: Base address + C0h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R W	DFE																															
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PORTx_DFER field descriptions

Field	Description
DFE	Digital Filter Enable

PORTx_DFER field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	The digital filter configuration is valid in all digital pin muxing modes. The output of each digital filter is reset to zero at system reset and whenever the digital filter is disabled. Each bit in the field enables the digital filter of the same number as the field. 0 Digital filter is disabled on the corresponding pin and output of the digital filter is reset to zero. 1 Digital filter is enabled on the corresponding pin, if the pin is configured as a digital input.

12.6.6 Digital Filter Clock Register (PORTx_DFCR)

This register is read only for ports that do not support a digital filter.

The digital filter configuration is valid in all digital pin muxing modes.

Address: Base address + C4h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0															CS
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PORTx_DFCR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–1 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
0 CS	Clock Source The digital filter configuration is valid in all digital pin muxing modes. Configures the clock source for the digital input filters. Changing the filter clock source must be done only when all digital filters are disabled. 0 Digital filters are clocked by the bus clock. 1 Digital filters are clocked by the LPO clock.

12.6.7 Digital Filter Width Register (PORTx_DFWR)

This register is read only for ports that do not support a digital filter.

The digital filter configuration is valid in all digital pin muxing modes.

Address: Base address + C8h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																											FILT				
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PORTx_DFWR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–5 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
FILT	Filter Length The digital filter configuration is valid in all digital pin muxing modes. Configures the maximum size of the glitches, in clock cycles, that the digital filter absorbs for the enabled digital filters. Glitches that are longer than this register setting will pass through the digital filter, and glitches that are equal to or less than this register setting are filtered. Changing the filter length must be done only after all filters are disabled.

12.7 Functional description

12.7.1 Pin control

Each port pin has a corresponding Pin Control register, PORT_PCRn, associated with it.

The upper half of the Pin Control register configures the pin's capability to either interrupt the CPU or request a DMA transfer, on a rising/falling edge or both edges as well as a logic level occurring on the port pin. It also includes a flag to indicate that an interrupt has occurred.

The lower half of the Pin Control register configures the following functions for each pin within the 32-bit port.

- Pullup or pulldown enable
- Drive strength and slew rate configuration
- Open drain enable
- Passive input filter enable
- Pin Muxing mode

The functions apply across all digital pin muxing modes and individual peripherals do not override the configuration in the Pin Control register. For example, if an I^2C function is enabled on a pin, that does not override the pullup or open drain configuration for that pin.

When the Pin Muxing mode is configured for analog or is disabled, all the digital functions on that pin are disabled. This includes the pullup and pulldown enables, output buffer enable, input buffer enable, and passive filter enable.

The LK bit (bit 15 of Pin Control Register PCR*n*) allows the configuration for each pin to be locked until the next system reset. When locked, writes to the lower half of that pin control register are ignored, although a bus error is not generated on an attempted write to a locked register.

The configuration of each Pin Control register is retained when the PORT module is disabled.

Whenever a pin is configured in any digital pin muxing mode, the input buffer for that pin is enabled allowing the pin state to be read via the corresponding GPIO Port Data Input Register (GPIO_PDIR) or allowing a pin interrupt or DMA request to be generated. If a pin is ever floating when its input buffer is enabled, then this can cause an increase in power consumption and must be avoided. A pin can be floating due to an input pin that is not connected or an output pin that has tri-stated (output buffer is disabled).

Enabling the internal pull resistor (or implementing an external pull resistor) will ensure a pin does not float when its input buffer is enabled; note that the internal pull resistor is automatically disabled whenever the output buffer is enabled allowing the Pull Enable bit to remain set. Configuring the Pin Muxing mode to disabled or analog will disable the pin's input buffer and results in the lowest power consumption.

12.7.2 Global pin control

The two global pin control registers allow a single register write to update the lower half of the pin control register on up to 16 pins, all with the same value. Registers that are locked cannot be written using the global pin control registers.

The global pin control registers are designed to enable software to quickly configure multiple pins within the one port for the same peripheral function. However, the interrupt functions cannot be configured using the global pin control registers.

The global pin control registers are write-only registers, that always read as 0.

12.7.3 External interrupts

The external interrupt capability of the PORT module is available in all digital pin muxing modes provided the PORT module is enabled.

Each pin can be individually configured for any of the following external interrupt modes:

- Interrupt disabled, default out of reset
- Active high level sensitive interrupt
- Active low level sensitive interrupt
- Rising edge sensitive interrupt
- Falling edge sensitive interrupt
- Rising and falling edge sensitive interrupt
- Rising edge sensitive DMA request
- Falling edge sensitive DMA request
- Rising and falling edge sensitive DMA request

The interrupt status flag is set when the configured edge or level is detected on the pin or at the output of the digital input filter, if the digital input digital filter is enabled. When not in Stop mode, the input is first synchronized to the bus clock to detect the configured level or edge transition.

The PORT module generates a single interrupt that asserts when the interrupt status flag is set for any enabled interrupt for that port. The interrupt negates after the interrupt status flags for all enabled interrupts have been cleared by writing a logic 1 to the ISF flag in either the PORT_ISFR or PORT_PCRn registers.

The PORT module generates a single DMA request that asserts when the interrupt status flag is set for any enabled DMA request in that port. The DMA request negates after the DMA transfer is completed, because that clears the interrupt status flags for all enabled DMA requests.

During Stop mode, the interrupt status flag for any enabled interrupt is asynchronously set if the required level or edge is detected. This also generates an asynchronous wake-up signal to exit the Low-Power mode.

12.7.4 Digital filter

The digital filter capabilities of the PORT module are available in all digital Pin Muxing modes if the PORT module is enabled.

The clock used for all digital filters within one port can be configured between the bus clock or the LPO clock. This selection must be changed only when all digital filters for that port are disabled. If the digital filters for a port are configured to use the bus clock, then the digital filters are bypassed for the duration of Stop mode. While the digital filters

are bypassed, the output of each digital filter always equals the input pin, but the internal state of the digital filters remains static and does not update due to any change on the input pin.

The filter width in clock size is the same for all enabled digital filters within one port and must be changed only when all digital filters for that port are disabled.

The output of each digital filter is logic zero after system reset and whenever a digital filter is disabled. After a digital filter is enabled, the input is synchronized to the filter clock, either the bus clock or the LPO clock. If the synchronized input and the output of the digital filter remain different for a number of filter clock cycles equal to the filter width register configuration, then the output of the digital filter updates to equal the synchronized filter input.

The maximum latency through a digital filter equals three filter clock cycles plus the filter width configuration register.

Chapter 13
System Integration Module (SIM)

13.1 Introduction

The System Integration Module (SIM) provides system control and chip configuration registers.

13.1.1 Features

Features of the SIM include:

- System clocking configuration
  - System clock divide values
  - Architectural clock gating control
  - USB clock selection and divide values
  - FlexIO clock source selection
  - LPI2C clock source selection
  - TPM clock source selection
  - LPUART clock source selection
- Flash and system RAM size configuration
- TPM external clock selection, channel 0 input capture source selection
- UART0 and UART1 receive/transmit source selection/configuration
- LPUART transmit source selection
- UART selection over USB pins
- FlexIO clock Slot 0 selection

13.2 Memory map and register definition

The SIM module contains many fields for selecting the clock source and dividers for various module clocks. See the Clock Distribution chapter for more information, including block diagrams and clock definitions.

NOTE

The SIM_SOPT1 register is located at a different base address than the other SIM registers.

SIM memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4004_7000	System Options Register 1 (SIM_SOPT1)	32	R/W	See section	13.2.1/199
4004_8004	System Options Register 2 (SIM_SOPT2)	32	R/W	0000_1000h	13.2.2/200
4004_8010	System Options Register 5 (SIM_SOPT5)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	13.2.3/202
4004_8018	System Options Register 7 (SIM_SOPT7)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	13.2.4/204
4004_8020	System Options Register 9 (SIM_SOPT9)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	13.2.5/205
4004_8024	System Device Identification Register (SIM_SDID)	32	R	See section	13.2.6/207
4004_8034	System Clock Gating Control Register 4 (SIM_SCGC4)	32	R/W	F000_0030h	13.2.7/209
4004_8038	System Clock Gating Control Register 5 (SIM_SCGC5)	32	R/W	0004_0182h	13.2.8/211
4004_803C	System Clock Gating Control Register 6 (SIM_SCGC6)	32	R/W	4000_0001h	13.2.9/212
4004_8040	System Clock Gating Control Register 7 (SIM_SCGC7)	32	R/W	0000_0002h	13.2.10/216
4004_8044	System Clock Divider Register 1 (SIM_CLKDIV1)	32	R/W	See section	13.2.11/216
4004_8048	System Clock Divider Register 2 (SIM_CLKDIV2)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	13.2.12/218
4004_804C	Flash Configuration Register 1 (SIM_FCFG1)	32	R	See section	13.2.13/219
4004_8050	Flash Configuration Register 2 (SIM_FCFG2)	32	R	See section	13.2.14/221
4004_8054	Unique Identification Register High (SIM_UIDH)	32	R	See section	13.2.15/221
4004_8058	Unique Identification Register Mid-High (SIM_UIDMH)	32	R	See section	13.2.16/222
4004_805C	Unique Identification Register Mid Low (SIM_UIDML)	32	R	See section	13.2.17/222
4004_8060	Unique Identification Register Low (SIM_UIDL)	32	R	See section	13.2.18/223
4004_8064	System Clock Divider Register 3 (SIM_CLKDIV3)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	13.2.19/223
4004_806C	Miscellaneous Control Register (SIM_MISCCTL)	32	R/W	0000_0003h	13.2.20/224

13.2.1 System Options Register 1 (SIM_SOPT1)

NOTE

The SOPT1 register is only reset on POR or LVD.

Address: 4004_7000h base + 0h offset = 4004_7000h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0			0									OSC32KSEL		OSC32KOUT	
W																
Reset	x*	x*	x*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	RAMSIZE				0						0					
W																
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

* Notes:
- Reset value loaded during System Reset from Flash IFR.
- x = Undefined at reset.

SIM_SOPT1 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–29 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
28–20 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
19–18 OSC32KSEL	32K oscillator clock select Selects the 32 kHz clock source (ERCLK32K) for LPTMR. This field is reset only on POR/LVD. 00 System oscillator (OSC32KCLK) 01 Reserved 10 RTC 32.768kHz oscillator 11 LPO 1 kHz
17–16 OSC32KOUT	32K Oscillator Clock Output Outputs the ERCLK32K on the selected pin in all modes of operation (including LLS/VLLS and System Reset), overriding the existing pin mux configuration for that pin. This field is reset only on POR/LVD. 00 ERCLK32K is not output. 01 ERCLK32K is output on PTE0. 10 ERCLK32K is output on PTE26. 11 Reserved.
15–12 RAMSIZE	RAM size This field specifies the amount of system RAM available on the device.

Table continues on the next page...

SIM_SOPT1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0001 8 KB 0011 16 KB 0100 24 KB 0101 32 KB 0110 48 KB 0111 64 KB 1000 96 KB 1001 128 KB 1011 256 KB
11–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

13.2.2 System Options Register 2 (SIM_SOPT2)

SOPT2 contains the controls for selecting many of the module clock source options on this device. See the Clock Distribution chapter for more information including clocking diagrams and definitions of device clocks.

Address: 4004_7000h base + 1004h offset = 4004_8004h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0		0		LPUARTSRC		TPMSRC		FLEXIOSRC		0			USBSRC	PLLFLLSEL	
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0			TRACECLKSEL	LPI2C0SRC		0		CLKOUTSEL			RTCCLKOUTSEL	LPI2C1SRC		0	
W																
Reset	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

SIM_SOPT2 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–30 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

Table continues on the next page...

SIM_SOPT2 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
29–28 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
27–26 LPUARTSRC	LPUART clock source select Selects the clock source for the LPUART transmit and receive clock. 00 Clock disabled 01 MCGFLLCLK , or MCGPLLCLK, or IRC48M clock as selected by SOPT2[PLLFLLSEL]. 10 OSCERCLK clock 11 MCGIRCLK clock
25–24 TPMSRC	TPM clock source select Selects the clock source for the TPM counter clock 00 Clock disabled 01 MCGFLLCLK , or MCGPLLCLK, or IRC48M clock as selected by SOPT2[PLLFLLSEL]. 10 OSCERCLK clock 11 MCGIRCLK clock
23–22 FLEXIOSRC	FlexIO Module Clock Source Select Selects the clock source for the FlexIO transmit and receive clock. 00 I2S0_MCLK or System clock, selected via SIM_MISCCTRL[FIEXIOS0] 01 MCGFLLCLK , or MCGPLLCLK, or IRC48M clock as selected by SOPT2[PLLFLLSEL]. 10 OSCERCLK clock 11 MCGIRCLK clock
21–19 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
18 USBSRC	USB clock source select Selects the clock source for the USB 48 MHz clock. 0 External bypass clock (USB_CLKIN). 1 MCGFLLCLK, or MCGPLLCLK, or IRC48M clock as selected by SOPT2[PLLFLLSEL], and then divided by the USB fractional divider as configured by SIM_CLKDIV2[USBFRAC, USBDIV].
17–16 PLLFLLSEL	PLL/FLL clock select Selects the high frequency clock for various peripheral clocking options. 00 MCGFLLCLK clock 01 MCGPLLCLK clock 10 Reserved 11 IRC48 MHz clock
15–13 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
12 TRACECLKSEL	Debug trace clock select Selects the core/system clock, or MCG output clock (MCGOUTCLK) as the trace clock source. 0 MCGOUTCLK 1 Core/system clock

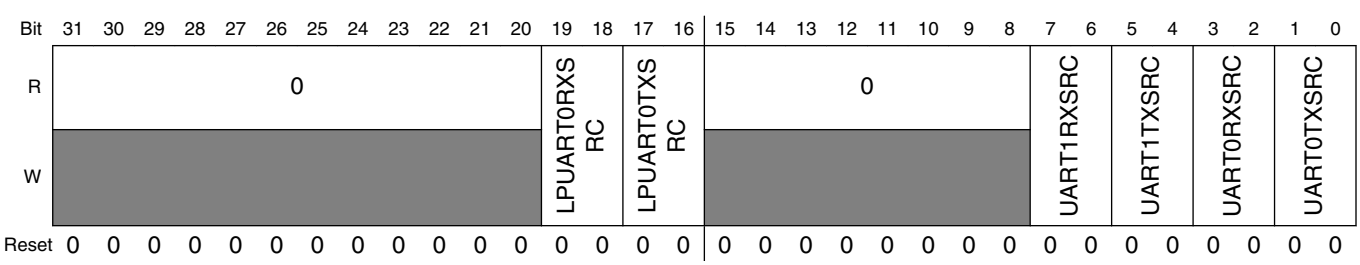
Table continues on the next page...

SIM_SOPT2 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
11–10 LPI2C0SRC	LPI2C0 source 00 Clock disabled 01 MCGFLLCLK , or MCGPLLCLK, or IRC48M clock as selected by SOPT2[PLLFLLSEL]. 10 OSCERCLK clock 11 MCGIRCLK clock
9–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
7–5 CLKOUTSEL	CLKOUT select Selects the clock to output on the CLKOUT pin. 000 Reserved 001 Reserved 010 Flash clock 011 LPO clock (1 kHz) 100 MCGIRCLK 101 RTC 32.768kHz clock 110 OSCERCLK0 111 IRC 48 MHz clock
4 RTCCLKOUTSEL	RTC clock out select Selects either the RTC 1 Hz clock or the 32.768kHz clock to be output on the RTC_CLKOUT pin. 0 RTC 1 Hz clock is output on the RTC_CLKOUT pin. 1 RTC 32.768kHz clock is output on the RTC_CLKOUT pin.
3–2 LPI2C1SRC	LPI2C1 source 00 Clock disabled 01 MCGFLLCLK , or MCGPLLCLK, or IRC48M clock as selected by SOPT2[PLLFLLSEL]. 10 OSCERCLK clock 11 MCGIRCLK clock
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

13.2.3 System Options Register 5 (SIM_SOPT5)

Address: 4004_7000h base + 1010h offset = 4004_8010h



SIM_SOPT5 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–20 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
19–18 LPUART0RXSRC	LPUART0 receive data source select Selects the source for the LPUART0 receive data. 00 LPUART0_RX pin 01 CMP0 output 10 Reserved 11 Reserved
17–16 LPUART0TXSRC	LPUART0 transmit data source select Selects the source for the UART0 transmit data. 00 LPUART0_TX pin 01 LPUART0_TX pin modulated with TPM1 channel 0 output 10 LPUART0_TX pin modulated with TPM2 channel 0 output 11 Reserved
15–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
7–6 UART1RXSRC	UART 1 receive data source select Selects the source for the UART 1 receive data. 00 UART1_RX pin 01 CMP0 output 10 Reserved 11 Reserved
5–4 UART1TXSRC	UART 1 transmit data source select Selects the source for the UART 1 transmit data. 00 UART1_TX pin 01 UART1_TX pin modulated with TPM1 channel 0 output 10 UART1_TX pin modulated with TPM2 channel 0 output 11 Reserved
3–2 UART0RXSRC	UART 0 receive data source select Selects the source for the UART 0 receive data. 00 UART0_RX pin 01 CMP0 output 10 Reserved 11 Reserved
UART0TXSRC	UART 0 transmit data source select Selects the source for the UART 0 transmit data. 00 UART0_TX pin 01 UART0_TX pin modulated with TPM1 channel 0 output

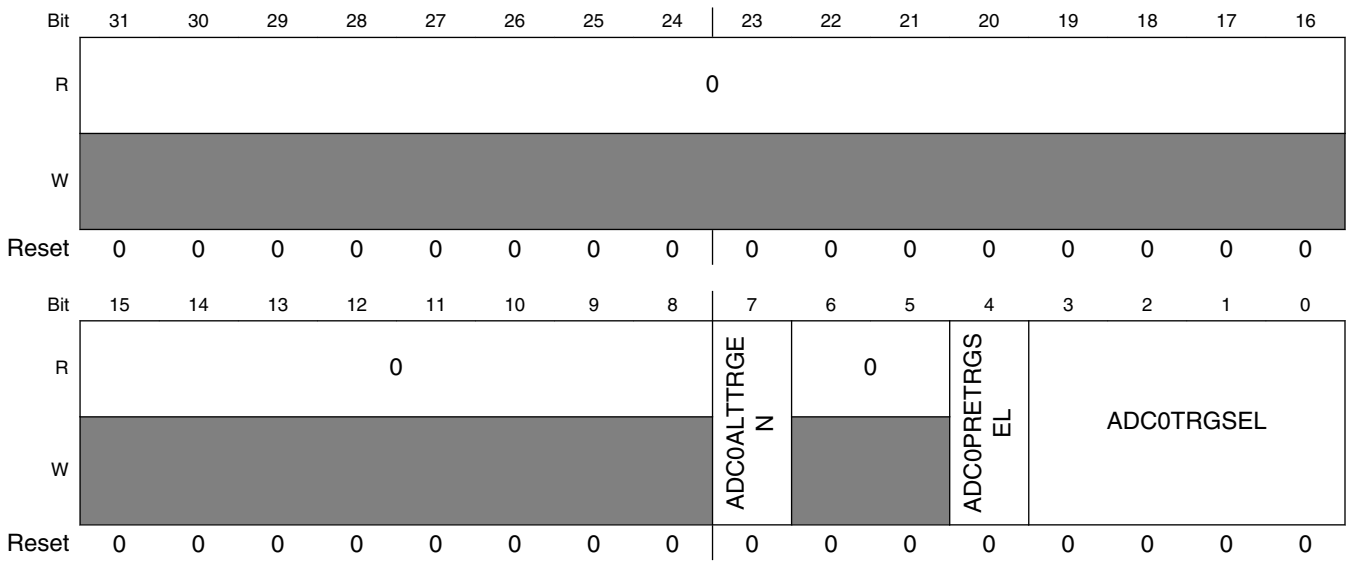
Table continues on the next page...

SIM_SOPT5 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	10 UART0_TX pin modulated with TPM2 channel 0 output 11 Reserved

13.2.4 System Options Register 7 (SIM_SOPT7)

Address: 4004_7000h base + 1018h offset = 4004_8018h



SIM_SOPT7 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
15–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
7 ADC0ALTTRGEN	ADC0 alternate trigger enable Enable alternative conversion triggers for ADC0. 0 PDB trigger selected for ADC0. 1 Alternate trigger selected for ADC0.
6–5 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
4 ADC0PRETRGSEL	ADC0 pretrigger select Selects the ADC0 pre-trigger source when alternative triggers are enabled through ADC0ALTTRGEN. This field is not used when the TPM trigger source is selected. 0 Pre-trigger A 1 Pre-trigger B

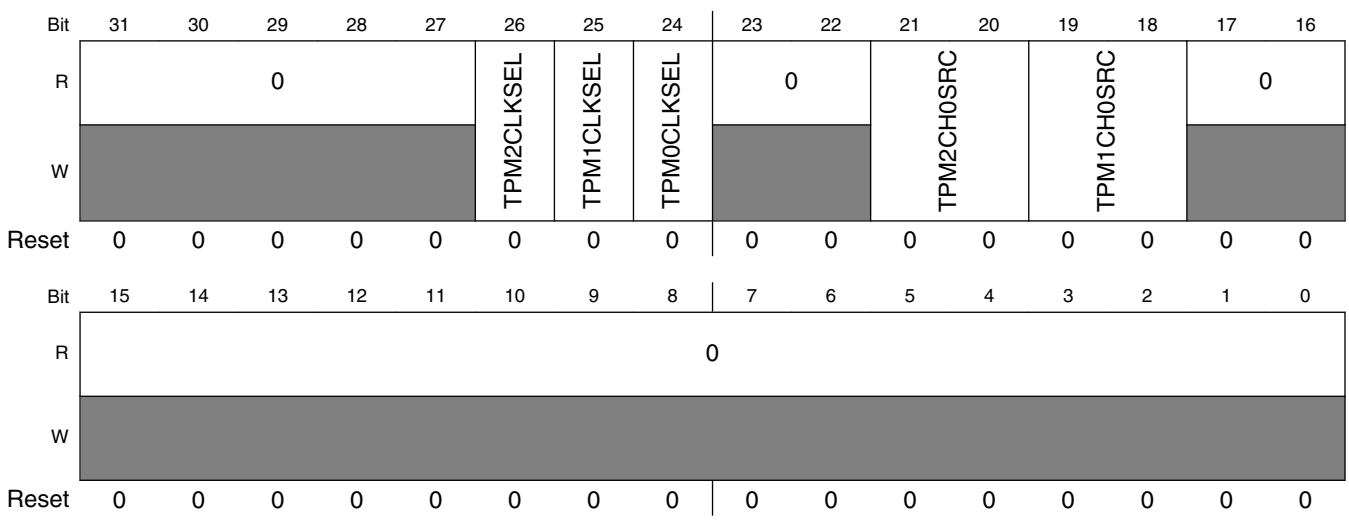
Table continues on the next page...

SIM_SOPT7 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
ADC0TRGSEL	ADC0 trigger select Selects the ADC0 trigger source when alternative triggers are functional in stop and VLPS modes. . 0000 PDB external trigger pin input (PDB0_EXTRG) 0001 High speed comparator 0 output 0010 Reserved 0011 Reserved 0100 PIT trigger 0 0101 PIT trigger 1 0110 PIT trigger 2 0111 PIT trigger 3 1000 TPM0 overflow 1001 TPM1 overflow 1010 TPM2 overflow 1011 Reserved 1100 RTC alarm 1101 RTC seconds 1110 Low-power timer (LPTMR) trigger 1111 TPM1 channel 0 (A pretrigger) and channel 1 (B pretrigger)

13.2.5 System Options Register 9 (SIM_SOPT9)

Address: 4004_7000h base + 1020h offset = 4004_8020h



SIM_SOPT9 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–27 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

Table continues on the next page...

SIM_SOPT9 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
26 TPM2CLKSEL	TPM2 External Clock Pin Select Selects the external pin used to drive the clock to the TPM2 module. **NOTE:** The selected pin must also be configured for the TPM external clock function through the appropriate pin control register in the port control module. 0 TPM_CLKIN0 pin 1 TPM_CLKIN1 pin
25 TPM1CLKSEL	TPM1 External Clock Pin Select Selects the external pin used to drive the clock to the TPM1 module. **NOTE:** The selected pin must also be configured for the TPM external clock function through the appropriate pin control register in the port control module. 0 TPM_CLKIN0 pin 1 TPM_CLKIN1 pin
24 TPM0CLKSEL	TPM0 External Clock Pin Select Selects the external pin used to drive the clock to the TPM0 module. **NOTE:** The selected pin must also be configured for the TPM external clock function through the appropriate pin control register in the port control module. 0 TPM_CLKIN0 pin 1 TPM_CLKIN1 pin
23–22 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
21–20 TPM2CH0SRC	TPM2 channel 0 input capture source select Selects the source for TPM2 channel 0 input capture. **NOTE:** When the TPM is not in input capture mode, clear this field. 00 TPM2_CH0 signal 01 CMP0 output 10 Reserved 11 Reserved
19–18 TPM1CH0SRC	TPM1 channel 0 input capture source select Selects the source for TPM1 channel 0 input capture. **NOTE:** When the TPM is not in input capture mode, clear this field. 00 TPM1_CH0 signal 01 CMP0 output 10 Reserved 11 USB start of frame pulse
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

13.2.6 System Device Identification Register (SIM_SDID)

Address: 4004_7000h base + 1024h offset = 4004_8024h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	FAMILYID				SUBFAMID				SERIESID				0				REVID				DIEID					FAMID			PINID			
W																																
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	0*	0*	0*	0*	x*	x*	x*	x*	1*	0*	1*	1*	1*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

* Notes:
- Reset value loaded during System Reset from Flash IFR.
- x = Undefined at reset.

SIM_SDID field descriptions

Field	Description
31–28 FAMILYID	Kinetis Family ID Specifies the Kinetis family of the device. 0000 KS0x Family 0001 KS1x Family 0010 KS2x Family 0011 KS3x Family 0100 KS4x Family 0101 KS5x Family 0110 KS6x Family 0111 KS7x Family 1000 KS8x Family 1001 KS9x Family
27–24 SUBFAMID	Kinetis Sub-Family ID Specifies the Kinetis sub-family of the device. 0000 KSx0 Subfamily 0010 KSx2 Subfamily 0100 KSx4 Subfamily 0110 KSx6 Subfamily 0111 KSx7 Subfamily
23–20 SERIESID	Kinetis Series ID Specifies the Kinetis series of the device. 0000 Kinetis K series 0001 Kinetis L series 0101 Kinetis W series 0110 Kinetis V series 0111 Kinetis KS series
19–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

Table continues on the next page...

SIM_SDID field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
15–12 REVID	Device revision number Specifies the silicon implementation number for the device.
11–7 DIEID	Device Die ID Specifies the silicon feature set identication number for the device.
6–4 FAMID	Kinetis family identification This field is maintained for compatibility only, but has been superceded by the SERIESID, FAMILYID and SUBFAMID fields in this register. 000 KS0x or KS1x 001 KS2x 010 KS3x 011 KS4x 100 KS5x 101 KS6x 110 KS7x 111 KS8x or KS9x
PINID	Pincount identification Specifies the pincount of the device. 0000 Reserved 0001 Reserved 0010 32-pin 0011 Reserved 0100 48-pin 0101 64-pin 0110 80-pin 0111 81-pin or 121-pin 1000 100-pin 1001 121-pin 1010 144-pin 1011 Custom pinout (WLCSP) 1100 169-pin 1101 Reserved 1110 256-pin 1111 Reserved

13.2.7 System Clock Gating Control Register 4 (SIM_SCGC4)

Address: 4004_7000h base + 1034h offset = 4004_8034h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	1	1	1	1	0							0	CMP	USBOTG	0	
W																
Reset	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0		0	UART2	UART1	UART0	0		LPI2C1	LPI2C0	1	1	0	0	EWM	0
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	0

SIM_SCGC4 field descriptions

Field	Description
31 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 1.
30 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 1.
29 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 1.
28 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 1.
27–21 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
20 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
19 CMP	Comparator Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the comparator module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
18 USBOTG	USB Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the USB module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
17–14 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
13 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

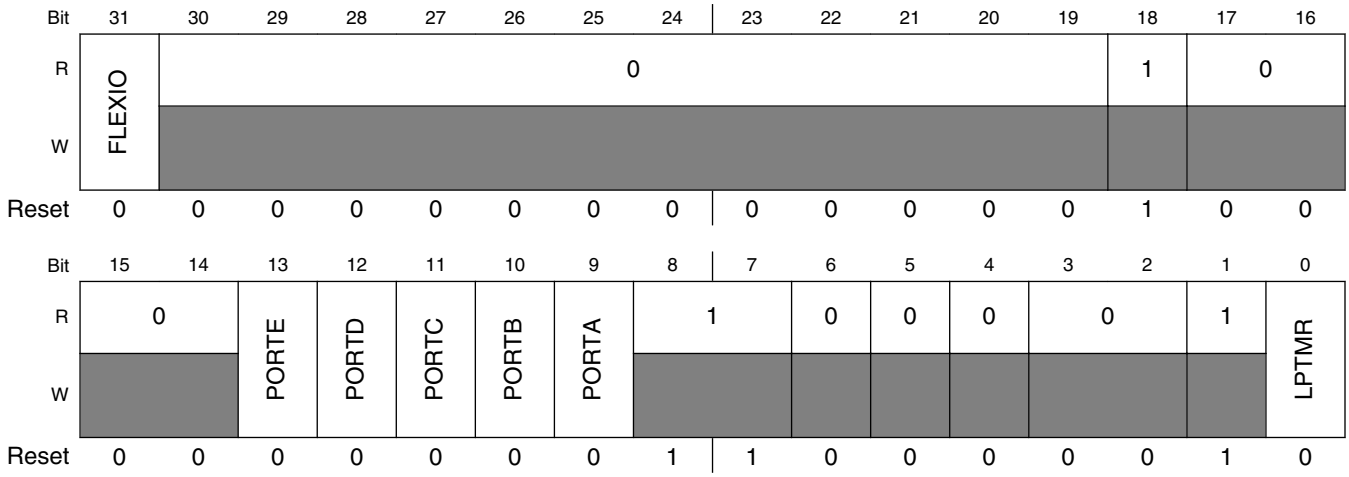
Table continues on the next page...

SIM_SCGC4 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
12 UART2	UART2 Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the UART2 module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
11 UART1	UART1 Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the UART1 module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
10 UART0	UART0 Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the UART0 module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
9–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
7 LPI2C1	LPI2C1 Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the LPI^{2}C1 module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
6 LPI2C0	LPI2C0 Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the LPI^{2}C0 module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
5 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 1.
4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 1.
3 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
2 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
1 EWM	EWM Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the EWM module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
0 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

13.2.8 System Clock Gating Control Register 5 (SIM_SCGC5)

Address: 4004_7000h base + 1038h offset = 4004_8038h



SIM_SCGC5 field descriptions

Field	Description
31 FLEXIO	FlexIO Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the FlexIO module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
30–19 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
18 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 1.
17–14 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
13 PORTE	Port E Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the Port E module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
12 PORTD	Port D Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the Port D module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
11 PORTC	Port C Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the Port C module.

Table continues on the next page...

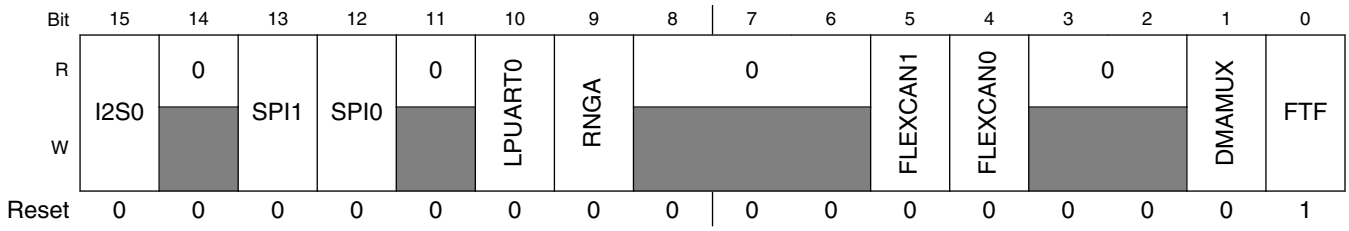
SIM_SCGC5 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
10 PORTB	Port B Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the Port B module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
9 PORTA	Port A Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the Port A module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
8–7 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 1.
6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
5 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
3–2 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
1 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 1.
0 LPTMR	Low Power Timer Access Control This bit controls software access to the Low Power Timer module. 0 Access disabled 1 Access enabled

13.2.9 System Clock Gating Control Register 6 (SIM_SCGC6)

Address: 4004_7000h base + 103Ch offset = 4004_803Ch

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	DAC0	1	RTC	0	ADC0	TPM2	TPM1	TPM0	PIT	PDB	0	0		CRC	0	I2S1
W																
Reset	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0



SIM_SCGC6 field descriptions

Field	Description
31 DAC0	DAC0 Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the DAC0 module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
30 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 1.
29 RTC	RTC Access Control This bit controls software access and interrupts to the RTC module. 0 Access and interrupts disabled 1 Access and interrupts enabled
28 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
27 ADC0	ADC0 Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the ADC0 module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
26 TPM2	TPM2 Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the TPM2 module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
25 TPM1	TPM1 Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the TPM1 module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
24 TPM0	TPM0 Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the TPM0 module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
23 PIT	PIT Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the PIT module.

Table continues on the next page...

SIM_SCGC6 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
22 PDB	PDB Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the PDB module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
21 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
20–19 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
18 CRC	CRC Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the CRC module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
17 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
16 I2S1	I2S1 Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the I^2S1 module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
15 I2S0	I2S0 Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the I^2S0 module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
14 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
13 SPI1	SPI1 Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the SPI1 module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
12 SPI0	SPI0 Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the SPI0 module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
11 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
10 LPUART0	LPUART0 Clock Gate Control

Table continues on the next page...

SIM_SCGC6 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	This bit controls the clock gate to the LPUART0 module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
9 RNGA	RNGA Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the RNGA module.
8–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
5 FLEXCAN1	FlexCAN1 Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the FlexCAN1 module. **NOTE:** This bit is only applicable for KS22. The device KS20 does not have CAN1 module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
4 FLEXCAN0	FlexCAN0 Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the FlexCAN0 module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
3–2 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
1 DMAMUX	DMA Mux Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the DMA Mux module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
0 FTF	Flash Memory Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the flash memory. Flash reads are still supported while the flash memory is clock gated, but entry into low power modes is blocked. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled

13.2.10 System Clock Gating Control Register 7 (SIM_SCGC7)

Address: 4004_7000h base + 1040h offset = 4004_8040h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0												0	0	DMA	0
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0

SIM_SCGC7 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
3 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
2 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
1 DMA	DMA Clock Gate Control This bit controls the clock gate to the DMA module. 0 Clock disabled 1 Clock enabled
0 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

13.2.11 System Clock Divider Register 1 (SIM_CLKDIV1)

When updating CLKDIV1, update all fields using the one write command.

NOTE

The CLKDIV1 register cannot be written to when the device is in VLPR mode.

Address: 4004_7000h base + 1044h offset = 4004_8044h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	OUTDIV1				OUTDIV2				0				OUTDIV4				0															
W																																
Reset	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	1*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*

* Notes:

- Reset value loaded during Syetem Reset from FTF_FOPT[LPBOOT].

SIM_CLKDIV1 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–28 OUTDIV1	Clock 1 output divider value This field sets the divide value for the core/system clock from MCGOUTCLK. At the end of reset, it is loaded with either 0000 or 0111 depending on FTF_FOPT[LPBOOT]. 0000 Divide-by-1. 0001 Divide-by-2. 0010 Divide-by-3. 0011 Divide-by-4. 0100 Divide-by-5. 0101 Divide-by-6. 0110 Divide-by-7. 0111 Divide-by-8. 1000 Divide-by-9. 1001 Divide-by-10. 1010 Divide-by-11. 1011 Divide-by-12. 1100 Divide-by-13. 1101 Divide-by-14. 1110 Divide-by-15. 1111 Divide-by-16.
27–24 OUTDIV2	Clock 2 output divider value This field sets the divide value for the bus clock from MCGOUTCLK. At the end of reset, it is loaded with either 0000 or 0111 depending on FTF_FOPT[LPBOOT]. The bus clock frequency must be an integer divide of the core/system clock frequency. 0000 Divide-by-1. 0001 Divide-by-2. 0010 Divide-by-3. 0011 Divide-by-4. 0100 Divide-by-5. 0101 Divide-by-6. 0110 Divide-by-7. 0111 Divide-by-8. 1000 Divide-by-9. 1001 Divide-by-10. 1010 Divide-by-11. 1011 Divide-by-12. 1100 Divide-by-13. 1101 Divide-by-14. 1110 Divide-by-15. 1111 Divide-by-16.
23–20 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

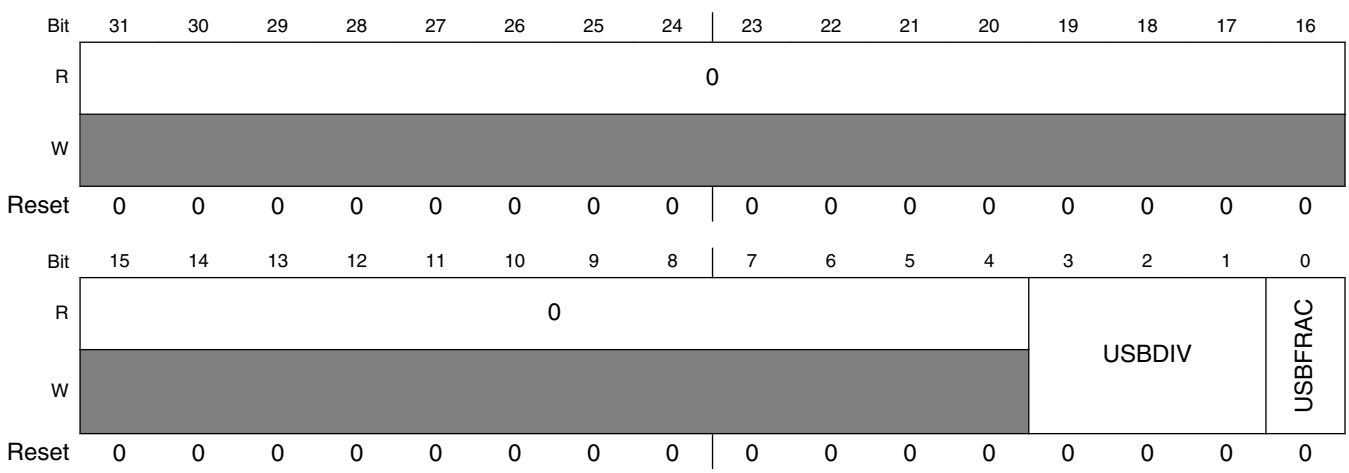
Table continues on the next page...

SIM_CLKDIV1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
19–16 OUTDIV4	Clock 4 output divider value This field sets the divide value for the flash clock from MCGOUTCLK. At the end of reset, it is loaded with either 0001 or 1111 depending on FTF_FOPT[LPBOOT]. The flash clock frequency must be an integer divide of the system clock frequency. 0000 Divide-by-1. 0001 Divide-by-2. 0010 Divide-by-3. 0011 Divide-by-4. 0100 Divide-by-5. 0101 Divide-by-6. 0110 Divide-by-7. 0111 Divide-by-8. 1000 Divide-by-9. 1001 Divide-by-10. 1010 Divide-by-11. 1011 Divide-by-12. 1100 Divide-by-13. 1101 Divide-by-14. 1110 Divide-by-15. 1111 Divide-by-16.
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

13.2.12 System Clock Divider Register 2 (SIM_CLKDIV2)

Address: 4004_7000h base + 1048h offset = 4004_8048h



SIM_CLKDIV2 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
3–1 USBDIV	USB clock divider divisor This field sets the divide value for the fractional clock divider when the MCGFLLCLK, or MCGPLLCLK, or IRC48M clock is the USB clock source (SOPT2[USBSRC] = 1). Divider output clock = Divider input clock × [(USBFRAC+1) / (USBDIV+1)]
0 USBFRAC	USB clock divider fraction This field sets the fraction multiply value for the fractional clock divider when the MCGFLLCLK, or MCGPLLCLK, or IRC48M clock is the USB clock source (SOPT2[USBSRC] = 1). Divider output clock = Divider input clock × [(USBFRAC+1) / (USBDIV+1)]

13.2.13 Flash Configuration Register 1 (SIM_FCFG1)

Address: 4004_7000h base + 104Ch offset = 4004_804Ch

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	1				PFSIZE				0				1			
W																
Reset	1*	1*	1*	1*	1*	1*	1*	1*	0*	0*	0*	0*	1*	1*	1*	1*

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0				1				0						FLASHDOZE	FLASHDIS
W																
Reset	0*	0*	0*	0*	1*	1*	1*	1*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*

* Notes:

- Reset value loaded during System Reset from Flash IFR.

SIM_FCFG1 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–28 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 1.
27–24 PFSIZE	Program flash size This field specifies the amount of program flash memory available on the device . Undefined values are reserved. 0011 32 KB of program flash memory 0101 64 KB of program flash memory 0111 128 KB of program flash memory 1001 256 KB of program flash memory 1011 512 KB of program flash memory 1101 1024 KB of program flash memory 1111 256 KB of program flash memory. 1111 means maximum flash size available for this SoC.
23–20 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
19–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 1.
15–12 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
11–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 1.
7–2 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
1 FLASHDOZE	Flash Doze When set, Flash memory is disabled for the duration of Wait mode. An attempt by the DMA or other bus master to access the Flash when the Flash is disabled will result in a bus error. This bit should be clear during VLP modes. The Flash will be automatically enabled again at the end of Wait mode so interrupt vectors do not need to be relocated out of Flash memory. The wakeup time from Wait mode is extended when this bit is set. 0 Flash remains enabled during Wait mode 1 Flash is disabled for the duration of Wait mode
0 FLASHDIS	Flash Disable Flash accesses are disabled (and generate a bus error) and the Flash memory is placed in a low power state. This bit should not be changed during VLP modes. Relocate the interrupt vectors out of Flash memory before disabling the Flash. 0 Flash is enabled 1 Flash is disabled

13.2.14 Flash Configuration Register 2 (SIM_FCFG2)

Address: 4004_7000h base + 1050h offset = 4004_8050h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0	MAXADDR0							1	0						
W																
Reset	0*	0*	1*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	1*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0															
W																
Reset	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*

* Notes:
- Reset value partially loaded during System Reset from Flash IFR.

SIM_FCFG2 field descriptions

Field	Description
31 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
30–24 MAXADDR0	Max address block 0 This field concatenated with 13 trailing zeros indicates the first invalid address of each program flash block. For example, if MAXADDR0 = 0x20 the first invalid address of flash block 0 is 0x0004_0000. This would be the MAXADDR0 value for a device with 256 KB program flash in flash block 0.
23 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 1.
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

13.2.15 Unique Identification Register High (SIM_UIDH)

Address: 4004_7000h base + 1054h offset = 4004_8054h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	UID																															
W																																
Reset	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*	0*

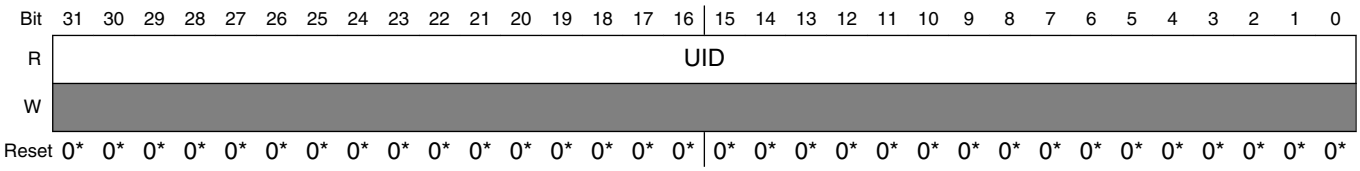
* Notes:
- Reset value loaded during System Reset from Flash IFR.

SIM_UIDH field descriptions

Field	Description
UID	Unique Identification Unique identification for the device.

13.2.16 Unique Identification Register Mid-High (SIM_UIDMH)

Address: 4004_7000h base + 1058h offset = 4004_8058h



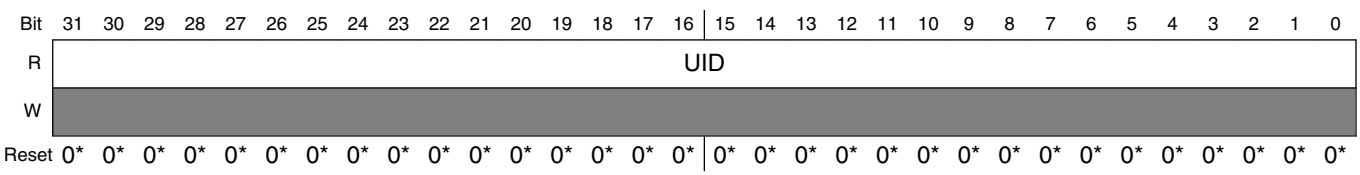
* Notes:
- Reset value loaded during System Reset from Flash IFR.

SIM_UIDMH field descriptions

Field	Description
UID	Unique Identification Unique identification for the device.

13.2.17 Unique Identification Register Mid Low (SIM_UIDML)

Address: 4004_7000h base + 105Ch offset = 4004_805Ch



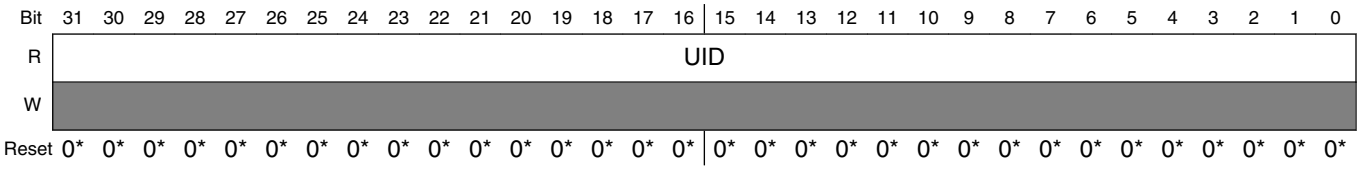
* Notes:
- Reset value loaded during System Reset from Flash IFR.

SIM_UIDML field descriptions

Field	Description
UID	Unique Identification Unique identification for the device.

13.2.18 Unique Identification Register Low (SIM_UIDL)

Address: 4004_7000h base + 1060h offset = 4004_8060h



* Notes:
- Reset value loaded during System Reset from Flash IFR.

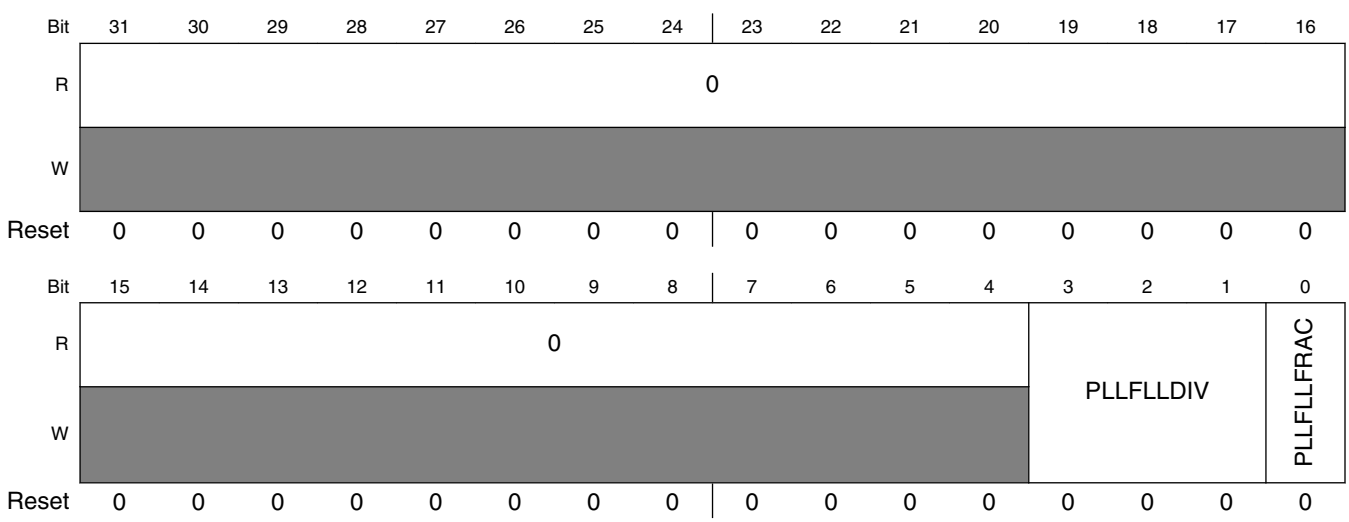
SIM_UIDL field descriptions

Field	Description
UID	Unique Identification Unique identification for the device.

13.2.19 System Clock Divider Register 3 (SIM_CLKDIV3)

This register should only be written when the LPUART, LPI2C and TPM modules are disabled.

Address: 4004_7000h base + 1064h offset = 4004_8064h

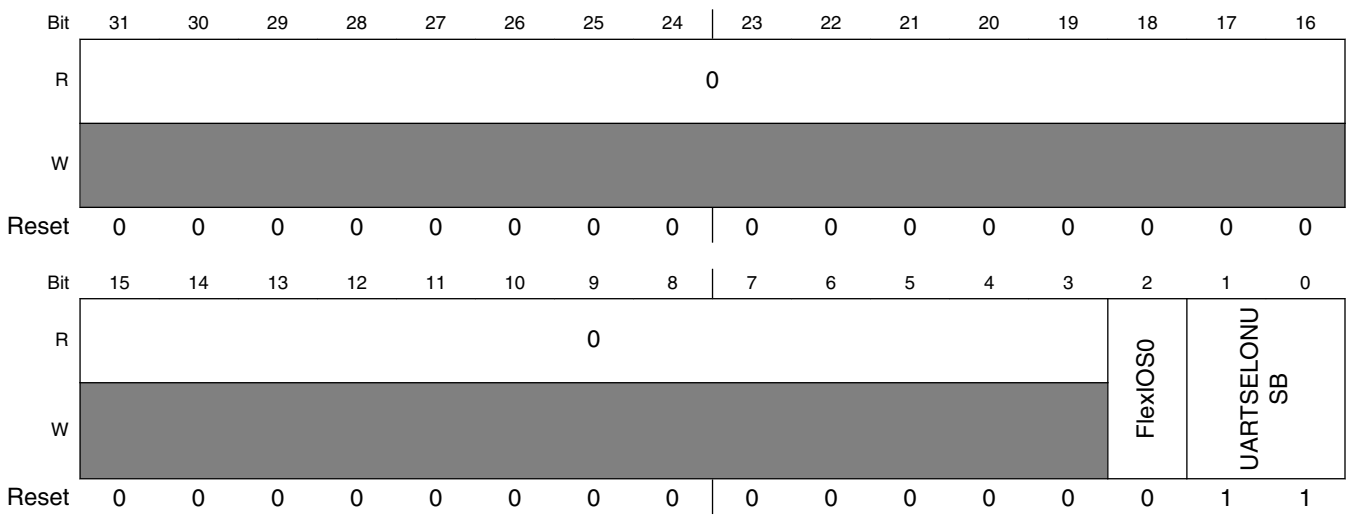


SIM_CLKDIV3 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
3–1 PLLFLLDIV	PLLFLL clock divider divisor This field sets the divide value for the fractional clock divider used as a source for various peripheral clocks. The source clock for the fractional clock divider is set by the SOPT2 PLLFLLSEL register bit. Divider output clock = Divider input clock × ((PLLFLLFRAC+1)/(PLLFLLDIV+1))
0 PLLFLLFRAC	PLLFLL clock divider fraction This field sets the divide value for the fractional clock divider used as a source for various peripherals. The source clock for the fractional clock divider is set by the SOPT2 PLLFLLSEL register bit. Divider output clock = Divider input clock × ((PLLFLLFRAC+1)/(PLLFLLDIV+1))

13.2.20 Miscellaneous Control Register (SIM_MISCCTL)

Address: 4004_7000h base + 106Ch offset = 4004_806Ch



SIM_MISCCTL field descriptions

Field	Description
31–3 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
2 FlexIOS0	FlexIO clock Slot 0 selection 0 system clock 1 I2S0_MCLK
UARTSELONUSB	UART Selection over USB DP/DM pins. For more details, see the "UART Over USB Capability" section in the USB chapter.

Table continues on the next page...

SIM_MISCCTL field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	00 UART0 01 UART1 10 UART2 11 LPUART (default)

13.3 Functional description

For more information about the functions of SIM, see the Introduction section.

Chapter 14
Kinetis Flashloader

14.1 Chip-specific Information for this Module

14.1.1 Kinetis Flashloader

- The Kinetis Flashloader application is preprogrammed into the Kinetis flash during manufacturing and enables flash programming without the need for a debugger. For the KS series microcontroller, Kinetis Flashloader supports UART, LPI2C, SPI, USB-HID and CAN peripheral interfaces in communicating with the master/host in provisioning user application image on the flash. The below table shows the pin configuration used by the flashloader application for the supported peripherals..

Table 14-1. Kinetis Flashloader pin assignment

Peripheral Interface	Assigned Pins	Module Instances	ALTMUX column
UART	PTE0,UART1_TX	1	3
	PTE1,UART1_RX		
LPI2C	PTB0,LPI2C0_SCL	0	2
	PTB1,LPI2C0_SDA		
SPI	PTD4,SPI1_PCS0	1	7
	PTD5,SPI1_SCK		
	PTD6,SPI1_SOUT		
	PTD7,SPI1_SIN		
CAN	PTB18,CAN0_TX	0	2
	PTB19,CAN0_RX		
USB	USB0_DP	0	-
	USB0_DM		
	USBVDD		

NOTE

"I2C" naming stands for "LPI2C" for this device, in the following sections of this chapter.

14.2 Introduction

The Kinetis devices *that do not have an on-chip ROM* are shipped with the pre-programmed Kinetis Flashloader in the on-chip flash memory, for one-time, in-system factory programming. The Kinetis Flashloader's main task is to load a customer firmware image into the flash memory. The image on the flash has 2 programs: flashloader_loader and flashloader. After a device reset, the flashloader_loader program starts its execution first. The flashloader_loader program copies the contents of flashloader image from the flash to the on-chip RAM; the device then switches execution to the flashloader program to execute from RAM.

For this device, the Kinetis Flashloader can interface with USB, UART, CAN, I2C, and SPI peripherals in slave mode and respond to the commands sent by a master (or host) communicating on one of those ports. The host/master can be a firmware-download application running on a PC or an embedded host communicating with the Kinetis Flashloader. Regardless of the host/master (PC or embedded host), the Kinetis Flashloader always uses a command protocol to communicate with that host/master. Commands are provided to write to memory (flash or RAM), erase flash, and get/set flashloader options and property values. The host application can query the set of available commands.

This chapter describes Kinetis Flashloader features, functionality, command structure and which peripherals are supported.

Features supported by the Kinetis Flashloader :

- Supports USB FS, UART, CAN, I2C, and SPI peripheral interfaces
- Automatic detection of the active peripheral
- UART and CAN peripherals with autobaud
- Common packet-based protocol for all peripherals
- Packet error detection and retransmission
- Protection of RAM used by the flashloader while it is running
- Provides command to read properties of the device, such as flash and RAM size

Table 14-2. Commands supported by the Kinetis Flashloader

Command	Description	When flash security is enabled, then this command is
Call	Runs user application code and returns control to bootloader	Not supported
Execute	Run user application code that never returns control to the flashloader	Not supported
FillMemory	Fill a range of bytes in flash with a word pattern	Not supported
FlashEraseAll	Erase the entire flash array	Not supported
FlashEraseRegion	Erase a range of sectors in flash	Not supported
FlashProgramOnce	Writes data provided in a command packet to a specified range of bytes in the program once field	Not supported
FlashReadOnce	Returns the contents of the program once field by given index and byte count	Not supported
FlashReadResource	Returns the contents of the IFR field or Flash firmware ID, by given offset, byte count and option	Not supported
WriteMemory	Write data to memory	Not supported
ReadMemory	Read data from memory	Not supported
GetProperty	Get the current value of a property	Supported
ReceiveSbFile	Receive an SB file (which is generated by the elftosb tool)	Supported if the SB file is encrypted. See the SB File Decryption Support section for more details.
Reset	Reset the chip	Supported
SetProperty	Attempt to modify a writable property	Supported

14.3 Functional Description

The following sub-sections describe the Kinetis Flashloader functionality.

14.3.1 Memory Maps

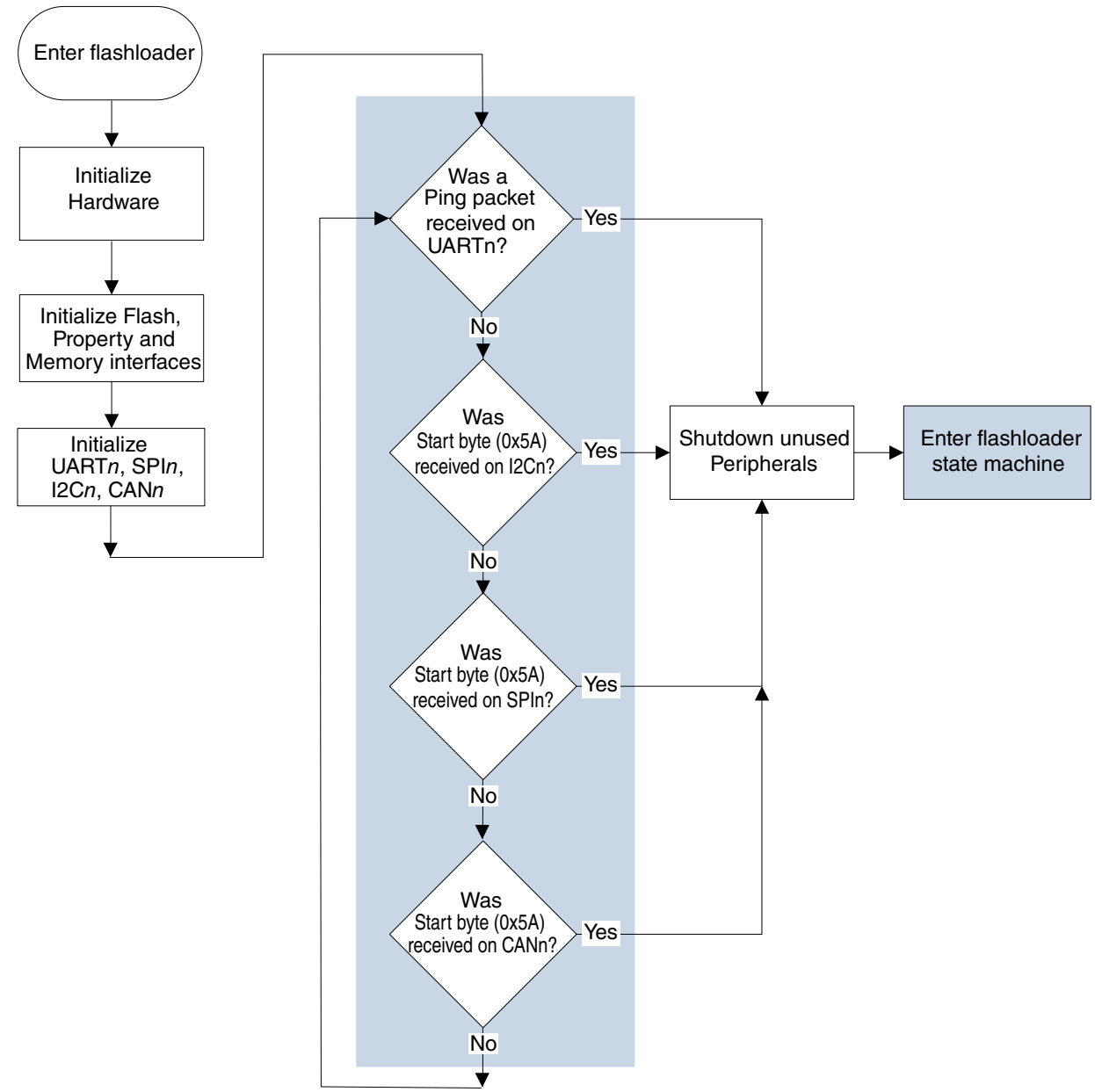
While executing, the Kinetis Flashloader uses RAM memory.

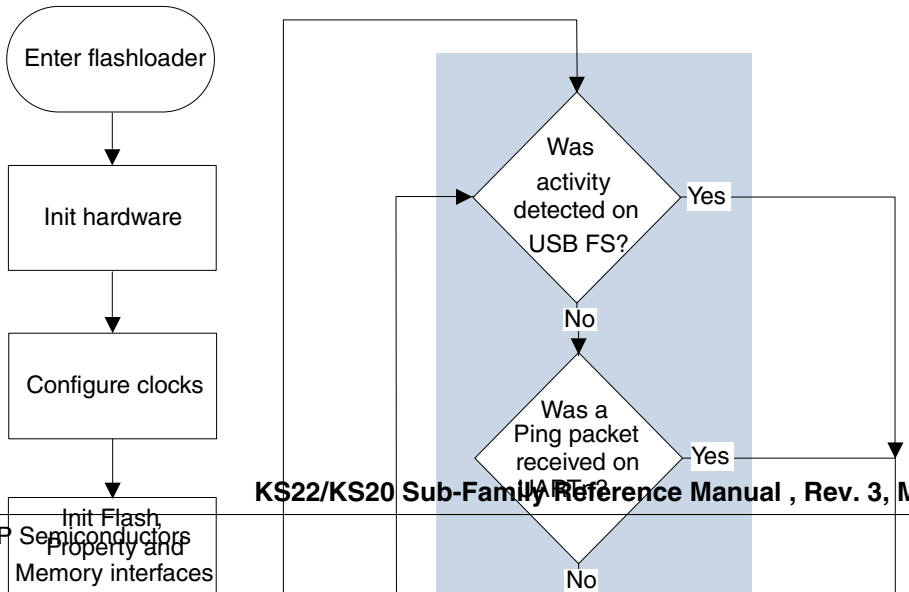
The Kinetis Flashloader requires a minimum memory space of 32 KB of RAM. For Kinetis devices with less than this amount of on-chip RAM, the Kinetis Flashloader is not available.

14.3.2 Start-up Process

As the Kinetis Flashloader begins executing, flashloader operations begin:

1. The flashloader's temporary working area in RAM is initialized.
2. All supported peripherals are initialized.
3. The flashloader waits for communication to begin on a peripheral.
    - There is no timeout for the active peripheral detection process.
    - If communication is detected, then all inactive peripherals are shut down, and the command phase is entered.


Enter flashloader
Initialize Hardware
Initialize Flash, Property and Memory interfaces
Initialize UARTn, SPIn, I2Cn, CANn
Was a Ping packet received on UARTn?
Yes
No
Was Start byte (0x5A) received on I2Cn?
Yes
No
Was Start byte (0x5A) received on SPIn?
Yes
No
Was Start byte (0x5A) received on CANn?
Yes
No
Shutdown unused Peripherals
Enter flashloader state machine


Enter flashloader
Init hardware
Configure clocks
Init Flash, Property and Memory interfaces
Was activity detected on USB FS?
Yes
No
Was a Ping packet received on UART0?
Yes
No

14.3.3 Clock Configuration

The Kinetis Flashloader enables the internal 48 MHz reference clock, and after the flashloader exits, the clock configuration is set to the reset state configuration.

14.3.4 Flashloader Protocol

This section explains the general protocol for the packet transfers between the host and the Kinetis Flashloader. The description includes the transfer of packets for different transactions, such as commands with no data phase and commands with incoming or outgoing data phase. The next section describes various packet types used in a transaction.

Each command sent from the host is replied to with a response command.

Commands may include an optional data phase:

- If the data phase is **incoming** (from host to flashloader), then the data phase is part of the **original command**.
- If the data phase is **outgoing** (from flashloader to host), then the data phase is part of the **response command**.

NOTE

In all protocols (described in the next subsections), the Ack sent in response to a Command or Data packet can arrive at any time *before, during, or after* the Command/Data packet has processed.

14.3.4.1 Command with no data phase

The protocol for a command with no data phase contains:

- Command packet (from host)
- Generic response command packet (to host)

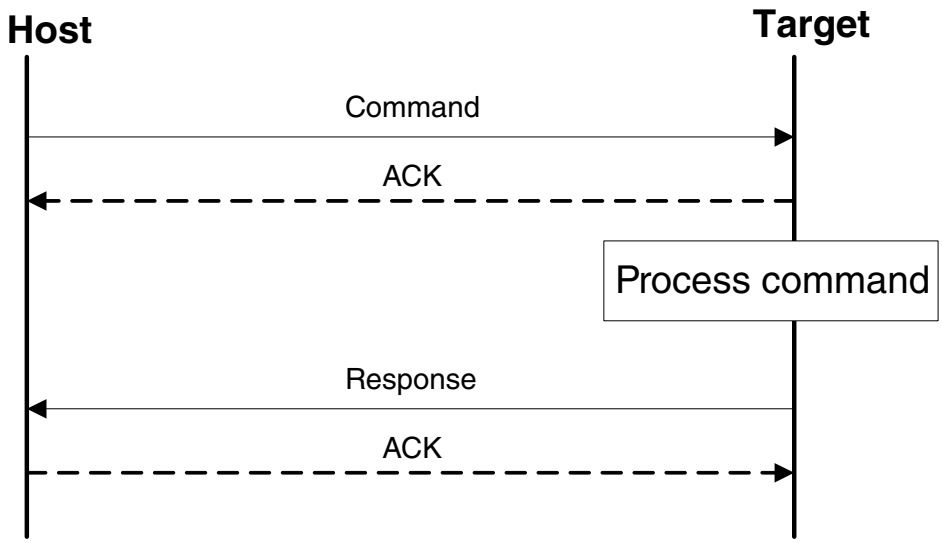


Figure 14-2. Command with No Data Phase

14.3.4.2 Command with incoming data phase

The protocol for a command with an incoming data phase contains:

- Command packet (from host)
- Generic response command packet (to host)
- Incoming data packets (from host)
- Generic response command packet (to host)

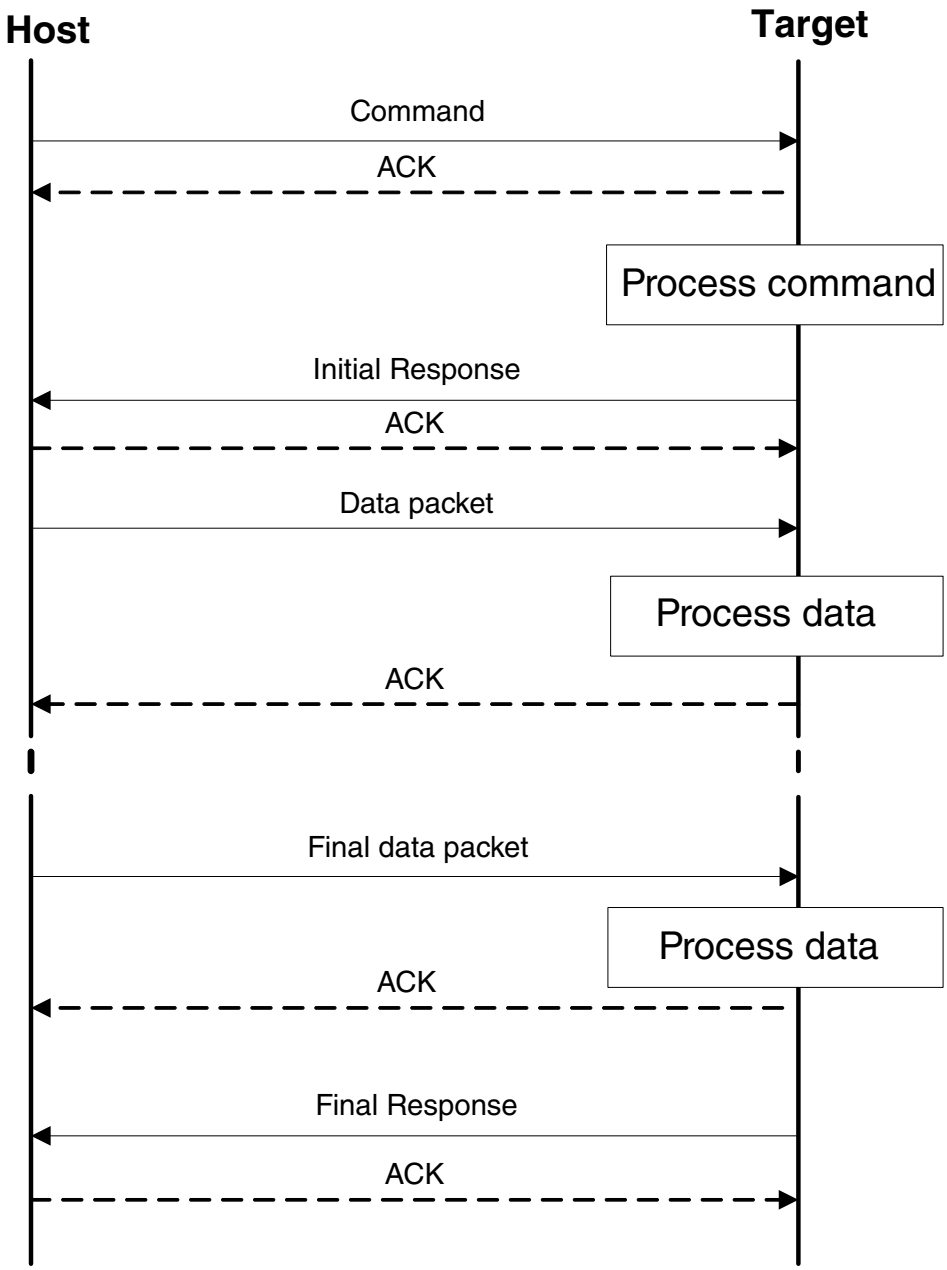


Figure 14-3. Command with incoming data phase

NOTE

- The host may not send any further packets while it (the host) is waiting for the response to a command.
- If the Generic Response packet prior to the start of the data phase does not have a status of kStatus_Success, then the data phase is aborted.
- Data phases may be aborted by the receiving side by sending the final Generic Response early with a status of

kStatus_AbortDataPhase. The host may abort the data phase early by sending a zero-length data packet.
- The final Generic Response packet *sent after the data phase* includes the status for the entire operation.

14.3.4.3 Command with outgoing data phase

The protocol for a command with an outgoing data phase contains:
- Command packet (from host)
- ReadMemory Response command packet (to host) (kCommandFlag_HasDataPhase set)
- Outgoing data packets (to host)
- Generic response command packet (to host)

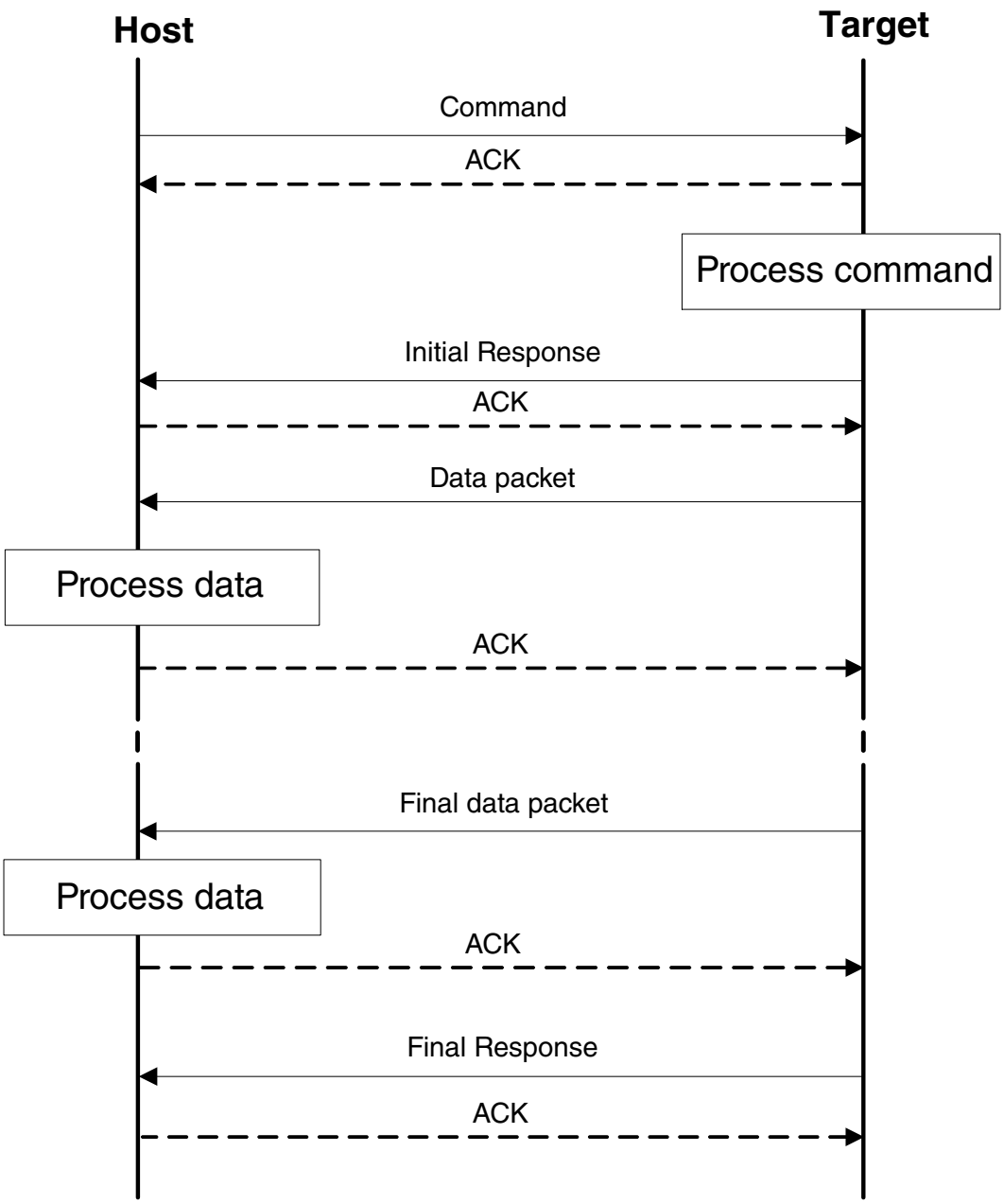


Figure 14-4. Command with outgoing data phase

NOTE

- For the outgoing data phase sequence above, the data phase is really considered part of the response command.
- The host may not send any further packets while it (the host) is waiting for the response to a command.
- If the ReadMemory Response command packet prior to the start of the data phase does not contain the kCommandFlag_HasDataPhase flag, then the data phase is aborted.

- Data phases may be aborted by the host sending the final Generic Response early with a status of kStatus_AbortDataPhase. The sending side may abort the data phase early by sending a zero-length data packet.
- The final Generic Response packet *sent after the data phase* includes the status for the entire operation.

14.3.5 Flashloader Packet Types

The Kinetis Flashloader device works in slave mode. All data communication is initiated by a host, which is either a PC or an embedded host . The Kinetis Flashloader device is the target, which receives a command or data packet. All data communication between host and target is packetized.

NOTE

The term "target" refers to the "Kinetis Flashloader device."

There are 6 types of packets used in the device:

- Ping packet
- Ping Response packet
- Framing packet
- Command packet
- Data packet
- Response packet

All fields in the packets are in little-endian byte order.

14.3.5.1 Ping packet

The Ping packet is the first packet sent from a host to the target (Kinetis Flashloader), to establish a connection on a selected peripheral. For a UART peripheral, the Ping packet is used to determine the baudrate. A Ping packet must be sent before any other communications. In response to a Ping packet, the target sends a Ping Response packet.

Table 14-3. Ping Packet Format

Byte #	Value	Name
0	0x5A	start byte
1	0xA6	ping

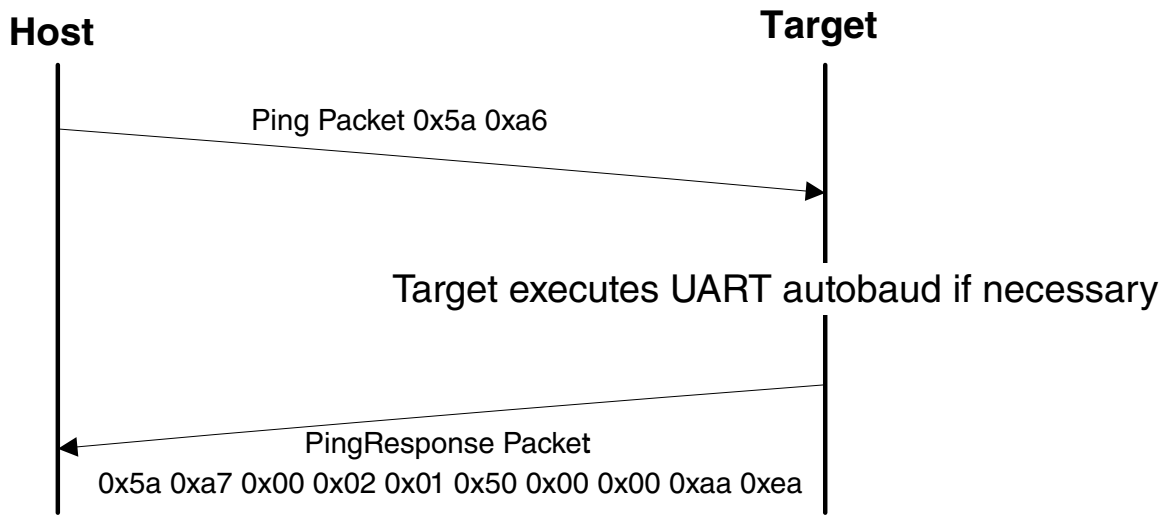


Figure 14-5. Ping Packet Protocol Sequence

14.3.5.2 Ping Response Packet

The target (Kinetis Flashloader) sends a Ping Response packet back to the host after receiving a Ping packet. If communication is over a UART peripheral, the target uses the incoming Ping packet to determine the baud rate before replying with the Ping Response packet. Once the Ping Response packet is received by the host, the connection is established, and the host starts sending commands to the target (Kinetis Flashloader).

Table 14-4. Ping Response Packet Format

Byte #	Value	Parameter
0	0x5A	start byte
1	0xA7	Ping response code
2		Protocol bugfix
3		Protocol minor
4		Protocol major
5		Protocol name = 'P' (0x50)
6		Options low
7		Options high
8		CRC16 low
9		CRC16 high

14.3.5.3 Framing Packet

The framing packet is used for flow control and error detection, and it (the framing packet) wraps command and data packets as well.

The framing packet described in this section is used for serial peripherals including UART, I2C and SPI. The USB HID peripheral does not use framing packets. Instead, the packetization inherent in the USB protocol itself is used. Please refer to the USB peripheral section for details.

Table 14-5. Framing Packet Format

Byte #	Value	Parameter	
0	0x5A	start byte	
1		packetType	
2		length_low	Length is a 16-bit field that specifies the entire command or data packet size in bytes.
3		length_high	
4		crc16_low	This is a 16-bit field. The CRC16 value covers entire framing packet, including the start byte and command or data packets, but does not include the CRC bytes. See the CRC16 algorithm after this table.
5		crc16_high	
6 . . .n		Command or Data packet payload	

A special framing packet that contains only a start byte and a packet type is used for synchronization between the host and target.

Table 14-6. Special Framing Packet Format

Byte #	Value	Parameter
0	0x5A	start byte
1	0xA*n*	packetType

The Packet Type field specifies the type of the packet from one of the defined types (below):

Table 14-7. packetType Field

packetType	Name	Description
0xA1	kFramingPacketType_Ack	The previous packet was received successfully; the sending of more packets is allowed.
0xA2	kFramingPacketType_Nak	The previous packet was corrupted and must be re-sent.
0xA3	kFramingPacketType_AckAbort	Data phase is being aborted.
0xA4	kFramingPacketType_Command	The framing packet contains a command packet payload.
0xA5	kFramingPacketType_Data	The framing packet contains a data packet payload.

Table continues on the next page...

Table 14-7. packetType Field (continued)

packetType	Name	Description
0xA6	kFramingPacketType_Ping	Sent to verify the other side is alive. Also used for UART autobaud.
0xA7	kFramingPacketType_PingResponse	A response to Ping; contains the framing protocol version number and options.

14.3.5.4 Command packet

The command packet carries a 32-bit command header and a list of 32-bit parameters.

Table 14-8. Command Packet Format

Command Packet Format (32 bytes)										
Command Header (4 bytes)				28 bytes for Parameters (Max 7 parameters)						
Tag	Flags	Rsvd	Param Count	Param1 (32-bit)	Param2 (32-bit)	Param3 (32-bit)	Param4 (32-bit)	Param5 (32-bit)	Param6 (32-bit)	Param7 (32-bit)
byte 0	byte 1	byte 2	byte 3							

Table 14-9. Command Header Format

Byte #	Command Header Field	
0	Command or Response tag	The command header is 4 bytes long, with these fields.
1	Flags	
2	Reserved. Should be 0x00.	
3	ParameterCount	

The header is followed by 32-bit parameters up to the value of the ParameterCount field specified in the header. Because a command packet is 32 bytes long, only 7 parameters can fit into the command packet.

Command packets are also used by the target to send responses back to the host. As mentioned earlier, command packets and data packets are embedded into framing packets for all of the transfers.

Table 14-10. Commands that are supported

Command	Name
0x01	FlashEraseAll
0x02	FlashEraseRegion
0x03	ReadMemory
0x04	WriteMemory

Table continues on the next page...

Table 14-10. Commands that are supported (continued)

Command	Name
0x05	FillMemory
0x06	Reserved
0x07	GetProperty
0x08	ReceiveSBFile
0x09	Execute
0x0A	Call
0x0B	Reset
0x0C	SetProperty
0x0D	Reserved
0x0E	FlashProgramOnce
0x0F	FlashReadOnce
0x10	FlashReadResource
0x11	Reserved

Table 14-11. Responses that are supported

Response	Name
0xA0	GenericResponse
0xA3	ReadMemoryResponse (used for sending responses to ReadMemory command only)
0xA7	GetPropertyResponse (used for sending responses to GetProperty command only)
0xAF	FlashReadOnceResponse (used for sending responses to FlashReadOnce command only)
0xB0	FlashReadResourceResponse (used for sending responses to FlashReadResource command only)

Flags: Each command packet contains a Flag byte. Only bit 0 of the flag byte is used. If bit 0 of the flag byte is set to 1, then data packets will follow in the command sequence. The number of bytes that will be transferred in the data phase is determined by a command-specific parameter in the parameters array.

ParameterCount: The number of parameters included in the command packet.

Parameters: The parameters are word-length (32 bits). With the default maximum packet size of 32 bytes, a command packet can contain up to 7 parameters.

14.3.5.5 Data packet

The data packet carries just the data, either host sending data to target, or target sending data to host. The data transfer direction is determined by the last command sent from the host. The data packet is also wrapped within a framing packet, to ensure the correct packet data is received.

The contents of a data packet are simply the data itself. There are no other fields, so that the most data per packet can be transferred. Framing packets are responsible for ensuring that the correct packet data is received.

14.3.5.6 Response packet

The responses are carried using the same command packet format wrapped with framing packet data. Types of responses include:

- GenericResponse
- GetPropertyResponse
- ReadMemoryResponse
- FlashReadOnceResponse
- FlashReadResourceResponse

GenericResponse: After the Kinetis Flashloader has processed a command, the flashloader will send a generic response with status and command tag information to the host. The generic response is the last packet in the command protocol sequence. The generic response packet contains the framing packet data and the command packet data (with generic response tag = 0xA0) and a list of parameters (defined in the next section). The parameter count field in the header is always set to 2, for status code and command tag parameters.

Table 14-12. GenericResponse Parameters

Byte #	Parameter	Descripton
0 - 3	Status code	The Status codes are errors encountered during the execution of a command by the target (Kinetis Flashloader). If a command succeeds, then a kStatus_Success code is returned. Table 14-48, Kinetis Flashloader Status Error Codes, lists the status codes returned to the host by the Kinetis Flashloader.
4 - 7	Command tag	The Command tag parameter identifies the response to the command sent by the host.

GetPropertyResponse: The GetPropertyResponse packet is sent by the target in response to the host query that uses the GetProperty command. The GetPropertyResponse packet contains the framing packet data and the command packet data, with the command/response tag set to a GetPropertyResponse tag value (0xA7).

The parameter count field in the header is set to greater than 1, to always include the status code and one or many property values.

Table 14-13. GetPropertyResponse Parameters

Byte #	Value	Parameter
0 - 3		Status code
4 - 7		Property value
. . .		. . .
		Can be up to maximum 6 property values, limited to the size of the 32-bit command packet and property type.

ReadMemoryResponse: The ReadMemoryResponse packet is sent by the target in response to the host sending a ReadMemory command. The ReadMemoryResponse packet contains the framing packet data and the command packet data, with the command/response tag set to a ReadMemoryResponse tag value (0xA3), the flags field set to kCommandFlag_HasDataPhase (1).

The parameter count set to 2 for the status code and the data byte count parameters shown below.

Table 14-14. ReadMemoryResponse Parameters

Byte #	Parameter	Descripton
0 - 3	Status code	The status of the associated Read Memory command.
4 - 7	Data byte count	The number of bytes sent in the data phase.

FlashReadOnceResponse: The FlashReadOnceResponse packet is sent by the target in response to the host sending a FlashReadOnce command. The FlashReadOnceResponse packet contains the framing packet data and the command packet data, with the command/response tag set to a FlashReadOnceResponse tag value (0xAF), and the flags field set to 0. The parameter count is set to 2 plus *the number of words* requested to be read in the FlashReadOnceCommand.

Table 14-15. FlashReadOnceResponse Parameters

Byte #	Value	Parameter
0 – 3		Status Code

Table continues on the next page...

Table 14-15. FlashReadOnceResponse Parameters (continued)

4 – 7		Byte count to read
…		…
		Can be up to 20 bytes of requested read data.

The FlashReadResourceResponse packet is sent by the target in response to the host sending a FlashReadResource command. The FlashReadResourceResponse packet contains the framing packet data and command packet data, with the command/response tag set to a FlashReadResourceResponse tag value (0xB0), and the flags field set to kCommandFlag_HasDataPhase (1).

Table 14-16. FlashReadResourceResponse Parameters

Byte #	Value	Parameter
0 – 3		Status Code
4 – 7		Data byte count

14.3.6 Flashloader Command API

All Kinetis Flashloader command APIs follow the command packet format that is wrapped by the framing packet, as explained in previous sections.

- For a list of commands supported by the Flashloader, see Table 14-2, Commands supported.
- For a list of status codes returned by the Kinetis Flashloader, see Table 14-48, Kinetis Flashloader Status Error Codes.

NOTE

All the examples in this section depict byte traffic on serial peripherals that use framing packets. USB HID transactions use the USB HID report packets instead of the serial framing packets shown in this section. Please refer to the HID reports section for details of the USB HID packet structure.

14.3.6.1 Call command

The Call command will execute a function that is written in memory at the address sent in the command. The address needs to be a valid memory location residing in accessible flash (internal or external) or in RAM. The command supports the passing of one 32-bit

argument. Although the command supports a stack address, at this time the call will still take place using the current stack pointer. After execution of the function, a 32-bit return value will be returned in the generic response message.

Table 14-17. Parameters for Call Command

Byte #	Command
0 - 3	Call address
4 - 7	Argument word
8 - 11	Stack pointer

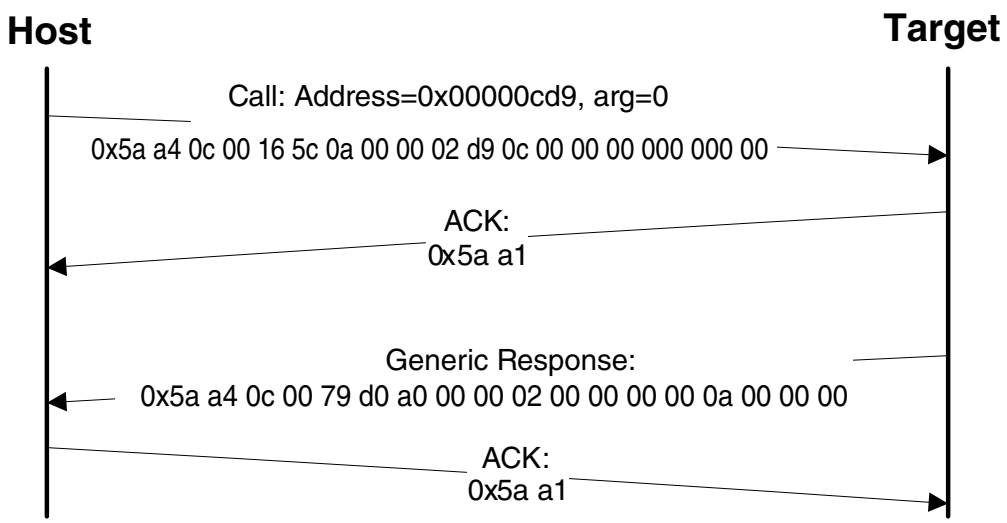


Figure 14-6. Protocol Sequence for Call Command

Response: The target (Kinetis Flashloader) will return a GenericResponse packet with a status code either set to the return value of the function called or set to kStatus_InvalidArgument (105).

14.3.6.2 GetProperty command

The GetProperty command is used to query the flashloader about various properties and settings. Each supported property has a unique 32-bit tag associated with it. The tag occupies the first parameter of the command packet. The target returns a GetPropertyResponse packet with the property values for the property identified with the tag in the GetProperty command.

Properties are the defined units of data that can be accessed with the GetProperty or SetProperty commands. Properties may be read-only or read-write. All read-write properties are 32-bit integers, so they can easily be carried in a command parameter.

For a list of properties and their associated 32-bit property tags supported by the Kinetis Flashloader, see Table 14-44.

The 32-bit property tag is the only parameter required for GetProperty command.

Table 14-18. Parameters for GetProperty Command

Byte #	Command
0 - 3	Property tag

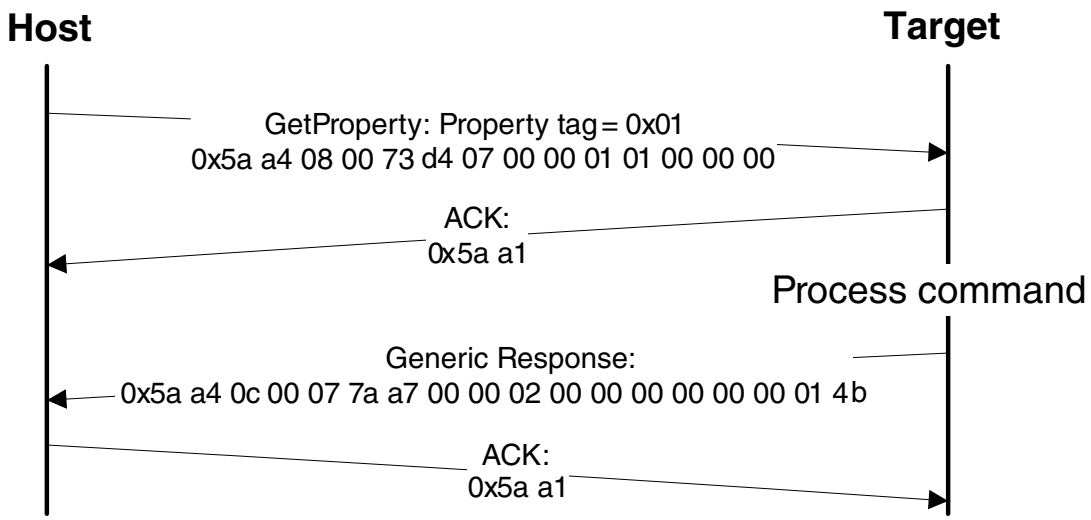


Figure 14-7. Protocol Sequence for GetProperty Command

Table 14-19. GetProperty Command Packet Format (Example)

GetProperty	Parameter	Value
Framing packet	start byte	0x5A
	packetType	0xA4, kFramingPacketType_Command
	length	0x08 0x00
	crc16	0x73 0xD4
Command packet	commandTag	0x07 – GetProperty
	flags	0x00
	reserved	0x00
	parameterCount	0x01
	propertyTag	0x00000001 - CurrentVersion

The GetProperty command has no data phase.

Response: In response to a GetProperty command, the target will send a GetPropertyResponse packet with the response tag set to 0xA7. The parameter count indicates the number of parameters sent for the property values, with the first parameter showing status code 0, followed by the property value(s). The next table shows an example of a GetPropertyResponse packet.

Table 14-20. GetProperty Response Packet Format (Example)

GetPropertyResponse	Parameter	Value
Framing packet	start byte	0x5A
	packetType	0xA4, kFramingPacketType_Command
	length	0x0c 0x00 (12 bytes)
	crc16	0x07 0x7a
Command packet	responseTag	0xA7
	flags	0x00
	reserved	0x00
	parameterCount	0x02
	status	0x00000000
	propertyValue	0x0000014b - CurrentVersion

14.3.6.3 SetProperty command

The SetProperty command is used to change or alter the values of the properties or options in the Kinetis Flashloader. However, the SetProperty command can only change the value of properties that are writable—see Table 14-44, Properties used by Get/SetProperty Commands. If you try to set a value for a read-only property, then the Kinetis Flashloader will return an error.

The property tag and the new value to set are the 2 parameters required for the SetProperty command.

Table 14-21. Parameters for SetProperty Command

Byte #	Command
0 - 3	Property tag
4 - 7	Property value

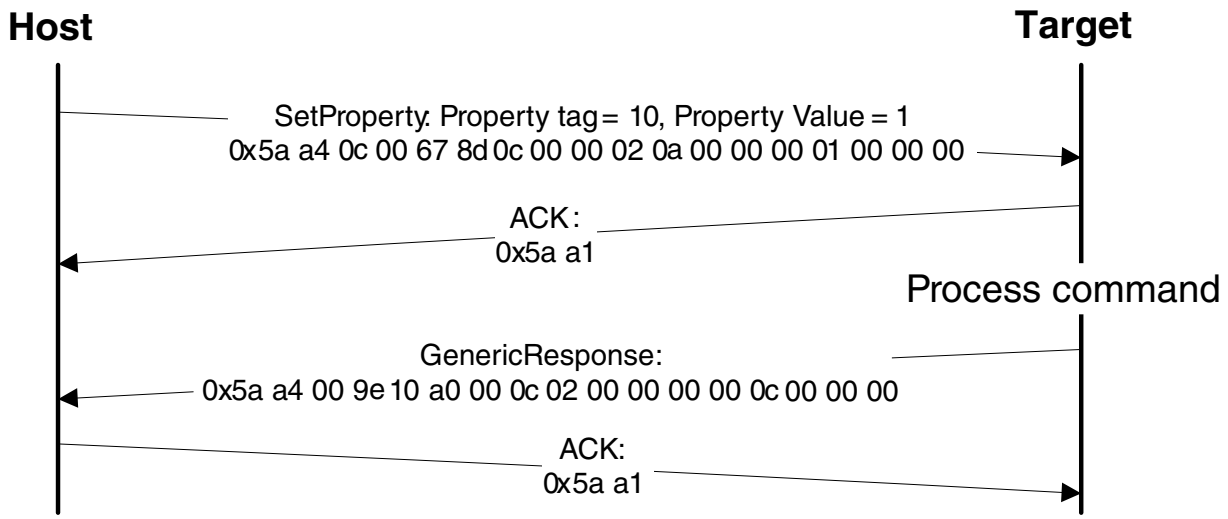


Figure 14-8. Protocol Sequence for SetProperty Command

Table 14-22. SetProperty Command Packet Format (Example)

SetProperty	Parameter	Value
Framing packet	start byte	0x5A
	packetType	0xA4, kFramingPacketType_Command
	length	0x0C 0x00
	crc16	0x67 0x8D
Command packet	commandTag	0x0C – SetProperty with property tag 10
	flags	0x00
	reserved	0x00
	parameterCount	0x02
	propertyTag	0x0000000A - VerifyWrites
	propertyValue	0x00000001

The SetProperty command has no data phase.

Response: The target (Kinetis Flashloader) will return a GenericResponse packet with one of following status codes:

Table 14-23. SetProperty Response Status Codes

Status Code
kStatus_Success
kStatus_ReadOnly
kStatus_UnknownProperty
kStatus_InvalidArgument

14.3.6.4 FlashEraseAll command

The FlashEraseAll command performs an erase of the entire flash memory. If any flash regions are protected, then the FlashEraseAll command will fail and return an error status code. Executing the FlashEraseAll command will release flash security if it (flash security) was enabled, by setting the FTFA_FSEC register. However, the FSEC field of the flash configuration field is erased, so unless it is reprogrammed, the flash security will be re-enabled after the next system reset. The Command tag for FlashEraseAll command is 0x01 set in the commandTag field of the command packet.

The FlashEraseAll command requires no parameters.

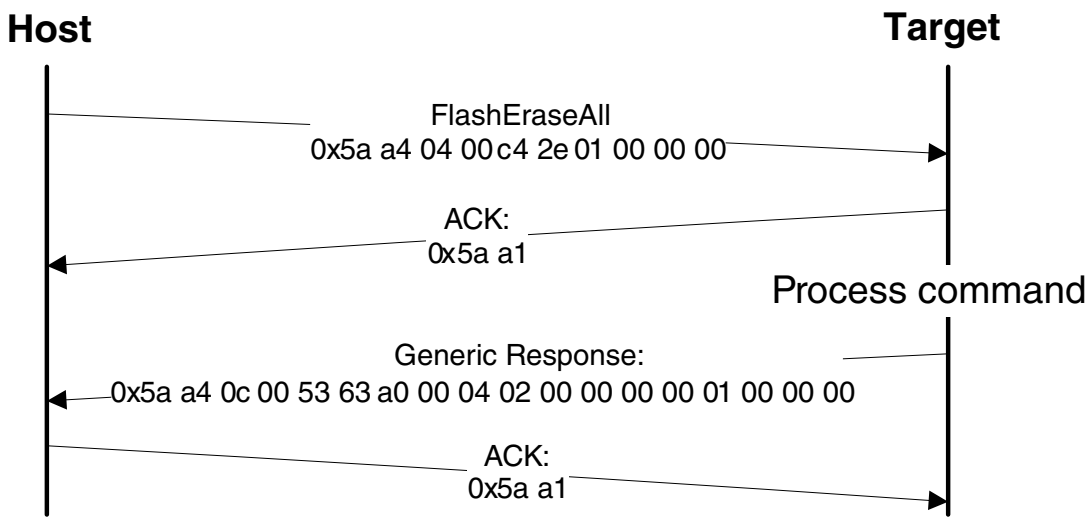


Figure 14-9. Protocol Sequence for FlashEraseAll Command

Table 14-24. FlashEraseAll Command Packet Format (Example)

FlashEraseAll	Parameter	Value
Framing packet	start byte	0x5A
	packetType	0xA4, kFramingPacketType_Command
	length	0x04 0x00
	crc16	0xC4 0x2E
Command packet	commandTag	0x01 - FlashEraseAll
	flags	0x00
	reserved	0x00
	parameterCount	0x00

The FlashEraseAll command has no data phase.

Response: The target (Kinetis Flashloader) will return a GenericResponse packet with status code either set to kStatus_Success for successful execution of the command, or set to an appropriate error status code.

14.3.6.5 FlashEraseRegion command

The FlashEraseRegion command performs an erase of one or more sectors of the flash memory or a specified range of flash within the connected SPI flash devices.

The start address and number of bytes are the 2 parameters required for the FlashEraseRegion command. The start and byte count parameters must be , or the FlashEraseRegion command will fail and return kStatus_FlashAlignmentError (0x101). If the region specified does not fit in the flash memory space, the FlashEraseRegion command will fail and return kStatus_FlashAddressError (0x102). If any part of the region specified is protected, the FlashEraseRegion command will fail and return kStatus_MemoryRangeInvalid (0x10200).

Table 14-25. Parameters for FlashEraseRegion Command

Byte #	Parameter
0 - 3	Start address
4 - 7	Byte count

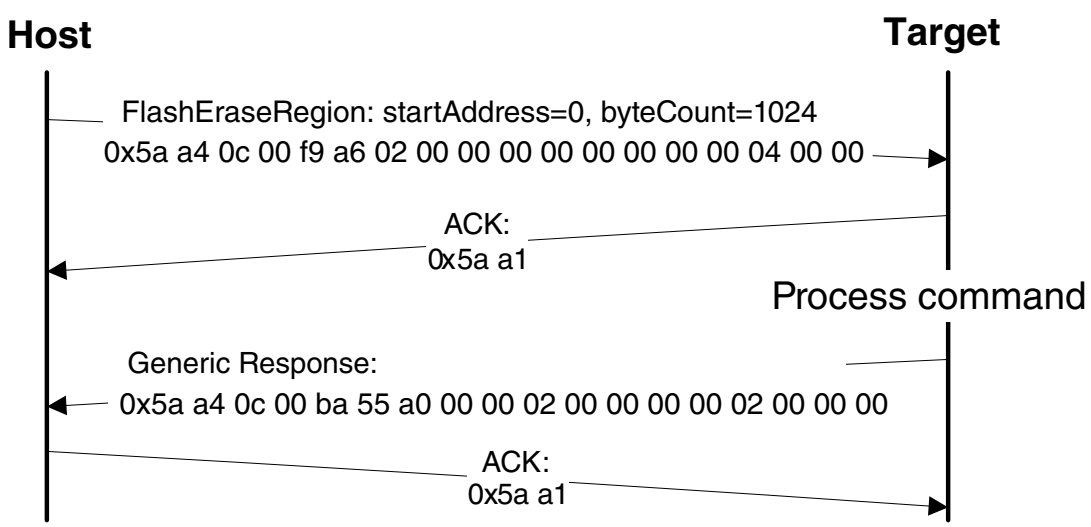


Figure 14-10. Protocol Sequence for FlashEraseRegion Command

Table 14-26. FlashEraseRegion Command Packet Format (Example)

FlashEraseRegion	Parameter	Value
Framing packet	start byte	0x5A
	packetType	0xA4, kFramingPacketType_Command
	length	0x0C 0x00
	crc16	0xF9 0x A6
Command packet	commandTag	0x02, kCommandTag_FlashEraseRegion
	flags	0x00
	reserved	0x00
	parameterCount	0x02
	startAddress	0x00 0x00 0x00 0x00 (0x0000_0000)
	byte count	0x00 0x04 0x00 0x00 (0x400)

The FlashEraseRegion command has no data phase.

Response: The target (Kinetis Flashloader) will return a GenericResponse packet with one of following error status codes.

Table 14-27. FlashEraseRegion Response Status Codes

Status Code
kStatus_Success (0x0)
kStatus_MemoryRangeInvalid (0x10200)
kStatus_FlashAlignmentError (0x101)
kStatus_FlashAddressError (0x102)
kStatus_FlashAccessError (0x103)
kStatus_FlashProtectionViolation (0x104)
kStatus_FlashCommandFailure (0x105)

14.3.6.6 FillMemory command

The FillMemory command fills a range of bytes in memory with a data pattern. It follows the same rules as the WriteMemory command. The difference between FillMemory and WriteMemory is that a data pattern is included in FillMemory command parameter, and there is no data phase for the FillMemory command, while WriteMemory does have a data phase.

Table 14-28. Parameters for FillMemory Command

Byte #	Command
0 - 3	Start address of memory to fill
4 - 7	Number of bytes to write with the pattern • The start address should be 32-bit aligned. • The number of bytes must be evenly divisible by 4.
8 - 11	32-bit pattern

- To fill with a byte pattern (8-bit), the byte must be replicated 4 times in the 32-bit pattern.
- To fill with a short pattern (16-bit), the short value must be replicated 2 times in the 32-bit pattern.

For example, to fill a byte value with 0xFE, the word pattern would be 0xFEFEFEFE; to fill a short value 0x5AFE, the word pattern would be 0x5AFE5AFE.

Special care must be taken when writing to flash.

- First, any flash sector written to must have been previously erased with a FlashEraseAll or FlashEraseRegion command.
- Writing to flash requires the start address to be .
- If the VerifyWrites property is set to true, then writes to flash will also perform a flash verify program operation.

When writing to RAM, the start address need not be aligned, and the data will not be padded.

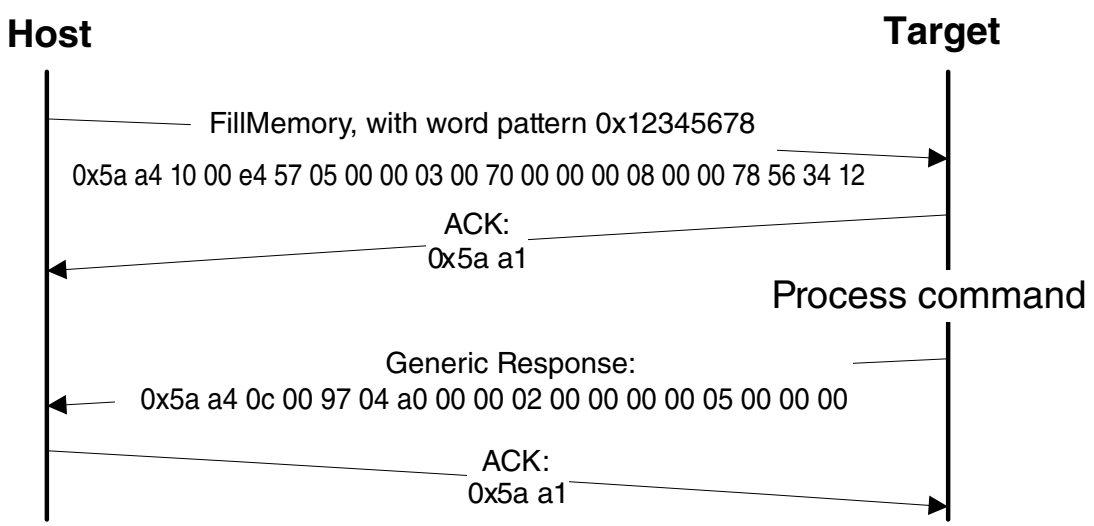


Figure 14-11. Protocol Sequence for FillMemory Command

Table 14-29. FillMemory Command Packet Format (Example)

FillMemory	Parameter	Value
Framing packet	start byte	0x5A
	packetType	0xA4, kFramingPacketType_Command
	length	0x10 0x00
	crc16	0xE4 0x57
Command packet	commandTag	0x05 – FillMemory
	flags	0x00
	Reserved	0x00
	parameterCount	0x03
	startAddress	0x00007000
	byteCount	0x00000800
	patternWord	0x12345678

The FillMemory command has no data phase.

Response: upon successful execution of the command, the target (Kinetis Flashloader) will return a GenericResponse packet with a status code set to kStatus_Success, or to an appropriate error status code.

14.3.6.7 FlashProgramOnce command

The FlashProgramOnce command writes data (that is provided in a command packet) to a specified range of bytes in the program once field. Special care must be taken when writing to the program once field.

- The program once field only supports programming once, so any attempted to reprogram a program once field will get an error response.
- Writing to the program once field requires the byte count to be 4-byte aligned or 8-byte aligned.

The FlashProgramOnce command uses 3 parameters: index, byteCount, data.

Table 14-30. Parameters for FlashProgramOnce Command

Byte #	Command
0 - 3	Index of program once field
4 - 7	Byte count (must be evenly divisible by 4)
8 - 11	Data
12 - 16	Data

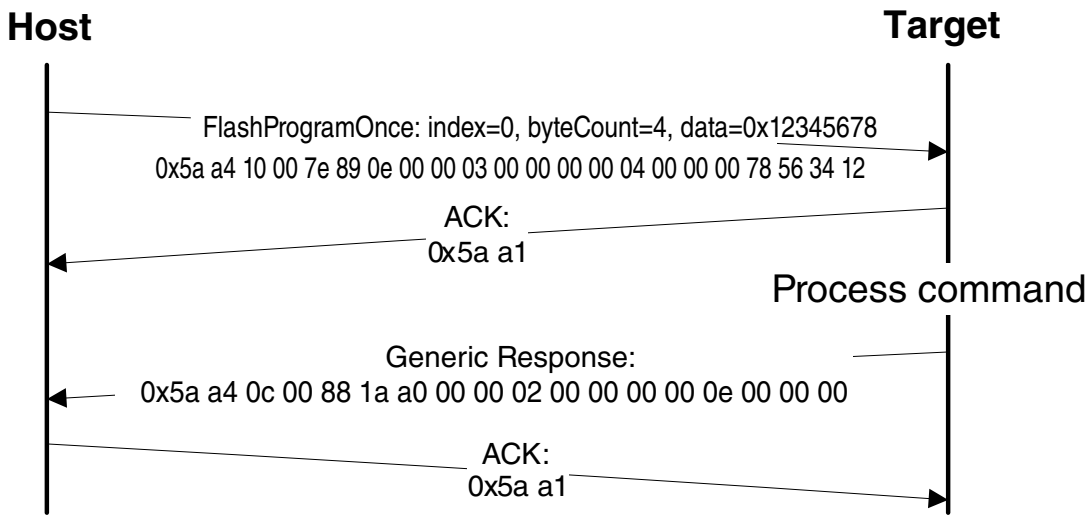


Figure 14-12. Protocol Sequence for FlashProgramOnce Command

Table 14-31. FlashProgramOnce Command Packet Format (Example)

FlashProgramOnce	Parameter	Value
Framing packet	start byte	0x5A
	packetType	0xA4, kFramingPacketType_Command
	length	0x10 0x00
	crc16	0x7E4 0x89
Command packet	commandTag	0x0E – FlashProgramOnce
	flags	0
	reserved	0
	parameterCount	3
	index	0x0000_0000
	byteCount	0x0000_0004
	data	0x1234_5678

Response: upon successful execution of the command, the target (Kinetis Flashloader) will return a GenericResponse packet with a status code set to kStatus_Success, or to an appropriate error status code.

14.3.6.8 FlashReadOnce command

The FlashReadOnce command returns the contents of the program once field by given index and byte count. The FlashReadOnce command uses 2 parameters: index and byteCount.

Table 14-32. Parameters for FlashReadOnce Command

Byte #	Parameter	Description
0 - 3	index	Index of the program once field (to read from)
4 - 7	byteCount	Number of bytes to read and return to the caller

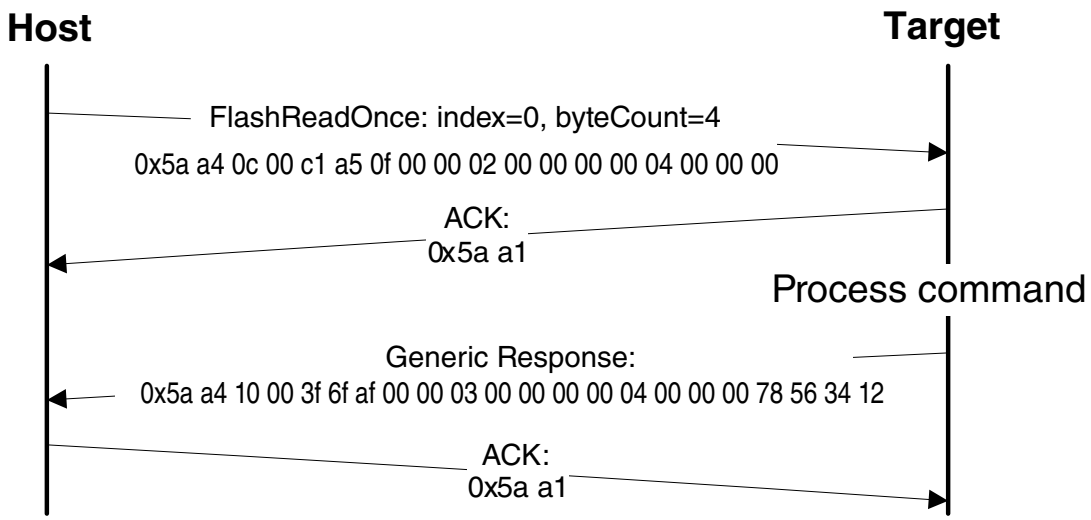


Figure 14-13. Protocol Sequence for FlashReadOnce Command

Table 14-33. FlashReadOnce Command Packet Format (Example)

FlashReadOnce	Parameter	Value
Framing packet	start byte	0x5A
	packetType	0xA4
	length	0x0C 0x00
	crc	0xC1 0xA5
Command packet	commandTag	0x0F – FlashReadOnce
	flags	0x00
	reserved	0x00
	parameterCount	0x02
	index	0x0000_0000
	byteCount	0x0000_0004

Table 14-34. FlashReadOnce Response Format (Example)

FlashReadOnce Response	Parameter	Value
Framing packet	start byte	0x5A
	packetType	0xA4

Table continues on the next page...

Table 14-34. FlashReadOnce Response Format (Example) (continued)

FlashReadOnce Response	Parameter	Value
	length	0x10 0x00
	crc	0x3F 0x6F
Command packet	commandTag	0xAF
	flags	0x00
	reserved	0x00
	parameterCount	0x03
	status	0x0000_0000
	byteCount	0x0000_0004
	data	0x1234_5678

Response: upon successful execution of the command, the target (Kinetis Flashloader) will return a FlashReadOnceResponse packet with a status code set to kStatus_Success, a byte count and corresponding data read from Program Once Field upon successful execution of the command, or will return with a status code set to an appropriate error status code and a byte count set to 0.

14.3.6.9 FlashReadResource command

The FlashReadResource command returns the contents of the IFR field or Flash firmware ID, by given offset, byte count, and option. The FlashReadResource command uses 3 parameters: start address, byteCount, option.

Table 14-35. Parameters for FlashReadResource Command

Byte #	Parameter	Command
0 - 3	start address	Start address of specific non-volatile memory to be read
4 - 7	byteCount	Byte count to be read
8 - 11	option	0: IFR 1: Flash firmware ID

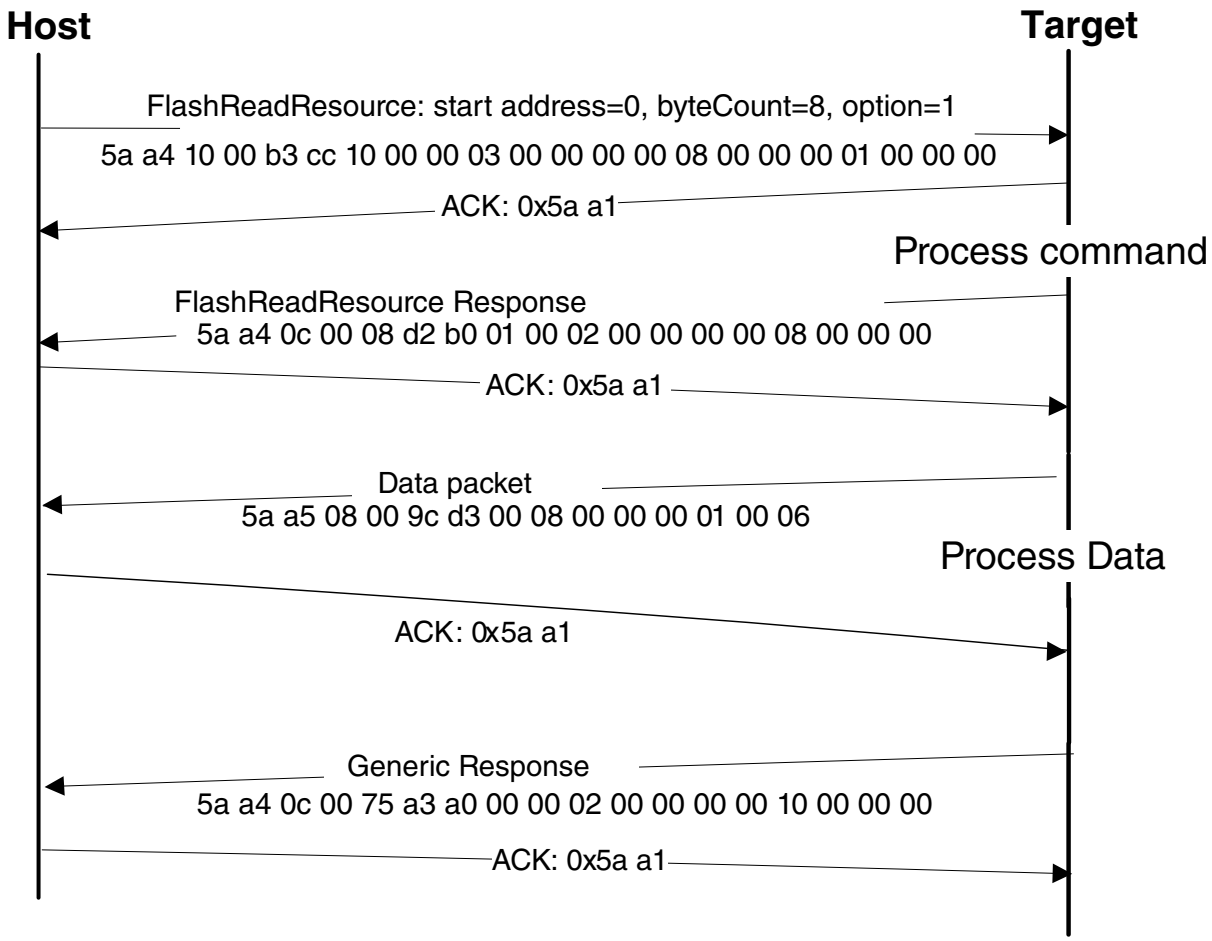


Figure 14-14. Protocol Sequence for FlashReadResource Command

Table 14-36. FlashReadResource Command Packet Format (Example)

FlashReadResource	Parameter	Value
Framing packet	start byte	0x5A
	packetType	0xA4
	length	0x10 0x00
	crc	0xB3 0xCC
Command packet	commandTag	0x10 – FlashReadResource
	flags	0x00
	reserved	0x00
	parameterCount	0x03
	startAddress	0x0000_0000
	byteCount	0x0000_0008
	option	0x0000_0001

Table 14-37. FlashReadResource Response Format (Example)

FlashReadResource Response	Parameter	Value
Framing packet	start byte	0x5A
	packetType	0xA4
	length	0x0C 0x00
	crc	0xD2 0xB0
Command packet	commandTag	0xB0
	flags	0x01
	reserved	0x00
	parameterCount	0x02
	status	0x0000_0000
	byteCount	0x0000_0008

Data phase: The FlashReadResource command has a data phase. Because the target (Kinetis Flashloader) works in slave mode, the host must pull data packets until the number of bytes of data *specified in the byteCount parameter of FlashReadResource command* are received by the host.

14.3.6.10 WriteMemory command

The WriteMemory command writes data provided in the data phase to a specified range of bytes in memory (flash or RAM). However, if flash protection is enabled, then writes to protected sectors will fail.

Special care must be taken when writing to flash.

- First, any flash sector written to must have been previously erased with a FlashEraseAll or FlashEraseRegion command.
- Writing to flash requires the start address to be .
- If the VerifyWrites property is set to true, then writes to flash will also perform a flash verify program operation.

When writing to RAM, the start address need not be aligned, and the data will not be padded.

The start address and number of bytes are the 2 parameters required for WriteMemory command.

Table 14-38. Parameters for WriteMemory Command

Byte #	Command
0 - 3	Start address
4 - 7	Byte count

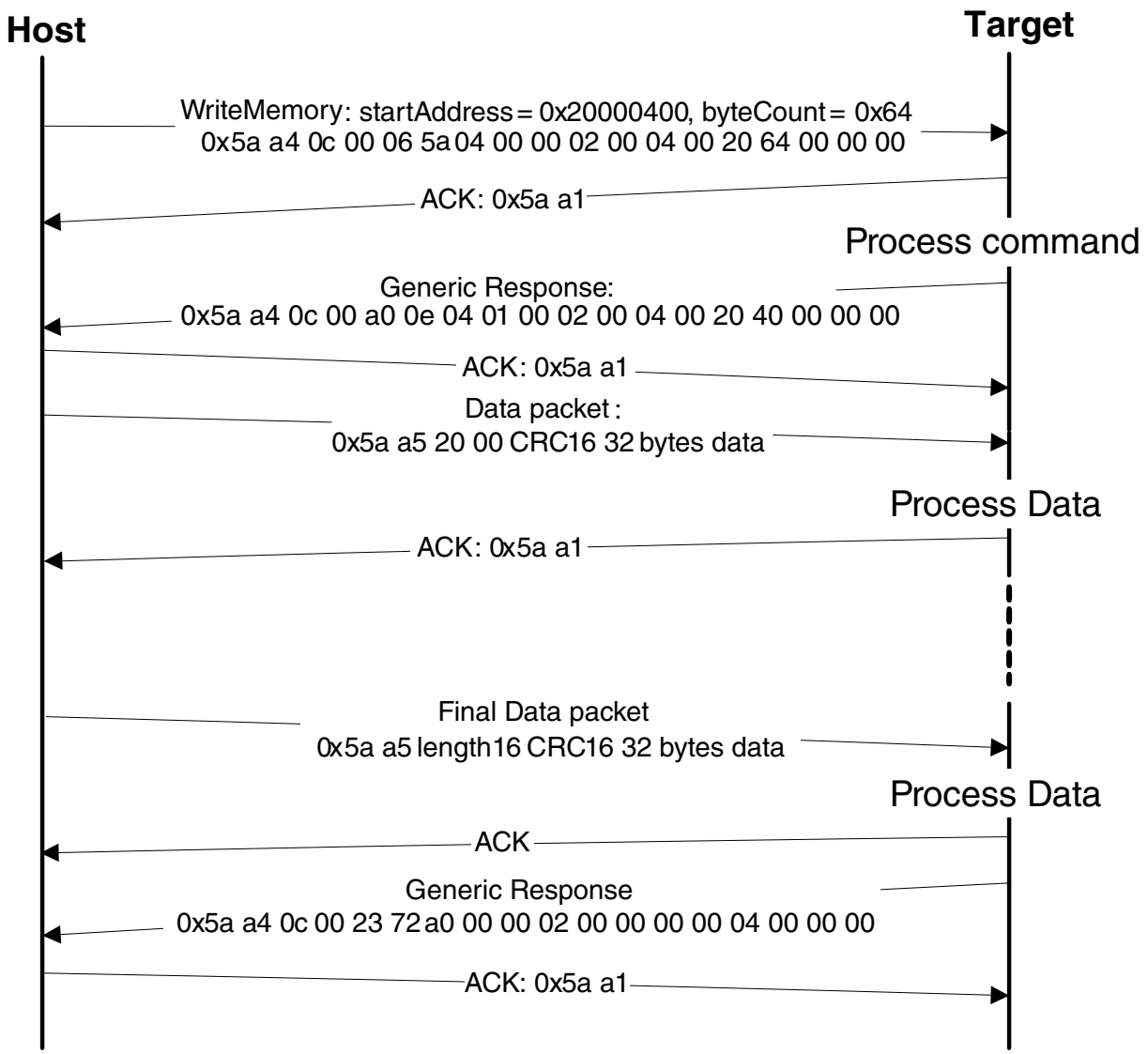


Figure 14-15. Protocol Sequence for WriteMemory Command

Table 14-39. WriteMemory Command Packet Format (Example)

WriteMemory	Parameter	Value
Framing packet	start byte	0x5A
	packetType	0xA4, kFramingPacketType_Command
	length	0x0C 0x00
	crc16	0x06 0x5A
Command packet	commandTag	0x04 - writeMemory
	flags	0x00
	reserved	0x00
	parameterCount	0x02

Table continues on the next page...

Table 14-39. WriteMemory Command Packet Format (Example) (continued)

WriteMemory	Parameter	Value
	startAddress	0x20000400
	byteCount	0x00000064

Data Phase: The WriteMemory command has a data phase; the host will send data packets until the number of bytes of data specified in the byteCount parameter of the WriteMemory command are received by the target.

Response: The target (Kinetis Flashloader) will return a GenericResponse packet with a status code set to kStatus_Success upon successful execution of the command, or to an appropriate error status code.

14.3.6.11 Read memory command

The ReadMemory command returns the contents of memory at the given address, for a specified number of bytes. This command can read any region of memory accessible by the CPU and not protected by security.

The start address and number of bytes are the 2 parameters required for ReadMemory command.

Table 14-40. Parameters for read memory command

Byte	Parameter	Description
0-3	Start address	Start address of memory to read from
4-7	Byte count	Number of bytes to read and return to caller

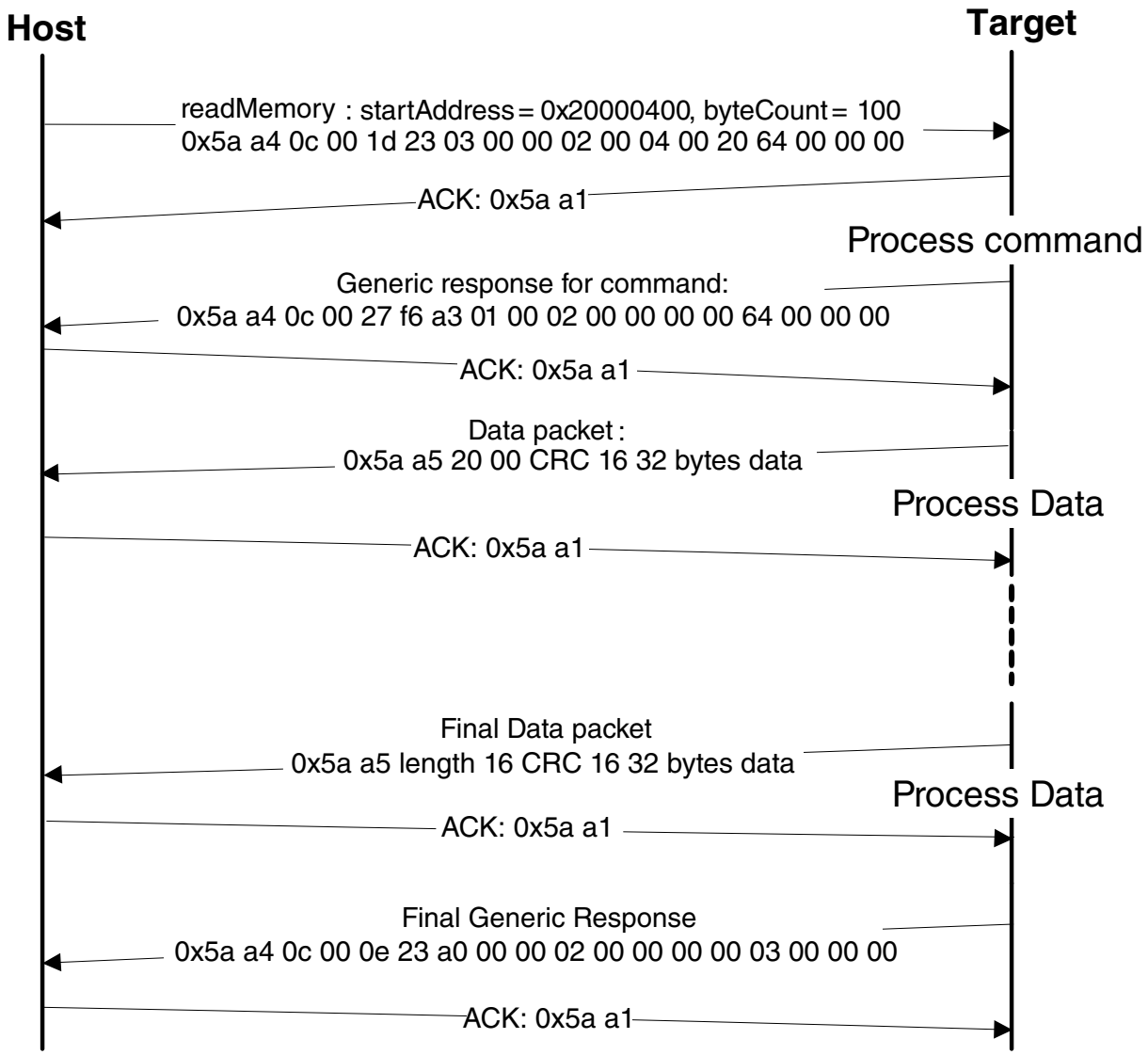


Figure 14-16. Command sequence for read memory

ReadMemory	Parameter	Value
Framing packet	Start byte	0x5A0xA4,
	packetType	kFramingPacketType_Command
	length	0x0C 0x00
	crc16	0x1D 0x23
Command packet	commandTag	0x03 - readMemory
	flags	0x00
	reserved	0x00
	parameterCount	0x02
	startAddress	0x20000400
	byteCount	0x00000064

Data Phase: The ReadMemory command has a data phase. Since the target (Kinetis Flashloader) works in slave mode, the host need pull data packets until the number of bytes of data specified in the byteCount parameter of ReadMemory command are received by host.

Response: The target (Kinetis Flashloader) will return a GenericResponse packet with a status code either set to kStatus_Success upon successful execution of the command, or set to an appropriate error status code.

14.3.6.12 Execute command

The execute command results in the flashloader setting the program counter to the code at the provided jump address, R0 to the provided argument, and a Stack pointer to the provided stack pointer address. Prior to the jump, the system is returned to the reset state.

The Jump address, function argument pointer, and stack pointer are the parameters required for the Execute command.

Table 14-41. Parameters for Execute Command

Byte #	Command
0 - 3	Jump address
4 - 7	Argument word
8 - 11	Stack pointer address

The Execute command has no data phase.

Response: Before executing the Execute command, the target (Kinetis Flashloader) will validate the parameters and return a GenericResponse packet with a status code either set to kStatus_Success or an appropriate error status code.

14.3.6.13 Reset command

The Reset command will result in flashloader resetting the chip.

The Reset command requires no parameters.

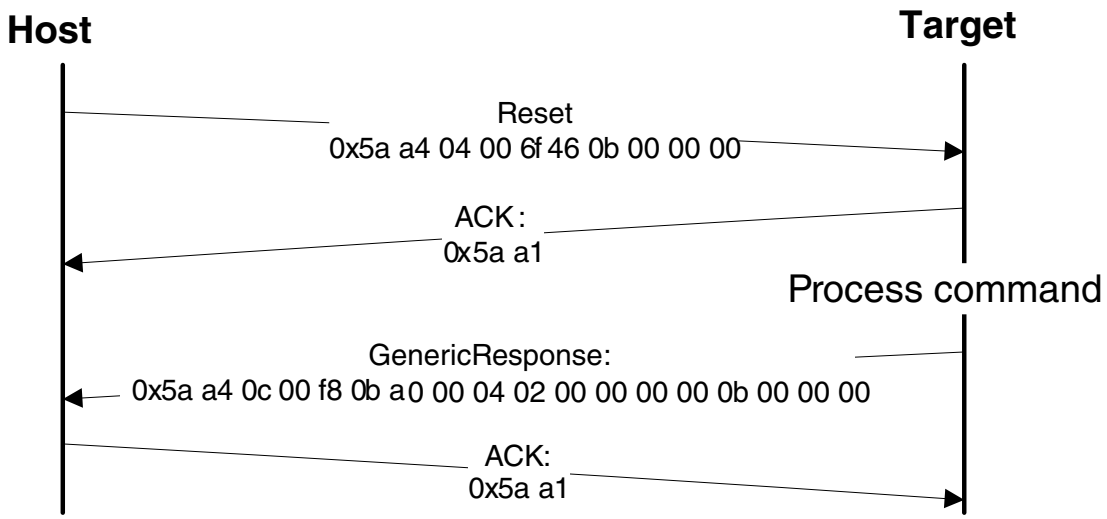


Figure 14-17. Protocol Sequence for Reset Command

Table 14-42. Reset Command Packet Format (Example)

Reset	Parameter	Value
Framing packet	start byte	0x5A
	packetType	0xA4, kFramingPacketType_Command
	length	0x04 0x00
	crc16	0x6F 0x46
Command packet	commandTag	0x0B - reset
	flags	0x00
	reserved	0x00
	parameterCount	0x00

The Reset command has no data phase.

Response: The target (Kinetis Flashloader) will return a GenericResponse packet with status code set to kStatus_Success, before resetting the chip.

14.3.6.14 ReceiveSBFile command

The ReceiveSBFile command (ReceiveSbFile) will start the transfer of an SB file to the target. The command only specifies the size in bytes of the SB file that will be sent in the data phase. The SB file will be processed as it is received by the Flashloader .

Table 14-43. Parameters for ReceiveSBFile Command

Byte #	Command
0 - 3	Byte count

Data Phase: The Receive SB file command has a data phase; the host will send data packets until the number of bytes of data specified in the byteCount parameter of the Receive SB File command are received by the target.

Response: The target (Flashloader) will return a GenericResponse packet with a status code set to the kStatus_Success upon successful execution of the command, or set to an appropriate error code.

14.4 Peripherals Supported

This section describes the peripherals supported by the Kinetis Flashloader.

14.4.1 I2C Peripheral

The Kinetis Flashloader supports loading data into flash via the I2C peripheral, where the I2C peripheral serves as the I2C slave. A 7-bit slave address is used during the transfer.

The Kinetis Flashloader uses 0x10 as the I2C slave address, and supports 400 kbps as the I2C baud rate.

Because the I2C peripheral serves as an I2C slave device, each transfer should be started by the host, and each outgoing packet should be fetched by the host.

- An incoming packet is sent by the host with a selected I2C slave address and the direction bit is set as write.
- An outgoing packet is read by the host with a selected I2C slave address and the direction bit is set as read.
- 0x00 will be sent as the response to host if the target is busy with processing or preparing data.

The following flow charts demonstrate the communication flow of how the host reads ping packet, ACK and response from the target.

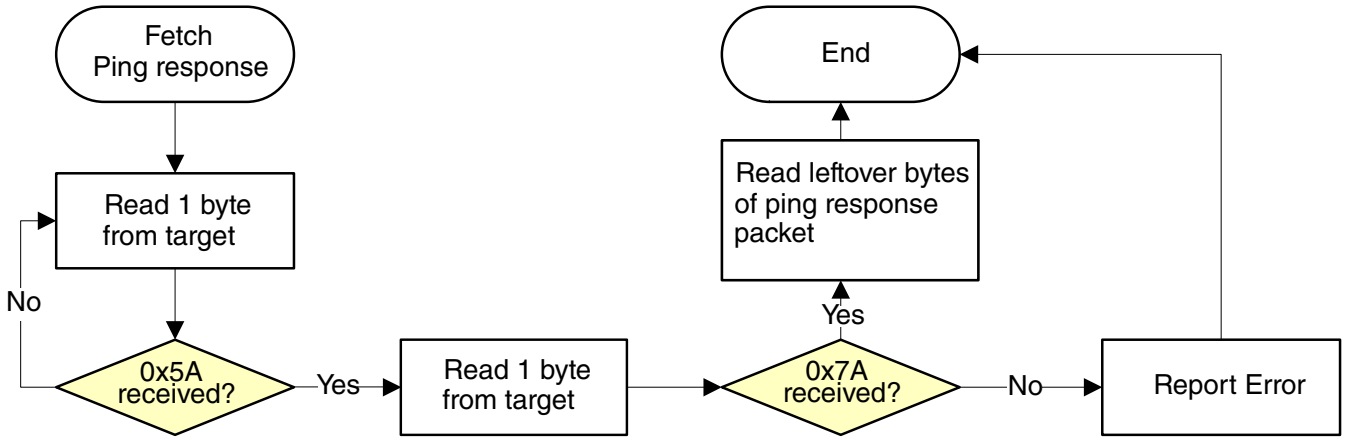


Figure 14-18. Host reads ping response from target via I2C

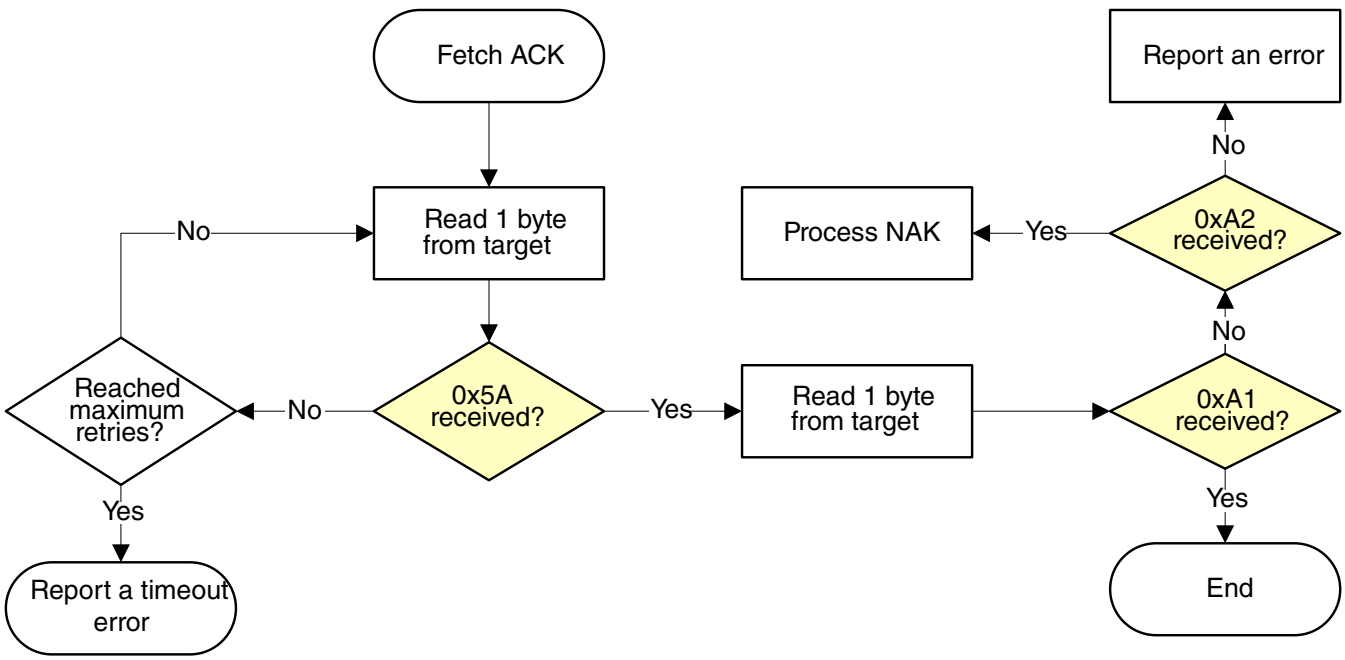


Figure 14-19. Host reads ACK packet from target via I2C

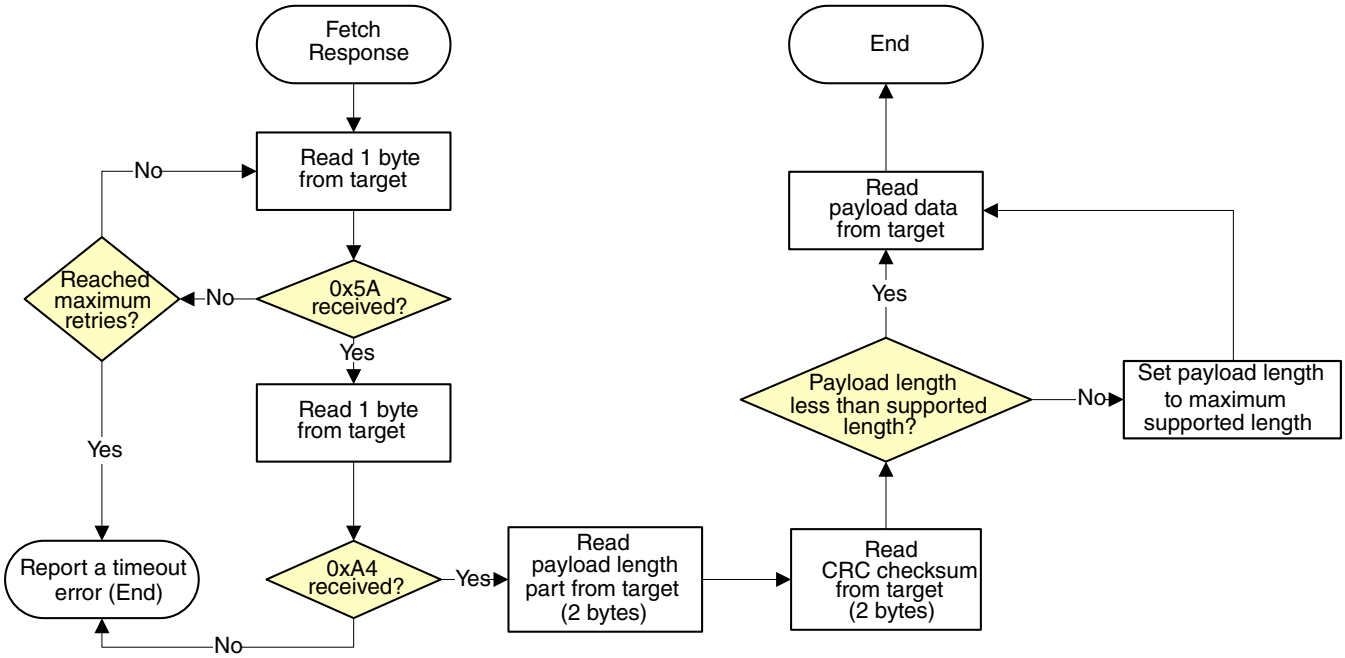


Figure 14-20. Host reads response from target via I2C

14.4.2 SPI Peripheral

The Kinetis Flashloader supports loading data into flash via the SPI peripheral, where the SPI peripheral serves as a SPI slave.

The Kinetis Flashloader supports 400 kbps as the SPI baud rate.

The SPI peripheral uses the following bus attributes:

- Clock Phase = 1 (Second Edge)
- Clock Polarity = 1 (Active Low)

Because the SPI peripheral serves as a SPI slave device, each transfer should be started by the host, and each outgoing packet should be fetched by the host.

The transfer on SPI is slightly different from I2C:

- Host will receive 1 byte after it sends out any byte.
- Received bytes should be ignored when host is sending out bytes to target
- Host starts reading bytes by sending 0x00s to target
- The byte 0x00 will be sent as response to host if target is under the following conditions:
  - Processing incoming packet
  - Preparing outgoing data
  - Received invalid data

The SPI bus configuration is:

- Phase = 1; data is sampled on rising edges
- Polarity = 1; idle is high
- MSB is transmitted first

For any transfer where the target does not have actual data to send, the target (slave) is responsible for ensuring that 0x00 bytes will be returned to the host (master). The host uses framing packets to identify real data and not "dummy" 0x00 bytes (which do not have framing packets).

The following flowcharts demonstrate how the host reads a ping response, an ACK and a command response from target via SPI.

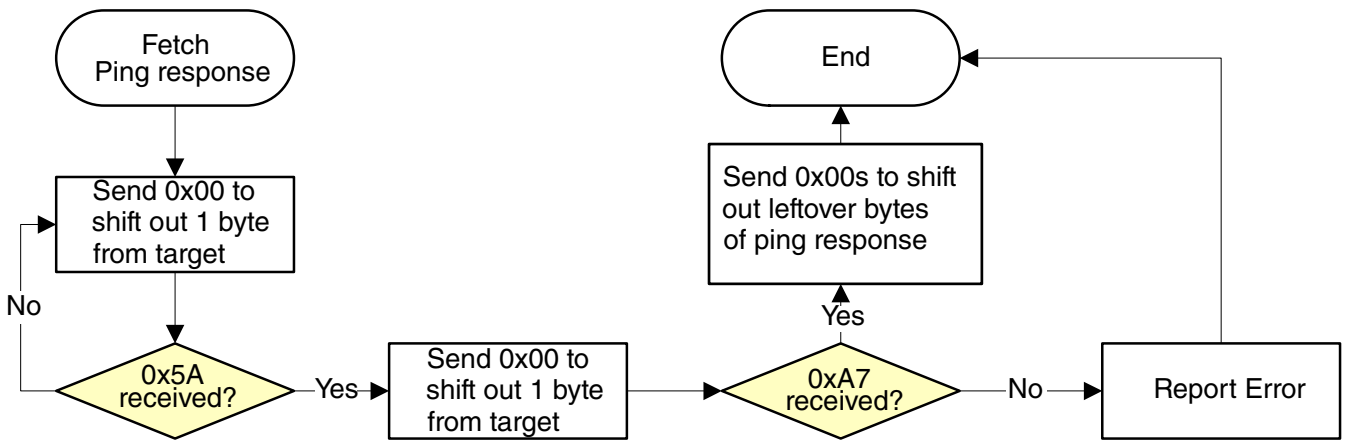


Figure 14-21. Host reads ping packet from target via SPI

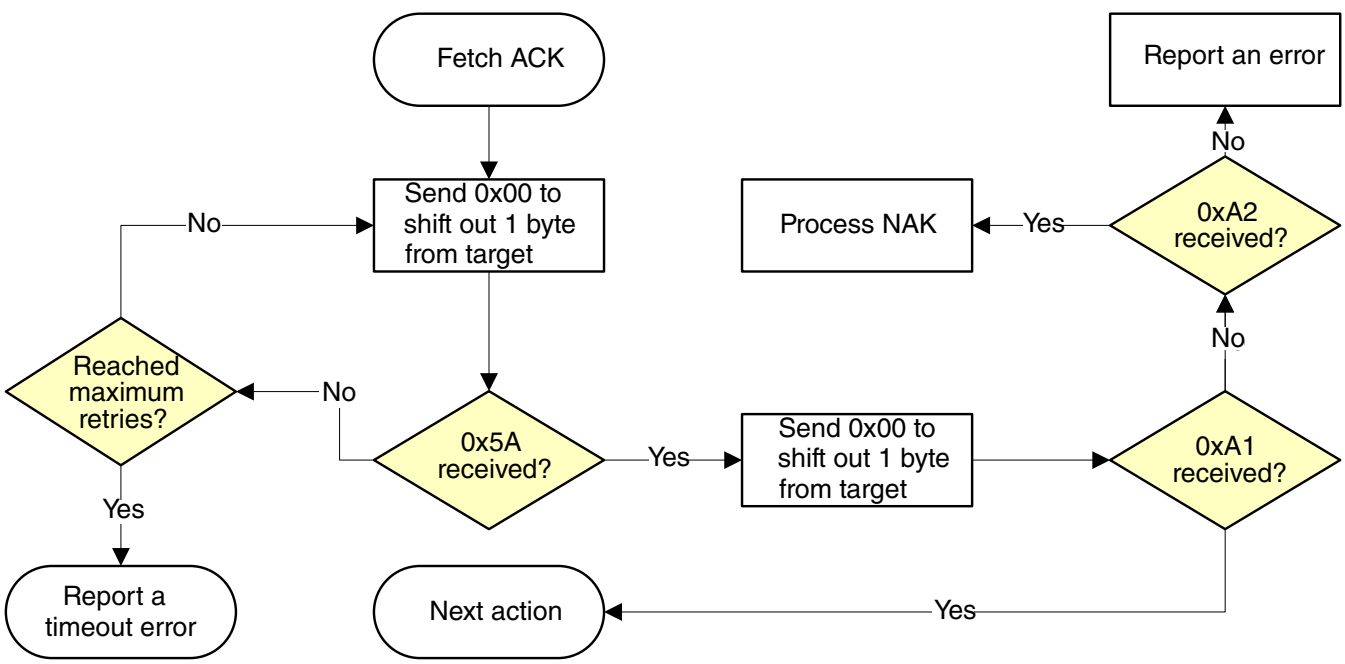


Figure 14-22. Host reads ACK from target via SPI

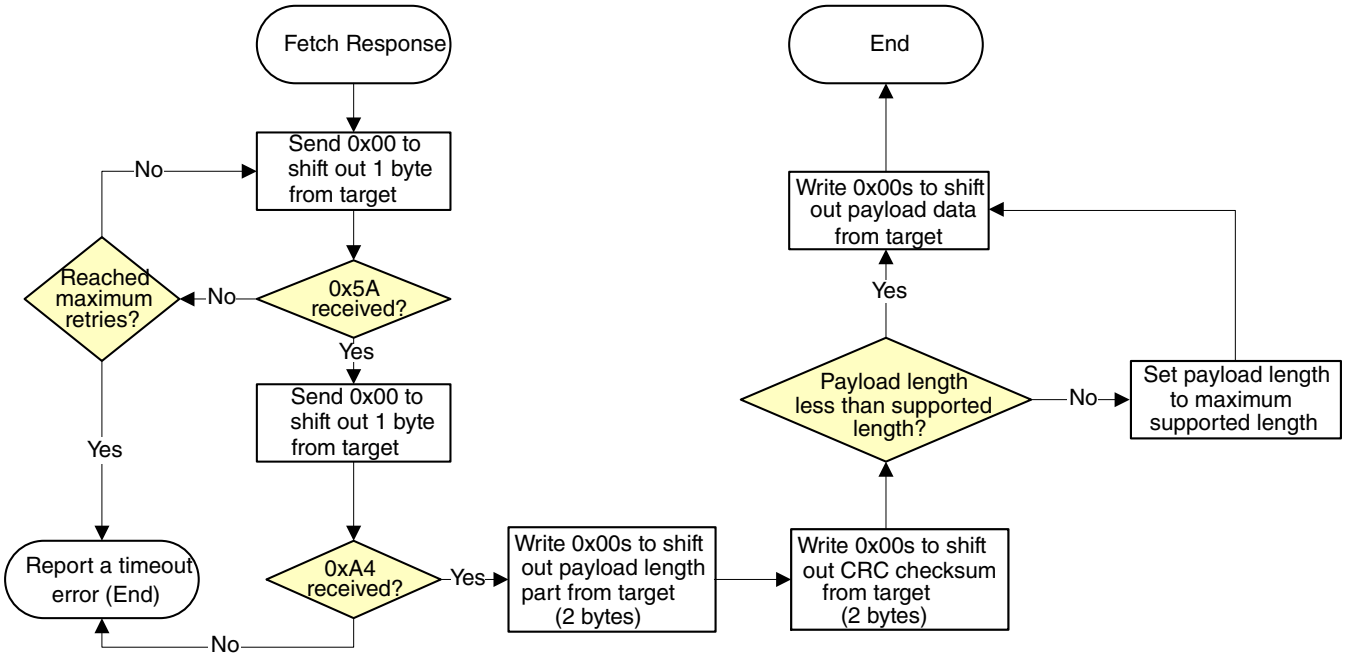


Figure 14-23. Host reads response from target via SPI

14.4.3 UART Peripheral

The Kinetis Flashloader integrates an autobaud detection algorithm for the UART peripheral, thereby providing flexible baud rate choices.

Autobaud feature: If UART*n* is used to connect to the flashloader, then the UART*n*_RX pin must be kept high and not left floating during the detection phase in order to comply with the autobaud detection algorithm. After the flashloader detects the ping packet (0x5A 0xA6) on UART*n*_RX, the flashloader firmware executes the autobaud sequence. If the baudrate is successfully detected, then the flashloader will send a ping packet response [(0x5A 0xA7), protocol version (4 bytes), protocol version options (2 bytes) and crc16 (2 bytes)] at the detected baudrate. The Kinetis Flashloader then enters a loop, waiting for flashloader commands via the UART peripheral.

NOTE

- The autobaud feature requires a ping packet with a higher accuracy (+/-3%), or the ping packet will be ignored as noise.
- The data bytes of the ping packet must be sent continuously (with no more than 80 ms between bytes) in a fixed UART transmission mode (8-bit data, no parity bit and 1 stop bit). If the bytes of the ping packet are sent one-by-one with more than 80 ms delay between them, then the autobaud

detection algorithm may calculate an incorrect baud rate. In this case, the autobaud detection state machine should be reset.

Supported baud rates: The baud rate is closely related to the MCU core and system clock frequencies. Typical baud rates supported are 9600, 19200, 38400, 57600, and 115200.

Packet transfer: After autobaud detection succeeds, flashloader communications can take place over the UART peripheral. The following flow charts show:

- How the host detects an ACK from the target
- How the host detects a ping response from the target
- How the host detects a command response from the target

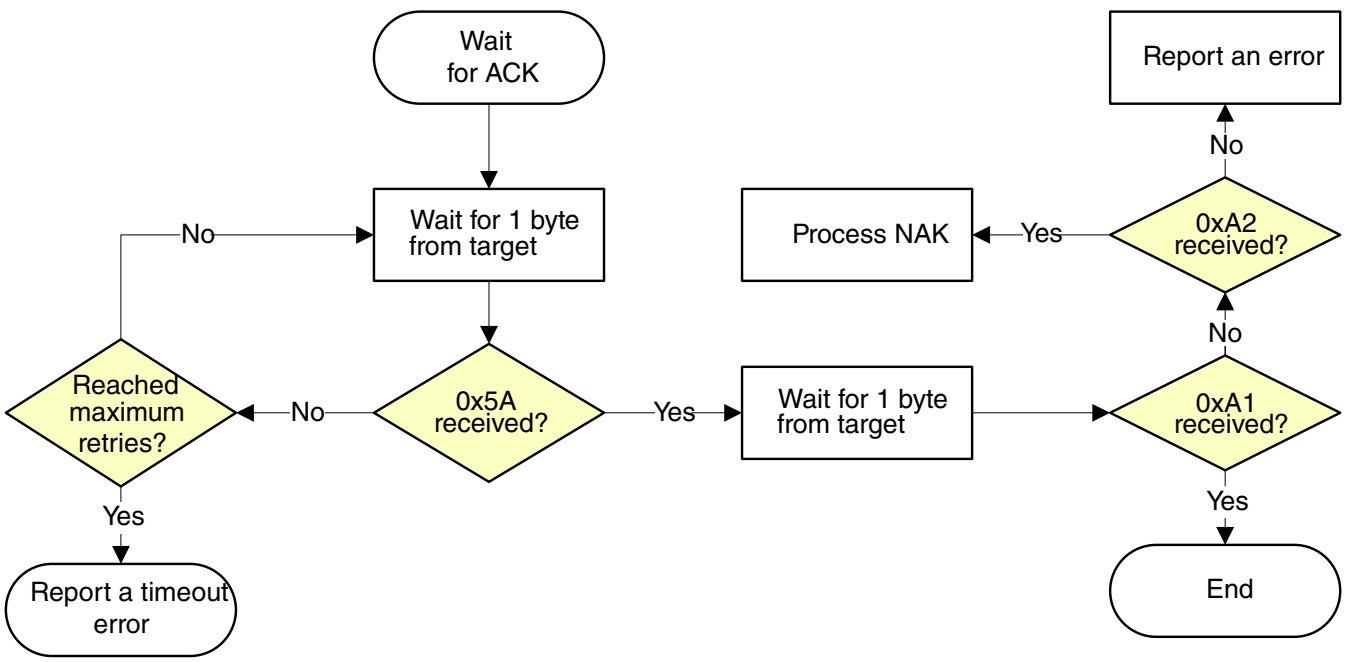


Figure 14-24. Host reads an ACK from target via UART

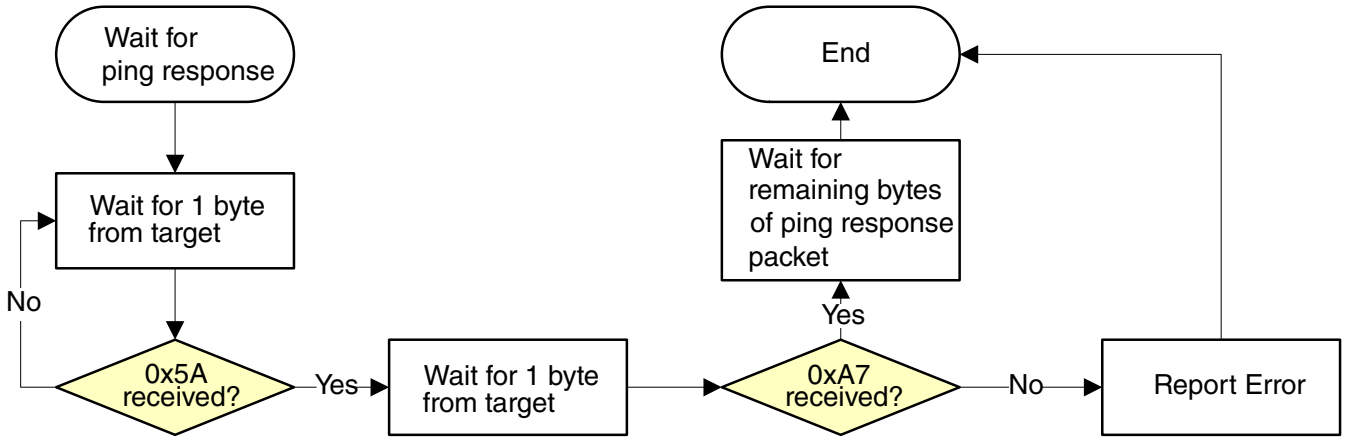


Figure 14-25. Host reads a ping response from target via UART

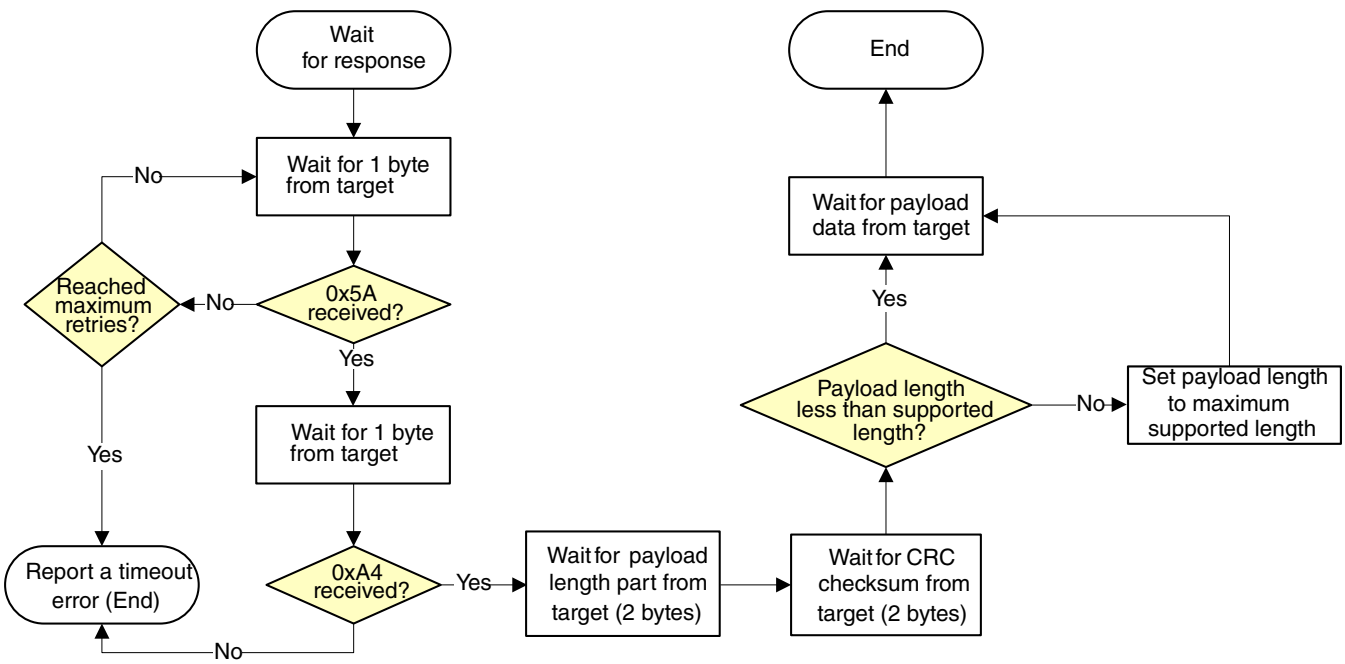


Figure 14-26. Host reads a command response from target via UART

14.4.4 USB peripheral

The Kinetis Flashloader supports loading data into flash via the USB peripheral. The target is implemented as a USB HID class.

USB HID does not use framing packets; instead the packetization inherent in the USB protocol itself is used. The ability for the device to NAK Out transfers (until they can be received) provides the required flow control; the built-in CRC of each USB packet provides the required error detection.

14.4.4.1 Clock configuration

The flashloader supports the crystal-less USB feature. If the USB peripheral is enabled, then the flashloader enables the 48-MHz . The flashloader also enables the USB clock recovery feature (by setting USBx_CLK_RECOVER_CTRL[CLOCK_RECOVER_EN] to 1 and USB_CLK_RECOVER_IRC_EN[IRC_EN] to 1).

14.4.4.2 Device descriptor

The Kinetis flashloader configures the default USB VID/PID/Strings as below:

Default VID/PID:

- VID = 0x15A2
- PID = 0x0073

Default Strings:

- Manufacturer [1] = "Freescale Semiconductor Inc." (Note that Freescale Semiconductor is now NXP Semiconductors.)
- Product [2] = "Kinetis Bootloader"

14.4.4.3 Endpoints

The HID peripheral uses 3 endpoints:

- Control (0)
- Interrupt IN (1)
- Interrupt OUT (2)

The Interrupt OUT endpoint is optional for HID class devices, but the Kinetis Flashloader uses it as a pipe, where the firmware can NAK send requests from the USB host.

14.4.4.4 HID reports

There are 4 HID reports defined and used by the flashloader USB HID peripheral. The report ID determines the direction and type of packet sent in the report; otherwise, the contents of all reports are the same.

Report ID	Packet Type	Direction
1	Command	OUT
2	Data	OUT
3	Command	IN
4	Data	IN

For all reports, these properties apply:

Usage Min	1
Usage Max	1
Logical Min	0
Logical Max	255
Report Size	8
Report Count	34

Each report has a maximum size of 34 bytes. This is derived from the minimum flashloader packet size of 32 bytes, plus a 2-byte report header that indicates the length (in bytes) of the packet sent in the report.

NOTE

In the future, the maximum report size may be increased, to support transfers of larger packets. Alternatively, additional reports may be added with larger maximum sizes.

The actual data sent in all of the reports looks like:

0	Report ID
1	Packet Length LSB
2	Packet Length MSB
3	Packet[0]
4	Packet[1]
5	Packet[2]
	...
N+3-1	Packet[N-1]

This data includes the Report ID, which is required if more than one report is defined in the HID report descriptor. The actual data sent and received has a maximum length of 35 bytes. The Packet Length header is written in little-endian format, and it is set to the size (in bytes) of the packet sent in the report. This size does not include the Report ID or the Packet Length header itself. During a data phase, a packet size of 0 indicates a data phase abort request from the receiver.

14.4.5 CAN (or FlexCAN) Peripheral

The Kinetis Flashloader supports loading data into flash via the FlexCAN peripheral. Transfers to FlexCAN are supported at several predefined speeds:

- 125 kHz
- 250 kHz
- 500 kHz
- 1 MHz (the default transfer rate)

The host application must use one of the several supported speeds for FlexCAN. In Flashloader, it supports automatic speed detection within supported speeds. The Flashloader will enter the listen mode in the beginning with the initial speed (default speed 1 MHz). Once the host sends a ping to a specific node, it will generate traffic on the FlexCAN bus. Because the Flashloader is in a listen mode, it will be able to check if the local node speed is correct, by detecting errors.

- If there is an error, then some transfers may not be at the right speed.
- The Flashloader will change the speed setting and check again.
- If there is no error, it means that the transfer speed is correct, and it changes the settings back to normal receiving mode, to see if there is a package for this node.
- The host side should also have reasonable time tolerance during the automatic speed detection period. If there is a timeout, it means that there is no response from the specific node, or there is a real error (and it should report the error to the application).

The following flowcharts show how the host reads a ping packet, ACK and response from the target.

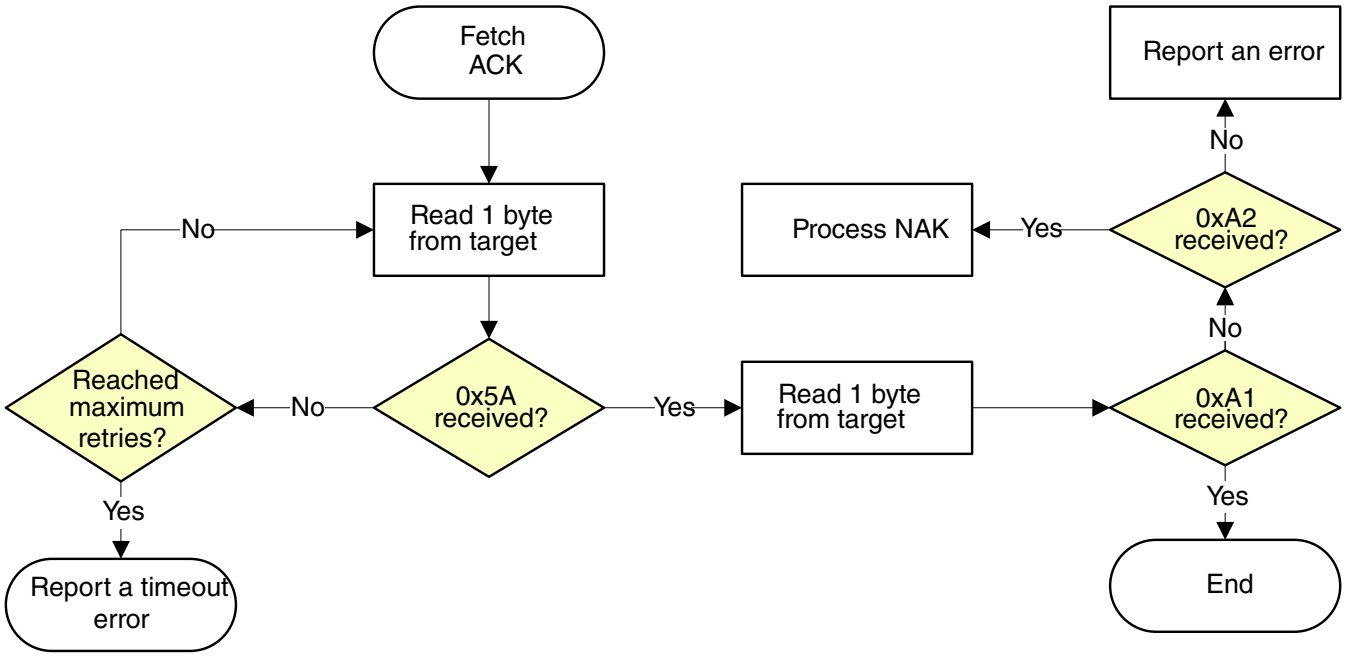


Figure 14-27. Host reads an ACK from target via FlexCAN

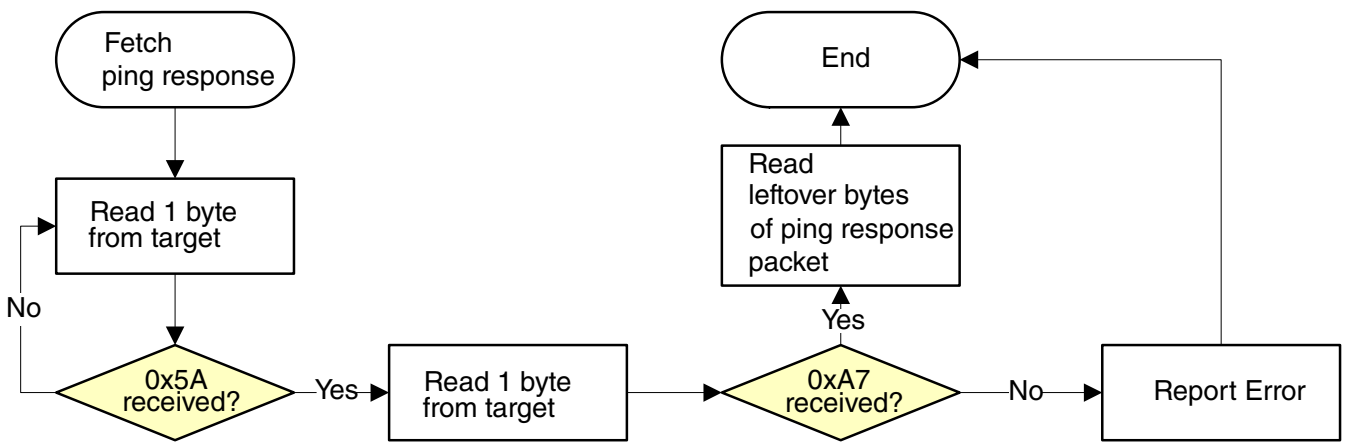


Figure 14-28. Host reads a ping response from target via FlexCAN

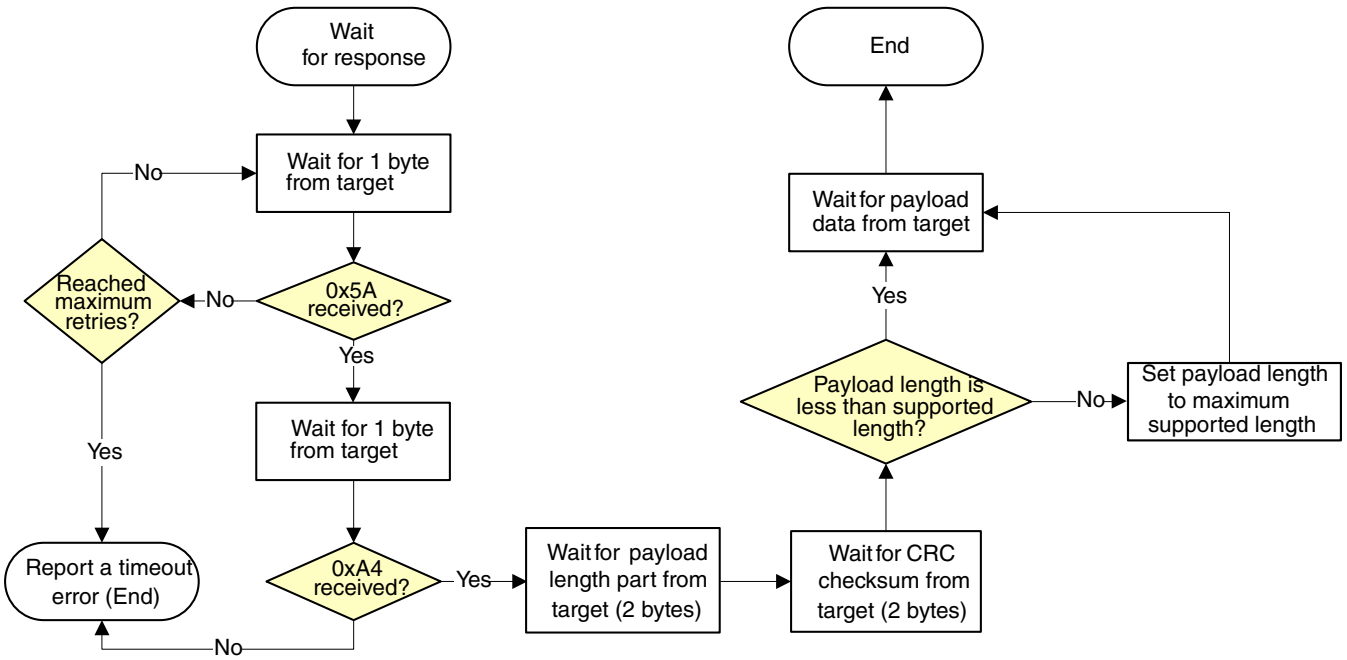


Figure 14-29. Host reads a command response from target via FlexCAN

14.5 Get/SetProperty Command Properties

This section lists the properties of the GetProperty and SetProperty commands.

Table 14-44. Properties used by Get/SetProperty Commands, sorted by Value

Property	Writable	Tag Value	Size	Description
CurrentVersion	No	01h	4	Current flashloader version.
AvailablePeripherals	No	02h	4	The set of peripherals supported on this chip.
FlashStartAddress	No	03h	4	Start address of program flash.
FlashSizeInBytes	No	04h	4	Size in bytes of program flash.
FlashSectorSize	No	05h	4	The size in bytes of one sector of program flash. This is the minimum erase size.
FlashBlockCount	No	06h	4	Number of blocks in the flash array.
AvailableCommands	No	07h	4	The set of commands supported by the flashloader.
VerifyWrites	Yes	0Ah	4	Controls whether the flashloader will verify writes to flash. VerifyWrites feature is enabled by default. 0 - No verification is done. 1 - Enable verification.
MaxPacketSize	No	0Bh	4	Maximum supported packet size for the currently active peripheral interface.

Table continues on the next page...

Table 14-44. Properties used by Get/SetProperty Commands, sorted by Value (continued)

Property	Writable	Tag Value	Size	Description
ReservedRegions	No	0Ch	16	List of memory regions reserved by the flashloader. Returned as value pairs (<start-address-of-region>, <end-address-of-region>). • If HasDataPhase flag is not set, then the Response packet parameter count indicates the number of pairs. • If HasDataPhase flag is set, then the second parameter is the number of bytes in the data phase.
RAMStartAddress	No	0Eh	4	Start address of RAM
RAMSizeInBytes	No	0Fh	4	Size in bytes of RAM
SystemDeviceId	No	10h	4	Value of the Kinetis System Device Identification register.
FlashSecurityState	No	11h	4	Indicates whether Flash security is enabled 0 - Flash security is disabled 1 - Flash security is enabled
UniqueDeviceId	No	12h	16	Unique device identification, value of Kinetis Unique Identification registers (16 for K series devices, 12 for KL series devices)
FacSupport	No	13h	4	FAC (Flash Access Control) support flag 0 - FAC not supported 1 - FAC supported
FlashAcessSegmentSize	No	14h	4	The size in bytes of 1 segment of flash
FlashAcessSegmentCount	No	15h	4	FAC segment count (The count of flash access segments within the flash model.)
FlashReadMargin	Yes	16h	4	The margin level setting for flash erase and program verify commands. 0 = Normal 1 = User (default) 2 = Factory
TargetVersion	No	18h	4	SoC target build version number

14.5.1 Property Definitions

Get/Set property definitions are provided in this section.

14.5.1.1 CurrentVersion Property

The value of this property is a 4-byte structure containing the current version of the flashloader.

Table 14-45. Fields of CurrentVersion property:

Bits	[31:24]	[23:16]	[15:8]	[7:0]
Field	Name = 'K' (0x4B)	Major version	Minor version	Bugfix version

14.5.1.2 AvailablePeripherals Property

The value of this property is a bitfield that lists the peripherals supported by the flashloader and the hardware on which it is running.

Table 14-46. Peripheral bits:

Bit	[31:7]	[6]	[5]	[4]	[3]	[2]	[1]	[0]
Peripheral	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	USB HID	CAN Slave	SPI Slave	I2C Slave	UART

If the peripheral is available, then the corresponding bit will be set in the property value. All reserved bits must be set to 0.

14.5.1.3 AvailableCommands Property

This property value is a bitfield with set bits indicating the commands enabled in the flashloader. Only commands that can be sent from the host to the target are listed in the bitfield. Response commands such as GenericResponse are excluded.

The bit number that identifies whether a command is present is the command's tag value minus 1. 1 is subtracted from the command tag because the lowest command tag value is 0x01. To get the bit mask for a given command, use this expression:

```
mask = 1 << (tag - 1)
```

Table 14-47. Command bits:

Bit	[31:18]	[17]	[16]	[15]	[14]	[13]	[12]	[11]	[10]	[9]	[8]	[7]	[6]	[5]	[4]	[3]	[2]	[1]	[0]

Table continues on the next page...

Table 14-47. Command bits: (continued)

Command	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	FlashReadResource	FlashReadOnce	FlashProgramOnce	Reserved	SetProperty	Reset	Reserved	Execute	ReceiveSBFile	GetProperty	FlashSecurityDisable	FillMemory	WriteMemory	ReadMemory	FlashEraseRegion	FlashEraseAll

14.6 Kinetis Flashloader Status Error Codes

This section describes the status error codes that the Kinetis Flashloader returns to the host.

Table 14-48. Kinetis Flashloader Status Error Codes, sorted by Value

Error Code	Value	Description
kStatus_Success	0	Operation succeeded without error.
kStatus_Fail	1	Operation failed with a generic error.
kStatus_ReadOnly	2	Requested value cannot be changed because it is read-only.
kStatus_OutOfRange	3	Requested value is out of range.
kStatus_InvalidArgument	4	The requested command's argument is undefined.
kStatus_Timeout	5	A timeout occurred.
kStatus_FlashSizeError	100	Not used.
kStatus_FlashAlignmentError	101	Address or length does not meet required alignment.
kStatus_FlashAddressError	102	Address or length is outside addressable memory.
kStatus_FlashAccessError	103	The FTFA_FSTAT[ACCERR] bit is set.
kStatus_FlashProtectionViolation	104	The FTFA_FSTAT[FPVIOL] bit is set.
kStatus_FlashCommandFailure	105	The FTFA_FSTAT[MGSTAT0] bit is set.
kStatus_FlashUnknownProperty	106	Unknown Flash property.
kStatus_FlashEraseKeyError	107	The key provided does not match the programmed flash key.
kStatus_FlashRegionExecuteOnly	108	The area of flash is protected as execute only.
kStatus_I2C_SlaveTxUnderrun	200	I2C Slave TX Underrun error.
kStatus_I2C_SlaveRxOverrun	201	I2C Slave RX Overrun error.
kStatus_I2C_AribtrationLost	202	I2C Arbitration Lost error.
kStatus_SPI_SlaveTxUnderrun	300	SPI Slave TX Underrun error.
kStatus_SPI_SlaveRxOverrun	301	SPI Slave RX Overrun error.
kStatus_SPI_Timeout	302	SPI tranfser timed out.

Table continues on the next page...

Table 14-48. Kinetis Flashloader Status Error Codes, sorted by Value (continued)

Error Code	Value	Description
kStatus_SPI_Busy	303	SPI instance is already busy performing a transfer.
kStatus_SPI_NoTransferInProgress	304	Attempt to abort a transfer when no transfer was in progress.
kStatus_UnknownCommand	10000	The requested command value is undefined.
kStatus_SecurityViolation	10001	Command is disallowed because flash security is enabled.
kStatus_AbortDataPhase	10002	Abort the data phase early.
kStatusRomLdrSectionOverrun	10100	The loader has finished processing the SB file.
kStatusRomLdrSignature	10101	The signature of the SB file is incorrect.
kStatusRomLdrSectionLength	10102	The section length in chunks is invalid.
kStatusRomLdrUnencryptedOnly	10103	An encrypted SB file has been sent and decryption support is not available.
kStatusRomLdrEOFReached	10104	The end of the SB file has been reached.
kStatusRomLdrChecksum	10105	The checksum of a command tag block is invalid.
kStatusRomLdrCrc32Error	10106	The CRC-32 of the data for a load command is incorrect.
kStatusRomLdrUnknownCommand	10107	An unknown command was found in the SB file.
kStatusRomLdrIdNotFound	10108	There was no bootable section found in the SB file.
kStatusRomLdrDataUnderrun	10109	The SB state machine is waiting for more data.
kStatusRomLdrJumpReturned	10110	The function that was jumped to by the SB file has returned.
kStatusRomLdrCallFailed	10111	The call command in the SB file failed.
kStatusRomLdrKeyNotFound	10112	A matching key was not found in the SB file's key dictionary to unencrypt the section.
kStatusRomLdrSecureOnly	10113	The SB file sent is unencrypted and security on the target is enabled.
kStatusRomLdrResetReturned	10114	The SB file reset operation has unexpectedly returned.
kStatusMemoryRangeInvalid	10200	Memory range conflicts with a protected region.
kStatus_UnknownProperty	10300	The requested property value is undefined.
kStatus_ReadOnlyProperty	10301	The requested property value cannot be written.
kStatus_InvalidPropertyValue	10302	The specified property value is invalid.
kStatus_AppCrcCheckPassed	10400	CRC check is valid and passed.
kStatus_AppCrcCheckFailed	10401	CRC check is valid but failed.
kStatus_AppCrcCheckInactive	10402	CRC check is inactive.
kStatus_AppCrcCheckInvalid	10403	CRC check is invalid, because the BCA is invalid or the CRC parameters are unset (all 0xFF bytes).
kStatus_AppCrcCheckOutOfRange	10404	CRC check is valid but addresses are out of range.

Chapter 15
Reset Control Module (RCM)

15.1 Introduction

Information found here describes the registers of the Reset Control Module (RCM). The RCM implements many of the reset functions for the chip. See the chip's reset chapter for more information.

See AN4503: Power Management for Kinetis MCUs for further details on using the RCM.

15.2 Reset memory map and register descriptions

The RCM Memory Map/Register Definition can be found here.

The Reset Control Module (RCM) registers provide reset status information and reset filter control.

NOTE

The RCM registers can be written only in supervisor mode. Write accesses in user mode are blocked and will result in a bus error.

RCM memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4007_F000	System Reset Status Register 0 (RCM_SRS0)	8	R	82h	15.2.1/282
4007_F001	System Reset Status Register 1 (RCM_SRS1)	8	R	00h	15.2.2/283
4007_F004	Reset Pin Filter Control register (RCM_RPFC)	8	R/W	00h	15.2.3/285
4007_F005	Reset Pin Filter Width register (RCM_RPFW)	8	R/W	00h	15.2.4/286

Table continues on the next page...

RCM memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4007_F008	Sticky System Reset Status Register 0 (RCM_SSRS0)	8	R/W	82h	15.2.5/287
4007_F009	Sticky System Reset Status Register 1 (RCM_SSRS1)	8	R/W	00h	15.2.6/289

15.2.1 System Reset Status Register 0 (RCM_SRS0)

This register includes read-only status flags to indicate the source of the most recent reset. The reset state of these bits depends on what caused the MCU to reset.

NOTE

The reset value of this register depends on the reset source:
- POR (including LVD) — 0x82
- LVD (without POR) — 0x02
- VLLS mode wakeup due to $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin assertion — 0x41
- VLLS mode wakeup due to other wakeup sources — 0x01
- Other reset — a bit is set if its corresponding reset source caused the reset

Address: 4007_F000h base + 0h offset = 4007_F000h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	POR	PIN	WDOG	0	LOL	LOC	LVD	WAKEUP
Write								
Reset	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0

RCM_SRS0 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 POR	Power-On Reset Indicates a reset has been caused by the power-on detection logic. Because the internal supply voltage was ramping up at the time, the low-voltage reset (LVD) status bit is also set to indicate that the reset occurred while the internal supply was below the LVD threshold. 0 Reset not caused by POR 1 Reset caused by POR
6 PIN	External Reset Pin Indicates a reset has been caused by an active-low level on the external $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin. 0 Reset not caused by external reset pin 1 Reset caused by external reset pin
5 WDOG	Watchdog

Table continues on the next page...

RCM_SRS0 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	Indicates a reset has been caused by the watchdog timer timing out. This reset source can be blocked by disabling the watchdog. 0 Reset not caused by watchdog timeout 1 Reset caused by watchdog timeout
4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
3 LOL	Loss-of-Lock Reset Indicates a reset has been caused by a loss of lock in the MCG PLL. See the MCG description for information on the loss-of-clock event. 0 Reset not caused by a loss of lock in the PLL 1 Reset caused by a loss of lock in the PLL
2 LOC	Loss-of-Clock Reset Indicates a reset has been caused by a loss of external clock. The MCG clock monitor must be enabled for a loss of clock to be detected. Refer to the detailed MCG description for information on enabling the clock monitor. 0 Reset not caused by a loss of external clock. 1 Reset caused by a loss of external clock.
1 LVD	Low-Voltage Detect Reset If PMC_LVDSC1[LVDRE] is set and the supply drops below the LVD trip voltage, an LVD reset occurs. This field is also set by POR. 0 Reset not caused by LVD trip or POR 1 Reset caused by LVD trip or POR
0 WAKEUP	Low Leakage Wakeup Reset Indicates a reset has been caused by an enabled LLWU module wakeup source while the chip was in a low leakage mode. In LLS mode, the $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin is the only wakeup source that can cause this reset. Any enabled wakeup source in a VLLSx mode causes a reset. This bit is cleared by any reset except WAKEUP. 0 Reset not caused by LLWU module wakeup source 1 Reset caused by LLWU module wakeup source

15.2.2 System Reset Status Register 1 (RCM_SRS1)

This register includes read-only status flags to indicate the source of the most recent reset. The reset state of these bits depends on what caused the MCU to reset.

NOTE

The reset value of this register depends on the reset source:

- POR (including LVD) — 0x00
- LVD (without POR) — 0x00

- VLLS mode wakeup — 0x00
- Other reset — a bit is set if its corresponding reset source caused the reset

Address: 4007_F000h base + 1h offset = 4007_F001h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0	0	SACKERR	0	MDM_AP	SW	LOCKUP	JTAG
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

RCM_SRS1 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
5 SACKERR	Stop Mode Acknowledge Error Reset Indicates that after an attempt to enter Stop mode, a reset has been caused by a failure of one or more peripherals to acknowledge within approximately one second to enter stop mode. 0 Reset not caused by peripheral failure to acknowledge attempt to enter stop mode 1 Reset caused by peripheral failure to acknowledge attempt to enter stop mode
4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
3 MDM_AP	MDM-AP System Reset Request Indicates a reset has been caused by the host debugger system setting of the System Reset Request bit in the MDM-AP Control Register. 0 Reset not caused by host debugger system setting of the System Reset Request bit 1 Reset caused by host debugger system setting of the System Reset Request bit
2 SW	Software Indicates a reset has been caused by software setting of SYSRESETREQ bit in Application Interrupt and Reset Control Register in the ARM core. 0 Reset not caused by software setting of SYSRESETREQ bit 1 Reset caused by software setting of SYSRESETREQ bit
1 LOCKUP	Core Lockup Indicates a reset has been caused by the ARM core indication of a LOCKUP event. 0 Reset not caused by core LOCKUP event 1 Reset caused by core LOCKUP event
0 JTAG	JTAG Generated Reset Indicates a reset has been caused by JTAG selection of certain IR codes: EXTEST, HIGHZ, and CLAMP. 0 Reset not caused by JTAG 1 Reset caused by JTAG

15.2.3 Reset Pin Filter Control register (RCM_RPFC)

NOTE

The reset values of bits 2-0 are for Chip POR only. They are unaffected by other reset types.

NOTE

The bus clock filter is reset when disabled or when entering stop mode. The LPO filter is reset when disabled .

Address: 4007_F000h base + 4h offset = 4007_F004h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0					RSTFLTSS	RSTFLTSRW	
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

RCM_RPFC field descriptions

Field	Description
7–3 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
2 RSTFLTSS	Reset Pin Filter Select in Stop Mode Selects how the reset pin filter is enabled in Stop and VLPS modes , and also during LLS and VLLS modes. On exit from VLLS mode, this bit should be reconfigured before clearing PMC_REGSC[ACKISO]. 0 All filtering disabled 1 LPO clock filter enabled
RSTFLTSRW	Reset Pin Filter Select in Run and Wait Modes Selects how the reset pin filter is enabled in run and wait modes. 00 All filtering disabled 01 Bus clock filter enabled for normal operation 10 LPO clock filter enabled for normal operation 11 Reserved

15.2.4 Reset Pin Filter Width register (RCM_RPFW)

NOTE

The reset values of the bits in the RSTFLTSEL field are for Chip POR only. They are unaffected by other reset types.

Address: 4007_F000h base + 5h offset = 4007_F005h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0				RSTFLTSEL			
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

RCM_RPFW field descriptions

Field	Description
7–5 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
RSTFLTSEL	Reset Pin Filter Bus Clock Select Selects the reset pin bus clock filter width. 00000 Bus clock filter count is 1 00001 Bus clock filter count is 2 00010 Bus clock filter count is 3 00011 Bus clock filter count is 4 00100 Bus clock filter count is 5 00101 Bus clock filter count is 6 00110 Bus clock filter count is 7 00111 Bus clock filter count is 8 01000 Bus clock filter count is 9 01001 Bus clock filter count is 10 01010 Bus clock filter count is 11 01011 Bus clock filter count is 12 01100 Bus clock filter count is 13 01101 Bus clock filter count is 14 01110 Bus clock filter count is 15 01111 Bus clock filter count is 16 10000 Bus clock filter count is 17 10001 Bus clock filter count is 18 10010 Bus clock filter count is 19 10011 Bus clock filter count is 20 10100 Bus clock filter count is 21 10101 Bus clock filter count is 22 10110 Bus clock filter count is 23 10111 Bus clock filter count is 24 11000 Bus clock filter count is 25

Table continues on the next page...

RCM_RPFW field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	11001 Bus clock filter count is 26 11010 Bus clock filter count is 27 11011 Bus clock filter count is 28 11100 Bus clock filter count is 29 11101 Bus clock filter count is 30 11110 Bus clock filter count is 31 11111 Bus clock filter count is 32

15.2.5 Sticky System Reset Status Register 0 (RCM_SSRS0)

This register includes status flags to indicate all reset sources since the last POR, LVD or VLLS Wakeup that have not been cleared by software. Software can clear the status flags by writing a logic one to a flag.

Address: 4007_F000h base + 8h offset = 4007_F008h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	SPOR	SPIN	SWDOG	0	SLOL	SLOC	SLVD	SWAKEUP
Write	w1c	w1c	w1c		w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c
Reset	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0

RCM_SSRS0 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 SPOR	Sticky Power-On Reset Indicates a reset has been caused by the power-on detection logic. Because the internal supply voltage was ramping up at the time, the low-voltage reset (LVD) status bit is also set to indicate that the reset occurred while the internal supply was below the LVD threshold. 0 Reset not caused by POR 1 Reset caused by POR
6 SPIN	Sticky External Reset Pin Indicates a reset has been caused by an active-low level on the external $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin. 0 Reset not caused by external reset pin 1 Reset caused by external reset pin
5 SWDOG	Sticky Watchdog Indicates a reset has been caused by the watchdog timer timing out.This reset source can be blocked by disabling the watchdog.

Table continues on the next page...

RCM_SSRS0 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Reset not caused by watchdog timeout 1 Reset caused by watchdog timeout
4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
3 SLOL	Sticky Loss-of-Lock Reset Indicates a reset has been caused by a loss of lock in the MCG PLL. See the MCG description for information on the loss-of-clock event. 0 Reset not caused by a loss of lock in the PLL 1 Reset caused by a loss of lock in the PLL
2 SLOC	Sticky Loss-of-Clock Reset Indicates a reset has been caused by a loss of external clock. The MCG clock monitor must be enabled for a loss of clock to be detected. Refer to the detailed MCG description for information on enabling the clock monitor. 0 Reset not caused by a loss of external clock. 1 Reset caused by a loss of external clock.
1 SLVD	Sticky Low-Voltage Detect Reset If PMC_LVDSC1[LVDRE] is set and the supply drops below the LVD trip voltage, an LVD reset occurs. This field is also set by POR. 0 Reset not caused by LVD trip or POR 1 Reset caused by LVD trip or POR
0 SWAKEUP	Sticky Low Leakage Wakeup Reset Indicates a reset has been caused by an enabled LLWU modulewakeup source while the chip was in a low leakage mode. In LLS mode, the $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin is the only wakeup source that can cause this reset. Any enabled wakeup source in a VLLSx mode causes a reset. 0 Reset not caused by LLWU module wakeup source 1 Reset caused by LLWU module wakeup source

15.2.6 Sticky System Reset Status Register 1 (RCM_SSRS1)

This register includes status flags to indicate all reset sources since the last POR, LVD or VLLS Wakeup that have not been cleared by software. Software can clear the status flags by writing a logic one to a flag.

Address: 4007_F000h base + 9h offset = 4007_F009h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0	0	SSACKERR	0	SMDM_AP	SSW	SLOCKUP	SJTAG
Write			w1c		w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

RCM_SSRS1 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
5 SSACKERR	Sticky Stop Mode Acknowledge Error Reset Indicates that after an attempt to enter Stop mode, a reset has been caused by a failure of one or more peripherals to acknowledge within approximately one second to enter stop mode. 0 Reset not caused by peripheral failure to acknowledge attempt to enter stop mode 1 Reset caused by peripheral failure to acknowledge attempt to enter stop mode
4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
3 SMDM_AP	Sticky MDM-AP System Reset Request Indicates a reset has been caused by the host debugger system setting of the System Reset Request bit in the MDM-AP Control Register. 0 Reset not caused by host debugger system setting of the System Reset Request bit 1 Reset caused by host debugger system setting of the System Reset Request bit
2 SSW	Sticky Software Indicates a reset has been caused by software setting of SYSRESETREQ bit in Application Interrupt and Reset Control Register in the ARM core. 0 Reset not caused by software setting of SYSRESETREQ bit 1 Reset caused by software setting of SYSRESETREQ bit
1 SLOCKUP	Sticky Core Lockup Indicates a reset has been caused by the ARM core indication of a LOCKUP event.

Table continues on the next page...

RCM_SSRS1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Reset not caused by core LOCKUP event 1 Reset caused by core LOCKUP event
0 SJTAG	Sticky JTAG Generated Reset Indicates a reset has been caused by JTAG selection of certain IR codes: EXTEST, HIGHZ, and CLAMP. 0 Reset not caused by JTAG 1 Reset caused by JTAG

Chapter 16
System Mode Controller (SMC)

16.1 Introduction

The System Mode Controller (SMC) is responsible for sequencing the system into and out of all low-power Stop and Run modes.

Specifically, it monitors events to trigger transitions between power modes while controlling the power, clocks, and memories of the system to achieve the power consumption and functionality of that mode.

This chapter describes all the available low-power modes, the sequence followed to enter/exit each mode, and the functionality available while in each of the modes.

The SMC is able to function during even the deepest low power modes.

See AN4503: Power Management for Kinetis MCUs for further details on using the SMC.

16.2 Modes of operation

The ARM CPU has three primary modes of operation:

- Run
- Sleep
- Deep Sleep

The WFI or WFE instruction is used to invoke Sleep and Deep Sleep modes. Run, Wait, and Stop are the common terms used for the primary operating modes of Kinetis microcontrollers.

The following table shows the translation between the ARM CPU modes and the Kinetis MCU power modes.

ARM CPU mode	MCU mode
Sleep	Wait
Deep Sleep	Stop

Accordingly, the ARM CPU documentation refers to sleep and deep sleep, while the Kinetis MCU documentation normally uses wait and stop.

In addition, Kinetis MCUs also augment Stop, Wait, and Run modes in a number of ways. The power management controller (PMC) contains a run and a stop mode regulator. Run regulation is used in normal run, wait and stop modes. Stop mode regulation is used during all very low power and low leakage modes. During stop mode regulation, the bus frequencies are limited in the very low power modes.

The SMC provides the user with multiple power options. The Very Low Power Run (VLPR) mode can drastically reduce run time power when maximum bus frequency is not required to handle the application needs. From Normal Run mode, the Run Mode (RUNM) field can be modified to change the MCU into VLPR mode when limited frequency is sufficient for the application. From VLPR mode, a corresponding wait (VLPW) and stop (VLPS) mode can be entered.

Depending on the needs of the user application, a variety of stop modes are available that allow the state retention, partial power down or full power down of certain logic and/or memory. I/O states are held in all modes of operation. Several registers are used to configure the various modes of operation for the device.

The following table describes the power modes available for the device.

Table 16-1. Power modes

Mode	Description
RUN	The MCU can be run at full speed and the internal supply is fully regulated, that is, in run regulation. This mode is also referred to as Normal Run mode.
HSRUN	The MCU can be run at a faster frequency compared with RUN mode and the internal supply is fully regulated. See the Power Management chapter for details about the maximum allowable frequencies.
WAIT	The core clock is gated off. The system clock continues to operate. Bus clocks, if enabled, continue to operate. Run regulation is maintained.
STOP	The core clock is gated off. System clocks to other masters and bus clocks are gated off after all stop acknowledge signals from supporting peripherals are valid.
VLPR	The core, system, bus, and flash clock maximum frequencies are restricted in this mode. See the Power Management chapter for details about the maximum allowable frequencies.
VLPW	The core clock is gated off. The system, bus, and flash clocks continue to operate, although their maximum frequency is restricted. See the Power Management chapter for details on the maximum allowable frequencies.
VLPS	The core clock is gated off. System clocks to other masters and bus clocks are gated off after all stop acknowledge signals from supporting peripherals are valid.

Table continues on the next page...

Table 16-1. Power modes (continued)

Mode	Description
LLS3	The core clock is gated off. System clocks to other masters and bus clocks are gated off after all stop acknowledge signals from supporting peripherals are valid. The MCU is placed in a low leakage mode by reducing the voltage to internal logic. All system RAM contents, internal logic and I/O states are retained.
LLS2	The core clock is gated off. System clocks to other masters and bus clocks are gated off after all stop acknowledge signals from supporting peripherals are valid. The MCU is placed in a low leakage mode by reducing voltage to internal logicand powering down the system RAM2 partition. The system RAM1 partition, internal logic and I/O states are retained.[1]
VLLS3	The core clock is gated off. System clocks to other masters and bus clocks are gated off after all stop acknowledge signals from supporting peripherals are valid. The MCU is placed in a low leakage mode by powering down the internal logic. All system RAM contents are retained and I/O states are held. Internal logic states are not retained.
VLLS2	The core clock is gated off. System clocks to other masters and bus clocks are gated off after all stop acknowledge signals from supporting peripherals are valid. The MCU is placed in a low leakage mode by powering down the internal logic and the system RAM2 partition. The system RAM1 partition contents are retained in this mode. Internal logic states are not retained. [1]
VLLS1	The core clock is gated off. System clocks to other masters and bus clocks are gated off after all stop acknowledge signals from supporting peripherals are valid. The MCU is placed in a low leakage mode by powering down the internal logic and all system RAM. I/O states are held. Internal logic states are not retained.
VLLS0	The core clock is gated off. System clocks to other masters and bus clocks are gated off after all stop acknowledge signals from supporting peripherals are valid. The MCU is placed in a low leakage mode by powering down the internal logic and all system RAM. I/O states are held. Internal logic states are not retained. The 1kHz LPO clock is disabled and the power on reset (POR) circuit can be optionally enabled using STOPCTRL[PORPO].

1. See the devices' chip configuration details for the size and location of the system RAM partitions.

16.3 Memory map and register descriptions

Information about the registers related to the system mode controller can be found here.

Different SMC registers reset on different reset types. Each register's description provides details. For more information about the types of reset on this chip, refer to the Reset section details.

NOTE

The SMC registers can be written only in supervisor mode. Write accesses in user mode are blocked and will result in a bus error.

NOTE

Before executing the WFI instruction, the last register written to must be read back. This ensures that all register writes associated with setting up the low power mode being entered have completed before the MCU enters the low power mode.

Failure to do this may result in the low power mode not being entered correctly.

SMC memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4007_E000	Power Mode Protection register (SMC_PMPROT)	8	R/W	00h	16.3.1/294
4007_E001	Power Mode Control register (SMC_PMCTRL)	8	R/W	00h	16.3.2/295
4007_E002	PROCESS PHStop Control Register (SMC_STOPCTRL)	8	R/W	03h	16.3.3/297
4007_E003	Power Mode Status register (SMC_PMSTAT)	8	R	01h	16.3.4/298

16.3.1 Power Mode Protection register (SMC_PMPROT)

This register provides protection for entry into any low-power run or stop mode. The enabling of the low-power run or stop mode occurs by configuring the Power Mode Control register (PMCTRL).

The PMPROT register can be written only once after any system reset.

If the MCU is configured for a disallowed or reserved power mode, the MCU remains in its current power mode. For example, if the MCU is in normal RUN mode and AVLP is 0, an attempt to enter VLPR mode using PMCTRL[RUNM] is blocked and PMCTRL[RUNM] remains 00b, indicating the MCU is still in Normal Run mode.

NOTE

This register is reset on Chip Reset not VLLS and by reset types that trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. It is unaffected by reset types that do not trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. See the Reset section details for more information.

Address: 4007_E000h base + 0h offset = 4007_E000h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	AHSRUN	0	AVLP	0	ALLS	0	AVLLS	0
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

SMC_PMPROT field descriptions

Field	Description
7 AHSRUN	Allow High Speed Run mode Provided the appropriate control bits are set up in PMCTRL, this write-once field allows the MCU to enter High Speed Run mode (HSRUN).

Table continues on the next page...

SMC_PMPROT field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 HSRUN is not allowed 1 HSRUN is allowed
6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
5 AVLP	Allow Very-Low-Power Modes Provided the appropriate control bits are set up in PMCTRL, this write-once field allows the MCU to enter any very-low-power mode (VLPR, VLPW, and VLPS). 0 VLPR, VLPW, and VLPS are not allowed. 1 VLPR, VLPW, and VLPS are allowed.
4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
3 ALLS	Allow Low-Leakage Stop Mode Provided the appropriate control bits are set up in PMCTRL, this write-once field allows the MCU to enter any low-leakage stop mode (LLS). 0 Any LLSx mode is not allowed 1 Any LLSx mode is allowed
2 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
1 AVLLS	Allow Very-Low-Leakage Stop Mode Provided the appropriate control bits are set up in PMCTRL, this write once bit allows the MCU to enter any very-low-leakage stop mode (VLLSx). 0 Any VLLSx mode is not allowed 1 Any VLLSx mode is allowed
0 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

16.3.2 Power Mode Control register (SMC_PMCTRL)

The PMCTRL register controls entry into low-power Run and Stop modes, provided that the selected power mode is allowed via an appropriate setting of the protection (PMPROT) register.

NOTE

This register is reset on Chip POR not VLLS and by reset types that trigger Chip POR not VLLS. It is unaffected by reset types that do not trigger Chip POR not VLLS. See the Reset section details for more information.

Address: 4007_E000h base + 1h offset = 4007_E001h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	Reserved	RUNM		0	STOPA	STOPM		
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

SMC_PMCTRL field descriptions

Field	Description
7 Reserved	This field is reserved. This bit is reserved for future expansion. Software should write 0 to this bit to maintain compatibility.
6–5 RUNM	Run Mode Control When written, causes entry into the selected run mode. Writes to this field are blocked if the protection level has not been enabled using the PMPROT register. **NOTE:** RUNM may be set to VLPR only when PMSTAT=RUN. After being written to VLPR, RUNM should not be written back to RUN until PMSTAT=VLPR. **NOTE:** RUNM may be set to HSRUN only when PMSTAT=RUN. After being programmed to HSRUN, RUNM should not be programmed back to RUN until PMSTAT=HSRUN. Also, stop mode entry should not be attempted while RUNM=HSRUN or PMSTAT=HSRUN. 00 Normal Run mode (RUN) 01 Reserved 10 Very-Low-Power Run mode (VLPR) 11 High Speed Run mode (HSRUN)
4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
3 STOPA	Stop Aborted When set, this read-only status bit indicates an interrupt occured during the previous stop mode entry sequence, preventing the system from entering that mode. This field is cleared by reset or by hardware at the beginning of any stop mode entry sequence and is set if the sequence was aborted. 0 The previous stop mode entry was successful. 1 The previous stop mode entry was aborted.
STOPM	Stop Mode Control When written, controls entry into the selected stop mode when Sleep-Now or Sleep-On-Exit mode is entered with SLEEPDEEP=1 . Writes to this field are blocked if the protection level has not been enabled using the PMPROT register. After any system reset, this field is cleared by hardware on any successful write to the PMPROT register. **NOTE:** When set to VLLSxor LLSx, the LLSM in the STOPCTRL register is used to further select the particular VLLSor LLS submode which will be entered. **NOTE:** When set to STOP, the PSTOPO bits in the STOPCTRL register can be used to select a Partial Stop mode if desired. 000 Normal Stop (STOP) 001 Reserved 010 Very-Low-Power Stop (VLPS) 011 Low-Leakage Stop (LLSx) 100 Very-Low-Leakage Stop (VLLSx)

Table continues on the next page...

SMC_PMCTRL field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	101 Reserved 110 Reseved 111 Reserved

16.3.3 Stop Control Register (SMC_STOPCTRL)

The STOPCTRL register provides various control bits allowing the user to fine tune power consumption during the stop mode selected by the STOPM field.

NOTE

This register is reset on Chip POR not VLLS and by reset types that trigger Chip POR not VLLS. It is unaffected by reset types that do not trigger Chip POR not VLLS. See the Reset section details for more information.

Address: 4007_E000h base + 2h offset = 4007_E002h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	PSTOPO		PORPO	0	LPOPO	LLSM		
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1

SMC_STOPCTRL field descriptions

Field	Description
7–6 PSTOPO	Partial Stop Option These bits control whether a Partial Stop mode is entered when STOPM=STOP. When entering a Partial Stop mode from RUN (or VLPR) mode, the PMC, MCG and flash remain fully powered, allowing the device to wakeup almost instantaneously at the expense of higher power consumption. In PSTOP2, only system clocks are gated allowing peripherals running on bus clock to remain fully functional. In PSTOP1, both system and bus clocks are gated. 00 STOP - Normal Stop mode 01 PSTOP1 - Partial Stop with both system and bus clocks disabled 10 PSTOP2 - Partial Stop with system clock disabled and bus clock enabled 11 Reserved
5 PORPO	POR Power Option This bit controls whether the POR detect circuit is enabled in VLLS0 mode. 0 POR detect circuit is enabled in VLLS0 1 POR detect circuit is disabled in VLLS0
4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

Table continues on the next page...

SMC_STOPCTRL field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
3 LPOPO	LPO Power Option Controls whether the 1 kHz LPO clock is enabled in LLS/VLLSx modes. **NOTE:** During VLLS0 mode, the LPO clock is disabled by hardware and this bit has no effect. 0 LPO clock is enabled in LLS/VLLSx 1 LPO clock is disabled in LLS/VLLSx
LLSM	LLS or VLLS Mode Control This field controls which LLS orVLLS sub-mode to enter if STOPM = LLSx orVLLSx. 000 VLLS0 if PMCTRL[STOPM]=VLLSx, reserved if PMCTRL[STOPM]=LLSx 001 VLLS1 if PMCTRL[STOPM]=VLLSx, reserved if PMCTRL[STOPM]=LLSx 010 VLLS2 if PMCTRL[STOPM]=VLLSx, LLS2 if PMCTRL[STOPM]=LLSx 011 VLLS3 if PMCTRL[STOPM]=VLLSx, LLS3 if PMCTRL[STOPM]=LLSx 100 Reserved 101 Reserved 110 Reserved 111 Reserved

16.3.4 Power Mode Status register (SMC_PMSTAT)

PMSTAT is a read-only, one-hot register which indicates the current power mode of the system.

NOTE

This register is reset on Chip POR not VLLS and by reset types that trigger Chip POR not VLLS. It is unaffected by reset types that do not trigger Chip POR not VLLS. See the Reset section details for more information.

Address: 4007_E000h base + 3h offset = 4007_E003h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	PMSTAT							
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1

SMC_PMSTAT field descriptions

Field	Description
PMSTAT	Power Mode Status **NOTE:** When debug is enabled, the PMSTAT will not update to STOP or VLPS

SMC_PMSTAT field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	NOTE: When a PSTOP mode is enabled, the PMSTAT will not update to STOP or VLPS 0000_0001 Current power mode is RUN. 0000_0010 Current power mode is STOP. 0000_0100 Current power mode is VLPR. 0000_1000 Current power mode is VLPW. 0001_0000 Current power mode is VLPS. 0010_0000 Current power mode is LLS. 0100_0000 Current power mode is VLLS. 1000_0000 Current power mode is HSRUN

16.4 Functional description

16.4.1 Power mode transitions

The following figure shows the power mode state transitions available on the chip. Any reset always brings the MCU back to the normal RUN state.

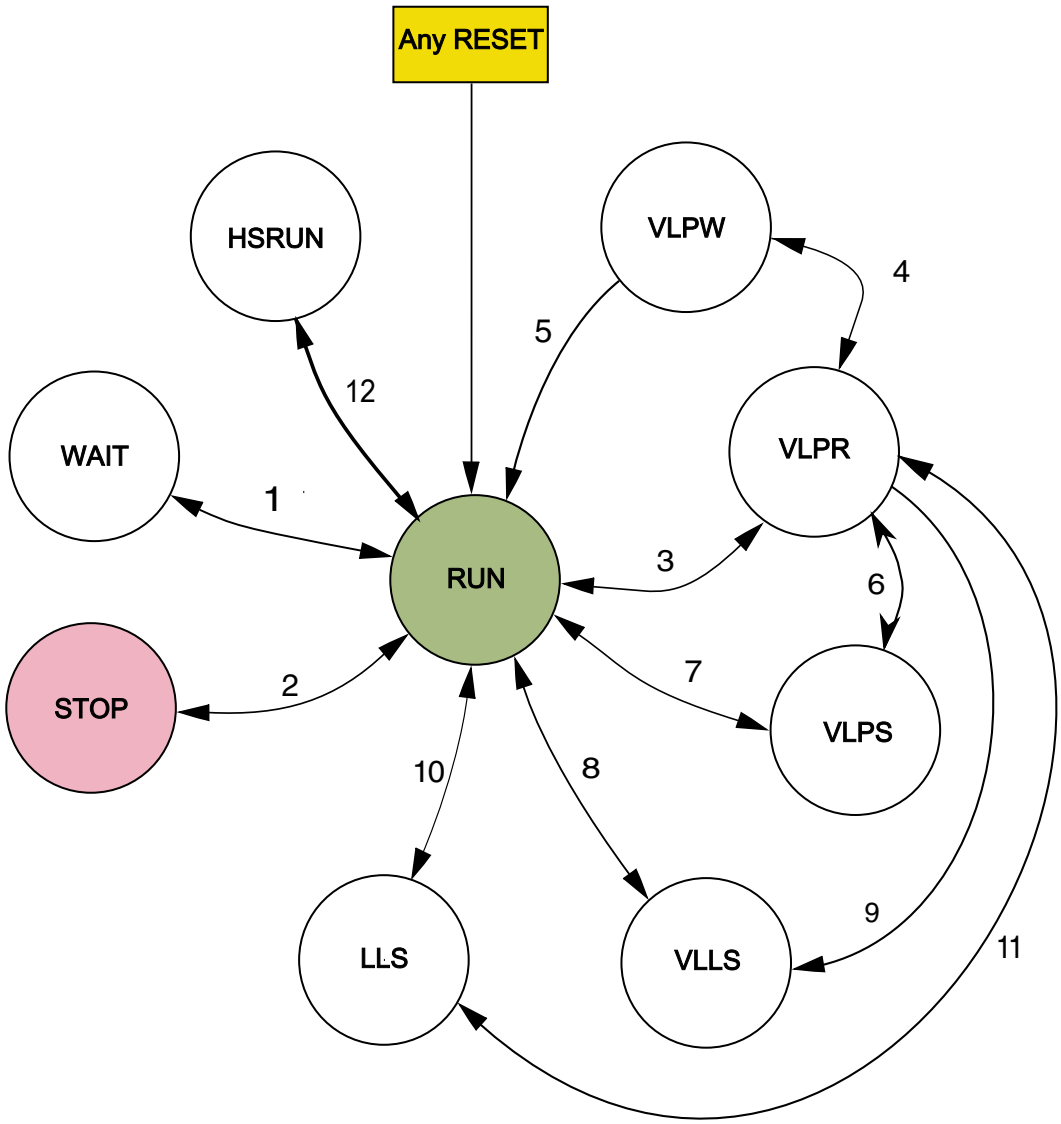


Figure 16-1. Power mode state diagram

The following table defines triggers for the various state transitions shown in the previous figure.

Table 16-2. Power mode transition triggers

Transition #	From	To	Trigger conditions
1	RUN	WAIT	Sleep-now or sleep-on-exit modes entered with SLEEPDEEP clear, controlled in System Control Register in ARM core. See note.
	WAIT	RUN	Interrupt or Reset
2	RUN	STOP	PMCTRL[RUNM]=00, PMCTRL[STOPM]=000[2]

Table continues on the next page...

Table 16-2. Power mode transition triggers (continued)

Transition #	From	To	Trigger conditions
			Sleep-now or sleep-on-exit modes entered with SLEEPDEEP set, which is controlled in System Control Register in ARM core. See note.[1]
	STOP	RUN	Interrupt or Reset
3	RUN	VLPR	The core, system, bus and flash clock frequencies and MCG clocking mode are restricted in this mode. See the Power Management chapter for the maximum allowable frequencies and MCG modes supported. Set PMPROT[AVLP]=1, PMCTRL[RUNM]=10.
	VLPR	RUN	Set PMCTRL[RUNM]=00 or Reset.
4	VLPR	VLPW	Sleep-now or sleep-on-exit modes entered with SLEEPDEEP clear, which is controlled in System Control Register in ARM core. See note.[1]
	VLPW	VLPR	Interrupt
5	VLPW	RUN	Reset
6	VLPR	VLPS	PMCTRL[STOPM]=000[3] or 010, Sleep-now or sleep-on-exit modes entered with SLEEPDEEP set, which is controlled in System Control Register in ARM core. See note.[1]
	VLPS	VLPR	Interrupt **NOTE:** If VLPS was entered directly from RUN (transition #7), hardware forces exit back to RUN and does not allow a transition to VLPR.
7	RUN	VLPS	PMPROT[AVLP]=1, PMCTRL[STOPM]=010, Sleep-now or sleep-on-exit modes entered with SLEEPDEEP set, which is controlled in System Control Register in ARM core. See note.[1]
	VLPS	RUN	Interrupt and VLPS mode was entered directly from RUN or Reset
8	RUN	VLLSx	PMPROT[AVLLS]=1, PMCTRL[STOPM]=100, STOPCTRL[LLSM]=x (VLLSx), Sleep-now or sleep-on-exit modes entered with SLEEPDEEP set, which is controlled in System Control Register in ARM core.
	VLLSx	RUN	Wakeup from enabled LLWU input source or RESET pin
9	VLPR	VLLSx	PMPROT[AVLLS]=1, PMCTRL[STOPM]=100, STOPCTRL[LLSM]=x (VLLSx), Sleep-now or sleep-on-exit modes entered with SLEEPDEEP set, which is controlled in System Control Register in ARM core.

Table continues on the next page...

Table 16-2. Power mode transition triggers (continued)

Transition #	From	To	Trigger conditions
10	RUN	LLSx	PMPROT[ALLS]=1, PMCTRL[STOPM]=011, STOPCTRL[LLSM]=x (LLSx), Sleep-now or sleep-on-exit modes entered with SLEEPDEEP set, which is controlled in System Control Register in ARM core.
	LLSx	RUN	Wakeup from enabled LLWU input source and LLSx mode was entered directly from RUN or RESET pin.
11	VLPR	LLSx	PMPROT[ALLS]=1, PMCTRL[STOPM]=011, Sleep-now or sleep-on-exit modes entered with SLEEPDEEP set, which is controlled in System Control Register in ARM core.
	LLSx	VLPR	Wakeup from enabled LLWU input source and LLSx mode was entered directly from VLPR **NOTE:** If LLSx was entered directly from RUN, hardware will not allow this transition and will force exit back to RUN
12	RUN	HSRUN	Set PMPROT[AHSRUN]=1, PMCTRL[RUNM]=11.
	HSRUN	RUN	Set PMCTRL[RUNM]=00 or Reset

1. If debug is enabled, the core clock remains to support debug.
2. If PMCTRL[STOPM]=000 and STOPCTRL[PSTOPO]=01 or 10, then only a Partial Stop mode is entered instead of STOP
3. If PMCTRL[STOPM]=000 and STOPCTRL[PSTOPO]=00, then VLPS mode is entered instead of STOP. If PMCTRL[STOPM]=000 and STOPCTRL[PSTOPO]=01 or 10, then only a Partial Stop mode is entered instead of VLPS

16.4.2 Power mode entry/exit sequencing

When entering or exiting low-power modes, the system must conform to an orderly sequence to manage transitions safely.

The SMC manages the system's entry into and exit from all power modes. This diagram illustrates the connections of the SMC with other system components in the chip that are necessary to sequence the system through all power modes.

Figure 16-2. Low-power system components and connections

16.4.2.1 Stop mode entry sequence

Entry into a low-power stop mode (Stop, VLPS, LLS, VLLSx) is initiated by a CPU executing the WFI instruction. After the instruction is executed, the following sequence occurs:

1. The CPU clock is gated off immediately.

2. Requests are made to all non-CPU bus masters to enter Stop mode.
3. After all masters have acknowledged they are ready to enter Stop mode, requests are made to all bus slaves to enter Stop mode.
4. After all slaves have acknowledged they are ready to enter Stop mode, all system and bus clocks are gated off.
5. Clock generators are disabled in the MCG.
6. The on-chip regulator in the PMC and internal power switches are configured to meet the power consumption goals for the targeted low-power mode.

16.4.2.2 Stop mode exit sequence

Exit from a low-power stop mode is initiated either by a reset or an interrupt event. The following sequence then executes to restore the system to a run mode (RUN or VLPR):

1. The on-chip regulator in the PMC and internal power switches are restored.
2. Clock generators are enabled in the MCG.
3. System and bus clocks are enabled to all masters and slaves.
4. The CPU clock is enabled and the CPU begins servicing the reset or interrupt that initiated the exit from the low-power stop mode.

16.4.2.3 Aborted stop mode entry

If an interrupt occurs during a stop entry sequence, the SMC can abort the transition early and return to RUN mode without completely entering the stop mode. An aborted entry is possible only if the interrupt occurs before the PMC begins the transition to stop mode regulation. After this point, the interrupt is ignored until the PMC has completed its transition to stop mode regulation. When an aborted stop mode entry sequence occurs, SMC_PMCTRL[STOPA] is set to 1.

16.4.2.4 Transition to wait modes

For wait modes (WAIT and VLPW), the CPU clock is gated off while all other clocking continues, as in RUN and VLPR mode operation. Some modules that support stop-in-wait functionality have their clocks disabled in these configurations.

16.4.2.5 Transition from stop modes to Debug mode

The debugger module supports a transition from STOP, WAIT, VLPS, and VLPW back to a Halted state when the debugger has been enabled. As part of this transition, system clocking is re-established and is equivalent to the normal RUN and VLPR mode clocking configuration.

16.4.3 Run modes

The run modes supported by this device can be found here.

- Run (RUN)
- Very Low-Power Run (VLPR)
- High Speed Run (HSRUN)

16.4.3.1 RUN mode

This is the normal operating mode for the device.

This mode is selected after any reset. When the ARM processor exits reset, it sets up the stack, program counter (PC), and link register (LR):

- The processor reads the start SP (SP_main) from vector-table offset 0x000
- The processor reads the start PC from vector-table offset 0x004
- LR is set to 0xFFFF_FFFF.

To reduce power in this mode, disable the clocks to unused modules.

16.4.3.2 Very-Low Power Run (VLPR) mode

In VLPR mode, the on-chip voltage regulator is put into a stop mode regulation state. In this state, the regulator is designed to supply enough current to the MCU over a reduced frequency. To further reduce power in this mode, disable the clocks to unused modules using their corresponding clock gating control bits in the SIM's registers.

Before entering this mode, the following conditions must be met:

- The MCG must be configured in a mode which is supported during VLPR. See the Power Management details for information about these MCG modes.
- All clock monitors in the MCG must be disabled.
- The maximum frequencies of the system, bus, flash, and core are restricted. See the Power Management details about which frequencies are supported.

- Mode protection must be set to allow VLP modes, that is, PMPROT[AVLP] is 1.
- PMCTRL[RUNM] must be set to 10b to enter VLPR.
- Flash programming/erasing is not allowed.

NOTE

Do not increase the clock frequency while in VLPR mode, because the regulator is slow in responding and cannot manage fast load transitions. In addition, do not modify the clock source in the MCG module or any clock divider registers. Module clock enables in the SIM can be set, but not cleared.

To reenter Normal Run mode, clear PMCTRL[RUNM]. PMSTAT is a read-only status register that can be used to determine when the system has completed an exit to RUN mode. When PMSTAT=RUN, the system is in run regulation and the MCU can run at full speed in any clock mode. If a higher execution frequency is desired, poll PMSTAT until it is set to RUN when returning from VLPR mode.

Any reset always causes an exit from VLPR and returns the device to RUN mode after the MCU exits its reset flow.

16.4.3.3 High Speed Run (HSRUN) mode

In HSRUN mode, the on-chip voltage regulator remains in a run regulation state, but with a slightly elevated voltage output. In this state, the MCU is able to operate at a faster frequency compared to normal RUN mode. For the maximum allowable frequencies, see the Power Management chapter.

While in this mode, the following restrictions must be adhered to:

- The maximum allowable change in frequency of the system, bus, flash or core clocks is restricted to 2x (double the frequency).
- Before exiting HSRUN mode, clock frequencies should be reduced back down to those acceptable in RUN mode.
- Stop mode entry is not supported from HSRUN.
- Modifications to clock gating control bits are prohibited.
- Flash programming/erasing is not allowed.

To enter HSRUN mode, set PMPROT[AHSRUN] to allow HSRUN and then set PMCTRL[RUNM]=HSRUN. Before increasing clock frequencies, the PMSTAT register should be polled to determine when the system has completed entry into HSRUN mode. To reenter normal RUN mode, clear PMCTRL[RUNM]. Any reset also clears PMCTRL[RUNM] and causes the system to exit to normal RUN mode after the MCU exits its reset flow.

16.4.4 Wait modes

This device contains two different wait modes which are listed here.

- Wait
- Very-Low Power Wait (VLPW)

16.4.4.1 WAIT mode

WAIT mode is entered when the ARM core enters the Sleep-Now or Sleep-On-Exit modes while SLEEPDEEP is cleared. The ARM CPU enters a low-power state in which it is not clocked, but peripherals continue to be clocked provided they are enabled.

When an interrupt request occurs, the CPU exits WAIT mode and resumes processing in RUN mode, beginning with the stacking operations leading to the interrupt service routine.

A system reset causes an exit from WAIT mode, returning the device to normal RUN mode.

16.4.4.2 Very-Low-Power Wait (VLPW) mode

VLPW mode is entered by entering the Sleep-Now or Sleep-On-Exit mode while SLEEPDEEP is cleared and the device is in VLPR mode.

In VLPW, the on-chip voltage regulator remains in its stop regulation state. In this state, the regulator is designed to supply enough current to the device at a reduced frequency. To further reduce power in this mode, disable the clocks to unused modules.

VLPR mode restrictions also apply to VLPW.

When an interrupt from VLPW occurs, the device returns to VLPR mode to execute the interrupt service routine.

A system reset causes an exit from VLPW mode, returning the device to normal RUN mode.

16.4.5 Stop modes

This device contains a variety of stop modes to meet your application needs.

The stop modes range from:

- a stopped CPU, with all I/O, logic, and memory states retained, and certain asynchronous mode peripherals operating

to:

- a powered down CPU, with only I/O and a small register file retained, very few asynchronous mode peripherals operating, while the remainder of the MCU is powered down.

The choice of stop mode depends upon the user's application, and how power usage and state retention versus functional needs and recovery time may be traded off.

The various stop modes are selected by setting the appropriate fields in PMPROT and PMCTRL. The selected stop mode is entered during the sleep-now or sleep-on-exit entry with the SLEEPDEEP bit set in the System Control Register in the ARM core.

The available stop modes are:

- Normal Stop (STOP)
- Very-Low Power Stop (VLPS)
- Low-Leakage Stop (LLS)
- Very-Low-Leakage Stop (VLLSx)

16.4.5.1 STOP mode

STOP mode is entered via the sleep-now or sleep-on-exit with the SLEEPDEEP bit set in the System Control Register in the ARM core.

The MCG module can be configured to leave the reference clocks running.

A module capable of providing an asynchronous interrupt to the device takes the device out of STOP mode and returns the device to normal RUN mode. Refer to the device's Power Management chapter for peripheral, I/O, and memory operation in STOP mode. When an interrupt request occurs, the CPU exits STOP mode and resumes processing, beginning with the stacking operations leading to the interrupt service routine.

A system reset will cause an exit from STOP mode, returning the device to normal RUN mode via an MCU reset.

16.4.5.2 Very-Low-Power Stop (VLPS) mode

The two ways in which VLPS mode can be entered are listed here.

- Entry into stop via the sleep-now or sleep-on-exit with the SLEEPDEEP bit set in the System Control Register in the ARM core while the MCU is in VLPR mode and PMCTRL[STOPM] = 010 or 000.
- Entry into stop via the sleep-now or sleep-on-exit with the SLEEPDEEP bit set in the System Control Register in the ARM core while the MCU is in normal RUN mode and PMCTRL[STOPM] = 010. When VLPS is entered directly from RUN mode, exit to VLPR is disabled by hardware and the system will always exit back to RUN.

In VLPS, the on-chip voltage regulator remains in its stop regulation state as in VLPR.

A module capable of providing an asynchronous interrupt to the device takes the device out of VLPS and returns the device to VLPR mode.

A system reset will also cause a VLPS exit, returning the device to normal RUN mode.

16.4.5.3 Low-Leakage Stop (LLSx) modes

This device contains two Low-Leakage Stop modes: LLS3 and LLS2. LLS or LLSx is often used in this document to refer to both modes. All LLS modes can be entered from normal RUN or VLPR modes.

The MCU enters LLS mode if:

- In Sleep-Now or Sleep-On-Exit mode, SLEEPDEEP is set in the System Control Register in the ARM core, and
- The device is configured as shown in Table 16-2.

In LLS, the on-chip voltage regulator is in stop regulation. Most of the peripherals are put in a state-retention mode that does not allow them to operate while in LLS.

Before entering LLS mode, the user should configure the Low-Leakage Wake-up (LLWU) module to enable the desired wake-up sources. The available wake-up sources in LLS are detailed in the chip configuration details for this device.

After wakeup from LLS, the device returns to the run mode from which LLS was entered (either normal RUN or VLPR) with a pending LLWU module interrupt. In the LLWU interrupt service routine (ISR), the user can poll the LLWU module wake-up flags to determine the source of the wakeup.

NOTE

The LLWU interrupt must not be masked by the interrupt controller to avoid a scenario where the system does not fully exit Stop mode on an LLS recovery.

An asserted RESET pin will cause an exit from LLS mode, returning the device to normal RUN mode. When LLS is exiting via the RESET pin, RCM_SRS[PIN] and RCM_SRS[WAKEUP] are set.

16.4.5.4 Very-Low-Leakage Stop (VLLSx) modes

This device contains these very low leakage modes:

- VLLS3
- VLLS2
- VLLS1
- VLLS0

VLLSx is often used in this document to refer to all of these modes.

All VLLSx modes can be entered from normal RUN or VLPR modes.

The MCU enters the configured VLLS mode if:

- In Sleep-Now or Sleep-On-Exit mode, the SLEEPDEEP bit is set in the System Control Register in the ARM core, and
- The device is configured as shown in Table 16-2.

In VLLS, the on-chip voltage regulator is in its stop-regulation state while most digital logic is powered off.

Before entering VLLS mode, the user should configure the Low-Leakage Wake-up (LLWU) module to enable the desired wakeup sources. The available wake-up sources in VLLS are detailed in the chip configuration details for this device.

After wakeup from VLLS, the device returns to normal RUN mode with a pending LLWU interrupt. In the LLWU interrupt service routine (ISR), the user can poll the LLWU module wake-up flags to determine the source of the wake-up.

When entering VLLS, each I/O pin is latched as configured before executing VLLS. Because all digital logic in the MCU is powered off, all port and peripheral data is lost during VLLS. This information must be restored before PMC_REGSC[ACKISO] is set.

An asserted RESET pin will cause an exit from any VLLS mode, returning the device to normal RUN mode. When exiting VLLS via the RESET pin, RCM_SRS[PIN] and RCM_SRS[WAKEUP] are set.

16.4.6 Debug in low power modes

When the MCU is secure, the device disables/limits debugger operation. When the MCU is unsecure, the ARM debugger can assert two power-up request signals:

- System power up, via SYSPWR in the Debug Port Control/Stat register
- Debug power up, via CDBGPWRUPREQ in the Debug Port Control/Stat register

When asserted while in RUN, WAIT, VLPR, or VLPR the mode controller drives a corresponding acknowledge for each signal, that is, both CDBGPWRUPACK and CSYSPWRUPACK. When both requests are asserted, the mode controller handles attempts to enter STOP and VLPS by entering an emulated stop state. In this emulated stop state:

- the regulator is in run regulation,
- the MCG-generated clock source is enabled,
- all system clocks, except the core clock, are disabled,
- the debug module has access to core registers, and
- access to the on-chip peripherals is blocked.

No debug is available while the MCU is in LLS or VLLS modes. LLS is a state-retention mode and all debug operation can continue after waking from LLS, even in cases where system wakeup is due to a system reset event.

Entering into a VLLS mode causes all of the debug controls and settings to be powered off. To give time to the debugger to sync with the MCU, the MDM AP Control Register includes a Very-Low-Leakage Debug Request (VLLDBGREQ) bit that is set to configure the Reset Controller logic to hold the system in reset after the next recovery from a VLLS mode. This bit allows the debugger time to reinitialize the debug module before the debug session continues.

The MDM AP Control Register also includes a Very Low Leakage Debug Acknowledge (VLLDBGACK) bit that is set to release the ARM core being held in reset following a VLLS recovery. The debugger reinitializes all debug IP, and then asserts the VLLDBGACK control bit to allow the RCM to release the ARM core from reset and allow CPU operation to begin.

The VLLDBGACK bit is cleared by the debugger (or can be left set as is) or clears automatically due to the reset generated as part of the next VLLS recovery.

Chapter 17
Power Management Controller (PMC)

17.1 Introduction

The power management controller (PMC) contains the internal voltage regulator, power on reset (POR), and low voltage detect system (LVD) and high voltage detect system (HVD).

See AN4503: Power Management for Kinetis MCUs for further details on using the PMC.

17.2 Features

A list of included PMC features can be found here.

- Internal voltage regulator
- Active POR providing brown-out detect
- Low-voltage detect supporting two low-voltage trip points with four warning levels per trip point
- High-voltage detect supporting two high-voltage trip points

17.3 Low-voltage detect (LVD) system

This device includes a system to guard against low-voltage conditions. This protects memory contents and controls MCU system states during supply voltage variations.

The system is comprised of a power-on reset (POR) circuit and a LVD circuit with a user-selectable trip voltage: high (V_{LVDH}) or low (V_{LVDL}). The trip voltage is selected by LVDSC1[LVDV]. The LVD is disabled upon entering VLPx, LLS, and VLLSx modes.

Two flags are available to indicate the status of the low-voltage detect system:

- The Low Voltage Detect Flag in the Low Voltage Status and Control 1 Register (LVDSC1[LVDF]) operates in a level sensitive manner. LVDSC1[LVDF] is set when the supply voltage falls below the selected trip point (VLVD). LVDSC1[LVDF] is cleared by writing 1 to LVDSC1[LVDACK], but only if the internal supply has returned above the trip point; otherwise, LVDSC1[LVDF] remains set.
- The Low Voltage Warning Flag (LVWF) in the Low Voltage Status and Control 2 Register (LVDSC2[LVWF]) operates in a level sensitive manner. LVDSC2[LVWF] is set when the supply voltage falls below the selected monitor trip point (VLVW). LVDSC2[LVWF] is cleared by writing one to LVDSC2[LVWACK], but only if the internal supply has returned above the trip point; otherwise, LVDSC2[LVWF] remains set.

17.3.1 LVD reset operation

By setting LVDSC1[LVDRE], the LVD generates a reset upon detection of a low-voltage condition. The low-voltage detection threshold is determined by LVDSC1[LVDV]. After an LVD reset occurs, the LVD system holds the MCU in reset until the supply voltage rises above this threshold. The LVD field in the SRS register of the RCM module (RCM_SRS[LVD]) is set following an LVD or power-on reset.

17.3.2 LVD interrupt operation

By configuring the LVD circuit for interrupt operation (LVDSC1[LVDIE] set and LVDSC1[LVDRE] clear), LVDSC1[LVDF] is set and an LVD interrupt request occurs upon detection of a low voltage condition. LVDSC1[LVDF] is cleared by writing 1 to LVDSC1[LVDACK].

17.3.3 Low-voltage warning (LVW) interrupt operation

The LVD system contains a Low-Voltage Warning Flag (LVWF) in the Low Voltage Detect Status and Control 2 Register to indicate that the supply voltage is approaching, but is above, the LVD voltage. The LVW also has an interrupt, which is enabled by setting LVDSC2[LVWIE]. If enabled, an LVW interrupt request occurs when LVDSC2[LVWF] is set. LVDSC2[LVWF] is cleared by writing 1 to LVDSC2[LVWACK].

LVDSC2[LVWV] selects one of the four trip voltages:

- Highest: V_{LVW4}
- Two mid-levels: V_{LVW3} and V_{LVW2}
- Lowest: V_{LVW1}

17.4 High-voltage detect (HVD) system

This device includes a system to guard against high-voltage conditions.

The system is comprised of a HVD circuit with a user-selectable trip voltage: high (V_{HVDH}) or low (V_{HVDL}). The trip voltage is selected by HVDSC1[HVDV]. The HVD is disabled upon entering VLPx, LLS, and VLLSx modes.

A flag is available to indicate the status of the high-voltage detect system:

- The High Voltage Detect Flag in the High Voltage Status and Control 1 Register (HVDSC1[HVDF]) operates in a level sensitive manner. HVDSC1[HVDF] is set when the supply voltage rises above the selected trip point (VHVD). HVDSC1[HVDF] is cleared by writing 1 to HVDSC1[HVDACK], but only if the internal supply has returned below the trip point; otherwise, HVDSC1[LVDF] remains set.

17.4.1 HVD reset operation

By setting HVDSC1[HVDRE], the HVD generates a reset upon detection of a high-voltage condition. The high-voltage detection threshold is determined by HVDSC1[HVDV]. After an HVD reset occurs, the HVD system holds the MCU in reset until the supply voltage falls below this threshold. The LVD field in the SRS register of the RCM module (RCM_SRS[LVD]) is set following an HVD reset.

17.4.2 HVD interrupt operation

By configuring the HVD circuit for interrupt operation (HVDSC1[HVDIE] set and HVDSC1[HVDRE] clear), HVDSC1[HVDF] is set and an HVD interrupt request occurs upon detection of a high voltage condition. HVDSC1[HVDF] is cleared by writing 1 to HVDSC1[HVDACK].

17.5 I/O retention

When in LLS mode, the I/O pins are held in their input or output state.

Upon wakeup, the PMC is re-enabled, goes through a power up sequence to full regulation, and releases the logic from state retention mode. The I/O are released immediately after a wake-up or reset event. In the case of LLS exit via a RESET pin, the I/O default to their reset state.

When in VLLS modes, the I/O states are held on a wake-up event (with the exception of wake-up by reset event) until the wake-up has been acknowledged via a write to REGSC[ACKISO]. In the case of VLLS exit via a RESET pin, the I/O are released and default to their reset state. In this case, no write to REGSC[ACKISO] is needed.

17.6 Memory map and register descriptions

Details about the PMC registers can be found here.

NOTE

Different portions of PMC registers are reset only by particular reset types. Each register's description provides details. For more information about the types of reset on this chip, refer to the Reset section details.

The PMC registers can be written only in supervisor mode. Write accesses in user mode are blocked and will result in a bus error.

PMC memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4007_D000	Low Voltage Detect Status And Control 1 register (PMC_LVDSC1)	8	R/W	10h	17.6.1/315
4007_D001	Low Voltage Detect Status And Control 2 register (PMC_LVDSC2)	8	R/W	00h	17.6.2/316
4007_D002	Regulator Status And Control register (PMC_REGSC)	8	R/W	04h	17.6.3/317
4007_D00B	High Voltage Detect Status And Control 1 register (PMC_HVDSC1)	8	R/W	01h	17.6.4/319

17.6.1 Low Voltage Detect Status And Control 1 register (PMC_LVDSC1)

This register contains status and control bits to support the low voltage detect function. This register should be written during the reset initialization program to set the desired controls even if the desired settings are the same as the reset settings.

While the device is in the very low power or low leakage modes, the LVD system is disabled regardless of LVDSC1 settings. To protect systems that must have LVD always on, configure the Power Mode Protection (PMPROT) register of the SMC module (SMC_PMPROT) to disallow any very low power or low leakage modes from being enabled.

See the device's data sheet for the exact LVD trip voltages.

NOTE

The LVDV bits are reset solely on a POR Only event. The register's other bits are reset on Chip Reset Not VLLS. For more information about these reset types, refer to the Reset section details.

Address: 4007_D000h base + 0h offset = 4007_D000h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	LVDF	0	LVDIE	LVDRE	0		LVDV	
Write		LVDACK						
Reset	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0

PMC_LVDSC1 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 LVDF	Low-Voltage Detect Flag This read-only status field indicates a low-voltage detect event. 0 Low-voltage event not detected 1 Low-voltage event detected
6 LVDACK	Low-Voltage Detect Acknowledge This write-only field is used to acknowledge low voltage detection errors. Write 1 to clear LVDF. Reads always return 0.
5 LVDIE	Low-Voltage Detect Interrupt Enable Enables hardware interrupt requests for LVDF. 0 Hardware interrupt disabled (use polling) 1 Request a hardware interrupt when LVDF = 1

Table continues on the next page...

PMC_LVDSC1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
4 LVDRE	Low-Voltage Detect Reset Enable This write-once bit enables LVDF events to generate a hardware reset. Additional writes are ignored. 0 LVDF does not generate hardware resets 1 Force an MCU reset when LVDF = 1
3–2 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
LVDV	Low-Voltage Detect Voltage Select Selects the LVD trip point voltage (V_{LVD}). 00 Low trip point selected ($V_{LVD} = V_{LVDL}$) 01 High trip point selected ($V_{LVD} = V_{LVDH}$) 10 Reserved 11 Reserved

17.6.2 Low Voltage Detect Status And Control 2 register (PMC_LVDSC2)

This register contains status and control bits to support the low voltage warning function.

While the device is in the very low power or low leakage modes, the LVD system is disabled regardless of LVDSC2 settings.

See the device's data sheet for the exact LVD trip voltages.

NOTE

The LVW trip voltages depend on LVWV and LVDV.

NOTE

LVWV is reset solely on a POR Only event. The other fields of the register are reset on Chip Reset Not VLLS. For more information about these reset types, refer to the Reset section details.

Address: 4007_D000h base + 1h offset = 4007_D001h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	LVWF	0	LVWIE	0			LVWV	
Write		LVWACK						
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PMC_LVDSC2 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 LVWF	Low-Voltage Warning Flag This read-only status field indicates a low-voltage warning event. LVWF is set when V_{Supply} transitions below the trip point, or after reset and V_{Supply} is already below V_{LVW}. LVWF may be 1 after power-on reset, therefore, to use LVW interrupt function, before enabling LVWIE, LVWF must be cleared by writing LVWACK first. 0 Low-voltage warning event not detected 1 Low-voltage warning event detected
6 LVWACK	Low-Voltage Warning Acknowledge This write-only field is used to acknowledge low voltage warning errors. Write 1 to clear LVWF. Reads always return 0.
5 LVWIE	Low-Voltage Warning Interrupt Enable Enables hardware interrupt requests for LVWF. 0 Hardware interrupt disabled (use polling) 1 Request a hardware interrupt when LVWF = 1
4–2 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
LVWV	Low-Voltage Warning Voltage Select Selects the LVW trip point voltage (V_{LVW}). The actual voltage for the warning depends on LVDSC1[LVDV]. 00 Low trip point selected ($V_{LVW} = V_{LVW1}$) 01 Mid 1 trip point selected ($V_{LVW} = V_{LVW2}$) 10 Mid 2 trip point selected ($V_{LVW} = V_{LVW3}$) 11 High trip point selected ($V_{LVW} = V_{LVW4}$)

17.6.3 Regulator Status And Control register (PMC_REGSC)

The PMC contains an internal voltage regulator. The voltage regulator design uses a bandgap reference that is also available through a buffer as input to certain internal peripherals, such as the CMP and ADC. The internal regulator provides a status bit (REGONS) indicating the regulator is in run regulation.

NOTE

This register is reset on Chip Reset Not VLLS and by reset types that trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. See the Reset section details for more information.

Address: 4007_D000h base + 2h offset = 4007_D002h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0	0	Reserved	BGEN	ACKISO	REGONS	Reserved	BGBE
Write					w1c			
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0

PMC_REGSC field descriptions

Field	Description
7 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
5 Reserved	This field is reserved.
4 BGEN	Bandgap Enable In VLPx Operation BGEN controls whether the bandgap is enabled in lower power modes of operation (VLPx, LLS, and VLLSx). When on-chip peripherals require the bandgap voltage reference in low power modes of operation, set BGEN to continue to enable the bandgap operation. **NOTE:** When the bandgap voltage reference is not needed in low power modes, clear BGEN to avoid excess power consumption. 0 Bandgap voltage reference is disabled in VLPx , LLS , and VLLSx modes. 1 Bandgap voltage reference is enabled in VLPx , LLS , and VLLSx modes.
3 ACKISO	Acknowledge Isolation Reading this field indicates whether certain peripherals and the I/O pads are in a latched state as a result of having been in a VLLS mode. Writing 1 to this field when it is set releases the I/O pads and certain peripherals to their normal run mode state. **NOTE:** After recovering from a VLLS mode, user should restore chip configuration before clearing ACKISO. In particular, pin configuration for enabled LLWU wakeup pins should be restored to avoid any LLWU flag from being falsely set when ACKISO is cleared. 0 Peripherals and I/O pads are in normal run state. 1 Certain peripherals and I/O pads are in an isolated and latched state.
2 REGONS	Regulator In Run Regulation Status This read-only field provides the current status of the internal voltage regulator. 0 Regulator is in stop regulation or in transition to/from it 1 Regulator is in run regulation
1 Reserved	This field is reserved. **NOTE:** This reserved bit must remain cleared (set to 0).
0 BGBE	Bandgap Buffer Enable Enables the bandgap buffer. 0 Bandgap buffer not enabled 1 Bandgap buffer enabled

17.6.4 High Voltage Detect Status And Control 1 register (PMC_HVDSC1)

This register contains status and control bits to support the high voltage detect function. This register should be written during the reset initialization program to set the desired controls even if the desired settings are the same as the reset settings.

While the device is in the very low power or low leakage modes, the HVD system is disabled regardless of HVDSC1 settings. To protect systems that must have HVD always on, configure the Power Mode Protection (PMPROT) register of the SMC module (SMC_PMPROT) to disallow any very low power or low leakage modes from being enabled.

See the device's data sheet for the exact HVD trip voltages.

NOTE

This register is reset solely on a POR Only event.For more information about these reset types, refer to the Reset section details.

Address: 4007_D000h base + Bh offset = 4007_D00Bh

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	HVDF	0	HVDIE	HVDRE	0			HVDV
Write		HVDACK						
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1

PMC_HVDSC1 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 HVDF	High-Voltage Detect Flag This read-only status field indicates a high-voltage detect event. 0 High-voltage event not detected 1 High-voltage event detected
6 HVDACK	High-Voltage Detect Acknowledge This write-only field is used to acknowledge high voltage detection errors. Write 1 to clear HVDF. Reads always return 0.
5 HVDIE	High-Voltage Detect Interrupt Enable Enables hardware interrupt requests for HVDF. 0 Hardware interrupt disabled (use polling) 1 Request a hardware interrupt when HVDF = 1

Table continues on the next page...

PMC_HVDSC1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
4 HVDRE	High-Voltage Detect Reset Enable This write-once bit enables HVDF events to generate a hardware reset. Additional writes are ignored until the next chip reset. 0 HVDF does not generate hardware resets 1 Force an MCU reset when HVDF = 1
3–1 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
0 HVDV	High-Voltage Detect Voltage Select Selects the HVD trip point voltage (V_{HVD}). 0 Low trip point selected ($V_{HVD} = V_{HVDL}$) 1 High trip point selected ($V_{HVD} = V_{HVDH}$)

Chapter 18
Low-Leakage Wakeup Unit (LLWU)

18.1 Chip-specific Information for this Module

18.1.1 Wake-up Sources

The device uses the following internal peripheral and external pin inputs as wakeup sources to the LLWU module. LLWU_Px are external pin inputs, and LLWU_M0IF-M7IF are connections to the internal peripheral interrupt flags.

NOTE

In addition to the LLWU wakeup sources, the device also wakes from low power modes when NMI or RESET pins are enabled and the respective pin is asserted.

Table 18-1. Wakeup sources for LLWU inputs

Input	Wakeup source
LLWU_P0	PTE1/LLWU_P0 pin
LLWU_P1	PTE2/LLWU_P1 pin
LLWU_P2	PTE4/LLWU_P2 pin
LLWU_P3	PTA4/LLWU_P3 pin[1]
LLWU_P4	PTA13/LLWU_P4 pin
LLWU_P5	PTB0/LLWU_P5 pin
LLWU_P6	PTC1/LLWU_P6 pin
LLWU_P7	PTC3/LLWU_P7 pin
LLWU_P8	PTC4/LLWU_P8 pin
LLWU_P9	PTC5/LLWU_P9 pin
LLWU_P10	PTC6/LLWU_P10 pin
LLWU_P11	PTC11/LLWU_P11 pin
LLWU_P12	PTD0/LLWU_P12 pin

Table continues on the next page...

Table 18-1. Wakeup sources for LLWU inputs (continued)

Input	Wakeup source
LLWU_P13	PTD2/LLWU_P13 pin
LLWU_P14	PTD4/LLWU_P14 pin
LLWU_P15	PTD6/LLWU_P15 pin
LLWU_P16	Reserved
LLWU_P17	Reserved
LLWU_P18	Reserved
LLWU_P19	Reserved
LLWU_P20	Reserved
LLWU_P21	Reserved
LLWU_P22	Reserved
LLWU_P23	Reserved
LLWU_P24	Reserved
LLWU_P25	Reserved
LLWU_P26	USBVDD
LLWU_P27	USB0_DP
LLWU_P28	USB0_DM[2]
LLWU_P29	Reserved
LLWU_P30	Reserved
LLWU_P31	Reserved
LLWU_M0IF	LPTMR
LLWU_M1IF	CMP0
LLWU_M2IF	Reserved
LLWU_M3IF	Reserved
LLWU_M4IF	Reserved
LLWU_M5IF	RTC Alarm[3]
LLWU_M6IF	Reserved
LLWU_M7IF	RTC Seconds[3]

1. If NMI was enabled on entry to LLS/VLLS, asserting the NMI pin generates an NMI interrupt on exit from the low power mode. NMI can also be disabled via the FOPT[NMI_DIS] bit.
2. As a wakeup source of LLWU, USB0_DP and USB0_DM are only available when the chip is in USB host mode.
3. It requires the peripheral and the peripheral interrupt to be enabled. The LLWU's WUME bit enables the internal module flag as a wakeup input. After wakeup, the flags are cleared based on the peripheral clearing mechanism.

18.2 Introduction

The LLWU module allows the user to select up to 32 external pins and up to 8 internal modules as interrupt wake-up sources from low-leakage power modes.

The input sources are described in the device's chip configuration details. Each of the available wake-up sources can be individually enabled.

The $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin is an additional source for triggering an exit from low-leakage power modes, and causes the MCU to exit both LLS and VLLS through a reset flow.

The LLWU module also includes four optional digital pin filters for the external wakeup pins.

See AN4503: Power Management for Kinetis MCUs for further details on using the LLWU.

18.2.1 Features

The LLWU module features include:

- Support for up to 32 external input pins and up to 8 internal modules with individual enable bits for MCU interrupt from low leakage modes
- Input sources may be external pins or from internal peripherals capable of running in LLS or VLLS. See the chip configuration information for wakeup input sources for this device.
- External pin wake-up inputs, each of which is programmable as falling-edge, rising-edge, or any change
- Wake-up inputs that are activated after MCU enters a low-leakage power mode
- Optional digital filters provided to qualify an external pin detect. Note that when the LPO clock is disabled, the filters are disabled and bypassed.

18.2.2 Modes of operation

The LLWU module becomes functional on entry into a low-leakage power mode. After recovery from LLS, the LLWU is immediately disabled. After recovery from VLLS, the LLWU continues to detect wake-up events until the user has acknowledged the wake-up via a write to PMC_REGSC[ACKISO].

18.2.2.1 LLS mode

Wake-up events due to external pin inputs (LLWU_Px) and internal module interrupt inputs (LLWU_MxIF) result in an interrupt flow when exiting LLS.

NOTE

The LLWU interrupt must not be masked by the interrupt controller to avoid a scenario where the system does not fully exit Stop mode on an LLS recovery.

18.2.2.2 VLLS modes

All wakeup and reset events result in VLLS exit via a reset flow.

18.2.2.3 Non-low leakage modes

The LLWU is not active in all non-low leakage modes where detection and control logic are in a static state. The LLWU registers are accessible in non-low leakage modes and are available for configuring and reading status when bus transactions are possible.

When the wake-up pin filters are enabled, filter operation begins immediately. If a low leakage mode is entered within five LPO clock cycles of an active edge, the edge event will be detected by the LLWU.

18.2.2.4 Debug mode

When the chip is in Debug mode and then enters LLS or a VLLSx mode, no debug logic works in the fully-functional low-leakage mode. Upon an exit from the LLS or VLLSx mode, the LLWU becomes inactive.

18.2.3 Block diagram

The following figure is the block diagram for the LLWU module.

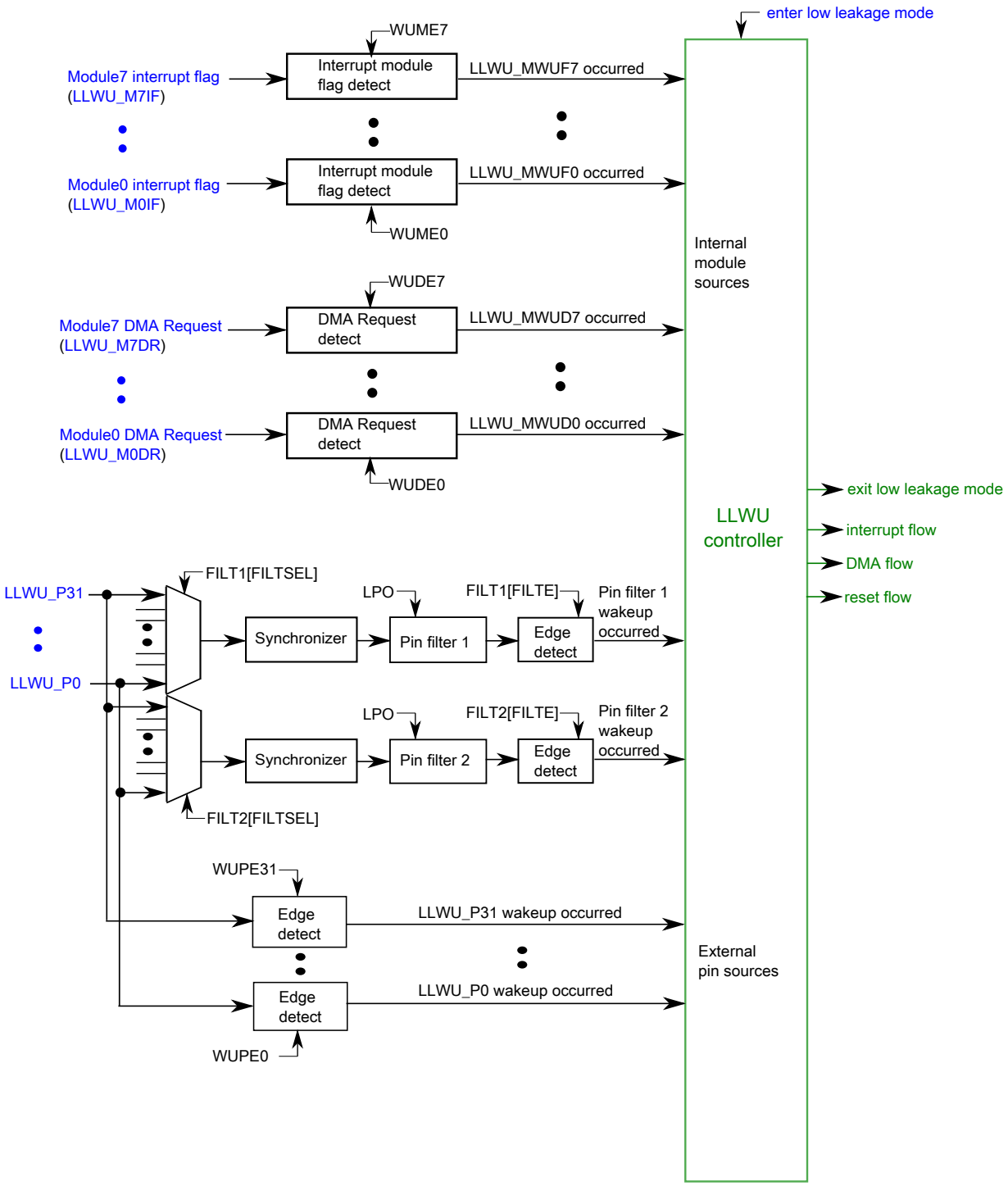


Figure 18-1. LLWU block diagram

18.3 LLWU signal descriptions

The signal properties of LLWU are shown in the table found here.

The external wakeup input pins can be enabled to detect either rising-edge, falling-edge, or on any change.

Table 18-2. LLWU signal descriptions

Signal	Description	I/O
LLWU_Pn	Wakeup inputs (n = 0- 31)	I

18.4 Memory map/register definition

The LLWU includes the following registers:

- Wake-up source enable registers
  - Enable external pin input sources
  - Enable internal peripheral interrupt sources
- Wake-up flag registers
  - Indication of wakeup source that caused exit from a low-leakage power mode includes external pin or internal module interrupt
- Wake-up pin filter enable registers

NOTE

The LLWU registers can be written only in supervisor mode. Write accesses in user mode are blocked and will result in a bus error.

All LLWU registers are reset by Chip Reset not VLLS and by reset types that trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. Each register's displayed reset value represents this subset of reset types. LLWU registers are unaffected by reset types that do not trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. For more information about the types of reset on this chip, refer to the Introduction details.

LLWU memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4007_C000	LLWU Pin Enable 1 register (LLWU_PE1)	8	R/W	00h	18.4.1/327
4007_C001	LLWU Pin Enable 2 register (LLWU_PE2)	8	R/W	00h	18.4.2/328
4007_C002	LLWU Pin Enable 3 register (LLWU_PE3)	8	R/W	00h	18.4.3/329
4007_C003	LLWU Pin Enable 4 register (LLWU_PE4)	8	R/W	00h	18.4.4/330

Table continues on the next page...

LLWU memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4007_C004	LLWU Pin Enable 5 register (LLWU_PE5)	8	R/W	00h	18.4.5/331
4007_C005	LLWU Pin Enable 6 register (LLWU_PE6)	8	R/W	00h	18.4.6/332
4007_C006	LLWU Pin Enable 7 register (LLWU_PE7)	8	R/W	00h	18.4.7/334
4007_C007	LLWU Pin Enable 8 register (LLWU_PE8)	8	R/W	00h	18.4.8/335
4007_C008	LLWU Module Enable register (LLWU_ME)	8	R/W	00h	18.4.9/336
4007_C009	LLWU Pin Flag 1 register (LLWU_PF1)	8	R/W	00h	18.4.10/337
4007_C00A	LLWU Pin Flag 2 register (LLWU_PF2)	8	R/W	00h	18.4.11/339
4007_C00B	LLWU Pin Flag 3 register (LLWU_PF3)	8	R/W	00h	18.4.12/341
4007_C00C	LLWU Pin Flag 4 register (LLWU_PF4)	8	R/W	00h	18.4.13/342
4007_C00D	LLWU Module Flag 5 register (LLWU_MF5)	8	R	00h	18.4.14/344
4007_C00E	LLWU Pin Filter 1 register (LLWU_FILT1)	8	R/W	00h	18.4.15/346
4007_C00F	LLWU Pin Filter 2 register (LLWU_FILT2)	8	R/W	00h	18.4.16/347

18.4.1 LLWU Pin Enable 1 register (LLWU_PE1)

LLWU_PE1 contains the field to enable and select the edge detect type for the external wakeup input pins LLWU_P3-LLWU_P0.

NOTE

This register is reset on Chip Reset not VLLS and by reset types that trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. It is unaffected by reset types that do not trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. See the Introduction details for more information.

Address: 4007_C000h base + 0h offset = 4007_C000h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	WUPE3		WUPE2		WUPE1		WUPE0	
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

LLWU_PE1 field descriptions

Field	Description
7–6 WUPE3	Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P3 Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin. 00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection

Table continues on the next page...

LLWU_PE1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
5–4 WUPE2	Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P2 Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin. 00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection
3–2 WUPE1	Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P1 Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin. 00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection
WUPE0	Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P0 Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin. 00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection

18.4.2 LLWU Pin Enable 2 register (LLWU_PE2)

LLWU_PE2 contains the field to enable and select the edge detect type for the external wakeup input pins LLWU_P7-LLWU_P4.

NOTE

This register is reset on Chip Reset not VLLS and by reset types that trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. It is unaffected by reset types that do not trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. See the Introduction details for more information.

Address: 4007_C000h base + 1h offset = 4007_C001h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	WUPE7		WUPE6		WUPE5		WUPE4	
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

LLWU_PE2 field descriptions

Field	Description
7–6 WUPE7	Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P7

Table continues on the next page...

LLWU_PE2 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin. 00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection
5–4 WUPE6	Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P6 Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin. 00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection
3–2 WUPE5	Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P5 Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin. 00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection
WUPE4	Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P4 Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin. 00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection

18.4.3 LLWU Pin Enable 3 register (LLWU_PE3)

LLWU_PE3 contains the field to enable and select the edge detect type for the external wakeup input pins LLWU_P11-LLWU_P8.

NOTE

This register is reset on Chip Reset not VLLS and by reset types that trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. It is unaffected by reset types that do not trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. See the Introduction details for more information.

Address: 4007_C000h base + 2h offset = 4007_C002h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	WUPE11		WUPE10		WUPE9		WUPE8	
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

LLWU_PE3 field descriptions

Field	Description
7–6 WUPE11	Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P11 Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin. 00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection
5–4 WUPE10	Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P10 Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin. 00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection
3–2 WUPE9	Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P9 Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin. 00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection
WUPE8	Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P8 Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin. 00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection

18.4.4 LLWU Pin Enable 4 register (LLWU_PE4)

LLWU_PE4 contains the field to enable and select the edge detect type for the external wakeup input pins LLWU_P15-LLWU_P12.

NOTE

This register is reset on Chip Reset not VLLS and by reset types that trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. It is unaffected by reset types that do not trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. See the Introduction details for more information.

Address: 4007_C000h base + 3h offset = 4007_C003h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	WUPE15		WUPE14		WUPE13		WUPE12	
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

LLWU_PE4 field descriptions

Field	Description
7–6 WUPE15	Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P15 Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin. 00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection
5–4 WUPE14	Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P14 Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin. 00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection
3–2 WUPE13	Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P13 Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin. 00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection
WUPE12	Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P12 Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin. 00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection

18.4.5 LLWU Pin Enable 5 register (LLWU_PE5)

LLWU_PE5 contains the field to enable and select the edge detect type for the external wakeup input pins LLWU_P19-LLWU_P16.

NOTE

This register is reset on Chip Reset not VLLS and by reset types that trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. It is unaffected by reset

types that do not trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. See the Introduction details for more information.

Address: 4007_C000h base + 4h offset = 4007_C004h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	WUPE19		WUPE18		WUPE17		WUPE16	
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

LLWU_PE5 field descriptions

Field	Description
7–6 WUPE19	Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P19 Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin. 00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection
5–4 WUPE18	Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P18 Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin. 00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection
3–2 WUPE17	Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P17 Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin. 00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection
WUPE16	Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P16 Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin. 00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection

18.4.6 LLWU Pin Enable 6 register (LLWU_PE6)

LLWU_PE6 contains the field to enable and select the edge detect type for the external wakeup input pins LLWU_P23-LLWU_P20.

NOTE

This register is reset on Chip Reset not VLLS and by reset types that trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. It is unaffected by reset types that do not trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. See the Introduction details for more information.

Address: 4007_C000h base + 5h offset = 4007_C005h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	WUPE23		WUPE22		WUPE21		WUPE20	
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

LLWU_PE6 field descriptions

Field	Description
7–6 WUPE23	Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P23 Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin. 00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection
5–4 WUPE22	Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P22 Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin. 00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection
3–2 WUPE21	Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P21 Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin. 00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection
WUPE20	Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P20 Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin. 00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection

18.4.7 LLWU Pin Enable 7 register (LLWU_PE7)

LLWU_PE7 contains the field to enable and select the edge detect type for the external wakeup input pins LLWU_P27-LLWU_P24.

NOTE

This register is reset on Chip Reset not VLLS and by reset types that trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. It is unaffected by reset types that do not trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. See the Introduction details for more information.

Address: 4007_C000h base + 6h offset = 4007_C006h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	WUPE27		WUPE26		WUPE25		WUPE24	
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

LLWU_PE7 field descriptions

Field	Description
7–6 WUPE27	Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P27 Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin. 00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection
5–4 WUPE26	Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P26 Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin. 00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection
3–2 WUPE25	Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P25 Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin. 00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection
WUPE24	Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P24 Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin. 00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection

Table continues on the next page...

LLWU_PE7 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection

18.4.8 LLWU Pin Enable 8 register (LLWU_PE8)

LLWU_PE8 contains the field to enable and select the edge detect type for the external wakeup input pins LLWU_P31-LLWU_P28.

NOTE

This register is reset on Chip Reset not VLLS and by reset types that trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. It is unaffected by reset types that do not trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. See the Introduction details for more information.

Address: 4007_C000h base + 7h offset = 4007_C007h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	WUPE31		WUPE30		WUPE29		WUPE28	
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

LLWU_PE8 field descriptions

Field	Description
7–6 WUPE31	Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P31 Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin. 00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection
5–4 WUPE30	Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P30 Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin. 00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection
3–2 WUPE29	Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P29 Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin. 00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection

Table continues on the next page...

LLWU_PE8 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection
WUPE28	Wakeup Pin Enable For LLWU_P28 Enables and configures the edge detection for the wakeup pin. 00 External input pin disabled as wakeup input 01 External input pin enabled with rising edge detection 10 External input pin enabled with falling edge detection 11 External input pin enabled with any change detection

18.4.9 LLWU Module Enable register (LLWU_ME)

LLWU_ME contains the bits to enable the internal module flag as a wakeup input source for inputs MWUF7-MWUF0.

NOTE

This register is reset on Chip Reset not VLLS and by reset types that trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. It is unaffected by reset types that do not trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. See the Introduction details for more information.

Address: 4007_C000h base + 8h offset = 4007_C008h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	WUME7	WUME6	WUME5	WUME4	WUME3	WUME2	WUME1	WUME0
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

LLWU_ME field descriptions

Field	Description
7 WUME7	Wakeup Module Enable For Module 7 Enables an internal module as a wakeup source input. 0 Internal module flag not used as wakeup source 1 Internal module flag used as wakeup source
6 WUME6	Wakeup Module Enable For Module 6 Enables an internal module as a wakeup source input. 0 Internal module flag not used as wakeup source 1 Internal module flag used as wakeup source
5 WUME5	Wakeup Module Enable For Module 5 Enables an internal module as a wakeup source input.

Table continues on the next page...

LLWU_ME field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Internal module flag not used as wakeup source 1 Internal module flag used as wakeup source
4 WUME4	Wakeup Module Enable For Module 4 Enables an internal module as a wakeup source input. 0 Internal module flag not used as wakeup source 1 Internal module flag used as wakeup source
3 WUME3	Wakeup Module Enable For Module 3 Enables an internal module as a wakeup source input. 0 Internal module flag not used as wakeup source 1 Internal module flag used as wakeup source
2 WUME2	Wakeup Module Enable For Module 2 Enables an internal module as a wakeup source input. 0 Internal module flag not used as wakeup source 1 Internal module flag used as wakeup source
1 WUME1	Wakeup Module Enable for Module 1 Enables an internal module as a wakeup source input. 0 Internal module flag not used as wakeup source 1 Internal module flag used as wakeup source
0 WUME0	Wakeup Module Enable For Module 0 Enables an internal module as a wakeup source input. 0 Internal module flag not used as wakeup source 1 Internal module flag used as wakeup source

18.4.10 LLWU Pin Flag 1 register (LLWU_PF1)

LLWU_PF1 contains the wakeup flags indicating which wakeup source caused the MCU to exit LLS or VLLS mode. For LLS, this is the source causing the CPU interrupt flow. For VLLS, this is the source causing the MCU reset flow.

The external wakeup flags are read-only and clearing a flag is accomplished by a write of a 1 to the corresponding WUFx bit. The wakeup flag (WUFx), if set, will remain set if the associated WUPEx bit is cleared.

NOTE

This register is reset on Chip Reset not VLLS and by reset types that trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. It is unaffected by reset

types that do not trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. See the Introduction details for more information.

Address: 4007_C000h base + 9h offset = 4007_C009h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	WUF7	WUF6	WUF5	WUF4	WUF3	WUF2	WUF1	WUF0
Write	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

LLWU_PF1 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 WUF7	Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P7 Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF7. 0 LLWU_P7 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P7 input was a wakeup source
6 WUF6	Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P6 Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF6. 0 LLWU_P6 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P6 input was a wakeup source
5 WUF5	Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P5 Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF5. 0 LLWU_P5 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P5 input was a wakeup source
4 WUF4	Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P4 Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF4. 0 LLWU_P4 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P4 input was a wakeup source
3 WUF3	Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P3 Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF3. 0 LLWU_P3 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P3 input was a wakeup source
2 WUF2	Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P2 Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF2.

Table continues on the next page...

LLWU_PF1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 LLWU_P2 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P2 input was a wakeup source
1 WUF1	Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P1 Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF1. 0 LLWU_P1 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P1 input was a wakeup source
0 WUF0	Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P0 Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF0. 0 LLWU_P0 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P0 input was a wakeup source

18.4.11 LLWU Pin Flag 2 register (LLWU_PF2)

LLWU_PF2 contains the wakeup flags indicating which wakeup source caused the MCU to exit LLS or VLLS mode. For LLS, this is the source causing the CPU interrupt flow. For VLLS, this is the source causing the MCU reset flow.

The external wakeup flags are read-only and clearing a flag is accomplished by a write of a 1 to the corresponding WUFx bit. The wakeup flag (WUFx), if set, will remain set if the associated WUPEx bit is cleared.

NOTE

This register is reset on Chip Reset not VLLS and by reset types that trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. It is unaffected by reset types that do not trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. See the Introduction details for more information.

Address: 4007_C000h base + Ah offset = 4007_C00Ah

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	WUF15	WUF14	WUF13	WUF12	WUF11	WUF10	WUF9	WUF8
Write	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

LLWU_PF2 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 WUF15	Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P15

Table continues on the next page...

LLWU_PF2 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF15. 0 LLWU_P15 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P15 input was a wakeup source
6 WUF14	Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P14 Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF14. 0 LLWU_P14 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P14 input was a wakeup source
5 WUF13	Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P13 Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF13. 0 LLWU_P13 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P13 input was a wakeup source
4 WUF12	Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P12 Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF12. 0 LLWU_P12 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P12 input was a wakeup source
3 WUF11	Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P11 Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF11. 0 LLWU_P11 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P11 input was a wakeup source
2 WUF10	Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P10 Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF10. 0 LLWU_P10 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P10 input was a wakeup source
1 WUF9	Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P9 Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF9. 0 LLWU_P9 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P9 input was a wakeup source
0 WUF8	Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P8 Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF8.

Table continues on the next page...

LLWU_PF2 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 LLWU_P8 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P8 input was a wakeup source

18.4.12 LLWU Pin Flag 3 register (LLWU_PF3)

LLWU_PF3 contains the wakeup flags indicating which wakeup source caused the MCU to exit LLS or VLLS mode. For LLS, this is the source causing the CPU interrupt flow. For VLLS, this is the source causing the MCU reset flow.

The external wakeup flags are read-only and clearing a flag is accomplished by a write of a 1 to the corresponding WUFx bit. The wakeup flag (WUFx), if set, will remain set if the associated WUPEx bit is cleared.

NOTE

This register is reset on Chip Reset not VLLS and by reset types that trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. It is unaffected by reset types that do not trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. See the Introduction details for more information.

Address: 4007_C000h base + Bh offset = 4007_C00Bh

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	WUF23	WUF22	WUF21	WUF20	WUF19	WUF18	WUF17	WUF16
Write	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

LLWU_PF3 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 WUF23	Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P23 Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF23. 0 LLWU_P23 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P23 input was a wakeup source
6 WUF22	Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P22 Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF22. 0 LLWU_P22 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P22 input was a wakeup source

Table continues on the next page...

LLWU_PF3 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
5 WUF21	Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P21 Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF21. 0 LLWU_P21 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P21 input was a wakeup source
4 WUF20	Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P20 Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF20. 0 LLWU_P20 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P20 input was a wakeup source
3 WUF19	Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P19 Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF19. 0 LLWU_P19 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P19 input was a wakeup source
2 WUF18	Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P18 Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF18. 0 LLWU_P18 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P18 input was a wakeup source
1 WUF17	Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P17 Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF17. 0 LLWU_P17 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P17 input was a wakeup source
0 WUF16	Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P16 Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF16. 0 LLWU_P16 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P16 input was a wakeup source

18.4.13 LLWU Pin Flag 4 register (LLWU_PF4)

LLWU_PF4 contains the wakeup flags indicating which wakeup source caused the MCU to exit LLS or VLLS mode. For LLS, this is the source causing the CPU interrupt flow. For VLLS, this is the source causing the MCU reset flow.

The external wakeup flags are read-only and clearing a flag is accomplished by a write of a 1 to the corresponding WUFx bit. The wakeup flag (WUFx), if set, will remain set if the associated WUPEx bit is cleared.

NOTE

This register is reset on Chip Reset not VLLS and by reset types that trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. It is unaffected by reset types that do not trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. See the Introduction details for more information.

Address: 4007_C000h base + Ch offset = 4007_C00Ch

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	WUF31	WUF30	WUF29	WUF28	WUF27	WUF26	WUF25	WUF24
Write	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

LLWU_PF4 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 WUF31	Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P31 Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF31. 0 LLWU_P31 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P31 input was a wakeup source
6 WUF30	Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P30 Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF30. 0 LLWU_P30 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P30 input was a wakeup source
5 WUF29	Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P29 Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF29. 0 LLWU_P29 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P29 input was a wakeup source
4 WUF28	Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P28 Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF28. 0 LLWU_P28 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P28 input was a wakeup source
3 WUF27	Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P27 Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF27.

Table continues on the next page...

LLWU_PF4 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 LLWU_P27 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P27 input was a wakeup source
2 WUF26	Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P26 Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF26. 0 LLWU_P26 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P26 input was a wakeup source
1 WUF25	Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P25 Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF25. 0 LLWU_P25 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P25 input was a wakeup source
0 WUF24	Wakeup Flag For LLWU_P24 Indicates that an enabled external wakeup pin was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to WUF24. 0 LLWU_P24 input was not a wakeup source 1 LLWU_P24 input was a wakeup source

18.4.14 LLWU Module Flag 5 register (LLWU_MF5)

LLWU_MF5 contains the wakeup flags indicating which internal wakeup source caused the MCU to exit LLS or VLLS mode. For LLS, this is the source causing the CPU interrupt flow. For VLLS, this is the source causing the MCU reset flow.

For internal peripherals that are capable of running in a low-leakage power mode, such as a real time clock module or CMP module, the flag from the associated peripheral is accessible as the MWUFx bit. The flag will need to be cleared in the peripheral instead of writing a 1 to the MWUFx bit.

NOTE

This register is reset on Chip Reset not VLLS and by reset types that trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. It is unaffected by reset types that do not trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. See the Introduction details for more information.

Address: 4007_C000h base + Dh offset = 4007_C00Dh

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	MWUF7	MWUF6	MWUF5	MWUF4	MWUF3	MWUF2	MWUF1	MWUF0
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

LLWU_MF5 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 MWUF7	Wakeup flag For module 7 Indicates that an enabled internal peripheral was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag, follow the internal peripheral flag clearing mechanism. 0 Module 7 input was not a wakeup source 1 Module 7 input was a wakeup source
6 MWUF6	Wakeup flag For module 6 Indicates that an enabled internal peripheral was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag, follow the internal peripheral flag clearing mechanism. 0 Module 6 input was not a wakeup source 1 Module 6 input was a wakeup source
5 MWUF5	Wakeup flag For module 5 Indicates that an enabled internal peripheral was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag, follow the internal peripheral flag clearing mechanism. 0 Module 5 input was not a wakeup source 1 Module 5 input was a wakeup source
4 MWUF4	Wakeup flag For module 4 Indicates that an enabled internal peripheral was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag, follow the internal peripheral flag clearing mechanism. 0 Module 4 input was not a wakeup source 1 Module 4 input was a wakeup source
3 MWUF3	Wakeup flag For module 3 Indicates that an enabled internal peripheral was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag, follow the internal peripheral flag clearing mechanism. 0 Module 3 input was not a wakeup source 1 Module 3 input was a wakeup source
2 MWUF2	Wakeup flag For module 2 Indicates that an enabled internal peripheral was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag, follow the internal peripheral flag clearing mechanism. 0 Module 2 input was not a wakeup source 1 Module 2 input was a wakeup source
1 MWUF1	Wakeup flag For module 1

Table continues on the next page...

LLWU_MF5 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	Indicates that an enabled internal peripheral was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag, follow the internal peripheral flag clearing mechanism. 0 Module 1 input was not a wakeup source 1 Module 1 input was a wakeup source
0 MWUF0	Wakeup flag For module 0 Indicates that an enabled internal peripheral was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag, follow the internal peripheral flag clearing mechanism. 0 Module 0 input was not a wakeup source 1 Module 1 input was a wakeup source

18.4.15 LLWU Pin Filter 1 register (LLWU_FILT1)

LLWU_FILT1 is a control and status register that is used to enable/disable the digital filter 1 features for an external pin.

NOTE

This register is reset on Chip Reset not VLLS and by reset types that trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. It is unaffected by reset types that do not trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. See the Introduction details for more information.

Address: 4007_C000h base + Eh offset = 4007_C00Eh

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	FILTF	FILTE			FILTSEL			
Write	w1c							
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

LLWU_FILT1 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 FILTF	Filter Detect Flag Indicates that the filtered external wakeup pin, selected by FILTSEL, was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to FILTF. 0 Pin Filter 1 was not a wakeup source 1 Pin Filter 1 was a wakeup source
6–5 FILTE	Digital Filter On External Pin Controls the digital filter options for the external pin detect. 00 Filter disabled

Table continues on the next page...

LLWU_FILT1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	01 Filter posedge detect enabled 10 Filter negedge detect enabled 11 Filter any edge detect enabled
FILTSEL	Filter Pin Select Selects 1 of the wakeup pins to be muxed into the filter. 00000 Select LLWU_P0 for filter ... ... 11111 Select LLWU_P31 for filter

18.4.16 LLWU Pin Filter 2 register (LLWU_FILT2)

LLWU_FILT2 is a control and status register that is used to enable/disable the digital filter 2 features for an external pin.

NOTE

This register is reset on Chip Reset not VLLS and by reset types that trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. It is unaffected by reset types that do not trigger Chip Reset not VLLS. See the Introduction details for more information.

Address: 4007_C000h base + Fh offset = 4007_C00Fh

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	FILTF	FILTE			FILTSEL			
Write	w1c							
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

LLWU_FILT2 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 FILTF	Filter Detect Flag Indicates that the filtered external wakeup pin, selected by FILTSEL, was a source of exiting a low-leakage power mode. To clear the flag write a one to FILTF. 0 Pin Filter 2 was not a wakeup source 1 Pin Filter 2 was a wakeup source
6–5 FILTE	Digital Filter On External Pin Controls the digital filter options for the external pin detect. 00 Filter disabled 01 Filter posedge detect enabled

Table continues on the next page...

LLWU_FILT2 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	10 Filter negedge detect enabled 11 Filter any edge detect enabled
FILTSEL	Filter Pin Select Selects 1 of the wakeup pins to be muxed into the filter. 00000 Select LLWU_P0 for filter ... ... 11111 Select LLWU_P31 for filter

18.5 Functional description

Thie low-leakage wakeup unit (LLWU) module allows internal peripherals and external input pins as a source of wakeup from low-leakage modes.

It is operational only in LLS and VLLSx modes.

The LLWU module contains pin enables for each external pin and internal module. For each external pin, the user can disable or select the edge type for the wakeup with the following options:

- Falling-edge
- Rising-edge
- Either-edge

When an external pin is enabled as a wakeup source, the pin must be configured as an input pin.

The LLWU implements optional 3-cycle glitch filters, based on the LPO clock. A detected external pin is required to remain asserted until the enabled glitch filter times out. Additional latency of up to 2 cycles is due to synchronization, which results in a total of up to 5 cycles of delay before the detect circuit alerts the system to the wakeup or reset event when the filter function is enabled. Four wakeup detect filters are available for selected external pins. Glitch filtering is not provided on the internal modules.

For internal module interrupts, the WUMEx bit enables the associated module interrupt as a wakeup source.

18.5.1 LLS mode

Wakeup events triggered from either an external pin input or an internal module interrupt, result in a CPU interrupt flow to begin user code execution.

18.5.2 VLLS modes

For any wakeup from VLLS, recovery is always via a reset flow and RCM_SRS[WAKEUP] is set indicating the low-leakage mode was active. State retention data is lost and I/O will be restored after PMC_REGSC[ACKISO] has been written.

A VLLS exit event due to $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin assertion causes an exit via a system reset. State retention data is lost and the I/O states immediately return to their reset state. The RCM_SRS[WAKEUP] and RCM_SRS[PIN] bits are set and the system executes a reset flow before CPU operation begins with a reset vector fetch.

18.5.3 Initialization

For an enabled peripheral wakeup input, the peripheral flag must be cleared by software before entering LLS or VLLSx mode to avoid an immediate exit from the mode.

Flags associated with external input pins, filtered and unfiltered, must also be cleared by software prior to entry to LLS or VLLSx mode.

After enabling an external pin filter or changing the source pin, wait at least five LPO clock cycles before entering LLS or VLLSx mode to allow the filter to initialize.

NOTE

After recovering from a VLLS mode, user must restore chip configuration before clearing PMC_REGSC[ACKISO]. In particular, pin configuration for enabled LLWU wake-up pins must be restored to avoid any LLWU flag from being falsely set when PMC_REGSC[ACKISO] is cleared.

The signal selected as a wake-up source pin must be a digital pin, as selected in the pin mux control.

Chapter 19
Miscellaneous Control Module (MCM)

19.1 Introduction

The Miscellaneous Control Module (MCM) provides a myriad of miscellaneous control functions.

19.1.1 Features

The MCM includes the following features:

- Program-visible information on the platform configuration and revision

19.2 Memory map/register descriptions

The memory map and register descriptions below describe the registers using byte addresses.

MCM memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
E008_0008	Crossbar Switch (AXBS) Slave Configuration (MCM_PLASC)	16	R	000Fh	19.2.1/352
E008_000A	Crossbar Switch (AXBS) Master Configuration (MCM_PLAMC)	16	R	0017h	19.2.2/352
E008_000C	Crossbar Switch (AXBS) Control Register (MCM_PLACR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	19.2.3/353
E008_0010	Interrupt Status and Control Register (MCM_ISCR)	32	R	0002_0000h	19.2.4/353
E008_0040	Compute Operation Control Register (MCM_CPO)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	19.2.5/356

19.2.1 Crossbar Switch (AXBS) Slave Configuration (MCM_PLASC)

PLASC is a 16-bit read-only register identifying the presence/absence of bus slave connections to the device's crossbar switch.

Address: E008_0000h base + 8h offset = E008_0008h

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0								ASC							
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1

MCM_PLASC field descriptions

Field	Description
15–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
ASC	Each bit in the ASC field indicates whether there is a corresponding connection to the crossbar switch's slave input port. 0 A bus slave connection to AXBS input port *n* is absent 1 A bus slave connection to AXBS input port *n* is present

19.2.2 Crossbar Switch (AXBS) Master Configuration (MCM_PLAMC)

PLAMC is a 16-bit read-only register identifying the presence/absence of bus master connections to the device's crossbar switch.

Address: E008_0000h base + Ah offset = E008_000Ah

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0								AMC							
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	1

MCM_PLAMC field descriptions

Field	Description
15–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
AMC	Each bit in the AMC field indicates whether there is a corresponding connection to the AXBS master input port.

Table continues on the next page...

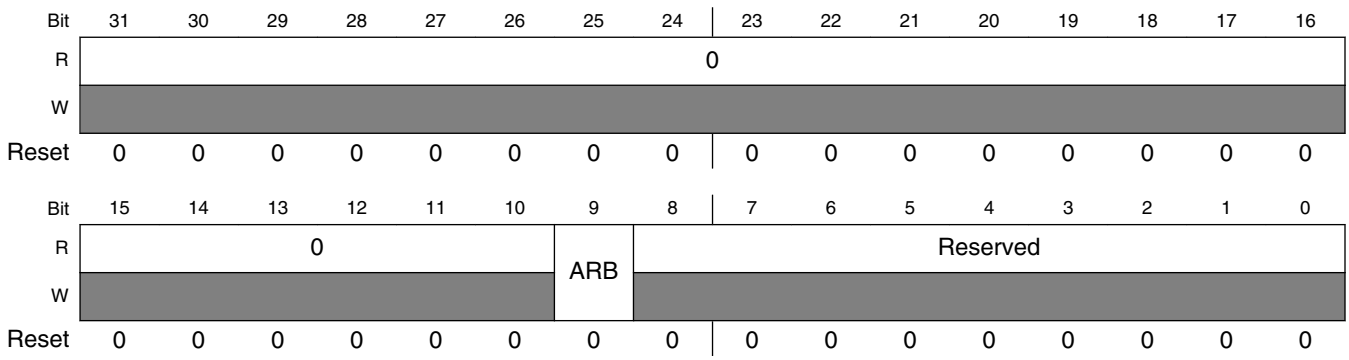
MCM_PLAMC field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 A bus master connection to AXBS input port *n* is absent 1 A bus master connection to AXBS input port *n* is present

19.2.3 Crossbar Switch (AXBS) Control Register (MCM_PLACR)

The PLACR register selects the arbitration policy for the crossbar masters.

Address: E008_0000h base + Ch offset = E008_000Ch



MCM_PLACR field descriptions

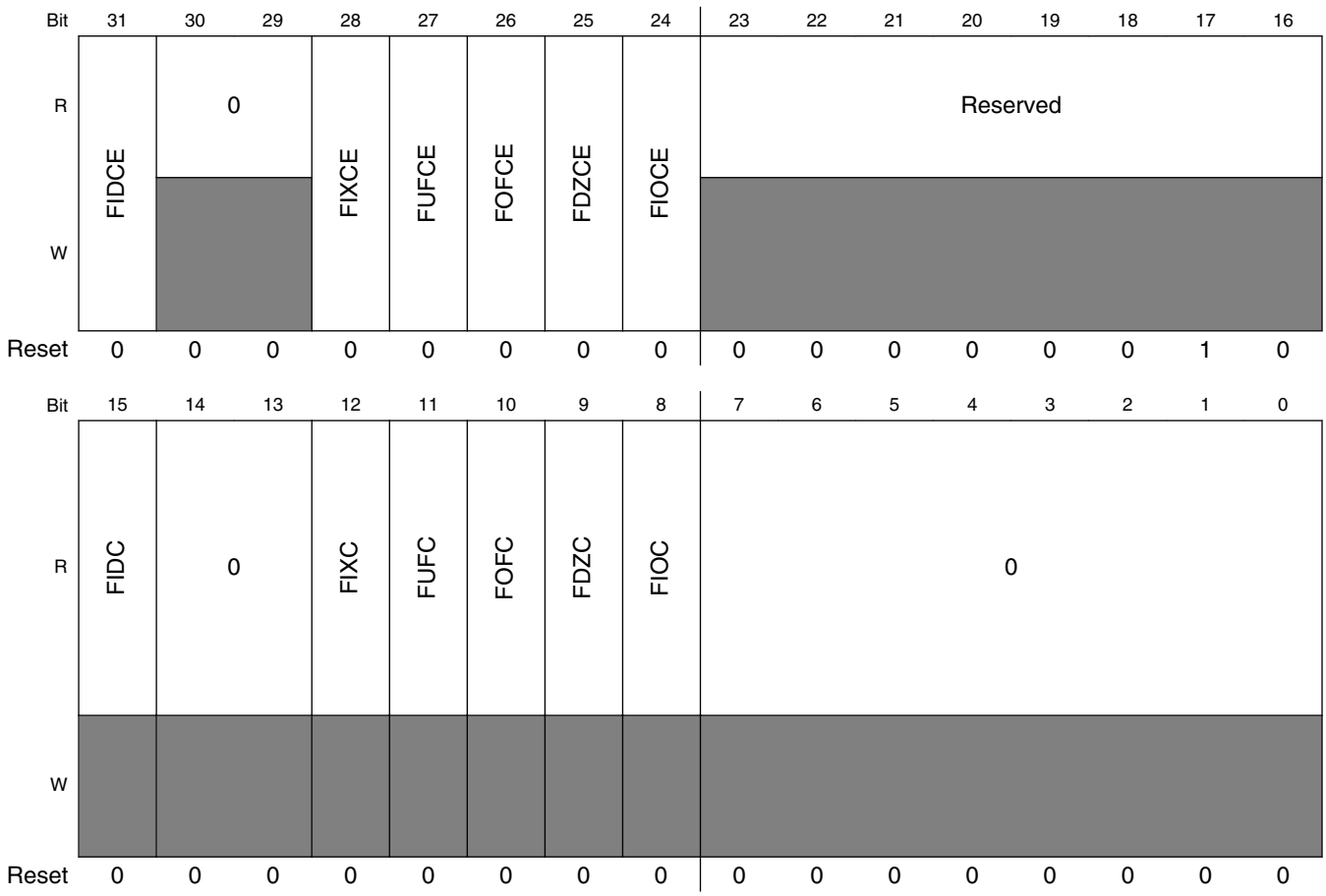
Field	Description
31–10 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
9 ARB	Arbitration select 0 Fixed-priority arbitration for the crossbar masters 1 Round-robin arbitration for the crossbar masters
Reserved	This field is reserved.

19.2.4 Interrupt Status and Control Register (MCM_ISCR)

The MCM_ISCR register includes the enable and status bits associated with the core's floating-point exceptions. The individual event indicators are first qualified with their exception enables and then logically summed to form an interrupt request sent to the core's NVIC.

Bits 15-8 are read-only indicator flags based on the processor's FPSCR register. Attempted writes to these bits are ignored. Once set, the flags remain asserted until software clears the corresponding FPSCR bit.

Address: E008_0000h base + 10h offset = E008_0010h



MCM_ISCR field descriptions

Field	Description
31 FIDCE	FPU input denormal interrupt enable 0 Disable interrupt 1 Enable interrupt
30–29 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
28 FIXCE	FPU inexact interrupt enable 0 Disable interrupt 1 Enable interrupt
27 FUFCE	FPU underflow interrupt enable 0 Disable interrupt 1 Enable interrupt
26 FOFCE	FPU overflow interrupt enable 0 Disable interrupt 1 Enable interrupt

Table continues on the next page...

MCM_ISCR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
25 FDZCE	FPU divide-by-zero interrupt enable 0 Disable interrupt 1 Enable interrupt
24 FIOCE	FPU invalid operation interrupt enable 0 Disable interrupt 1 Enable interrupt
23–16 Reserved	This field is reserved.
15 FIDC	FPU input denormal interrupt status This read-only bit is a copy of the core's FPSCR[IDC] bit and signals input denormalized number has been detected in the processor's FPU. Once set, this bit remains set until software clears the FPSCR[IDC] bit. 0 No interrupt 1 Interrupt occurred
14–13 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
12 FIXC	FPU inexact interrupt status This read-only bit is a copy of the core's FPSCR[IXC] bit and signals an inexact number has been detected in the processor's FPU. Once set, this bit remains set until software clears the FPSCR[IXC] bit. 0 No interrupt 1 Interrupt occurred
11 FUFC	FPU underflow interrupt status This read-only bit is a copy of the core's FPSCR[UFC] bit and signals an underflow has been detected in the processor's FPU. Once set, this bit remains set until software clears the FPSCR[UFC] bit. 0 No interrupt 1 Interrupt occurred
10 FOFC	FPU overflow interrupt status This read-only bit is a copy of the core's FPSCR[OFC] bit and signals an overflow has been detected in the processor's FPU. Once set, this bit remains set until software clears the FPSCR[OFC] bit. 0 No interrupt 1 Interrupt occurred
9 FDZC	FPU divide-by-zero interrupt status This read-only bit is a copy of the core's FPSCR[DZC] bit and signals a divide by zero has been detected in the processor's FPU. Once set, this bit remains set until software clears the FPSCR[DZC] bit. 0 No interrupt 1 Interrupt occurred
8 FIOC	FPU invalid operation interrupt status This read-only bit is a copy of the core's FPSCR[IOC] bit and signals an illegal operation has been detected in the processor's FPU. Once set, this bit remains set until software clears the FPSCR[IOC] bit.

Table continues on the next page...

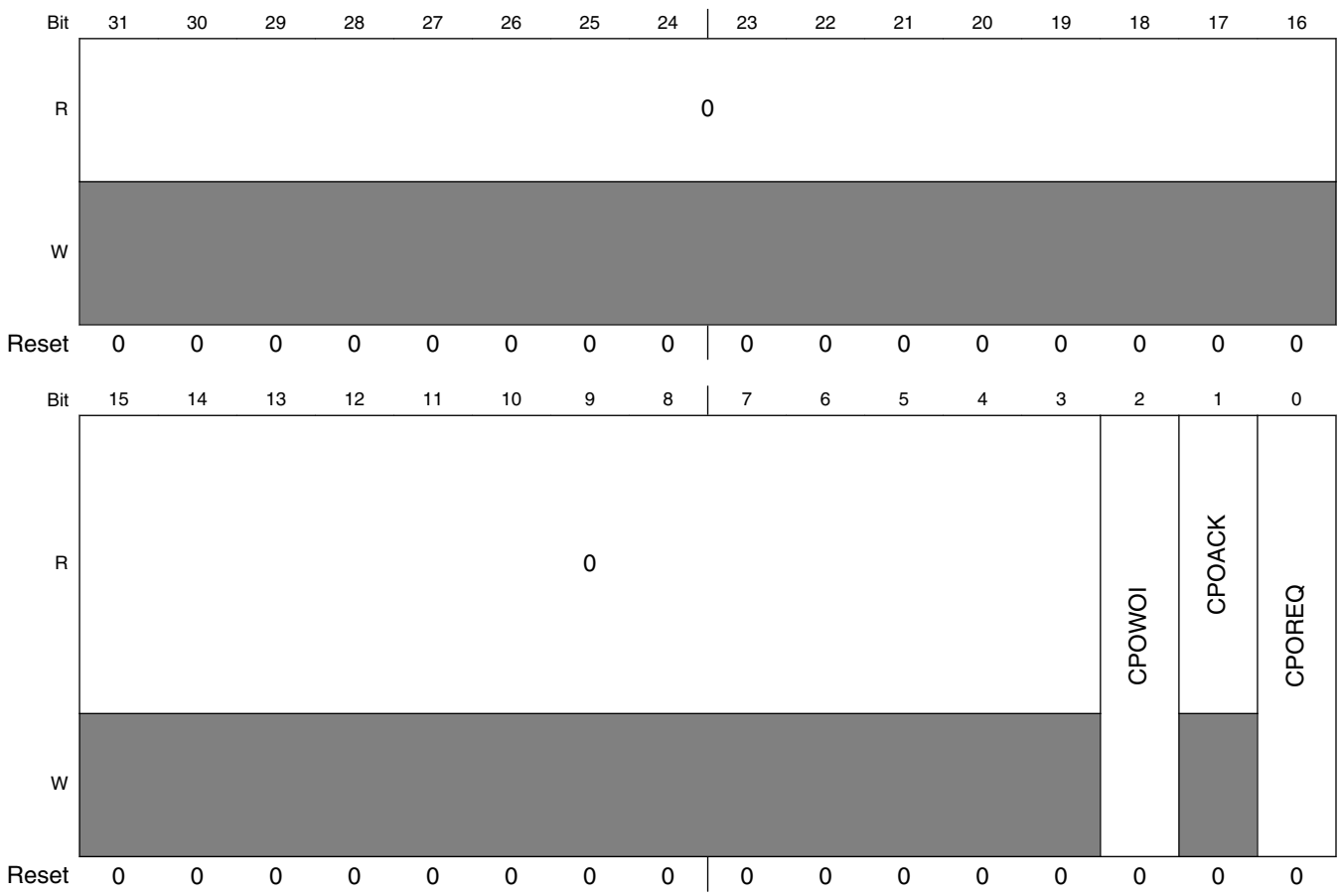
MCM_ISCR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 No interrupt 1 Interrupt occurred
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

19.2.5 Compute Operation Control Register (MCM_CPO)

This register controls the Compute Operation.

Address: E008_0000h base + 40h offset = E008_0040h



MCM_CPO field descriptions

Field	Description
31–3 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
2 CPOWOI	Compute Operation wakeup on interrupt

Table continues on the next page...

MCM_CPO field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 No effect. 1 When set, the CPOREQ is cleared on any interrupt or exception vector fetch.
1 CPOACK	Compute Operation acknowledge 0 Compute operation entry has not completed or compute operation exit has completed. 1 Compute operation entry has completed or compute operation exit has not completed.
0 CPOREQ	Compute Operation request This bit is auto-cleared by vector fetching if CPOWOI = 1. 0 Request is cleared. 1 Request Compute Operation.

19.3 Functional description

This section describes the functional description of MCM module.

19.3.1 Interrupts

The MCM's interrupt is generated if any of the following is true:

- FPU input denormal interrupt is enabled (FIDCE) and an input is denormalized (FIDC)
- FPU inexact interrupt is enabled (FIXCE) and a number is inexact (FIXC)
- FPU underflow interrupt is enabled (FUFCE) and an underflow occurs (FUFC)
- FPU overflow interrupt is enabled (FOFCE) and an overflow occurs (FOFC)
- FPU divide-by-zero interrupt is enabled (FDZCE) and a divide-by-zero occurs (FDZC)
- FPU invalid operation interrupt is enabled (FDZCE) and an invalid occurs (FDZC)

19.3.1.1 Determining source of the interrupt

To determine the exact source of the interrupt qualify the interrupt status flags with the corresponding interrupt enable bits.

1. From MCM_ISCR[31:16] && MCM_ISCR[15:0]
2. Search the result for asserted flags, which indicate the exact interrupt sources

Chapter 20
Crossbar Switch Lite (AXBS-Lite)

20.1 Chip-specific Information for this Module

20.1.1 Crossbar-Lite Switch Master Assignments

The masters connected to the crossbar switch are assigned as follows:

Master module	Master port number
ARM core code bus	0
ARM core system bus	1
DMA	2
USB OTG	4

20.1.2 Crossbar-Lite Switch Slave Assignments

The slaves connected to the crossbar switch are assigned as follows:

Slave module	Slave port number
Flash memory controller	0
SRAM controllers	1,2
Peripheral bridge 0/GPIO	3

20.2 Introduction

The information found here provides information on the layout, configuration, and programming of the crossbar switch.

The crossbar switch connects bus masters and bus slaves using a crossbar switch structure. This structure allows up to four bus masters to access different bus slaves simultaneously, while providing arbitration among the bus masters when they access the same slave.

20.2.1 Features

The crossbar switch includes these features:

- Symmetric crossbar bus switch implementation
  - Allows concurrent accesses from different masters to different slaves
- Up to single-clock 32-bit transfer
- Programmable configuration for fixed-priority or round-robin slave port arbitration (see the chip-specific information).

20.3 Memory Map / Register Definition

This crossbar switch is designed for minimal gate count. It, therefore, has no memory-mapped configuration registers.

Please see the chip-specific information for information on whether the arbitration method in the crossbar switch is programmable, and by which module.

20.4 Functional Description

20.4.1 General operation

When a master accesses the crossbar switch, the access is immediately taken. If the targeted slave port of the access is available, then the access is immediately presented on the slave port. Single-clock or zero-wait-state accesses are possible through the crossbar. If the targeted slave port of the access is busy or parked on a different master port, the requesting master simply sees wait states inserted until the targeted slave port can service the master's request. The latency in servicing the request depends on each master's priority level and the responding slave's access time.

Because the crossbar switch appears to be just another slave to the master device, the master device has no knowledge of whether it actually owns the slave port it is targeting. While the master does not have control of the slave port it is targeting, it simply waits.

After the master has control of the slave port it is targeting, the master remains in control of the slave port until it relinquishes the slave port by running an IDLE cycle or by targeting a different slave port for its next access.

The master can also lose control of the slave port if another higher-priority master makes a request to the slave port.

The crossbar terminates all master IDLE transfers, as opposed to allowing the termination to come from one of the slave buses. Additionally, when no master is requesting access to a slave port, the crossbar drives IDLE transfers onto the slave bus, even though a default master may be granted access to the slave port.

When a slave bus is being idled by the crossbar, it remains parked with the last master to use the slave port. This is done to save the initial clock of arbitration delay that otherwise would be seen if the same master had to arbitrate to gain control of the slave port.

20.4.2 Arbitration

The crossbar switch supports two arbitration algorithms:

- Fixed priority
- Round-robin

The selection of the global slave port arbitration is controlled in the MCM module. For fixed priority, set MCM_PLACR[ARB] to 0. For round robin, set MCM_PLACR[ARB] to 1. This arbitration setting applies to all slave ports.

20.4.2.1 Fixed-priority operation

When operating in fixed-priority mode, each master is assigned a unique priority level with the highest numbered master having the highest priority (for example, in a system with 5 masters, master 1 has lower priority than master 3). If two masters request access to the same slave port, the master with the highest priority gains control over the slave port.

NOTE

In this arbitration mode, a higher-priority master can monopolize a slave port, preventing accesses from any lower-priority master to the port.

When a master makes a request to a slave port, the slave port checks whether the new requesting master's priority level is higher than that of the master that currently has control over the slave port, unless the slave port is in a parked state. The slave port performs an arbitration check at every clock edge to ensure that the proper master, if any, has control of the slave port.

The following table describes possible scenarios based on the requesting master port:

Table 20-1. How the Crossbar Switch grants control of a slave port to a master

When	Then the Crossbar Switch grants control to the requesting master
Both of the following are true: • The current master is not running a transfer. • The new requesting master's priority level is higher than that of the current master.	At the next clock edge
Both of the following are true: • The current master is running an undefined length burst transfer. • The requesting master's priority level is higher than that of the current master.	At the next arbitration point for the undefined length burst transfer
The requesting master's priority level is lower than the current master.	At the conclusion of one of the following cycles: • An IDLE cycle • A non-IDLE cycle to a location other than the current slave port

20.4.2.2 Round-robin priority operation

When operating in round-robin mode, each master is assigned a relative priority based on the master port number. This relative priority is compared to the master port number (ID) of the last master to perform a transfer on the slave bus. The highest priority requesting master becomes owner of the slave bus at the next transfer boundary. Priority is based on how far ahead the ID of the requesting master is to the ID of the last master.

After granted access to a slave port, a master may perform as many transfers as desired to that port until another master makes a request to the same slave port. The next master in line is granted access to the slave port at the next transfer boundary, or possibly on the next clock cycle if the current master has no pending access request.

As an example of arbitration in round-robin mode, assume the crossbar is implemented with master ports 0, 1, 4, and 5. If the last master of the slave port was master 1, and master 0, 4, and 5 make simultaneous requests, they are serviced in the order: 4 then 5 then 0.

The round-robin arbitration mode generally provides a more fair allocation of the available slave-port bandwidth (compared to fixed priority) as the fixed master priority does not affect the master selection.

20.5 Initialization/application information

No initialization is required for the crossbar switch. See the chip-specific crossbar switch information for the reset state of the arbitration scheme.

Chapter 21
Peripheral Bridge (AIPS-Lite)

21.1 Chip-specific Information for this Module

21.1.1 Number of peripheral bridges

This device contains one peripheral bridge.

21.1.2 Memory maps

The peripheral bridges are used to access the registers of most of the modules on this device. See AIPS0 Memory Map for the memory slot assignment for each module.

21.2 Introduction

The peripheral bridge converts the crossbar switch interface to an interface that can access most of the slave peripherals on this chip.

The peripheral bridge occupies 64 MB of the address space, which is divided into peripheral slots of 4 KB. (It might be possible that all the peripheral slots are not used. See the memory map chapter for details on slot assignments.) The bridge includes separate clock enable inputs for each of the slots to accommodate slower peripherals.

21.2.1 Features

Key features of the peripheral bridge are:

- Supports peripheral slots with 8-, 16-, and 32-bit datapath width

21.2.2 General operation

The slave devices connected to the peripheral bridge are modules which contain a programming model of control and status registers. The system masters read and write these registers through the peripheral bridge.

The register maps of the peripherals are located on 4-KB boundaries. Each peripheral is allocated one or more 4-KB block(s) of the memory map. Two global external module enables are available for the remaining address space to allow for customization and expansion of addressed peripheral devices.

21.3 Memory map/register definition

The AIPS module(s) on this device do(es) not contain any user-programmable registers.

21.4 Functional description

The peripheral bridge functions as a bus protocol translator between the crossbar switch and the slave peripheral bus.

The peripheral bridge manages all transactions destined for the attached slave devices and generates select signals for modules on the peripheral bus by decoding accesses within the attached address space.

21.4.1 Access support

Aligned and misaligned 32-bit, 16-bit, and byte accesses are supported for 32-bit peripherals. Misaligned accesses are supported to allow memory to be placed on the slave peripheral bus. Peripheral registers must not be misaligned, although no explicit checking is performed by the peripheral bridge. All accesses are performed with a single transfer.

All accesses to the peripheral slots must be sized less than or equal to the designated peripheral slot size. If an access is attempted that is larger than the targeted port, an error response is generated.

Chapter 22
Direct Memory Access Multiplexer (DMAMUX)

22.1 Chip-specific Information for this Module

22.1.1 DMA MUX request sources

This device includes a DMA request mux that allows up to 63 DMA request signals to be mapped to any of the 16 DMA channels. Because of the mux there is not a hard correlation between any of the DMA request sources and a specific DMA channel.

Some of the modules support Asynchronous DMA operation as indicated by the last column in the following DMA source assignment table.

Table 22-1. DMA request sources - MUX 0

Source number	Source module	Source description	Async DMA capable
Table continues on the next page...			
0	—	Channel disabled [1]	
1	Reserved	Not used	
2	UART0	Receive	
3	UART0	Transmit	
4	UART1	Receive	
5	UART1	Transmit	
6	UART2	Receive	
7	UART2	Transmit	
8	Reserved	—	
9	Reserved	—	
10	Reserved	—	
11		—	
12	I^2S0	Receive	Yes
13	I^2S0	Transmit	Yes
14	SPI0	Receive	

Table 22-1. DMA request sources - MUX 0 (continued)

Source number	Source module	Source description	Async DMA capable
15	SPI0	Transmit	
16	SPI1	Transmit or Receive	
17	Reserved	—	
18	LPI^{2}C0	Master/Slave Receive	Yes
19	LPI^{2}C1	Master/Slave Receive	Yes
20	TPM0	Channel 0	Yes
21	TPM0	Channel 1	Yes
22	TPM0	Channel 2	Yes
23	TPM0	Channel 3	Yes
24	TPM0	Channel 4	Yes
25	TPM0	Channel 5	Yes
26	LPI^{2}C0	Master/Slave Transmit	Yes
27	LPI^{2}C1	Master/Slave Transmit	Yes
28	TPM1	Channel 0	Yes
29	TPM1	Channel 1	Yes
30	TPM2	Channel 0	Yes
31	TPM2	Channel 1	Yes
32	Reserved	—	
33	Reserved	—	
34	Reserved	—	
35	Reserved	—	
36	Reserved	—	
37	Reserved	—	
38	FlexIO	Shifter 0	Yes
39	FlexIO	Shifter 1	Yes
40	ADC0	—	Yes
41	FlexCAN1 (for KS22 only)	—	
42	CMP0	—	Yes
43	FlexIO	Shifter 2	Yes
44	FlexIO	Shifter 3	Yes
45	DAC0	—	
46	I^{2}S1	Receive	Yes
47	I^{2}S1	Transmit	Yes
48	PDB	—	
49	Port control module	Port A	Yes
50	Port control module	Port B	Yes
51	Port control module	Port C	Yes
52	Port control module	Port D	Yes
53	Port control module	Port E	Yes

Table continues on the next page...

Table 22-1. DMA request sources - MUX 0 (continued)

Source number	Source module	Source description	Async DMA capable
54	TPM0	Overflow	Yes
55	TPM1	Overflow	Yes
56	TPM2	Overflow	Yes
57	Reserved	—	
58	LPUART0	Receive	Yes
59	LPUART0	Transmit	Yes
60	DMA MUX	Always enabled	
61	DMA MUX	Always enabled	
62	DMA MUX	Always enabled	
63	DMA MUX	Always enabled	

1. Configuring a DMA channel to select source 0 or any of the reserved sources disables that DMA channel.

22.1.2 DMA transfers via PIT trigger

The PIT module can trigger a DMA transfer on the first four DMA channels. The assignments are detailed at PIT/DMA Periodic Trigger Assignments .

22.2 Introduction

22.2.1 Overview

The Direct Memory Access Multiplexer (DMAMUX) routes DMA sources, called slots, to any of the 16 DMA channels. This process is illustrated in the following figure.

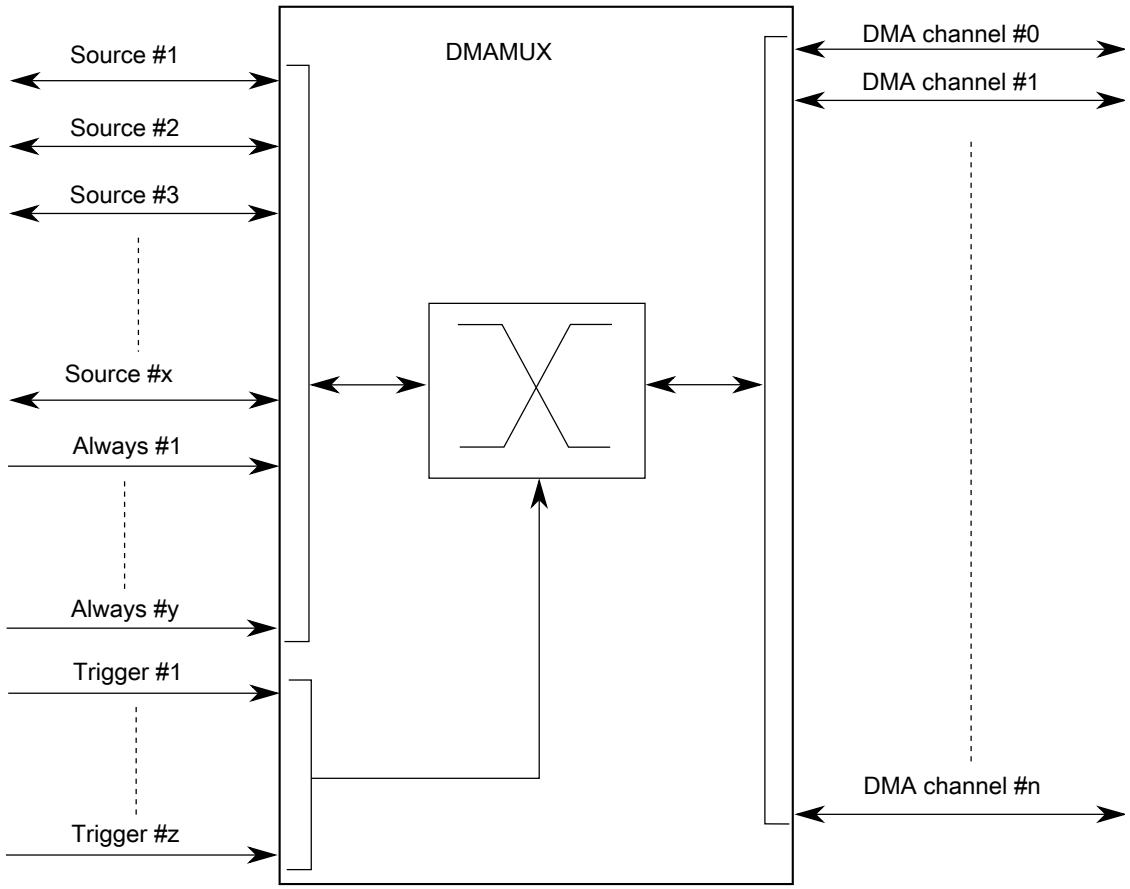


Figure 22-1. DMAMUX block diagram

22.2.2 Features

The DMAMUX module provides these features:

- Up to 59 peripheral slots and up to four always-on slots can be routed to 16 channels.
- 16 independently selectable DMA channel routers.
  - The first four channels additionally provide a trigger functionality.
- Each channel router can be assigned to one of the possible peripheral DMA slots or to one of the always-on slots.

22.2.3 Modes of operation

The following operating modes are available:

- Disabled mode

In this mode, the DMA channel is disabled. Because disabling and enabling of DMA channels is done primarily via the DMA configuration registers, this mode is used mainly as the reset state for a DMA channel in the DMA channel MUX. It may also be used to temporarily suspend a DMA channel while reconfiguration of the system takes place, for example, changing the period of a DMA trigger.

- Normal mode

  In this mode, a DMA source is routed directly to the specified DMA channel. The operation of the DMAMUX in this mode is completely transparent to the system.

- Periodic Trigger mode

  In this mode, a DMA source may only request a DMA transfer, such as when a transmit buffer becomes empty or a receive buffer becomes full, periodically.

  Configuration of the period is done in the registers of the periodic interrupt timer (PIT). This mode is available only for channels 0–3.

22.3 External signal description

The DMAMUX has no external pins.

22.4 Memory map/register definition

This section provides a detailed description of all memory-mapped registers in the DMAMUX.

22.4.1 Endianness

This module's memory map uses big-endian ordering. This means:

- For 8-bit registers, the lower address byte is read as the most significant byte.
- For 16-bit registers, the lower address word is read as the most significant word.

The following figure provides examples of this.

Example 1: 8-bit register structure

Address	Register Data
00h	AAh
01h	BBh
02h	CCh
03h	DDh

For this structure, an 8-bit read of address 00h will yield DDh.

Example 2: 16-bit register structure

Address	Register Data
00h	AABBh
02h	CCDDh

For this structure, a 16-bit read of address 00h will yield CCDDh.

Figure 22-2. Examples of big-endian register access results

DMAMUX memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4002_1000	Channel Configuration register (DMAMUX_CHCFG0)	8	R/W	00h	22.4.2/372
4002_1001	Channel Configuration register (DMAMUX_CHCFG1)	8	R/W	00h	22.4.2/372
4002_1002	Channel Configuration register (DMAMUX_CHCFG2)	8	R/W	00h	22.4.2/372
4002_1003	Channel Configuration register (DMAMUX_CHCFG3)	8	R/W	00h	22.4.2/372
4002_1004	Channel Configuration register (DMAMUX_CHCFG4)	8	R/W	00h	22.4.2/372
4002_1005	Channel Configuration register (DMAMUX_CHCFG5)	8	R/W	00h	22.4.2/372
4002_1006	Channel Configuration register (DMAMUX_CHCFG6)	8	R/W	00h	22.4.2/372
4002_1007	Channel Configuration register (DMAMUX_CHCFG7)	8	R/W	00h	22.4.2/372
4002_1008	Channel Configuration register (DMAMUX_CHCFG8)	8	R/W	00h	22.4.2/372
4002_1009	Channel Configuration register (DMAMUX_CHCFG9)	8	R/W	00h	22.4.2/372
4002_100A	Channel Configuration register (DMAMUX_CHCFG10)	8	R/W	00h	22.4.2/372
4002_100B	Channel Configuration register (DMAMUX_CHCFG11)	8	R/W	00h	22.4.2/372
4002_100C	Channel Configuration register (DMAMUX_CHCFG12)	8	R/W	00h	22.4.2/372
4002_100D	Channel Configuration register (DMAMUX_CHCFG13)	8	R/W	00h	22.4.2/372
4002_100E	Channel Configuration register (DMAMUX_CHCFG14)	8	R/W	00h	22.4.2/372
4002_100F	Channel Configuration register (DMAMUX_CHCFG15)	8	R/W	00h	22.4.2/372

22.4.2 Channel Configuration register (DMAMUX_CHCFG*n*)

Each of the DMA channels can be independently enabled/disabled and associated with one of the DMA slots (peripheral slots or always-on slots) in the system.

NOTE

Setting multiple CHCFG registers with the same source value will result in unpredictable behavior. This is true, even if a channel is disabled (ENBL==0).

Before changing the trigger or source settings, a DMA channel must be disabled via CHCFGn[ENBL].

Address: 4002_1000h base + 0h offset + (1d × i), where i=0d to 15d

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	ENBL	TRIG	SOURCE					
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

DMAMUX_CHCFG*n* field descriptions

Field	Description
7 ENBL	DMA Channel Enable Enables the DMA channel. 0 DMA channel is disabled. This mode is primarily used during configuration of the DMAMux. The DMA has separate channel enables/disables, which should be used to disable or reconfigure a DMA channel. 1 DMA channel is enabled
6 TRIG	DMA Channel Trigger Enable Enables the periodic trigger capability for the triggered DMA channel. 0 Triggering is disabled. If triggering is disabled and ENBL is set, the DMA Channel will simply route the specified source to the DMA channel. (Normal mode) 1 Triggering is enabled. If triggering is enabled and ENBL is set, the DMAMUX is in Periodic Trigger mode.
SOURCE	DMA Channel Source (Slot) Specifies which DMA source, if any, is routed to a particular DMA channel. See the chip-specific DMAMUX information for details about the peripherals and their slot numbers.

22.5 Functional description

The primary purpose of the DMAMUX is to provide flexibility in the system's use of the available DMA channels.

As such, configuration of the DMAMUX is intended to be a static procedure done during execution of the system boot code. However, if the procedure outlined in Enabling and configuring sources is followed, the configuration of the DMAMUX may be changed during the normal operation of the system.

Functionally, the DMAMUX channels may be divided into two classes:

- Channels that implement the normal routing functionality plus periodic triggering capability
- Channels that implement only the normal routing functionality

22.5.1 DMA channels with periodic triggering capability

Besides the normal routing functionality, the first 4 channels of the DMAMUX provide a special periodic triggering capability that can be used to provide an automatic mechanism to transmit bytes, frames, or packets at fixed intervals without the need for processor intervention.

The trigger is generated by the periodic interrupt timer (PIT); as such, the configuration of the periodic triggering interval is done via configuration registers in the PIT. See the section on periodic interrupt timer for more information on this topic.

Note

Because of the dynamic nature of the system (due to DMA channel priorities, bus arbitration, interrupt service routine lengths, etc.), the number of clock cycles between a trigger and the actual DMA transfer cannot be guaranteed.

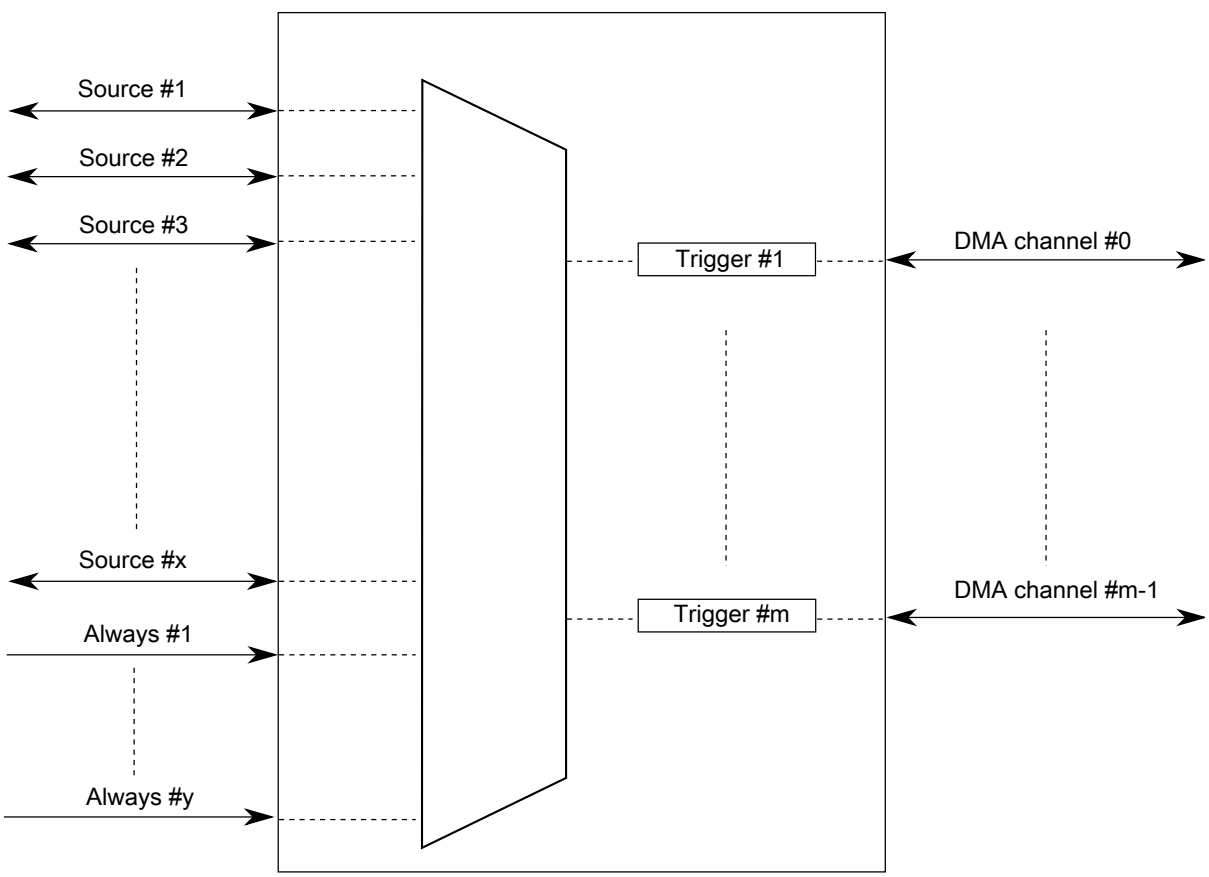


Figure 22-3. DMAMUX triggered channels

The DMA channel triggering capability allows the system to schedule regular DMA transfers, usually on the transmit side of certain peripherals, without the intervention of the processor. This trigger works by gating the request from the peripheral to the DMA until a trigger event has been seen. This is illustrated in the following figure.

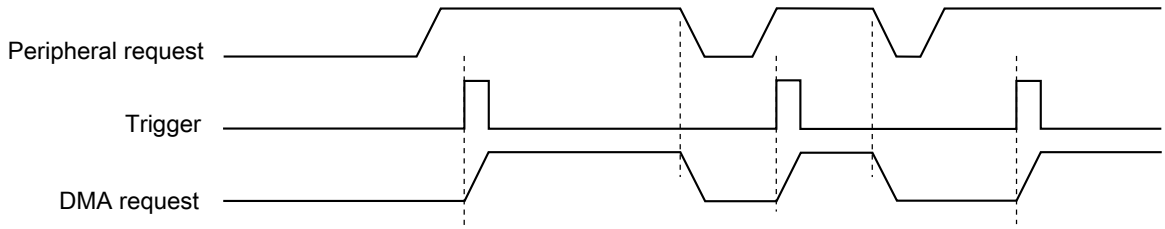


Figure 22-4. DMAMUX channel triggering: normal operation

After the DMA request has been serviced, the peripheral will negate its request, effectively resetting the gating mechanism until the peripheral reasserts its request and the next trigger event is seen. This means that if a trigger is seen, but the peripheral is not requesting a transfer, then that trigger will be ignored. This situation is illustrated in the following figure.

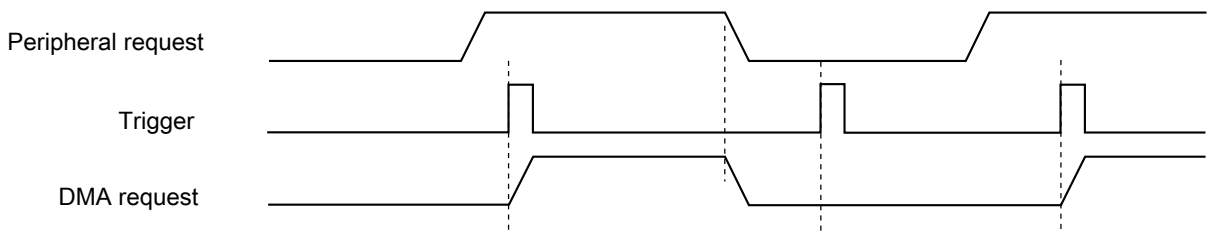


Figure 22-5. DMAMUX channel triggering: ignored trigger

This triggering capability may be used with any peripheral that supports DMA transfers, and is most useful for two types of situations:

- Periodically polling external devices on a particular bus

  As an example, the transmit side of an SPI is assigned to a DMA channel with a trigger, as described above. After it has been set up, the SPI will request DMA transfers, presumably from memory, as long as its transmit buffer is empty. By using a trigger on this channel, the SPI transfers can be automatically performed every 5 µs (as an example). On the receive side of the SPI, the SPI and DMA can be configured to transfer receive data into memory, effectively implementing a method to periodically read data from external devices and transfer the results into memory without processor intervention.

- Using the GPIO ports to drive or sample waveforms

By configuring the DMA to transfer data to one or more GPIO ports, it is possible to create complex waveforms using tabular data stored in on-chip memory. Conversely, using the DMA to periodically transfer data from one or more GPIO ports, it is possible to sample complex waveforms and store the results in tabular form in on-chip memory.

A more detailed description of the capability of each trigger, including resolution, range of values, and so on, may be found in the periodic interrupt timer section.

22.5.2 DMA channels with no triggering capability

The other channels of the DMAMUX provide the normal routing functionality as described in Modes of operation.

22.5.3 Always-enabled DMA sources

In addition to the peripherals that can be used as DMA sources, there are four additional DMA sources that are always enabled. Unlike the peripheral DMA sources, where the peripheral controls the flow of data during DMA transfers, the sources that are always enabled provide no such "throttling" of the data transfers. These sources are most useful in the following cases:

- Performing DMA transfers to/from GPIO—Moving data from/to one or more GPIO pins, either unthrottled (that is, as fast as possible), or periodically (using the DMA triggering capability).
- Performing DMA transfers from memory to memory—Moving data from memory to memory, typically as fast as possible, sometimes with software activation.
- Performing DMA transfers from memory to the external bus, or vice-versa—Similar to memory to memory transfers, this is typically done as quickly as possible.
- Any DMA transfer that requires software activation—Any DMA transfer that should be explicitly started by software.

In cases where software should initiate the start of a DMA transfer, an always-enabled DMA source can be used to provide maximum flexibility. When activating a DMA channel via software, subsequent executions of the minor loop require that a new start event be sent. This can either be a new software activation, or a transfer request from the DMA channel MUX. The options for doing this are:

- Transfer all data in a single minor loop.

By configuring the DMA to transfer all of the data in a single minor loop (that is, major loop counter = 1), no reactivation of the channel is necessary. The disadvantage to this option is the reduced granularity in determining the load that the DMA transfer will impose on the system. For this option, the DMA channel must be disabled in the DMA channel MUX.

- Use explicit software reactivation.

  In this option, the DMA is configured to transfer the data using both minor and major loops, but the processor is required to reactivate the channel by writing to the DMA registers *after every minor loop*. For this option, the DMA channel must be disabled in the DMA channel MUX.

- Use an always-enabled DMA source.

  In this option, the DMA is configured to transfer the data using both minor and major loops, and the DMA channel MUX does the channel reactivation. For this option, the DMA channel should be enabled and pointing to an "always enabled" source. Note that the reactivation of the channel can be continuous (DMA triggering is disabled) or can use the DMA triggering capability. In this manner, it is possible to execute periodic transfers of packets of data from one source to another, without processor intervention.

22.6 Initialization/application information

This section provides instructions for initializing the DMA channel MUX.

22.6.1 Reset

The reset state of each individual bit is shown in Memory map/register definition. In summary, after reset, all channels are disabled and must be explicitly enabled before use.

22.6.2 Enabling and configuring sources

To enable a source with periodic triggering:

1. Determine with which DMA channel the source will be associated. Note that only the first 4 DMA channels have periodic triggering capability.
2. Clear the CHCFG[ENBL] and CHCFG[TRIG] fields of the DMA channel.

3. Ensure that the DMA channel is properly configured in the DMA. The DMA channel may be enabled at this point.
4. Configure the corresponding timer.
5. Select the source to be routed to the DMA channel. Write to the corresponding CHCFG register, ensuring that the CHCFG[ENBL] and CHCFG[TRIG] fields are set.

NOTE

The following is an example. See the chip configuration details for the number of this device's DMA channels that have triggering capability.

To configure source #5 transmit for use with DMA channel 1, with periodic triggering capability:

1. Write 0x00 to CHCFG1.
2. Configure channel 1 in the DMA, including enabling the channel.
3. Configure a timer for the desired trigger interval.
4. Write 0xC5 to CHCFG1.

The following code example illustrates steps 1 and 4 above:

```
void DMAMUX_Init(uint8_t DMA_CH, uint8_t DMAMUX_SOURCE)
{
    DMAMUX_0.CHCFG[DMA_CH].B.SOURCE = DMAMUX_SOURCE;
    DMAMUX_0.CHCFG[DMA_CH].B.ENBL   = 1;
    DMAMUX_0.CHCFG[DMA_CH].B.TRIG   = 1;
}
```

To enable a source, without periodic triggering:

1. Determine with which DMA channel the source will be associated. Note that only the first 4 DMA channels have periodic triggering capability.
2. Clear the CHCFG[ENBL] and CHCFG[TRIG] fields of the DMA channel.
3. Ensure that the DMA channel is properly configured in the DMA. The DMA channel may be enabled at this point.
4. Select the source to be routed to the DMA channel. Write to the corresponding CHCFG register, ensuring that CHCFG[ENBL] is set while CHCFG[TRIG] is cleared.

NOTE

The following is an example. See the chip configuration details for the number of this device's DMA channels that have triggering capability.

To configure source #5 transmit for use with DMA channel 1, with no periodic triggering capability:

1. Write 0x00 to CHCFG1.

2. Configure channel 1 in the DMA, including enabling the channel.
3. Write 0x85 to CHCFG1.

The following code example illustrates steps 1 and 3 above:

```
In File registers.h:
#define DMAMUX_BASE_ADDR     0x40021000/* Example only ! */
/* Following example assumes char is 8-bits */
volatile unsigned char *CHCFG0 = (volatile unsigned char *) (DMAMUX_BASE_ADDR+0x0000);
volatile unsigned char *CHCFG1 = (volatile unsigned char *) (DMAMUX_BASE_ADDR+0x0001);
volatile unsigned char *CHCFG2 = (volatile unsigned char *) (DMAMUX_BASE_ADDR+0x0002);
volatile unsigned char *CHCFG3 = (volatile unsigned char *) (DMAMUX_BASE_ADDR+0x0003);
volatile unsigned char *CHCFG4 = (volatile unsigned char *) (DMAMUX_BASE_ADDR+0x0004);
volatile unsigned char *CHCFG5 = (volatile unsigned char *) (DMAMUX_BASE_ADDR+0x0005);
volatile unsigned char *CHCFG6 = (volatile unsigned char *) (DMAMUX_BASE_ADDR+0x0006);
volatile unsigned char *CHCFG7 = (volatile unsigned char *) (DMAMUX_BASE_ADDR+0x0007);
volatile unsigned char *CHCFG8 = (volatile unsigned char *) (DMAMUX_BASE_ADDR+0x0008);
volatile unsigned char *CHCFG9 = (volatile unsigned char *) (DMAMUX_BASE_ADDR+0x0009);
volatile unsigned char *CHCFG10= (volatile unsigned char *) (DMAMUX_BASE_ADDR+0x000A);
volatile unsigned char *CHCFG11= (volatile unsigned char *) (DMAMUX_BASE_ADDR+0x000B);
volatile unsigned char *CHCFG12= (volatile unsigned char *) (DMAMUX_BASE_ADDR+0x000C);
volatile unsigned char *CHCFG13= (volatile unsigned char *) (DMAMUX_BASE_ADDR+0x000D);
volatile unsigned char *CHCFG14= (volatile unsigned char *) (DMAMUX_BASE_ADDR+0x000E);
volatile unsigned char *CHCFG15= (volatile unsigned char *) (DMAMUX_BASE_ADDR+0x000F);

In File main.c:
#include "registers.h"
:
:
*CHCFG1 = 0x00;
*CHCFG1 = 0x85;
```

To disable a source:

A particular DMA source may be disabled by not writing the corresponding source value into any of the CHCFG registers. Additionally, some module-specific configuration may be necessary. See the appropriate section for more details.

To switch the source of a DMA channel:

1. Disable the DMA channel in the DMA and reconfigure the channel for the new source.
2. Clear the CHCFG[ENBL] and CHCFG[TRIG] bits of the DMA channel.
3. Select the source to be routed to the DMA channel. Write to the corresponding CHCFG register, ensuring that the CHCFG[ENBL] and CHCFG[TRIG] fields are set.

To switch DMA channel 8 from source #5 transmit to source #7 transmit:

1. In the DMA configuration registers, disable DMA channel 8 and reconfigure it to handle the transfers to peripheral slot 7. This example assumes channel 8 doesn't have triggering capability.
2. Write 0x00 to CHCFG8.
3. Write 0x87 to CHCFG8. (In this example, setting CHCFG[TRIG] would have no effect due to the assumption that channel 8 does not support the periodic triggering functionality.)

The following code example illustrates steps 2 and 3 above:

```
In File registers.h:
#define DMAMUX_BASE_ADDR     0x40021000/* Example only ! */
/* Following example assumes char is 8-bits */
volatile unsigned char *CHCFG0 = (volatile unsigned char *) (DMAMUX_BASE_ADDR+0x0000);
volatile unsigned char *CHCFG1 = (volatile unsigned char *) (DMAMUX_BASE_ADDR+0x0001);
volatile unsigned char *CHCFG2 = (volatile unsigned char *) (DMAMUX_BASE_ADDR+0x0002);
volatile unsigned char *CHCFG3 = (volatile unsigned char *) (DMAMUX_BASE_ADDR+0x0003);
volatile unsigned char *CHCFG4 = (volatile unsigned char *) (DMAMUX_BASE_ADDR+0x0004);
volatile unsigned char *CHCFG5 = (volatile unsigned char *) (DMAMUX_BASE_ADDR+0x0005);
volatile unsigned char *CHCFG6 = (volatile unsigned char *) (DMAMUX_BASE_ADDR+0x0006);
volatile unsigned char *CHCFG7 = (volatile unsigned char *) (DMAMUX_BASE_ADDR+0x0007);
volatile unsigned char *CHCFG8 = (volatile unsigned char *) (DMAMUX_BASE_ADDR+0x0008);
volatile unsigned char *CHCFG9 = (volatile unsigned char *) (DMAMUX_BASE_ADDR+0x0009);
volatile unsigned char *CHCFG10= (volatile unsigned char *) (DMAMUX_BASE_ADDR+0x000A);
volatile unsigned char *CHCFG11= (volatile unsigned char *) (DMAMUX_BASE_ADDR+0x000B);
volatile unsigned char *CHCFG12= (volatile unsigned char *) (DMAMUX_BASE_ADDR+0x000C);
volatile unsigned char *CHCFG13= (volatile unsigned char *) (DMAMUX_BASE_ADDR+0x000D);
volatile unsigned char *CHCFG14= (volatile unsigned char *) (DMAMUX_BASE_ADDR+0x000E);
volatile unsigned char *CHCFG15= (volatile unsigned char *) (DMAMUX_BASE_ADDR+0x000F);

In File main.c:
#include "registers.h"
:
:
*CHCFG8 = 0x00;
*CHCFG8 = 0x87;
```

Chapter 23
Enhanced Direct Memory Access (eDMA)

23.1 Introduction

The enhanced direct memory access (eDMA) controller is a second-generation module capable of performing complex data transfers with minimal intervention from a host processor. The hardware microarchitecture includes:

- A DMA engine that performs:
  - Source address and destination address calculations
  - Data-movement operations
- Local memory containing transfer control descriptors for each of the 16 channels

23.1.1 eDMA system block diagram

Figure 23-1 illustrates the components of the eDMA system, including the eDMA module ("engine").

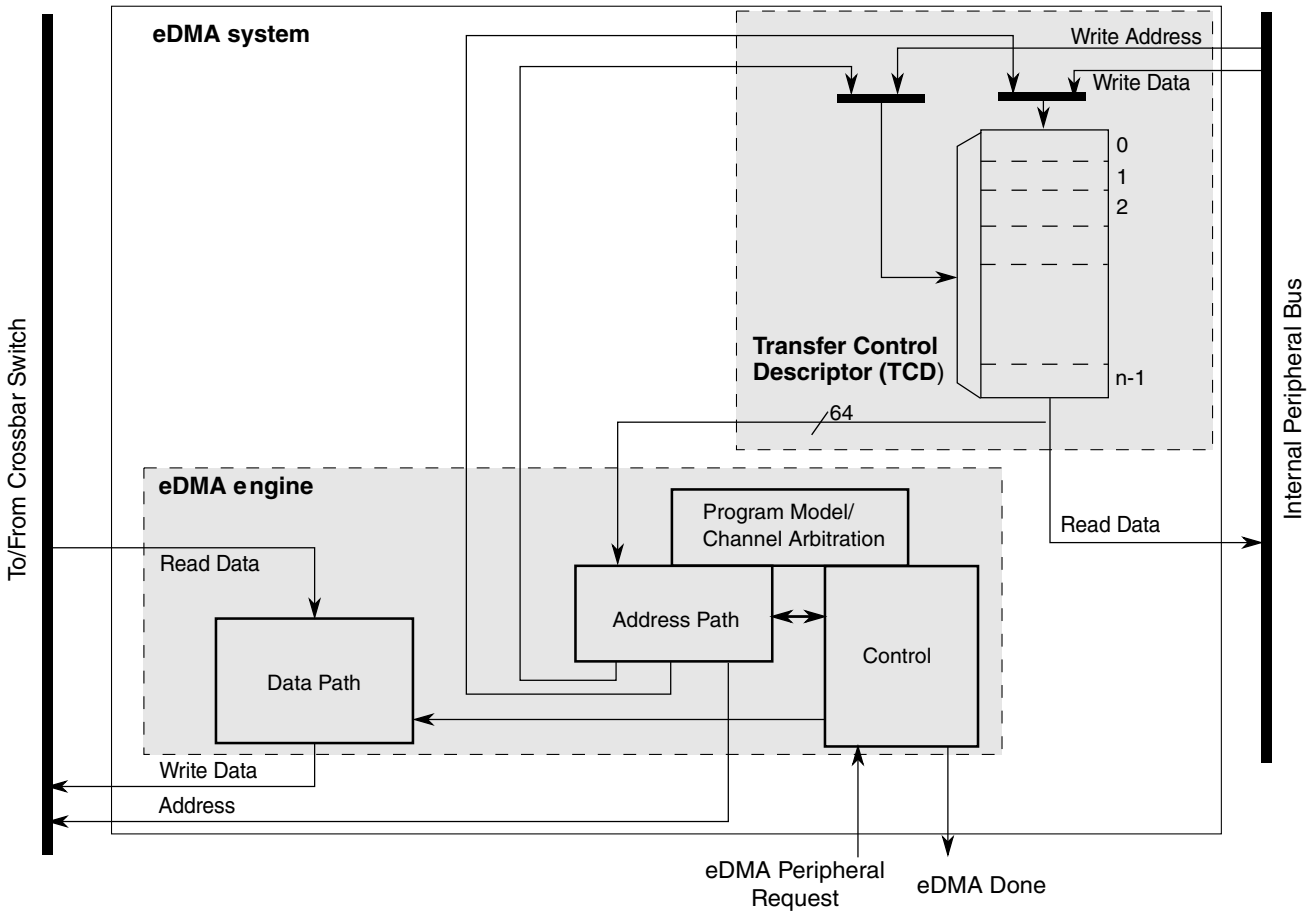


Figure 23-1. eDMA system block diagram

23.1.2 Block parts

The eDMA module is partitioned into two major modules: the eDMA engine and the transfer-control descriptor local memory.

The eDMA engine is further partitioned into four submodules:

Table 23-1. eDMA engine submodules

Submodule	Function
Address path	This block implements registered versions of two channel transfer control descriptors, channel x and channel y, and manages all master bus-address calculations. All the channels provide the same functionality. This structure allows data transfers associated with one channel to be preempted after the completion of a read/write sequence if a higher priority channel activation is asserted while the first channel is active. After a channel is activated, it runs until the minor loop is completed, unless preempted by a higher priority channel. This provides a mechanism (enabled by DCHPRI*n*[ECP]) where a large data move operation can be preempted to minimize the time another channel is blocked from execution. When any channel is selected to execute, the contents of its TCD are read from local memory and loaded into the address path channel x registers for a normal start and into channel y registers for a preemption start. After the minor loop completes execution, the address path hardware writes

Table continues on the next page...

Table 23-1. eDMA engine submodules (continued)

Submodule	Function
	the new values for the TCD*n*_{SADDR, DADDR, CITER} back to local memory. If the major iteration count is exhausted, additional processing is performed, including the final address pointer updates, reloading the TCD*n*_CITER field, and a possible fetch of the next TCD*n* from memory as part of a scatter/gather operation.
Data path	This block implements the bus master read/write datapath. It includes a data buffer and the necessary multiplex logic to support any required data alignment. The internal read data bus is the primary input, and the internal write data bus is the primary output. The address and data path modules directly support the 2-stage pipelined internal bus. The address path module represents the 1st stage of the bus pipeline (address phase), while the data path module implements the 2nd stage of the pipeline (data phase).
Program model/channel arbitration	This block implements the first section of the eDMA programming model as well as the channel arbitration logic. The programming model registers are connected to the internal peripheral bus. The eDMA peripheral request inputs and interrupt request outputs are also connected to this block (via control logic).
Control	This block provides all the control functions for the eDMA engine. For data transfers where the source and destination sizes are equal, the eDMA engine performs a series of source read/ destination write operations until the number of bytes specified in the minor loop byte count has moved. For descriptors where the sizes are not equal, multiple accesses of the smaller size data are required for each reference of the larger size. As an example, if the source size references 16-bit data and the destination is 32-bit data, two reads are performed, then one 32-bit write.

The transfer-control descriptor local memory is further partitioned into:

Table 23-2. Transfer control descriptor memory

Submodule	Description
Memory controller	This logic implements the required dual-ported controller, managing accesses from the eDMA engine as well as references from the internal peripheral bus. As noted earlier, in the event of simultaneous accesses, the eDMA engine is given priority and the peripheral transaction is stalled.
Memory array	TCD storage for each channel's transfer profile.

23.1.3 Features

The eDMA is a highly programmable data-transfer engine optimized to minimize any required intervention from the host processor. It is intended for use in applications where the data size to be transferred is statically known and not defined within the transferred data itself. The eDMA module features:

- All data movement via dual-address transfers: read from source, write to destination
  - Programmable source and destination addresses and transfer size
  - Support for enhanced addressing modes

- 16-channel implementation that performs complex data transfers with minimal intervention from a host processor
  - Internal data buffer, used as temporary storage to support 16- and 32-byte transfers
  - Connections to the crossbar switch for bus mastering the data movement
- Transfer control descriptor (TCD) organized to support two-deep, nested transfer operations
  - 32-byte TCD stored in local memory for each channel
  - An inner data transfer loop defined by a minor byte transfer count
  - An outer data transfer loop defined by a major iteration count
- Channel activation via one of three methods:
  - Explicit software initiation
  - Initiation via a channel-to-channel linking mechanism for continuous transfers
  - Peripheral-paced hardware requests, one per channel
- Fixed-priority and round-robin channel arbitration
- Channel completion reported via programmable interrupt requests
  - One interrupt per channel, which can be asserted at completion of major iteration count
  - Programmable error terminations per channel and logically summed together to form one error interrupt to the interrupt controller
- Programmable support for scatter/gather DMA processing
- Support for complex data structures

In the discussion of this module, *n* is used to reference the channel number.

23.2 Modes of operation

The eDMA operates in the following modes:

Table 23-3. Modes of operation

Mode	Description
Normal	In Normal mode, the eDMA transfers data between a source and a destination. The source and destination can be a memory block or an I/O block capable of operation with the eDMA. A service request initiates a transfer of a specific number of bytes (NBYTES) as specified in the transfer control descriptor (TCD). The minor loop is the sequence of read-write operations that transfers these NBYTES per service request. Each service request executes one iteration of the major loop, which transfers NBYTES of data.
Debug	DMA operation is configurable in Debug mode via the control register: • If CR[EDBG] is cleared, the DMA continues to operate. • If CR[EDBG] is set, the eDMA stops transferring data. If Debug mode is entered while a channel is active, the eDMA continues operation until the channel retires.
Wait	Before entering Wait mode, the DMA attempts to complete its current transfer. After the transfer completes, the device enters Wait mode.

23.3 Memory map/register definition

The eDMA's programming model is partitioned into two regions:

- The first region defines a number of registers providing control functions
- The second region corresponds to the local transfer control descriptor (TCD) memory

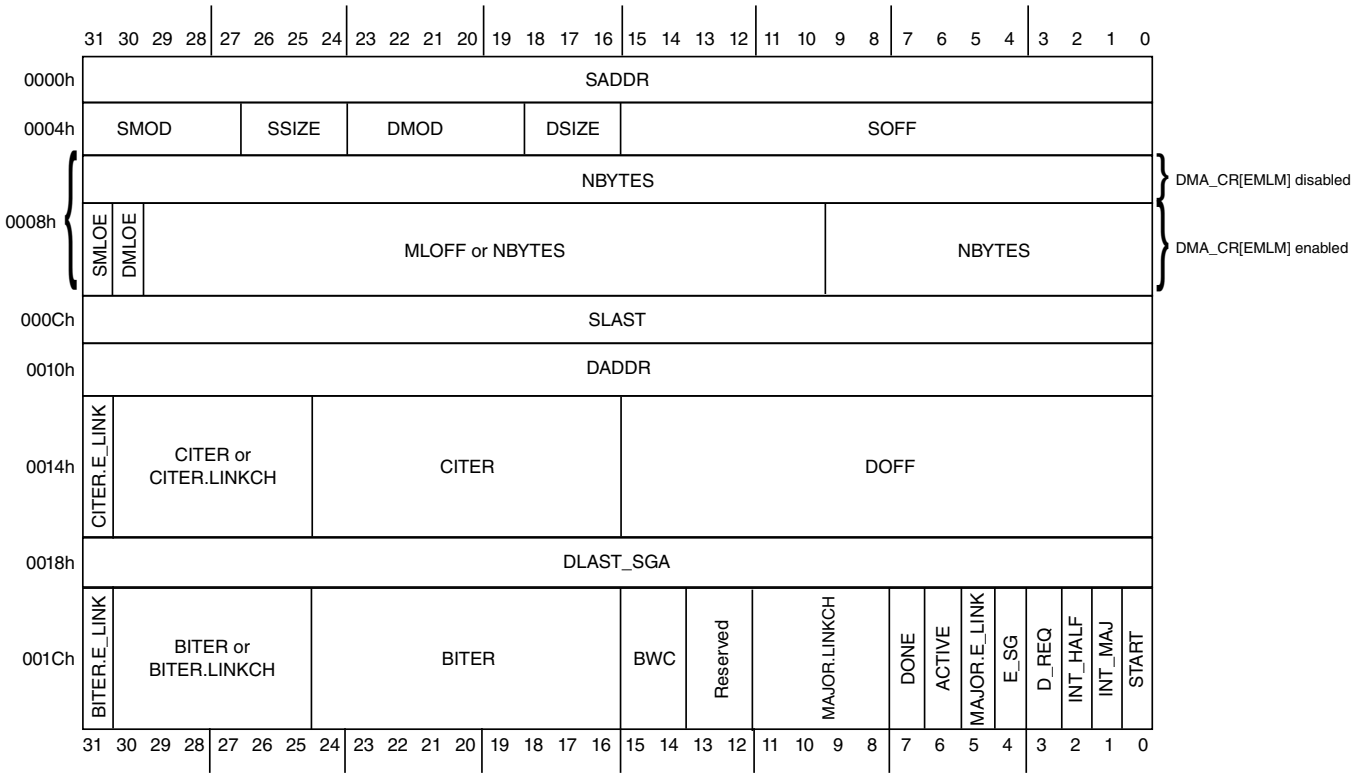
23.3.1 TCD memory

Each channel requires a 32-byte transfer control descriptor for defining the desired data movement operation. The channel descriptors are stored in the local memory in sequential order: channel 0, channel 1, ... channel 15. Each TCD*n* definition is presented as 11 registers of 16 or 32 bits.

23.3.2 TCD initialization

Prior to activating a channel, you must initialize its TCD with the appropriate transfer profile.

23.3.3 TCD structure



23.3.4 Reserved memory and bit fields

- Reading reserved bits in a register returns the value of zero.
- Writes to reserved bits in a register are ignored.
- Reading or writing a reserved memory location generates a bus error.

DMA memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4000_8000	Control Register (DMA_CR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	23.3.1/397
4000_8004	Error Status Register (DMA_ES)	32	R	0000_0000h	23.3.2/400
4000_800C	Enable Request Register (DMA_ERQ)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	23.3.3/402
4000_8014	Enable Error Interrupt Register (DMA_EEI)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	23.3.4/404
4000_8018	Clear Enable Error Interrupt Register (DMA_CEEI)	8	W (always reads 0)	00h	23.3.5/406
4000_8019	Set Enable Error Interrupt Register (DMA_SEEI)	8	W (always reads 0)	00h	23.3.6/407

Table continues on the next page...

DMA memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4000_801A	Clear Enable Request Register (DMA_CERQ)	8	W (always reads 0)	00h	23.3.7/408
4000_801B	Set Enable Request Register (DMA_SERQ)	8	W (always reads 0)	00h	23.3.8/409
4000_801C	Clear DONE Status Bit Register (DMA_CDNE)	8	W (always reads 0)	00h	23.3.9/410
4000_801D	Set START Bit Register (DMA_SSRT)	8	W (always reads 0)	00h	23.3.10/411
4000_801E	Clear Error Register (DMA_CERR)	8	W (always reads 0)	00h	23.3.11/412
4000_801F	Clear Interrupt Request Register (DMA_CINT)	8	W (always reads 0)	00h	23.3.12/413
4000_8024	Interrupt Request Register (DMA_INT)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	23.3.13/414
4000_802C	Error Register (DMA_ERR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	23.3.14/416
4000_8034	Hardware Request Status Register (DMA_HRS)	32	R	0000_0000h	23.3.15/419
4000_8044	Enable Asynchronous Request in Stop Register (DMA_EARS)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	23.3.16/422
4000_8100	Channel n Priority Register (DMA_DCHPRI3)	8	R/W	See section	23.3.17/424
4000_8101	Channel n Priority Register (DMA_DCHPRI2)	8	R/W	See section	23.3.17/424
4000_8102	Channel n Priority Register (DMA_DCHPRI1)	8	R/W	See section	23.3.17/424
4000_8103	Channel n Priority Register (DMA_DCHPRI0)	8	R/W	See section	23.3.17/424
4000_8104	Channel n Priority Register (DMA_DCHPRI7)	8	R/W	See section	23.3.17/424
4000_8105	Channel n Priority Register (DMA_DCHPRI6)	8	R/W	See section	23.3.17/424
4000_8106	Channel n Priority Register (DMA_DCHPRI5)	8	R/W	See section	23.3.17/424
4000_8107	Channel n Priority Register (DMA_DCHPRI4)	8	R/W	See section	23.3.17/424
4000_8108	Channel n Priority Register (DMA_DCHPRI11)	8	R/W	See section	23.3.17/424
4000_8109	Channel n Priority Register (DMA_DCHPRI10)	8	R/W	See section	23.3.17/424
4000_810A	Channel n Priority Register (DMA_DCHPRI9)	8	R/W	See section	23.3.17/424
4000_810B	Channel n Priority Register (DMA_DCHPRI8)	8	R/W	See section	23.3.17/424
4000_810C	Channel n Priority Register (DMA_DCHPRI15)	8	R/W	See section	23.3.17/424
4000_810D	Channel n Priority Register (DMA_DCHPRI14)	8	R/W	See section	23.3.17/424
4000_810E	Channel n Priority Register (DMA_DCHPRI13)	8	R/W	See section	23.3.17/424
4000_810F	Channel n Priority Register (DMA_DCHPRI12)	8	R/W	See section	23.3.17/424
4000_9000	TCD Source Address (DMA_TCD0_SADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.18/425
4000_9004	TCD Signed Source Address Offset (DMA_TCD0_SOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.19/425
4000_9006	TCD Transfer Attributes (DMA_TCD0_ATTR)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.20/426

Table continues on the next page...

DMA memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4000_9008	TCD Minor Byte Count (Minor Loop Mapping Disabled) (DMA_TCD0_NBYTES_MLNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.21/427
4000_9008	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping Enabled and Offset Disabled) (DMA_TCD0_NBYTES_MLOFFNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.22/428
4000_9008	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping and Offset Enabled) (DMA_TCD0_NBYTES_MLOFFYES)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.23/429
4000_900C	TCD Last Source Address Adjustment (DMA_TCD0_SLAST)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.24/430
4000_9010	TCD Destination Address (DMA_TCD0_DADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.25/431
4000_9014	TCD Signed Destination Address Offset (DMA_TCD0_DOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.26/431
4000_9016	TCD Current Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD0_CITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.27/432
4000_9016	DMA_TCD0_CITER_ELINKNO	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.28/433
4000_9018	TCD Last Destination Address Adjustment/Scatter Gather Address (DMA_TCD0_DLASTSGA)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.29/434
4000_901C	TCD Control and Status (DMA_TCD0_CSR)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.30/435
4000_901E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD0_BITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.31/437
4000_901E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Disabled) (DMA_TCD0_BITER_ELINKNO)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.32/438
4000_9020	TCD Source Address (DMA_TCD1_SADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.18/425
4000_9024	TCD Signed Source Address Offset (DMA_TCD1_SOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.19/425
4000_9026	TCD Transfer Attributes (DMA_TCD1_ATTR)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.20/426
4000_9028	TCD Minor Byte Count (Minor Loop Mapping Disabled) (DMA_TCD1_NBYTES_MLNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.21/427
4000_9028	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping Enabled and Offset Disabled) (DMA_TCD1_NBYTES_MLOFFNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.22/428
4000_9028	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping and Offset Enabled) (DMA_TCD1_NBYTES_MLOFFYES)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.23/429
4000_902C	TCD Last Source Address Adjustment (DMA_TCD1_SLAST)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.24/430
4000_9030	TCD Destination Address (DMA_TCD1_DADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.25/431
4000_9034	TCD Signed Destination Address Offset (DMA_TCD1_DOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.26/431
4000_9036	TCD Current Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD1_CITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.27/432
4000_9036	DMA_TCD1_CITER_ELINKNO	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.28/433
4000_9038	TCD Last Destination Address Adjustment/Scatter Gather Address (DMA_TCD1_DLASTSGA)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.29/434

Table continues on the next page...

DMA memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4000_903C	TCD Control and Status (DMA_TCD1_CSR)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.30/435
4000_903E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD1_BITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.31/437
4000_903E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Disabled) (DMA_TCD1_BITER_ELINKNO)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.32/438
4000_9040	TCD Source Address (DMA_TCD2_SADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.18/425
4000_9044	TCD Signed Source Address Offset (DMA_TCD2_SOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.19/425
4000_9046	TCD Transfer Attributes (DMA_TCD2_ATTR)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.20/426
4000_9048	TCD Minor Byte Count (Minor Loop Mapping Disabled) (DMA_TCD2_NBYTES_MLNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.21/427
4000_9048	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping Enabled and Offset Disabled) (DMA_TCD2_NBYTES_MLOFFNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.22/428
4000_9048	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping and Offset Enabled) (DMA_TCD2_NBYTES_MLOFFYES)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.23/429
4000_904C	TCD Last Source Address Adjustment (DMA_TCD2_SLAST)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.24/430
4000_9050	TCD Destination Address (DMA_TCD2_DADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.25/431
4000_9054	TCD Signed Destination Address Offset (DMA_TCD2_DOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.26/431
4000_9056	TCD Current Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD2_CITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.27/432
4000_9056	DMA_TCD2_CITER_ELINKNO	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.28/433
4000_9058	TCD Last Destination Address Adjustment/Scatter Gather Address (DMA_TCD2_DLASTSGA)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.29/434
4000_905C	TCD Control and Status (DMA_TCD2_CSR)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.30/435
4000_905E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD2_BITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.31/437
4000_905E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Disabled) (DMA_TCD2_BITER_ELINKNO)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.32/438
4000_9060	TCD Source Address (DMA_TCD3_SADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.18/425
4000_9064	TCD Signed Source Address Offset (DMA_TCD3_SOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.19/425
4000_9066	TCD Transfer Attributes (DMA_TCD3_ATTR)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.20/426
4000_9068	TCD Minor Byte Count (Minor Loop Mapping Disabled) (DMA_TCD3_NBYTES_MLNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.21/427
4000_9068	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping Enabled and Offset Disabled) (DMA_TCD3_NBYTES_MLOFFNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.22/428
4000_9068	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping and Offset Enabled) (DMA_TCD3_NBYTES_MLOFFYES)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.23/429

Table continues on the next page...

DMA memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4000_906C	TCD Last Source Address Adjustment (DMA_TCD3_SLAST)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.24/430
4000_9070	TCD Destination Address (DMA_TCD3_DADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.25/431
4000_9074	TCD Signed Destination Address Offset (DMA_TCD3_DOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.26/431
4000_9076	TCD Current Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD3_CITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.27/432
4000_9076	DMA_TCD3_CITER_ELINKNO	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.28/433
4000_9078	TCD Last Destination Address Adjustment/Scatter Gather Address (DMA_TCD3_DLASTSGA)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.29/434
4000_907C	TCD Control and Status (DMA_TCD3_CSR)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.30/435
4000_907E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD3_BITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.31/437
4000_907E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Disabled) (DMA_TCD3_BITER_ELINKNO)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.32/438
4000_9080	TCD Source Address (DMA_TCD4_SADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.18/425
4000_9084	TCD Signed Source Address Offset (DMA_TCD4_SOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.19/425
4000_9086	TCD Transfer Attributes (DMA_TCD4_ATTR)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.20/426
4000_9088	TCD Minor Byte Count (Minor Loop Mapping Disabled) (DMA_TCD4_NBYTES_MLNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.21/427
4000_9088	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping Enabled and Offset Disabled) (DMA_TCD4_NBYTES_MLOFFNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.22/428
4000_9088	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping and Offset Enabled) (DMA_TCD4_NBYTES_MLOFFYES)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.23/429
4000_908C	TCD Last Source Address Adjustment (DMA_TCD4_SLAST)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.24/430
4000_9090	TCD Destination Address (DMA_TCD4_DADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.25/431
4000_9094	TCD Signed Destination Address Offset (DMA_TCD4_DOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.26/431
4000_9096	TCD Current Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD4_CITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.27/432
4000_9096	DMA_TCD4_CITER_ELINKNO	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.28/433
4000_9098	TCD Last Destination Address Adjustment/Scatter Gather Address (DMA_TCD4_DLASTSGA)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.29/434
4000_909C	TCD Control and Status (DMA_TCD4_CSR)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.30/435
4000_909E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD4_BITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.31/437
4000_909E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Disabled) (DMA_TCD4_BITER_ELINKNO)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.32/438
4000_90A0	TCD Source Address (DMA_TCD5_SADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.18/425

Table continues on the next page...

DMA memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4000_90A4	TCD Signed Source Address Offset (DMA_TCD5_SOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.19/425
4000_90A6	TCD Transfer Attributes (DMA_TCD5_ATTR)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.20/426
4000_90A8	TCD Minor Byte Count (Minor Loop Mapping Disabled) (DMA_TCD5_NBYTES_MLNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.21/427
4000_90A8	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping Enabled and Offset Disabled) (DMA_TCD5_NBYTES_MLOFFNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.22/428
4000_90A8	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping and Offset Enabled) (DMA_TCD5_NBYTES_MLOFFYES)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.23/429
4000_90AC	TCD Last Source Address Adjustment (DMA_TCD5_SLAST)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.24/430
4000_90B0	TCD Destination Address (DMA_TCD5_DADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.25/431
4000_90B4	TCD Signed Destination Address Offset (DMA_TCD5_DOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.26/431
4000_90B6	TCD Current Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD5_CITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.27/432
4000_90B6	DMA_TCD5_CITER_ELINKNO	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.28/433
4000_90B8	TCD Last Destination Address Adjustment/Scatter Gather Address (DMA_TCD5_DLASTSGA)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.29/434
4000_90BC	TCD Control and Status (DMA_TCD5_CSR)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.30/435
4000_90BE	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD5_BITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.31/437
4000_90BE	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Disabled) (DMA_TCD5_BITER_ELINKNO)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.32/438
4000_90C0	TCD Source Address (DMA_TCD6_SADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.18/425
4000_90C4	TCD Signed Source Address Offset (DMA_TCD6_SOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.19/425
4000_90C6	TCD Transfer Attributes (DMA_TCD6_ATTR)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.20/426
4000_90C8	TCD Minor Byte Count (Minor Loop Mapping Disabled) (DMA_TCD6_NBYTES_MLNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.21/427
4000_90C8	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping Enabled and Offset Disabled) (DMA_TCD6_NBYTES_MLOFFNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.22/428
4000_90C8	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping and Offset Enabled) (DMA_TCD6_NBYTES_MLOFFYES)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.23/429
4000_90CC	TCD Last Source Address Adjustment (DMA_TCD6_SLAST)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.24/430
4000_90D0	TCD Destination Address (DMA_TCD6_DADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.25/431
4000_90D4	TCD Signed Destination Address Offset (DMA_TCD6_DOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.26/431
4000_90D6	TCD Current Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD6_CITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.27/432
4000_90D6	DMA_TCD6_CITER_ELINKNO	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.28/433

Table continues on the next page...

DMA memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4000_90D8	TCD Last Destination Address Adjustment/Scatter Gather Address (DMA_TCD6_DLASTSGA)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.29/434
4000_90DC	TCD Control and Status (DMA_TCD6_CSR)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.30/435
4000_90DE	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD6_BITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.31/437
4000_90DE	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Disabled) (DMA_TCD6_BITER_ELINKNO)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.32/438
4000_90E0	TCD Source Address (DMA_TCD7_SADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.18/425
4000_90E4	TCD Signed Source Address Offset (DMA_TCD7_SOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.19/425
4000_90E6	TCD Transfer Attributes (DMA_TCD7_ATTR)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.20/426
4000_90E8	TCD Minor Byte Count (Minor Loop Mapping Disabled) (DMA_TCD7_NBYTES_MLNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.21/427
4000_90E8	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping Enabled and Offset Disabled) (DMA_TCD7_NBYTES_MLOFFNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.22/428
4000_90E8	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping and Offset Enabled) (DMA_TCD7_NBYTES_MLOFFYES)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.23/429
4000_90EC	TCD Last Source Address Adjustment (DMA_TCD7_SLAST)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.24/430
4000_90F0	TCD Destination Address (DMA_TCD7_DADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.25/431
4000_90F4	TCD Signed Destination Address Offset (DMA_TCD7_DOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.26/431
4000_90F6	TCD Current Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD7_CITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.27/432
4000_90F6	DMA_TCD7_CITER_ELINKNO	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.28/433
4000_90F8	TCD Last Destination Address Adjustment/Scatter Gather Address (DMA_TCD7_DLASTSGA)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.29/434
4000_90FC	TCD Control and Status (DMA_TCD7_CSR)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.30/435
4000_90FE	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD7_BITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.31/437
4000_90FE	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Disabled) (DMA_TCD7_BITER_ELINKNO)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.32/438
4000_9100	TCD Source Address (DMA_TCD8_SADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.18/425
4000_9104	TCD Signed Source Address Offset (DMA_TCD8_SOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.19/425
4000_9106	TCD Transfer Attributes (DMA_TCD8_ATTR)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.20/426
4000_9108	TCD Minor Byte Count (Minor Loop Mapping Disabled) (DMA_TCD8_NBYTES_MLNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.21/427
4000_9108	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping Enabled and Offset Disabled) (DMA_TCD8_NBYTES_MLOFFNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.22/428

Table continues on the next page...

DMA memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4000_9108	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping and Offset Enabled) (DMA_TCD8_NBYTES_MLOFFYES)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.23/429
4000_910C	TCD Last Source Address Adjustment (DMA_TCD8_SLAST)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.24/430
4000_9110	TCD Destination Address (DMA_TCD8_DADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.25/431
4000_9114	TCD Signed Destination Address Offset (DMA_TCD8_DOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.26/431
4000_9116	TCD Current Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD8_CITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.27/432
4000_9116	DMA_TCD8_CITER_ELINKNO	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.28/433
4000_9118	TCD Last Destination Address Adjustment/Scatter Gather Address (DMA_TCD8_DLASTSGA)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.29/434
4000_911C	TCD Control and Status (DMA_TCD8_CSR)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.30/435
4000_911E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD8_BITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.31/437
4000_911E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Disabled) (DMA_TCD8_BITER_ELINKNO)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.32/438
4000_9120	TCD Source Address (DMA_TCD9_SADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.18/425
4000_9124	TCD Signed Source Address Offset (DMA_TCD9_SOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.19/425
4000_9126	TCD Transfer Attributes (DMA_TCD9_ATTR)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.20/426
4000_9128	TCD Minor Byte Count (Minor Loop Mapping Disabled) (DMA_TCD9_NBYTES_MLNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.21/427
4000_9128	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping Enabled and Offset Disabled) (DMA_TCD9_NBYTES_MLOFFNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.22/428
4000_9128	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping and Offset Enabled) (DMA_TCD9_NBYTES_MLOFFYES)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.23/429
4000_912C	TCD Last Source Address Adjustment (DMA_TCD9_SLAST)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.24/430
4000_9130	TCD Destination Address (DMA_TCD9_DADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.25/431
4000_9134	TCD Signed Destination Address Offset (DMA_TCD9_DOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.26/431
4000_9136	TCD Current Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD9_CITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.27/432
4000_9136	DMA_TCD9_CITER_ELINKNO	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.28/433
4000_9138	TCD Last Destination Address Adjustment/Scatter Gather Address (DMA_TCD9_DLASTSGA)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.29/434
4000_913C	TCD Control and Status (DMA_TCD9_CSR)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.30/435
4000_913E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD9_BITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.31/437

Table continues on the next page...

DMA memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4000_913E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Disabled) (DMA_TCD9_BITER_ELINKNO)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.32/438
4000_9140	TCD Source Address (DMA_TCD10_SADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.18/425
4000_9144	TCD Signed Source Address Offset (DMA_TCD10_SOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.19/425
4000_9146	TCD Transfer Attributes (DMA_TCD10_ATTR)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.20/426
4000_9148	TCD Minor Byte Count (Minor Loop Mapping Disabled) (DMA_TCD10_NBYTES_MLNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.21/427
4000_9148	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping Enabled and Offset Disabled) (DMA_TCD10_NBYTES_MLOFFNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.22/428
4000_9148	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping and Offset Enabled) (DMA_TCD10_NBYTES_MLOFFYES)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.23/429
4000_914C	TCD Last Source Address Adjustment (DMA_TCD10_SLAST)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.24/430
4000_9150	TCD Destination Address (DMA_TCD10_DADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.25/431
4000_9154	TCD Signed Destination Address Offset (DMA_TCD10_DOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.26/431
4000_9156	TCD Current Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD10_CITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.27/432
4000_9156	DMA_TCD10_CITER_ELINKNO	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.28/433
4000_9158	TCD Last Destination Address Adjustment/Scatter Gather Address (DMA_TCD10_DLASTSGA)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.29/434
4000_915C	TCD Control and Status (DMA_TCD10_CSR)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.30/435
4000_915E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD10_BITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.31/437
4000_915E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Disabled) (DMA_TCD10_BITER_ELINKNO)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.32/438
4000_9160	TCD Source Address (DMA_TCD11_SADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.18/425
4000_9164	TCD Signed Source Address Offset (DMA_TCD11_SOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.19/425
4000_9166	TCD Transfer Attributes (DMA_TCD11_ATTR)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.20/426
4000_9168	TCD Minor Byte Count (Minor Loop Mapping Disabled) (DMA_TCD11_NBYTES_MLNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.21/427
4000_9168	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping Enabled and Offset Disabled) (DMA_TCD11_NBYTES_MLOFFNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.22/428
4000_9168	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping and Offset Enabled) (DMA_TCD11_NBYTES_MLOFFYES)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.23/429
4000_916C	TCD Last Source Address Adjustment (DMA_TCD11_SLAST)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.24/430
4000_9170	TCD Destination Address (DMA_TCD11_DADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.25/431

Table continues on the next page...

DMA memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4000_9174	TCD Signed Destination Address Offset (DMA_TCD11_DOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.26/431
4000_9176	TCD Current Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD11_CITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.27/432
4000_9176	DMA_TCD11_CITER_ELINKNO	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.28/433
4000_9178	TCD Last Destination Address Adjustment/Scatter Gather Address (DMA_TCD11_DLASTSGA)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.29/434
4000_917C	TCD Control and Status (DMA_TCD11_CSR)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.30/435
4000_917E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD11_BITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.31/437
4000_917E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Disabled) (DMA_TCD11_BITER_ELINKNO)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.32/438
4000_9180	TCD Source Address (DMA_TCD12_SADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.18/425
4000_9184	TCD Signed Source Address Offset (DMA_TCD12_SOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.19/425
4000_9186	TCD Transfer Attributes (DMA_TCD12_ATTR)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.20/426
4000_9188	TCD Minor Byte Count (Minor Loop Mapping Disabled) (DMA_TCD12_NBYTES_MLNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.21/427
4000_9188	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping Enabled and Offset Disabled) (DMA_TCD12_NBYTES_MLOFFNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.22/428
4000_9188	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping and Offset Enabled) (DMA_TCD12_NBYTES_MLOFFYES)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.23/429
4000_918C	TCD Last Source Address Adjustment (DMA_TCD12_SLAST)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.24/430
4000_9190	TCD Destination Address (DMA_TCD12_DADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.25/431
4000_9194	TCD Signed Destination Address Offset (DMA_TCD12_DOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.26/431
4000_9196	TCD Current Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD12_CITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.27/432
4000_9196	DMA_TCD12_CITER_ELINKNO	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.28/433
4000_9198	TCD Last Destination Address Adjustment/Scatter Gather Address (DMA_TCD12_DLASTSGA)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.29/434
4000_919C	TCD Control and Status (DMA_TCD12_CSR)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.30/435
4000_919E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD12_BITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.31/437
4000_919E	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Disabled) (DMA_TCD12_BITER_ELINKNO)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.32/438
4000_91A0	TCD Source Address (DMA_TCD13_SADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.18/425
4000_91A4	TCD Signed Source Address Offset (DMA_TCD13_SOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.19/425

Table continues on the next page...

DMA memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4000_91A6	TCD Transfer Attributes (DMA_TCD13_ATTR)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.20/426
4000_91A8	TCD Minor Byte Count (Minor Loop Mapping Disabled) (DMA_TCD13_NBYTES_MLNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.21/427
4000_91A8	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping Enabled and Offset Disabled) (DMA_TCD13_NBYTES_MLOFFNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.22/428
4000_91A8	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping and Offset Enabled) (DMA_TCD13_NBYTES_MLOFFYES)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.23/429
4000_91AC	TCD Last Source Address Adjustment (DMA_TCD13_SLAST)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.24/430
4000_91B0	TCD Destination Address (DMA_TCD13_DADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.25/431
4000_91B4	TCD Signed Destination Address Offset (DMA_TCD13_DOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.26/431
4000_91B6	TCD Current Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD13_CITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.27/432
4000_91B6	DMA_TCD13_CITER_ELINKNO	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.28/433
4000_91B8	TCD Last Destination Address Adjustment/Scatter Gather Address (DMA_TCD13_DLASTSGA)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.29/434
4000_91BC	TCD Control and Status (DMA_TCD13_CSR)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.30/435
4000_91BE	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD13_BITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.31/437
4000_91BE	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Disabled) (DMA_TCD13_BITER_ELINKNO)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.32/438
4000_91C0	TCD Source Address (DMA_TCD14_SADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.18/425
4000_91C4	TCD Signed Source Address Offset (DMA_TCD14_SOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.19/425
4000_91C6	TCD Transfer Attributes (DMA_TCD14_ATTR)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.20/426
4000_91C8	TCD Minor Byte Count (Minor Loop Mapping Disabled) (DMA_TCD14_NBYTES_MLNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.21/427
4000_91C8	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping Enabled and Offset Disabled) (DMA_TCD14_NBYTES_MLOFFNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.22/428
4000_91C8	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping and Offset Enabled) (DMA_TCD14_NBYTES_MLOFFYES)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.23/429
4000_91CC	TCD Last Source Address Adjustment (DMA_TCD14_SLAST)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.24/430
4000_91D0	TCD Destination Address (DMA_TCD14_DADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.25/431
4000_91D4	TCD Signed Destination Address Offset (DMA_TCD14_DOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.26/431
4000_91D6	TCD Current Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD14_CITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.27/432
4000_91D6	DMA_TCD14_CITER_ELINKNO	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.28/433

Table continues on the next page...

DMA memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4000_91D8	TCD Last Destination Address Adjustment/Scatter Gather Address (DMA_TCD14_DLASTSGA)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.29/434
4000_91DC	TCD Control and Status (DMA_TCD14_CSR)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.30/435
4000_91DE	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD14_BITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.31/437
4000_91DE	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Disabled) (DMA_TCD14_BITER_ELINKNO)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.32/438
4000_91E0	TCD Source Address (DMA_TCD15_SADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.18/425
4000_91E4	TCD Signed Source Address Offset (DMA_TCD15_SOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.19/425
4000_91E6	TCD Transfer Attributes (DMA_TCD15_ATTR)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.20/426
4000_91E8	TCD Minor Byte Count (Minor Loop Mapping Disabled) (DMA_TCD15_NBYTES_MLNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.21/427
4000_91E8	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping Enabled and Offset Disabled) (DMA_TCD15_NBYTES_MLOFFNO)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.22/428
4000_91E8	TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping and Offset Enabled) (DMA_TCD15_NBYTES_MLOFFYES)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.23/429
4000_91EC	TCD Last Source Address Adjustment (DMA_TCD15_SLAST)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.24/430
4000_91F0	TCD Destination Address (DMA_TCD15_DADDR)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.25/431
4000_91F4	TCD Signed Destination Address Offset (DMA_TCD15_DOFF)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.26/431
4000_91F6	TCD Current Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD15_CITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.27/432
4000_91F6	DMA_TCD15_CITER_ELINKNO	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.28/433
4000_91F8	TCD Last Destination Address Adjustment/Scatter Gather Address (DMA_TCD15_DLASTSGA)	32	R/W	Undefined	23.3.29/434
4000_91FC	TCD Control and Status (DMA_TCD15_CSR)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.30/435
4000_91FE	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD15_BITER_ELINKYES)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.31/437
4000_91FE	TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Disabled) (DMA_TCD15_BITER_ELINKNO)	16	R/W	Undefined	23.3.32/438

23.3.1 Control Register (DMA_CR)

The CR defines the basic operating configuration of the DMA.

Arbitration can be configured to use either a fixed-priority or a round-robin scheme. For fixed-priority arbitration, the highest priority channel requesting service is selected to execute. The channel priority registers assign the priorities; see the DCHPRIn registers. For round-robin arbitration, the channel priorities are ignored and channels are cycled through (from high to low channel number) without regard to priority.

NOTE

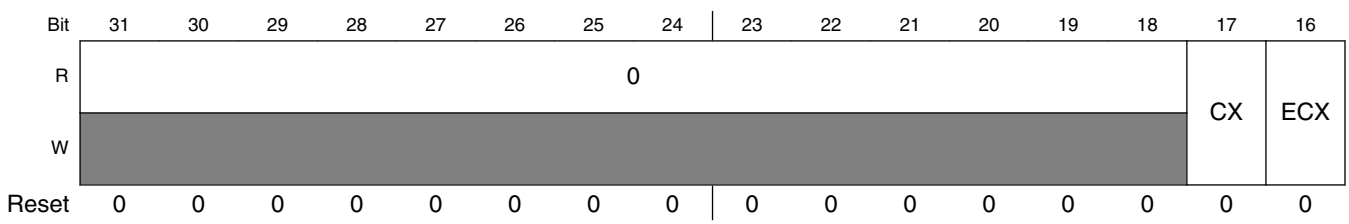
For correct operation, writes to the CR register must be performed only when the DMA channels are inactive; that is, when TCDn_CSR[ACTIVE] bits are cleared.

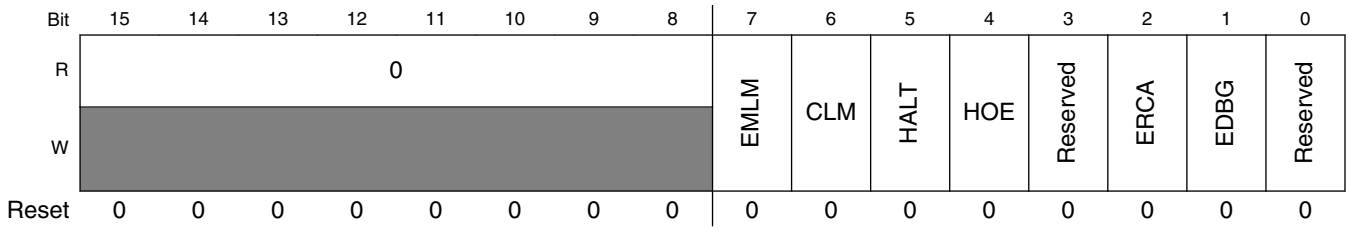
Minor loop offsets are address offset values added to the final source address (TCDn_SADDR) or destination address (TCDn_DADDR) upon minor loop completion. When minor loop offsets are enabled, the minor loop offset (MLOFF) is added to the final source address (TCDn_SADDR), to the final destination address (TCDn_DADDR), or to both prior to the addresses being written back into the TCD. If the major loop is complete, the minor loop offset is ignored and the major loop address offsets (TCDn_SLAST and TCDn_DLAST_SGA) are used to compute the next TCDn_SADDR and TCDn_DADDR values.

When minor loop mapping is enabled (EMLM is 1), TCDn word2 is redefined. A portion of TCDn word2 is used to specify multiple fields: a source enable bit (SMLOE) to specify the minor loop offset should be applied to the source address (TCDn_SADDR) upon minor loop completion, a destination enable bit (DMLOE) to specify the minor loop offset should be applied to the destination address (TCDn_DADDR) upon minor loop completion, and the sign extended minor loop offset value (MLOFF). The same offset value (MLOFF) is used for both source and destination minor loop offsets. When either minor loop offset is enabled (SMLOE set or DMLOE set), the NBYTES field is reduced to 10 bits. When both minor loop offsets are disabled (SMLOE cleared and DMLOE cleared), the NBYTES field is a 30-bit vector.

When minor loop mapping is disabled (EMLM is 0), all 32 bits of TCDn word2 are assigned to the NBYTES field.

Address: 4000_8000h base + 0h offset = 4000_8000h





DMA_CR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–18 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
17 CX	Cancel Transfer 0 Normal operation 1 Cancel the remaining data transfer. Stop the executing channel and force the minor loop to finish. The cancel takes effect after the last write of the current read/write sequence. The CX bit clears itself after the cancel has been honored. This cancel retires the channel normally as if the minor loop was completed.
16 ECX	Error Cancel Transfer 0 Normal operation 1 Cancel the remaining data transfer in the same fashion as the CX bit. Stop the executing channel and force the minor loop to finish. The cancel takes effect after the last write of the current read/write sequence. The ECX bit clears itself after the cancel is honored. In addition to cancelling the transfer, ECX treats the cancel as an error condition, thus updating the Error Status register (DMAx_ES) and generating an optional error interrupt.
15–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
7 EMLM	Enable Minor Loop Mapping 0 Disabled. TCDn.word2 is defined as a 32-bit NBYTES field. 1 Enabled. TCDn.word2 is redefined to include individual enable fields, an offset field, and the NBYTES field. The individual enable fields allow the minor loop offset to be applied to the source address, the destination address, or both. The NBYTES field is reduced when either offset is enabled.
6 CLM	Continuous Link Mode **NOTE:** Do not use continuous link mode with a channel linking to itself if there is only one minor loop iteration per service request, e.g., if the channel's NBYTES value is the same as either the source or destination size. The same data transfer profile can be achieved by simply increasing the NBYTES value, which provides more efficient, faster processing. 0 A minor loop channel link made to itself goes through channel arbitration before being activated again. 1 A minor loop channel link made to itself does not go through channel arbitration before being activated again. Upon minor loop completion, the channel activates again if that channel has a minor loop channel link enabled and the link channel is itself. This effectively applies the minor loop offsets and restarts the next minor loop.
5 HALT	Halt DMA Operations 0 Normal operation 1 Stall the start of any new channels. Executing channels are allowed to complete. Channel execution resumes when this bit is cleared.

Table continues on the next page...

DMA_CR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
4 HOE	Halt On Error 0 Normal operation 1 Any error causes the HALT bit to set. Subsequently, all service requests are ignored until the HALT bit is cleared.
3 Reserved	This field is reserved. Reserved
2 ERCA	Enable Round Robin Channel Arbitration 0 Fixed priority arbitration is used for channel selection . 1 Round robin arbitration is used for channel selection .
1 EDBG	Enable Debug 0 When in debug mode, the DMA continues to operate. 1 When in debug mode, the DMA stalls the start of a new channel. Executing channels are allowed to complete. Channel execution resumes when the system exits debug mode or the EDBG bit is cleared.
0 Reserved	This field is reserved. Reserved

23.3.2 Error Status Register (DMA_ES)

The ES provides information concerning the last recorded channel error. Channel errors can be caused by:

- A configuration error, that is:
  - An illegal setting in the transfer-control descriptor, or
  - An illegal priority register setting in fixed-arbitration
- An error termination to a bus master read or write cycle
- A cancel transfer with error bit that will be set when a transfer is canceled via the corresponding cancel transfer control bit

See the Error Reporting and Handling section for more details.

Address: 4000_8000h base + 4h offset = 4000_8004h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	VLD	0														ECX
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0	CPE	0		ERRCHN				SAE	SOE	DAE	DOE	NCE	SGE	SBE	DBE
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

DMA_ES field descriptions

Field	Description
31 VLD	Logical OR of all ERR status bits 0 No ERR bits are set. 1 At least one ERR bit is set indicating a valid error exists that has not been cleared.
30–17 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
16 ECX	Transfer Canceled 0 No canceled transfers 1 The last recorded entry was a canceled transfer by the error cancel transfer input
15 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
14 CPE	Channel Priority Error 0 No channel priority error 1 The last recorded error was a configuration error in the channel priorities . Channel priorities are not unique.
13–12 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
11–8 ERRCHN	Error Channel Number or Canceled Channel Number The channel number of the last recorded error, excluding CPE errors, or last recorded error canceled transfer.
7 SAE	Source Address Error 0 No source address configuration error. 1 The last recorded error was a configuration error detected in the TCDn_SADDR field. TCDn_SADDR is inconsistent with TCDn_ATTR[SSIZE].
6 SOE	Source Offset Error 0 No source offset configuration error 1 The last recorded error was a configuration error detected in the TCDn_SOFF field. TCDn_SOFF is inconsistent with TCDn_ATTR[SSIZE].
5 DAE	Destination Address Error 0 No destination address configuration error 1 The last recorded error was a configuration error detected in the TCDn_DADDR field. TCDn_DADDR is inconsistent with TCDn_ATTR[DSIZE].
4 DOE	Destination Offset Error 0 No destination offset configuration error 1 The last recorded error was a configuration error detected in the TCDn_DOFF field. TCDn_DOFF is inconsistent with TCDn_ATTR[DSIZE].
3 NCE	NBYTES/CITER Configuration Error 0 No NBYTES/CITER configuration error 1 The last recorded error was a configuration error detected in the TCDn_NBYTES or TCDn_CITER fields. • TCDn_NBYTES is not a multiple of TCDn_ATTR[SSIZE] and TCDn_ATTR[DSIZE], or

Table continues on the next page...

DMA_ES field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	• TCDn_CITER[CITER] is equal to zero, or • TCDn_CITER[ELINK] is not equal to TCDn_BITER[ELINK]
2 SGE	Scatter/Gather Configuration Error 0 No scatter/gather configuration error 1 The last recorded error was a configuration error detected in the TCDn_DLASTSGA field. This field is checked at the beginning of a scatter/gather operation after major loop completion if TCDn_CSR[ESG] is enabled. TCDn_DLASTSGA is not on a 32 byte boundary.
1 SBE	Source Bus Error 0 No source bus error 1 The last recorded error was a bus error on a source read
0 DBE	Destination Bus Error 0 No destination bus error 1 The last recorded error was a bus error on a destination write

23.3.3 Enable Request Register (DMA_ERQ)

The ERQ register provides a bit map for the 16 channels to enable the request signal for each channel. The state of any given channel enable is directly affected by writes to this register; it is also affected by writes to the SERQ and CERQ registers. These registers are provided so the request enable for a single channel can easily be modified without needing to perform a read-modify-write sequence to the ERQ.

DMA request input signals and this enable request flag must be asserted before a channel's hardware service request is accepted. The state of the DMA enable request flag does not affect a channel service request made explicitly through software or a linked channel request.

Address: 4000_8000h base + Ch offset = 4000_800Ch

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R W	ERQ15	ERQ14	ERQ13	ERQ12	ERQ11	ERQ10	ERQ9	ERQ8	ERQ7	ERQ6	ERQ5	ERQ4	ERQ3	ERQ2	ERQ1	ERQ0
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

DMA_ERQ field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
15 ERQ15	Enable DMA Request 15 0 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is disabled 1 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is enabled
14 ERQ14	Enable DMA Request 14 0 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is disabled 1 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is enabled
13 ERQ13	Enable DMA Request 13 0 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is disabled 1 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is enabled
12 ERQ12	Enable DMA Request 12 0 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is disabled 1 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is enabled
11 ERQ11	Enable DMA Request 11 0 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is disabled 1 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is enabled
10 ERQ10	Enable DMA Request 10 0 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is disabled 1 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is enabled
9 ERQ9	Enable DMA Request 9 0 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is disabled 1 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is enabled
8 ERQ8	Enable DMA Request 8 0 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is disabled 1 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is enabled
7 ERQ7	Enable DMA Request 7 0 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is disabled 1 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is enabled
6 ERQ6	Enable DMA Request 6 0 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is disabled 1 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is enabled
5 ERQ5	Enable DMA Request 5 0 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is disabled 1 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is enabled
4 ERQ4	Enable DMA Request 4

Table continues on the next page...

DMA_ERQ field descriptions (continued)

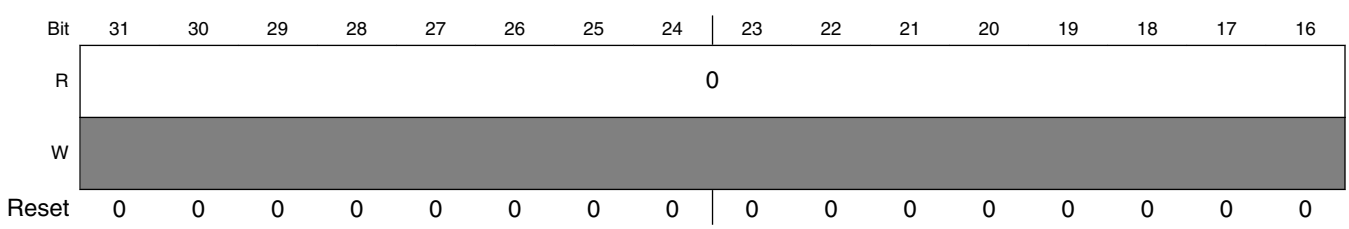
Field	Description
	0 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is disabled 1 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is enabled
3 ERQ3	Enable DMA Request 3 0 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is disabled 1 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is enabled
2 ERQ2	Enable DMA Request 2 0 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is disabled 1 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is enabled
1 ERQ1	Enable DMA Request 1 0 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is disabled 1 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is enabled
0 ERQ0	Enable DMA Request 0 0 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is disabled 1 The DMA request signal for the corresponding channel is enabled

23.3.4 Enable Error Interrupt Register (DMA_EEI)

The EEI register provides a bit map for the 16 channels to enable the error interrupt signal for each channel. The state of any given channel's error interrupt enable is directly affected by writes to this register; it is also affected by writes to the SEEI and CEEI. These registers are provided so that the error interrupt enable for a single channel can easily be modified without the need to perform a read-modify-write sequence to the EEI register.

The DMA error indicator and the error interrupt enable flag must be asserted before an error interrupt request for a given channel is asserted to the interrupt controller.

Address: 4000_8000h base + 14h offset = 4000_8014h



Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R W	EEI15	EEI14	EEI13	EEI12	EEI11	EEI10	EEI9	EEI8	EEI7	EEI6	EEI5	EEI4	EEI3	EEI2	EEI1	EEI0
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

DMA_EEI field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
15 EEI15	Enable Error Interrupt 15 0 The error signal for corresponding channel does not generate an error interrupt 1 The assertion of the error signal for corresponding channel generates an error interrupt request
14 EEI14	Enable Error Interrupt 14 0 The error signal for corresponding channel does not generate an error interrupt 1 The assertion of the error signal for corresponding channel generates an error interrupt request
13 EEI13	Enable Error Interrupt 13 0 The error signal for corresponding channel does not generate an error interrupt 1 The assertion of the error signal for corresponding channel generates an error interrupt request
12 EEI12	Enable Error Interrupt 12 0 The error signal for corresponding channel does not generate an error interrupt 1 The assertion of the error signal for corresponding channel generates an error interrupt request
11 EEI11	Enable Error Interrupt 11 0 The error signal for corresponding channel does not generate an error interrupt 1 The assertion of the error signal for corresponding channel generates an error interrupt request
10 EEI10	Enable Error Interrupt 10 0 The error signal for corresponding channel does not generate an error interrupt 1 The assertion of the error signal for corresponding channel generates an error interrupt request
9 EEI9	Enable Error Interrupt 9 0 The error signal for corresponding channel does not generate an error interrupt 1 The assertion of the error signal for corresponding channel generates an error interrupt request
8 EEI8	Enable Error Interrupt 8 0 The error signal for corresponding channel does not generate an error interrupt 1 The assertion of the error signal for corresponding channel generates an error interrupt request
7 EEI7	Enable Error Interrupt 7 0 The error signal for corresponding channel does not generate an error interrupt 1 The assertion of the error signal for corresponding channel generates an error interrupt request
6 EEI6	Enable Error Interrupt 6

Table continues on the next page...

DMA_EEI field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 The error signal for corresponding channel does not generate an error interrupt 1 The assertion of the error signal for corresponding channel generates an error interrupt request
5 EEI5	Enable Error Interrupt 5 0 The error signal for corresponding channel does not generate an error interrupt 1 The assertion of the error signal for corresponding channel generates an error interrupt request
4 EEI4	Enable Error Interrupt 4 0 The error signal for corresponding channel does not generate an error interrupt 1 The assertion of the error signal for corresponding channel generates an error interrupt request
3 EEI3	Enable Error Interrupt 3 0 The error signal for corresponding channel does not generate an error interrupt 1 The assertion of the error signal for corresponding channel generates an error interrupt request
2 EEI2	Enable Error Interrupt 2 0 The error signal for corresponding channel does not generate an error interrupt 1 The assertion of the error signal for corresponding channel generates an error interrupt request
1 EEI1	Enable Error Interrupt 1 0 The error signal for corresponding channel does not generate an error interrupt 1 The assertion of the error signal for corresponding channel generates an error interrupt request
0 EEI0	Enable Error Interrupt 0 0 The error signal for corresponding channel does not generate an error interrupt 1 The assertion of the error signal for corresponding channel generates an error interrupt request

23.3.5 Clear Enable Error Interrupt Register (DMA_CEEI)

The CEEI provides a simple memory-mapped mechanism to clear a given bit in the EEI to disable the error interrupt for a given channel. The data value on a register write causes the corresponding bit in the EEI to be cleared. Setting the CAEE bit provides a global clear function, forcing the EEI contents to be cleared, disabling all DMA request inputs. If the NOP bit is set, the command is ignored. This allows you to write multiple-byte registers as a 32-bit word. Reads of this register return all zeroes.

Address: 4000_8000h base + 18h offset = 4000_8018h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0	0			0			
Write	NOP	CAEE	0		CEEI			
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

DMA_CEEI field descriptions

Field	Description
7 NOP	No Op enable 0 Normal operation 1 No operation, ignore the other bits in this register
6 CAEE	Clear All Enable Error Interrupts 0 Clear only the EEI bit specified in the CEEI field 1 Clear all bits in EEI
5–4 Reserved	This field is reserved.
CEEI	Clear Enable Error Interrupt Clears the corresponding bit in EEI

23.3.6 Set Enable Error Interrupt Register (DMA_SEEI)

The SEEI provides a simple memory-mapped mechanism to set a given bit in the EEI to enable the error interrupt for a given channel. The data value on a register write causes the corresponding bit in the EEI to be set. Setting the SAEE bit provides a global set function, forcing the entire EEI contents to be set. If the NOP bit is set, the command is ignored. This allows you to write multiple-byte registers as a 32-bit word. Reads of this register return all zeroes.

Address: 4000_8000h base + 19h offset = 4000_8019h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0	0			0			
Write	NOP	SAEE	0		SEEI			
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

DMA_SEEI field descriptions

Field	Description
7 NOP	No Op enable 0 Normal operation 1 No operation, ignore the other bits in this register
6 SAEE	Sets All Enable Error Interrupts 0 Set only the EEI bit specified in the SEEI field. 1 Sets all bits in EEI
5–4 Reserved	This field is reserved.

Table continues on the next page...

DMA_SEEI field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
SEEI	Set Enable Error Interrupt Sets the corresponding bit in EEI

23.3.7 Clear Enable Request Register (DMA_CERQ)

The CERQ provides a simple memory-mapped mechanism to clear a given bit in the ERQ to disable the DMA request for a given channel. The data value on a register write causes the corresponding bit in the ERQ to be cleared. Setting the CAER bit provides a global clear function, forcing the entire contents of the ERQ to be cleared, disabling all DMA request inputs. If NOP is set, the command is ignored. This allows you to write multiple-byte registers as a 32-bit word. Reads of this register return all zeroes.

Address: 4000_8000h base + 1Ah offset = 4000_801Ah

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0	0			0			
Write	NOP	CAER	0		CERQ			
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

DMA_CERQ field descriptions

Field	Description
7 NOP	No Op enable 0 Normal operation 1 No operation, ignore the other bits in this register
6 CAER	Clear All Enable Requests 0 Clear only the ERQ bit specified in the CERQ field 1 Clear all bits in ERQ
5–4 Reserved	This field is reserved.
CERQ	Clear Enable Request Clears the corresponding bit in ERQ.

23.3.8 Set Enable Request Register (DMA_SERQ)

The SERQ provides a simple memory-mapped mechanism to set a given bit in the ERQ to enable the DMA request for a given channel. The data value on a register write causes the corresponding bit in the ERQ to be set. Setting the SAER bit provides a global set function, forcing the entire contents of ERQ to be set. If the NOP bit is set, the command is ignored. This allows you to write multiple-byte registers as a 32-bit word. Reads of this register return all zeroes.

Address: 4000_8000h base + 1Bh offset = 4000_801Bh

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0	0			0			
Write	NOP	SAER	0		SERQ			
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

DMA_SERQ field descriptions

Field	Description
7 NOP	No Op enable 0 Normal operation 1 No operation, ignore the other bits in this register
6 SAER	Set All Enable Requests 0 Set only the ERQ bit specified in the SERQ field 1 Set all bits in ERQ
5–4 Reserved	This field is reserved.
SERQ	Set Enable Request Sets the corresponding bit in ERQ.

23.3.9 Clear DONE Status Bit Register (DMA_CDNE)

The CDNE provides a simple memory-mapped mechanism to clear the DONE bit in the TCD of the given channel. The data value on a register write causes the DONE bit in the corresponding transfer control descriptor to be cleared. Setting the CADN bit provides a global clear function, forcing all DONE bits to be cleared. If the NOP bit is set, the command is ignored. This allows you to write multiple-byte registers as a 32-bit word. Reads of this register return all zeroes.

Address: 4000_8000h base + 1Ch offset = 4000_801Ch

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0	0	0					
Write	NOP	CADN	0		CDNE			
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

DMA_CDNE field descriptions

Field	Description
7 NOP	No Op enable 0 Normal operation 1 No operation, ignore the other bits in this register
6 CADN	Clears All DONE Bits 0 Clears only the TCDn_CSR[DONE] bit specified in the CDNE field 1 Clears all bits in TCDn_CSR[DONE]
5–4 Reserved	This field is reserved.
CDNE	Clear DONE Bit Clears the corresponding bit in TCDn_CSR[DONE]

23.3.10 Set START Bit Register (DMA_SSRT)

The SSRT provides a simple memory-mapped mechanism to set the START bit in the TCD of the given channel. The data value on a register write causes the START bit in the corresponding transfer control descriptor to be set. Setting the SAST bit provides a global set function, forcing all START bits to be set. If the NOP bit is set, the command is ignored. This allows you to write multiple-byte registers as a 32-bit word. Reads of this register return all zeroes.

Address: 4000_8000h base + 1Dh offset = 4000_801Dh

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0	0	0					
Write	NOP	SAST	0		SSRT			
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

DMA_SSRT field descriptions

Field	Description
7 NOP	No Op enable 0 Normal operation 1 No operation, ignore the other bits in this register
6 SAST	Set All START Bits (activates all channels) 0 Set only the TCDn_CSR[START] bit specified in the SSRT field 1 Set all bits in TCDn_CSR[START]
5–4 Reserved	This field is reserved.
SSRT	Set START Bit Sets the corresponding bit in TCDn_CSR[START]

23.3.11 Clear Error Register (DMA_CERR)

The CERR provides a simple memory-mapped mechanism to clear a given bit in the ERR to disable the error condition flag for a given channel. The given value on a register write causes the corresponding bit in the ERR to be cleared. Setting the CAEI bit provides a global clear function, forcing the ERR contents to be cleared, clearing all channel error indicators. If the NOP bit is set, the command is ignored. This allows you to write multiple-byte registers as a 32-bit word. Reads of this register return all zeroes.

Address: 4000_8000h base + 1Eh offset = 4000_801Eh

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0	0			0			
Write	NOP	CAEI	0		CERR			
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

DMA_CERR field descriptions

Field	Description
7 NOP	No Op enable 0 Normal operation 1 No operation, ignore the other bits in this register
6 CAEI	Clear All Error Indicators 0 Clear only the ERR bit specified in the CERR field 1 Clear all bits in ERR
5–4 Reserved	This field is reserved.
CERR	Clear Error Indicator Clears the corresponding bit in ERR

23.3.12 Clear Interrupt Request Register (DMA_CINT)

The CINT provides a simple, memory-mapped mechanism to clear a given bit in the INT to disable the interrupt request for a given channel. The given value on a register write causes the corresponding bit in the INT to be cleared. Setting the CAIR bit provides a global clear function, forcing the entire contents of the INT to be cleared, disabling all DMA interrupt requests. If the NOP bit is set, the command is ignored. This allows you to write multiple-byte registers as a 32-bit word. Reads of this register return all zeroes.

Address: 4000_8000h base + 1Fh offset = 4000_801Fh

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0	0	0					
Write	NOP	CAIR	0		CINT			
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

DMA_CINT field descriptions

Field	Description
7 NOP	No Op enable 0 Normal operation 1 No operation, ignore the other bits in this register
6 CAIR	Clear All Interrupt Requests 0 Clear only the INT bit specified in the CINT field 1 Clear all bits in INT
5–4 Reserved	This field is reserved.
CINT	Clear Interrupt Request Clears the corresponding bit in INT

23.3.13 Interrupt Request Register (DMA_INT)

The INT register provides a bit map for the 16 channels signaling the presence of an interrupt request for each channel. Depending on the appropriate bit setting in the transfer-control descriptors, the eDMA engine generates an interrupt on data transfer completion. The outputs of this register are directly routed to the interrupt controller. During the interrupt-service routine associated with any given channel, it is the software's responsibility to clear the appropriate bit, negating the interrupt request. Typically, a write to the CINT register in the interrupt service routine is used for this purpose.

The state of any given channel's interrupt request is directly affected by writes to this register; it is also affected by writes to the CINT register. On writes to INT, a 1 in any bit position clears the corresponding channel's interrupt request. A zero in any bit position has no affect on the corresponding channel's current interrupt status. The CINT register is provided so the interrupt request for a single channel can easily be cleared without the need to perform a read-modify-write sequence to the INT register.

Address: 4000_8000h base + 24h offset = 4000_8024h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	INT15	INT14	INT13	INT12	INT11	INT10	INT9	INT8	INT7	INT6	INT5	INT4	INT3	INT2	INT1	INT0
W	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

DMA_INT field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

Table continues on the next page...

DMA_INT field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
15 INT15	Interrupt Request 15 0 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is cleared 1 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is active
14 INT14	Interrupt Request 14 0 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is cleared 1 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is active
13 INT13	Interrupt Request 13 0 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is cleared 1 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is active
12 INT12	Interrupt Request 12 0 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is cleared 1 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is active
11 INT11	Interrupt Request 11 0 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is cleared 1 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is active
10 INT10	Interrupt Request 10 0 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is cleared 1 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is active
9 INT9	Interrupt Request 9 0 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is cleared 1 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is active
8 INT8	Interrupt Request 8 0 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is cleared 1 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is active
7 INT7	Interrupt Request 7 0 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is cleared 1 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is active
6 INT6	Interrupt Request 6 0 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is cleared 1 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is active
5 INT5	Interrupt Request 5 0 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is cleared 1 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is active
4 INT4	Interrupt Request 4 0 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is cleared 1 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is active

Table continues on the next page...

DMA_INT field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
3 INT3	Interrupt Request 3 0 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is cleared 1 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is active
2 INT2	Interrupt Request 2 0 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is cleared 1 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is active
1 INT1	Interrupt Request 1 0 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is cleared 1 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is active
0 INT0	Interrupt Request 0 0 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is cleared 1 The interrupt request for corresponding channel is active

23.3.14 Error Register (DMA_ERR)

The ERR provides a bit map for the 16 channels, signaling the presence of an error for each channel. The eDMA engine signals the occurrence of an error condition by setting the appropriate bit in this register. The outputs of this register are enabled by the contents of the EEI, and then routed to the interrupt controller. During the execution of the interrupt-service routine associated with any DMA errors, it is software's responsibility to clear the appropriate bit, negating the error-interrupt request. Typically, a write to the CERR in the interrupt-service routine is used for this purpose. The normal DMA channel completion indicators (setting the transfer control descriptor DONE flag and the possible assertion of an interrupt request) are not affected when an error is detected.

The contents of this register can also be polled because a non-zero value indicates the presence of a channel error regardless of the state of the EEI. The state of any given channel's error indicators is affected by writes to this register; it is also affected by writes to the CERR. On writes to the ERR, a one in any bit position clears the corresponding channel's error status. A zero in any bit position has no affect on the corresponding channel's current error status. The CERR is provided so the error indicator for a single channel can easily be cleared.

Address: 4000_8000h base + 2Ch offset = 4000_802Ch

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	ERR15	ERR14	ERR13	ERR12	ERR11	ERR10	ERR9	ERR8	ERR7	ERR6	ERR5	ERR4	ERR3	ERR2	ERR1	ERR0
W	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

DMA_ERR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
15 ERR15	Error In Channel 15 0 An error in this channel has not occurred 1 An error in this channel has occurred
14 ERR14	Error In Channel 14 0 An error in this channel has not occurred 1 An error in this channel has occurred
13 ERR13	Error In Channel 13 0 An error in this channel has not occurred 1 An error in this channel has occurred
12 ERR12	Error In Channel 12 0 An error in this channel has not occurred 1 An error in this channel has occurred
11 ERR11	Error In Channel 11 0 An error in this channel has not occurred 1 An error in this channel has occurred
10 ERR10	Error In Channel 10 0 An error in this channel has not occurred 1 An error in this channel has occurred

Table continues on the next page...

DMA_ERR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
9 ERR9	Error In Channel 9 0 An error in this channel has not occurred 1 An error in this channel has occurred
8 ERR8	Error In Channel 8 0 An error in this channel has not occurred 1 An error in this channel has occurred
7 ERR7	Error In Channel 7 0 An error in this channel has not occurred 1 An error in this channel has occurred
6 ERR6	Error In Channel 6 0 An error in this channel has not occurred 1 An error in this channel has occurred
5 ERR5	Error In Channel 5 0 An error in this channel has not occurred 1 An error in this channel has occurred
4 ERR4	Error In Channel 4 0 An error in this channel has not occurred 1 An error in this channel has occurred
3 ERR3	Error In Channel 3 0 An error in this channel has not occurred 1 An error in this channel has occurred
2 ERR2	Error In Channel 2 0 An error in this channel has not occurred 1 An error in this channel has occurred
1 ERR1	Error In Channel 1 0 An error in this channel has not occurred 1 An error in this channel has occurred
0 ERR0	Error In Channel 0 0 An error in this channel has not occurred 1 An error in this channel has occurred

23.3.15 Hardware Request Status Register (DMA_HRS)

The HRS register provides a bit map for the DMA channels, signaling the presence of a hardware request for each channel. The hardware request status bits reflect the current state of the register and qualified (via the ERQ fields) DMA request signals as seen by the DMA's arbitration logic. This view into the hardware request signals may be used for debug purposes.

NOTE

These bits reflect the state of the request as seen by the arbitration logic. Therefore, this status is affected by the ERQ bits.

Address: 4000_8000h base + 34h offset = 4000_8034h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	HRS15	HRS14	HRS13	HRS12	HRS11	HRS10	HRS9	HRS8	HRS7	HRS6	HRS5	HRS4	HRS3	HRS2	HRS1	HRS0
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

DMA_HRS field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
15 HRS15	Hardware Request Status Channel 15

Table continues on the next page...

DMA_HRS field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	The HRS bit for its respective channel remains asserted for the period when a Hardware Request is Present on the Channel. After the Request is completed and Channel is free, the HRS bit is automatically cleared by hardware. 0 A hardware service request for channel 15 is not present 1 A hardware service request for channel 15 is present
14 HRS14	Hardware Request Status Channel 14 The HRS bit for its respective channel remains asserted for the period when a Hardware Request is Present on the Channel. After the Request is completed and Channel is free, the HRS bit is automatically cleared by hardware. 0 A hardware service request for channel 14 is not present 1 A hardware service request for channel 14 is present
13 HRS13	Hardware Request Status Channel 13 The HRS bit for its respective channel remains asserted for the period when a Hardware Request is Present on the Channel. After the Request is completed and Channel is free, the HRS bit is automatically cleared by hardware. 0 A hardware service request for channel 13 is not present 1 A hardware service request for channel 13 is present
12 HRS12	Hardware Request Status Channel 12 The HRS bit for its respective channel remains asserted for the period when a Hardware Request is Present on the Channel. After the Request is completed and Channel is free, the HRS bit is automatically cleared by hardware. 0 A hardware service request for channel 12 is not present 1 A hardware service request for channel 12 is present
11 HRS11	Hardware Request Status Channel 11 The HRS bit for its respective channel remains asserted for the period when a Hardware Request is Present on the Channel. After the Request is completed and Channel is free, the HRS bit is automatically cleared by hardware. 0 A hardware service request for channel 11 is not present 1 A hardware service request for channel 11 is present
10 HRS10	Hardware Request Status Channel 10 The HRS bit for its respective channel remains asserted for the period when a Hardware Request is Present on the Channel. After the Request is completed and Channel is free, the HRS bit is automatically cleared by hardware. 0 A hardware service request for channel 10 is not present 1 A hardware service request for channel 10 is present
9 HRS9	Hardware Request Status Channel 9 The HRS bit for its respective channel remains asserted for the period when a Hardware Request is Present on the Channel. After the Request is completed and Channel is free, the HRS bit is automatically cleared by hardware.

Table continues on the next page...

DMA_HRS field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 A hardware service request for channel 9 is not present 1 A hardware service request for channel 9 is present
8 HRS8	Hardware Request Status Channel 8 The HRS bit for its respective channel remains asserted for the period when a Hardware Request is Present on the Channel. After the Request is completed and Channel is free, the HRS bit is automatically cleared by hardware. 0 A hardware service request for channel 8 is not present 1 A hardware service request for channel 8 is present
7 HRS7	Hardware Request Status Channel 7 The HRS bit for its respective channel remains asserted for the period when a Hardware Request is Present on the Channel. After the Request is completed and Channel is free, the HRS bit is automatically cleared by hardware. 0 A hardware service request for channel 7 is not present 1 A hardware service request for channel 7 is present
6 HRS6	Hardware Request Status Channel 6 The HRS bit for its respective channel remains asserted for the period when a Hardware Request is Present on the Channel. After the Request is completed and Channel is free, the HRS bit is automatically cleared by hardware. 0 A hardware service request for channel 6 is not present 1 A hardware service request for channel 6 is present
5 HRS5	Hardware Request Status Channel 5 The HRS bit for its respective channel remains asserted for the period when a Hardware Request is Present on the Channel. After the Request is completed and Channel is free, the HRS bit is automatically cleared by hardware. 0 A hardware service request for channel 5 is not present 1 A hardware service request for channel 5 is present
4 HRS4	Hardware Request Status Channel 4 The HRS bit for its respective channel remains asserted for the period when a Hardware Request is Present on the Channel. After the Request is completed and Channel is free, the HRS bit is automatically cleared by hardware. 0 A hardware service request for channel 4 is not present 1 A hardware service request for channel 4 is present
3 HRS3	Hardware Request Status Channel 3 The HRS bit for its respective channel remains asserted for the period when a Hardware Request is Present on the Channel. After the Request is completed and Channel is free, the HRS bit is automatically cleared by hardware. 0 A hardware service request for channel 3 is not present 1 A hardware service request for channel 3 is present
2 HRS2	Hardware Request Status Channel 2

Table continues on the next page...

DMA_HRS field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	The HRS bit for its respective channel remains asserted for the period when a Hardware Request is Present on the Channel. After the Request is completed and Channel is free, the HRS bit is automatically cleared by hardware. 0 A hardware service request for channel 2 is not present 1 A hardware service request for channel 2 is present
1 HRS1	Hardware Request Status Channel 1 The HRS bit for its respective channel remains asserted for the period when a Hardware Request is Present on the Channel. After the Request is completed and Channel is free, the HRS bit is automatically cleared by hardware. 0 A hardware service request for channel 1 is not present 1 A hardware service request for channel 1 is present
0 HRS0	Hardware Request Status Channel 0 The HRS bit for its respective channel remains asserted for the period when a Hardware Request is Present on the Channel. After the Request is completed and Channel is free, the HRS bit is automatically cleared by hardware. 0 A hardware service request for channel 0 is not present 1 A hardware service request for channel 0 is present

23.3.16 Enable Asynchronous Request in Stop Register (DMA_EARS)

Address: 4000_8000h base + 44h offset = 4000_8044h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	EDREQ_15	EDREQ_14	EDREQ_13	EDREQ_12	EDREQ_11	EDREQ_10	EDREQ_9	EDREQ_8	EDREQ_7	EDREQ_6	EDREQ_5	EDREQ_4	EDREQ_3	EDREQ_2	EDREQ_1	EDREQ_0
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

DMA_EARS field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

Table continues on the next page...

DMA_EARS field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
15 EDREQ_15	Enable asynchronous DMA request in stop mode for channel 15 0 Disable asynchronous DMA request for channel 15. 1 Enable asynchronous DMA request for channel 15.
14 EDREQ_14	Enable asynchronous DMA request in stop mode for channel 14 0 Disable asynchronous DMA request for channel 14. 1 Enable asynchronous DMA request for channel 14.
13 EDREQ_13	Enable asynchronous DMA request in stop mode for channel 13 0 Disable asynchronous DMA request for channel 13. 1 Enable asynchronous DMA request for channel 13.
12 EDREQ_12	Enable asynchronous DMA request in stop mode for channel 12 0 Disable asynchronous DMA request for channel 12. 1 Enable asynchronous DMA request for channel 12.
11 EDREQ_11	Enable asynchronous DMA request in stop mode for channel 11 0 Disable asynchronous DMA request for channel 11. 1 Enable asynchronous DMA request for channel 11.
10 EDREQ_10	Enable asynchronous DMA request in stop mode for channel 10 0 Disable asynchronous DMA request for channel 10. 1 Enable asynchronous DMA request for channel 10.
9 EDREQ_9	Enable asynchronous DMA request in stop mode for channel 9 0 Disable asynchronous DMA request for channel 9. 1 Enable asynchronous DMA request for channel 9.
8 EDREQ_8	Enable asynchronous DMA request in stop mode for channel 8 0 Disable asynchronous DMA request for channel 8. 1 Enable asynchronous DMA request for channel 8.
7 EDREQ_7	Enable asynchronous DMA request in stop mode for channel 7 0 Disable asynchronous DMA request for channel 7. 1 Enable asynchronous DMA request for channel 7.
6 EDREQ_6	Enable asynchronous DMA request in stop mode for channel 6 0 Disable asynchronous DMA request for channel 6. 1 Enable asynchronous DMA request for channel 6.
5 EDREQ_5	Enable asynchronous DMA request in stop mode for channel 5 0 Disable asynchronous DMA request for channel 5. 1 Enable asynchronous DMA request for channel 5.
4 EDREQ_4	Enable asynchronous DMA request in stop mode for channel 4 0 Disable asynchronous DMA request for channel 4. 1 Enable asynchronous DMA request for channel 4.

Table continues on the next page...

DMA_EARS field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
3 EDREQ_3	Enable asynchronous DMA request in stop mode for channel 3. 0 Disable asynchronous DMA request for channel 3. 1 Enable asynchronous DMA request for channel 3.
2 EDREQ_2	Enable asynchronous DMA request in stop mode for channel 2. 0 Disable asynchronous DMA request for channel 2. 1 Enable asynchronous DMA request for channel 2.
1 EDREQ_1	Enable asynchronous DMA request in stop mode for channel 1. 0 Disable asynchronous DMA request for channel 1 1 Enable asynchronous DMA request for channel 1.
0 EDREQ_0	Enable asynchronous DMA request in stop mode for channel 0. 0 Disable asynchronous DMA request for channel 0. 1 Enable asynchronous DMA request for channel 0.

23.3.17 Channel n Priority Register (DMA_DCHPRI*n*)

When fixed-priority channel arbitration is enabled (CR[ERCA] = 0), the contents of these registers define the unique priorities associated with each channel. The channel priorities are evaluated by numeric value; for example, 0 is the lowest priority, 1 is the next higher priority, then 2, 3, etc. Software must program the channel priorities with unique values; otherwise, a configuration error is reported. The range of the priority value is limited to the values of 0 through 15.

Address: 4000_8000h base + 100h offset + (1d × i), where i=0d to 15d

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	ECP	DPA	0		CHPRI			
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	*	*	*	*

* Notes:
- CHPRI field: See bit field description.

DMA_DCHPRI*n* field descriptions

Field	Description
7 ECP	Enable Channel Preemption. 0 Channel n cannot be suspended by a higher priority channel's service request. 1 Channel n can be temporarily suspended by the service request of a higher priority channel.

Table continues on the next page...

DMA_DCHPRI*n* field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
6 DPA	Disable Preempt Ability. 0 Channel n can suspend a lower priority channel. 1 Channel n cannot suspend any channel, regardless of channel priority.
5–4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
CHPRI	Channel n Arbitration Priority Channel priority when fixed-priority arbitration is enabled **NOTE:** Reset value for the channel priority field, CHPRI, is equal to the corresponding channel number for each priority register, that is, DCHPRI15[CHPRI] = 0b1111.

23.3.18 TCD Source Address (DMA_TCD*n*_SADDR)

Address: 4000_8000h base + 1000h offset + (32d × i), where i=0d to 15d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R W	SADDR																															
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

* Notes:
- x = Undefined at reset.

DMA_TCD*n*_SADDR field descriptions

Field	Description
SADDR	Source Address Memory address pointing to the source data.

23.3.19 TCD Signed Source Address Offset (DMA_TCD*n*_SOFF)

Address: 4000_8000h base + 1004h offset + (32d × i), where i=0d to 15d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	SOFF															
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

* Notes:
- x = Undefined at reset.

DMA_TCD*n*_SOFF field descriptions

Field	Description
SOFF	Source address signed offset Sign-extended offset applied to the current source address to form the next-state value as each source read is completed.

23.3.20 TCD Transfer Attributes (DMA_TCD*n*_ATTR)

Address: 4000_8000h base + 1006h offset + (32d × i), where i=0d to 15d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	SMOD					SSIZE			DMOD					DSIZE		
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

* Notes:
- x = Undefined at reset.

DMA_TCD*n*_ATTR field descriptions

Field	Description
15–11 SMOD	Source Address Modulo 0 Source address modulo feature is disabled ≠0 This value defines a specific address range specified to be the value after SADDR + SOFF calculation is performed on the original register value. Setting this field provides the ability to implement a circular data queue easily. For data queues requiring power-of-2 size bytes, the queue should start at a 0-modulo-size address and the SMOD field should be set to the appropriate value for the queue, freezing the desired number of upper address bits. The value programmed into this field specifies the number of lower address bits allowed to change. For a circular queue application, the SOFF is typically set to the transfer size to implement post-increment addressing with the SMOD function constraining the addresses to a 0-modulo-size range.
10–8 SSIZE	Source data transfer size **NOTE:** Using a Reserved value causes a configuration error. 000 8-bit 001 16-bit 010 32-bit 011 Reserved 100 16-byte burst 101 32-byte burst 110 Reserved 111 Reserved
7–3 DMOD	Destination Address Modulo See the SMOD definition
DSIZE	Destination data transfer size

Table continues on the next page...

DMA_TCD*n*_ATTR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	See the SSIZE definition

23.3.21 TCD Minor Byte Count (Minor Loop Mapping Disabled) (DMA_TCD*n*_NBYTES_MLNO)

This register, or one of the next two registers (TCD_NBYTES_MLOFFNO, TCD_NBYTES_MLOFFYES), defines the number of bytes to transfer per request. Which register to use depends on whether minor loop mapping is disabled, enabled but not used for this channel, or enabled and used.

TCD word 2 is defined as follows if:

- Minor loop mapping is disabled (CR[EMLM] = 0)

If minor loop mapping is enabled, see the TCD_NBYTES_MLOFFNO and TCD_NBYTES_MLOFFYES register descriptions for the definition of TCD word 2.

Address: 4000_8000h base + 1008h offset + (32d × i), where i=0d to 15d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R W	NBYTES																															
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

* Notes:

- x = Undefined at reset.

DMA_TCD*n*_NBYTES_MLNO field descriptions

Field	Description
NBYTES	Minor Byte Transfer Count Number of bytes to be transferred in each service request of the channel. As a channel activates, the appropriate TCD contents load into the eDMA engine, and the appropriate reads and writes perform until the minor byte transfer count has transferred. This is an indivisible operation and cannot be halted. It can, however, be stalled by using the bandwidth control field, or via preemption. After the minor count is exhausted, the SADDR and DADDR values are written back into the TCD memory, the major iteration count is decremented and restored to the TCD memory. If the major iteration count is completed, additional processing is performed. **NOTE:** An NBYTES value of 0x0000_0000 is interpreted as a 4 GB transfer.

23.3.22 TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping Enabled and Offset Disabled) (DMA_TCD*n*_NBYTES_MLOFFNO)

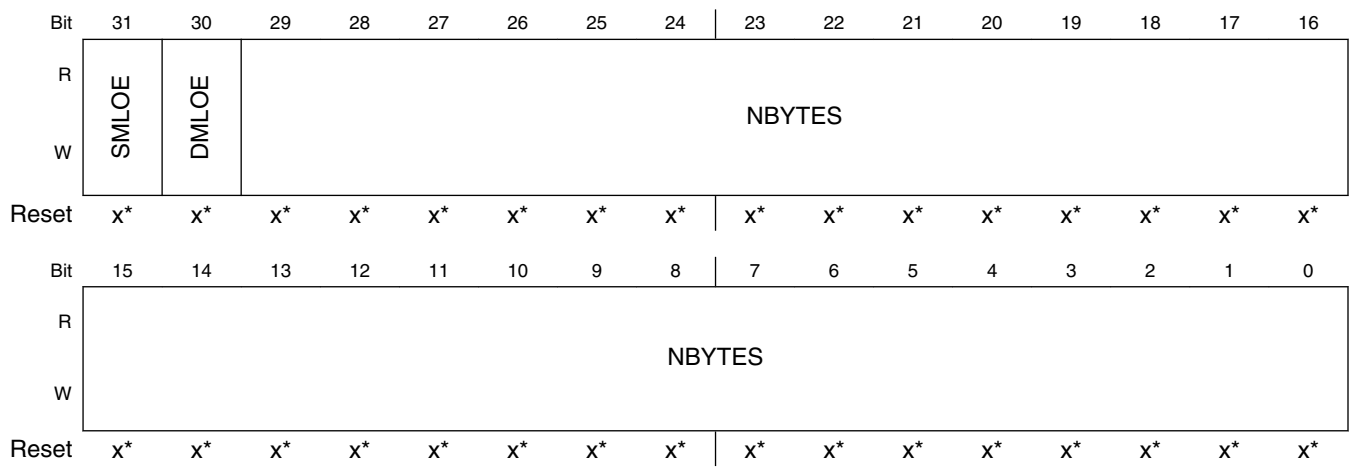
One of three registers (this register, TCD_NBYTES_MLNO, or TCD_NBYTES_MLOFFYES), defines the number of bytes to transfer per request. Which register to use depends on whether minor loop mapping is disabled, enabled but not used for this channel, or enabled and used.

TCD word 2 is defined as follows if:

- Minor loop mapping is enabled (CR[EMLM] = 1) and
- SMLOE = 0 and DMLOE = 0

If minor loop mapping is enabled and SMLOE or DMLOE is set, then refer to the TCD_NBYTES_MLOFFYES register description. If minor loop mapping is disabled, then refer to the TCD_NBYTES_MLNO register description.

Address: 4000_8000h base + 1008h offset + (32d × i), where i=0d to 15d



* Notes:
- x = Undefined at reset.

DMA_TCD*n*_NBYTES_MLOFFNO field descriptions

Field	Description
31 SMLOE	Source Minor Loop Offset Enable Selects whether the minor loop offset is applied to the source address upon minor loop completion. 0 The minor loop offset is not applied to the SADDR 1 The minor loop offset is applied to the SADDR
30 DMLOE	Destination Minor Loop Offset enable Selects whether the minor loop offset is applied to the destination address upon minor loop completion.

Table continues on the next page...

DMA_TCD*n*_NBYTES_MLOFFNO field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 The minor loop offset is not applied to the DADDR 1 The minor loop offset is applied to the DADDR
NBYTES	Minor Byte Transfer Count Number of bytes to be transferred in each service request of the channel. As a channel activates, the appropriate TCD contents load into the eDMA engine, and the appropriate reads and writes perform until the minor byte transfer count has transferred. This is an indivisible operation and cannot be halted. It can, however, be stalled by using the bandwidth control field, or via preemption. After the minor count is exhausted, the SADDR and DADDR values are written back into the TCD memory, the major iteration count is decremented and restored to the TCD memory. If the major iteration count is completed, additional processing is performed.

23.3.23 TCD Signed Minor Loop Offset (Minor Loop Mapping and Offset Enabled) (DMA_TCD*n*_NBYTES_MLOFFYES)

One of three registers (this register, TCD_NBYTES_MLNO, or TCD_NBYTES_MLOFFNO), defines the number of bytes to transfer per request. Which register to use depends on whether minor loop mapping is disabled, enabled but not used for this channel, or enabled and used.

TCD word 2 is defined as follows if:

- Minor loop mapping is enabled (CR[EMLM] = 1) and
- Minor loop offset is enabled (SMLOE or DMLOE = 1)

If minor loop mapping is enabled and SMLOE and DMLOE are cleared, then refer to the TCD_NBYTES_MLOFFNO register description. If minor loop mapping is disabled, then refer to the TCD_NBYTES_MLNO register description.

Address: 4000_8000h base + 1008h offset + (32d × i), where i=0d to 15d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	SMLOE	DMLOE	MLOFF													
W																
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	MLOFF								NBYTES							
W																
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

* Notes:

- x = Undefined at reset.

DMA_TCD*n*_NBYTES_MLOFFYES field descriptions

Field	Description
31 SMLOE	Source Minor Loop Offset Enable Selects whether the minor loop offset is applied to the source address upon minor loop completion. 0 The minor loop offset is not applied to the SADDR 1 The minor loop offset is applied to the SADDR
30 DMLOE	Destination Minor Loop Offset enable Selects whether the minor loop offset is applied to the destination address upon minor loop completion. 0 The minor loop offset is not applied to the DADDR 1 The minor loop offset is applied to the DADDR
29–10 MLOFF	If SMLOE or DMLOE is set, this field represents a sign-extended offset applied to the source or destination address to form the next-state value after the minor loop completes.
NBYTES	Minor Byte Transfer Count Number of bytes to be transferred in each service request of the channel. As a channel activates, the appropriate TCD contents load into the eDMA engine, and the appropriate reads and writes perform until the minor byte transfer count has transferred. This is an indivisible operation and cannot be halted. It can, however, be stalled by using the bandwidth control field, or via preemption. After the minor count is exhausted, the SADDR and DADDR values are written back into the TCD memory, the major iteration count is decremented and restored to the TCD memory. If the major iteration count is completed, additional processing is performed.

23.3.24 TCD Last Source Address Adjustment (DMA_TCD*n*_SLAST)

Address: 4000_8000h base + 100Ch offset + (32d × i), where i=0d to 15d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R W	SLAST																															
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

* Notes:

- x = Undefined at reset.

DMA_TCD*n*_SLAST field descriptions

Field	Description
SLAST	Last Source Address Adjustment Adjustment value added to the source address at the completion of the major iteration count. This value can be applied to restore the source address to the initial value, or adjust the address to reference the next data structure. This register uses two's complement notation; the overflow bit is discarded.

23.3.25 TCD Destination Address (DMA_TCD*n*_DADDR)

Address: 4000_8000h base + 1010h offset + (32d × i), where i=0d to 15d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R W	DADDR																															
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

* Notes:
- x = Undefined at reset.

DMA_TCD*n*_DADDR field descriptions

Field	Description
DADDR	Destination Address Memory address pointing to the destination data.

23.3.26 TCD Signed Destination Address Offset (DMA_TCD*n*_DOFF)

Address: 4000_8000h base + 1014h offset + (32d × i), where i=0d to 15d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	DOFF															
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

* Notes:
- x = Undefined at reset.

DMA_TCD*n*_DOFF field descriptions

Field	Description
DOFF	Destination Address Signed Offset Sign-extended offset applied to the current destination address to form the next-state value as each destination write is completed.

23.3.27 TCD Current Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD*n*_CITER_ELINKYES)

If TCDn_CITER[ELINK] is set, the TCDn_CITER register is defined as follows.

Address: 4000_8000h base + 1016h offset + (32d × i), where i=0d to 15d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
Read Write	ELINK	0			LINKCH			CITER
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	CITER							
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

* Notes:
- x = Undefined at reset.

DMA_TCD*n*_CITER_ELINKYES field descriptions

Field	Description
15 ELINK	Enable channel-to-channel linking on minor-loop complete As the channel completes the minor loop, this flag enables linking to another channel, defined by the LINKCH field. The link target channel initiates a channel service request via an internal mechanism that sets the TCDn_CSR[START] bit of the specified channel. If channel linking is disabled, the CITER value is extended to 15 bits in place of a link channel number. If the major loop is exhausted, this link mechanism is suppressed in favor of the MAJORELINK channel linking. **NOTE:** This bit must be equal to the BITER[ELINK] bit; otherwise, a configuration error is reported. 0 The channel-to-channel linking is disabled 1 The channel-to-channel linking is enabled
14–13 Reserved	This field is reserved.
12–9 LINKCH	Minor Loop Link Channel Number If channel-to-channel linking is enabled (ELINK = 1), then after the minor loop is exhausted, the eDMA engine initiates a channel service request to the channel defined by this field by setting that channel's TCDn_CSR[START] bit.
CITER	Current Major Iteration Count This 9-bit (ELINK = 1) or 15-bit (ELINK = 0) count represents the current major loop count for the channel. It is decremented each time the minor loop is completed and updated in the transfer control descriptor memory. After the major iteration count is exhausted, the channel performs a number of operations, for example, final source and destination address calculations, optionally generating an interrupt to signal channel completion before reloading the CITER field from the Beginning Iteration Count (BITER) field.

Table continues on the next page...

DMA_TCD*n*_CITER_ELINKYES field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	NOTE: When the CITER field is initially loaded by software, it must be set to the same value as that contained in the BITER field. **NOTE:** If the channel is configured to execute a single service request, the initial values of BITER and CITER should be 0x0001.

23.3.28 TCD Current Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Disabled) (DMA_TCD*n*_CITER_ELINKNO)

If TCDn_CITER[ELINK] is cleared, the TCDn_CITER register is defined as follows.

Address: 4000_8000h base + 1016h offset + (32d × i), where i=0d to 15d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
Read Write	ELINK	CITER						
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	CITER							
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

* Notes:
- x = Undefined at reset.

DMA_TCD*n*_CITER_ELINKNO field descriptions

Field	Description
15 ELINK	Enable channel-to-channel linking on minor-loop complete As the channel completes the minor loop, this flag enables linking to another channel, defined by the LINKCH field. The link target channel initiates a channel service request via an internal mechanism that sets the TCDn_CSR[START] bit of the specified channel. If channel linking is disabled, the CITER value is extended to 15 bits in place of a link channel number. If the major loop is exhausted, this link mechanism is suppressed in favor of the MAJORELINK channel linking. **NOTE:** This bit must be equal to the BITER[ELINK] bit; otherwise, a configuration error is reported. 0 The channel-to-channel linking is disabled 1 The channel-to-channel linking is enabled
CITER	Current Major Iteration Count This 9-bit (ELINK = 1) or 15-bit (ELINK = 0) count represents the current major loop count for the channel. It is decremented each time the minor loop is completed and updated in the transfer control descriptor memory. After the major iteration count is exhausted, the channel performs a number of operations, for

Table continues on the next page...

DMA_TCD*n*_CITER_ELINKNO field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	example, final source and destination address calculations, optionally generating an interrupt to signal channel completion before reloading the CITER field from the Beginning Iteration Count (BITER) field. **NOTE:** When the CITER field is initially loaded by software, it must be set to the same value as that contained in the BITER field. **NOTE:** If the channel is configured to execute a single service request, the initial values of BITER and CITER should be 0x0001.

23.3.29 TCD Last Destination Address Adjustment/Scatter Gather Address (DMA_TCD*n*_DLASTSGA)

Address: 4000_8000h base + 1018h offset + (32d × i), where i=0d to 15d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R W	DLASTSGA																															
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

* Notes:
- x = Undefined at reset.

DMA_TCD*n*_DLASTSGA field descriptions

Field	Description
DLASTSGA	Destination last address adjustment or the memory address for the next transfer control descriptor to be loaded into this channel (scatter/gather). If (TCDn_CSR[ESG] = 0) then: • Adjustment value added to the destination address at the completion of the major iteration count. This value can apply to restore the destination address to the initial value or adjust the address to reference the next data structure. • This field uses two's complement notation for the final destination address adjustment. Otherwise: • This address points to the beginning of a 0-modulo-32-byte region containing the next transfer control descriptor to be loaded into this channel. This channel reload is performed as the major iteration count completes. The scatter/gather address must be 0-modulo-32-byte, otherwise a configuration error is reported.

23.3.30 TCD Control and Status (DMA_TCD*n*_CSR)

Address: 4000_8000h base + 101Ch offset + (32d × i), where i=0d to 15d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
Read	BWC				MAJORLINKCH			
Write			0					
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	DONE	ACTIVE	MAJORELINK	ESG	DREQ	INTHALF	INTMAJOR	START
Write								
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

* Notes:
- x = Undefined at reset.

DMA_TCD*n*_CSR field descriptions

Field	Description
15–14 BWC	Bandwidth Control Throttles the amount of bus bandwidth consumed by the eDMA. Generally, as the eDMA processes the minor loop, it continuously generates read/write sequences until the minor count is exhausted. This field forces the eDMA to stall after the completion of each read/write access to control the bus request bandwidth seen by the crossbar switch. **NOTE:** If the source and destination sizes are equal, this field is ignored between the first and second transfers and after the last write of each minor loop. This behavior is a side effect of reducing start-up latency. 00 No eDMA engine stalls. 01 Reserved 10 eDMA engine stalls for 4 cycles after each R/W. 11 eDMA engine stalls for 8 cycles after each R/W.
13–12 Reserved	This field is reserved.
11–8 MAJORLINKCH	Major Loop Link Channel Number If (MAJORELINK = 0) then: • No channel-to-channel linking, or chaining, is performed after the major loop counter is exhausted. Otherwise: • After the major loop counter is exhausted, the eDMA engine initiates a channel service request at the channel defined by this field by setting that channel's TCDn_CSR[START] bit.
7 DONE	Channel Done This flag indicates the eDMA has completed the major loop. The eDMA engine sets it as the CITER count reaches zero. The software clears it, or the hardware when the channel is activated. **NOTE:** This bit must be cleared to write the MAJORELINK or ESG bits.

Table continues on the next page...

DMA_TCD*n*_CSR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
6 ACTIVE	Channel Active This flag signals the channel is currently in execution. It is set when channel service begins, and is cleared by the eDMA as the minor loop completes or when any error condition is detected.
5 MAJORELINK	Enable channel-to-channel linking on major loop complete As the channel completes the major loop, this flag enables the linking to another channel, defined by MAJORLINKCH. The link target channel initiates a channel service request via an internal mechanism that sets the TCDn_CSR[START] bit of the specified channel. **NOTE:** To support the dynamic linking coherency model, this field is forced to zero when written to while the TCDn_CSR[DONE] bit is set. 0 The channel-to-channel linking is disabled. 1 The channel-to-channel linking is enabled.
4 ESG	Enable Scatter/Gather Processing As the channel completes the major loop, this flag enables scatter/gather processing in the current channel. If enabled, the eDMA engine uses DLASTSGA as a memory pointer to a 0-modulo-32 address containing a 32-byte data structure loaded as the transfer control descriptor into the local memory. **NOTE:** To support the dynamic scatter/gather coherency model, this field is forced to zero when written to while the TCDn_CSR[DONE] bit is set. 0 The current channel's TCD is normal format. 1 The current channel's TCD specifies a scatter gather format. The DLASTSGA field provides a memory pointer to the next TCD to be loaded into this channel after the major loop completes its execution.
3 DREQ	Disable Request If this flag is set, the eDMA hardware automatically clears the corresponding ERQ bit when the current major iteration count reaches zero. 0 The channel's ERQ bit is not affected. 1 The channel's ERQ bit is cleared when the major loop is complete.
2 INTHALF	Enable an interrupt when major counter is half complete. If this flag is set, the channel generates an interrupt request by setting the appropriate bit in the INT register when the current major iteration count reaches the halfway point. Specifically, the comparison performed by the eDMA engine is (CITER == (BITER >> 1)). This halfway point interrupt request is provided to support double-buffered, also known as ping-pong, schemes or other types of data movement where the processor needs an early indication of the transfer's progress. **NOTE:** If BITER = 1, do not use INTHALF. Use INTMAJOR instead. 0 The half-point interrupt is disabled. 1 The half-point interrupt is enabled.
1 INTMAJOR	Enable an interrupt when major iteration count completes. If this flag is set, the channel generates an interrupt request by setting the appropriate bit in the INT when the current major iteration count reaches zero. 0 The end-of-major loop interrupt is disabled. 1 The end-of-major loop interrupt is enabled.

Table continues on the next page...

DMA_TCD*n*_CSR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
0 START	Channel Start If this flag is set, the channel is requesting service. The eDMA hardware automatically clears this flag after the channel begins execution. 0 The channel is not explicitly started. 1 The channel is explicitly started via a software initiated service request.

23.3.31 TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Enabled) (DMA_TCD*n*_BITER_ELINKYES)

If the TCDn_BITER[ELINK] bit is set, the TCDn_BITER register is defined as follows.

Address: 4000_8000h base + 101Eh offset + (32d × i), where i=0d to 15d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
Read Write	ELINK	0			LINKCH			BITER
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	BITER							
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

* Notes:
- x = Undefined at reset.

DMA_TCD*n*_BITER_ELINKYES field descriptions

Field	Description
15 ELINK	Enables channel-to-channel linking on minor loop complete As the channel completes the minor loop, this flag enables the linking to another channel, defined by BITER[LINKCH]. The link target channel initiates a channel service request via an internal mechanism that sets the TCDn_CSR[START] bit of the specified channel. If channel linking disables, the BITER value extends to 15 bits in place of a link channel number. If the major loop is exhausted, this link mechanism is suppressed in favor of the MAJORELINK channel linking. **NOTE:** When the software loads the TCD, this field must be set equal to the corresponding CITER field; otherwise, a configuration error is reported. As the major iteration count is exhausted, the contents of this field are reloaded into the CITER field. 0 The channel-to-channel linking is disabled 1 The channel-to-channel linking is enabled
14–13 Reserved	This field is reserved.
12–9 LINKCH	Link Channel Number

Table continues on the next page...

DMA_TCD*n*_BITER_ELINKYES field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	If channel-to-channel linking is enabled (ELINK = 1), then after the minor loop is exhausted, the eDMA engine initiates a channel service request at the channel defined by this field by setting that channel's TCDn_CSR[START] bit. **NOTE:** When the software loads the TCD, this field must be set equal to the corresponding CITER field; otherwise, a configuration error is reported. As the major iteration count is exhausted, the contents of this field are reloaded into the CITER field.
BITER	Starting major iteration count As the transfer control descriptor is first loaded by software, this 9-bit (ELINK = 1) or 15-bit (ELINK = 0) field must be equal to the value in the CITER field. As the major iteration count is exhausted, the contents of this field are reloaded into the CITER field. **NOTE:** When the software loads the TCD, this field must be set equal to the corresponding CITER field; otherwise, a configuration error is reported. As the major iteration count is exhausted, the contents of this field are reloaded into the CITER field. If the channel is configured to execute a single service request, the initial values of BITER and CITER should be 0x0001.

23.3.32 TCD Beginning Minor Loop Link, Major Loop Count (Channel Linking Disabled) (DMA_TCD*n*_BITER_ELINKNO)

If the TCDn_BITER[ELINK] bit is cleared, the TCDn_BITER register is defined as follows.

Address: 4000_8000h base + 101Eh offset + (32d × i), where i=0d to 15d

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
Read Write	ELINK	BITER						
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	BITER							
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

* Notes:
- x = Undefined at reset.

DMA_TCD*n*_BITER_ELINKNO field descriptions

Field	Description
15 ELINK	Enables channel-to-channel linking on minor loop complete As the channel completes the minor loop, this flag enables the linking to another channel, defined by BITER[LINKCH]. The link target channel initiates a channel service request via an internal mechanism that sets the TCDn_CSR[START] bit of the specified channel. If channel linking is disabled, the BITER value extends to 15 bits in place of a link channel number. If the major loop is exhausted, this link mechanism is suppressed in favor of the MAJORELINK channel linking.

Table continues on the next page...

DMA_TCD*n*_BITER_ELINKNO field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	NOTE: When the software loads the TCD, this field must be set equal to the corresponding CITER field; otherwise, a configuration error is reported. As the major iteration count is exhausted, the contents of this field are reloaded into the CITER field. 0 The channel-to-channel linking is disabled 1 The channel-to-channel linking is enabled
BITER	Starting Major Iteration Count As the transfer control descriptor is first loaded by software, this 9-bit (ELINK = 1) or 15-bit (ELINK = 0) field must be equal to the value in the CITER field. As the major iteration count is exhausted, the contents of this field are reloaded into the CITER field. **NOTE:** When the software loads the TCD, this field must be set equal to the corresponding CITER field; otherwise, a configuration error is reported. As the major iteration count is exhausted, the contents of this field is reloaded into the CITER field. If the channel is configured to execute a single service request, the initial values of BITER and CITER should be 0x0001.

23.4 Functional description

The operation of the eDMA is described in the following subsections.

23.4.1 eDMA basic data flow

The basic flow of a data transfer can be partitioned into three segments.

As shown in the following diagram, the first segment involves the channel activation:

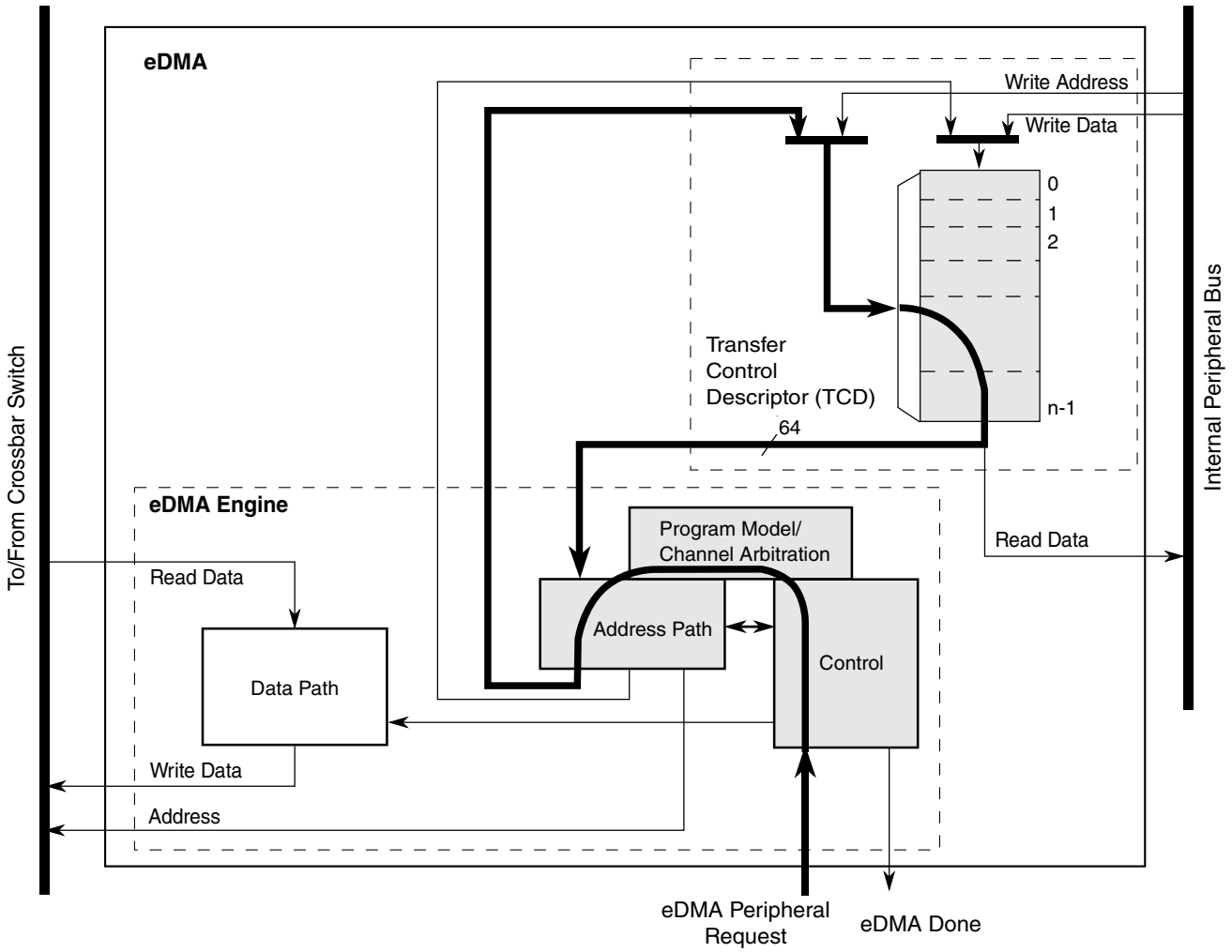


Figure 23-2. eDMA operation, part 1

This example uses the assertion of the eDMA peripheral request signal to request service for channel *n*. Channel activation via software and the TCD*n*_CSR[START] bit follows the same basic flow as peripheral requests. The eDMA request input signal is registered internally and then routed through the eDMA engine: first through the control module, then into the program model and channel arbitration. In the next cycle, the channel arbitration performs, using the fixed-priority or round-robin algorithm. After arbitration is complete, the activated channel number is sent through the address path and converted into the required address to access the local memory for TCD*n*. Next, the TCD memory is accessed and the required descriptor read from the local memory and loaded into the eDMA engine address path channel x or y registers. The TCD memory is 64 bits wide to minimize the time needed to fetch the activated channel descriptor and load it into the address path channel x or y registers.

The following diagram illustrates the second part of the basic data flow:

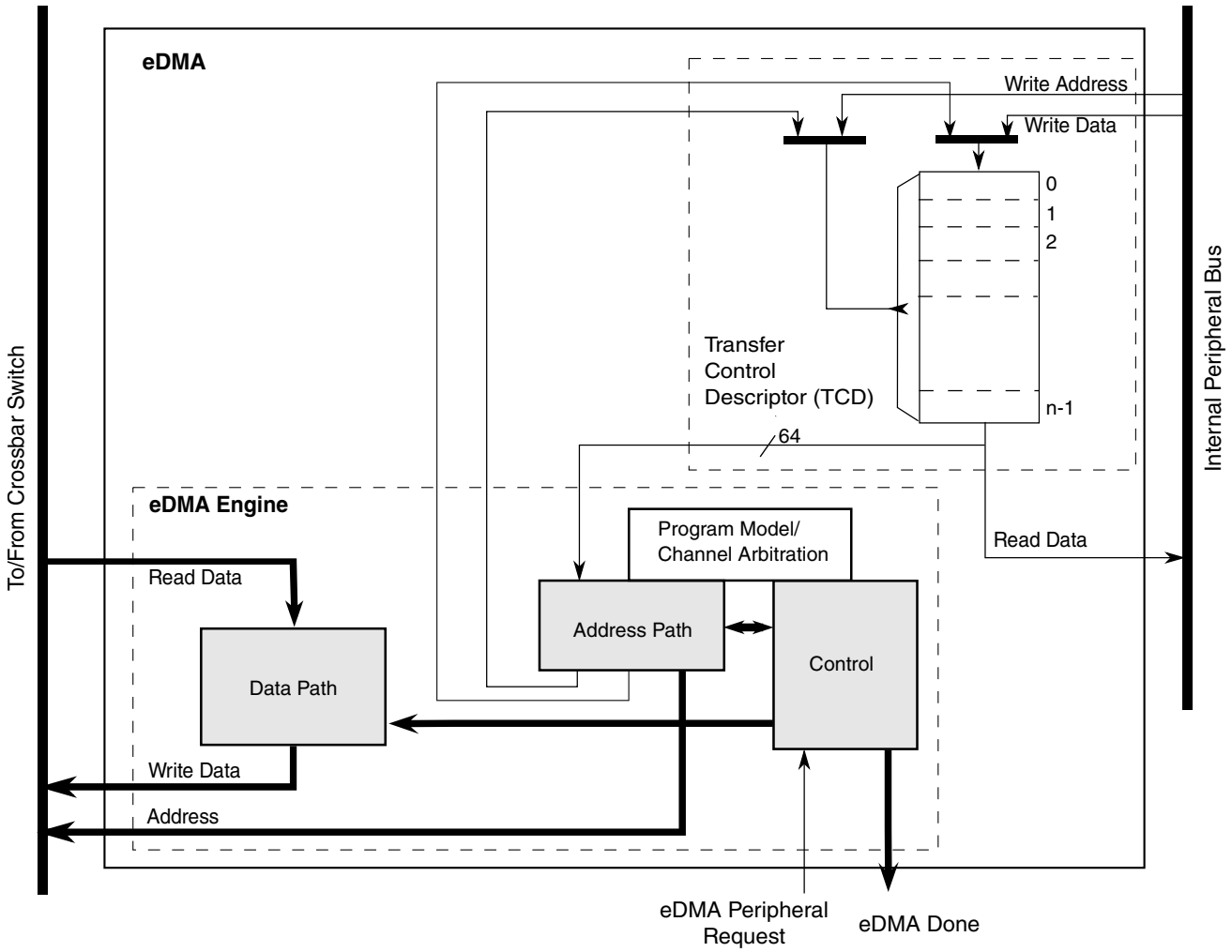


Figure 23-3. eDMA operation, part 2

The modules associated with the data transfer (address path, data path, and control) sequence through the required source reads and destination writes to perform the actual data movement. The source reads are initiated and the fetched data is temporarily stored in the data path block until it is gated onto the internal bus during the destination write. This source read/destination write processing continues until the minor byte count has transferred.

After the minor byte count has moved, the final phase of the basic data flow is performed. In this segment, the address path logic performs the required updates to certain fields in the appropriate TCD, for example, SADDR, DADDR, CITER. If the major iteration count is exhausted, additional operations are performed. These include the final address adjustments and reloading of the BITER field into the CITER. Assertion of an optional interrupt request also occurs at this time, as does a possible fetch of a new TCD from memory using the scatter/gather address pointer included in the descriptor (if scatter/gather is enabled). The updates to the TCD memory and the assertion of an interrupt request are shown in the following diagram.

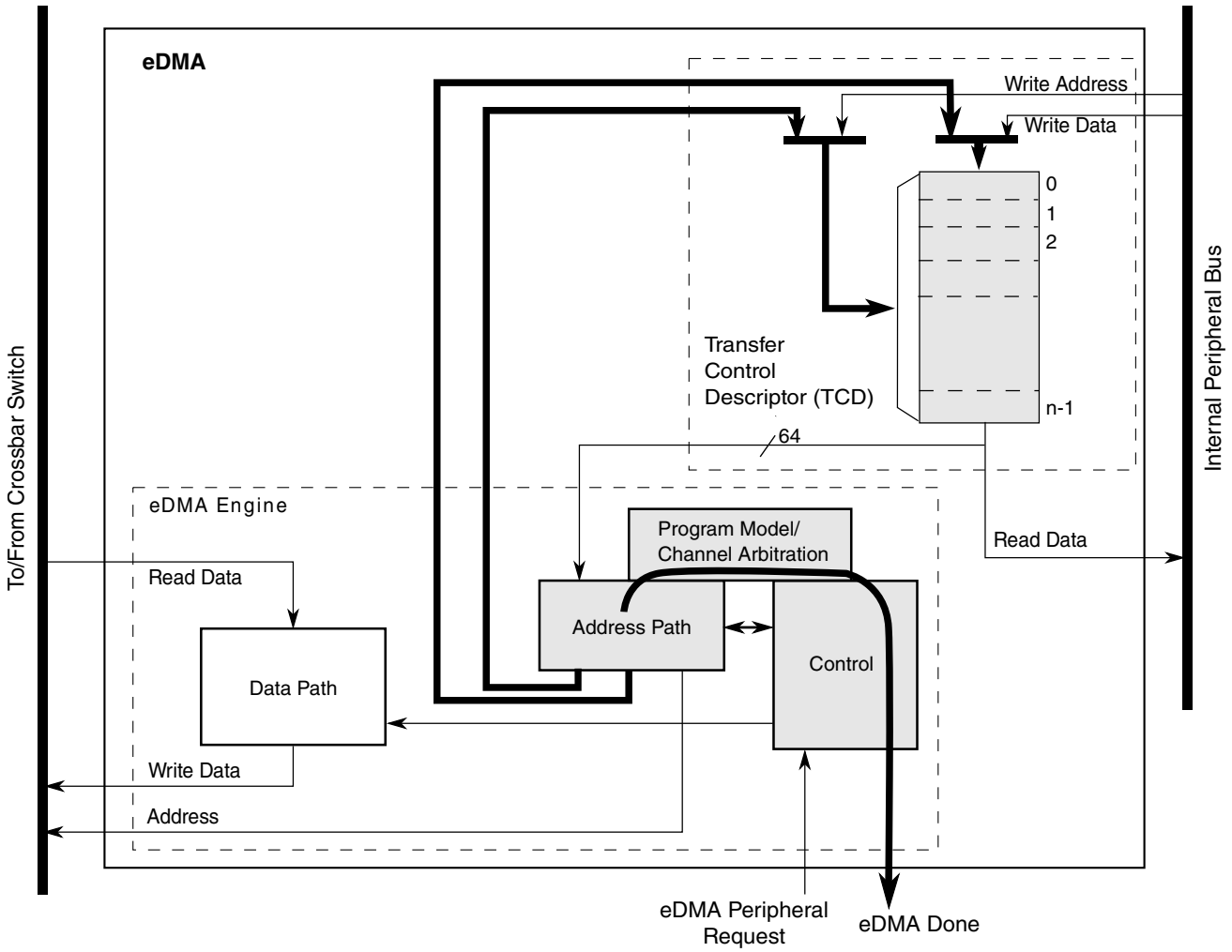


Figure 23-4. eDMA operation, part 3

23.4.2 Fault reporting and handling

Channel errors are reported in the Error Status register (DMAx_ES) and can be caused by:

- A configuration error, which is an illegal setting in the transfer-control descriptor or an illegal priority register setting in Fixed-Arbitration mode, or
- An error termination to a bus master read or write cycle

A configuration error is reported when the starting source or destination address, source or destination offsets, minor loop byte count, or the transfer size represent an inconsistent state. Each of these possible causes are detailed below:

- The addresses and offsets must be aligned on 0-modulo-transfer-size boundaries.
- The minor loop byte count must be a multiple of the source and destination transfer sizes.

- All source reads and destination writes must be configured to the natural boundary of the programmed transfer size respectively.
- In fixed arbitration mode, a configuration error is caused by any two channel priorities being equal. All channel priority levels must be unique when fixed arbitration mode is enabled.

NOTE

When two channels have the same priority, a channel priority error exists and will be reported in the Error Status register. However, the channel number will not be reported in the Error Status register. When all of the channel priorities within a group are not unique, the channel number selected by arbitration is undetermined.

To aid in Channel Priority Error (CPE) debug, set the Halt On Error bit in the DMA's Control Register. If all of the channel priorities within a group are not unique, the DMA will be halted after the CPE error is recorded. The DMA will remain halted and will not process any channel service requests. Once all of the channel priorities are set to unique numbers, the DMA may be enabled again by clearing the Halt bit.

- If a scatter/gather operation is enabled upon channel completion, a configuration error is reported if the scatter/gather address (DLAST_SGA) is not aligned on a 32-byte boundary.
- If minor loop channel linking is enabled upon channel completion, a configuration error is reported when the link is attempted if the TCDn_CITER[E_LINK] bit does not equal the TCDn_BITER[E_LINK] bit.

If enabled, all configuration error conditions, except the scatter/gather and minor-loop link errors, report as the channel activates and asserts an error interrupt request. A scatter/gather configuration error is reported when the scatter/gather operation begins at major loop completion when properly enabled. A minor loop channel link configuration error is reported when the link operation is serviced at minor loop completion.

If a system bus read or write is terminated with an error, the data transfer is stopped and the appropriate bus error flag set. In this case, the state of the channel's transfer control descriptor is updated by the eDMA engine with the current source address, destination address, and current iteration count at the point of the fault. When a system bus error occurs, the channel terminates after the next transfer. Due to pipeline effect, the next transfer is already in progress when the bus error is received by the eDMA. If a bus error

occurs on the last read prior to beginning the write sequence, the write executes using the data captured during the bus error. If a bus error occurs on the last write prior to switching to the next read sequence, the read sequence executes before the channel terminates due to the destination bus error.

A transfer may be cancelled by software with the CR[CX] bit. When a cancel transfer request is recognized, the DMA engine stops processing the channel. The current read-write sequence is allowed to finish. If the cancel occurs on the last read-write sequence of a major or minor loop, the cancel request is discarded and the channel retires normally.

The error cancel transfer is the same as a cancel transfer except the Error Status register (DMAx_ES) is updated with the cancelled channel number and ECX is set. The TCD of a cancelled channel contains the source and destination addresses of the last transfer saved in the TCD. If the channel needs to be restarted, you must re-initialize the TCD because the aforementioned fields no longer represent the original parameters. When a transfer is cancelled by the error cancel transfer mechanism, the channel number is loaded into DMA_ES[ERRCHN] and ECX and VLD are set. In addition, an error interrupt may be generated if enabled.

NOTE

The cancel transfer request allows the user to stop a large data transfer in the event the full data transfer is no longer needed. The cancel transfer bit does not abort the channel. It simply stops the transferring of data and then retires the channel through its normal shutdown sequence. The application software must handle the context of the cancel. If an interrupt is desired (or not), then the interrupt should be enabled (or disabled) before the cancel request. The application software must clean up the transfer control descriptor since the full transfer did not occur.

The occurrence of any error causes the eDMA engine to stop normal processing of the active channel immediately (it goes to its error processing states and the transaction to the system bus still has pipeline effect), and the appropriate channel bit in the eDMA error register is asserted. At the same time, the details of the error condition are loaded into the Error Status register (DMAx_ES). The major loop complete indicators, setting the transfer control descriptor DONE flag and the possible assertion of an interrupt request, are not affected when an error is detected. After the error status has been updated, the eDMA engine continues operating by servicing the next appropriate channel. A channel that experiences an error condition is not automatically disabled. If a channel is terminated by an error and then issues another service request before the error is fixed, that channel executes and terminates with the same error condition.

23.4.3 Channel preemption

Channel preemption is enabled on a per-channel basis by setting the DCHPRIn[ECP] bit. Channel preemption allows the executing channel's data transfers to temporarily suspend in favor of starting a higher priority channel. After the preempting channel has completed all its minor loop data transfers, the preempted channel is restored and resumes execution. After the restored channel completes one read/write sequence, it is again eligible for preemption. If any higher priority channel is requesting service, the restored channel is suspended and the higher priority channel is serviced. Nested preemption, that is, attempting to preempt a preempting channel, is not supported. After a preempting channel begins execution, it cannot be preempted. Preemption is available only when fixed arbitration is selected.

A channel's ability to preempt another channel can be disabled by setting DCHPRIn[DPA]. When a channel's preempt ability is disabled, that channel cannot suspend a lower priority channel's data transfer, regardless of the lower priority channel's ECP setting. This allows for a pool of low priority, large data-moving channels to be defined. These low priority channels can be configured to not preempt each other, thus preventing a low priority channel from consuming the preempt slot normally available to a true, high priority channel.

23.4.4 Performance

This section addresses the performance of the eDMA module, focusing on two separate metrics:

- In the traditional data movement context, performance is best expressed as the peak data transfer rates achieved using the eDMA. In most implementations, this transfer rate is limited by the speed of the source and destination address spaces.
- In a second context where device-paced movement of single data values to/from peripherals is dominant, a measure of the requests that can be serviced in a fixed time is a more relevant metric. In this environment, the speed of the source and destination address spaces remains important. However, the microarchitecture of the eDMA also factors significantly into the resulting metric.

23.4.4.1 Peak transfer rates

The peak transfer rates for several different source and destination transfers are shown in the following tables. These tables assume:

- Internal SRAM can be accessed with zero wait-states when viewed from the system bus data phase
- All internal peripheral bus reads require two wait-states, and internal peripheral bus writes three wait-states, when viewed from the system bus data phase
- All internal peripheral bus accesses are 32-bits in size

NOTE

All architectures will not meet the assumptions listed above. See the SRAM configuration section for more information.

This table compares peak transfer rates based on different possible system speeds. Specific chips/devices may not support all system speeds listed.

Table 23-4. eDMA peak transfer rates (Mbytes/sec)

System Speed, Width	Internal SRAM-to-Internal SRAM	32 bit internal peripheral bus-to-Internal SRAM	Internal SRAM-to-32 bit internal peripheral bus
66.7 MHz, 32 bit	133.3	66.7	53.3
83.3 MHz, 32 bit	166.7	83.3	66.7
100.0 MHz, 32 bit	200.0	100.0	80.0
133.3 MHz, 32 bit	266.7	133.3	106.7
150.0 MHz, 32 bit	300.0	150.0	120.0

Internal-SRAM-to-internal-SRAM transfers occur at the core's datapath width. For all transfers involving the internal peripheral bus, 32-bit transfer sizes are used. In all cases, the transfer rate includes the time to read the source plus the time to write the destination.

23.4.4.2 Peak request rates

The second performance metric is a measure of the number of DMA requests that can be serviced in a given amount of time. For this metric, assume that the peripheral request causes the channel to move a single internal peripheral bus-mapped operand to/from internal SRAM. The same timing assumptions used in the previous example apply to this calculation. In particular, this metric also reflects the time required to activate the channel.

The eDMA design supports the following hardware service request sequence. Note that the exact timing from Cycle 7 is a function of the response times for the channel's read and write accesses. In the case of an internal peripheral bus read and internal SRAM write, the combined data phase time is 4 cycles. For an SRAM read and internal peripheral bus write, it is 5 cycles.

Table 23-5. Hardware service request process

Cycle		Description
With internal peripheral bus read and internal SRAM write	With SRAM read and internal peripheral bus write	
1		eDMA peripheral request is asserted.
2		The eDMA peripheral request is registered locally in the eDMA module and qualified. TCD*n*_CSR[START] bit initiated requests start at this point with the registering of the user write to TCD*n* word 7.
3		Channel arbitration begins.
4		Channel arbitration completes. The transfer control descriptor local memory read is initiated.
5–6		The first two parts of the activated channel's TCD is read from the local memory. The memory width to the eDMA engine is 64 bits, so the entire descriptor can be accessed in four cycles
7		The first system bus read cycle is initiated, as the third part of the channel's TCD is read from the local memory. Depending on the state of the crossbar switch, arbitration at the system bus may insert an additional cycle of delay here.
8–11	8–12	The last part of the TCD is read in. This cycle represents the first data phase for the read, and the address phase for the destination write.
12	13	This cycle represents the data phase of the last destination write.
13	14	The eDMA engine completes the execution of the inner minor loop and prepares to write back the required TCD*n* fields into the local memory. The TCD*n* word 7 is read and checked for channel linking or scatter/gather requests.
14	15	The appropriate fields in the first part of the TCD*n* are written back into the local memory.
15	16	The fields in the second part of the TCD*n* are written back into the local memory. This cycle coincides with the next channel arbitration cycle start.
16	17	The next channel to be activated performs the read of the first part of its TCD from the local memory. This is equivalent to Cycle 4 for the first channel's service request.

Assuming zero wait states on the system bus, DMA requests can be processed every 9 cycles. Assuming an average of the access times associated with internal peripheral bus-to-SRAM (4 cycles) and SRAM-to-internal peripheral bus (5 cycles), DMA requests can be processed every 11.5 cycles (4 + (4+5)/2 + 3). This is the time from Cycle 4 to Cycle x +5. The resulting peak request rate, as a function of the system frequency, is shown in the following table.

Table 23-6. eDMA peak request rate (MReq/sec)

System frequency (MHz)	Request rate with zero wait states	Request rate with wait states
66.6	7.4	5.8
83.3	9.2	7.2
100.0	11.1	8.7
133.3	14.8	11.6
150.0	16.6	13.0

A general formula to compute the peak request rate with overlapping requests is:

PEAKreq = freq / [entry + (1 + read_ws) + (1 + write_ws) + exit]

where:

Table 23-7. Peak request formula operands

Operand	Description
PEAKreq	Peak request rate
freq	System frequency
entry	Channel startup (4 cycles)
read_ws	Wait states seen during the system bus read data phase
write_ws	Wait states seen during the system bus write data phase
exit	Channel shutdown (3 cycles)

23.4.4.3 eDMA performance example

Consider a system with the following characteristics:

- Internal SRAM can be accessed with one wait-state when viewed from the system bus data phase
- All internal peripheral bus reads require two wait-states, and internal peripheral bus writes three wait-states viewed from the system bus data phase
- System operates at 150 MHz

For an SRAM to internal peripheral bus transfer,

PEAKreq = 150 MHz / [4 + (1 + 1) + (1 + 3) + 3] cycles = 11.5 Mreq/sec

For an internal peripheral bus to SRAM transfer,

PEAKreq = 150 MHz / [4 + (1 + 2) + (1 + 1) + 3] cycles = 12.5 Mreq/sec

Assuming an even distribution of the two transfer types, the average peak request rate would be:

PEAKreq = (11.5 Mreq/sec + 12.5 Mreq/sec) / 2 = 12.0 Mreq/sec

The minimum number of cycles to perform a single read/write, zero wait states on the system bus, from a cold start where no channel is executing and eDMA is idle are:

- 11 cycles for a software, that is, a TCD*n*_CSR[START] bit, request
- 12 cycles for a hardware, that is, an eDMA peripheral request signal, request

Two cycles account for the arbitration pipeline and one extra cycle on the hardware request resulting from the internal registering of the eDMA peripheral request signals. For the peak request rate calculations above, the arbitration and request registering is absorbed in or overlaps the previous executing channel.

Note

When channel linking or scatter/gather is enabled, a two cycle delay is imposed on the next channel selection and startup. This allows the link channel or the scatter/gather channel to be eligible and considered in the arbitration pool for next channel selection.

23.5 Initialization/application information

The following sections discuss initialization of the eDMA and programming considerations.

23.5.1 eDMA initialization

To initialize the eDMA:

1. Write to the CR if a configuration other than the default is desired.
2. Write the channel priority levels to the DCHPRI*n* registers if a configuration other than the default is desired.
3. Enable error interrupts in the EEI register if so desired.
4. Write the 32-byte TCD for each channel that may request service.

5. Enable any hardware service requests via the ERQ register.
6. Request channel service via either:
   - Software: setting the TCD*n*_CSR[START]
   - Hardware: slave device asserting its eDMA peripheral request signal

After any channel requests service, a channel is selected for execution based on the arbitration and priority levels written into the programmer's model. The eDMA engine reads the entire TCD, including the TCD control and status fields, as shown in the following table, for the selected channel into its internal address path module.

As the TCD is read, the first transfer is initiated on the internal bus, unless a configuration error is detected. Transfers from the source, as defined by TCD*n*_SADDR, to the destination, as defined by TCD*n*_DADDR, continue until the number of bytes specified by TCD*n*_NBYTES are transferred.

When the transfer is complete, the eDMA engine's local TCD*n*_SADDR, TCD*n*_DADDR, and TCD*n*_CITER are written back to the main TCD memory and any minor loop channel linking is performed, if enabled. If the major loop is exhausted, further post processing executes, such as interrupts, major loop channel linking, and scatter/gather operations, if enabled.

Table 23-8. TCD Control and Status fields

TCD*n*_CSR field name	Description
START	Control bit to start channel explicitly when using a software initiated DMA service (Automatically cleared by hardware)
ACTIVE	Status bit indicating the channel is currently in execution
DONE	Status bit indicating major loop completion (cleared by software when using a software initiated DMA service)
D_REQ	Control bit to disable DMA request at end of major loop completion when using a hardware initiated DMA service
BWC	Control bits for throttling bandwidth control of a channel
E_SG	Control bit to enable scatter-gather feature
INT_HALF	Control bit to enable interrupt when major loop is half complete
INT_MAJ	Control bit to enable interrupt when major loop completes

The following figure shows how each DMA request initiates one minor-loop transfer, or iteration, without CPU intervention. DMA arbitration can occur after each minor loop, and one level of minor loop DMA preemption is allowed. The number of minor loops in a major loop is specified by the beginning iteration count (BITER).

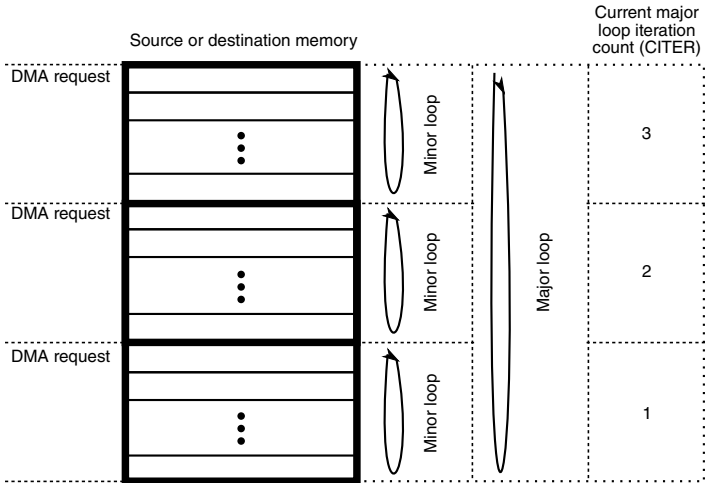


Figure 23-5. Example of multiple loop iterations

The following figure lists the memory array terms and how the TCD settings interrelate.

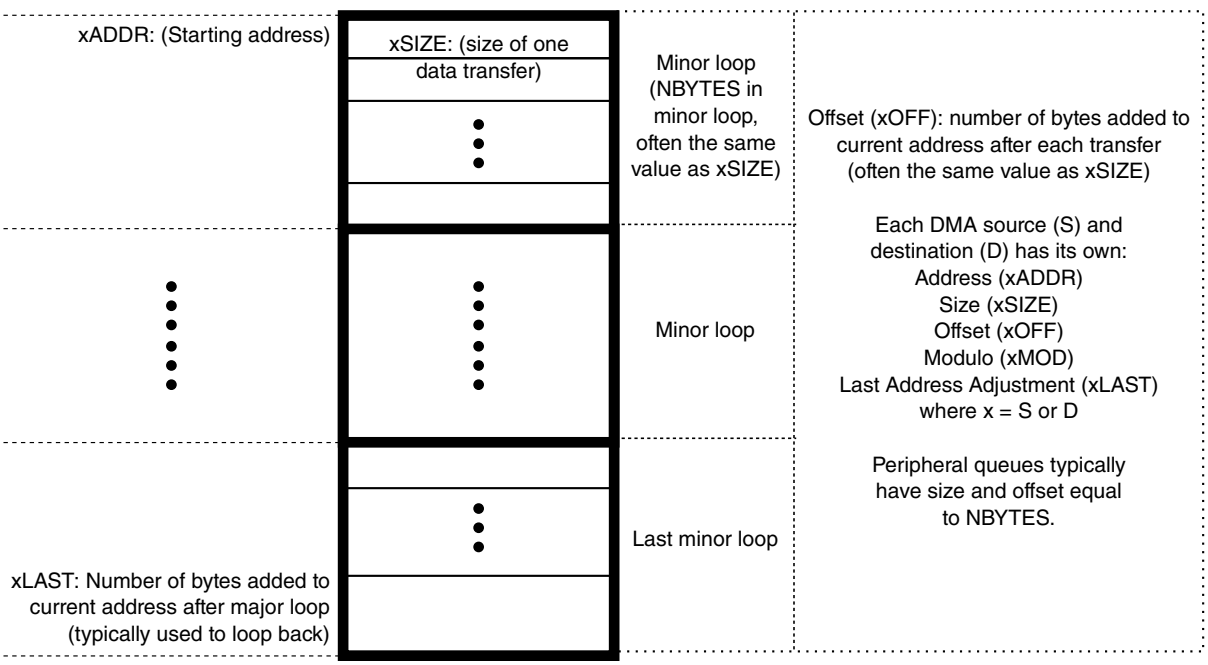


Figure 23-6. Memory array terms

23.5.2 Programming errors

The eDMA performs various tests on the transfer control descriptor to verify consistency in the descriptor data. Most programming errors are reported on a per channel basis with the exception of channel priority error (ES[CPE]).

For all error types other than channel priority error, the channel number causing the error is recorded in the Error Status register (DMAx_ES). If the error source is not removed before the next activation of the problem channel, the error is detected and recorded again.

If priority levels are not unique, when any channel requests service, a channel priority error is reported. The highest channel priority with an active request is selected, but the lowest numbered channel with that priority is selected by arbitration and executed by the eDMA engine. The hardware service request handshake signals, error interrupts, and error reporting is associated with the selected channel.

23.5.3 Arbitration mode considerations

This section discusses arbitration considerations for the eDMA.

23.5.3.1 Fixed channel arbitration

In this mode, the channel service request from the highest priority channel is selected to execute.

23.5.3.2 Round-robin channel arbitration

Channels are serviced starting with the highest channel number and rotating through to the lowest channel number without regard to the channel priority levels.

23.5.4 Performing DMA transfers

This section presents examples on how to perform DMA transfers with the eDMA.

23.5.4.1 Single request

To perform a simple transfer of n bytes of data with one activation, set the major loop to one (TCD*n*_CITER = TCD*n*_BITER = 1). The data transfer begins after the channel service request is acknowledged and the channel is selected to execute. After the transfer is complete, the TCD*n*_CSR[DONE] bit is set and an interrupt generates if properly enabled.

For example, the following TCD entry is configured to transfer 16 bytes of data. The eDMA is programmed for one iteration of the major loop transferring 16 bytes per iteration. The source memory has a byte wide memory port located at 0x1000. The destination memory has a 32-bit port located at 0x2000. The address offsets are programmed in increments to match the transfer size: one byte for the source and four bytes for the destination. The final source and destination addresses are adjusted to return to their beginning values.

```
TCDn_CITER = TCDn_BITER = 1
TCDn_NBYTES = 16
TCDn_SADDR = 0x1000
TCDn_SOFF = 1
TCDn_ATTR[SSIZE] = 0
TCDn_SLAST = -16
TCDn_DADDR = 0x2000
TCDn_DOFF = 4
TCDn_ATTR[DSIZE] = 2
TCDn_DLAST_SGA= -16
TCDn_CSR[INT_MAJ] = 1
TCDn_CSR[START] = 1 (Should be written last after all other fields have been initialized)
All other TCDn fields = 0
```

This generates the following event sequence:

1. User write to the TCD*n*_CSR[START] bit requests channel service.
2. The channel is selected by arbitration for servicing.
3. eDMA engine writes: TCD*n*_CSR[DONE] = 0, TCD*n*_CSR[START] = 0, TCD*n*_CSR[ACTIVE] = 1.
4. eDMA engine reads: channel TCD data from local memory to internal register file.
5. The source-to-destination transfers are executed as follows:
    a. Read byte from location 0x1000, read byte from location 0x1001, read byte from 0x1002, read byte from 0x1003.
    b. Write 32-bits to location 0x2000 → first iteration of the minor loop.
    c. Read byte from location 0x1004, read byte from location 0x1005, read byte from 0x1006, read byte from 0x1007.
    d. Write 32-bits to location 0x2004 → second iteration of the minor loop.
    e. Read byte from location 0x1008, read byte from location 0x1009, read byte from 0x100A, read byte from 0x100B.
    f. Write 32-bits to location 0x2008 → third iteration of the minor loop.
    g. Read byte from location 0x100C, read byte from location 0x100D, read byte from 0x100E, read byte from 0x100F.

h. Write 32-bits to location 0x200C → last iteration of the minor loop → major loop complete.

6. The eDMA engine writes: TCD*n*_SADDR = 0x1000, TCD*n*_DADDR = 0x2000, TCD*n*_CITER = 1 (TCD*n*_BITER).
7. The eDMA engine writes: TCD*n*_CSR[ACTIVE] = 0, TCD*n*_CSR[DONE] = 1, INT[*n*] = 1.
8. The channel retires and the eDMA goes idle or services the next channel.

23.5.4.2 Multiple requests

The following example transfers 32 bytes via two hardware requests, but is otherwise the same as the previous example. The only fields that change are the major loop iteration count and the final address offsets. The eDMA is programmed for two iterations of the major loop transferring 16 bytes per iteration. After the channel's hardware requests are enabled in the ERQ register, the slave device initiates channel service requests.

```
TCDn_CITER = TCDn_BITER = 2
TCDn_SLAST = -32
TCDn_DLAST_SGA = -32
```

This would generate the following sequence of events:

1. First hardware, that is, eDMA peripheral, request for channel service.
2. The channel is selected by arbitration for servicing.
3. eDMA engine writes: TCD*n*_CSR[DONE] = 0, TCD*n*_CSR[START] = 0, TCD*n*_CSR[ACTIVE] = 1.
4. eDMA engine reads: channel TCD*n* data from local memory to internal register file.
5. The source to destination transfers are executed as follows:
   a. Read byte from location 0x1000, read byte from location 0x1001, read byte from 0x1002, read byte from 0x1003.
   b. Write 32-bits to location 0x2000 → first iteration of the minor loop.
   c. Read byte from location 0x1004, read byte from location 0x1005, read byte from 0x1006, read byte from 0x1007.
   d. Write 32-bits to location 0x2004 → second iteration of the minor loop.
   e. Read byte from location 0x1008, read byte from location 0x1009, read byte from 0x100A, read byte from 0x100B.

f. Write 32-bits to location 0x2008 → third iteration of the minor loop.

g. Read byte from location 0x100C, read byte from location 0x100D, read byte from 0x100E, read byte from 0x100F.

h. Write 32-bits to location 0x200C → last iteration of the minor loop.

6. eDMA engine writes: TCD*n*_SADDR = 0x1010, TCD*n*_DADDR = 0x2010, TCD*n*_CITER = 1.
7. eDMA engine writes: TCD*n*_CSR[ACTIVE] = 0.
8. The channel retires → one iteration of the major loop. The eDMA goes idle or services the next channel.
9. Second hardware, that is, eDMA peripheral, requests channel service.
10. The channel is selected by arbitration for servicing.
11. eDMA engine writes: TCD*n*_CSR[DONE] = 0, TCD*n*_CSR[START] = 0, TCD*n*_CSR[ACTIVE] = 1.
12. eDMA engine reads: channel TCD data from local memory to internal register file.
13. The source to destination transfers are executed as follows:

    a. Read byte from location 0x1010, read byte from location 0x1011, read byte from 0x1012, read byte from 0x1013.

    b. Write 32-bits to location 0x2010 → first iteration of the minor loop.

    c. Read byte from location 0x1014, read byte from location 0x1015, read byte from 0x1016, read byte from 0x1017.

    d. Write 32-bits to location 0x2014 → second iteration of the minor loop.

    e. Read byte from location 0x1018, read byte from location 0x1019, read byte from 0x101A, read byte from 0x101B.

    f. Write 32-bits to location 0x2018 → third iteration of the minor loop.

    g. Read byte from location 0x101C, read byte from location 0x101D, read byte from 0x101E, read byte from 0x101F.

    h. Write 32-bits to location 0x201C → last iteration of the minor loop → major loop complete.

14. eDMA engine writes: TCD*n*_SADDR = 0x1000, TCD*n*_DADDR = 0x2000, TCD*n*_CITER = 2 (TCD*n*_BITER).

15. eDMA engine writes: TCD*n*_CSR[ACTIVE] = 0, TCD*n*_CSR[DONE] = 1, INT[n] = 1.
16. The channel retires → major loop complete. The eDMA goes idle or services the next channel.

23.5.4.3 Using the modulo feature

The modulo feature of the eDMA provides the ability to implement a circular data queue in which the size of the queue is a power of 2. MOD is a 5-bit field for the source and destination in the TCD, and it specifies which lower address bits increment from their original value after the address+offset calculation. All upper address bits remain the same as in the original value. A setting of 0 for this field disables the modulo feature.

The following table shows how the transfer addresses are specified based on the setting of the MOD field. Here a circular buffer is created where the address wraps to the original value while the 28 upper address bits (0x1234567*x*) retain their original value. In this example the source address is set to 0x12345670, the offset is set to 4 bytes and the MOD field is set to 4, allowing for a 2^4 byte (16-byte) size queue.

Table 23-9. Modulo example

Transfer Number	Address
1	0x12345670
2	0x12345674
3	0x12345678
4	0x1234567C
5	0x12345670
6	0x12345674

23.5.5 Monitoring transfer descriptor status

This section discusses how to monitor eDMA status.

23.5.5.1 Testing for minor loop completion

There are two methods to test for minor loop completion when using software initiated service requests. The first is to read the TCD*n*_CITER field and test for a change. Another method may be extracted from the sequence shown below. The second method is

to test the TCD*n*_CSR[START] bit and the TCD*n*_CSR[ACTIVE] bit. The minor-loop-complete condition is indicated by both bits reading zero after the TCD*n*_CSR[START] was set. Polling the TCD*n*_CSR[ACTIVE] bit may be inconclusive, because the active status may be missed if the channel execution is short in duration.

The TCD status bits execute the following sequence for a software activated channel:

Stage	TCD*n*_CSR bits			State
	START	ACTIVE	DONE	
1	1	0	0	Channel service request via software
2	0	1	0	Channel is executing
3a	0	0	0	Channel has completed the minor loop and is idle
3b	0	0	1	Channel has completed the major loop and is idle

The best method to test for minor-loop completion when using hardware, that is, peripheral, initiated service requests is to read the TCD*n*_CITER field and test for a change. The hardware request and acknowledge handshake signals are not visible in the programmer's model.

The TCD status bits execute the following sequence for a hardware-activated channel:

Stage	TCD*n*_CSR bits			State
	START	ACTIVE	DONE	
1	0	0	0	Channel service request via hardware (peripheral request asserted)
2	0	1	0	Channel is executing
3a	0	0	0	Channel has completed the minor loop and is idle
3b	0	0	1	Channel has completed the major loop and is idle

For both activation types, the major-loop-complete status is explicitly indicated via the TCD*n*_CSR[DONE] bit.

The TCD*n*_CSR[START] bit is cleared automatically when the channel begins execution regardless of how the channel activates.

23.5.5.2 Reading the transfer descriptors of active channels

The eDMA reads back the true TCD*n*_SADDR, TCD*n*_DADDR, and TCD*n*_NBYTES values if read while a channel executes. The true values of the SADDR, DADDR, and NBYTES are the values the eDMA engine currently uses in its internal register file and not the values in the TCD local memory for that channel. The addresses, SADDR and

DADDR, and NBYTES, which decrement to zero as the transfer progresses, can give an indication of the progress of the transfer. All other values are read back from the TCD local memory.

23.5.5.3 Checking channel preemption status

Preemption is available only when fixed arbitration is selected as the channel arbitration mode. A preemptive situation is one in which a preempt-enabled channel runs and a higher priority request becomes active. When the eDMA engine is not operating in fixed channel arbitration mode, the determination of the actively running relative priority outstanding requests become undefined. Channel priorities are treated as equal, that is, constantly rotating, when Round-Robin Arbitration mode is selected.

The TCD*n*_CSR[ACTIVE] bit for the preempted channel remains asserted throughout the preemption. The preempted channel is temporarily suspended while the preempting channel executes one major loop iteration. If two TCD*n*_CSR[ACTIVE] bits are set simultaneously in the global TCD map, a higher priority channel is actively preempting a lower priority channel.

23.5.6 Channel Linking

Channel linking (or chaining) is a mechanism where one channel sets the TCD*n*_CSR[START] bit of another channel (or itself), therefore initiating a service request for that channel. When properly enabled, the EDMA engine automatically performs this operation at the major or minor loop completion.

The minor loop channel linking occurs at the completion of the minor loop (or one iteration of the major loop). The TCD*n*_CITER[E_LINK] field determines whether a minor loop link is requested. When enabled, the channel link is made after each iteration of the major loop except for the last. When the major loop is exhausted, only the major loop channel link fields are used to determine if a channel link should be made. For example, the initial fields of:

```
TCDn_CITER[E_LINK] = 1
TCDn_CITER[LINKCH] = 0xC
TCDn_CITER[CITER] value = 0x4
TCDn_CSR[MAJOR_E_LINK] = 1
TCDn_CSR[MAJOR_LINKCH] = 0x7
```

executes as:

1. Minor loop done → set TCD12_CSR[START] bit

2. Minor loop done → set TCD12_CSR[START] bit
3. Minor loop done → set TCD12_CSR[START] bit
4. Minor loop done, major loop done→ set TCD7_CSR[START] bit

When minor loop linking is enabled (TCD*n*_CITER[E_LINK] = 1), the TCD*n*_CITER[CITER] field uses a nine bit vector to form the current iteration count. When minor loop linking is disabled (TCD*n*_CITER[E_LINK] = 0), the TCD*n*_CITER[CITER] field uses a 15-bit vector to form the current iteration count. The bits associated with the TCD*n*_CITER[LINKCH] field are concatenated onto the CITER value to increase the range of the CITER.

Note

The TCD*n*_CITER[E_LINK] bit and the TCD*n*_BITER[E_LINK] bit must equal or a configuration error is reported. The CITER and BITER vector widths must be equal to calculate the major loop, half-way done interrupt point.

The following table summarizes how a DMA channel can link to another DMA channel, i.e, use another channel's TCD, at the end of a loop.

Table 23-10. Channel Linking Parameters

Desired Link Behavior	TCD Control Field Name	Description
Link at end of Minor Loop	CITER[E_LINK]	Enable channel-to-channel linking on minor loop completion (current iteration)
	CITER[LINKCH]	Link channel number when linking at end of minor loop (current iteration)
Link at end of Major Loop	CSR[MAJOR_E_LINK]	Enable channel-to-channel linking on major loop completion
	CSR[MAJOR_LINKCH]	Link channel number when linking at end of major loop

23.5.7 Dynamic programming

This section provides recommended methods to change the programming model during channel execution.

23.5.7.1 Dynamically changing the channel priority

The following two options are recommended for dynamically changing channel priority levels:

1. Switch to Round-Robin Channel Arbitration mode, change the channel priorities, then switch back to Fixed Arbitration mode,
2. Disable all the channels, change the channel priorities, then enable the appropriate channels.

23.5.7.2 Dynamic channel linking

Dynamic channel linking is the process of setting the TCD.major.e_link bit during channel execution (see the diagram in TCD structure). This bit is read from the TCD local memory at the end of channel execution, thus allowing the user to enable the feature during channel execution.

Because the user is allowed to change the configuration during execution, a coherency model is needed. Consider the scenario where the user attempts to execute a dynamic channel link by enabling the TCD.major.e_link bit at the same time the eDMA engine is retiring the channel. The TCD.major.e_link would be set in the programmer's model, but it would be unclear whether the actual link was made before the channel retired.

The following coherency model is recommended when executing a dynamic channel link request.

1. Write 1 to the TCD.major.e_link bit.
2. Read back the TCD.major.e_link bit.
3. Test the TCD.major.e_link request status:
   - If TCD.major.e_link = 1, the dynamic link attempt was successful.
   - If TCD.major.e_link = 0, the attempted dynamic link did not succeed (the channel was already retiring).

For this request, the TCD local memory controller forces the TCD.major.e_link bit to zero on any writes to a channel's TCD.word7 after that channel's TCD.done bit is set, indicating the major loop is complete.

NOTE

The user must clear the TCD.done bit before writing the TCD.major.e_link bit. The TCD.done bit is cleared automatically by the eDMA engine after a channel begins execution.

23.5.7.3 Dynamic scatter/gather

Scatter/gather is the process of automatically loading a new TCD into a channel. It allows a DMA channel to use multiple TCDs; this enables a DMA channel to scatter the DMA data to multiple destinations or gather it from multiple sources.When scatter/gather is enabled and the channel has finished its major loop, a new TCD is fetched from system memory and loaded into that channel's descriptor location in eDMA programmer's model, thus replacing the current descriptor.

Because the user is allowed to change the configuration during execution, a coherency model is needed. Consider the scenario where the user attempts to execute a dynamic scatter/gather operation by enabling the TCD.e_sg bit at the same time the eDMA engine is retiring the channel. The TCD.e_sg would be set in the programmer's model, but it would be unclear whether the actual scatter/gather request was honored before the channel retired.

Two methods for this coherency model are shown in the following subsections. Method 1 has the advantage of reading the major.linkch field and the e_sg bit with a single read. For both dynamic channel linking and scatter/gather requests, the TCD local memory controller forces the TCD.major.e_link and TCD.e_sg bits to zero on any writes to a channel's TCD.word7 if that channel's TCD.done bit is set indicating the major loop is complete.

NOTE

The user must clear the TCD.done bit before writing the TCD.major.e_link or TCD.e_sg bits. The TCD.done bit is cleared automatically by the eDMA engine after a channel begins execution.

23.5.7.3.1 Method 1 (channel not using major loop channel linking)

For a channel not using major loop channel linking, the coherency model described here may be used for a dynamic scatter/gather request.

When the TCD.major.e_link bit is zero, the TCD.major.linkch field is not used by the eDMA. In this case, the TCD.major.linkch bits may be used for other purposes. This method uses the TCD.major.linkch field as a TCD indentification (ID).

1. When the descriptors are built, write a unique TCD ID in the TCD.major.linkch field for each TCD associated with a channel using dynamic scatter/gather.
2. Write 1b to the TCD.d_req bit.

Should a dynamic scatter/gather attempt fail, setting the TCD.d_req bit will prevent a future hardware activation of this channel. This stops the channel from executing with a destination address (daddr) that was calculated using a scatter/gather address (written in the next step) instead of a dlast final offest value.

3. Write the TCD.dlast_sga field with the scatter/gather address.
4. Write 1b to the TCD.e_sg bit.
5. Read back the 16 bit TCD control/status field.
6. Test the TCD.e_sg request status and TCD.major.linkch value:

   If e_sg = 1b, the dynamic link attempt was successful.

   If e_sg = 0b and the major.linkch (ID) did not change, the attempted dynamic link did not succeed (the channel was already retiring).

   If e_sg = 0b and the major.linkch (ID) changed, the dynamic link attempt was successful (the new TCD's e_sg value cleared the e_sg bit).

23.5.7.3.2 Method 2 (channel using major loop channel linking)

For a channel using major loop channel linking, the coherency model described here may be used for a dynamic scatter/gather request. This method uses the TCD.dlast_sga field as a TCD indentification (ID).

1. Write 1b to the TCD.d_req bit.

   Should a dynamic scatter/gather attempt fail, setting the d_req bit will prevent a future hardware activation of this channel. This stops the channel from executing with a destination address (daddr) that was calculated using a scatter/gather address (written in the next step) instead of a dlast final offest value.

2. Write theTCD.dlast_sga field with the scatter/gather address.
3. Write 1b to the TCD.e_sg bit.
4. Read back the TCD.e_sg bit.
5. Test the TCD.e_sg request status:

   If e_sg = 1b, the dynamic link attempt was successful.

   If e_sg = 0b, read the 32 bit TCD dlast_sga field.

   If e_sg = 0b and the dlast_sga did not change, the attempted dynamic link did not succeed (the channel was already retiring).

If e_sg = 0b and the dlast_sga changed, the dynamic link attempt was successful (the new TCD's e_sg value cleared the e_sg bit).

Chapter 24
External Watchdog Monitor (EWM)

24.1 Chip-specific Information for this Module

24.1.1 EWM clocks

This table shows the EWM clocks and the corresponding chip clocks.

Table 24-1. EWM clock connections

Module clock	Chip clock
Low Power Clock	1 kHz LPO Clock

24.1.2 EWM low-power modes

This table shows the EWM low-power modes and the corresponding chip low-power modes.

Table 24-2. EWM low-power modes

Module mode	Chip mode
Wait	Wait, VLPW
Stop	Stop, VLPS, LLS

24.1.3 $\overline{\text{EWM\_OUT}}$ pin state in low power modes

When the CPU enters a Run mode from Wait or Stop recovery, the pin resumes its previous state before entering Wait or Stop mode. When the CPU enters Run mode from Power Down, the pin returns to its reset state.

24.2 Introduction

For safety, a redundant watchdog system, External Watchdog Monitor (EWM), is designed to monitor external circuits, as well as the MCU software flow. This provides a back-up mechanism to the internal watchdog that resets the MCU's CPU and peripherals.

The watchdog is generally used to monitor the flow and execution of embedded software within an MCU. The watchdog consists of a counter that if allowed to overflow, forces an internal reset (asynchronous) to all on-chip peripherals and optionally assert the $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin to reset external devices/circuits. The overflow of the watchdog counter must not occur if the software code works well and services the watchdog to re-start the actual counter.

The EWM differs from the internal watchdog in that it does not reset the MCU's CPU and peripherals. The EWM provides an independent $\overline{\text{EWM\_out}}$ signal that when asserted resets or places an external circuit into a safe mode. The $\overline{\text{EWM\_out}}$ signal is asserted upon the EWM counter time-out. An optional external input EWM_in is provided to allow additional control of the assertion of $\overline{\text{EWM\_out}}$ signal.

24.2.1 Features

Features of EWM module include:

- Independent LPO_CLK clock source
- Programmable time-out period specified in terms of number of EWM LPO_CLK clock cycles.
- Windowed refresh option
  - Provides robust check that program flow is faster than expected.
  - Programmable window.
  - Refresh outside window leads to assertion of $\overline{\text{EWM\_out}}$.
- Robust refresh mechanism
  - Write values of 0xB4 and 0x2C to EWM Refresh Register within 15 (*EWM_refresh_time*) peripheral bus clock cycles.

- One output port, $\overline{\text{EWM\_out}}$, when asserted is used to reset or place the external circuit into safe mode.
- One Input port, EWM_in, allows an external circuit to control the assertion of the $\overline{\text{EWM\_out}}$ signal.

24.2.2 Modes of Operation

This section describes the module's operating modes.

24.2.2.1 Stop Mode

When the EWM is in stop mode, the CPU refreshes to the EWM cannot occur. On entry to stop mode, the EWM's counter freezes.

There are two possible ways to exit from Stop mode:

- On exit from stop mode through a reset, the EWM remains disabled.
- On exit from stop mode by an interrupt, the EWM is re-enabled, and the counter continues to be clocked from the same value prior to entry to stop mode.

Note the following if the EWM enters the stop mode during CPU refresh mechanism: At the exit from stop mode by an interrupt, refresh mechanism state machine starts from the previous state which means, if first refresh command is written correctly and EWM enters the stop mode immediately, the next command has to be written within the next 15 (*EWM_refresh_time*) peripheral bus clocks after exiting from stop mode. User must mask all interrupts prior to executing EWM refresh instructions.

24.2.2.2 Wait Mode

The EWM module treats the stop and wait modes as the same. EWM functionality remains the same in both of these modes.

24.2.2.3 Debug Mode

Entry to debug mode has no effect on the EWM.

- If the EWM is enabled prior to entry of debug mode, it remains enabled.
- If the EWM is disabled prior to entry of debug mode, it remains disabled.

24.2.3 Block Diagram

This figure shows the EWM block diagram.

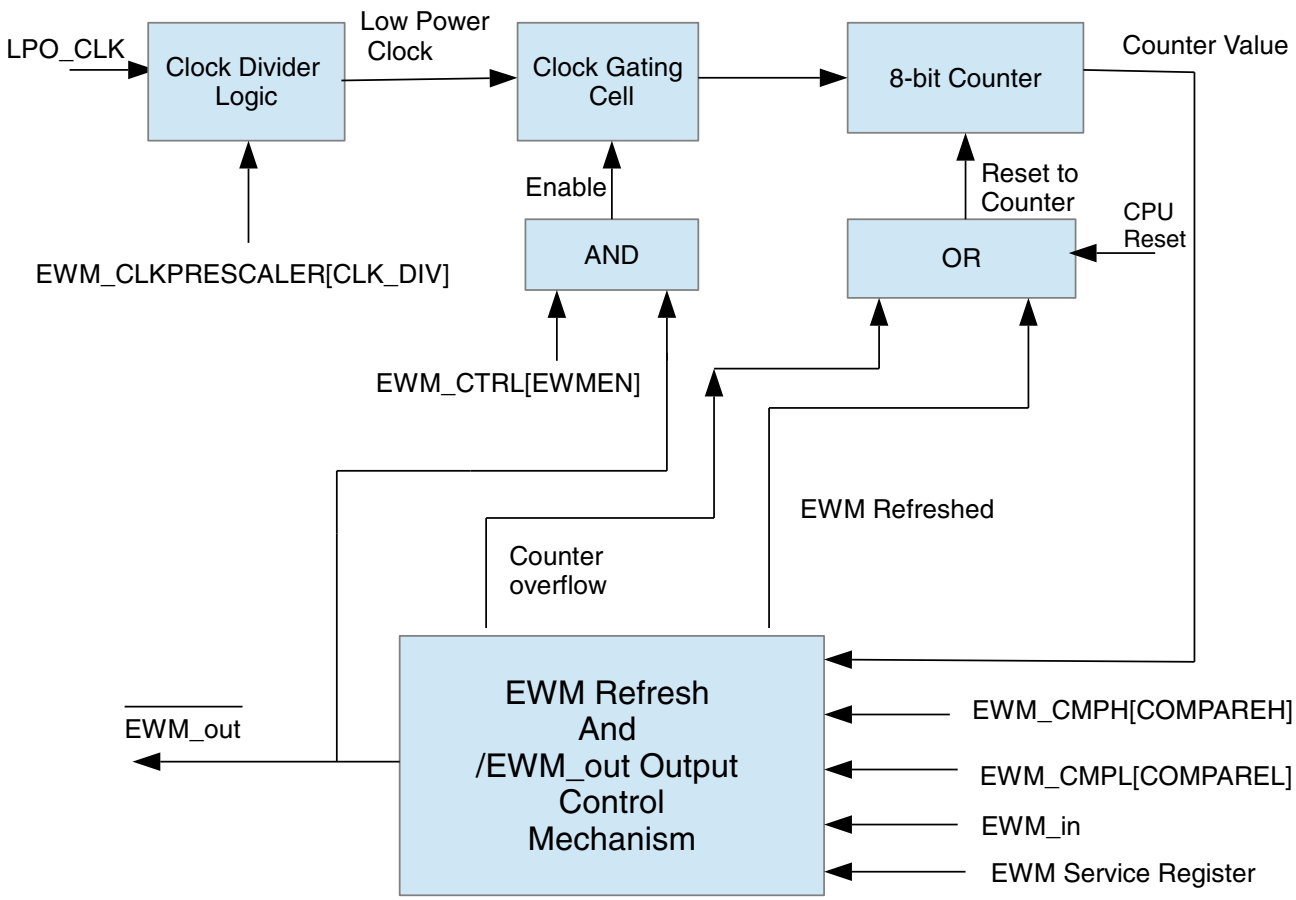


Figure 24-1. EWM Block Diagram

24.3 EWM Signal Descriptions

The EWM has two external signals, as shown in the following table.

Table 24-3. EWM Signal Descriptions

Signal	Description	I/O
EWM_in	EWM input for safety status of external safety circuits. The polarity of EWM_in is programmable using the EWM_CTRL[ASSIN] bit. The default polarity is active-low.	I
$\overline{\text{EWM\_out}}$	EWM reset out signal	O

24.4 Memory Map/Register Definition

This section contains the module memory map and registers.

EWM memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4006_1000	Control Register (EWM_CTRL)	8	R/W	00h	24.4.1/469
4006_1001	Service Register (EWM_SERV)	8	W (always reads 0)	00h	24.4.2/470
4006_1002	Compare Low Register (EWM_CMPL)	8	R/W	00h	24.4.3/470
4006_1003	Compare High Register (EWM_CMPH)	8	R/W	FFh	24.4.4/471
4006_1005	Clock Prescaler Register (EWM_CLKPRESCALER)	8	R/W	00h	24.4.5/472

24.4.1 Control Register (EWM_CTRL)

The CTRL register is cleared by any reset.

NOTE

INEN, ASSIN and EWMEN bits can be written once after a CPU reset. Modifying these bits more than once, generates a bus transfer error.

Address: 4006_1000h base + 0h offset = 4006_1000h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0				INTEN	INEN	ASSIN	EWMEN
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

EWM_CTRL field descriptions

Field	Description
7–4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
3 INTEN	Interrupt Enable. This bit when set and $\overline{\text{EWM\_out}}$ is asserted, an interrupt request is generated. To de-assert interrupt request, user should clear this bit by writing 0.
2 INEN	Input Enable. This bit when set, enables the EWM_in port.
1 ASSIN	EWM_in's Assertion State Select. Default assert state of the EWM_in signal is logic zero. Setting the ASSIN bit inverts the assert state of EWM_in signal to a logic one.
0 EWMEN	EWM enable. This bit when set, enables the EWM module. This resets the EWM counter to zero and deasserts the $\overline{\text{EWM\_out}}$ signal. This bit when unset, keeps the EWM module disabled. It cannot be re-enabled until a next reset, due to the write-once nature of this bit.

24.4.2 Service Register (EWM_SERV)

The SERV register provides the interface from the CPU to the EWM module. It is write-only and reads of this register return zero.

Address: 4006_1000h base + 1h offset = 4006_1001h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0							
Write	SERVICE							
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

EWM_SERV field descriptions

Field	Description
SERVICE	The EWM refresh mechanism requires the CPU to write two values to the SERV register: a first data byte of 0xB4, followed by a second data byte of 0x2C. The EWM refresh is invalid if either of the following conditions is true. • The first or second data byte is not written correctly. • The second data byte is not written within a fixed number of peripheral bus cycles of the first data byte. This fixed number of cycles is called *EWM_refresh_time*.

24.4.3 Compare Low Register (EWM_CMPL)

The CMPL register is reset to zero after a CPU reset. This provides no minimum time for the CPU to refresh the EWM counter.

NOTE

This register can be written only once after a CPU reset. Writing this register more than once generates a bus transfer error.

Address: 4006_1000h base + 2h offset = 4006_1002h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	COMPAREL							
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

EWM_CMPL field descriptions

Field	Description
COMPAREL	To prevent runaway code from changing this field, software should write to this field after a CPU reset even if the (default) minimum refresh time is required.

24.4.4 Compare High Register (EWM_CMPH)

The CMPH register is reset to 0xFF after a CPU reset. This provides a maximum of 256 clocks time, for the CPU to refresh the EWM counter.

NOTE

This register can be written only once after a CPU reset. Writing this register more than once generates a bus transfer error.

NOTE

The valid values for CMPH are up to 0xFE because the EWM counter never expires when CMPH = 0xFF. The expiration happens only if EWM counter is greater than CMPH.

Address: 4006_1000h base + 3h offset = 4006_1003h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	COMPAREH							
Reset	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1

EWM_CMPH field descriptions

Field	Description
COMPAREH	To prevent runaway code from changing this field, software should write to this field after a CPU reset even if the (default) maximum refresh time is required.

24.4.5 Clock Prescaler Register (EWM_CLKPRESCALER)

This CLKPRESCALER register is reset to 0x00 after a CPU reset.

NOTE

This register can be written only once after a CPU reset. Writing this register more than once generates a bus transfer error.

NOTE

Write the required prescaler value before enabling the EWM.

NOTE

The implementation of this register is chip-specific. See the Chip Configuration details.

Address: 4006_1000h base + 5h offset = 4006_1005h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	CLK_DIV							
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

EWM_CLKPRESCALER field descriptions

Field	Description
CLK_DIV	Selected low power clock source for running the EWM counter can be prescaled as below. • Prescaled clock frequency = low power clock source frequency / (1 + CLK_DIV)

24.5 Functional Description

The following sections describe functional details of the EWM module.

NOTE

When the BUS_CLK is lost, then EWM module doesn't generate the $\overline{\text{EWM\_out}}$ signal and no refresh operation is possible

24.5.1 The $\overline{\text{EWM\_out}}$ Signal

The $\overline{\text{EWM\_out}}$ is a digital output signal used to gate an external circuit (application specific) that controls critical safety functions. For example, the $\overline{\text{EWM\_out}}$ could be connected to the high voltage transistors circuits that control an AC motor in a large appliance.

The $\overline{\text{EWM\_out}}$ signal remains deasserted when the EWM is being regularly refreshed by the CPU within the programmable refresh window, indicating that the application code is executed as expected.

The $\overline{\text{EWM\_out}}$ signal is asserted in any of the following conditions:

- The EWM refresh occurs when the counter value is less than CMPL value.
- The EWM counter value reaches the CMPH value, and no EWM refresh has occurred.
- If functionality of EWM_in pin is enabled and EWM_in pin is asserted while refreshing the EWM.
- After any reset (by the virtue of the external pull-down mechanism on the $\overline{\text{EWM\_out}}$ pin)

The $\overline{\text{EWM\_out}}$ is asserted after any reset by the virtue of the external pull-down mechanism on the $\overline{\text{EWM\_out}}$ signal. Then, to deassert the $\overline{\text{EWM\_out}}$ signal, set EWMEN bit in the CTRL register to enable the EWM.

If the $\overline{\text{EWM\_out}}$ signal shares its pad with a digital I/O pin, on reset this actual pad defers to being an input signal. The pad state is controlled by the $\overline{\text{EWM\_out}}$ signal only after the EWM is enabled by the EWMEN bit in the CTRL register.

Note

$\overline{\text{EWM\_out}}$ pad must be in pull down state when EWM functionality is used and when EWM is under Reset.

24.5.2 The EWM_in Signal

The EWM_in is a digital input signal for safety status of external safety circuits, that allows an external circuit to control the assertion of the $\overline{\text{EWM\_out}}$ signal. For example, in the application, an external circuit monitors a critical safety function, and if there is fault with safety function, the external circuit can then actively initiate the $\overline{\text{EWM\_out}}$ signal that controls the gating circuit.

The EWM_in signal is ignored if the EWM is disabled, or if INEN bit of CTRL register is cleared, as after any reset.

On enabling the EWM (setting the CTRL[EWMEN] bit) and enabling EWM_in functionality (setting the CTRL[INEN] bit), the EWM_in signal must be in the deasserted state prior to the CPU start refreshing the EWM. This ensures that the $\overline{\text{EWM\_out}}$ stays in the deasserted state; otherwise, the $\overline{\text{EWM\_out}}$ output signal is asserted.

Note

The user must update the CMPH and CMPL registers prior to enabling the EWM. After enabling the EWM, the counter resets to zero, therefore the user shall provide a reasonable time after a power-on reset for the external monitoring circuit to stabilize. The user shall also ensure that the EWM_in pin is deasserted.

24.5.3 EWM Counter

It is an 8-bit ripple counter fed from a clock source that is independent of the peripheral bus clock source. As the preferred time-out is between 1 ms and 100 ms the actual clock source should be in the kHz range.

The counter is reset to zero after the CPU reset, or when EWM refresh action completes, or at counter overflow. The counter value is not accessible to the CPU.

24.5.4 EWM Compare Registers

The compare registers CMPL and CMPH are write-once after a CPU reset and cannot be modified until another CPU reset occurs.

The EWM compare registers are used to create a refresh window to refresh the EWM module.

It is illegal to program CMPL and CMPH with same value. In this case, as soon as counter reaches (CMPL + 1), $\overline{\text{EWM\_out}}$ is asserted.

24.5.5 EWM Refresh Mechanism

Other than the initial configuration of the EWM, the CPU can only access the EWM by the EWM Service Register. The CPU must access the EWM service register with correct write of unique data within the windowed time frame as determined by the CMPL and CMPH registers for correct EWM refresh operation. Therefore, three possible conditions can occur:

Table 24-4. EWM Refresh Mechanisms

Condition	Mechanism
An EWM refresh action completes when: CMPL < Counter < CMPH.	The software behaves as expected and the EWM counter is reset to zero. The $\overline{\text{EWM\_out}}$ output signal remains in the deasserted state if, during the EWM refresh action, the EWM_in input has been in deasserted state..
An EWM refresh action completes when Counter < CMPL	The software refreshes the EWM before the windowed time frame, the counter is reset to zero and the $\overline{\text{EWM\_out}}$ output signal is asserted irrespective of the input $\overline{\text{EWM\_in}}$.
Counter value reaches CMPH prior to completion of EWM refresh action.	Software has not refreshed the EWM. The EWM counter is reset to zero and the $\overline{\text{EWM\_out}}$ output signal is asserted irrespective of the input $\overline{\text{EWM\_in}}$.

24.5.6 EWM Interrupt

When $\overline{\text{EWM\_out}}$ is asserted, an interrupt request is generated to indicate the assertion of the EWM reset out signal. This interrupt is enabled when CTRL[INTEN] is set. Clearing this bit clears the interrupt request but does not affect $\overline{\text{EWM\_out}}$. The $\overline{\text{EWM\_out}}$ signal can be deasserted only by forcing a system reset.

24.5.7 Counter clock prescaler

The EWM counter clock source can be prescaled by a clock divider, by programming CLKPRESCALER[CLK_DIV]. This divided clock is used to run the EWM counter.

NOTE

The divided clock used to run the EWM counter must be no more than half the frequency of the bus clock.

Chapter 25
Watchdog timer (WDOG)

25.1 Chip-specific Information for this Module

25.1.1 WDOG clocks

This table shows the WDOG module clocks and the corresponding chip clocks.

Table 25-1. WDOG clock connections

Module clock	Chip clock
LPO Oscillator	1 kHz LPO Clock
Alt Clock	Bus Clock
Fast Test Clock	Bus Clock
System Bus Clock	Bus Clock

25.1.2 WDOG low-power modes

This table shows the WDOG low-power modes and the corresponding chip low-power modes.

Table 25-2. WDOG low-power modes

Module mode	Chip mode
Wait	Wait, VLPW
Stop	Stop, VLPS
Power Down	LLS, VLLSx

25.2 Introduction

The Watchdog Timer (WDOG) keeps a watch on the system functioning and resets it in case of its failure. Reasons for failure include run-away software code and the stoppage of the system clock that in a safety critical system can lead to serious consequences. In such cases, the watchdog brings the system into a safe state of operation. The watchdog monitors the operation of the system by expecting periodic communication from the software, generally known as servicing or refreshing the watchdog. If this periodic refreshing does not occur, the watchdog resets the system.

25.3 Features

The features of the Watchdog Timer (WDOG) include:

- Clock source input independent from CPU/bus clock. Choice between two clock sources:
  - Low-power oscillator (LPO)
  - External system clock
- Unlock sequence for allowing updates to write-once WDOG control/configuration bits.
- All WDOG control/configuration bits are writable once only within 256 bus clock cycles of being unlocked.
  - You need to always update these bits after unlocking within 256 bus clock cycles. Failure to update these bits resets the system.
- Programmable time-out period specified in terms of number of WDOG clock cycles.
- Ability to test WDOG timer and reset with a flag indicating watchdog test.
  - Quick test—Small time-out value programmed for quick test.
  - Byte test—Individual bytes of timer tested one at a time.
  - Read-only access to the WDOG timer—Allows dynamic check that WDOG timer is operational.

NOTE

Reading the watchdog timer counter while running the watchdog on the bus clock might not give the accurate counter value.

- Windowed refresh option
  - Provides robust check that program flow is faster than expected.
  - Programmable window.
  - Refresh outside window leads to reset.
- Robust refresh mechanism
  - Write values of 0xA602 and 0xB480 to WDOG Refresh Register within 20 bus clock cycles.
- Count of WDOG resets as they occur.
- Configurable interrupt on time-out to provide debug breadcrumbs. This is followed by a reset after 256 bus clock cycles.

25.4 Functional overview

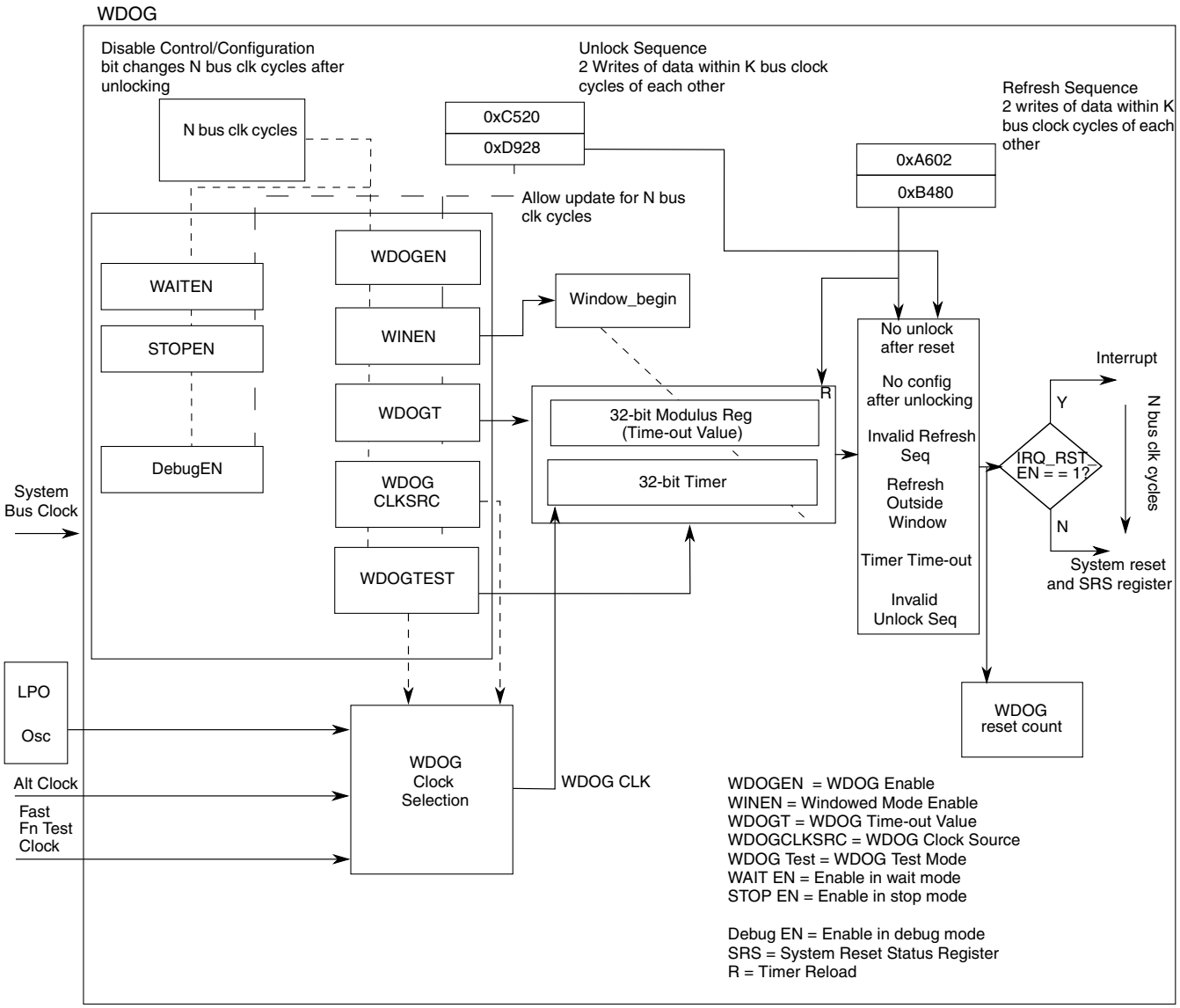


Figure 25-1. WDOG operation

The preceding figure shows the operation of the watchdog. The values for N and K are:

- N = 256
- K = 20

The watchdog is a fail safe mechanism that brings the system into a known initial state in case of its failure due to CPU clock stopping or a run-away condition in code execution. In its simplest form, the watchdog timer runs continuously off a clock source and expects to be serviced periodically, failing which it resets the system. This ensures that the software is executing correctly and has not run away in an unintended direction. Software can adjust the period of servicing or the time-out value for the watchdog timer to meet the needs of the application.

You can select a windowed mode of operation that expects the servicing to be done only in a particular window of the time-out period. An attempted servicing of the watchdog outside this window results in a reset. By operating in this mode, you can get an indication of whether the code is running faster than expected. The window length is also user programmable.

If a system fails to update/refresh the watchdog due to an unknown and persistent cause, it will be caught in an endless cycle of resets from the watchdog. To analyze the cause of such conditions, you can program the watchdog to first issue an interrupt, followed by a reset. In the interrupt service routine, the software can analyze the system stack to aid debugging.

To enhance the independence of watchdog from the system, it runs off an independent LPO oscillator clock. You can also switch over to an alternate clock source if required, through a control register bit.

25.4.1 Unlocking and updating the watchdog

As long as ALLOW_UPDATE in the watchdog control register is set, you can unlock and modify the write-once-only control and configuration registers:

1. Write 0xC520 followed by 0xD928 within 20 bus clock cycles to a specific unlock register (WDOG_UNLOCK).
2. Wait one bus clock cycle. You cannot update registers on the bus clock cycle immediately following the write of the unlock sequence.
3. An update window equal in length to the watchdog configuration time (WCT) opens. Within this window, you can update the configuration and control register bits.

These register bits can be modified only once after unlocking.

If none of the configuration and control registers is updated within the update window, the watchdog issues a reset, that is, interrupt-then-reset, to the system. Trying to unlock the watchdog within the WCT after an initial unlock has no effect. During the update operation, the watchdog timer is not paused and continues running in the background. After the update window closes, the watchdog timer restarts and the watchdog functions according to the new configuration.

The update feature is useful for applications that have an initial, non-safety critical part, where the watchdog is kept disabled or with a conveniently long time-out period. This means the application coder does not have to frequently service the watchdog. After the critical part of the application begins, the watchdog can be reconfigured as needed.

The watchdog issues a reset, that is, interrupt-then-reset if enabled, to the system for any of these invalid unlock sequences:

- Write any value other than 0xC520 or 0xD928 to the unlock register.
- ALLOW_UPDATE is set and a gap of more than 20 bus clock cycles is inserted between the writing of the unlock sequence values.

An attempted refresh operation between the two writes of the unlock sequence and in the WCT time following a successful unlock, goes undetected. Also, see Watchdog Operation with 8-bit access for guidelines related to 8-bit accesses to the unlock register.

Note

A context switch during unlocking and refreshing may lead to a watchdog reset.

25.4.2 Watchdog configuration time (WCT)

To prevent unintended modification of the watchdog's control and configuration register bits, you are allowed to update them only within a period of 256 bus clock cycles after unlocking. This period is known as the watchdog configuration time (WCT). In addition, these register bits can be modified only once after unlocking them for editing, even after reset.

You must unlock the registers within WCT after system reset, failing which the WDOG issues a reset to the system. In other words, you must write at least the first word of the unlocking sequence within the WCT after reset. After this is done, you have a further 20 bus clock cycles, the maximum allowed gap between the words of the unlock sequence, to complete the unlocking operation. Thereafter, to make sure that you do not forget to configure the watchdog, the watchdog issues a reset if none of the WDOG control and configuration registers is updated in the WCT after unlock. After the close of this window or after the first write, these register bits are locked out from any further changes.

The watchdog timer keeps running according to its default configuration through unlocking and update operations that can extend up to a maximum total of 2xWCT + 20 bus clock cycles. Therefore, it must be ensured that the time-out value for the watchdog is always greater than 2xWCT time + 20 bus clock cycles.

Updates in the write-once registers take effect only after the WCT window closes with the following exceptions for which changes take effect immediately:

- Stop, Wait, and Debug mode enable
- IRQ_RST_EN

The operations of refreshing the watchdog goes undetected during the WCT.

25.4.3 Refreshing the watchdog

A robust refreshing mechanism has been chosen for the watchdog. A valid refresh is a write of 0xA602 followed by 0xB480 within 20 bus clock cycles to watchdog refresh register. If these two values are written more than 20 bus cycles apart or if something other than these two values is written to the register, a watchdog reset, or interrupt-then-reset if enabled, is issued to the system. A valid refresh makes the watchdog timer restart on the next bus clock. Also, an attempted unlock operation in between the two writes of the refresh sequence goes undetected. See Watchdog Operation with 8-bit access for guidelines related to 8-bit accesses to the refresh register.

25.4.4 Windowed mode of operation

In this mode of operation, a restriction is placed on the point in time within the time-out period at which the watchdog can be refreshed. The refresh is considered valid only when the watchdog timer increments beyond a certain count as specified by the watchdog window register. This is known as refreshing the watchdog within a window of the total time-out period. If a refresh is attempted before the timer reaches the window value, the watchdog generates a reset, or interrupt-then-reset if enabled. If there is no refresh at all, the watchdog times out and generates a reset or interrupt-then-reset if enabled.

25.4.5 Watchdog disabled mode of operation

When the watchdog is disabled through the WDOG_EN bit in the watchdog status and control register, the watchdog timer is reset to zero and is disabled from counting until you enable it or it is enabled again by the system reset. In this mode, the watchdog timer cannot be refreshed–there is no requirement to do so while the timer is disabled. However, the watchdog still generates a reset, or interrupt-then-reset if enabled, on a non-time-out exception. See Generated Resets and Interrupts. You need to unlock the watchdog before enabling it. A system reset brings the watchdog out of the disabled mode.

25.4.6 Debug modes of operation

You can program the watchdog to disable in debug modes through DBG_EN in the watchdog control register. This results in the watchdog timer pausing for the duration of the mode. Register read/writes are still allowed, which means that operations like refresh, unlock, and so on are allowed. Upon exit from the mode, the timer resumes its operation from the point of pausing.

The entry of the system into the mode does not excuse it from compulsorily configuring the watchdog in the WCT time after unlock, unless the system bus clock is gated off, in which case the internal state machine pauses too. Failing to do so still results in a reset, or interrupt-then-reset, if enabled, to the system. Also, all of the exception conditions that result in a reset to the system, as described in Generated Resets and Interrupts, are still valid in mode. So, if an exception condition occurs and the system bus clock is on, a reset occurs, or interrupt-then-reset, if enabled.

The entry into Debug mode within WCT after reset is treated differently. The WDOG timer is kept reset to zero and there is no need to unlock and configure it within WCT. You must not try to refresh or unlock the WDOG in this state or unknown behavior may result. Upon exit from mode, the WDOG timer restarts and the WDOG has to be unlocked and configured within WCT.

25.5 Testing the watchdog

For IEC 60730 and other safety standards, the expectation is that anything that monitors a safety function must be tested, and this test is required to be fault tolerant. To test the watchdog, its main timer and its associated compare and reset logic must be tested. To this end, two tests are implemented for the watchdog, as described in Quick Test and Byte Test. A control bit is provided to put the watchdog into functional test mode. There is also an overriding test-disable control bit which allows the functional test mode to be disabled permanently. After it is set, this test-disable bit can only be cleared by a reset.

These two tests achieve the overall aim of testing the counter functioning and the compare and reset logic.

Note

Do not enable the watchdog interrupt during these tests. If required, you must ensure that the effective time-out value is greater than WCT time. See Generated Resets and Interrupts for more details.

To run a particular test:

1. Select either quick test or byte test..
2. Set a certain test mode bit to put the watchdog in the functional test mode. Setting this bit automatically switches the watchdog timer to a fast clock source. The switching of the clock source is done to achieve a faster time-out and hence a faster test.

In a successful test, the timer times out after reaching the programmed time-out value and generates a system reset.

Note

After emerging from a reset due to a watchdog test, unlock and configure the watchdog. The refresh and unlock operations and interrupt are not automatically disabled in the test mode.

25.5.1 Quick test

In this test, the time-out value of watchdog timer is programmed to a very low value to achieve quick time-out. The only difference between the quick test and the normal mode of the watchdog is that TESTWDOG is set for the quick test. This allows for a faster test of the watchdog reset mechanism.

25.5.2 Byte test

The byte test is a more thorough a test of the watchdog timer. In this test, the timer is split up into its constituent byte-wide stages that are run independently and tested for time-out against the corresponding byte of the time-out value register. The following figure explains the splitting concept:

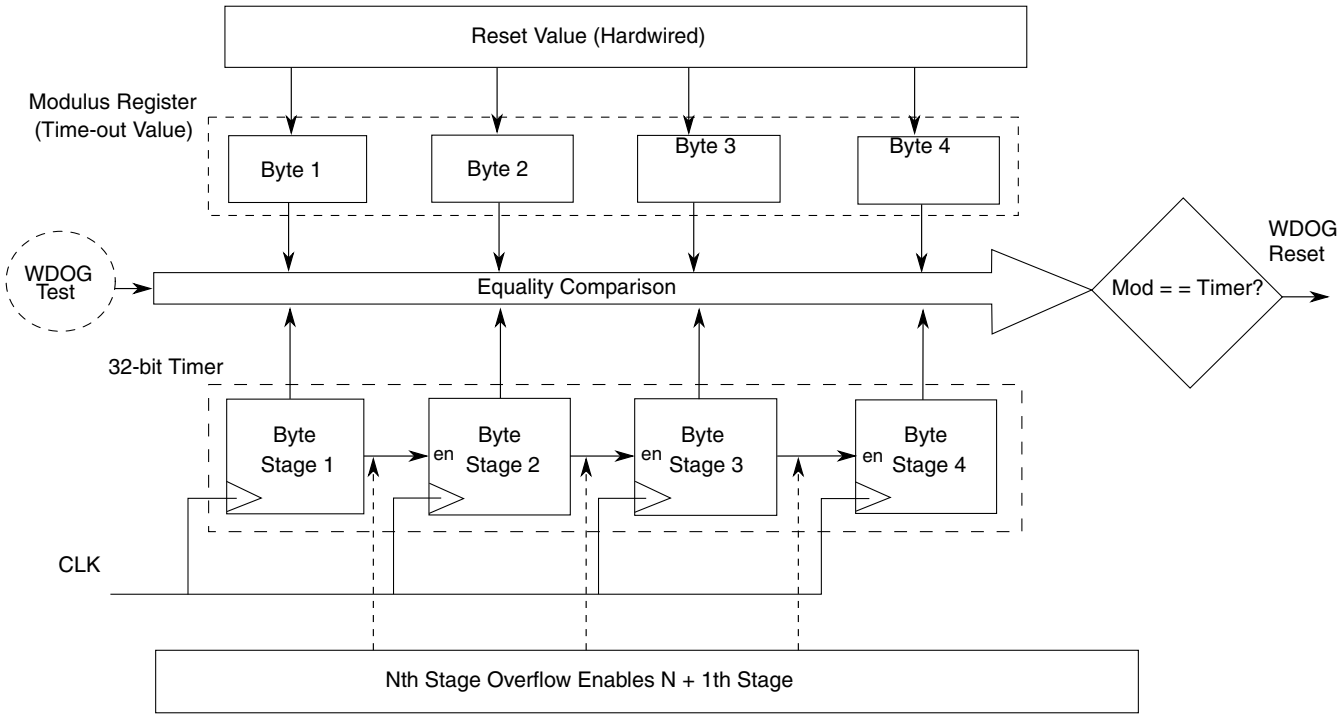


Figure 25-2. Watchdog timer byte splitting

Each stage is an 8-bit synchronous counter followed by combinational logic that generates an overflow signal. The overflow signal acts as an enable to the N + 1th stage.

In the test mode, when an individual byte, N, is tested, byte N – 1 is loaded forcefully with 0xFF, and both these bytes are allowed to run off the clock source. By doing so, the overflow signal from stage N – 1 is generated immediately, enabling counter stage N. The Nth stage runs and compares with the Nth byte of the time-out value register. In this way, the byte N is also tested along with the link between it and the preceding stage. No other stages, N – 2, N – 3... and N + 1, N + 2... are enabled for the test on byte N. These disabled stages, except the most significant stage of the counter, are loaded with a value of 0xFF.

25.6 Backup reset generator

The backup reset generator generates the final reset which goes out to the system. It has a backup mechanism which ensures that in case the bus clock stops and prevents the main state machine from generating a reset exception/interrupt, the watchdog timer's time-out is separately routed out as a reset to the system. Two successive timer time-outs without an intervening system reset result in the backup reset generator routing out the time-out signal as a reset to the system.

25.7 Generated resets and interrupts

The watchdog generates a reset in the following events, also referred to as exceptions:

- A watchdog time-out
- Failure to unlock the watchdog within WCT time after system reset deassertion
- No update of the control and configuration registers within the WCT window after unlocking. At least one of the following registers must be written to within the WCT window to avoid reset:
  - WDOG_ST_CTRL_H, WDOG_ST_CTRL_L
  - WDOG_TO_VAL_H, WDOG_TO_VAL_L
  - WDOG_WIN_H, WDOG_WIN_L
  - WDOG_PRESCALER
- A value other than the unlock sequence or the refresh sequence is written to the unlock and/or refresh registers, respectively.
- A gap of more than 20 bus cycles exists between the writes of two values of the unlock sequence.
- A gap of more than 20 bus cycles exists between the writes of two values of the refresh sequence.

The watchdog can also generate an interrupt. If IRQ_RST_EN is set, then on the above mentioned events WDOG_ST_CTRL_L[INT_FLG] is set, generating an interrupt. A watchdog reset is also generated WCT time later to ensure the watchdog is fault tolerant. The interrupt can be cleared by writing 1 to INT_FLG.

The gap of WCT between interrupt and reset means that the WDOG time-out value must be greater than WCT. Otherwise, if the interrupt was generated due to a time-out, a second consecutive time-out will occur in that WCT gap. This will trigger the backup reset generator to generate a reset to the system, prematurely ending the interrupt service routine execution. Also, jobs such as counting the number of watchdog resets would not be done.

25.8 Memory map and register definition

This section consists of the memory map and register descriptions.

WDOG memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4005_2000	Watchdog Status and Control Register High (WDOG_STCTRLH)	16	R/W	01D3h	25.8.1/488
4005_2002	Watchdog Status and Control Register Low (WDOG_STCTRLL)	16	R/W	0001h	25.8.2/490
4005_2004	Watchdog Time-out Value Register High (WDOG_TOVALH)	16	R/W	004Ch	25.8.3/490
4005_2006	Watchdog Time-out Value Register Low (WDOG_TOVALL)	16	R/W	4B4Ch	25.8.4/491
4005_2008	Watchdog Window Register High (WDOG_WINH)	16	R/W	0000h	25.8.5/491
4005_200A	Watchdog Window Register Low (WDOG_WINL)	16	R/W	0010h	25.8.6/492
4005_200C	Watchdog Refresh register (WDOG_REFRESH)	16	R/W	B480h	25.8.7/492
4005_200E	Watchdog Unlock register (WDOG_UNLOCK)	16	R/W	D928h	25.8.8/492
4005_2010	Watchdog Timer Output Register High (WDOG_TMROUTH)	16	R/W	0000h	25.8.9/493
4005_2012	Watchdog Timer Output Register Low (WDOG_TMROUTL)	16	R/W	0000h	25.8.10/493
4005_2014	Watchdog Reset Count register (WDOG_RSTCNT)	16	R/W	0000h	25.8.11/494
4005_2016	Watchdog Prescaler register (WDOG_PRESC)	16	R/W	0400h	25.8.12/494

25.8.1 Watchdog Status and Control Register High (WDOG_STCTRLH)

Address: 4005_2000h base + 0h offset = 4005_2000h

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0	DISTESTWDOG	BYTESEL[1:0]		TESTSEL	TESTWDOG	0	Reserved	WAITEN	STOPEN	DBGEN	ALLOWUPDATE	WINEN	IRQRSTEN	CLKSRC	WDOGEN
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	0	1	0	0	1	1

WDOG_STCTRLH field descriptions

Field	Description
15 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
14 DISTESTWDOG	Allows the WDOG's functional test mode to be disabled permanently. After it is set, it can only be cleared by a reset. It cannot be unlocked for editing after it is set. 0 WDOG functional test mode is not disabled. 1 WDOG functional test mode is disabled permanently until reset.
13–12 BYTESEL[1:0]	This 2-bit field selects the byte to be tested when the watchdog is in the byte test mode. 00 Byte 0 selected 01 Byte 1 selected

Table continues on the next page...

WDOG_STCTRLH field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	10 Byte 2 selected 11 Byte 3 selected
11 TESTSEL	Effective only if TESTWDOG is set. Selects the test to be run on the watchdog timer. 0 Quick test. The timer runs in normal operation. You can load a small time-out value to do a quick test. 1 Byte test. Puts the timer in the byte test mode where individual bytes of the timer are enabled for operation and are compared for time-out against the corresponding byte of the programmed time-out value. Select the byte through BYTESEL[1:0] for testing.
10 TESTWDOG	Puts the watchdog in the functional test mode. In this mode, the watchdog timer and the associated compare and reset generation logic is tested for correct operation. The clock for the timer is switched from the main watchdog clock to the fast clock input for watchdog functional test. The TESTSEL bit selects the test to be run.
9 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
8 Reserved	This field is reserved.
7 WAITEN	Enables or disables WDOG in Wait mode. 0 WDOG is disabled in CPU Wait mode. 1 WDOG is enabled in CPU Wait mode.
6 STOPEN	Enables or disables WDOG in Stop mode. 0 WDOG is disabled in CPU Stop mode. 1 WDOG is enabled in CPU Stop mode.
5 DBGEN	Enables or disables WDOG in Debug mode. 0 WDOG is disabled in CPU Debug mode. 1 WDOG is enabled in CPU Debug mode.
4 ALLOWUPDATE	Enables updates to watchdog write-once registers, after the reset-triggered initial configuration window (WCT) closes, through unlock sequence. 0 No further updates allowed to WDOG write-once registers. 1 WDOG write-once registers can be unlocked for updating.
3 WINEN	Enables Windowing mode. 0 Windowing mode is disabled. 1 Windowing mode is enabled.
2 IRQRSTEN	Used to enable the debug breadcrumbs feature. A change in this bit is updated immediately, as opposed to updating after WCT. 0 WDOG time-out generates reset only. 1 WDOG time-out initially generates an interrupt. After WCT, it generates a reset.
1 CLKSRC	Selects clock source for the WDOG timer and other internal timing operations. 0 WDOG clock sourced from LPO . 1 WDOG clock sourced from alternate clock source.
0 WDOGEN	Enables or disables the WDOG's operation. In the disabled state, the watchdog timer is kept in the reset state, but the other exception conditions can still trigger a reset/interrupt. A change in the value of this bit must be held for more than one WDOG_CLK cycle for the WDOG to be enabled or disabled.

Table continues on the next page...

WDOG_STCTRLH field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 WDOG is disabled. 1 WDOG is enabled.

25.8.2 Watchdog Status and Control Register Low (WDOG_STCTRLL)

Address: 4005_2000h base + 2h offset = 4005_2002h

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
Read Write	INTFLG	Reserved						
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	Reserved							
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1

WDOG_STCTRLL field descriptions

Field	Description
15 INTFLG	Interrupt flag. It is set when an exception occurs. IRQRSTEN = 1 is a precondition to set this flag. INTFLG = 1 results in an interrupt being issued followed by a reset, WCT later. The interrupt can be cleared by writing 1 to this bit. It also gets cleared on a system reset.
Reserved	This field is reserved. **NOTE:** Do not modify this field value.

25.8.3 Watchdog Time-out Value Register High (WDOG_TOVALH)

Address: 4005_2000h base + 4h offset = 4005_2004h

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	TOVALHIGH															
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	0	0

WDOG_TOVALH field descriptions

Field	Description
TOVALHIGH	Defines the upper 16 bits of the 32-bit time-out value for the watchdog timer. It is defined in terms of cycles of the watchdog clock.

25.8.4 Watchdog Time-out Value Register Low (WDOG_TOVALL)

The time-out value of the watchdog must be set to a minimum of four watchdog clock cycles. This is to take into account the delay in new settings taking effect in the watchdog clock domain.

Address: 4005_2000h base + 6h offset = 4005_2006h

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	TOVALLOW															
Reset	0	1	0	0	1	0	1	1	0	1	0	0	1	1	0	0

WDOG_TOVALL field descriptions

Field	Description
TOVALLOW	Defines the lower 16 bits of the 32-bit time-out value for the watchdog timer. It is defined in terms of cycles of the watchdog clock.

25.8.5 Watchdog Window Register High (WDOG_WINH)

NOTE

You must set the Window Register value lower than the Time-out Value Register.

Address: 4005_2000h base + 8h offset = 4005_2008h

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	WINHIGH															
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

WDOG_WINH field descriptions

Field	Description
WINHIGH	Defines the upper 16 bits of the 32-bit window for the windowed mode of operation of the watchdog. It is defined in terms of cycles of the watchdog clock. In this mode, the watchdog can be refreshed only when the timer has reached a value greater than or equal to this window length. A refresh outside this window resets the system or if IRQRSTEN is set, it interrupts and then resets the system.

25.8.6 Watchdog Window Register Low (WDOG_WINL)

NOTE

You must set the Window Register value lower than the Time-out Value Register.

Address: 4005_2000h base + Ah offset = 4005_200Ah

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	WINLOW															
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0

WDOG_WINL field descriptions

Field	Description
WINLOW	Defines the lower 16 bits of the 32-bit window for the windowed mode of operation of the watchdog. It is defined in terms of cycles of the pre-scaled watchdog clock. In this mode, the watchdog can be refreshed only when the timer reaches a value greater than or equal to this window length value. A refresh outside of this window resets the system or if IRQRSTEN is set, it interrupts and then resets the system.

25.8.7 Watchdog Refresh register (WDOG_REFRESH)

Address: 4005_2000h base + Ch offset = 4005_200Ch

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	WDOGREFRESH															
Reset	1	0	1	1	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

WDOG_REFRESH field descriptions

Field	Description
WDOGREFRESH	Watchdog refresh register. A sequence of 0xA602 followed by 0xB480 within 20 bus clock cycles written to this register refreshes the WDOG and prevents it from resetting the system. Writing a value other than the above mentioned sequence or if the sequence is longer than 20 bus cycles, resets the system, or if IRQRSTEN is set, it interrupts and then resets the system.

25.8.8 Watchdog Unlock register (WDOG_UNLOCK)

Address: 4005_2000h base + Eh offset = 4005_200Eh

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	WDOGUNLOCK															
Reset	1	1	0	1	1	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	0

WDOG_UNLOCK field descriptions

Field	Description
WDOGUNLOCK	Writing the unlock sequence values to this register to makes the watchdog write-once registers writable again. The required unlock sequence is 0xC520 followed by 0xD928 within 20 bus clock cycles. A valid unlock sequence opens a window equal in length to the WCT within which you can update the registers. Writing a value other than the above mentioned sequence or if the sequence is longer than 20 bus cycles, resets the system or if IRQRSTEN is set, it interrupts and then resets the system. The unlock sequence is effective only if ALLOWUPDATE is set.

25.8.9 Watchdog Timer Output Register High (WDOG_TMROUTH)

Address: 4005_2000h base + 10h offset = 4005_2010h

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	TIMEROUTHIGH															
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

WDOG_TMROUTH field descriptions

Field	Description
TIMEROUTHIGH	Shows the value of the upper 16 bits of the watchdog timer.

25.8.10 Watchdog Timer Output Register Low (WDOG_TMROUTL)

During Stop mode, the WDOG_TIMER_OUT will be caught at the pre-stop value of the watchdog timer. After exiting Stop mode, a maximum delay of 1 WDOG_CLK cycle + 3 bus clock cycles will occur before the WDOG_TIMER_OUT starts following the watchdog timer.

Address: 4005_2000h base + 12h offset = 4005_2012h

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	TIMEROUTLOW															
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

WDOG_TMROUTL field descriptions

Field	Description
TIMEROUTLOW	Shows the value of the lower 16 bits of the watchdog timer.

25.8.11 Watchdog Reset Count register (WDOG_RSTCNT)

Address: 4005_2000h base + 14h offset = 4005_2014h

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	RSTCNT															
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

WDOG_RSTCNT field descriptions

Field	Description
RSTCNT	Counts the number of times the watchdog resets the system. This register is reset only on a POR. Writing 1 to the bit to be cleared enables you to clear the contents of this register.

25.8.12 Watchdog Prescaler register (WDOG_PRESC)

Address: 4005_2000h base + 16h offset = 4005_2016h

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0					PRESCVAL			0							
Write																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

WDOG_PRESC field descriptions

Field	Description
15–11 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
10–8 PRESCVAL	3-bit prescaler for the watchdog clock source. A value of zero indicates no division of the input WDOG clock. The watchdog clock is divided by (PRESCVAL + 1) to provide the prescaled WDOG_CLK.
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

25.9 Watchdog operation with 8-bit access

25.9.1 General guideline

When performing 8-bit accesses to the watchdog's 16-bit registers where the intention is to access both the bytes of a register, place the two 8-bit accesses one after the other in your code.

25.9.2 Refresh and unlock operations with 8-bit access

One exception condition that generates a reset to the system is the write of any value other than those required for a legal refresh/update sequence to the respective refresh and unlock registers.

For an 8-bit access to these registers, writing a correct value requires at least two bus clock cycles, resulting in an invalid value in the registers for one cycle. Therefore, the system is reset even if the intention is to write a correct value to the refresh/unlock register. Keeping this in mind, the exception condition for 8-bit accesses is slightly modified.

Whereas the match for a correct value for a refresh/unlock sequence is as according to the original definition, the match for an incorrect value is done byte-wise on the refresh/ unlock rather than for the whole 16-bit value. This means that if the high byte of the refresh/unlock register contains any value other than high bytes of the two values that make up the sequence, it is treated as an exception condition, leading to a reset or interrupt-then-reset. The same holds true for the lower byte of the refresh or unlock register. Take the refresh operation that expects a write of 0xA602 followed by 0xB480 to the refresh register, as an example.

Table 25-3. Refresh for 8-bit access

	WDOG_REFRESH[15:8]	WDOG_REFRESH[7:0]	Sequence value1 or value2 match	Mismatch exception
Current Value	0xB4	0x80	Value2 match	No
Write 1	0xB4	0x02	No match	No
Write 2	0xA6	0x02	Value1 match	No
Write 3	0xB4	0x02	No match	No
Write 4	0xB4	0x80	Value2 match. Sequence complete.	No
Write 5	0x02	0x80	No match	Yes

As shown in the preceding table, the refresh register holds its reset value initially. Thereafter, two 8-bit accesses are performed on the register to write the first value of the refresh sequence. No mismatch exception is registered on the intermediate write, Write1. The sequence is completed by performing two more 8-bit accesses, writing in the second value of the sequence for a successful refresh. It must be noted that the match of value2 takes place only when the complete 16-bit value is correctly written, write4. Hence, the requirement of writing value2 of the sequence within 20 bus clock cycles of value1 is checked by measuring the gap between write2 and write4.

It is reiterated that the condition for matching values 1 and 2 of the refresh or unlock sequence remains unchanged. The difference for 8-bit accesses is that the criterion for detecting a mismatch is less strict. Any 16-bit access still needs to adhere to the original guidelines, mentioned in the sections Refreshing the Watchdog.

25.10 Restrictions on watchdog operation

This section mentions some exceptions to the watchdog operation that may not be apparent to you.

- Restriction on unlock/refresh operations—In the period between the closure of the WCT window after unlock and the actual reload of the watchdog timer, unlock and refresh operations need not be attempted.
- The update and reload of the watchdog timer happens two to three watchdog clocks after WCT window closes, following a successful configuration on unlock.
- Clock Switching Delay—The watchdog uses glitch-free multiplexers at two places – one to choose between the LPO oscillator input and alternate clock input, and the other to choose between the watchdog functional clock and fast clock input for watchdog functional test. A maximum time period of ~2 clock A cycles plus ~2 clock B cycles elapses from the time a switch is requested to the occurrence of the actual clock switch, where clock A and B are the two input clocks to the clock mux.
- For the windowed mode, there is a two to three bus clock latency between the watchdog counter going past the window value and the same registering in the bus clock domain.
- For proper operation of the watchdog, the watchdog clock must be at least five times slower than the system bus clock at all times. An exception is when the watchdog clock is synchronous to the bus clock wherein the watchdog clock can be as fast as the bus clock.
- WCT must be equivalent to at least three watchdog clock cycles. If not ensured, this means that even after the close of the WCT window, you have to wait for the synchronized system reset to deassert in the watchdog clock domain, before expecting the configuration updates to take effect.
- The time-out value of the watchdog should be set to a minimum of four watchdog clock cycles. This is to take into account the delay in new settings taking effect in the watchdog clock domain.

- You must take care not only to refresh the watchdog within the watchdog timer's actual time-out period, but also provide enough allowance for the time it takes for the refresh sequence to be detected by the watchdog timer, on the watchdog clock.
- Updates cannot be made in the bus clock cycle immediately following the write of the unlock sequence, but one bus clock cycle later.
- It should be ensured that the time-out value for the watchdog is always greater than 2xWCT time + 20 bus clock cycles.
- An attempted refresh operation, in between the two writes of the unlock sequence and in the WCT time following a successful unlock, will go undetected.
- Trying to unlock the watchdog within the WCT time after an initial unlock has no effect.
- The refresh and unlock operations and interrupt are not automatically disabled in the watchdog functional test mode.
- After emerging from a reset due to a watchdog functional test, you are still expected to go through the mandatory steps of unlocking and configuring the watchdog. The watchdog continues to be in its functional test mode and therefore you should pull the watchdog out of the functional test mode within WCT time of reset.
- After emerging from a reset due to a watchdog functional test, you still need to go through the mandatory steps of unlocking and configuring the watchdog.
- You must ensure that both the clock inputs to the glitchless clock multiplexers are alive during the switching of clocks. Failure to do so results in a loss of clock at their outputs.
- There is a gap of two to three watchdog clock cycles from the point that stop mode is entered to the watchdog timer actually pausing, due to synchronization. The same holds true for an exit from the stop mode, this time resulting in a two to three watchdog clock cycle delay in the timer restarting. In case the duration of the stop mode is less than one watchdog clock cycle, the watchdog timer is not guaranteed to pause.
- Consider the case when the first refresh value is written, following which the system enters stop mode with system bus clk still on. If the second refresh value is not written within 20 bus cycles of the first value, the system is reset, or interrupt-then-reset if enabled.

Chapter 26
Multipurpose Clock Generator (MCG)

26.1 Chip-specific Information for this Module

26.1.1 MCG oscillator clock input options

The MCG has multiple oscillator input clock sources. Within the context of the MCG these are all referred to as the external reference clock and selection is determined by MCG_C7[OSCSEL] bitfield. The following table shows the chip-specific clock assignments for this bitfield.

Table 26-1. MCG Oscillator Reference Options

MCG_C7[OSCSEL]	MCG defined selection	Chip clock
00	OSCCLK0 - System Oscillator	OSCCLK - Undivided system oscillator output. Derived from external crystal circuit or directly from EXTAL.
01	OSC2/RTC Oscillator	RTC 32kHz oscillator output. RTC clock is derived from external crystal circuit associated with RTC.
10	OSCCLK1 - Oscillator	IRC48MCLK. Derived from internal 48 MHz oscillator.
11	Reserved	—

See Clock Distribution for more details on these clocks.

26.1.2 MCG Instantiation Information

NOTE

MCG_C12/S2/T3 registers are all reserved and not applicable for this SoC, in the MCG memory map.

26.2 Introduction

The multipurpose clock generator (MCG) module provides several clock source choices for the MCU.

The module contains a frequency-locked loop (FLL) and a phase-locked loop (PLL). The FLL is controllable by either an internal or an external reference clock. The PLL is controllable by the external reference clock. The module can select either an FLL or PLL output clock, or a reference clock (internal or external) as a source for the MCU system clock. The MCG operates in conjuction with a crystal oscillator, which allows an external crystal, ceramic resonator, or another external clock source to produce the external reference clock.

26.2.1 Features

Key features of the MCG module are:

- Frequency-locked loop (FLL):
  - Digitally-controlled oscillator (DCO)
  - DCO frequency range is programmable for up to four different frequency ranges.
  - Option to program and maximize DCO output frequency for a low frequency external reference clock source.
  - Option to prevent FLL from resetting its current locked frequency when switching clock modes if FLL reference frequency is not changed.
  - Internal or external reference clock can be used as the FLL source.
  - Can be used as a clock source for other on-chip peripherals.
- Phase-locked loop (PLL):
  - Voltage-controlled oscillator (VCO)
  - External reference clock is used as the PLL source.
  - Modulo VCO frequency divider
  - Phase/Frequency detector

    - Integrated loop filter
    - Can be used as a clock source for other on-chip peripherals.
- Internal reference clock generator:
    - Slow clock with nine trim bits for accuracy
    - Fast clock with four trim bits
    - Can be used as source clock for the FLL. In FEI mode, only the slow Internal Reference Clock (IRC) can be used as the FLL source.
    - Either the slow or the fast clock can be selected as the clock source for the MCU.
    - Can be used as a clock source for other on-chip peripherals.
- Control signals for the MCG external reference low power oscillator clock generators are provided:
    - HGO, RANGE, EREFS
- External clock from the Crystal Oscillator :
    - Can be used as a source for the FLL and/or the PLL.
    - Can be selected as the clock source for the MCU.
- External clock from the Real Time Counter (RTC):
    - Can be used as a source for the FLL only.
    - Can be selected as the clock source for the MCU.
- External clock monitor with reset and interrupt request capability to check for external clock failure when running in FBE, PEE, BLPE, or FEE modes
- Lock detector with interrupt request capability for use with the PLL
- Internal Reference Clocks Auto Trim Machine (ATM) capability using an external clock as a reference
- Reference dividers for both the FLL and the PLL are provided
- Reference dividers for the Fast Internal Reference Clock are provided
- MCG PLL Clock (MCGPLLCLK) is provided as a clock source for other on-chip peripherals
- MCG FLL Clock (MCGFLLCLK) is provided as a clock source for other on-chip peripherals

- MCG Fixed Frequency Clock (MCGFFCLK) is provided as a clock source for other on-chip peripherals
- MCG Internal Reference Clock (MCGIRCLK) is provided as a clock source for other on-chip peripherals

This figure presents the block diagram of the MCG module.

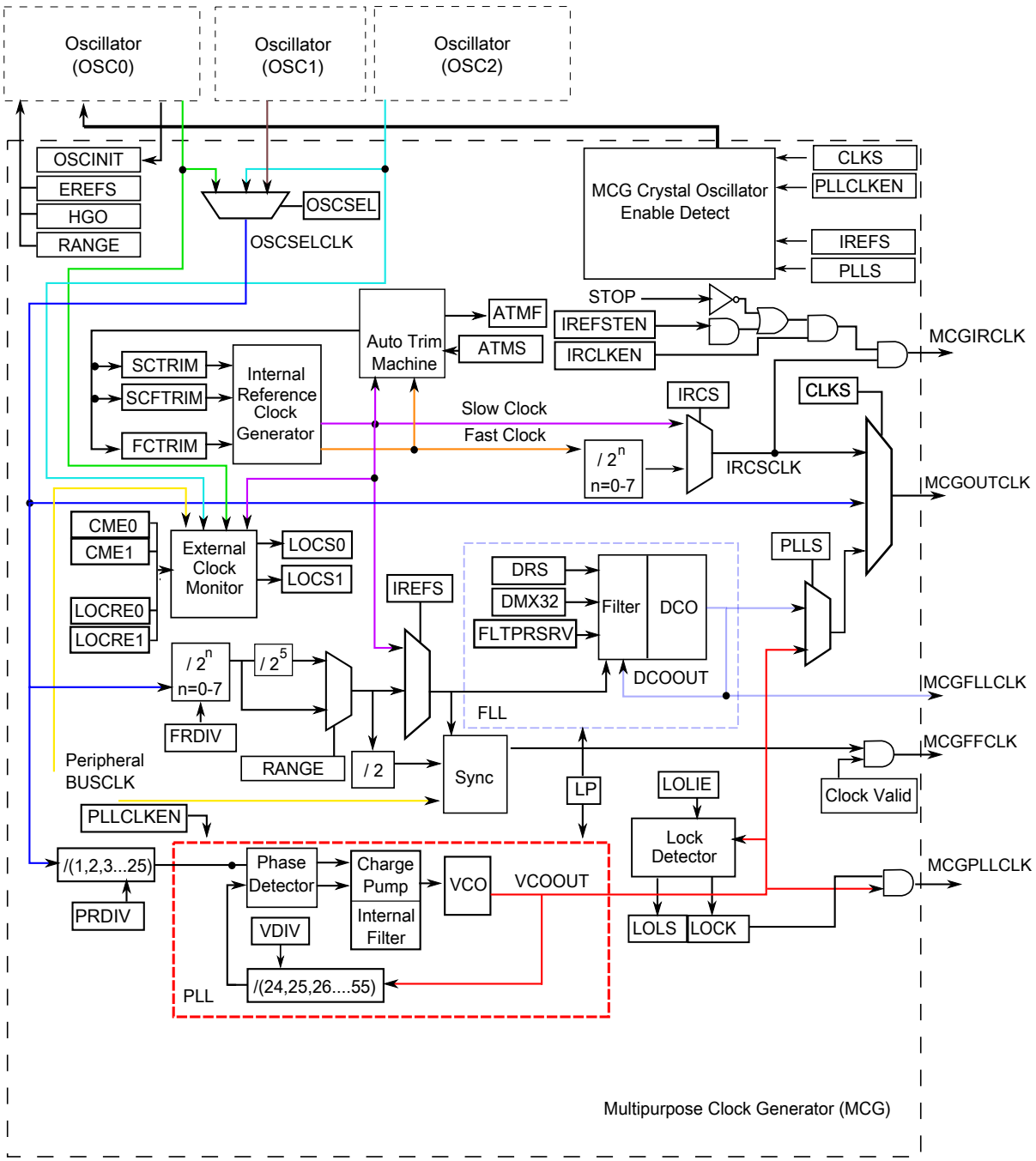


Figure 26-1. Multipurpose Clock Generator (MCG) block diagram

26.2.2 Modes of Operation

The MCG has the following modes of operation: FEI, FEE, FBI, FBE, PBE, PEE, BLPI, BLPE, and Stop. For details, see MCG modes of operation.

26.3 External Signal Description

There are no MCG signals that connect off chip.

26.4 Memory Map/Register Definition

This section includes the memory map and register definition.

The MCG registers can only be written when in supervisor mode. Write accesses when in user mode will result in a bus error. Read accesses may be performed in both supervisor and user mode.

MCG memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4006_4000	MCG Control 1 Register (MCG_C1)	8	R/W	04h	26.4.1/505
4006_4001	MCG Control 2 Register (MCG_C2)	8	R/W	80h	26.4.2/506
4006_4002	MCG Control 3 Register (MCG_C3)	8	R/W	Undefined	26.4.3/507
4006_4003	MCG Control 4 Register (MCG_C4)	8	R/W	See section	26.4.4/508
4006_4004	MCG Control 5 Register (MCG_C5)	8	R/W	00h	26.4.5/509
4006_4005	MCG Control 6 Register (MCG_C6)	8	R/W	00h	26.4.6/510
4006_4006	MCG Status Register (MCG_S)	8	R	10h	26.4.7/512
4006_4008	MCG Status and Control Register (MCG_SC)	8	R/W	02h	26.4.8/513
4006_400A	MCG Auto Trim Compare Value High Register (MCG_ATCVH)	8	R/W	00h	26.4.9/515
4006_400B	MCG Auto Trim Compare Value Low Register (MCG_ATCVL)	8	R/W	00h	26.4.10/ 515
4006_400C	MCG Control 7 Register (MCG_C7)	8	R/W	00h	26.4.11/ 515
4006_400D	MCG Control 8 Register (MCG_C8)	8	R/W	80h	26.4.12/ 516
4006_4011	MCG Control 12 Register (MCG_C12)	8	R/W	00h	26.4.13/ 517
4006_4012	MCG Status 2 Register (MCG_S2)	8	R/W	00h	26.4.13/ 517
4006_4013	MCG Test 3 Register (MCG_T3)	8	R/W	00h	26.4.13/ 518

26.4.1 MCG Control 1 Register (MCG_C1)

Address: 4006_4000h base + 0h offset = 4006_4000h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	CLKS		FRDIV			IREFS	IRCLKEN	IREFSTEN
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0

MCG_C1 field descriptions

Field	Description
7–6 CLKS	Clock Source Select Selects the clock source for MCGOUTCLK . 00 Encoding 0 — Output of FLL or PLL is selected (depends on PLLS control bit). 01 Encoding 1 — Internal reference clock is selected. 10 Encoding 2 — External reference clock is selected. 11 Encoding 3 — Reserved.
5–3 FRDIV	FLL External Reference Divider Selects the amount to divide down the external reference clock for the FLL. The resulting frequency must be in the range 31.25 kHz to 39.0625 kHz (This is required when FLL/DCO is the clock source for MCGOUTCLK . In FBE mode, it is not required to meet this range, but it is recommended in the cases when trying to enter a FLL mode from FBE). 000 If RANGE = 0 or OSCSEL=1 , Divide Factor is 1; for all other RANGE values, Divide Factor is 32. 001 If RANGE = 0 or OSCSEL=1 , Divide Factor is 2; for all other RANGE values, Divide Factor is 64. 010 If RANGE = 0 or OSCSEL=1 , Divide Factor is 4; for all other RANGE values, Divide Factor is 128. 011 If RANGE = 0 or OSCSEL=1 , Divide Factor is 8; for all other RANGE values, Divide Factor is 256. 100 If RANGE = 0 or OSCSEL=1 , Divide Factor is 16; for all other RANGE values, Divide Factor is 512. 101 If RANGE = 0 or OSCSEL=1 , Divide Factor is 32; for all other RANGE values, Divide Factor is 1024. 110 If RANGE = 0 or OSCSEL=1 , Divide Factor is 64; for all other RANGE values, Divide Factor is 1280 . 111 If RANGE = 0 or OSCSEL=1 , Divide Factor is 128; for all other RANGE values, Divide Factor is 1536 .
2 IREFS	Internal Reference Select Selects the reference clock source for the FLL. 0 External reference clock is selected. 1 The slow internal reference clock is selected.
1 IRCLKEN	Internal Reference Clock Enable Enables the internal reference clock for use as MCGIRCLK. 0 MCGIRCLK inactive. 1 MCGIRCLK active.
0 IREFSTEN	Internal Reference Stop Enable Controls whether or not the internal reference clock remains enabled when the MCG enters Stop mode.

Table continues on the next page...

MCG_C1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Internal reference clock is disabled in Stop mode. 1 Internal reference clock is enabled in Stop mode if IRCLKEN is set or if MCG is in FEI, FBI, or BLPI modes before entering Stop mode.

26.4.2 MCG Control 2 Register (MCG_C2)

Address: 4006_4000h base + 1h offset = 4006_4001h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	LOCRE0	FCFTRIM	RANGE		HGO	EREFS	LP	IRCS
Reset	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

MCG_C2 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 LOCRE0	Loss of Clock Reset Enable Determines whether an interrupt or a reset request is made following a loss of OSC0 external reference clock. The LOCRE0 only has an affect when CME0 is set. 0 Interrupt request is generated on a loss of OSC0 external reference clock. 1 Generate a reset request on a loss of OSC0 external reference clock.
6 FCFTRIM	Fast Internal Reference Clock Fine Trim FCFTRIM controls the smallest adjustment of the fast internal reference clock frequency. Setting FCFTRIM increases the period and clearing FCFTRIM decreases the period by the smallest amount possible. If an FCFTRIM value stored in nonvolatile memory is to be used, it is your responsibility to copy that value from the nonvolatile memory location to this bit.
5–4 RANGE	Frequency Range Select Selects the frequency range for the crystal oscillator or external clock source. See the Oscillator (OSC) chapter for more details and the device data sheet for the frequency ranges used. 00 Encoding 0 — Low frequency range selected for the crystal oscillator . 01 Encoding 1 — High frequency range selected for the crystal oscillator . 1X Encoding 2 — Very high frequency range selected for the crystal oscillator .
3 HGO	High Gain Oscillator Select Controls the crystal oscillator mode of operation. See the Oscillator (OSC) chapter for more details. 0 Configure crystal oscillator for low-power operation. 1 Configure crystal oscillator for high-gain operation.
2 EREFS	External Reference Select Selects the source for the external reference clock. See the Oscillator (OSC) chapter for more details. 0 External reference clock requested. 1 Oscillator requested.

Table continues on the next page...

MCG_C2 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
1 LP	Low Power Select Controls whether the FLL or PLL is disabled in BLPI and BLPE modes. In FBE or PBE modes, setting this bit to 1 will transition the MCG into BLPE mode; in FBI mode, setting this bit to 1 will transition the MCG into BLPI mode. In any other MCG mode, LP bit has no affect. 0 FLL or PLL is not disabled in bypass modes. 1 FLL or PLL is disabled in bypass modes (lower power)
0 IRCS	Internal Reference Clock Select Selects between the fast or slow internal reference clock source. 0 Slow internal reference clock selected. 1 Fast internal reference clock selected.

26.4.3 MCG Control 3 Register (MCG_C3)

Address: 4006_4000h base + 2h offset = 4006_4002h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	SCTRIM							
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

* Notes:
- x = Undefined at reset.

MCG_C3 field descriptions

Field	Description
SCTRIM	Slow Internal Reference Clock Trim Setting SCTRIM [1] controls the slow internal reference clock frequency by controlling the slow internal reference clock period. The SCTRIM bits are binary weighted, that is, bit 1 adjusts twice as much as bit 0. Increasing the binary value increases the period, and decreasing the value decreases the period. An additional fine trim bit is available in C4 register as the SCFTRIM bit. Upon reset, this value is loaded with a factory trim value. If an SCTRIM value stored in nonvolatile memory is to be used, it is your responsibility to copy that value from the nonvolatile memory location to this register.

1. A value for SCTRIM is loaded during reset from a factory programmed location.

26.4.4 MCG Control 4 Register (MCG_C4)

Address: 4006_4000h base + 3h offset = 4006_4003h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	DMX32	DRST_DRS			FCTRIM			SCFTRIM
Reset	0	0	0	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

* Notes:
- x = Undefined at reset.

MCG_C4 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 DMX32	DCO Maximum Frequency with 32.768 kHz Reference The DMX32 bit controls whether the DCO frequency range is narrowed to its maximum frequency with a 32.768 kHz reference. The following table identifies settings for the DCO frequency range. **NOTE:** The system clocks derived from this source should not exceed their specified maximums. 0 DCO has a default range of 25%. 1 DCO is fine-tuned for maximum frequency with 32.768 kHz reference.
6–5 DRST_DRS	DCO Range Select The DRS bits select the frequency range for the FLL output, DCOOUT. When the LP bit is set, writes to the DRS bits are ignored. The DRST read field indicates the current frequency range for DCOOUT. The DRST field does not update immediately after a write to the DRS field due to internal synchronization between clock domains. See the DCO Frequency Range table for more details. 00 Encoding 0 — Low range (reset default). 01 Encoding 1 — Mid range. 10 Encoding 2 — Mid-high range. 11 Encoding 3 — High range.
4–1 FCTRIM	Fast Internal Reference Clock Trim Setting

DRST_DRS	DMX32	Reference Range	FLL Factor	DCO Range
00	0	31.25–39.0625 kHz	640	20–25 MHz
	1	32.768 kHz	732	24 MHz
01	0	31.25–39.0625 kHz	1280	40–50 MHz
	1	32.768 kHz	1464	48 MHz
10	0	31.25–39.0625 kHz	1920	60–75 MHz
	1	32.768 kHz	2197	72 MHz
11	0	31.25–39.0625 kHz	2560	80–100 MHz
	1	32.768 kHz	2929	96 MHz

Table continues on the next page...

MCG_C4 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	FCTRIM [1] controls the fast internal reference clock frequency by controlling the fast internal reference clock period. The FCTRIM bits are binary weighted, that is, bit 1 adjusts twice as much as bit 0. Increasing the binary value increases the period, and decreasing the value decreases the period. If an FCTRIM[3:0] value stored in nonvolatile memory is to be used, it is your responsibility to copy that value from the nonvolatile memory location to this register.
0 SCFTRIM	Slow Internal Reference Clock Fine Trim SCFTRIM [2] controls the smallest adjustment of the slow internal reference clock frequency. Setting SCFTRIM increases the period and clearing SCFTRIM decreases the period by the smallest amount possible. If an SCFTRIM value stored in nonvolatile memory is to be used, it is your responsibility to copy that value from the nonvolatile memory location to this bit.

1. A value for FCTRIM is loaded during reset from a factory programmed location.
2. A value for SCFTRIM is loaded during reset from a factory programmed location.

26.4.5 MCG Control 5 Register (MCG_C5)

Address: 4006_4000h base + 4h offset = 4006_4004h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0	PLLCLKEN0	PLLSTEN0	PRDIV0				
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

MCG_C5 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
6 PLLCLKEN0	PLL Clock Enable Enables the PLL independent of PLLS and enables the PLL clock for use as MCGPLLCLK. (PRDIV 0 needs to be programmed to the correct divider to generate a PLL reference clock in the range of 2 - 4 MHz range prior to setting the PLLCLKEN 0 bit). Setting PLLCLKEN 0 will enable the external oscillator if not already enabled. Whenever the PLL is being enabled by means of the PLLCLKEN 0 bit, and the external oscillator is being used as the reference clock, the OSCINIT 0 bit should be checked to make sure it is set. 0 MCGPLLCLK is inactive. 1 MCGPLLCLK is active.
5 PLLSTEN0	PLL Stop Enable Enables the PLL Clock during Normal Stop. In Low Power Stop mode, the PLL clock gets disabled even if PLLSTEN 0 =1. All other power modes, PLLSTEN 0 bit has no affect and does not enable the PLL Clock to run if it is written to 1. 0 MCGPLLCLK is disabled in any of the Stop modes. 1 MCGPLLCLK is enabled if system is in Normal Stop mode.
PRDIV0	PLL External Reference Divider

Table continues on the next page...

MCG_C5 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	Selects the amount to divide down the external reference clock for the PLL. The resulting frequency must be in the range of 2 MHz to 4 MHz. After the PLL is enabled (by setting either PLLCLKEN 0 or PLLS), the PRDIV 0 value must not be changed when LOCK0 is zero.

Table 26-2. PLL External Reference Divide Factor

PRDIV 0	Divide Factor		PRDIV 0	Divide Factor		PRDIV 0	Divide Factor		PRDIV 0	Divide Factor
00000	1		01000	9		10000	17		11000	25
00001	2		01001	10		10001	18		11001	Reserved
00010	3		01010	11		10010	19		11010	Reserved
00011	4		01011	12		10011	20		11011	Reserved
00100	5		01100	13		10100	21		11100	Reserved
00101	6		01101	14		10101	22		11101	Reserved
00110	7		01110	15		10110	23		11110	Reserved
00111	8		01111	16		10111	24		11111	Reserved

26.4.6 MCG Control 6 Register (MCG_C6)

Address: 4006_4000h base + 5h offset = 4006_4005h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	LOLIE0	PLLS	CME0	VDIV0				
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

MCG_C6 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 LOLIE0	Loss of Lock Interrrupt Enable Determines if an interrupt request is made following a loss of lock indication. This bit only has an effect when LOLS 0 is set. 0 No interrupt request is generated on loss of lock. 1 Generate an interrupt request on loss of lock.
6 PLLS	PLL Select

Table continues on the next page...

MCG_C6 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	Controls whether the PLL or FLL output is selected as the MCG source when CLKS[1:0]=00. If the PLLS bit is cleared and PLLCLKEN 0 is not set, the PLL is disabled in all modes. If the PLLS is set, the FLL is disabled in all modes. 0 FLL is selected. 1 PLL is selected (PRDIV 0 need to be programmed to the correct divider to generate a PLL reference clock in the range of 2–4 MHz prior to setting the PLLS bit).
5 CME0	Clock Monitor Enable Enables the loss of clock monitoring circuit for the OSC0 external reference mux select. The LOCRE0 bit will determine if a interrupt or a reset request is generated following a loss of OSC0 indication. The CME0 bit must only be set to a logic 1 when the MCG is in an operational mode that uses the external clock (FEE, FBE, PEE, PBE, or BLPE) . Whenever the CME0 bit is set to a logic 1, the value of the RANGE0 bits in the C2 register should not be changed. CME0 bit should be set to a logic 0 before the MCG enters any Stop mode. Otherwise, a reset request may occur while in Stop mode. CME0 should also be set to a logic 0 before entering VLPR or VLPW power modes if the MCG is in BLPE mode. 0 External clock monitor is disabled for OSC0. 1 External clock monitor is enabled for OSC0.
VDIV0	VCO 0 Divider Selects the amount to divide the VCO output of the PLL. The VDIV 0 bits establish the multiplication factor (M) applied to the reference clock frequency. After the PLL is enabled (by setting either PLLCLKEN 0 or PLLS), the VDIV 0 value must not be changed when LOCK 0 is zero.

Table 26-3. PLL VCO Divide Factor

VDIV 0	Multiply Factor		VDIV 0	Multiply Factor		VDIV 0	Multiply Factor		VDIV 0	Multiply Factor
00000	24		01000	32		10000	40		11000	48
00001	25		01001	33		10001	41		11001	49
00010	26		01010	34		10010	42		11010	50
00011	27		01011	35		10011	43		11011	51
00100	28		01100	36		10100	44		11100	52
00101	29		01101	37		10101	45		11101	53
00110	30		01110	38		10110	46		11110	54
00111	31		01111	39		10111	47		11111	55

26.4.7 MCG Status Register (MCG_S)

Address: 4006_4000h base + 6h offset = 4006_4006h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	LOLS0	LOCK0	PLLST	IREFST	CLKST		OSCINIT0	IRCST
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0

MCG_S field descriptions

Field	Description
7 LOLS0	Loss of Lock Status This bit is a sticky bit indicating the lock status for the PLL. LOLS is set if after acquiring lock, the PLL output frequency has fallen outside the lock exit frequency tolerance, D_{unl} . LOLIE determines whether an interrupt request is made when LOLS is set. LOLRE determines whether a reset request is made when LOLS is set. This bit is cleared by reset or by writing a logic 1 to it when set. Writing a logic 0 to this bit has no effect. 0 PLL has not lost lock since LOLS 0 was last cleared. 1 PLL has lost lock since LOLS 0 was last cleared.
6 LOCK0	Lock Status This bit indicates whether the PLL has acquired lock. Lock detection is only enabled when the PLL is enabled (either through clock mode selection or PLLCLKEN0=1 setting). While the PLL clock is locking to the desired frequency, the MCG PLL clock (MCGPLLCLK) will be gated off until the LOCK bit gets asserted. If the lock status bit is set, changing the value of the PRDIV0 [4:0] bits in the C5 register or the VDIV0[4:0] bits in the C6 register causes the lock status bit to clear and stay cleared until the PLL has reacquired lock. Loss of PLL reference clock will also cause the LOCK0 bit to clear until the PLL has reacquired lock. Entry into LLS, VLPS, or regular Stop with PLLSTEN=0 also causes the lock status bit to clear and stay cleared until the Stop mode is exited and the PLL has reacquired lock. Any time the PLL is enabled and the LOCK0 bit is cleared, the MCGPLLCLK will be gated off until the LOCK0 bit is asserted again. 0 PLL is currently unlocked. 1 PLL is currently locked.
5 PLLST	PLL Select Status This bit indicates the clock source selected by PLLS . The PLLST bit does not update immediately after a write to the PLLS bit due to internal synchronization between clock domains. 0 Source of PLLS clock is FLL clock. 1 Source of PLLS clock is PLL output clock.
4 IREFST	Internal Reference Status This bit indicates the current source for the FLL reference clock. The IREFST bit does not update immediately after a write to the IREFS bit due to internal synchronization between clock domains. 0 Source of FLL reference clock is the external reference clock. 1 Source of FLL reference clock is the internal reference clock.

Table continues on the next page...

MCG_S field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
3–2 CLKST	Clock Mode Status These bits indicate the current clock mode. The CLKST bits do not update immediately after a write to the CLKS bits due to internal synchronization between clock domains. 00 Encoding 0 — Output of the FLL is selected (reset default). 01 Encoding 1 — Internal reference clock is selected. 10 Encoding 2 — External reference clock is selected. 11 Encoding 3 — Output of the PLL is selected.
1 OSCINIT0	OSC Initialization This bit, which resets to 0, is set to 1 after the initialization cycles of the crystal oscillator clock have completed. After being set, the bit is cleared to 0 if the OSC is subsequently disabled. See the OSC module's detailed description for more information.
0 IRCST	Internal Reference Clock Status The IRCST bit indicates the current source for the internal reference clock select clock (IRCSCLK). The IRCST bit does not update immediately after a write to the IRCS bit due to internal synchronization between clock domains. The IRCST bit will only be updated if the internal reference clock is enabled, either by the MCG being in a mode that uses the IRC or by setting the C1[IRCLKEN] bit . 0 Source of internal reference clock is the slow clock (32 kHz IRC). 1 Source of internal reference clock is the fast clock (4 MHz IRC).

26.4.8 MCG Status and Control Register (MCG_SC)

Address: 4006_4000h base + 8h offset = 4006_4008h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	ATME	ATMS	ATMF	FLTPRSRV	FCRDIV			LOCS0
Write			w1c					w1c
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0

MCG_SC field descriptions

Field	Description
7 ATME	Automatic Trim Machine Enable Enables the Auto Trim Machine to start automatically trimming the selected Internal Reference Clock. **NOTE:** ATME deasserts after the Auto Trim Machine has completed trimming all trim bits of the IRCS clock selected by the ATMS bit. Writing to C1, C3, C4, and SC registers or entering Stop mode aborts the auto trim operation and clears this bit. 0 Auto Trim Machine disabled. 1 Auto Trim Machine enabled.

Table continues on the next page...

MCG_SC field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
6 ATMS	Automatic Trim Machine Select Selects the IRCS clock for Auto Trim Test. 0 32 kHz Internal Reference Clock selected. 1 4 MHz Internal Reference Clock selected.
5 ATMF	Automatic Trim Machine Fail Flag Fail flag for the Automatic Trim Machine (ATM). This bit asserts when the Automatic Trim Machine is enabled, ATME=1, and a write to the C1, C3, C4, and SC registers is detected or the MCG enters into any Stop mode. A write to ATMF clears the flag. 0 Automatic Trim Machine completed normally. 1 Automatic Trim Machine failed.
4 FLTPRSRV	FLL Filter Preserve Enable This bit will prevent the FLL filter values from resetting allowing the FLL output frequency to remain the same during clock mode changes where the FLL/DCO output is still valid. (Note: This requires that the FLL reference frequency to remain the same as what it was prior to the new clock mode switch. Otherwise FLL filter and frequency values will change.) 0 FLL filter and FLL frequency will reset on changes to currect clock mode. 1 Fll filter and FLL frequency retain their previous values during new clock mode change.
3–1 FCRDIV	Fast Clock Internal Reference Divider Selects the amount to divide down the fast internal reference clock. The resulting frequency will be in the range 31.25 kHz to 4 MHz (Note: Changing the divider when the Fast IRC is enabled is not supported). 000 Divide Factor is 1 001 Divide Factor is 2. 010 Divide Factor is 4. 011 Divide Factor is 8. 100 Divide Factor is 16 101 Divide Factor is 32 110 Divide Factor is 64 111 Divide Factor is 128.
0 LOCS0	OSC0 Loss of Clock Status The LOCS0 indicates when a loss of OSC0 reference clock has occurred. The LOCS0 bit only has an effect when CME0 is set. This bit is cleared by writing a logic 1 to it when set. 0 Loss of OSC0 has not occurred. 1 Loss of OSC0 has occurred.

26.4.9 MCG Auto Trim Compare Value High Register (MCG_ATCVH)

Address: 4006_4000h base + Ah offset = 4006_400Ah

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	ATCVH							
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

MCG_ATCVH field descriptions

Field	Description
ATCVH	ATM Compare Value High Values are used by Auto Trim Machine to compare and adjust Internal Reference trim values during ATM SAR conversion.

26.4.10 MCG Auto Trim Compare Value Low Register (MCG_ATCVL)

Address: 4006_4000h base + Bh offset = 4006_400Bh

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	ATCVL							
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

MCG_ATCVL field descriptions

Field	Description
ATCVL	ATM Compare Value Low Values are used by Auto Trim Machine to compare and adjust Internal Reference trim values during ATM SAR conversion.

26.4.11 MCG Control 7 Register (MCG_C7)

Address: 4006_4000h base + Ch offset = 4006_400Ch

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0		0				OSCSEL	
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

MCG_C7 field descriptions

Field	Description
7–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
5–2 Reserved	Reserved This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
OSCSEL	MCG OSC Clock Select Selects the MCG FLL external reference clock **NOTE:** The OSCSEL field can't be changed during MCG modes (like PBE), when external clock is serving as the clock source for MCG. 00 Selects Oscillator (OSCCLK0). 01 Selects 32 kHz RTC Oscillator. 10 Selects Oscillator (OSCCLK1). 11 RESERVED

26.4.12 MCG Control 8 Register (MCG_C8)

Address: 4006_4000h base + Dh offset = 4006_400Dh

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	LOCRE1	LOLRE	CME1	0				LOCS1
Write								w1c
Reset	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

MCG_C8 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 LOCRE1	Loss of Clock Reset Enable Determines if a interrupt or a reset request is made following a loss of RTC external reference clock. The LOCRE1 only has an affect when CME1 is set. 0 Interrupt request is generated on a loss of RTC external reference clock. 1 Generate a reset request on a loss of RTC external reference clock
6 LOLRE	PLL Loss of Lock Reset Enable Determines if an interrupt or a reset request is made following a PLL loss of lock. 0 Interrupt request is generated on a PLL loss of lock indication. The PLL loss of lock interrupt enable bit must also be set to generate the interrupt request. 1 Generate a reset request on a PLL loss of lock indication.
5 CME1	Clock Monitor Enable1 Enables the loss of clock monitoring circuit for the output of the RTC external reference clock. The LOCRE1 bit will determine whether an interrupt or a reset request is generated following a loss of RTC

Table continues on the next page...

MCG_C8 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	clock indication. The CME1 bit should be set to a logic 1 when the MCG is in an operational mode that uses the RTC as its external reference clock or if the RTC is operational. CME1 bit must be set to a logic 0 before the MCG enters any Stop mode. Otherwise, a reset request may occur when in Stop mode. CME1 should also be set to a logic 0 before entering VLPR or VLPW power modes. 0 External clock monitor is disabled for RTC clock. 1 External clock monitor is enabled for RTC clock.
4–1 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
0 LOCS1	RTC Loss of Clock Status This bit indicates when a loss of clock has occurred. This bit is cleared by writing a logic 1 to it when set. 0 Loss of RTC has not occur. 1 Loss of RTC has occur

26.4.13 MCG Control 12 Register (MCG_C12)

Address: 4006_4000h base + 11h offset = 4006_4011h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0							
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

MCG_C12 field descriptions

Field	Description
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

26.4.13 MCG Status 2 Register (MCG_S2)

Address: 4006_4000h base + 12h offset = 4006_4012h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0							
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

MCG_S2 field descriptions

Field	Description
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

26.4.13 MCG Test 3 Register (MCG_T3)

Address: 4006_4000h base + 13h offset = 4006_4013h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0							
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

MCG_T3 field descriptions

Field	Description
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

26.5 Functional description

26.5.1 MCG mode state diagram

The nine states of the MCG are shown in the following figure and are described in Table 26-4. The arrows indicate the permitted MCG mode transitions.

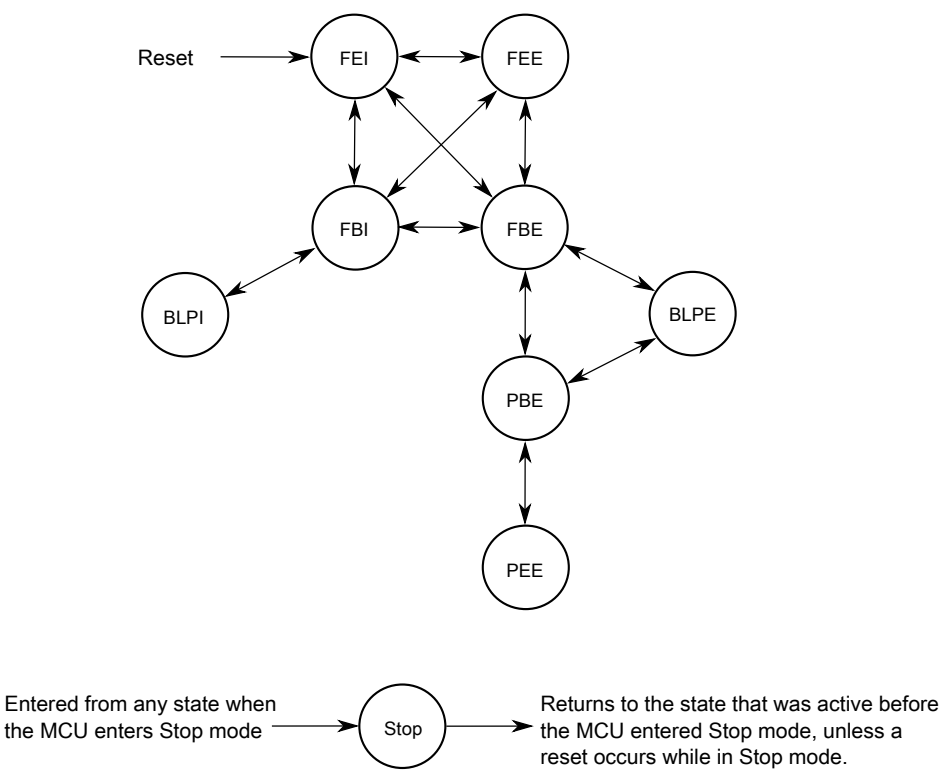


Figure 26-2. MCG mode state diagram

NOTE

- During exits from LLS or VLPS when the MCG is in PEE mode, the MCG will reset to PBE clock mode and the C1[CLKS] and S[CLKST] will automatically be set to 2'b10.
- If entering Normal Stop mode when the MCG is in PEE mode with PLLSTEN=0, the MCG will reset to PBE clock mode and C1[CLKS] and S[CLKST] will automatically be set to 2'b10.

26.5.1.1 MCG modes of operation

The MCG operates in one of the following modes.

Note

The MCG restricts transitions between modes. For the permitted transitions, see Figure 26-2.

Table 26-4. MCG modes of operation

Mode	Description
FLL Engaged Internal (FEI)	FLL engaged internal (FEI) is the default mode of operation and is entered when all the following condtions occur: • 00 is written to C1[CLKS]. • 1 is written to C1[IREFS]. • 0 is written to C6[PLLS]. In FEI mode, MCGOUTCLK is derived from the FLL clock (DCOCLK) that is controlled by the 32 kHz Internal Reference Clock (IRC). The FLL loop will lock the DCO frequency to the FLL factor, as selected by C4[DRST_DRS] and C4[DMX32] bits, times the internal reference frequency. See the C4[DMX32] bit description for more details. In FEI mode, the PLL is disabled in a low-power state unless C5[PLLCLKEN] is set .
FLL Engaged External (FEE)	FLL engaged external (FEE) mode is entered when all the following conditions occur: • 00 is written to C1[CLKS]. • 0 is written to C1[IREFS]. • C1[FRDIV] must be written to divide external reference clock to be within the range of 31.25 kHz to 39.0625 kHz • 0 is written to C6[PLLS].

Table continues on the next page...

Table 26-4. MCG modes of operation (continued)

Mode	Description
	In FEE mode, MCGOUTCLK is derived from the FLL clock (DCOCLK) that is controlled by the external reference clock. The FLL loop will lock the DCO frequency to the FLL factor, as selected by C4[DRST_DRS] and C4[DMX32] bits, times the external reference frequency, as specified by C1[FRDIV] and C2[RANGE]. See the C4[DMX32] bit description for more details. In FEE mode, the PLL is disabled in a low-power state unless C5[PLLCLKEN] is set .
FLL Bypassed Internal (FBI)	FLL bypassed internal (FBI) mode is entered when all the following conditions occur: • 01 is written to C1[CLKS]. • 1 is written to C1[IREFS]. • 0 is written to C6[PLLS] • 0 is written to C2[LP]. In FBI mode, the MCGOUTCLK is derived either from the slow (32 kHz IRC) or fast (4 MHz IRC) internal reference clock, as selected by the C2[IRCS] bit. The FLL is operational but its output is not used. This mode is useful to allow the FLL to acquire its target frequency while the MCGOUTCLK is driven from the C2[IRCS] selected internal reference clock. The FLL clock (DCOCLK) is controlled by the slow internal reference clock, and the DCO clock frequency locks to a multiplication factor, as selected by C4[DRST_DRS] and C4[DMX32] bits, times the internal reference frequency. See the C4[DMX32] bit description for more details. In FBI mode, the PLL is disabled in a low-power state unless C5[PLLCLKEN] is set .
FLL Bypassed External (FBE)	FLL bypassed external (FBE) mode is entered when all the following conditions occur: • 10 is written to C1[CLKS]. • 0 is written to C1[IREFS]. • C1[FRDIV] must be written to divide external reference clock to be within the range of 31.25 kHz to 39.0625 kHz. • 0 is written to C6[PLLS]. • 0 is written to C2[LP]. In FBE mode, the MCGOUTCLK is derived from the OSCSEL external reference clock. The FLL is operational but its output is not used. This mode is useful to allow the FLL to acquire its target frequency while the MCGOUTCLK is driven from the external reference clock. The FLL clock (DCOCLK) is controlled by the external reference clock, and the DCO clock frequency locks to a multiplication factor, as selected by C4[DRST_DRS] and C4[DMX32] bits, times the divided external reference frequency. See the C4[DMX32] bit description for more details. In FBE mode, the PLL is disabled in a low-power state unless C5[PLLCLKEN] is set .
PLL Engaged External (PEE)	PLL Engaged External (PEE) mode is entered when all the following conditions occur: • 00 is written to C1[CLKS]. • 0 is written to C1[IREFS]. • 1 is written to C6[PLLS]. In PEE mode, the MCGOUTCLK is derived from the output of PLL which is controlled by a external reference clock. The PLL clock frequency locks to a multiplication factor, as specified by its corresponding VDIV, times the selected PLL reference frequency, as specified by its corresponding PRDIV. The PLL's programmable reference divider must be configured to produce a valid PLL reference clock. The FLL is disabled in a low-power state.
PLL Bypassed External (PBE)	PLL Bypassed External (PBE) mode is entered when all the following conditions occur: • 10 is written to C1[CLKS].

Table continues on the next page...

Table 26-4. MCG modes of operation (continued)

Mode	Description
	• 0 is written to C1[IREFS]. • 1 is written to C6[PLLS]. • 0 is written to C2[LP]. In PBE mode, MCGOUTCLK is derived from the OSCSEL external reference clock; the PLL is operational, but its output clock is not used. This mode is useful to allow the PLL to acquire its target frequency while MCGOUTCLK is driven from the external reference clock. The PLL clock frequency locks to a multiplication factor, as specified by its [VDIV], times the PLL reference frequency, as specified by its [PRDIV]. In preparation for transition to PEE, the PLL's programmable reference divider must be configured to produce a valid PLL reference clock. The FLL is disabled in a low-power state.
Bypassed Low Power Internal (BLPI)	Bypassed Low Power Internal (BLPI) mode is entered when all the following conditions occur: • 01 is written to C1[CLKS]. • 1 is written to C1[IREFS]. • 0 is written to C6[PLLS]. • 1 is written to C2[LP]. In BLPI mode, MCGOUTCLK is derived from the internal reference clock. The FLL is disabled and PLL is disabled even if C5[PLLCLKEN] is set to 1.
Bypassed Low Power External (BLPE)	Bypassed Low Power External (BLPE) mode is entered when all the following conditions occur: • 10 is written to C1[CLKS]. • 0 is written to C1[IREFS]. • 1 is written to C2[LP]. In BLPE mode, MCGOUTCLK is derived from the OSCSEL external reference clock. The FLL is disabled and PLL is disabled even if the C5[PLLCLKEN] is set to 1.
Stop	Entered whenever the MCU enters a Stop state. The power modes are chip specific. For power mode assignments, see the chapter that describes how modules are configured and MCG behavior during Stop recovery. Entering Stop mode, the FLL is disabled, and all MCG clock signals are static except in the following case: MCGPLLCLK is active in Normal Stop mode when PLLSTEN=1 MCGIRCLK is active in Normal Stop mode when all the following conditions become true: • C1[IRCLKEN] = 1 • C1[IREFSTEN] = 1 **NOTE:** • When entering Low Power Stop modes (LLS or VLPS) from PEE mode, on exit the MCG clock mode is forced to PBE clock mode. C1[CLKS] and S[CLKST] will be configured to 2'b10 and S[LOCK] bit will be cleared without setting S[LOLS]. • When entering Normal Stop mode from PEE mode and if C5[PLLSTEN]=0, on exit the MCG clock mode is forced to PBE mode, the C1[CLKS] and S[CLKST] will be configured to 2'b10 and S[LOCK] bit will clear without setting S[LOLS]. If C5[PLLSTEN]=1, the S[LOCK] bit will not get cleared and on exit the MCG will continue to run in PEE mode.

NOTE

For the chip-specific modes of operation, see the power management chapter of this MCU.

26.5.1.2 MCG mode switching

C1[IREFS] can be changed at any time, but the actual switch to the newly selected reference clocks is shown by S[IREFST]. When switching between engaged internal and engaged external modes, the FLL will begin locking again after the switch is completed.

C1[CLKS] can also be changed at any time, but the actual switch to the newly selected clock is shown by S[CLKST]. If the newly selected clock is not available, the previous clock will remain selected.

The C4[DRST_DRS] write bits can be changed at any time except when C2[LP] bit is 1. If C4[DRST_DRS] write bits are changed while in FLL engaged internal (FEI) or FLL engaged external (FEE) mode, the MCGOUTCLK switches to the new selected DCO range within three clocks of the selected DCO clock. After switching to the new DCO (indicated by the updated C4[DRST_DRS] read bits), the FLL remains unlocked for several reference cycles. The FLL lock time is provided in the device data sheet as $t_{fll\_acquire}$.

26.5.2 Low-power bit usage

C2[LP] is provided to allow the FLL or PLL to be disabled and thus conserve power when these systems are not being used. C4[DRST_DRS] can not be written while C2[LP] is 1. However, in some applications, it may be desirable to enable the FLL or PLL and allow it to lock for maximum accuracy before switching to an engaged mode. Do this by writing 0 to C2[LP].

26.5.3 MCG Internal Reference Clocks

This module supports two internal reference clocks with nominal frequencies of 32 kHz (slow IRC) and 4 MHz (fast IRC). The fast IRC frequency can be divided down by programming of the FCRDIV to produce a frequency range of 32 kHz to 4 MHz.

26.5.3.1 MCG Internal Reference Clock

The MCG Internal Reference Clock (MCGIRCLK) provides a clock source for other on-chip peripherals and is enabled when C1[IRCLKEN]=1. When enabled, MCGIRCLK is driven by either the fast internal reference clock (4 MHz IRC which can be divided down by the FRDIV factors) or the slow internal reference clock (32 kHz IRC). The IRCS clock frequency can be re-targeted by trimming the period of its IRCS selected internal reference clock. This can be done by writing a new trim value to the C3[SCTRIM]:C4[SCFTRIM] bits when the slow IRC clock is selected or by writing a new trim value to C4[FCTRIM]:C2[FCFTRIM] when the fast IRC clock is selected. The internal reference clock period is proportional to the trim value written. C3[SCTRIM]:C4[SCFTRIM] (if C2[IRCS]=0) and C4[FCTRIM]:C2[FCFTRIM] (if C2[IRCS]=1) bits affect the MCGOUTCLK frequency if the MCG is in FBI or BLPI modes. C3[SCTRIM]:C4[SCFTRIM] (if C2[IRCS]=0) bits also affect the MCGOUTCLK frequency if the MCG is in FEI mode.

Additionally, this clock can be enabled in Stop mode by setting C1[IRCLKEN] and C1[IREFSTEN], otherwise this clock is disabled in Stop mode.

26.5.4 External Reference Clock

The MCG module can support an external reference clock in all modes. See the device datasheet for external reference frequency range. When C1[IREFS] is set, the external reference clock will not be used by the FLL or PLL. In these modes, the frequency can be equal to the maximum frequency the chip-level timing specifications will support.

If any of the CME bits are asserted the slow internal reference clock is enabled along with the enabled external clock monitor. For the case when C6[CME0]=1, a loss of clock is detected if the OSC0 external reference falls below a minimum frequency (f_{loc_high} or f_{loc_low} depending on C2[RANGE0]). For the case when C8[CME1]=1, a loss of clock is detected if the RTC external reference falls below a minimum frequency (f_{loc_low}).

NOTE

All clock monitors must be disabled before entering these low-power modes: Stop, VLPS, VLPR, VLPW, LLS, and VLLSx.

On detecting a loss-of-clock event, the MCU generates a system reset if the respective LOCRE bit is set. Otherwise the MCG sets the respective LOCS bit and the MCG generates a LOCS interrupt request. In the case where a OSC loss of clock is detected, the PLL LOCK status bit is cleared.

26.5.5 MCG Fixed Frequency Clock

The MCG Fixed Frequency Clock (MCGFFCLK) provides a fixed frequency clock source for other on-chip peripherals; see the block diagram. This clock is driven by either the slow clock from the internal reference clock generator or the external reference clock from the Crystal Oscillator, divided by the FLL reference clock divider. The source of MCGFFCLK is selected by C1[IREFS].

This clock is synchronized to the peripheral bus clock and is valid only when its frequency is not more than 1/8 of the MCGOUTCLK frequency. When it is not valid, it is disabled and held high. The MCGFFCLK is not available when the MCG is in BLPI mode. This clock is also disabled in Stop mode. The FLL reference clock must be set within the valid frequency range for the MCGFFCLK.

26.5.6 MCG PLL clock

The MCG PLL Clock (MCGPLLCLK) is available depending on the device's configuration of the MCG module. For more details, see the clock distribution chapter of this MCU. The MCGPLLCLK is prevented from coming out of the MCG until it is enabled and S[LOCK0] is set.

26.5.7 MCG Auto TRIM (ATM)

The MCG Auto Trim (ATM) is a MCG feature that when enabled, it configures the MCG hardware to automatically trim the MCG Internal Reference Clocks using an external clock as a reference. The selection between which MCG IRC clock gets tested and enabled is controlled by the ATC[ATMS] control bit (ATC[ATMS]=0 selects the 32 kHz IRC and ATC[ATMS]=1 selects the 4 MHz IRC). If 4 MHz IRC is selected for the ATM, a divide by 128 is enabled to divide down the 4 MHz IRC to a range of 31.250 kHz.

When MCG ATM is enabled by writing ATC[ATME] bit to 1, The ATM machine will start auto trimming the selected IRC clock. During the autotrim process, ATC[ATME] will remain asserted and will deassert after ATM is completed or an abort occurs. The MCG ATM is aborted if a write to any of the following control registers is detected : C1, C3, C4, or ATC or if Stop mode is entered. If an abort occurs, ATC[ATMF] fail flag is asserted.

The ATM machine uses the bus clock as the external reference clock to perform the IRC auto-trim. Therefore, it is required that the MCG is configured in a clock mode where the reference clock used to generate the system clock is the external reference clock such as

FBE clock mode. The MCG must not be configured in a clock mode where selected IRC ATM clock is used to generate the system clock. The bus clock is also required to be running with in the range of 8–16 MHz.

To perform the ATM on the selected IRC, the ATM machine uses the successive approximation technique to adjust the IRC trim bits to generate the desired IRC trimmed frequency. The ATM SARs each of the ATM IRC trim bits starting with the MSB. For each trim bit test, the ATM uses a pulse that is generated by the ATM selected IRC clock to enable a counter that counts number of ATM external clocks. At end of each trim bit, the ATM external counter value is compared to the ATCV[15:0] register value. Based on the comparison result, the ATM trim bit under test will get cleared or stay asserted. This is done until all trim bits have been tested by ATM SAR machine.

Before the ATM can be enabled, the ATM expected count needs to be derived and stored into the ATCV register. The ATCV expected count is derived based on the required target Internal Reference Clock (IRC) frequency, and the frequency of the external reference clock using the following formula:

$$\text{ATCV Expected Count Value} = 21 * (Fe / Fr)$$

- Fr = Target Internal Reference Clock (IRC) Trimmed Frequency
- Fe = External Clock Frequency

If the auto trim is being performed on the 4 MHz IRC, the calculated expected count value must be multiplied by 128 before storing it in the ATCV register. Therefore, the ATCV Expected Count Value for trimming the 4 MHz IRC is calculated using the following formula.

$$\text{Expected Count Value} = (Fe / Fr) * 21 * (128)$$

26.6 Initialization / Application information

This section describes how to initialize and configure the MCG module in an application.

The following sections include examples on how to initialize the MCG and properly switch between the various available modes.

26.6.1 MCG module initialization sequence

The MCG comes out of reset configured for FEI mode.

The internal reference will stabilize in $t_{irefsts}$ microseconds before the FLL can acquire lock. As soon as the internal reference is stable, the FLL will acquire lock in $t_{fll\_acquire}$ milliseconds.

26.6.1.1 Initializing the MCG

Because the MCG comes out of reset in FEI mode, the only MCG modes that can be directly switched to upon reset are FEE, FBE, and FBI modes (see Figure 26-2). Reaching any of the other modes requires first configuring the MCG for one of these three intermediate modes. Care must be taken to check relevant status bits in the MCG status register reflecting all configuration changes within each mode.

To change from FEI mode to FEE or FBE modes, follow this procedure:

1. Enable the external clock source by setting the appropriate bits in C2 register.
2. Write to C1 register to select the clock mode.
   - If entering FEE mode, set C1[FRDIV] appropriately, clear C1[IREFS] bit to switch to the external reference, and leave C1[CLKS] at 2'b00 so that the output of the FLL is selected as the system clock source.
   - If entering FBE, clear C1[IREFS] to switch to the external reference and change C1[CLKS] to 2'b10 so that the external reference clock is selected as the system clock source. The C1[FRDIV] bits should also be set appropriately here according to the external reference frequency to keep the FLL reference clock in the range of 31.25 kHz to 39.0625 kHz. Although the FLL is bypassed, it is still on in FBE mode.
   - The internal reference can optionally be kept running by setting C1[IRCLKEN]. This is useful if the application will switch back and forth between internal and external modes. For minimum power consumption, leave the internal reference disabled while in an external clock mode.
3. Once the proper configuration bits have been set, wait for the affected bits in the MCG status register to be changed appropriately, reflecting that the MCG has moved into the proper mode.
   - If the MCG is in FEE, FBE, PEE, PBE, or BLPE mode, and C2[EREFS] was also set in step 1, wait here for S[OSCINIT0] bit to become set indicating that the external clock source has finished its initialization cycles and stabilized.

- If in FEE mode, check to make sure S[IREFST] is cleared before moving on.
- If in FBE mode, check to make sure S[IREFST] is cleared and S[CLKST] bits have changed to 2'b10 indicating the external reference clock has been appropriately selected. Although the FLL is bypassed, it is still on in FBE mode.

4. Write to the C4 register to determine the DCO output (MCGFLLCLK) frequency range.
   - By default, with C4[DMX32] cleared to 0, the FLL multiplier for the DCO output is 640. For greater flexibility, if a mid-low-range FLL multiplier of 1280 is desired instead, set C4[DRST_DRS] bits to 2'b01 for a DCO output frequency of 40 MHz. If a mid high-range FLL multiplier of 1920 is desired instead, set the C4[DRST_DRS] bits to 2'b10 for a DCO output frequency of 60 MHz. If a high-range FLL multiplier of 2560 is desired instead, set the C4[DRST_DRS] bits to 2'b11 for a DCO output frequency of 80 MHz.
   - When using a 32.768 kHz external reference, if the maximum low-range DCO frequency that can be achieved with a 32.768 kHz reference is desired, set C4[DRST_DRS] bits to 2'b00 and set C4[DMX32] bit to 1. The resulting DCO output (MCGOUTCLK) frequency with the new multiplier of 732 will be 24 MHz.
   - When using a 32.768 kHz external reference, if the maximum mid-range DCO frequency that can be achieved with a 32.768 kHz reference is desired, set C4[DRST_DRS] bits to 2'b01 and set C4[DMX32] bit to 1. The resulting DCO output (MCGOUTCLK) frequency with the new multiplier of 1464 will be 48 MHz.
   - When using a 32.768 kHz external reference, if the maximum mid high-range DCO frequency that can be achieved with a 32.768 kHz reference is desired, set C4[DRST_DRS] bits to 2'b10 and set C4[DMX32] bit to 1. The resulting DCO output (MCGOUTCLK) frequency with the new multiplier of 2197 will be 72 MHz.
   - When using a 32.768 kHz external reference, if the maximum high-range DCO frequency that can be achieved with a 32.768 kHz reference is desired, set C4[DRST_DRS] bits to 2'b11 and set C4[DMX32] bit to 1. The resulting DCO output (MCGOUTCLK) frequency with the new multiplier of 2929 will be 96 MHz.
5. Wait for the FLL lock time to guarantee FLL is running at new C4[DRST_DRS] and C4[DMX32] programmed frequency.

To change from FEI clock mode to FBI clock mode, follow this procedure:

1. Change C1[CLKS] bits in C1 register to 2'b01 so that the internal reference clock is selected as the system clock source.
2. Wait for S[CLKST] bits in the MCG status register to change to 2'b01, indicating that the internal reference clock has been appropriately selected.
3. Write to the C2 register to determine the IRCS output (IRCSCLK) frequency range.
    - By default, with C2[IRCS] cleared to 0, the IRCS selected output clock is the slow internal reference clock (32 kHz IRC). If the faster IRC is desired, set C2[IRCS] to 1 for a IRCS clock derived from the 4 MHz IRC source.

26.6.2 Using a 32.768 kHz reference

In FEE and FBE modes, if using a 32.768 kHz external reference, at the default FLL multiplication factor of 640, the DCO output (MCGFLLCLK) frequency is 20.97 MHz at low-range.

If C4[DRST_DRS] bits are set to 2'b01, the multiplication factor is doubled to 1280, and the resulting DCO output frequency is 41.94 MHz at mid-low-range. If C4[DRST_DRS] bits are set to 2'b10, the multiplication factor is set to 1920, and the resulting DCO output frequency is 62.91 MHz at mid high-range. If C4[DRST_DRS] bits are set to 2'b11, the multiplication factor is set to 2560, and the resulting DCO output frequency is 83.89 MHz at high-range.

In FBI and FEI modes, setting C4[DMX32] bit is not recommended. If the internal reference is trimmed to a frequency above 32.768 kHz, the greater FLL multiplication factor could potentially push the microcontroller system clock out of specification and damage the part.

26.6.3 MCG mode switching

When switching between operational modes of the MCG, certain configuration bits must be changed in order to properly move from one mode to another.

Each time any of these bits are changed (C6[PLLS], C1[IREFS], C1[CLKS], C2[IRCS], or C2[EREFS], the corresponding bits in the MCG status register (PLLST, IREFST, CLKST, IRCST, or OSCINIT) must be checked before moving on in the application software.

Additionally, care must be taken to ensure that the reference clock divider (C1[FRDIV] and C5[PRDIV0]) is set properly for the mode being switched to. For instance, in PEE mode, if using a 4 MHz crystal, C5[PRDIV0] must be set to 5'b000 (divide-by-1) or 5'b001 (divide-by-2) to divide the external reference down to the required frequency between 2 and 4 MHz

In FBE, FEE, FBI, and FEI modes, at any time, the application can switch the FLL multiplication factor between 640, 1280, 1920, and 2560 with C4[DRST_DRS] bits. Writes to C4[DRST_DRS] bits will be ignored if C2[LP]=1.

The table below shows MCGOUTCLK frequency calculations using C1[FRDIV], C5[PRDIV0], and C6[VDIV0] settings for each clock mode.

Table 26-5. MCGOUTCLK Frequency Calculation Options

Clock Mode	$f_{MCGOUTCLK}$[1]	Note
FEI (FLL engaged internal)	$f_{int} \times F$	Typical $f_{MCGOUTCLK}$ = 21 MHz immediately after reset.
FEE (FLL engaged external)	$(f_{ext} / FLL\_R) \times F$	f_{ext} / FLL_R must be in the range of 31.25 kHz to 39.0625 kHz
FBE (FLL bypassed external)	OSCCLK	OSCCLK / FLL_R must be in the range of 31.25 kHz to 39.0625 kHz
FBI (FLL bypassed internal)	MCGIRCLK	Selectable between slow and fast IRC
PEE (PLL engaged external)	(OSCCLK / PLL_R) × M	OSCCLK / PLL_R must be in the range of 2 – 4 MHz
PBE (PLL bypassed external)	OSCCLK	OSCCLK / PLL_R must be in the range of 2 – 4 MHz
BLPI (Bypassed low power internal)	MCGIRCLK	Selectable between slow and fast IRC
BLPE (Bypassed low power external)	OSCCLK	

1. FLL_R is the reference divider selected by the C1[FRDIV] bits, F is the FLL factor selected by C4[DRST_DRS] and C4[DMX32] bits , PLL_R is the reference divider selected by C5[PRDIV0] bits, and M is the multiplier selected by C6[VDIV0] bits.

This section will include several mode switching examples, using an 4 MHz external crystal. If using an external clock source less than 2 MHz, the MCG must not be configured for any of the PLL modes (PEE and PBE).

26.6.3.1 Example 1: Moving from FEI to PEE mode: External Crystal = 4 MHz, MCGOUTCLK frequency = 48 MHz

In this example, the MCG will move through the proper operational modes from FEI to PEE to achieve 48 MHz MCGOUTCLK frequency from 4 MHz external crystal reference. First, the code sequence will be described. Then there is a flowchart that illustrates the sequence.

1. First, FEI must transition to FBE mode:
   a. C2 = 0x2C
      - C2[RANGE] set to 2'b01 because the frequency of 4 MHz is within the high frequency range.
      - C2[HGO] set to 1 to configure the crystal oscillator for high gain operation.
      - C2[EREFS] set to 1, because a crystal is being used.
   b. C1 = 0x90
      - C1[CLKS] set to 2'b10 to select external reference clock as system clock source
      - C1[FRDIV] set to 3'b010, or divide-by-128 because 4 MHz / 128 = 31.25 kHz which is in the 31.25 kHz to 39.0625 kHz range required by the FLL
      - C1[IREFS] cleared to 0, selecting the external reference clock and enabling the external oscillator.
   c. Loop until S[OSCINIT0] is 1, indicating the crystal selected by C2[EREFS0] has been initialized.
   d. Loop until S[IREFST] is 0, indicating the external reference is the current source for the reference clock.
   e. Loop until S[CLKST] is 2'b10, indicating that the external reference clock is selected to feed MCGOUTCLK.
2. Then configure C5[PRDIV0] to generate correct PLL reference frequency.
   a. C5 = 0x01
      - C5[PRDIV] set to 5'b00001, or divide-by-2 resulting in a pll reference frequency of 4MHz/2 = 2 MHz.
3. Then, FBE must transition either directly to PBE mode or first through BLPE mode and then to PBE mode:

a. BLPE: If a transition through BLPE mode is desired, first set C2[LP] to 1.

b. BLPE/PBE: C6 = 0x40

- C6[PLLS] set to 1, selects the PLL. At this time, with a C1[PRDIV] value of 2'b001, the PLL reference divider is 2 (see PLL External Reference Divide Factor table), resulting in a reference frequency of 4 MHz/ 2 = 2 MHz. In BLPE mode, changing the C6[PLLS] bit only prepares the MCG for PLL usage in PBE mode.
- C6[VDIV] set to 5'b00000, or multiply-by-24 because 2 MHz reference * 24 = 48 MHz. In BLPE mode, the configuration of the VDIV bits does not matter because the PLL is disabled. Changing them only sets up the multiply value for PLL usage in PBE mode.

c. BLPE: If transitioning through BLPE mode, clear C2[LP] to 0 here to switch to PBE mode.

d. PBE: Loop until S[PLLST] is set, indicating that the current source for the PLLS clock is the PLL.

e. PBE: Then loop until S[LOCK0] is set, indicating that the PLL has acquired lock.

4. Lastly, PBE mode transitions into PEE mode:

a. C1 = 0x10

- C1[CLKS] set to 2'b00 to select the output of the PLL as the system clock source.

b. Loop until S[CLKST] are 2'b11, indicating that the PLL output is selected to feed MCGOUTCLK in the current clock mode.

- Now, with PRDIV of divide-by-2, and C6[VDIV] of multiply-by-24, MCGOUTCLK = [(4 MHz / 2) * 24] = 48 MHz.

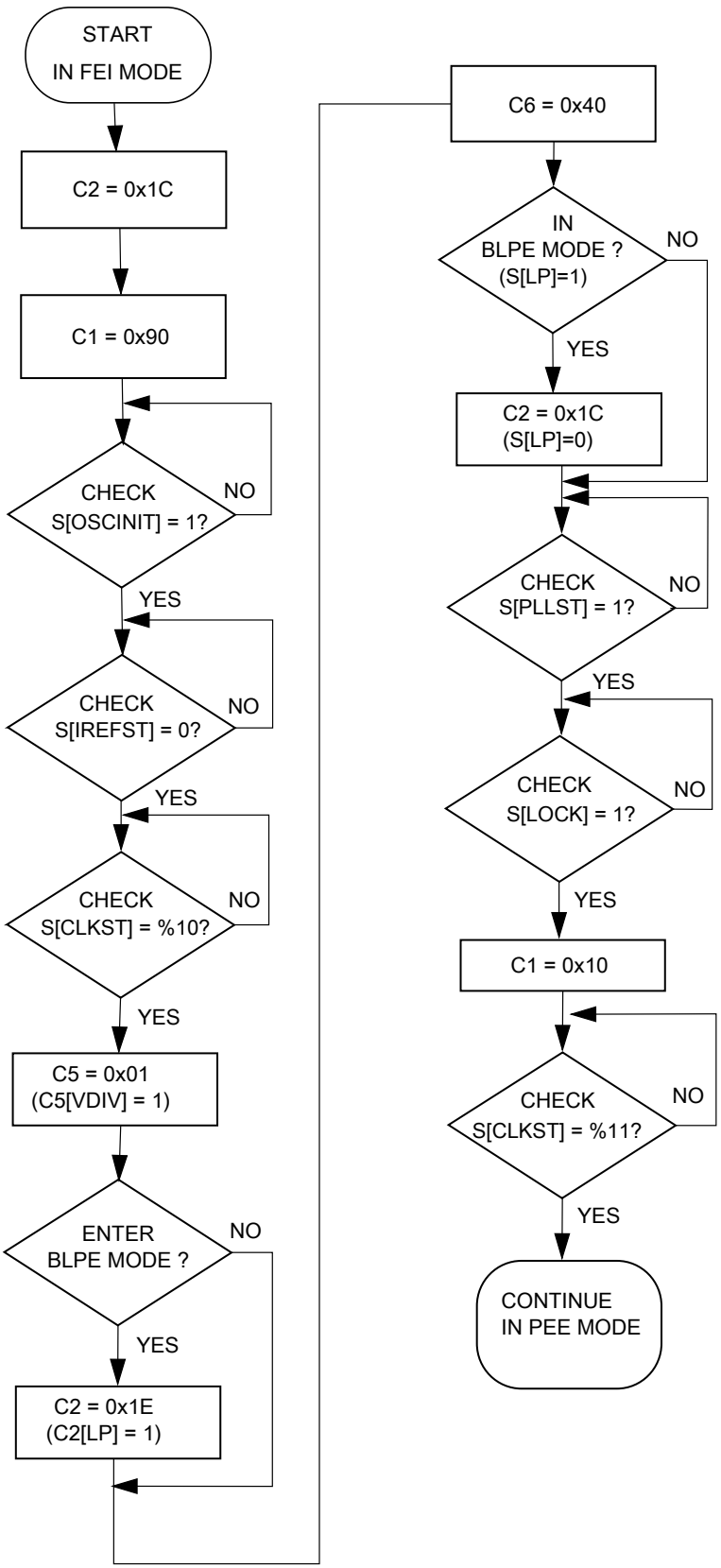


Figure 26-3. Flowchart of FEI to PEE mode transition using an 4 MHz crystal

26.6.3.2 Example 2: Moving from PEE to BLPI mode: MCGOUTCLK frequency =32 kHz

In this example, the MCG will move through the proper operational modes from PEE mode with a 4 MHz crystal configured for a 48 MHz MCGOUTCLK frequency (see previous example) to BLPI mode with a 32 kHz MCGOUTCLK frequency. First, the code sequence will be described. Then there is a flowchart that illustrates the sequence.

1. First, PEE must transition to PBE mode:
   a. C1 = 0x90
      - C1[CLKS] set to 2'b10 to switch the system clock source to the external reference clock.
   b. Loop until S[CLKST] are 2'b10, indicating that the external reference clock is selected to feed MCGOUTCLK.
2. Then, PBE must transition either directly to FBE mode or first through BLPE mode and then to FBE mode:
   a. BLPE: If a transition through BLPE mode is desired, first set C2[LP] to 1.
   b. BLPE/FBE: C6 = 0x00
      - C6[PLLS] clear to 0 to select the FLL. At this time, with C1[FRDIV] value of 3'b010, the FLL divider is set to 128, resulting in a reference frequency of 4 MHz / 128 = 31.25 kHz. If C1[FRDIV] was not previously set to 3'b010 (necessary to achieve required 31.25–39.06 kHz FLL reference frequency with an 4 MHz external source frequency), it must be changed prior to clearing C6[PLLS] bit. In BLPE mode,changing this bit only prepares the MCG for FLL usage in FBE mode. With C6[PLLS] = 0, the C6[VDIV] value does not matter.
   c. BLPE: If transitioning through BLPE mode, clear C2[LP] to 0 here to switch to FBE mode.
   d. FBE: Loop until S[PLLST] is cleared, indicating that the current source for the PLLS clock is the FLL.
3. Next, FBE mode transitions into FBI mode:
   a. C1 = 0x54
      - C1[CLKS] set to 2'b01 to switch the system clock to the internal reference clock.

- C1[IREFS] set to 1 to select the internal reference clock as the reference clock source.
- C1[FRDIV] remain unchanged because the reference divider does not affect the internal reference.

b. Loop until S[IREFST] is 1, indicating the internal reference clock has been selected as the reference clock source.

c. Loop until S[CLKST] are 2'b01, indicating that the internal reference clock is selected to feed MCGOUTCLK.

4. Lastly, FBI transitions into BLPI mode.

a. C2 = 0x02

- C2[LP] is 1
- C2[RANGE], C2[HGO], C2[EREFS], C1[IRCLKEN], and C1[IREFSTEN] bits are ignored when the C1[IREFS] bit is set. They can remain set, or be cleared at this point.

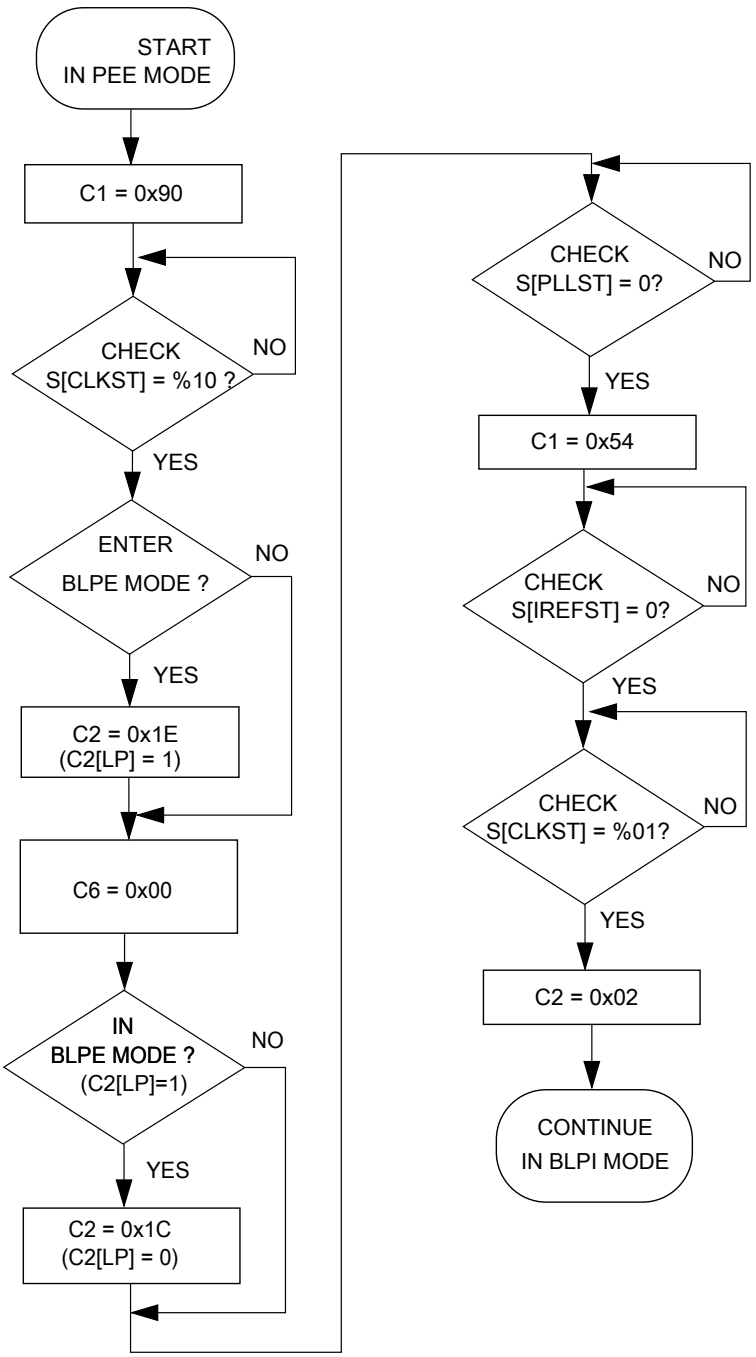


Figure 26-4. Flowchart of PEE to BLPI mode transition using an 4 MHz crystal

26.6.3.3 Example 3: Moving from BLPI to FEE mode

In this example, the MCG will move through the proper operational modes from BLPI mode at a 32 kHz MCGOUTCLK frequency running off the internal reference clock (see previous example) to FEE mode using a 4 MHz crystal configured for a 20 MHz MCGOUTCLK frequency. First, the code sequence will be described. Then there is a flowchart that illustrates the sequence.

1. First, BLPI must transition to FBI mode.
   a. C2 = 0x00
      - C2[LP] is 0
2. Next, FBI will transition to FEE mode.
   a. C2 = 0x1C
      - C2[RANGE] set to 2'b01 because the frequency of 4 MHz is within the high frequency range.
      - C2[HGO] set to 1 to configure the crystal oscillator for high gain operation.
      - C2[EREFS] set to 1, because a crystal is being used.
   b. C1 = 0x10
      - C1[CLKS] set to 2'b00 to select the output of the FLL as system clock source.
      - C1[FRDIV] remain at 3'b010, or divide-by-128 for a reference of 4 MHz / 128 = 31.25 kHz.
      - C1[IREFS] cleared to 0, selecting the external reference clock.
   c. Loop until S[OSCINIT] is 1, indicating the crystal selected by the C2[EREFS] bit has been initialized.
   d. Loop until S[IREFST] is 0, indicating the external reference clock is the current source for the reference clock.
   e. Loop until S[CLKST] are 2'b00, indicating that the output of the FLL is selected to feed MCGOUTCLK.
   f. Now, with a 31.25 kHz reference frequency, a fixed DCO multiplier of 640, MCGOUTCLK = 31.25 kHz * 640 / 1 = 20 MHz.
   g. At this point, by default, the C4[DRST_DRS] bits are set to 2'b00 and C4[DMX32] is cleared to 0. If the MCGOUTCLK frequency of 40 MHz is desired instead, set the C4[DRST_DRS] bits to 0x01 to switch the FLL

multiplication factor from 640 to 1280. To return the MCGOUTCLK frequency to 20 MHz, set C4[DRST_DRS] bits to 2'b00 again, and the FLL multiplication factor will switch back to 640.

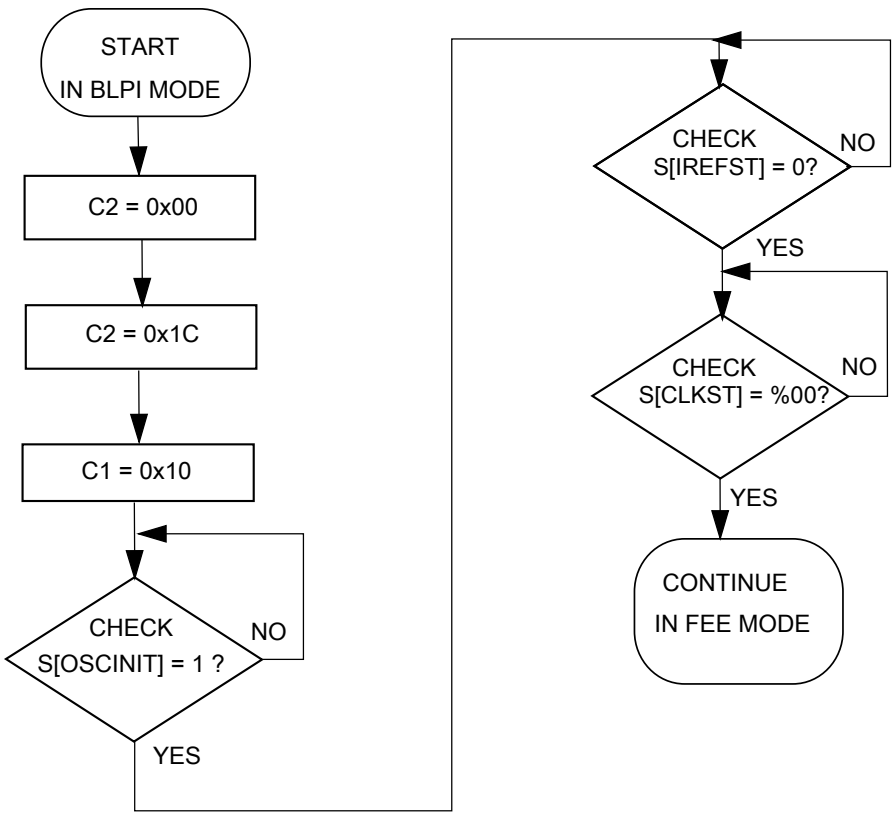


Figure 26-5. Flowchart of BLPI to FEE mode transition using an 4 MHz crystal

Chapter 27
Oscillator (OSC)

27.1 Chip-specific Information for this Module

27.1.1 OSC modes of operation with MCG

The MCG's C2 register bits configure the oscillator frequency range. See the OSC and MCG chapters for more details.

27.2 Introduction

The OSC module is a crystal oscillator. The module, in conjunction with an external crystal or resonator, generates a reference clock for the MCU.

27.3 Features and Modes

Key features of the module are listed here.

- Supports 32 kHz crystals (Low Range mode)
- Supports 3–8 MHz, 8–32 MHz crystals and resonators (High Range mode)
- Automatic Gain Control (AGC) to optimize power consumption in high frequency ranges 3–8 MHz, 8–32 MHz using low-power mode
- High gain option in frequency ranges: 32 kHz, 3–8 MHz, and 8–32 MHz
- Voltage and frequency filtering to guarantee clock frequency and stability
- Optionally external input bypass clock from EXTAL signal directly

- One clock for MCU clock system
- Two clocks for on-chip peripherals that can work in Stop modes

Functional Description describes the module's operation in more detail.

27.4 Block Diagram

The OSC module uses a crystal or resonator to generate three filtered oscillator clock signals.Three clocks are output from OSC module: OSCCLK for MCU system, OSCERCLK for on-chip peripherals, and OSC32KCLK. The OSCCLK can only work in run mode. OSCERCLK and OSC32KCLK can work in low power modes. For the clock source assignments, refer to the clock distribution information of this MCU.

Refer to the chip configuration details for the external reference clock source in this MCU.

The figure found here shows the block diagram of the OSC module.

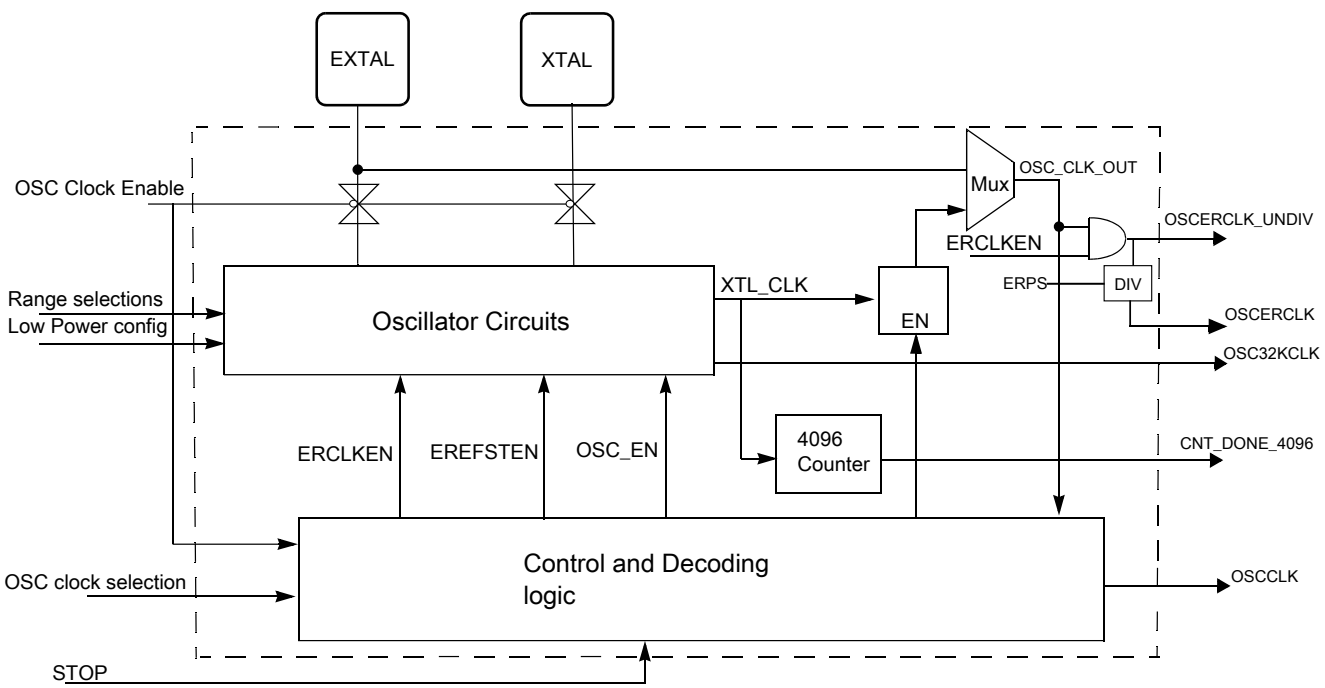


Figure 27-1. OSC Module Block Diagram

27.5 OSC Signal Descriptions

The table found here shows the user-accessible signals available for the OSC module.

Refer to signal multiplexing information for this MCU for more details.

Table 27-1. OSC Signal Descriptions

Signal	Description	I/O
EXTAL	External clock/Oscillator input	I
XTAL	Oscillator output	O

27.6 External Crystal / Resonator Connections

The connections for a crystal/resonator frequency reference are shown in the figures found here.

When using low-frequency, low-power mode, the only external component is the crystal or ceramic resonator itself. In the other oscillator modes, load capacitors (C_x, C_y) and feedback resistor (R_F) are required. The following table shows all possible connections.

Table 27-2. External Caystal/Resonator Connections

Oscillator Mode	Connections
Low-frequency (32 kHz), low-power	Connection 1
Low-frequency (32 kHz), high-gain	Connection 2/Connection 3
High-frequency (3~32 MHz), low-power	Connection 1/Connection 3[2,2]
High-frequency (3~32 MHz), high-gain	Connection 2/Connection 3[2]

1. When the load capacitors (Cx, Cy) are greater than 30 pF, use Connection 3.
2. With the low-power mode, the oscillator has the internal feedback resistor R_F. Therefore, the feedback resistor must not be externally with the Connection 3.

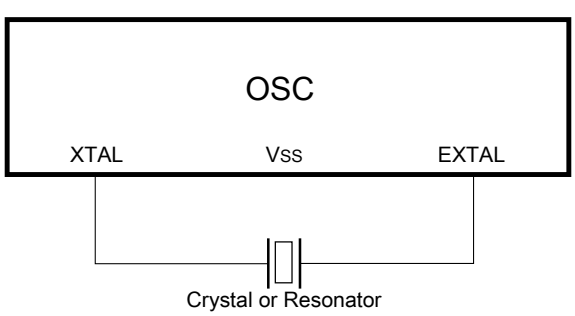


Figure 27-2. Crystal/Ceramic Resonator Connections - Connection 1

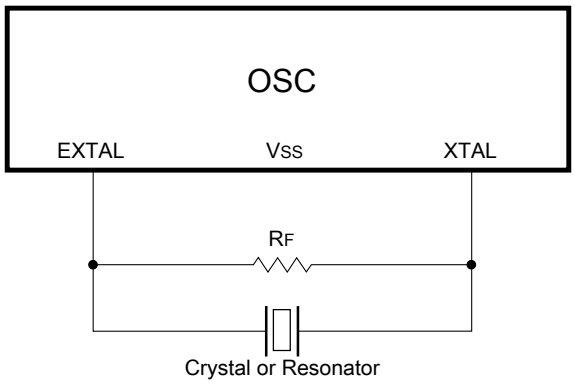


Figure 27-3. Crystal/Ceramic Resonator Connections - Connection 2

NOTE

Connection 1 and Connection 2 should use internal capacitors as the load of the oscillator by configuring the CR[SCxP] bits.

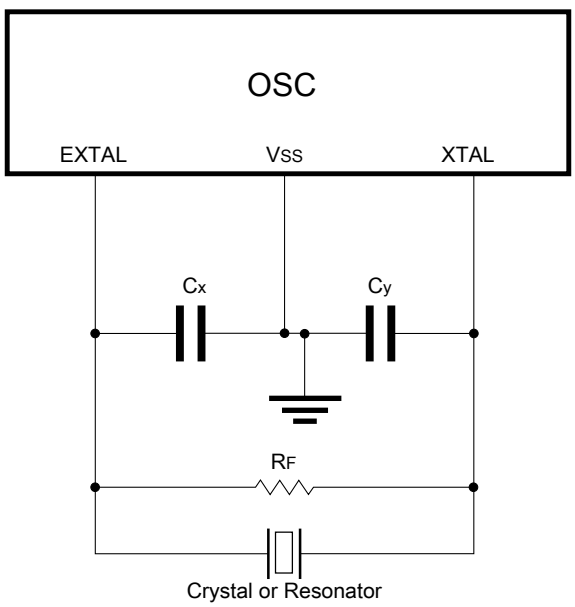


Figure 27-4. Crystal/Ceramic Resonator Connections - Connection 3

27.7 External Clock Connections

In external clock mode, the pins can be connected as shown in the figure found here.

NOTE

XTAL can be used as a GPIO when the GPIO alternate function is configured for it.

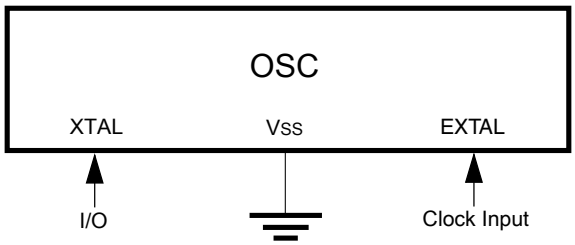


Figure 27-5. External Clock Connections

27.8 Memory Map/Register Definitions

Some oscillator module register bits are typically incorporated into other peripherals such as MCG or SIM.

27.8.1 OSC Memory Map/Register Definition

OSC memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4006_5000	OSC Control Register (OSC_CR)	8	R/W	00h	27.8.1.1/ 543
4006_5002	OSC_DIV (OSC_OSC_DIV)	8	R/W	00h	27.8.1.2/ 545

27.8.1.1 OSC Control Register (OSC_CR)

NOTE

After OSC is enabled and starts generating the clocks, the configurations such as low power and frequency range, must not be changed.

Address: 4006_5000h base + 0h offset = 4006_5000h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	ERCLKEN	0	EREFSTEN	0	SC2P	SC4P	SC8P	SC16P
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

OSC_CR field descriptions

Field	Description
7 ERCLKEN	External Reference Enable Enables external reference clock (OSCERCLK) . 0 External reference clock is inactive. 1 External reference clock is enabled.
6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
5 EREFSTEN	External Reference Stop Enable Controls whether or not the external reference clock (OSCERCLK) remains enabled when MCU enters Stop mode. 0 External reference clock is disabled in Stop mode. 1 External reference clock stays enabled in Stop mode if ERCLKEN is set before entering Stop mode.
4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
3 SC2P	Oscillator 2 pF Capacitor Load Configure Configures the oscillator load. 0 Disable the selection. 1 Add 2 pF capacitor to the oscillator load.
2 SC4P	Oscillator 4 pF Capacitor Load Configure Configures the oscillator load. 0 Disable the selection. 1 Add 4 pF capacitor to the oscillator load.
1 SC8P	Oscillator 8 pF Capacitor Load Configure Configures the oscillator load. 0 Disable the selection. 1 Add 8 pF capacitor to the oscillator load.
0 SC16P	Oscillator 16 pF Capacitor Load Configure Configures the oscillator load. 0 Disable the selection. 1 Add 16 pF capacitor to the oscillator load.

27.8.1.2 OSC_DIV (OSC_OSC_DIV)

OSC Clock divider register.

Address: 4006_5000h base + 2h offset = 4006_5002h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	ERPS		0	0	0	0	0	0
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

OSC_OSC_DIV field descriptions

Field	Description
7–6 ERPS	ERCLK prescaler. These two bits are used to divide the ERCLK output. The un-divided ERCLK output is not affected by these two bits. 00 The divisor ratio is 1. 01 The divisor ratio is 2. 10 The divisor ratio is 4. 11 The divisor ratio is 8.
5 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
3 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
2 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
1 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
0 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

27.9 Functional Description

Functional details of the module can be found here.

27.9.1 OSC module states

The states of the OSC module are shown in the following figure. The states and their transitions between each other are described in this section.

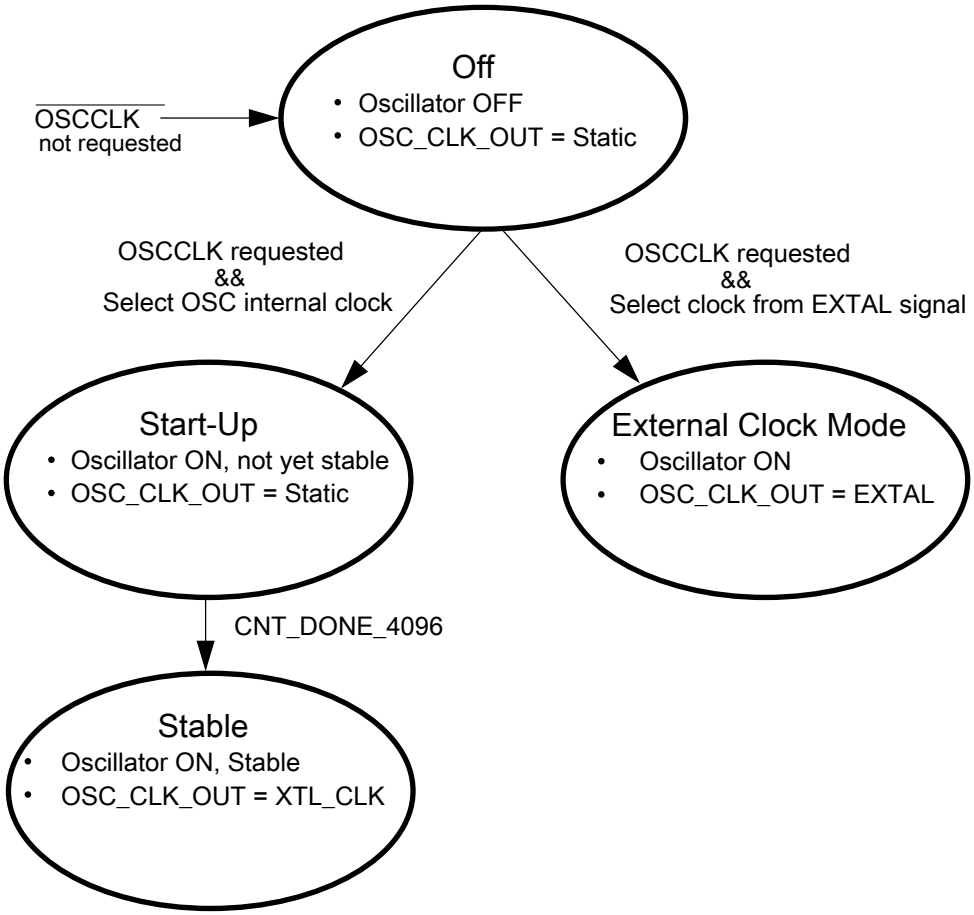


Figure 27-6. OSC Module state diagram

NOTE

XTL_CLK is the clock generated internally from OSC circuits.

27.9.1.1 Off

The OSC enters the Off state when the system does not require OSC clocks. Upon entering this state, XTL_CLK is static unless OSC is configured to select the clock from the EXTAL pad by clearing the external reference clock selection bit. For details regarding the external reference clock source in this MCU, refer to the chip configuration details. The EXTAL and XTAL pins are also decoupled from all other oscillator circuitry in this state. The OSC module circuitry is configured to draw minimal current.

27.9.1.2 Oscillator startup

The OSC enters startup state when it is configured to generate clocks (internally the OSC_EN transitions high) using the internal oscillator circuits by setting the external reference clock selection bit. In this state, the OSC module is enabled and oscillations are starting up, but have not yet stabilized. When the oscillation amplitude becomes large enough to pass through the input buffer, XTL_CLK begins clocking the counter. When the counter reaches 4096 cycles of XTL_CLK, the oscillator is considered stable and XTL_CLK is passed to the output clock OSC_CLK_OUT.

27.9.1.3 Oscillator Stable

The OSC enters stable state when it is configured to generate clocks (internally the OSC_EN transitions high) using the internal oscillator circuits by setting the external reference clock selection bit and the counter reaches 4096 cycles of XTL_CLK (when CNT_DONE_4096 is high). In this state, the OSC module is producing a stable output clock on OSC_CLK_OUT. Its frequency is determined by the external components being used.

27.9.1.4 External Clock mode

The OSC enters external clock state when it is enabled and external reference clock selection bit is cleared. For details regarding external reference clock source in this MCU, see the chip configuration details. In this state, the OSC module is set to buffer (with hysteresis) a clock from EXTAL onto the OSC_CLK_OUT. Its frequency is determined by the external clock being supplied.

27.9.2 OSC module modes

The OSC is a pierce-type oscillator that supports external crystals or resonators operating over the frequency ranges shown in Table 27-3. These modes assume the following conditions: OSC is enabled to generate clocks (OSC_EN=1), configured to generate clocks internally (MCG_C2[EREFS] = 1), and some or one of the other peripherals (MCG, Timer, and so on) is configured to use the oscillator output clock (OSC_CLK_OUT).

Table 27-3. Oscillator modes

Mode	Frequency Range
Low-frequency, high-gain	f_{osc_lo} (32.768 kHz) up to f_{osc_lo} (39.0625 kHz)

Table continues on the next page...

Table 27-3. Oscillator modes (continued)

Mode	Frequency Range
High-frequency mode1, high-gain	$f_{osc\_hi\_1}$ (3 MHz) up to $f_{osc\_hi\_1}$ (8 MHz)
High-frequency mode1, low-power	
High-frequency mode2, high-gain	$f_{osc\_hi\_2}$ (8 MHz) up to $f_{osc\_hi\_2}$ (32 MHz)
High-frequency mode2, low-power	

NOTE

For information about low power modes of operation used in this chip and their alignment with some OSC modes, see the chip's Power Management details.

27.9.2.1 Low-Frequency, High-Gain Mode

In Low-frequency, high-gain mode, the oscillator uses a simple inverter-style amplifier. The gain is set to achieve rail-to-rail oscillation amplitudes.

The oscillator input buffer in this mode is single-ended. It provides low pass frequency filtering as well as hysteresis for voltage filtering and converts the output to logic levels. In this mode, the internal capacitors could be used.

27.9.2.2 Low-Frequency, Low-Power Mode

In low-frequency, low-power mode, the oscillator uses a gain control loop to minimize power consumption. As the oscillation amplitude increases, the amplifier current is reduced. This continues until a desired amplitude is achieved at steady-state. This mode provides low pass frequency filtering as well as hysteresis for voltage filtering and converts the output to logic levels. In this mode, the internal capacitors could be used, the internal feedback resistor is connected, and no external resistor should be used.

In this mode, the amplifier inputs, gain-control input, and input buffer input are all capacitively coupled for leakage tolerance (not sensitive to the DC level of EXTAL).

Also in this mode, all external components except for the resonator itself are integrated, which includes the load capacitors and feeback resistor that biases EXTAL.

27.9.2.3 High-Frequency, High-Gain Mode

In high-frequency, high-gain mode, the oscillator uses a simple inverter-style amplifier. The gain is set to achieve rail-to-rail oscillation amplitudes. This mode provides low pass frequency filtering as well as hysteresis for voltage filtering and converts the output to logic levels. In this mode, the internal capacitors could be used.

27.9.2.4 High-Frequency, Low-Power Mode

In high-frequency, low-power mode, the oscillator uses a gain control loop to minimize power consumption. As the oscillation amplitude increases, the amplifier current is reduced. This continues until a desired amplitude is achieved at steady-state. In this mode, the internal capacitors could be used, the internal feedback resistor is connected, and no external resistor should be used.

The oscillator input buffer in this mode is differential. It provides low pass frequency filtering as well as hysteresis for voltage filtering and converts the output to logic levels.

27.9.3 Counter

The oscillator output clock (OSC_CLK_OUT) is gated off until the counter has detected 4096 cycles of its input clock (XTL_CLK). After 4096 cycles are completed, the counter passes XTL_CLK onto OSC_CLK_OUT. This counting timeout is used to guarantee output clock stability.

27.9.4 Reference clock pin requirements

The OSC module requires use of both the EXTAL and XTAL pins to generate an output clock in Oscillator mode, but requires only the EXTAL pin in External clock mode. The EXTAL and XTAL pins are available for I/O. For the implementation of these pins on this device, refer to the Signal Multiplexing chapter.

27.10 Reset

There is no reset state associated with the OSC module. The counter logic is reset when the OSC is not configured to generate clocks.

There are no sources of reset requests for the OSC module.

27.11 Low power modes operation

When the MCU enters Stop modes, the OSC is functional depending on CR[ERCLKEN] and CR[EREFSETN] bit settings. If both these bits are set, the OSC is in operation.

In Low Leakage Stop (LLS) modes, the OSC holds all register settings. If CR[ERCLKEN] and CR[EREFSTEN] are set before entry to Low Leakage Stop modes, the OSC is still functional in these modes. After waking up from Very Low Leakage Stop (VLLSx) modes, all OSC register bits are reset and initialization is required through software.

27.12 Interrupts

The OSC module does not generate any interrupts.

Chapter 28
RTC Oscillator (OSC32K)

28.1 Introduction

The RTC oscillator module provides the clock source for the RTC. The RTC oscillator module, in conjunction with an external crystal, generates a reference clock for the RTC.

28.1.1 Features and Modes

The key features of the RTC oscillator are as follows:

- Supports 32 kHz crystals with very low power
- Consists of internal feed back resistor
- Consists of internal programmable capacitors as the C_{load} of the oscillator
- Automatic Gain Control (AGC) to optimize power consumption

The RTC oscillator operations are described in detail in Functional Description .

28.1.2 Block Diagram

The following is the block diagram of the RTC oscillator.

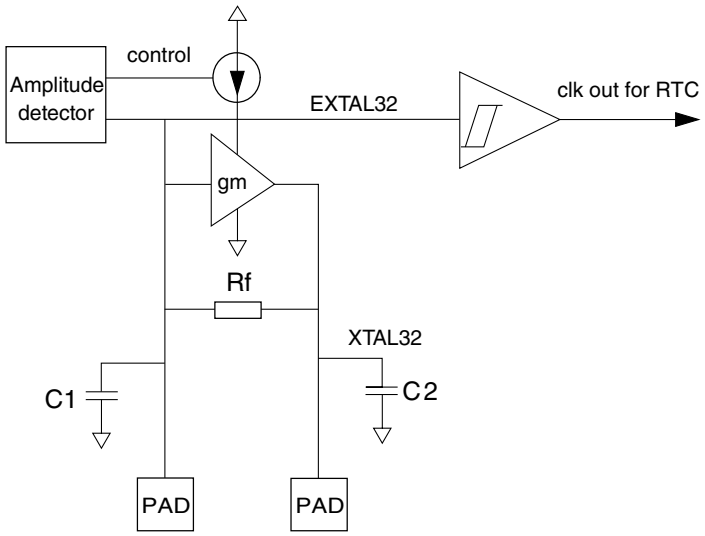


Figure 28-1. RTC Oscillator Block Diagram

28.2 RTC Signal Descriptions

The following table shows the user-accessible signals available for the RTC oscillator. See the chip-level specification to find out which signals are actually connected to the external pins.

Table 28-1. RTC Signal Descriptions

Signal	Description	I/O
EXTAL32	Oscillator Input	I
XTAL32	Oscillator Output	O

28.2.1 EXTAL32 — Oscillator Input

This signal is the analog input of the RTC oscillator.

28.2.2 XTAL32 — Oscillator Output

This signal is the analog output of the RTC oscillator module.

28.3 External Crystal Connections

The connections with a crystal is shown in the following figure. External load capacitors and feedback resistor are not required.

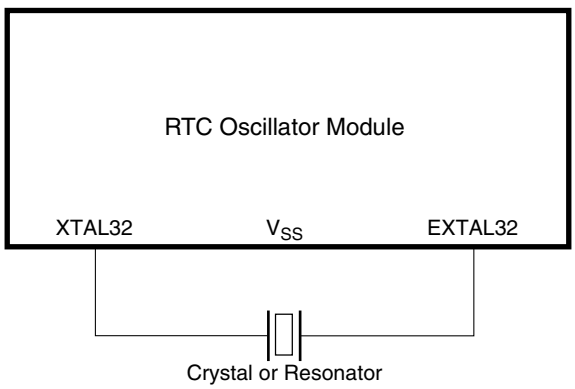


Figure 28-2. Crystal Connections

28.4 Memory Map/Register Descriptions

RTC oscillator control bits are part of the RTC registers. Refer to RTC Control Register (RTC_CR) , or RTC_GP_DATA_REG in the chip-specific information section, for more details.

28.5 Functional Description

As shown in Figure 28-1, the module includes an amplifier which supplies the negative resistor for the RTC oscillator. The gain of the amplifier is controlled by the amplitude detector, which optimizes the power consumption. A schmitt trigger is used to translate the sine-wave generated by this oscillator to a pulse clock out, which is a reference clock for the RTC digital core.

The oscillator includes an internal feedback resistor of approximately 100 MΩ between EXTAL32 and XTAL32.

In addition, there are two programmable capacitors with this oscillator, which can be used as the Cload of the oscillator. The programmable range is from 0pF to 30pF.

28.6 Reset Overview

There is no reset state associated with the RTC oscillator.

28.7 Interrupts

The RTC oscillator does not generate any interrupts.

Chapter 29
Flash Memory Controller (FMC)

29.1 Introduction

The Flash Memory Controller (FMC) is a memory acceleration unit that provides:

- an interface between the device and the nonvolatile memory.
- buffers that can accelerate flash memory transfers.

29.1.1 Overview

The Flash Memory Controller manages the interface between the device and the flash memory. The FMC receives status information detailing the configuration of the memory and uses this information to ensure a proper interface. The following table shows the supported read/write operations.

Flash memory type	Read	Write
Program flash memory	8-bit, 16-bit, and 32-bit reads	—

In addition, for bank 0, the FMC provides three separate mechanisms for accelerating the interface between the device and the flash memory. A 64-bit speculation buffer can prefetch the next 64-bit flash memory location, and both a 4-way, 8-set cache and a single-entry 64-bit buffer can store previously accessed flash memory data for quick access times.

29.1.2 Features

The FMC's features include:

- Interface between the device and the flash memory:
  - 8-bit, 16-bit, and 32-bit read operations to program flash memory.

- For bank 0: Read accesses to consecutive 32-bit spaces in memory return the second read data with no wait states. The memory returns 64 bits via the 32-bit bus access.
- Crossbar master access protection for setting no access, read-only access, write-only access, or read/write access for each crossbar master.

- For bank 0: Acceleration of data transfer from program flash memory to the device:
  - 64-bit prefetch speculation buffer with controls for instruction/data access per master
  - 4-way, 8-set, 64-bit line size cache for a total of thirty-two 64-bit entries with controls for replacement algorithm and lock per way
  - Single-entry buffer
  - Invalidation control for the speculation buffer and the single-entry buffer

29.2 Modes of operation

The FMC only operates when a bus master accesses the flash memory.

For any device power mode where the flash memory cannot be accessed, the FMC is disabled.

29.3 External signal description

The FMC has no external signals.

29.4 Memory map and register descriptions

The programming model consists of the FMC control registers and the program visible cache (data and tag/valid entries).

NOTE

Program the registers only while the flash controller is idle (for example, execute from RAM). Changing configuration settings while a flash access is in progress can lead to non-deterministic behavior.

Table 29-1. FMC register access

Registers	Read access		Write access	
	Mode	Length	Mode	Length
Control registers: PFAPR, PFB0CR, PFB1CR	Supervisor (privileged) mode or user mode	32 bits	Supervisor (privileged) mode only	32 bits
Cache registers	Supervisor (privileged) mode or user mode	32 bits	Supervisor (privileged) mode only	32 bits

NOTE

Accesses to unimplemented registers within the FMC's 4 KB address space return a bus error.

The cache entries, both data and tag/valid, can be read at any time.

NOTE

System software is required to maintain memory coherence when any segment of the flash cache is programmed. For example, all buffer data associated with the reprogrammed flash should be invalidated. Accordingly, cache program visible writes must occur after a programming or erase event is completed and before the new memory image is accessed.

The cache is a 4-way, set-associative cache with 8 sets. The ways are numbered 0-3 and the sets are numbered 0-7. The following table elaborates on the tag/valid and data entries.

Table 29-2. Program visible cache registers

Cache storage	Based at offset	Contents of 32-bit read	Nomenclature	Nomenclature example
Tag	100h	13'h0, tag[18:5], 4'h0, valid	In TAGVDWxSy, x denotes the way and y denotes the set.	TAGVDW2S0 is the 14-bit tag and 1-bit valid for cache entry way 2, set 0.
Data	200h	Upper or lower longword of data	In DATAWxSyU and DATAWxSyL, x denotes the way, y denotes the set, and U and L represent upper and lower word, respectively.	DATAW1S0U represents bits [63:32] of data entry way 1, set 0, and DATAW1S0L represents bits [31:0] of data entry way 1, set 0.

FMC memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4001_F000	Flash Access Protection Register (FMC_PFAPR)	32	R/W	00F8_003Fh	29.4.1/561

Table continues on the next page...

FMC memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4001_F004	Flash Bank 0 Control Register (FMC_PFB0CR)	32	R/W	3002_001Fh	29.4.2/565
4001_F008	PROCESS PHReserved (FMC_Reserved)	32	R/W	3000_0000h	29.4.3/567
4001_F100	Cache Tag Storage (FMC_TAGVDW0S0)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.4/568
4001_F104	Cache Tag Storage (FMC_TAGVDW0S1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.4/568
4001_F108	Cache Tag Storage (FMC_TAGVDW0S2)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.4/568
4001_F10C	Cache Tag Storage (FMC_TAGVDW0S3)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.4/568
4001_F110	Cache Tag Storage (FMC_TAGVDW0S4)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.4/568
4001_F114	Cache Tag Storage (FMC_TAGVDW0S5)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.4/568
4001_F118	Cache Tag Storage (FMC_TAGVDW0S6)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.4/568
4001_F11C	Cache Tag Storage (FMC_TAGVDW0S7)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.4/568
4001_F120	Cache Tag Storage (FMC_TAGVDW1S0)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.5/569
4001_F124	Cache Tag Storage (FMC_TAGVDW1S1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.5/569
4001_F128	Cache Tag Storage (FMC_TAGVDW1S2)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.5/569
4001_F12C	Cache Tag Storage (FMC_TAGVDW1S3)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.5/569
4001_F130	Cache Tag Storage (FMC_TAGVDW1S4)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.5/569
4001_F134	Cache Tag Storage (FMC_TAGVDW1S5)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.5/569
4001_F138	Cache Tag Storage (FMC_TAGVDW1S6)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.5/569
4001_F13C	Cache Tag Storage (FMC_TAGVDW1S7)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.5/569
4001_F140	Cache Tag Storage (FMC_TAGVDW2S0)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.6/570
4001_F144	Cache Tag Storage (FMC_TAGVDW2S1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.6/570
4001_F148	Cache Tag Storage (FMC_TAGVDW2S2)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.6/570
4001_F14C	Cache Tag Storage (FMC_TAGVDW2S3)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.6/570
4001_F150	Cache Tag Storage (FMC_TAGVDW2S4)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.6/570
4001_F154	Cache Tag Storage (FMC_TAGVDW2S5)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.6/570
4001_F158	Cache Tag Storage (FMC_TAGVDW2S6)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.6/570
4001_F15C	Cache Tag Storage (FMC_TAGVDW2S7)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.6/570
4001_F160	Cache Tag Storage (FMC_TAGVDW3S0)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.7/571
4001_F164	Cache Tag Storage (FMC_TAGVDW3S1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.7/571
4001_F168	Cache Tag Storage (FMC_TAGVDW3S2)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.7/571
4001_F16C	Cache Tag Storage (FMC_TAGVDW3S3)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.7/571
4001_F170	Cache Tag Storage (FMC_TAGVDW3S4)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.7/571
4001_F174	Cache Tag Storage (FMC_TAGVDW3S5)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.7/571
4001_F178	Cache Tag Storage (FMC_TAGVDW3S6)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.7/571
4001_F17C	Cache Tag Storage (FMC_TAGVDW3S7)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.7/571
4001_F200	Cache Data Storage (upper word) (FMC_DATAW0S0U)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.8/571
4001_F204	Cache Data Storage (lower word) (FMC_DATAW0S0L)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.9/572
4001_F208	Cache Data Storage (upper word) (FMC_DATAW0S1U)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.8/571
4001_F20C	Cache Data Storage (lower word) (FMC_DATAW0S1L)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.9/572

Table continues on the next page...

FMC memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4001_F210	Cache Data Storage (upper word) (FMC_DATAW0S2U)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.8/571
4001_F214	Cache Data Storage (lower word) (FMC_DATAW0S2L)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.9/572
4001_F218	Cache Data Storage (upper word) (FMC_DATAW0S3U)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.8/571
4001_F21C	Cache Data Storage (lower word) (FMC_DATAW0S3L)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.9/572
4001_F220	Cache Data Storage (upper word) (FMC_DATAW0S4U)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.8/571
4001_F224	Cache Data Storage (lower word) (FMC_DATAW0S4L)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.9/572
4001_F228	Cache Data Storage (upper word) (FMC_DATAW0S5U)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.8/571
4001_F22C	Cache Data Storage (lower word) (FMC_DATAW0S5L)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.9/572
4001_F230	Cache Data Storage (upper word) (FMC_DATAW0S6U)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.8/571
4001_F234	Cache Data Storage (lower word) (FMC_DATAW0S6L)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.9/572
4001_F238	Cache Data Storage (upper word) (FMC_DATAW0S7U)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.8/571
4001_F23C	Cache Data Storage (lower word) (FMC_DATAW0S7L)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.9/572
4001_F240	Cache Data Storage (upper word) (FMC_DATAW1S0U)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.10/ 572
4001_F244	Cache Data Storage (lower word) (FMC_DATAW1S0L)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.11/ 573
4001_F248	Cache Data Storage (upper word) (FMC_DATAW1S1U)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.10/ 572
4001_F24C	Cache Data Storage (lower word) (FMC_DATAW1S1L)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.11/ 573
4001_F250	Cache Data Storage (upper word) (FMC_DATAW1S2U)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.10/ 572
4001_F254	Cache Data Storage (lower word) (FMC_DATAW1S2L)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.11/ 573
4001_F258	Cache Data Storage (upper word) (FMC_DATAW1S3U)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.10/ 572
4001_F25C	Cache Data Storage (lower word) (FMC_DATAW1S3L)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.11/ 573
4001_F260	Cache Data Storage (upper word) (FMC_DATAW1S4U)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.10/ 572
4001_F264	Cache Data Storage (lower word) (FMC_DATAW1S4L)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.11/ 573
4001_F268	Cache Data Storage (upper word) (FMC_DATAW1S5U)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.10/ 572
4001_F26C	Cache Data Storage (lower word) (FMC_DATAW1S5L)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.11/ 573
4001_F270	Cache Data Storage (upper word) (FMC_DATAW1S6U)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.10/ 572
4001_F274	Cache Data Storage (lower word) (FMC_DATAW1S6L)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.11/ 573
4001_F278	Cache Data Storage (upper word) (FMC_DATAW1S7U)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.10/ 572

Table continues on the next page...

FMC memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4001_F27C	Cache Data Storage (lower word) (FMC_DATAW1S7L)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.11/ 573
4001_F280	Cache Data Storage (upper word) (FMC_DATAW2S0U)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.12/ 573
4001_F284	Cache Data Storage (lower word) (FMC_DATAW2S0L)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.13/ 574
4001_F288	Cache Data Storage (upper word) (FMC_DATAW2S1U)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.12/ 573
4001_F28C	Cache Data Storage (lower word) (FMC_DATAW2S1L)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.13/ 574
4001_F290	Cache Data Storage (upper word) (FMC_DATAW2S2U)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.12/ 573
4001_F294	Cache Data Storage (lower word) (FMC_DATAW2S2L)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.13/ 574
4001_F298	Cache Data Storage (upper word) (FMC_DATAW2S3U)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.12/ 573
4001_F29C	Cache Data Storage (lower word) (FMC_DATAW2S3L)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.13/ 574
4001_F2A0	Cache Data Storage (upper word) (FMC_DATAW2S4U)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.12/ 573
4001_F2A4	Cache Data Storage (lower word) (FMC_DATAW2S4L)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.13/ 574
4001_F2A8	Cache Data Storage (upper word) (FMC_DATAW2S5U)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.12/ 573
4001_F2AC	Cache Data Storage (lower word) (FMC_DATAW2S5L)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.13/ 574
4001_F2B0	Cache Data Storage (upper word) (FMC_DATAW2S6U)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.12/ 573
4001_F2B4	Cache Data Storage (lower word) (FMC_DATAW2S6L)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.13/ 574
4001_F2B8	Cache Data Storage (upper word) (FMC_DATAW2S7U)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.12/ 573
4001_F2BC	Cache Data Storage (lower word) (FMC_DATAW2S7L)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.13/ 574
4001_F2C0	Cache Data Storage (upper word) (FMC_DATAW3S0U)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.14/ 574
4001_F2C4	Cache Data Storage (lower word) (FMC_DATAW3S0L)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.15/ 575
4001_F2C8	Cache Data Storage (upper word) (FMC_DATAW3S1U)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.14/ 574
4001_F2CC	Cache Data Storage (lower word) (FMC_DATAW3S1L)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.15/ 575
4001_F2D0	Cache Data Storage (upper word) (FMC_DATAW3S2U)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.14/ 574

Table continues on the next page...

FMC memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4001_F2D4	Cache Data Storage (lower word) (FMC_DATAW3S2L)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.15/ 575
4001_F2D8	Cache Data Storage (upper word) (FMC_DATAW3S3U)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.14/ 574
4001_F2DC	Cache Data Storage (lower word) (FMC_DATAW3S3L)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.15/ 575
4001_F2E0	Cache Data Storage (upper word) (FMC_DATAW3S4U)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.14/ 574
4001_F2E4	Cache Data Storage (lower word) (FMC_DATAW3S4L)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.15/ 575
4001_F2E8	Cache Data Storage (upper word) (FMC_DATAW3S5U)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.14/ 574
4001_F2EC	Cache Data Storage (lower word) (FMC_DATAW3S5L)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.15/ 575
4001_F2F0	Cache Data Storage (upper word) (FMC_DATAW3S6U)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.14/ 574
4001_F2F4	Cache Data Storage (lower word) (FMC_DATAW3S6L)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.15/ 575
4001_F2F8	Cache Data Storage (upper word) (FMC_DATAW3S7U)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.14/ 574
4001_F2FC	Cache Data Storage (lower word) (FMC_DATAW3S7L)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	29.4.15/ 575

29.4.1 Flash Access Protection Register (FMC_PFAPR)

Address: 4001_F000h base + 0h offset = 4001_F000h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R W	Reserved								M7PFD	M6PFD	M5PFD	M4PFD	M3PFD	M2PFD	M1PFD	M0PFD
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R W	M7AP[1:0]		M6AP[1:0]		M5AP[1:0]		M4AP[1:0]		M3AP[1:0]		M2AP[1:0]		M1AP[1:0]		M0AP[1:0]	
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	1

FMC_PFAPR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–24 Reserved	This field is reserved.
23 M7PFD	Master 7 Prefetch Disable These bits control whether prefetching is enabled, based on the logical number of the requesting crossbar switch master. This field is further qualified by the PFBnCR[BxDPE,BxIPE] bits. 0 Prefetching for this master is enabled. 1 Prefetching for this master is disabled.
22 M6PFD	Master 6 Prefetch Disable These bits control whether prefetching is enabled, based on the logical number of the requesting crossbar switch master. This field is further qualified by the PFBnCR[BxDPE,BxIPE] bits. 0 Prefetching for this master is enabled. 1 Prefetching for this master is disabled.
21 M5PFD	Master 5 Prefetch Disable These bits control whether prefetching is enabled, based on the logical number of the requesting crossbar switch master. This field is further qualified by the PFBnCR[BxDPE,BxIPE] bits. 0 Prefetching for this master is enabled. 1 Prefetching for this master is disabled.
20 M4PFD	Master 4 Prefetch Disable These bits control whether prefetching is enabled, based on the logical number of the requesting crossbar switch master. This field is further qualified by the PFBnCR[BxDPE,BxIPE] bits. 0 Prefetching for this master is enabled. 1 Prefetching for this master is disabled.
19 M3PFD	Master 3 Prefetch Disable These bits control whether prefetching is enabled, based on the logical number of the requesting crossbar switch master. This field is further qualified by the PFBnCR[BxDPE,BxIPE] bits. 0 Prefetching for this master is enabled. 1 Prefetching for this master is disabled.
18 M2PFD	Master 2 Prefetch Disable These bits control whether prefetching is enabled, based on the logical number of the requesting crossbar switch master. This field is further qualified by the PFBnCR[BxDPE,BxIPE] bits. 0 Prefetching for this master is enabled. 1 Prefetching for this master is disabled.
17 M1PFD	Master 1 Prefetch Disable These bits control whether prefetching is enabled, based on the logical number of the requesting crossbar switch master. This field is further qualified by the PFBnCR[BxDPE,BxIPE] bits. 0 Prefetching for this master is enabled. 1 Prefetching for this master is disabled.

Table continues on the next page...

FMC_PFAPR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
16 M0PFD	Master 0 Prefetch Disable These bits control whether prefetching is enabled, based on the logical number of the requesting crossbar switch master. This field is further qualified by the PFBnCR[BxDPE,BxIPE] bits. 0 Prefetching for this master is enabled. 1 Prefetching for this master is disabled.
15–14 M7AP[1:0]	Master 7 Access Protection This field controls whether read and write access to the flash is allowed, based on the logical master number of the requesting crossbar switch master. 00 No access may be performed by this master. 01 Only read accesses may be performed by this master. 10 Only write accesses may be performed by this master. 11 Both read and write accesses may be performed by this master.
13–12 M6AP[1:0]	Master 6 Access Protection This field controls whether read and write access to the flash is allowed, based on the logical master number of the requesting crossbar switch master. 00 No access may be performed by this master 01 Only read accesses may be performed by this master 10 Only write accesses may be performed by this master 11 Both read and write accesses may be performed by this master
11–10 M5AP[1:0]	Master 5 Access Protection This field controls whether read and write access to the flash is allowed, based on the logical master number of the requesting crossbar switch master. 00 No access may be performed by this master 01 Only read accesses may be performed by this master 10 Only write accesses may be performed by this master 11 Both read and write accesses may be performed by this master
9–8 M4AP[1:0]	Master 4 Access Protection This field controls whether read and write access to the flash is allowed, based on the logical master number of the requesting crossbar switch master. 00 No access may be performed by this master 01 Only read accesses may be performed by this master 10 Only write accesses may be performed by this master 11 Both read and write accesses may be performed by this master
7–6 M3AP[1:0]	Master 3 Access Protection This field controls whether read and write access to the flash is allowed, based on the logical master number of the requesting crossbar switch master. 00 No access may be performed by this master 01 Only read accesses may be performed by this master

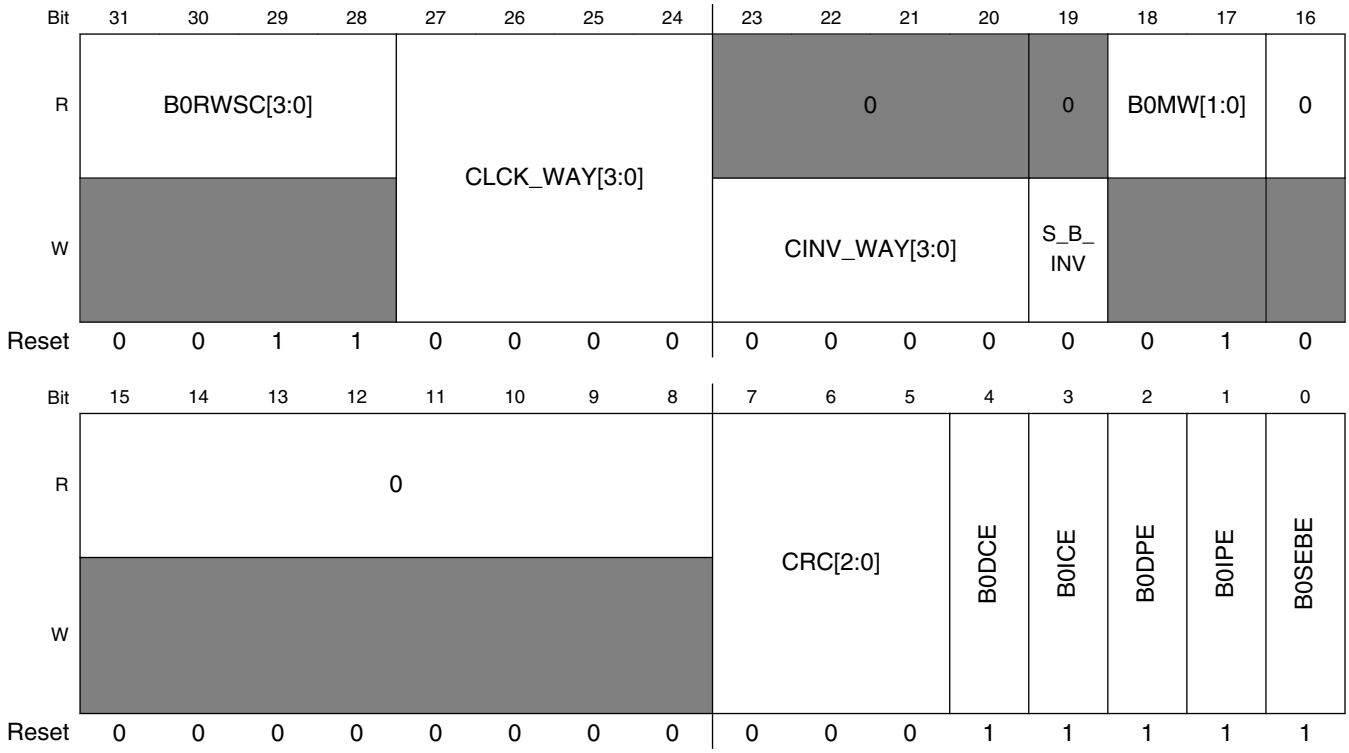
Table continues on the next page...

FMC_PFAPR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	10 Only write accesses may be performed by this master 11 Both read and write accesses may be performed by this master
5–4 M2AP[1:0]	Master 2 Access Protection This field controls whether read and write access to the flash is allowed, based on the logical master number of the requesting crossbar switch master. 00 No access may be performed by this master 01 Only read accesses may be performed by this master 10 Only write accesses may be performed by this master 11 Both read and write accesses may be performed by this master
3–2 M1AP[1:0]	Master 1 Access Protection This field controls whether read and write access to the flash is allowed, based on the logical master number of the requesting crossbar switch master. 00 No access may be performed by this master 01 Only read accesses may be performed by this master 10 Only write accesses may be performed by this master 11 Both read and write accesses may be performed by this master
M0AP[1:0]	Master 0 Access Protection This field controls whether read and write access to the flash is allowed, based on the logical master number of the requesting crossbar switch master. 00 No access may be performed by this master 01 Only read accesses may be performed by this master 10 Only write accesses may be performed by this master 11 Both read and write accesses may be performed by this master

29.4.2 Flash Bank 0 Control Register (FMC_PFB0CR)

Address: 4001_F000h base + 4h offset = 4001_F004h



FMC_PFB0CR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–28 B0RWSC[3:0]	Bank 0 Read Wait State Control This read-only field defines the number of wait states required to access the bank 0 flash memory. The relationship between the read access time of the flash array (expressed in system clock cycles) and RWSC is defined as: Access time of flash array [system clocks] = RWSC + 1 The FMC automatically calculates this value based on the ratio of the system clock speed to the flash clock speed. For example, when this ratio is 4:1, the field's value is 3h.
27–24 CLCK_WAY[3:0]	Cache Lock Way x These bits determine if the given cache way is locked such that its contents will not be displaced by future misses. The bit setting definitions are for each bit in the field. 0 Cache way is unlocked and may be displaced 1 Cache way is locked and its contents are not displaced
23–20 CINV_WAY[3:0]	Cache Invalidate Way x

Table continues on the next page...

FMC_PFB0CR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	These bits determine if the given cache way is to be invalidated (cleared). When a bit within this field is written, the corresponding cache way is immediately invalidated: the way's tag, data, and valid contents are cleared. This field always reads as zero. Cache invalidation takes precedence over locking. The cache is invalidated by system reset. System software is required to maintain memory coherency when any segment of the flash memory is programmed or erased. Accordingly, cache invalidations must occur after a programming or erase event is completed and before the new memory image is accessed. The bit setting definitions are for each bit in the field. 0 No cache way invalidation for the corresponding cache 1 Invalidate cache way for the corresponding cache: clear the tag, data, and vld bits of ways selected
19 S_B_INV	Invalidate Prefetch Speculation Buffer This bit determines if the FMC's prefetch speculation buffer and the single entry page buffer are to be invalidated (cleared). When this bit is written, the speculation buffer and single entry buffer are immediately cleared. This bit always reads as zero. 0 Speculation buffer and single entry buffer are not affected. 1 Invalidate (clear) speculation buffer and single entry buffer.
18–17 B0MW[1:0]	Bank 0 Memory Width This read-only field defines the width of the bank 0 memory. 00 32 bits 01 64 bits 10 Reserved 11 Reserved
16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
15–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
7–5 CRC[2:0]	Cache Replacement Control This 3-bit field defines the replacement algorithm for accesses that are cached. 000 LRU replacement algorithm per set across all four ways 001 Reserved 010 Independent LRU with ways [0-1] for ifetches, [2-3] for data 011 Independent LRU with ways [0-2] for ifetches, [3] for data 1xx Reserved
4 B0DCE	Bank 0 Data Cache Enable This bit controls whether data references are loaded into the cache. 0 Do not cache data references. 1 Cache data references.
3 B0ICE	Bank 0 Instruction Cache Enable This bit controls whether instruction fetches are loaded into the cache.

Table continues on the next page...

FMC_PFB0CR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Do not cache instruction fetches. 1 Cache instruction fetches.
2 B0DPE	Bank 0 Data Prefetch Enable This bit controls whether prefetches (or speculative accesses) are initiated in response to data references. 0 Do not prefetch in response to data references. 1 Enable prefetches in response to data references.
1 B0IPE	Bank 0 Instruction Prefetch Enable This bit controls whether prefetches (or speculative accesses) are initiated in response to instruction fetches. 0 Do not prefetch in response to instruction fetches. 1 Enable prefetches in response to instruction fetches.
0 B0SEBE	Bank 0 Single Entry Buffer Enable This bit controls whether the single entry page buffer is enabled in response to flash read accesses. A high-to-low transition of this enable forces the page buffer to be invalidated. 0 Single entry buffer is disabled. 1 Single entry buffer is enabled.

29.4.3 Reserved (FMC_Reserved)

This register address is reserved.

Address: 4001_F000h base + 8h offset = 4001_F008h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	Reserved				0									Reserved		0
W																
Reset	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0								0			0				
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

FMC_Reserved field descriptions

Field	Description
31–28 Reserved	This field is reserved.
27–19 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

Table continues on the next page...

FMC_Reserved field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
18–17 Reserved	This field is reserved.
16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
15–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
7–5 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

29.4.4 Cache Tag Storage (FMC_TAGVDW0S*n*)

The cache is a 4-way, set-associative cache with 8 sets. The ways are numbered 0-3 and the sets are numbered 0-7. In TAGVDWxSy, x denotes the way, and y denotes the set. This section represents tag/vld information for all sets in the indicated way.

Address: 4001_F000h base + 100h offset + (4d × i), where i=0d to 7d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0													tag[18:5]		
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	tag[18:5]											0				valid
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

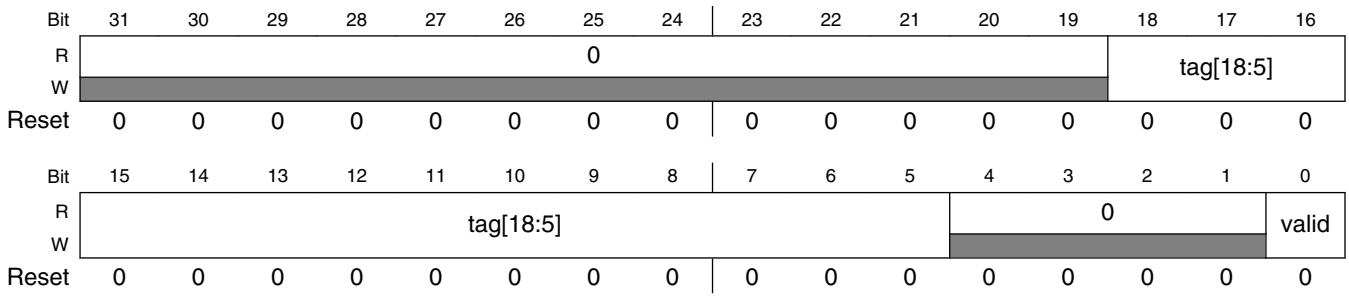
FMC_TAGVDW0S*n* field descriptions

Field	Description
31–19 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
18–5 tag[18:5]	14-bit tag for cache entry
4–1 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
0 valid	1-bit valid for cache entry

29.4.5 Cache Tag Storage (FMC_TAGVDW1S*n*)

The cache is a 4-way, set-associative cache with 8 sets. The ways are numbered 0-3 and the sets are numbered 0-7. In TAGVDWxSy, x denotes the way, and y denotes the set. This section represents tag/vld information for all sets in the indicated way.

Address: 4001_F000h base + 120h offset + (4d × i), where i=0d to 7d



FMC_TAGVDW1S*n* field descriptions

Field	Description
31–19 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
18–5 tag[18:5]	14-bit tag for cache entry
4–1 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
0 valid	1-bit valid for cache entry

29.4.6 Cache Tag Storage (FMC_TAGVDW2S*n*)

The cache is a 4-way, set-associative cache with 8 sets. The ways are numbered 0-3 and the sets are numbered 0-7. In TAGVDWxSy, x denotes the way, and y denotes the set. This section represents tag/vld information for all sets in the indicated way.

Address: 4001_F000h base + 140h offset + (4d × i), where i=0d to 7d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0													tag[18:5]		
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	tag[18:5]											0				valid
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

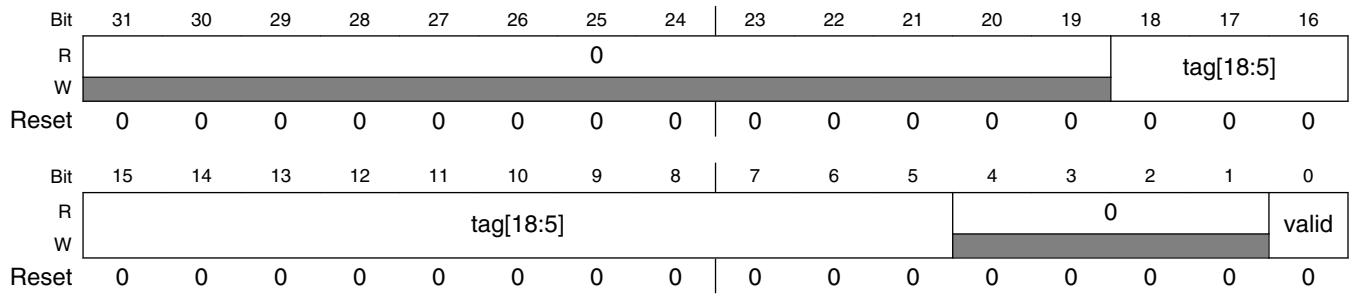
FMC_TAGVDW2S*n* field descriptions

Field	Description
31–19 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
18–5 tag[18:5]	14-bit tag for cache entry
4–1 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
0 valid	1-bit valid for cache entry

29.4.7 Cache Tag Storage (FMC_TAGVDW3S*n*)

The cache is a 4-way, set-associative cache with 8 sets. The ways are numbered 0-3 and the sets are numbered 0-7. In TAGVDWxSy, x denotes the way, and y denotes the set. This section represents tag/vld information for all sets in the indicated way.

Address: 4001_F000h base + 160h offset + (4d × i), where i=0d to 7d



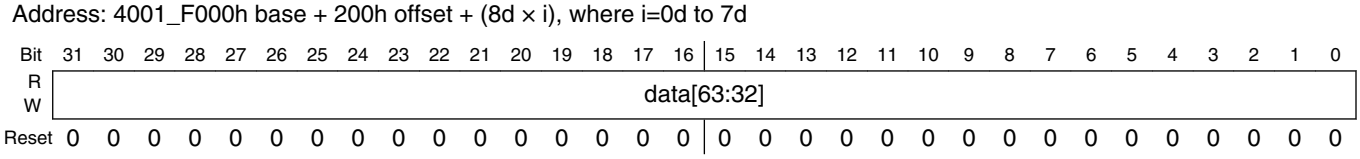
FMC_TAGVDW3S*n* field descriptions

Field	Description
31–19 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
18–5 tag[18:5]	14-bit tag for cache entry
4–1 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
0 valid	1-bit valid for cache entry

29.4.8 Cache Data Storage (upper word) (FMC_DATAW0S*n*U)

The cache of 64-bit entries is a 4-way, set-associative cache with 8 sets. The ways are numbered 0-3 and the sets are numbered 0-7. In DATAWxSyU and DATAWxSyL, x denotes the way, y denotes the set, and U and L represent upper and lower word, respectively. This section represents data for the upper word (bits [63:32]) of all sets in the indicated way.

Address: 4001_F000h base + 200h offset + (8d × i), where i=0d to 7d



FMC_DATAW0S*n*U field descriptions

Field	Description
data[63:32]	Bits [63:32] of data entry

29.4.9 Cache Data Storage (lower word) (FMC_DATAW0S*n*L)

The cache of 64-bit entries is a 4-way, set-associative cache with 8 sets. The ways are numbered 0-3 and the sets are numbered 0-7. In DATAWxSyU and DATAWxSyL, x denotes the way, y denotes the set, and U and L represent upper and lower word, respectively. This section represents data for the lower word (bits [31:0]) of all sets in the indicated way.

Address: 4001_F000h base + 204h offset + (8d × i), where i=0d to 7d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R W	data[31:0]																															
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

FMC_DATAW0S*n*L field descriptions

Field	Description
data[31:0]	Bits [31:0] of data entry

29.4.10 Cache Data Storage (upper word) (FMC_DATAW1S*n*U)

The cache of 64-bit entries is a 4-way, set-associative cache with 8 sets. The ways are numbered 0-3 and the sets are numbered 0-7. In DATAWxSyU and DATAWxSyL, x denotes the way, y denotes the set, and U and L represent upper and lower word, respectively. This section represents data for the upper word (bits [63:32]) of all sets in the indicated way.

Address: 4001_F000h base + 240h offset + (8d × i), where i=0d to 7d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R W	data[63:32]																															
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

FMC_DATAW1S*n*U field descriptions

Field	Description
data[63:32]	Bits [63:32] of data entry

29.4.11 Cache Data Storage (lower word) (FMC_DATAW1S*n*L)

The cache of 64-bit entries is a 4-way, set-associative cache with 8 sets. The ways are numbered 0-3 and the sets are numbered 0-7. In DATAWxSyU and DATAWxSyL, x denotes the way, y denotes the set, and U and L represent upper and lower word, respectively. This section represents data for the lower word (bits [31:0]) of all sets in the indicated way.

Address: 4001_F000h base + 244h offset + (8d × i), where i=0d to 7d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R W	data[31:0]																															
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

FMC_DATAW1S*n*L field descriptions

Field	Description
data[31:0]	Bits [31:0] of data entry

29.4.12 Cache Data Storage (upper word) (FMC_DATAW2S*n*U)

The cache of 64-bit entries is a 4-way, set-associative cache with 8 sets. The ways are numbered 0-3 and the sets are numbered 0-7. In DATAWxSyU and DATAWxSyL, x denotes the way, y denotes the set, and U and L represent upper and lower word, respectively. This section represents data for the upper word (bits [63:32]) of all sets in the indicated way.

Address: 4001_F000h base + 280h offset + (8d × i), where i=0d to 7d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R W	data[63:32]																															
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

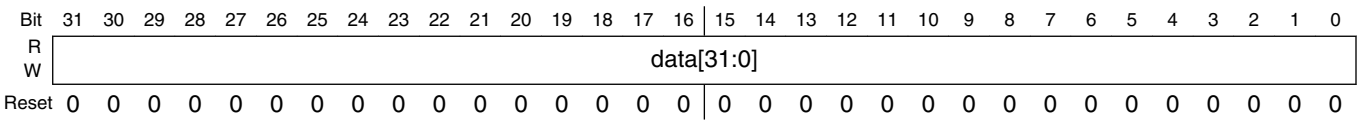
FMC_DATAW2S*n*U field descriptions

Field	Description
data[63:32]	Bits [63:32] of data entry

29.4.13 Cache Data Storage (lower word) (FMC_DATAW2S*n*L)

The cache of 64-bit entries is a 4-way, set-associative cache with 8 sets. The ways are numbered 0-3 and the sets are numbered 0-7. In DATAWxSyU and DATAWxSyL, x denotes the way, y denotes the set, and U and L represent upper and lower word, respectively. This section represents data for the lower word (bits [31:0]) of all sets in the indicated way.

Address: 4001_F000h base + 284h offset + (8d × i), where i=0d to 7d



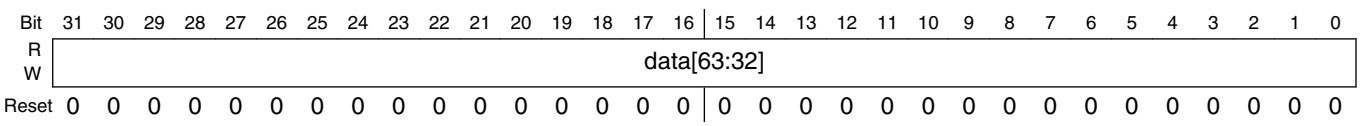
FMC_DATAW2S*n*L field descriptions

Field	Description
data[31:0]	Bits [31:0] of data entry

29.4.14 Cache Data Storage (upper word) (FMC_DATAW3S*n*U)

The cache of 64-bit entries is a 4-way, set-associative cache with 8 sets. The ways are numbered 0-3 and the sets are numbered 0-7. In DATAWxSyU and DATAWxSyL, x denotes the way, y denotes the set, and U and L represent upper and lower word, respectively. This section represents data for the upper word (bits [63:32]) of all sets in the indicated way.

Address: 4001_F000h base + 2C0h offset + (8d × i), where i=0d to 7d



FMC_DATAW3S*n*U field descriptions

Field	Description
data[63:32]	Bits [63:32] of data entry

29.4.15 Cache Data Storage (lower word) (FMC_DATAW3S*n*L)

The cache of 64-bit entries is a 4-way, set-associative cache with 8 sets. The ways are numbered 0-3 and the sets are numbered 0-7. In DATAWxSyU and DATAWxSyL, x denotes the way, y denotes the set, and U and L represent upper and lower word, respectively. This section represents data for the lower word (bits [31:0]) of all sets in the indicated way.

Address: 4001_F000h base + 2C4h offset + (8d × i), where i=0d to 7d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R W	data[31:0]																															
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

FMC_DATAW3S*n*L field descriptions

Field	Description
data[31:0]	Bits [31:0] of data entry

29.5 Functional description

The FMC is a flash acceleration unit with flexible buffers for user configuration. Besides managing the interface between the device and the flash memory, the FMC can be used to restrict access from crossbar switch masters and customize the cache and buffers to provide single-cycle system-clock data-access times. Whenever a hit occurs for the prefetch speculation buffer, the cache, or the single-entry buffer, the requested data is transferred within a single system clock.

29.5.1 Default configuration

Upon system reset, the FMC is configured to provide a significant level of buffering for transfers from the flash memory:

- Crossbar masters 0, 1, 2 have read access to bank 0.
- For bank 0:
  - Prefetch support for data and instructions is enabled for crossbar masters 0, 1, 2.
  - The cache is configured for least recently used (LRU) replacement for all four ways.
  - The cache is configured for data or instruction replacement.
  - The single-entry buffer is enabled.

29.5.2 Configuration options

Though the default configuration provides a high degree of flash acceleration, advanced users may desire to customize the FMC buffer configurations to maximize throughput for their use cases. When reconfiguring the FMC for custom use cases, do not program the FMC's control registers while the flash memory is being accessed. Instead, change the control registers with a routine executing from RAM in supervisor mode.

The FMC's cache and buffering controls within PFB0CR allow the tuning of resources to suit particular applications' needs. The cache and buffer are each controlled individually. The register controls enable buffering and prefetching per access type (instruction fetch or data reference). The cache also supports 3 types of LRU replacement algorithms:

- LRU per set across all 4 ways,
- LRU with ways [0-1] for instruction fetches and ways [2-3] for data fetches, and
- LRU with ways [0-2] for instruction fetches and way [3] for data fetches.

As an application example: if both instruction fetches and data references are accessing flash memory, then control is available to send instruction fetches, data references, or both to the cache or the single-entry buffer. Likewise, speculation can be enabled or disabled for either type of access. If both instruction fetches and data references are cached, then the cache's way resources may be divided in several ways between the instruction fetches and data references.

29.5.3 Speculative reads

The FMC has a single buffer that reads ahead to the next word in the flash memory if there is an idle cycle. Speculative prefetching is programmable for each bank for instruction and/or data accesses using the B0DPE and B0IPE fields of PFB0CR. Because many code accesses are sequential, using the speculative prefetch buffer improves performance in most cases.

When speculative reads are enabled, the FMC immediately requests the next sequential address after a read completes. By requesting the next word immediately, speculative reads can help to reduce or even eliminate wait states when accessing sequential code and/or data.

For example, consider the following scenario:

- Assume a system with a 4:1 core-to-flash clock ratio and with speculative reads enabled.

- The core requests four sequential longwords in back-to-back requests, meaning there are no core cycle delays except for stalls waiting for flash memory data to be returned.
- None of the data is already stored in the cache or speculation buffer.

In this scenario, the sequence of events for accessing the four longwords is as follows:

1. The first longword read requires 4 to 7 core clocks. See Wait states for more information.
2. Due to the 64-bit data bus of the flash memory, the second longword read takes only 1 core clock because the data is already available inside the FMC. While the data for the second longword is being returned to the core, the FMC also starts reading the third and fourth longwords from the flash memory.
3. Accessing the third longword requires 3 core clock cycles. The flash memory read itself takes 4 clocks, but the first clock overlaps with the second longword read.
4. Reading the fourth longword, like the second longword, takes only 1 clock due to the 64-bit flash memory data bus.

29.5.4 Flash Access Control (FAC) Function

The Flash Access Control (FAC) is a configurable memory protection scheme optimized to allow end users to use software libraries while offering programmable restrictions to these libraries. The flash memory is divided into *equal size segments* that provide protection to proprietary software libraries. The protection of these segments is controlled: the FAC provides a cycle-by-cycle evaluation of the access rights for each transaction routed to the on-chip flash memory. Two levels of vendors can add their proprietary software to a device; FAC protection of segments for each level are defined once, using the PGMONCE command.

Flash access control aligns to the 3 privilege levels supported by ARM Cortex-M family products:

- Most secure state is supervisor/privileged secure: allows execute-only and provides supervisor-only access control.
- Mid-level state is execute-only.
- Unsecure state is where no access control states are set.

Features:

- Lightweight access control logic for on-chip flash memory
- Flash address space divided into (32 or 64) equal-sized segments (segment size is defined as flash_size [bytes]/(32 or 64))
- Separate control bits for supervisor-only access and execute-only access per segment
- Access control evaluated on each bus cycle routed to the flash

- Access violation errors terminate the bus cycle and return zeroes for read data
- Programming model allows 2 levels of protected segments

29.5.4.1 Memory map and register definitions

The following table shows the mapping of FAC registers. Descriptions of each register and its bit assignments follow.

- The Flash Management Unit (FMU) supports access to its FAC programming model via a 32-bit slave peripheral bus connection.
- Unimplemented register bits read as zero.
- For implementations supporting only 32 segments, only the 32-bit "low" register is implemented.
- Writes to any read-only or reserved registers are ignored; attempts to access flash register space above offset '2B' will generate a transfer error.
- The terms *supervisor* and *user* modes are equivalent to *privileged* and *unprivileged* modes.
- In this FAC section, *n* refers to the segment number, and *x* is the acronym of the module that the registers are in (which sometimes varies from one device to another).

x memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
18	Execute-only Access Register High (x_XACCH)	32	R	See section	29.5.4.1.1/ 579
1C	Execute-only Access RegisterPROCESS PH Low (x_XACCL)	32	R	See section	29.5.4.1.2/ 579
20	Supervisor-only Access Register High (x_SACCH)	32	R	See section	29.5.4.1.3/ 580
24	Supervisor-only Access Register PROCESS PHLow (x_SACCL)	32	R	See section	29.5.4.1.4/ 581
28	Configuration Register (x_CR)	32	R	See section	29.5.4.1.5/ 581

29.5.4.1.1 Execute-only Access Register High (x_XACCH)

The execute-only access register is a 64-bit register that is implemented as two 32-bit registers.

- High execute-only access bits (segments 63-32) are contained in *x*_XACCH.
- Low execute-only access bits (segments 31-0) are contained in *x*_XACCL.

The *x*_XACC{H,L} registers provide a bit map for the flash segments, to allow *data read* or *execute only* or *both data and instruction fetches* for each associated segment. By definition, execute-only accesses include instruction fetches or PC-relative data loads from the processor.

During the reset sequence the XACC register is loaded with a pre-programmed value from non-volatile space in flash. For more about NVM characteristics, see the functional description. Any change made to an NVM location takes effect on the next system reset. The flash basis for the values is signified by x in the reset value.

Address: 0h base + 18h offset = 18h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	XA[63:32]																															
W																																
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

* Notes:

- Pre-programmed flash valuex = Undefined at reset.

x_XACCH field descriptions

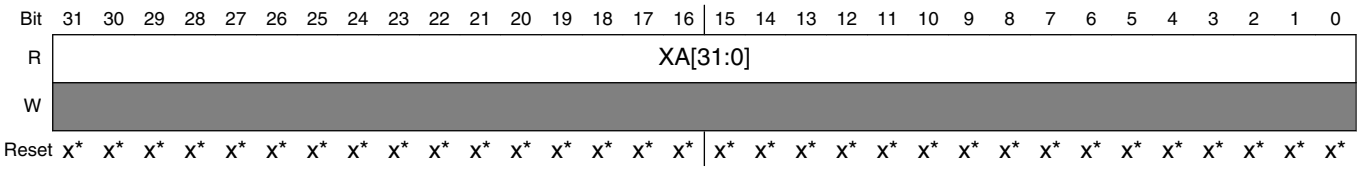
Field	Description
XA[63:32]	Execute-only Access Control for segments 63-32 0 Associated segment is accessible in execute mode only (as an instruction fetch) 1 Associated segment is accessible as data or in execute mode

29.5.4.1.2 Execute-only Access Register Low (x_XACCL)

The XACC{H,L} registers provide a bit map for the flash segments to allow execute only or both data and instruction fetches for each associated segment. XACCH covers segments 63-32 and XACCL covers segments 31-0. By definition, execute-only accesses include instruction fetches or PC-relative data loads from the processor.

During the reset sequence the XACC register is loaded with a pre-programmed value from non-volatile space in flash. For more about NVM characteristics, see the functional description. Any change made to an NVM location takes effect on the next system reset. The flash basis for the values is signified by x in the reset value.

Address: 0h base + 1Ch offset = 1Ch



* Notes:
- Pre-programmed flash valuex = Undefined at reset.

x_XACCL field descriptions

Field	Description
XA[31:0]	Execute-only Access Control for segments 31-0 0 Associated segment is accessible in execute mode only (as an instruction fetch) 1 Associated segment is accessible as data or in execute mode

29.5.4.1.3 Supervisor-only Access Register High (x_SACCH)

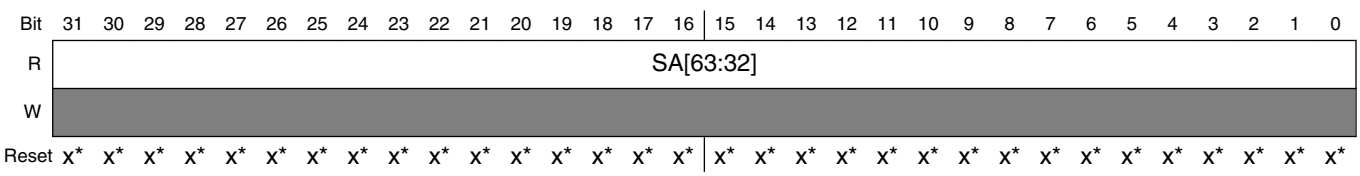
The supervisor-only access register is a 64-bit register that is implemented as two 32-bit registers.

- High supervisor-only access bits (segments 63-32) are contained in *x*_SACCH.
- Low supervisor-only access bits (segments 31-0) are contained in *x*_SACCL.

The *x*_SACC{H,L} registers provide a bit map for the flash segments, to allow *supervisor only* or *user* and *supervisor* access to the associated segment.

During the reset sequence the SACC register is loaded with a pre-programmed value from non-volatile space in flash. See the functional description for more details on NVM characteristics. Any change made to an NVM location takes effect on the next system reset. The flash basis for the values is signified by x in the reset value.

Address: 0h base + 20h offset = 20h



* Notes:
- Pre-programmed flash valuex = Undefined at reset.

x_SACCH field descriptions

Field	Description
SA[63:32]	Supervisor Access Control for segments 63-32

x_SACCH field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Associated segment is accessible in supervisor mode only 1 Associated segment is accessible in user or supervisor mode

29.5.4.1.4 Supervisor-only Access Register Low (x_SACCL)

The SACC{H,L} registers provide a bit map for the flash segments to allow *supervisor only* or *user* and *supervisor* access to the associated segment. SACCH covers segments 63-32 and SACCL supports segments 31-0.

During the reset sequence the SACC register is loaded with a pre-programmed value from non-volatile space in flash. For more about NVM characteristics, see the functional description. Any change made to an NVM location takes effect on the next system reset. The flash basis for the values is signified by x in the reset value.

Address: 0h base + 24h offset = 24h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	SA[31:0]																															
W																																
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

* Notes:
- Pre-programmed flash valuex = Undefined at reset.

x_SACCL field descriptions

Field	Description
SA[31:0]	Supervisor Access for segments 31-0 0 Associated segment is accessible in supervisor mode only 1 Associated segment is accessible in user or supervisor mode

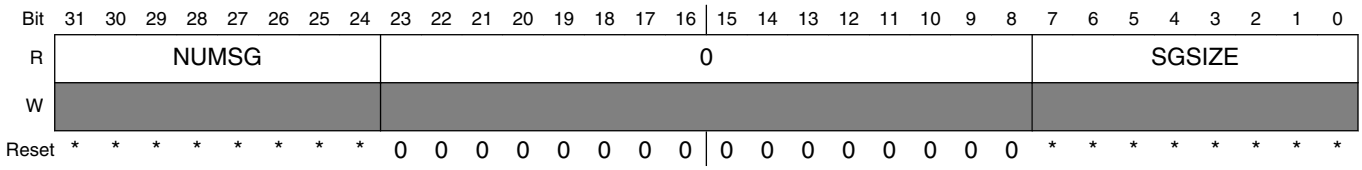
29.5.4.1.5 Configuration Register (x_CR)

The FAC Configuration Register provides basic configuration information including the flash segment size and an indicator of segment divisions.

The NUMSG and SGSIZE values are fixed for a device. The chip-specific basis for the values is signified by * in the reset value.

Functional description

Address: 0h base + 28h offset = 28h



* Notes:
- NUMSG field: Device specific value
- SGSIZE field: Device specific value

x_CR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–24 NUMSG	Number of Segments Indicator The NUMSG field indicates the number of equal-sized segments in the flash. 0x20 Flash is divided into 32 segments 0x40 Flash is divided into 64 segments
23–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
SGSIZE	Segment Size The segment size is a fixed value calculated from the available flash size (rounded up to nearest power of 2) divided by 32 or 64, depending on the amount of available program flash. This field determines which bits in the address are used to index into the *x*_SACC and *x*_XACC bitmaps to get the appropriate permission flags. The segment size is defined by the equation 2^(8 + SGSIZE[7:0]). The tables below show a sampling of possible settings.

Flash Size	Segment Size	Segment Size Encoding
32 Segment Encodings		
16 KBytes	16 KBytes/32 = 512 Bytes	0x1
32 KBytes	32 KBytes/32 = 1 KBytes	0x2
64 KBytes	64 KBytes/32 = 2 KBytes	0x3
128 KBytes	128 KBytes/32 = 4 KBytes	0x4
64 Segment Encodings		
256 KBytes	256 KBytes/64 = 4 KBytes	0x4
512 KBytes	512 KBytes/64 = 8 KBytes	0x5
1 MBytes	1 MBytes/64 = 16 KBytes	0x6
2 MBytes	2 MBytes/64 = 32 KBytes	0x7

29.5.4.2 FAC functional description

The access control functionality is implemented in 2 separate blocks within the SoC. The Flash Management Unit (FMU) includes non-volatile configuration information that is retrieved during reset and and sent to the platform to control access to the flash array during normal operation.

There are (4) 64-bit NVM storage locations to support access control features. These NVM locations are summarized in the table below.

Table 29-3. NVM Locations

NVM location	Description	
NVSACC1, NVSACC2	Two locations are ANDed together and loaded during reset into the *x*_SACC register to provide access configuration.	Segment-wise control for supervisor-only access vs. supervisor and user access
NVXACC1, NVXACC2	Two locations are ANDed together and loaded during reset into the *x*_XACC register to provide access configuration.	Segment-wise control for execute-only vs. data and execute

Each of these NVM locations is programmable through a Program Once flash command and can be programmed one time. These NVM locations are unaffected by Erase All Blocks flash command and debug interface initiated mass erase operations. Since the 2 NVXACCx fields are ANDed, the access protection can only be increased. A segment's access controls can be changed from data read and execute (XA*n* =1) to execute-only (XA*n* =0), or from supervisor and user mode (SAn = 1) to supervisor-only mode (SAn = 0).

The flash is released from reset early while the core continues to be held in reset. The FMU captures the NVM access control information in internal registers. The FMU ANDs the multiple execute-only fields to create a single execute-only field. This execute-only field driven to the platform is static prior to the core being released from reset. The supervisor-only field is handled in the same manner.

The FMU includes the FAC registers that provide control access to the flash address space. During the address phase of every attempted flash transfer, the supervisor access (SA*n*) and execute access (XA*n*) bits are examined to either allow or deny access. If access is denied, then the access is aborted and terminates with a bus error; the read data is also zeroed.

The next table shows segment assignments relative to the flash location.

Table 29-4. Flash Protection Ranges

SA*n* and XA*n* Bit	Protected Segment Address Range	Segment Size (Fraction of total Flash)
64 Segment Encodings		

Table continues on the next page...

Table 29-4. Flash Protection Ranges (continued)

SA*n* and XA*n* Bit	Protected Segment Address Range	Segment Size (Fraction of total Flash)
0	0x0_0000_0000 – (Flash_size/64-1)	1/64
1	(Flash_size/64) – 2*(Flash_size/64-1)	1/64
.....		
63	63*(Flash_size/64) – 62*(Flash_size/64-1)	1/64
32 Segment Encodings		
0	0x0_0000_0000 – (Flash_size/32-1)	1/32
1	(Flash_size/32) – 2*(Flash_size/32-1)	1/32
.....		
31	31*(Flash_size/32) – 30*(Flash_size/32-1)	1/32

Individual segments within the flash memory can be independently protected from user access and data access. Protection is controlled by the individual bits within the *x*_SACC and *x*_XACC registers, as shown in the next figure.

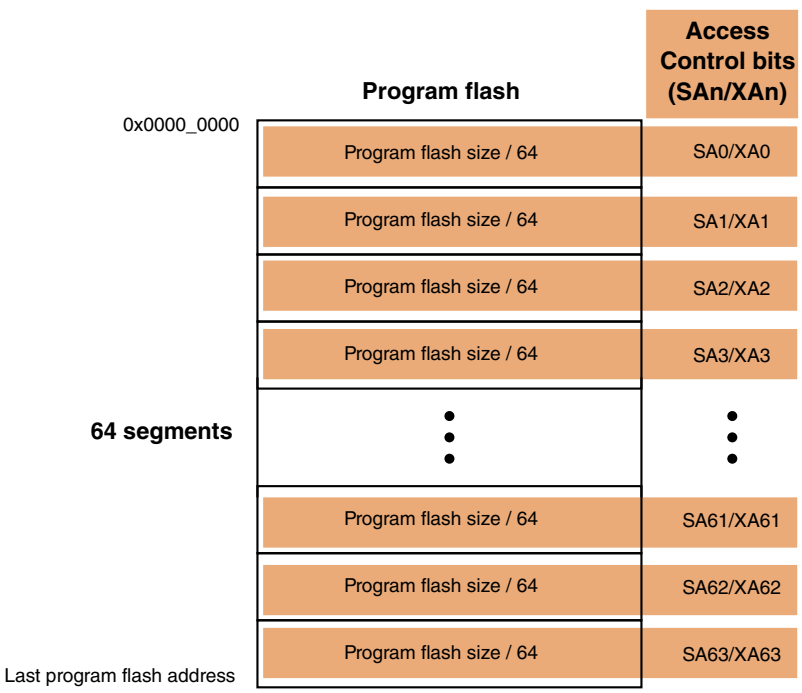


Figure 29-1. Program flash protection (64 segments)

29.5.4.2.1 Interface Signals

Table 29-5. Interface Signals

Signal	Width	From	To	Description
xacc	64 or 32	FMU	Platform	Direct xacc (execute-only access control) register

Table continues on the next page...

Table 29-5. Interface Signals (continued)

Signal	Width	From	To	Description
sacc	64 or 32	FMU	Platform	Direct sacc (supervisor access control) register
numsg	8	FMU	Platform	NUMSG bit field - Binary encoded number of segments 0x40 for 64 segments 0x20 for 32 segments
fac_enable	1	SIM	FMU	SIM Option bit - derived from an IFR bit and captured in SIM_SOPTx. A way to disable the flash access control for phantom devices without this feature. fac_enable==1 - Access Control feature is enabled fac_enable==0 - Access Control feature is disabled • During the reset sequence, XACC registers are written to all "1"s. • During the reset sequence, SACC registers are written to all 1"s. • Implied protection based on XACC registers is turned off.

29.5.4.2.2 Flash Command Impact

Program Longword/Phrase/ Section	If the targeted flash location is in an execute-only protected segment, then these program commands are not allowed unless a Read 1s All Blocks command is executed and returns with a pass code (which means the part has been fully erased). After the Read 1s All Blocks command is executed with a pass code returned, then the protected segment is open to program commands. To close off programmability to execute-only spaces once again, the device must be reset or a Read 1s All Blocks command is executed with a fail result. Attempts to program in a protected segment *when not open to program commands* causes a Protection Violation flag.
PGMCHK	The FMU will not execute the PGMCHK command on a segment that has been configured as execute-only. The Flash Protection Violation flag is set if an attempt is made to execute PGMCHK command on an execute-only address.
Erase Flash Sector	If the targeted flash sector is in an execute-only protected segment, then the Erase Flash Sector command is not allowed, and sets the Protection Violation flag. The only means of erasing protected space is by an Erase All operation.
ERSALL	The Erase All Blocks command is not affected by Access Control. An Erase All Blocks command will erase any libraries that have been programmed in any execute-only segment. The programmed execute-only assignment is not erased as part of the Erase All Blocks command, and access control regions remain as previously programmed. **NOTE:** The ERSALL command may be used for field upgrades. Access control states remain programmed. Software must plan accordingly, possibly making extra space available for future use.
SWAP	A new control has been added to the SWAP command to disable the SWAP feature. The IFR SWAP Field and the SWAP indicator are erased during the Erase All Blocks command operation, resulting in the SWAP system being uninitialized. The SWAP command must be run with the initialization code to set the SWAP indicator address and initialize the SWAP system.

	After being disabled, SWAP cannot be enabled without doing an Erase All. An Erase All erases preloaded code and libraries in the flash array and resets the SWAP system back to uninitialized, but leaves the access controls as previously programmed. If SWAP is intended to be disabled as part of the access control protection, then the disabled setting must be restored after an Erase All Blocks operation.

29.5.4.2.3 Core Platform Impact

Platform core caches (Flash and LMEM caches)	If any segment is marked as *execute-only*, then the caches are hidden from the user. The tag is read-only and cannot be written, and the data caches cannot be read or written. Writes to the tag and data arrays are ignored, and reads of the data array return 0's. This will impact debug breakpoints. See the debug section for details.
Debug	The debugger is a non-processor bus master and cannot step, trace or break in execute-only regions. In supervisor-only mode, the debugger is restricted from changing modes. Debug accesses to any segment of flash space marked as execute-only also terminate with a bus error.
PC-relative addressing	The PC-relative addressing issue is still being understood and this section will be updated in the future. PC relative re-entry to execute-only segments will be allowed..... Restrictions will be placed on software for PC relative addressing, because hardware cannot determine if PC relative data references are crossing segment boundaries. • If ifetch is executing in a protected segment, then data references will be allowed. • Hardware cannot track speculative ifetches across boundaries.
Interrupts	If function calls are used to move into an execute-only segment, then this can be tracked by hardware when typical software controls are used (i.e., saving registers and states before executing new code).
Reset Vector	In the ARM core, the reset vector fetch is supervisor data, which poses issues if the reset vector is located in a segment marked execute-only. Additional logic has been implemented to allow supervisor data fetches to execute-only spaces, after reset until the first valid instruction fetch. After the first valid instruction fetch, the FAC logic follows normal checks.

29.5.4.2.4 Software Impact

As implementation, verification and validation continue, there will be more details on software impact that will need to be communicated to tool and library vendors. The hardware cannot see all states of the ARM core and cannot track the software flow, and may require software restrictions to work with the hardware for a robust solution.

- **Any segment marked as execute-only can see all code in the system.** This means that one execute-only segment can read the execute-only code in another segment. Therefore, if we at the factory are sending pre-loaded code to another vendor, then that vendor will have access to our factory code. NDAs and legal agreements might help deal with this issue.

- **For single pre-loads** (for example, if we at the factory are pre-loading for a general purpose (GP) market or if a vendor with a blank part is pre-loading their proprietary code), then both levels of access control must be programmed, to protect the pre-loaded code.
- **If any portion of a protected segment is not used by pre-loaded code**, then it (the portion of a protected segment that is not used by pre-loaded code) should be programmed with NOPs, to prevent additional code from being programmed in that segment by hackers.

29.5.4.2.5 Access Check Evaluation

The flash controller FAC provides a cycle-by-cycle evaluation of the access rights for each data transaction routed to the on-chip flash memory.

The entire flash storage capacity is partitioned into equal sized segments. Two registers include a supervisor-only access control indicator and a execute-only access control indicator for each segment.

The FAC logic performs the required access control evaluation using the reference address and a 2-bit attribute (or "protection" field) as inputs from the bus cycle plus the contents of the programming model registers.

The following code example illustrates C code for FAC evaluation:

```
unsigned long long sacc;  // supervisor-only map
unsigned long long xacc;  // execute-only map
unsigned int seg_size;    // 8-bit segment size
unsigned int fac_error;

fac_evaluation (addr, prot)
  unsigned int addr;  // access address
  unsigned int hprot; // encoded 2-bit "protection" field {supv, data}
{
  unsigned int sacc_flag; // sacc flag for this segment
  unsigned int xacc_flag; // xacc flag for this segment
  unsigned int i;         // segment index

  i         = (addr >> (8 + seg_size & 0x0f)) & 0x3f; // form 6-bit segment index
  sacc_flag = (sacc >> i) & 1;              // extract sacc bit for this segment
  xacc_flag = (xacc >> i) & 1;              // extract xacc bit for this segment

  // create a 4-tuple concatenating the 2-bit protection field + {sacc, xacc} flags

  switch ((hprot & 3) << 2 | (sacc_flag << 1) | xacc_flag) {
  // all these combinations are allowed accesses
    case 0x2: // {user, ifetch} && {supv+user, ifetch-only}
    case 0x3: // {user, ifetch} && {supv+user, ifetch+data}
    case 0x7: // {user, data}   && {supv+user, ifetch+data}
    case 0x8: // {supv, ifetch} && {supv-only, ifetch-only}
    case 0x9: // {supv, ifetch} && {supv-only, ifetch+data}
    case 0xa: // {supv, ifetch} && {supv+user, ifetch-only}
    case 0xb: // {supv, ifetch} && {supv+user, ifetch+data}
    case 0xd: // {supv, data}   && {supv-only, ifetch+data}
    case 0xf: // {supv, data}   && {supv+user, ifetch+data}
      fac_error = 00;
```

```
      break;

  // all these combinations are unallowed, that is, errored accesses
    case 0x0: // {user, ifetch} && {supv-only, ifetch-only}
    case 0x1: // {user, ifetch} && {supv-only, ifetch+data}
    case 0x4: // {user, data}   && {supv-only, ifetch-only}
    case 0x5: // {user, data}   && {supv-only, ifetch+data}
    case 0x6: // {user, data}   && {supv+user, ifetch-only}
    case 0xc: // {supv, data}   && {supv-only, ifetch-only}
    case 0xe: // {supv, data}   && {supv+user, ifetch-only}
      fac_error = 1;
      break;

   } // switch()

} // fac_evaluation()
```

29.5.4.2.6 FAC application tips

In one use case, the NVSACC1 and NVXACC1 locations are programmed by NXP and they protect NXP libraries that have been programmed into associated flash segments in a device. Later, the NVSACC2 and NVXACC2 NVM locations can optionally be programmed by a third-party vendor who wants to program their proprietary software and to extend the protection of protected flash segments to include their software libraries before supplying it all to their customers.

Their customer would then develop their own code to use the available libraries, and program their code into the remaining available on-chip flash. The device continues to support the end user with standard security features that further limit external access to flash resources.

SWAP: If execute-only code is mirrored in both halves of the flash array, then SWAP can be enabled without any issues; otherwise SWAP should be disabled, because hardware does not track access control addressing during SWAP.

29.6 Initialization and application information

The FMC does not require user initialization. Flash acceleration features are enabled by default.

The FMC has no visibility into flash memory erase and program cycles because the Flash Memory module manages them directly. As a result, if an application is executing flash memory commands, the FMC's cache might need to be disabled and/or flushed to prevent the possibility of returning stale data. Use the PFB0CR[CINV_WAY] field to invalidate the cache in this manner.

Chapter 30
Flash Memory Module (FTFA)

30.1 Introduction

The flash memory module includes the following accessible memory regions:

- Program flash memory for vector space and code store

Flash memory is ideal for single-supply applications, permitting in-the-field erase and reprogramming operations without the need for any external high voltage power sources.

The flash memory module includes a memory controller that executes commands to modify flash memory contents. An erased bit reads '1' and a programmed bit reads '0'. The programming operation is unidirectional; it can only move bits from the '1' state (erased) to the '0' state (programmed). Only the erase operation restores bits from '0' to '1'; bits cannot be programmed from a '0' to a '1'.

CAUTION

A flash memory location must be in the erased state before being programmed. Cumulative programming of bits (back-to-back program operations without an intervening erase) within a flash memory location is not allowed. Re-programming of existing 0s to 0 is not allowed as this overstresses the device.

The standard shipping condition for flash memory is erased with security disabled. Data loss over time may occur due to degradation of the erased ('1') states and/or programmed ('0') states. Therefore, it is recommended that each flash block or sector be re-erased immediately prior to factory programming to ensure that the full data retention capability is achieved.

30.1.1 Features

The flash memory module includes the following features.

NOTE

See the device's Chip Configuration details for the exact amount of flash memory available on your device.

30.1.1.1 Program Flash Memory Features

- Sector size of 2 KB
- Program flash protection scheme prevents accidental program or erase of stored data
- Program flash access control scheme prevents unauthorized access to selected code segments
- Automated, built-in, program and erase algorithms with verify

30.1.1.2 Other Flash Memory Module Features

- Internal high-voltage supply generator for flash memory program and erase operations
- Optional interrupt generation upon flash command completion
- Supports MCU security mechanisms which prevent unauthorized access to the flash memory contents

30.1.2 Block Diagram

The block diagram of the flash memory module is shown in the following figure.

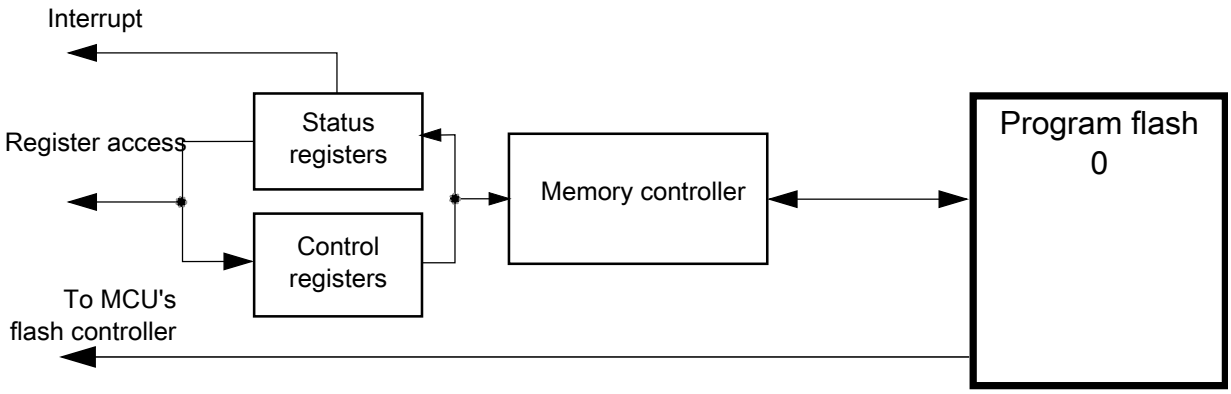


Figure 30-1. Flash Block Diagram

30.1.3 Glossary

Command write sequence — A series of MCU writes to the flash FCCOB register group that initiates and controls the execution of flash algorithms that are built into the flash memory module.

Endurance — The number of times that a flash memory location can be erased and reprogrammed.

FCCOB (Flash Common Command Object) — A group of flash registers that are used to pass command, address, data, and any associated parameters to the memory controller in the flash memory module.

Flash block — A macro within the flash memory module which provides the nonvolatile memory storage.

Flash Memory Module — All flash blocks plus a flash management unit providing high-level control and an interface to MCU buses.

HSRUN — An MCU power mode enabling high-speed access to the memory resources in the flash module. The user has no access to the flash command set when the MCU is in HSRUN mode.

IFR — Nonvolatile information register found in each flash block, separate from the main memory array.

Longword — 32 bits of data with an aligned longword having byte-address[1:0] = 00.

NVM — Nonvolatile memory. A memory technology that maintains stored data during power-off. The flash array is an NVM using NOR-type flash memory technology.

NVM Normal Mode — An NVM mode that provides basic user access to flash memory module resources. The CPU or other bus masters initiate flash program and erase operations (or other flash commands) using writes to the FCCOB register group in the flash memory module.

NVM Special Mode — An NVM mode enabling external, off-chip access to the memory resources in the flash memory module. A reduced flash command set is available when the MCU is secured. See the Chip Configuration details for information on when this mode is used.

Phrase — 64 bits of data with an aligned phrase having byte-address[2:0] = 000.

Program flash — The program flash memory provides nonvolatile storage for vectors and code store.

Program flash Sector — The smallest portion of the program flash memory (consecutive addresses) that can be erased.

Retention — The length of time that data can be kept in the NVM without experiencing errors upon readout. Since erased (1) states are subject to degradation just like programmed (0) states, the data retention limit may be reached from the last erase operation (not from the programming time).

RWW— Read-While-Write. The ability to simultaneously read from one memory resource while commanded operations are active in another memory resource.

Secure — An MCU state conveyed to the flash memory module as described in the Chip Configuration details for this device. In the secure state, reading and changing NVM contents is restricted.

Word — 16 bits of data with an aligned word having byte-address[0] = 0.

30.2 External Signal Description

The flash memory module contains no signals that connect off-chip.

30.3 Memory Map and Registers

This section describes the memory map and registers for the flash memory module.

Data read from unimplemented memory space in the flash memory module is undefined. Writes to unimplemented or reserved memory space (registers) in the flash memory module are ignored.

30.3.1 Flash Configuration Field Description

The program flash memory contains a 16-byte flash configuration field that stores default protection settings (loaded on reset) and security information that allows the MCU to restrict access to the flash memory module.

Flash Configuration Field Offset Address	Size (Bytes)	Field Description
0x0_0400–0x0_0407	8	Backdoor Comparison Key. Refer to Verify Backdoor Access Key Command and Unsecuring the Chip Using Backdoor Key Access.
0x0_0408–0x0_040B	4	Program flash protection bytes. Refer to the description of the Program Flash Protection Registers (FPROT0-3).
0x0_040F	1	Reserved
0x0_040E	1	Reserved
0x0_040D	1	Flash nonvolatile option byte. Refer to the description of the Flash Option Register (FOPT).
0x0_040C	1	Flash security byte. Refer to the description of the Flash Security Register (FSEC).

30.3.2 Program Flash IFR Map

The program flash IFR is nonvolatile information memory that can be read freely, but the user has no erase and limited program capabilities (see the Read Once, Program Once, and Read Resource commands in Read Once Command, Program Once Command and Read Resource Command).

The contents of the program flash IFR are summarized in the table found here and further described in the subsequent paragraphs.

The program flash IFR is located within the program flash 0 memory block .

Address Range	Size (Bytes)	Field Description
0x00 – 0x9F	160	Reserved
0xA0 – 0xA3	4	Program Once XACCH-1 Field (index = 0x10)
0xA4 – 0xA7	4	Program Once XACCL-1 Field (index = 0x10)

Table continues on the next page...

Address Range	Size (Bytes)	Field Description
0xA8 – 0xAB	4	Program Once XACCH-2 Field (index = 0x11)
0xAC – 0xAF	4	Program Once XACCL-2 Field (index = 0x11)
0xB0 – 0xB3	4	Program Once SACCH-1 Field (index = 0x12)
0xB4 – 0xB7	4	Program Once SACCL-1 Field (index = 0x12)
0xB8 – 0xBB	4	Program Once SACCH-2 Field (index = 0x13)
0xBC – 0xBF	4	Program Once SACCL-2 Field (index = 0x13)
0xC0 – 0xFF	64	Program Once ID Field (index = 0x00 - 0x0F)

30.3.2.1 Program Once Field

The Program Once Field in the program flash IFR provides 96 bytes of user data storage separate from the program flash main array. The user can program the Program Once Field one time only as there is no program flash IFR erase mechanism available to the user. The Program Once Field can be read any number of times. This section of the program flash IFR is accessed in 4-byte or 8-Byte records using the Read Once and Program Once commands (see Read Once Command and Program Once Command).

30.3.3 Register Descriptions

The flash memory module contains a set of memory-mapped control and status registers.

NOTE

While a command is running (FSTAT[CCIF]=0), register writes are not accepted to any register except FCNFG and FSTAT. The no-write rule is relaxed during the start-up reset sequence, prior to the initial rise of CCIF. During this initialization period the user may write any register. All register writes are also disabled (except for registers FCNFG and FSTAT) whenever an erase suspend request is active (FCNFG[ERSSUSP]=1).

FTFA memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4002_0000	Flash Status Register (FTFA_FSTAT)	8	R/W	00h	30.3.3.1/ 596
4002_0001	Flash Configuration Register (FTFA_FCNFG)	8	R/W	00h	30.3.3.2/ 598
4002_0002	Flash Security Register (FTFA_FSEC)	8	R	Undefined	30.3.3.3/ 599
4002_0003	Flash Option Register (FTFA_FOPT)	8	R	Undefined	30.3.3.4/ 600
4002_0004	Flash Common Command Object Registers (FTFA_FCCOB3)	8	R/W	00h	30.3.3.5/ 601
4002_0005	Flash Common Command Object Registers (FTFA_FCCOB2)	8	R/W	00h	30.3.3.5/ 601
4002_0006	Flash Common Command Object Registers (FTFA_FCCOB1)	8	R/W	00h	30.3.3.5/ 601
4002_0007	Flash Common Command Object Registers (FTFA_FCCOB0)	8	R/W	00h	30.3.3.5/ 601
4002_0008	Flash Common Command Object Registers (FTFA_FCCOB7)	8	R/W	00h	30.3.3.5/ 601
4002_0009	Flash Common Command Object Registers (FTFA_FCCOB6)	8	R/W	00h	30.3.3.5/ 601
4002_000A	Flash Common Command Object Registers (FTFA_FCCOB5)	8	R/W	00h	30.3.3.5/ 601
4002_000B	Flash Common Command Object Registers (FTFA_FCCOB4)	8	R/W	00h	30.3.3.5/ 601
4002_000C	Flash Common Command Object Registers (FTFA_FCCOBB)	8	R/W	00h	30.3.3.5/ 601
4002_000D	Flash Common Command Object Registers (FTFA_FCCOBA)	8	R/W	00h	30.3.3.5/ 601
4002_000E	Flash Common Command Object Registers (FTFA_FCCOB9)	8	R/W	00h	30.3.3.5/ 601
4002_000F	Flash Common Command Object Registers (FTFA_FCCOB8)	8	R/W	00h	30.3.3.5/ 601
4002_0010	Program Flash Protection Registers (FTFA_FPROT3)	8	R/W	Undefined	30.3.3.6/ 602
4002_0011	Program Flash Protection Registers (FTFA_FPROT2)	8	R/W	Undefined	30.3.3.6/ 602
4002_0012	Program Flash Protection Registers (FTFA_FPROT1)	8	R/W	Undefined	30.3.3.6/ 602
4002_0013	Program Flash Protection Registers (FTFA_FPROT0)	8	R/W	Undefined	30.3.3.6/ 602
4002_0018	Execute-only Access Registers (FTFA_XACCH3)	8	R	Undefined	30.3.3.7/ 604
4002_0019	Execute-only Access Registers (FTFA_XACCH2)	8	R	Undefined	30.3.3.7/ 604

Table continues on the next page...

FTFA memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4002_001A	Execute-only Access Registers (FTFA_XACCH1)	8	R	Undefined	30.3.3.7/ 604
4002_001B	Execute-only Access Registers (FTFA_XACCH0)	8	R	Undefined	30.3.3.7/ 604
4002_001C	Execute-only Access Registers (FTFA_XACCL3)	8	R	Undefined	30.3.3.7/ 604
4002_001D	Execute-only Access Registers (FTFA_XACCL2)	8	R	Undefined	30.3.3.7/ 604
4002_001E	Execute-only Access Registers (FTFA_XACCL1)	8	R	Undefined	30.3.3.7/ 604
4002_001F	Execute-only Access Registers (FTFA_XACCL0)	8	R	Undefined	30.3.3.7/ 604
4002_0020	Supervisor-only Access Registers (FTFA_SACCH3)	8	R	Undefined	30.3.3.8/ 605
4002_0021	Supervisor-only Access Registers (FTFA_SACCH2)	8	R	Undefined	30.3.3.8/ 605
4002_0022	Supervisor-only Access Registers (FTFA_SACCH1)	8	R	Undefined	30.3.3.8/ 605
4002_0023	Supervisor-only Access Registers (FTFA_SACCH0)	8	R	Undefined	30.3.3.8/ 605
4002_0024	Supervisor-only Access Registers (FTFA_SACCL3)	8	R	Undefined	30.3.3.8/ 605
4002_0025	Supervisor-only Access Registers (FTFA_SACCL2)	8	R	Undefined	30.3.3.8/ 605
4002_0026	Supervisor-only Access Registers (FTFA_SACCL1)	8	R	Undefined	30.3.3.8/ 605
4002_0027	Supervisor-only Access Registers (FTFA_SACCL0)	8	R	Undefined	30.3.3.8/ 605
4002_0028	Flash Access Segment Size Register (FTFA_FACSS)	8	R	Undefined	30.3.3.9/ 606
4002_002B	Flash Access Segment Number Register (FTFA_FACSN)	8	R	Undefined	30.3.3.10/ 607

30.3.3.1 Flash Status Register (FTFA_FSTAT)

The FSTAT register reports the operational status of the flash memory module.

The CCIF, RDCOLERR, ACCERR, and FPVIOL bits are readable and writable. The MGSTAT0 bit is read only. The unassigned bits read 0 and are not writable.

NOTE

When set, the Access Error (ACCERR) and Flash Protection Violation (FPVIOL) bits in this register prevent the launch of

any more commands until the flag is cleared (by writing a one to it).

Address: 4002_0000h base + 0h offset = 4002_0000h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	CCIF	RDCOLERR	ACCERR	FPVIOL	0			MGSTAT0
Write	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c				
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

FTFA_FSTAT field descriptions

Field	Description
7 CCIF	Command Complete Interrupt Flag Indicates that a flash command has completed. The CCIF flag is cleared by writing a 1 to CCIF to launch a command, and CCIF stays low until command completion or command violation. CCIF is reset to 0 but is set to 1 by the memory controller at the end of the reset initialization sequence. Depending on how quickly the read occurs after reset release, the user may or may not see the 0 hardware reset value. 0 Flash command in progress 1 Flash command has completed
6 RDCOLERR	Flash Read Collision Error Flag Indicates that the MCU attempted a read from a flash memory resource that was being manipulated by a flash command (CCIF=0). Any simultaneous access is detected as a collision error by the block arbitration logic. The read data in this case cannot be guaranteed. The RDCOLERR bit is cleared by writing a 1 to it. Writing a 0 to RDCOLERR has no effect. 0 No collision error detected 1 Collision error detected
5 ACCERR	Flash Access Error Flag Indicates an illegal access has occurred to a flash memory resource caused by a violation of the command write sequence or issuing an illegal flash command. While ACCERR is set, the CCIF flag cannot be cleared to launch a command. The ACCERR bit is cleared by writing a 1 to ACCERR while CCIF is set. Writing a 0 to the ACCERR bit has no effect. 0 No access error detected 1 Access error detected
4 FPVIOL	Flash Protection Violation Flag Indicates an attempt was made to program or erase an address in a protected area of program flash memory during a command write sequence . While FPVIOL is set, the CCIF flag cannot be cleared to launch a command. The FPVIOL bit is cleared by writing a 1 to FPVIOL while CCIF is set. Writing a 0 to the FPVIOL bit has no effect. 0 No protection violation detected 1 Protection violation detected
3–1 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
0 MGSTAT0	Memory Controller Command Completion Status Flag

Table continues on the next page...

FTFA_FSTAT field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	The MGSTAT0 status flag is set if an error is detected during execution of a flash command or during the flash reset sequence. As a status flag, this field cannot (and need not) be cleared by the user like the other error flags in this register. The value of the MGSTAT0 bit for "command-N" is valid only at the end of the "command-N" execution when CCIF=1 and before the next command has been launched. At some point during the execution of "command-N+1," the previous result is discarded and any previous error is cleared.

30.3.3.2 Flash Configuration Register (FTFA_FCNFG)

This register provides information on the current functional state of the flash memory module.

The erase control bits (ERSAREQ and ERSSUSP) have write restrictions. The unassigned bits read as noted and are not writable.

Address: 4002_0000h base + 1h offset = 4002_0001h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	CCIE	RDCOLLIE	ERSAREQ	ERSSUSP	0	0	0	0
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

FTFA_FCNFG field descriptions

Field	Description
7 CCIE	Command Complete Interrupt Enable Controls interrupt generation when a flash command completes. 0 Command complete interrupt disabled 1 Command complete interrupt enabled. An interrupt request is generated whenever the FSTAT[CCIF] flag is set.
6 RDCOLLIE	Read Collision Error Interrupt Enable Controls interrupt generation when a flash memory read collision error occurs. 0 Read collision error interrupt disabled 1 Read collision error interrupt enabled. An interrupt request is generated whenever a flash memory read collision error is detected (see the description of FSTAT[RDCOLERR]).
5 ERSAREQ	Erase All Request Issues a request to the memory controller to execute the Erase All Blocks command and release security. ERSAREQ is not directly writable but is under indirect user control. Refer to the device's Chip Configuration details on how to request this command. ERSAREQ sets when an erase all request is triggered external to the flash memory module and CCIF is set (no command is currently being executed). ERSAREQ is cleared by the flash memory module when the operation completes.

Table continues on the next page...

FTFA_FCNFG field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 No request or request complete 1 Request to: 1. run the Erase All Blocks command, 2. verify the erased state, 3. program the security byte in the Flash Configuration Field to the unsecure state, and 4. release MCU security by setting the FSEC[SEC] field to the unsecure state.
4 ERSSUSP	Erase Suspend Allows the user to suspend (interrupt) the Erase Flash Sector command while it is executing. 0 No suspend requested 1 Suspend the current Erase Flash Sector command execution.
3 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
2 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
1 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
0 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

30.3.3.3 Flash Security Register (FTFA_FSEC)

This read-only register holds all bits associated with the security of the MCU and flash memory module.

During the reset sequence, the register is loaded with the contents of the flash security byte in the Flash Configuration Field located in program flash memory. The flash basis for the values is signified by X in the reset value.

Address: 4002_0000h base + 2h offset = 4002_0002h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	KEYEN		MEEN		FSLACC		SEC	
Write								
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

* Notes:
- x = Undefined at reset.

FTFA_FSEC field descriptions

Field	Description
7–6 KEYEN	Backdoor Key Security Enable Enables or disables backdoor key access to the flash memory module.

Table continues on the next page...

FTFA_FSEC field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	00 Backdoor key access disabled 01 Backdoor key access disabled (preferred KEYEN state to disable backdoor key access) 10 Backdoor key access enabled 11 Backdoor key access disabled
5–4 MEEN	Mass Erase Enable Enables and disables mass erase capability of the flash memory module. The state of this field is relevant only when SEC is set to secure. When SEC is set to unsecure, the MEEN setting does not matter. 00 Mass erase is enabled 01 Mass erase is enabled 10 Mass erase is disabled 11 Mass erase is enabled
3–2 FSLACC	Factory Security Level Access Code Enables or disables access to the flash memory contents during returned part failure analysis at NXP. When SEC is secure and FSLACC is denied, access to the program flash contents is denied and any failure analysis performed by NXP factory test must begin with a full erase to unsecure the part. When access is granted (SEC is unsecure, or SEC is secure and FSLACC is granted), NXP factory testing has visibility of the current flash contents. The state of the FSLACC bits is only relevant when SEC is set to secure. When SEC is set to unsecure, the FSLACC setting does not matter. 00 NXP factory access granted 01 NXP factory access denied 10 NXP factory access denied 11 NXP factory access granted
SEC	Flash Security Defines the security state of the MCU. In the secure state, the MCU limits access to flash memory module resources. The limitations are defined per device and are detailed in the Chip Configuration details. If the flash memory module is unsecured using backdoor key access, SEC is forced to 10b. 00 MCU security status is secure. 01 MCU security status is secure. 10 MCU security status is unsecure. (The standard shipping condition of the flash memory module is unsecure.) 11 MCU security status is secure.

30.3.3.4 Flash Option Register (FTFA_FOPT)

The flash option register allows the MCU to customize its operations by examining the state of these read-only bits, which are loaded from NVM at reset. The function of the bits is defined in the device's Chip Configuration details.

All bits in the register are read-only .

During the reset sequence, the register is loaded from the flash nonvolatile option byte in the Flash Configuration Field located in program flash memory. The flash basis for the values is signified by X in the reset value. However, the register is written to 0xFF if the contents of the flash nonvolatile option byte are 0x00.

Address: 4002_0000h base + 3h offset = 4002_0003h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	OPT							
Write								
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

* Notes:
- x = Undefined at reset.

FTFA_FOPT field descriptions

Field	Description
OPT	Nonvolatile Option These bits are loaded from flash to this register at reset. Refer to the device's Chip Configuration details for the definition and use of these bits.

30.3.3.5 Flash Common Command Object Registers (FTFA_FCCOB*n*)

The FCCOB register group provides 12 bytes for command codes and parameters. The individual bytes within the set append a 0-B hex identifier to the FCCOB register name: FCCOB0, FCCOB1, ..., FCCOBB.

Address: 4002_0000h base + 4h offset + (1d × i), where i=0d to 11d

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	CCOBn							
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

FTFA_FCCOB*n* field descriptions

Field	Description
CCOBn	The FCCOB register provides a command code and relevant parameters to the memory controller. The individual registers that compose the FCCOB data set can be written in any order, but you must provide all needed values, which vary from command to command. First, set up all required FCCOB fields and then initiate the command's execution by writing a 1 to the FSTAT[CCIF] bit. This clears the CCIF bit, which locks all FCCOB parameter fields and they cannot be changed by the user until the command completes (CCIF returns to 1). No command buffering or queueing is provided; the next command can be loaded only after the current command completes. Some commands return information to the FCCOB registers. Any values returned to FCCOB are available for reading after the FSTAT[CCIF] flag returns to 1 by the memory controller.

FTFA_FCCOB*n* field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	The following table shows a generic flash command format. The first FCCOB register, FCCOB0, always contains the command code. This 8-bit value defines the command to be executed. The command code is followed by the parameters required for this specific flash command, typically an address and/or data values. **NOTE:** The command parameter table is written in terms of FCCOB Number (which is equivalent to the byte number). This number is a reference to the FCCOB register name and is not the register address.

FCCOB Number	Typical Command Parameter Contents [7:0]
0	FCMD (a code that defines the flash command)
1	Flash address [23:16]
2	Flash address [15:8]
3	Flash address [7:0]
4	Data Byte 0
5	Data Byte 1
6	Data Byte 2
7	Data Byte 3
8	Data Byte 4
9	Data Byte 5
A	Data Byte 6
B	Data Byte 7

FCCOB Endianness and Multi-Byte Access :

The FCCOB register group uses a big endian addressing convention. For all command parameter fields larger than 1 byte, the most significant data resides in the lowest FCCOB register number. The FCCOB register group may be read and written as individual bytes, aligned words (2 bytes) or aligned longwords (4 bytes).

30.3.3.6 Program Flash Protection Registers (FTFA_FPROT*n*)

The FPROT registers define which program flash regions are protected from program and erase operations. Protected flash regions cannot have their content changed; that is, these regions cannot be programmed and cannot be erased by any flash command. Unprotected regions can be changed by program and erase operations.

The four FPROT registers allow up to 32 protectable regions. Each bit protects a 1/32 region of the program flash memory except for memory configurations with less than 64 KB of program flash where each assigned bit protects 2 KB . For configurations with 48 KB of program flash memory or less, FPROT0 is not used. For configurations with 32

KB of program flash memory or less, FPROT1 is not used. For configurations with 16 KB of program flash memory, FPROT2 is not used. The bitfields are defined in each register as follows:

Program flash protection register	Program flash protection bits
FPROT0	PROT[31:24]
FPROT1	PROT[23:16]
FPROT2	PROT[15:8]
FPROT3	PROT[7:0]

During the reset sequence, the FPROT registers are loaded with the contents of the program flash protection bytes in the Flash Configuration Field as indicated in the following table.

Program flash protection register	Flash Configuration Field offset address
FPROT0	0x000B
FPROT1	0x000A
FPROT2	0x0009
FPROT3	0x0008

To change the program flash protection that is loaded during the reset sequence, unprotect the sector of program flash memory that contains the Flash Configuration Field. Then, reprogram the program flash protection byte.

Address: 4002_0000h base + 10h offset + (1d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	PROT							
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

* Notes:
- x = Undefined at reset.

FTFA_FPROT*n* field descriptions

Field	Description
PROT	Program Flash Region Protect Each program flash region can be protected from program and erase operations by setting the associated PROT bit. **In NVM Normal mode:** The protection can only be increased, meaning that currently unprotected memory can be protected, but currently protected memory cannot be unprotected. Since unprotected regions are marked with a 1 and protected regions use a 0, only writes changing 1s to 0s are accepted. This 1-to-0 transition check is performed on a bit-by-bit basis. Those FPROT bits with 1-to-0 transitions are accepted while all bits with 0-to-1 transitions are ignored.

FTFA_FPROT*n* field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	In NVM Special mode: All bits of FPROT are writable without restriction. Unprotected areas can be protected and protected areas can be unprotected. **Restriction:** The user must never write to any FPROT register while a command is running (CCIF=0). Trying to alter data in any protected area in the program flash memory results in a protection violation error and sets the FSTAT[FPVIOL] bit. A full block erase of a program flash block is not possible if it contains any protected region. Each bit in the 32-bit protection register represents 1/32 of the total program flash except for memory configurations with less than 64 KB of program flash where each assigned bit protects 2 KB . 0 Program flash region is protected. 1 Program flash region is not protected

30.3.3.7 Execute-only Access Registers (FTFA_XACC*n*)

The XACC registers define which program flash segments are restricted to data read or execute only or both data and instruction fetches.

The eight XACC registers allow up to 64 restricted segments of equal memory size.

Execute-only access register	Program flash execute-only access bits
XACCH0	XA[63:56]
XACCH1	XA[55:48]
XACCH2	XA[47:40]
XACCH3	XA[39:32]
XACCL0	XA[31:24]
XACCL1	XA[23:16]
XACCL2	XA[15:8]
XACCL3	XA[7:0]

During the reset sequence, the XACC registers are loaded with the logical AND of Program Flash IFR addresses A and B as indicated in the following table.

Execute-only access register	Program Flash IFR address A	Program Flash IFR address B
XACCH0	0xA3	0xAB
XACCH1	0xA2	0xAA
XACCH2	0xA1	0xA9
XACCH3	0xA0	0xA8
XACCL0	0xA7	0xAF
XACCL1	0xA6	0xAE
XACCL2	0xA5	0xAD

Table continues on the next page...

Execute-only access register	Program Flash IFR address A	Program Flash IFR address B
XACCL3	0xA4	0xAC

Use the Program Once command to program the execute-only access control fields that are loaded during the reset sequence.

Address: 4002_0000h base + 18h offset + (1d × i), where i=0d to 7d

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	XA							
Write								
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

* Notes:
- x = Undefined at reset.

FTFA_XACC*n* field descriptions

Field	Description
XA	Execute-only access control 0 Associated segment is accessible in execute mode only (as an instruction fetch) 1 Associated segment is accessible as data or in execute mode

30.3.3.8 Supervisor-only Access Registers (FTFA_SACC*n*)

The SACC registers define which program flash segments are restricted to supervisor only or user and supervisor access.

The eight SACC registers allow up to 64 restricted segments of equal memory size.

Supervisor-only access register	Program flash supervisor-only access bits
SACCH0	SA[63:56]
SACCH1	SA[55:48]
SACCH2	SA[47:40]
SACCH3	SA[39:32]
SACCL0	SA[31:24]
SACCL1	SA[23:16]
SACCL2	SA[15:8]
SACCL3	SA[7:0]

During the reset sequence, the SACC registers are loaded with the logical AND of Program Flash IFR addresses A and B as indicated in the following table.

Supervisor-only access register	Program Flash IFR address A	Program Flash IFR address B
SACCH0	0xB3	0xBB
SACCH1	0xB2	0xBA
SACCH2	0xB1	0xB9
SACCH3	0xB0	0xB8
SACCL0	0xB7	0xBF
SACCL1	0xB6	0xBE
SACCL2	0xB5	0xBD
SACCL3	0xB4	0xBC

Use the Program Once command to program the supervisor-only access control fields that are loaded during the reset sequence.

Address: 4002_0000h base + 20h offset + (1d × i), where i=0d to 7d

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	SA							
Write								
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

* Notes:
- x = Undefined at reset.

FTFA_SACC*n* field descriptions

Field	Description
SA	Supervisor-only access control 0 Associated segment is accessible in supervisor mode only 1 Associated segment is accessible in user or supervisor mode

30.3.3.9 Flash Access Segment Size Register (FTFA_FACSS)

The flash access segment size register determines which bits in the address are used to index into the SACC and XACC bitmaps to get the appropriate permission flags.

All bits in the register are read-only.

The contents of this register are loaded during the reset sequence.

Address: 4002_0000h base + 28h offset = 4002_0028h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	SGSIZE							
Write								
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

* Notes:
- x = Undefined at reset.

FTFA_FACSS field descriptions

Field	Description
SGSIZE	Segment Size The segment size is a fixed value based on the available program flash size divided by NUMSG.

Program Flash Size	Segment Size	Segment Size Encoding
64 KBytes	2 KBytes	0x3
128 KBytes	4 KBytes	0x4
160 KBytes	4 KBytes	0x4
256 KBytes	4 KBytes	0x4
512 KBytes	8 KBytes	0x5

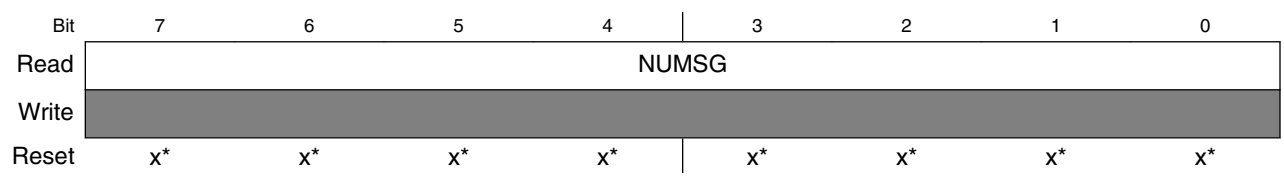
30.3.3.10 Flash Access Segment Number Register (FTFA_FACSN)

The flash access segment number register provides the number of program flash segments that are available for XACC and SACC permissions.

All bits in the register are read-only.

The contents of this register are loaded during the reset sequence.

Address: 4002_0000h base + 2Bh offset = 4002_002Bh



* Notes:
- x = Undefined at reset.

FTFA_FACSN field descriptions

Field	Description
NUMSG	Number of Segments Indicator The NUMSG field indicates the number of equal-sized segments in the program flash. 0x20 Program flash memory is divided into 32 segments (64 Kbytes, 128 Kbytes) 0x28 Program flash memory is divided into 40 segments (160 Kbytes) 0x4x Program flash memory is divided into 64 segments (256 Kbytes, 512 Kbytes)

FTFA_FACSN field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description

30.4 Functional Description

The information found here describes functional details of the flash memory module.

30.4.1 Flash Protection

Individual regions within the flash memory can be protected from program and erase operations.

Protection is controlled by the following registers:

- FPROT*n* —
  - For 2^n program flash sizes, four registers typically protect 32 regions of the program flash memory as shown in the following figure

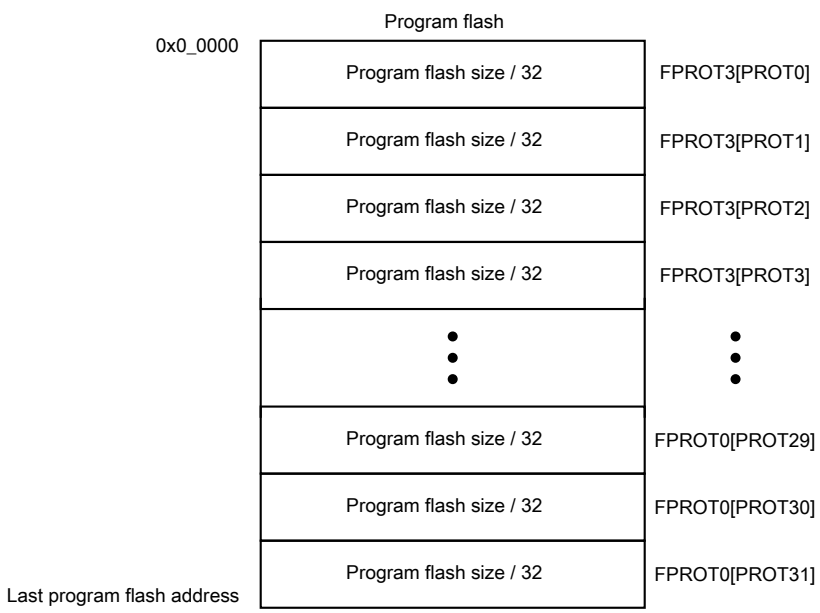


Figure 30-2. Program flash protection

NOTE

Flash protection features are discussed further in AN4507: Using the Kinetis Security and Flash Protection Features . Not all features described in the application note are available on this device.

30.4.2 Flash Access Protection

Individual segments within the program flash memory can be designated for restricted access. Specific flash commands (Program Check, Program Longword, Erase Flash Sector) monitor FXACC contents to protect flash memory but the FSACC contents do not impact flash command operation.

See AN5112: Using the Kinetis Flash Execute-Only Access Control Feature for further details.

Access is controlled by the following registers:

- FTFA_XACC —
  - For 2^n program flash sizes greater than 128KB, eight registers control 64 segments of the program flash memory as shown in the following figure

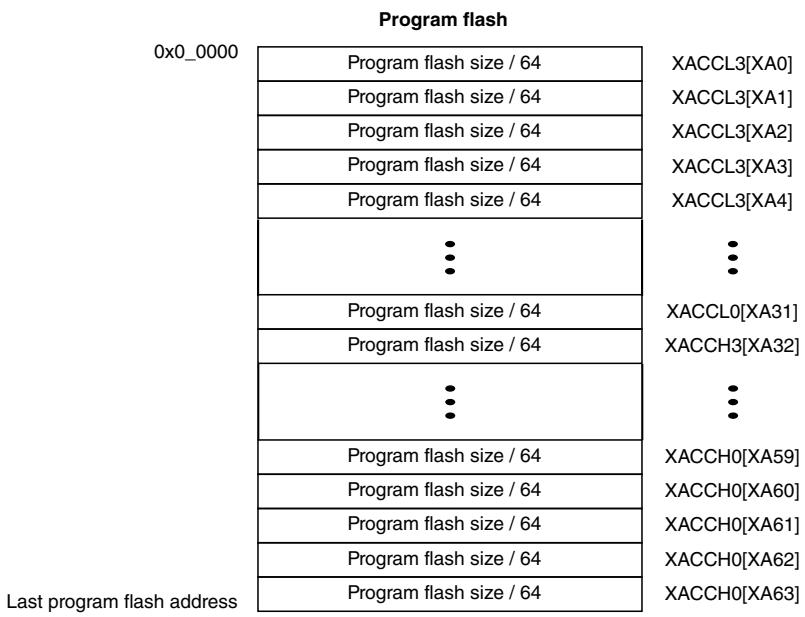


Figure 30-3. Program flash execute-only access control (256KB or 512KB of program flash)

- FTFA_SACC —
  - For 2^n program flash sizes greater than 128KB, eight registers control 64 segments of the program flash memory as shown in the following figure

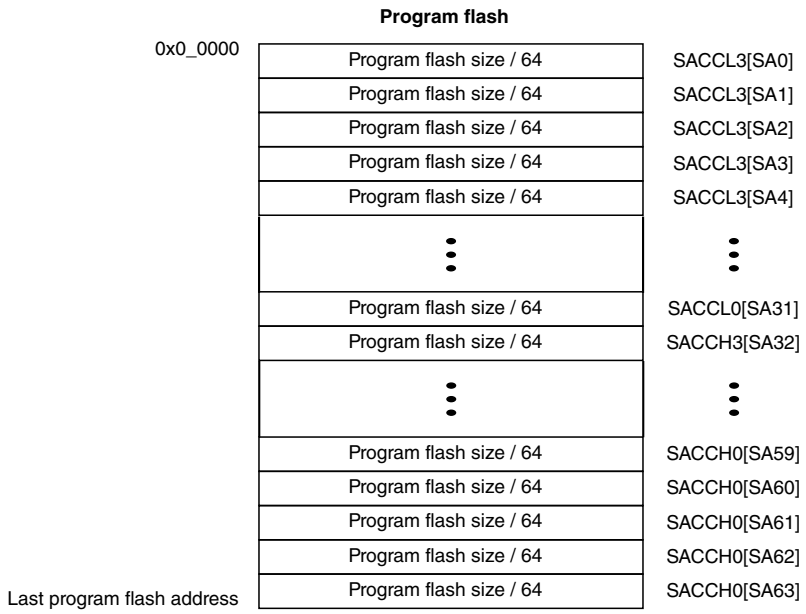


Figure 30-4. Program flash supervisor access control (256KB or 512KB of program flash)

30.4.3 Interrupts

The flash memory module can generate interrupt requests to the MCU upon the occurrence of various flash events.

These interrupt events and their associated status and control bits are shown in the following table.

Table 30-1. Flash Interrupt Sources

Flash Event	Readable Status Bit	Interrupt Enable Bit
Flash Command Complete	FSTAT[CCIF]	FCNFG[CCIE]
Flash Read Collision Error	FSTAT[RDCOLERR]	FCNFG[RDCOLLIE]

Note

Vector addresses and their relative interrupt priority are determined at the MCU level.

Some devices also generate a bus error response as a result of a Read Collision Error event. See the chip configuration information to determine if a bus error response is also supported.

30.4.4 Flash Operation in Low-Power Modes

30.4.4.1 Wait Mode

When the MCU enters wait mode, the flash memory module is not affected. The flash memory module can recover the MCU from wait via the command complete interrupt (see Interrupts).

30.4.4.2 Stop Mode

When the MCU requests stop mode, if a flash command is active (CCIF = 0) the command execution completes before the MCU is allowed to enter stop mode.

CAUTION

The MCU should never enter stop mode while any flash command is running (CCIF = 0).

NOTE

While the MCU is in very-low-power modes (VLPR, VLPW, VLPS), the flash memory module does not accept flash commands.

30.4.5 Functional Modes of Operation

The flash memory module has two operating modes: NVM Normal and NVM Special.

The operating mode affects the command set availability (see Table 30-2). Refer to the Chip Configuration details of this device for how to activate each mode.

30.4.6 Flash Reads and Ignored Writes

The flash memory module requires only the flash address to execute a flash memory read.

The MCU must not read from the flash memory while commands are running (as evidenced by CCIF=0) on that block. Read data cannot be guaranteed from a flash block while any command is processing within that block. The block arbitration logic detects any simultaneous access and reports this as a read collision error (see the FSTAT[RDCOLERR] bit).

30.4.7 Read While Write (RWW)

The following simultaneous accesses are not allowed:

- Reading from program flash memory space while a flash command is active (CCIF=0).

30.4.8 Flash Program and Erase

All flash functions except read require the user to setup and launch a flash command through a series of peripheral bus writes.

The user cannot initiate any further flash commands until notified that the current command has completed. The flash command structure and operation are detailed in Flash Command Operations.

30.4.9 Flash Command Operations

Flash command operations are typically used to modify flash memory contents.

The next sections describe:

- The command write sequence used to set flash command parameters and launch execution
- A description of all flash commands available

30.4.9.1 Command Write Sequence

Flash commands are specified using a command write sequence illustrated in Figure 30-5. The flash memory module performs various checks on the command (FCCOB) content and continues with command execution if all requirements are fulfilled.

Before launching a command, the ACCERR and FPVIOL bits in the FSTAT register must be zero and the CCIF flag must read 1 to verify that any previous command has completed. If CCIF is zero, the previous command execution is still active, a new command write sequence cannot be started, and all writes to the FCCOB registers are ignored.

Attempts to launch a flash command in VLP mode will be ignored. Attempts to launch a flash command in HSRUN mode will be trapped with the ACCERR flag being set.

30.4.9.1.1 Load the FCCOB Registers

The user must load the FCCOB registers with all parameters required by the desired flash command. The individual registers that make up the FCCOB data set can be written in any order.

30.4.9.1.2 Launch the Command by Clearing CCIF

Once all relevant command parameters have been loaded, the user launches the command by clearing FSTAT[CCIF] by writing a '1' to it. FSTAT[CCIF] remains 0 until the flash command completes.

The FSTAT register contains a blocking mechanism that prevents a new command from launching (can't clear FSTAT[CCIF]) if the previous command resulted in an access error (FSTAT[ACCERR]=1) or a protection violation (FSTAT[FPVIOL]=1). In error scenarios, two writes to FSTAT are required to initiate the next command: the first write clears the error flags, the second write clears CCIF.

30.4.9.1.3 Command Execution and Error Reporting

The command processing has several steps:

1. The flash memory module reads the command code and performs a series of parameter checks and protection checks, if applicable, which are unique to each command.

   If the parameter check fails, the FSTAT[ACCERR] (access error) flag is set. FSTAT[ACCERR] reports invalid instruction codes and out-of bounds addresses. Usually, access errors suggest that the command was not set-up with valid parameters in the FCCOB register group.

   Program and erase commands also check the address to determine if the operation is requested to execute on protected areas. If the protection check fails, FSTAT[FPVIOL] (protection error) flag is set.

Command processing never proceeds to execution when the parameter or protection step fails. Instead, command processing is terminated after setting FSTAT[CCIF].

2. If the parameter and protection checks pass, the command proceeds to execution. Run-time errors, such as failure to erase verify, may occur during the execution phase. Run-time errors are reported in FSTAT[MGSTAT0]. A command may have access errors, protection errors, and run-time errors, but the run-time errors are not seen until all access and protection errors have been corrected.
3. Command execution results, if applicable, are reported back to the user via the FCCOB and FSTAT registers.
4. The flash memory module sets FSTAT[CCIF] signifying that the command has completed.

The flow for a generic command write sequence is illustrated in the following figure.

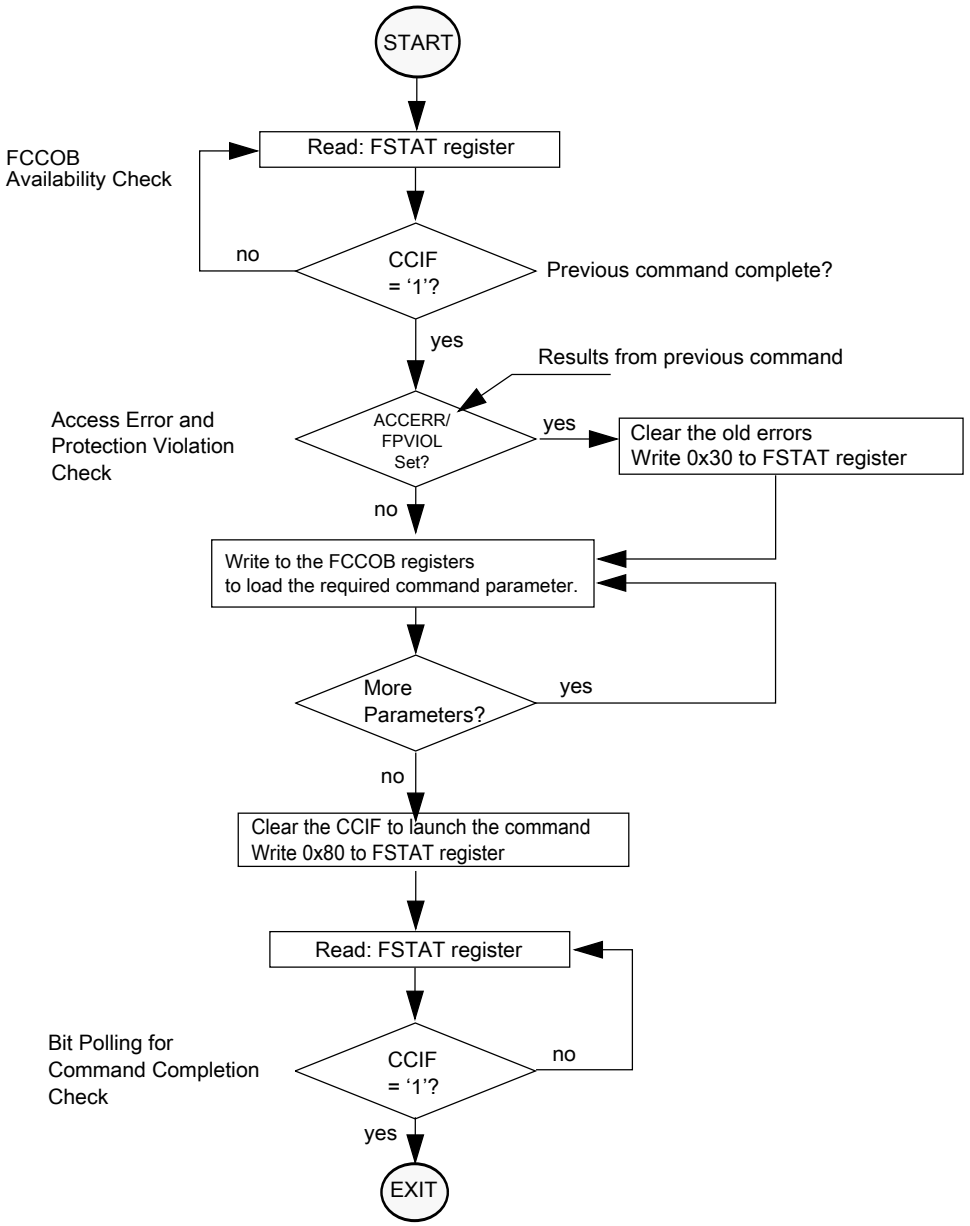


Figure 30-5. Generic flash command write sequence flowchart

30.4.9.2 Flash Commands

The following table summarizes the function of all flash commands.

FCMD	Command	Program flash	Function
0x01	Read 1s Section	×	Verify that a given number of program flash locations from a starting address are erased.

Table continues on the next page...

FCMD	Command	Program flash	Function
0x02	Program Check	×	Tests previously-programmed locations at margin read levels.
0x03	Read Resource	IFR, ID	Read 4 bytes from program flash IFR or version ID.
0x06	Program Longword	×	Program 4 bytes in a program flash block.
0x09	Erase Flash Sector	×	Erase all bytes in a program flash sector.
0x40	Read 1s All Blocks	×	Verify that the program flash block is erased then release MCU security.
0x41	Read Once	IFR	Read 4 bytes of a dedicated 64 byte field in the program flash 0 IFR.
0x43	Program Once	IFR	One-time program of 4 bytes of a dedicated 64-byte field in the program flash 0 IFR.
0x44	Erase All Blocks	×	Erase the program flash block, verify-erase and release MCU security. **NOTE:** An erase is only possible when all memory locations are unprotected.
0x45	Verify Backdoor Access Key	×	Release MCU security after comparing a set of user-supplied security keys to those stored in the program flash.
0x49	Erase All Blocks Unsecure	×	Erase the program flash block, verify-erase, program security byte to unsecure state, release MCU security.
0x4A	Read 1s All Execute-only Segments	×	Verify that all program flash execute-only (XA) segments are erased then release flash access control.
0x4B	Erase All Execute-only Segments	×	Erase all program flash execute-only (XA) segments then release flash access control.

30.4.9.3 Flash Commands by Mode

The following table shows the flash commands that can be executed in each flash operating mode.

Table 30-2. Flash Commands by Mode

FCMD	Command	NVM Normal			NVM Special		
		Unsecure	Secure	MEEN=10	Unsecure	Secure	MEEN=10
0x01	Read 1s Section	×	×	×	×	—	—
0x02	Program Check	×	×	×	×	—	—
0x03	Read Resource	×	×	×	×	—	—
0x06	Program Longword	×	×	×	×	—	—
0x09	Erase Flash Sector	×	×	×	×	—	—
0x40	Read 1s All Blocks	×	×	×	×	×	—
0x41	Read Once	×	×	×	×	—	—
0x43	Program Once	×	×	×	×	—	—
0x44	Erase All Blocks	×	×	×	×	×	—
0x45	Verify Backdoor Access Key	×	×	×	×	—	—
0x49	Erase All Blocks Unsecure	×	×	—	×	×	—
0x4A	Read 1s All Execute-only Segments	×	×	×	×	—	—
0x4B	Erase All Execute-only Segments	×	×	×	×	—	—

30.4.10 Margin Read Commands

The Read-1s commands (Read 1s All Blocks, Read 1s Section, Read 1s All Execute-only Segments) and the Program Check command have a margin choice parameter that allows the user to apply non-standard read reference levels to the program flash array reads performed by these commands. Using the preset 'user' and 'factory' margin levels, these commands perform their associated read operations at tighter tolerances than a 'normal' read. These non-standard read levels are applied only during the command execution. Basic flash array reads use the standard, un-margined, read reference level.

Only the 'normal' read level should be employed during normal flash usage. The non-standard, 'user' and 'factory' margin levels should be employed only in special cases. They can be used during special diagnostic routines to gain confidence that the device is not suffering from the end-of-life data loss customary of flash memory devices.

Erased ('1') and programmed ('0') bit states can degrade due to elapsed time and data cycling (number of times a bit is erased and re-programmed). The lifetime of the erased states is relative to the last erase operation. The lifetime of the programmed states is measured from the last program time.

The 'user' and 'factory' levels become, in effect, a minimum safety margin; i.e. if the reads pass at the tighter tolerances of the 'user' and 'factory' margins, then the 'normal' reads have at least this much safety margin before they experience data loss.

The 'user' margin is a small delta to the normal read reference level. 'User' margin levels can be employed to check that flash memory contents have adequate margin for normal level read operations. If unexpected read results are encountered when checking flash memory contents at the 'user' margin levels, loss of information might soon occur during 'normal' readout.

The 'factory' margin is a bigger deviation from the norm, a more stringent read criteria that should only be attempted immediately (or very soon) after completion of an erase or program command, early in the cycling life. 'Factory' margin levels can be used to check that flash memory contents have adequate margin for long-term data retention at the normal level setting. If unexpected results are encountered when checking flash memory contents at 'factory' margin levels, the flash memory contents should be erased and reprogrammed.

CAUTION

Factory margin levels must only be used during verify of the initial factory programming.

30.4.11 Flash Command Description

This section describes all flash commands that can be launched by a command write sequence.

The flash memory module sets the FSTAT[ACCERR] bit and aborts the command execution if any of the following illegal conditions occur:

- There is an unrecognized command code in the FCCOB FCMD field.
- There is an error in a FCCOB field for the specific commands. Refer to the error handling table provided for each command.

Ensure that FSTAT[ACCERR] and FSTAT[FPVIOL] are cleared prior to starting the command write sequence. As described in Launch the Command by Clearing CCIF, a new command cannot be launched while these error flags are set.

Do not attempt to read a flash block while the flash memory module is running a command (FSTAT[CCIF] = 0) on that same block. The flash memory module may return invalid data to the MCU with the collision error flag (FSTAT[RDCOLERR]) set.

CAUTION

Flash data must be in the erased state before being programmed. Cumulative programming of bits (adding more zeros) is not allowed.

30.4.11.1 Read 1s Section Command

The Read 1s Section command checks if a section of program flash memory is erased to the specified read margin level. The Read 1s Section command defines the starting address and the number of phrases to be verified.

Table 30-3. Read 1s Section Command FCCOB Requirements

FCCOB Number	FCCOB Contents [7:0]
0	0x01 (RD1SEC)
1	Flash address [23:16] of the first phrase to be verified
2	Flash address [15:8] of the first phrase to be verified
3	Flash address [7:0][1] of the first phrase to be verified
4	Number of phrases to be verified [15:8]
5	Number of phrases to be verified [7:0]
6	Read-1 Margin Choice

1. Must be phrase aligned (Flash address [2:0] = 000).

Upon clearing CCIF to launch the Read 1s Section command, the flash memory module sets the read margin for 1s according to Table 30-4 and then reads all locations within the specified section of flash memory. If the flash memory module fails to read all 1s (that is, the flash section is not erased), FSTAT[MGSTAT0] is set. FSTAT[CCIF] sets after the Read 1s Section operation completes.

Table 30-4. Margin Level Choices for Read 1s Section

Read Margin Choice	Margin Level Description
0x00	Use the 'normal' read level for 1s
0x01	Apply the 'User' margin to the normal read-1 level
0x02	Apply the 'Factory' margin to the normal read-1 level

Table 30-5. Read 1s Section Command Error Handling

Error condition	Error bit
Command not available in current mode/security	FSTAT[ACCERR]
An invalid margin code is supplied.	FSTAT[ACCERR]
An invalid flash address is supplied.	FSTAT[ACCERR]

Table continues on the next page...

Table 30-5. Read 1s Section Command Error Handling (continued)

Error condition	Error bit
Flash address is not phrase aligned.	FSTAT[ACCERR]
The requested section crosses a Flash block boundary.	FSTAT[ACCERR]
The requested number of phrases is 0.	FSTAT[ACCERR]
Read-1s fails.	FSTAT[MGSTAT0]

30.4.11.2 Program Check Command

The Program Check command tests a previously programmed program flash longword to see if it reads correctly at the specified margin level.

Table 30-6. Program Check Command FCCOB Requirements

FCCOB Number	FCCOB Contents [7:0]
0	0x02 (PGMCHK)
1	Flash address [23:16]
2	Flash address [15:8]
3	Flash address [7:0][1]
4	Margin Choice
8	Byte 0 expected data
9	Byte 1 expected data
A	Byte 2 expected data
B	Byte 3 expected data

1. Must be longword aligned (Flash address [1:0] = 00).

Upon clearing CCIF to launch the Program Check command, the flash memory module sets the read margin for 1s according to Table 30-7, reads the specified longword, and compares the actual read data to the expected data provided by the FCCOB. If the comparison at margin-1 fails, FSTAT[MGSTAT0] is set.

The flash memory module then sets the read margin for 0s, re-reads, and compares again. If the comparison at margin-0 fails, FSTAT[MGSTAT0] is set. FSTAT[CCIF] is set after the Program Check operation completes.

The supplied address must be longword aligned (the lowest two bits of the byte address must be 00):

- Byte 3 data is written to the supplied byte address ('start'),
- Byte 2 data is programmed to byte address start+0b01,
- Byte 1 data is programmed to byte address start+0b10,
- Byte 0 data is programmed to byte address start+0b11.

NOTE

See the description of margin reads, Margin Read Commands

Table 30-7. Margin Level Choices for Program Check

Read Margin Choice	Margin Level Description
0x01	Read at 'User' margin-1 and 'User' margin-0
0x02	Read at 'Factory' margin-1 and 'Factory' margin-0

Table 30-8. Program Check Command Error Handling

Error Condition	Error Bit
Command not available in current mode/security	FSTAT[ACCERR]
An invalid flash address is supplied	FSTAT[ACCERR]
Flash address is not longword aligned	FSTAT[ACCERR]
An invalid margin choice is supplied	FSTAT[ACCERR]
Flash address is located in an XA controlled segment and the Erase All Blocks, Erase All Blocks Unsecure or the Read 1s All Blocks command has not successfully completed since the last reset	FSTAT[FPVIOL]
Either of the margin reads does not match the expected data	FSTAT[MGSTAT0]

30.4.11.3 Read Resource Command

The Read Resource command allows the user to read data from special-purpose memory resources located within the flash memory module. The special-purpose memory resources available include program flash IFR space and the Version ID field. Each resource is assigned a select code as shown in Table 30-10.

Table 30-9. Read Resource Command FCCOB Requirements

FCCOB Number	FCCOB Contents [7:0]
0	0x03 (RDRSRC)
1	Flash address [23:16]
2	Flash address [15:8]
3	Flash address [7:0][1]
Returned Values	
4	Read Data [31:24]
5	Read Data [23:16]
6	Read Data [15:8]
7	Read Data [7:0]
User-provided values	
8	Resource Select Code (see Table 30-10)

1. Must be longword aligned (Flash address [1:0] = 00).

Table 30-10. Read Resource Select Codes

Resource Select Code	Description	Resource Size	Local Address Range
0x00	Program Flash 0 IFR	256 Bytes	0x00_0000–0x00_00FF
0x01[1]	Version ID	8 Bytes	0x00_0000–0x00_0007

1. Located in program flash 0 reserved space.

After clearing CCIF to launch the Read Resource command, four consecutive bytes are read from the selected resource at the provided relative address and stored in the FCCOB register. The CCIF flag sets after the Read Resource operation completes. The Read Resource command exits with an access error if an invalid resource code is provided or if the address for the applicable area is out-of-range.

Table 30-11. Read Resource Command Error Handling

Error Condition	Error Bit
Command not available in current mode/security	FSTAT[ACCERR]
An invalid resource code is entered	FSTAT[ACCERR]
Flash address is out-of-range for the targeted resource.	FSTAT[ACCERR]
Flash address is not longword aligned	FSTAT[ACCERR]

30.4.11.4 Program Longword Command

The Program Longword command programs four previously-erased bytes in the program flash memory using an embedded algorithm.

CAUTION

A flash memory location must be in the erased state before being programmed. Cumulative programming of bits (back-to-back program operations without an intervening erase) within a flash memory location is not allowed. Re-programming of existing 0s to 0 is not allowed as this overstresses the device.

Table 30-12. Program Longword Command FCCOB Requirements

FCCOB Number	FCCOB Contents [7:0]
0	0x06 (PGM4)
1	Flash address [23:16]
2	Flash address [15:8]

Table continues on the next page...

Table 30-12. Program Longword Command FCCOB Requirements (continued)

FCCOB Number	FCCOB Contents [7:0]
3	Flash address [7:0][1]
4	Byte 0 program value
5	Byte 1 program value
6	Byte 2 program value
7	Byte 3 program value

1. Must be longword aligned (Flash address [1:0] = 00).

Upon clearing CCIF to launch the Program Longword command, the flash memory module programs the data bytes into the flash using the supplied address. The targeted flash locations must be currently unprotected (see the description of the FPROT registers) to permit execution of the Program Longword operation.

The programming operation is unidirectional. It can only move NVM bits from the erased state ('1') to the programmed state ('0'). Erased bits that fail to program to the '0' state are flagged as errors in FSTAT[MGSTAT0]. The CCIF flag is set after the Program Longword operation completes.

The supplied address must be longword aligned (flash address [1:0] = 00):

- Byte 3 data is written to the supplied byte address ('start'),
- Byte 2 data is programmed to byte address start+0b01,
- Byte 1 data is programmed to byte address start+0b10, and
- Byte 0 data is programmed to byte address start+0b11.

Table 30-13. Program Longword Command Error Handling

Error Condition	Error Bit
Command not available in current mode/security	FSTAT[ACCERR]
An invalid flash address is supplied	FSTAT[ACCERR]
Flash address is not longword aligned	FSTAT[ACCERR]
Flash address points to a protected area	FSTAT[FPVIOL]
Flash address is located in an XA controlled segment and the Erase All Blocks, Erase All Blocks Unsecure or the Read 1s All Blocks command has not successfully completed since the last reset	FSTAT[FPVIOL]
Any errors have been encountered during the verify operation	FSTAT[MGSTAT0]

30.4.11.5 Erase Flash Sector Command

The Erase Flash Sector operation erases all addresses in a flash sector.

Table 30-14. Erase Flash Sector Command FCCOB Requirements

FCCOB Number	FCCOB Contents [7:0]
0	0x09 (ERSSCR)
1	Flash address [23:16] in the flash sector to be erased
2	Flash address [15:8] in the flash sector to be erased
3	Flash address [7:0][1] in the flash sector to be erased

1. Must be phrase aligned (flash address [2:0] = 000).

After clearing CCIF to launch the Erase Flash Sector command, the flash memory module erases the selected program flash sector and then verifies that it is erased. The Erase Flash Sector command aborts if the selected sector is protected (see the description of the FPROT registers). If the erase-verify fails the FSTAT[MGSTAT0] bit is set. The CCIF flag is set after the Erase Flash Sector operation completes. The Erase Flash Sector command is suspendable (see the FCNFG[ERSSUSP] bit and Figure 30-6).

Table 30-15. Erase Flash Sector Command Error Handling

Error Condition	Error Bit
Command not available in current mode/security	FSTAT[ACCERR]
An invalid Flash address is supplied	FSTAT[ACCERR]
Flash address is not phrase aligned	FSTAT[ACCERR]
The selected program flash sector is protected	FSTAT[FPVIOL]
The selected program flash sector is located in an XA controlled segment and the Erase All Blocks, Erase All Blocks Unsecure or the Read 1s All Blocks command has not successfully completed since the last reset	FSTAT[FPVIOL]
Any errors have been encountered during the verify operation[1]	FSTAT[MGSTAT0]

1. User margin read may be run using the Read 1s Section command to verify all bits are erased.

30.4.11.5.1 Suspending an Erase Flash Sector Operation

To suspend an Erase Flash Sector operation set the FCNFG[ERSSUSP] bit when CCIF, ACCERR, and FPVIOL are clear and the CCOB command field holds the code for the Erase Flash Sector command. During the Erase Flash Sector operation (see Erase Flash Sector Command), the flash memory module samples the state of the ERSSUSP bit at convenient points. If the flash memory module detects that the ERSSUSP bit is set, the Erase Flash Sector operation is suspended and the flash memory module sets CCIF. While ERSSUSP is set, all writes to flash registers are ignored except for writes to the FSTAT and FCNFG registers.

If an Erase Flash Sector operation effectively completes before the flash memory module detects that a suspend request has been made, the flash memory module clears the ERSSUSP bit prior to setting CCIF. When an Erase Flash Sector operation has been

successfully suspended, the flash memory module sets CCIF and leaves the ERSSUSP bit set. While CCIF is set, the ERSSUSP bit can only be cleared to prevent the withdrawal of a suspend request before the flash memory module has acknowledged it.

30.4.11.5.2 Resuming a Suspended Erase Flash Sector Operation

If the ERSSUSP bit is still set when CCIF is cleared to launch the next command, the previous Erase Flash Sector operation resumes. The flash memory module acknowledges the request to resume a suspended operation by clearing the ERSSUSP bit. A new suspend request can then be made by setting ERSSUSP. A single Erase Flash Sector operation can be suspended and resumed multiple times.

There is a minimum elapsed time limit of 4.3 msec between the request to resume the Erase Flash Sector operation (CCIF is cleared) and the request to suspend the operation again (ERSSUSP is set). This minimum time period is required to ensure that the Erase Flash Sector operation will eventually complete. If the minimum period is continually violated, i.e. the suspend requests come repeatedly and too quickly, no forward progress is made by the Erase Flash Sector algorithm. The resume/suspend sequence runs indefinitely without completing the erase.

30.4.11.5.3 Aborting a Suspended Erase Flash Sector Operation

The user may choose to abort a suspended Erase Flash Sector operation by clearing the ERSSUSP bit prior to clearing CCIF for the next command launch. When a suspended operation is aborted, the flash memory module starts the new command using the new FCCOB contents.

Note

Aborting the erase leaves the bitcells in an indeterminate, partially-erased state. Data in this sector is not reliable until a new erase command fully completes.

The following figure shows how to suspend and resume the Erase Flash Sector operation.

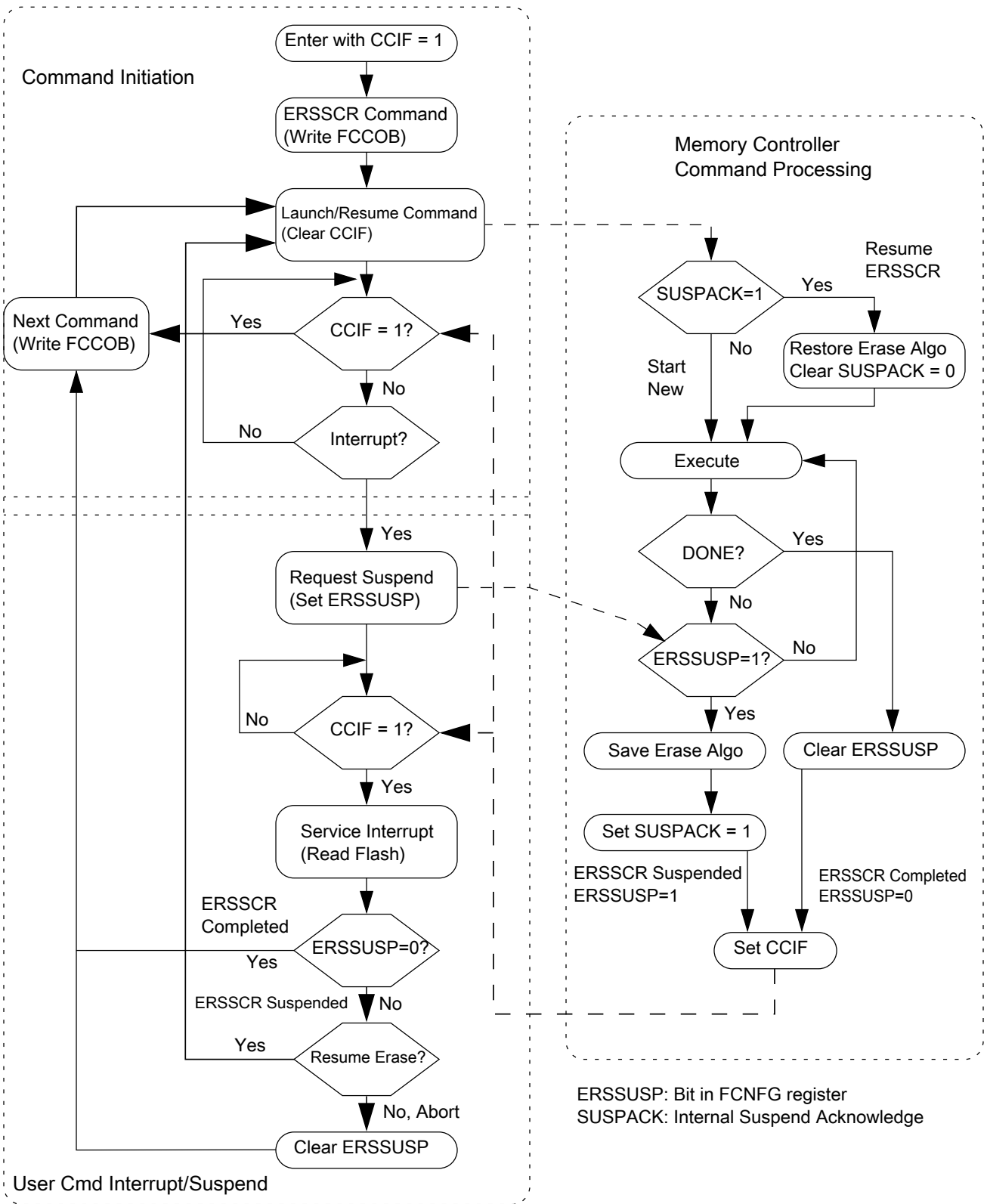


Figure 30-6. Suspend and Resume of Erase Flash Sector Operation

30.4.11.6 Read 1s All Blocks Command

The Read 1s All Blocks command checks if the program flash blocks have been erased to the specified read margin level, if applicable, and releases security if the readout passes, i.e. all data reads as '1'.

Table 30-16. Read 1s All Blocks Command FCCOB Requirements

FCCOB Number	FCCOB Contents [7:0]
0	0x40 (RD1ALL)
1	Read-1 Margin Choice

After clearing CCIF to launch the Read 1s All Blocks command, the flash memory module :

- sets the read margin for 1s according to Table 30-17,
- checks the contents of the program flash are in the erased state.

If the flash memory module confirms that these memory resources are erased, access control is disabled and security is released by setting the FSEC[SEC] field to the unsecure state. The security byte in the flash configuration field (see Flash Configuration Field Description) remains unaffected by the Read 1s All Blocks command. If the read fails, i.e. all memory resources are not in the fully erased state, the FSTAT[MGSTAT0] bit is set.

The CCIF flag sets after the Read 1s All Blocks operation has completed.

Table 30-17. Margin Level Choices for Read 1s All Blocks

Read Margin Choice	Margin Level Description
0x00	Use the 'normal' read level for 1s
0x01	Apply the 'User' margin to the normal read-1 level
0x02	Apply the 'Factory' margin to the normal read-1 level

Table 30-18. Read 1s All Blocks Command Error Handling

Error Condition	Error Bit
Command not available in current mode/security	FSTAT[ACCERR]
An invalid margin choice is specified	FSTAT[ACCERR]
Read-1s fails	FSTAT[MGSTAT0]

30.4.11.7 Read Once Command

The Read Once command provides read access to special 96-byte fields located in the program flash 0 IFR (see Program Flash IFR Map and Program Once Field). Access to the Program Once ID field is via 16 records (index values 0x00 - 0x0F), each 4 bytes long. Access to the Program Once XACC and SACC fields are via 4 records (index values 0x10 - 0x13), each of which is 8 bytes long. These fields are programmed using the Program Once command described in Program Once Command.

Table 30-19. Read Once Command FCCOB Requirements

FCCOB Number	FCCOB Contents [7:0]
0	0x41 (RDONCE)
1	Program Once record index (0x00 - 0x13)
2	Not used
3	Not used
Returned Values	
4	Program Once byte 0 value
5	Program Once byte 1 value
6	Program Once byte 2 value
7	Program Once byte 3 value
8	Program Once byte 4 value (index 0x10 - 0x13)
9	Program Once byte 5 value (index 0x10 - 0x13)
10	Program Once byte 6 value (index 0x10 - 0x13)
11	Program Once byte 7 value (index 0x10 - 0x13)

After clearing CCIF to launch the Read Once command, a 4-byte or 8-byte Program Once record is read and stored in the FCCOB register. The CCIF flag is set after the Read Once operation completes. Valid record index values for the Read Once command range from 0x00 - 0x13. During execution of the Read Once command, any attempt to read addresses within the program flash block containing the selected record index returns invalid data. The Read Once command can be executed any number of times.

Table 30-20. Read Once Command Error Handling

Error Condition	Error Bit
Command not available in current mode/security	FSTAT[ACCERR]
An invalid record index is supplied	FSTAT[ACCERR]

30.4.11.8 Program Once Command

The Program Once command enables programming to special 96-byte fields in the program flash 0 IFR (see Program Flash IFR Map and Program Once Field). Access to the Program Once ID field is via 16 records (index values 0x00 - 0x0F), each 4 bytes long. Access to the Program Once XACC and SACC fields are via 4 records (index values 0x10 - 0x13), each of which is 8 bytes long. These records can be read using the Read Once command (see Read Once Command) or using the Read Resource command (see Read Resource Command). These records can be programmed only once since the program flash 0 IFR cannot be erased.

Table 30-21. Program Once Command FCCOB Requirements

FCCOB Number	FCCOB Contents [7:0]
0	0x43 (PGMONCE)
1	Program Once record index (0x00 - 0x13)
2	Not Used
3	Not Used
4	Program Once byte 0 value
5	Program Once byte 1 value
6	Program Once byte 2 value
7	Program Once byte 3 value
8	Program Once byte 4 value (index 0x10 - 0x13)
9	Program Once byte 5 value (index 0x10 - 0x13)
10	Program Once byte 6 value (index 0x10 - 0x13)
11	Program Once byte 7 value (index 0x10 - 0x13)

After clearing CCIF to launch the Program Once command, the flash memory module first verifies that the selected record is erased. If erased, then the selected record is programmed using the values provided. The Program Once command also verifies that the programmed values read back correctly. The CCIF flag is set after the Program Once operation has completed.

Any attempt to program one of these records when the existing value is not Fs (erased) is not allowed. Valid record index values for the Program Once command range from 0x00 - 0x13. During execution of the Program Once command, any attempt to read addresses within the program flash block containing the selected record index returns invalid data.

Table 30-22. Program Once Command Error Handling

Error Condition	Error Bit
Command not available in current mode/security	FSTAT[ACCERR]
An invalid record index is supplied	FSTAT[ACCERR]
The requested record has already been programmed to a non-FFFF value[1]	FSTAT[ACCERR]

Table continues on the next page...

Table 30-22. Program Once Command Error Handling (continued)

Error Condition	Error Bit
Any errors have been encountered during the verify operation	FSTAT[MGSTAT0]

1. If a Program Once record is initially programmed to 0xFFFF_FFFF (0xFFFF_FFFF_FFFF_FFFF for index 0x10 - 0x13), the Program Once command is allowed to execute again on that same record.

30.4.11.9 Erase All Blocks Command

The Erase All Blocks operation erases all flash memory, verifies all memory contents, and releases MCU security.

Table 30-23. Erase All Blocks Command FCCOB Requirements

FCCOB Number	FCCOB Contents [7:0]
0	0x44 (ERSALL)

After clearing CCIF to launch the Erase All Blocks command, the flash memory module erases all program flash memory, then verifies that all are erased.

If the flash memory module verifies that all flash memories were properly erased, access control is disabled and security is released by setting the FSEC[SEC] field to the unsecure state. The Erase All Blocks command aborts if any flash region is protected. The security byte and all other contents of the flash configuration field (see Flash Configuration Field Description) are erased by the Erase All Blocks command. If the erase-verify fails, the FSTAT[MGSTAT0] bit is set. The CCIF flag is set after the Erase All Blocks operation completes.

Access control determined by the contents of the FXACC registers will not block execution of the Erase All Blocks command. While most Flash memory will be erased, the program flash IFR space containing the Program Once XACC and SACC fields will not be erased and, therefore, the contents of the Program Once XACC and SACC fields will not change. The contents of the FXACC and FSACC registers will not be impacted by the execution of the Erase All Blocks command. After completion of the Erase All Blocks command, access control is disabled until the next reset of the flash module or the Read 1s All Blocks command is executed and fails (FSTAT[MGSTAT0] is set).

Table 30-24. Erase All Blocks Command Error Handling

Error Condition	Error Bit
Command not available in current mode/security	FSTAT[ACCERR]
Any region of the program flash memory is protected	FSTAT[FPVIOL]
Any errors have been encountered during the verify operation[1]	FSTAT[MGSTAT0]

1. User margin read may be run using the Read 1s All Blocks command to verify all bits are erased.

30.4.11.9.1 Triggering an Erase All External to the Flash Memory Module

The functionality of the Erase All Blocks/Erase All Blocks Unsecure command is also available in an uncommanded fashion outside of the flash memory. Refer to the device's Chip Configuration details for information on this functionality.

Before invoking the external erase all function, the FSTAT[ACCERR and PVIOL] flags must be cleared and the FCCOB0 register must not contain 0x44. When invoked, the erase-all function erases all program flash memory regardless of the protection settings. If the post-erase verify passes, access control determined by the contents of the FXACC registers is disabled and the routine then releases security by setting the FSEC[SEC] field register to the unsecure state. The security byte in the Flash Configuration Field is also programmed to the unsecure state. The status of the erase-all request is reflected in the FCNFG[ERSAREQ] bit. The FCNFG[ERSAREQ] bit is cleared once the operation completes and the normal FSTAT error reporting is available, except FPVIOL, as described in Erase All Blocks Command/Erase All Blocks Unsecure Command.

30.4.11.10 Verify Backdoor Access Key Command

The Verify Backdoor Access Key command only executes if the mode and security conditions are satisfied (see Flash Commands by Mode). Execution of the Verify Backdoor Access Key command is further qualified by the FSEC[KEYEN] bits. The Verify Backdoor Access Key command releases security if user-supplied keys in the FCCOB match those stored in the Backdoor Comparison Key bytes of the Flash Configuration Field (see Flash Configuration Field Description). The column labelled Flash Configuration Field offset address shows the location of the matching byte in the Flash Configuration Field.

Table 30-25. Verify Backdoor Access Key Command FCCOB Requirements

FCCOB Number	FCCOB Contents [7:0]	Flash Configuration Field Offset Address
0	0x45 (VFYKEY)	
1-3	Not Used	
4	Key Byte 0	0x0_0003
5	Key Byte 1	0x0_0002
6	Key Byte 2	0x0_0001
7	Key Byte 3	0x0_0000
8	Key Byte 4	0x0_0007
9	Key Byte 5	0x0_0006
A	Key Byte 6	0x0_0005

Table continues on the next page...

Table 30-25. Verify Backdoor Access Key Command FCCOB Requirements (continued)

FCCOB Number	FCCOB Contents [7:0]	Flash Configuration Field Offset Address
B	Key Byte 7	0x0_0004

After clearing CCIF to launch the Verify Backdoor Access Key command, the flash memory module checks the FSEC[KEYEN] bits to verify that this command is enabled. If not enabled, the flash memory module sets the FSTAT[ACCERR] bit and terminates. If the command is enabled, the flash memory module compares the key provided in FCCOB to the backdoor comparison key in the Flash Configuration Field. If the backdoor keys match, the FSEC[SEC] field is changed to the unsecure state and security is released. If the backdoor keys do not match, security is not released and all future attempts to execute the Verify Backdoor Access Key command are immediately aborted and the FSTAT[ACCERR] bit is (again) set to 1 until a reset of the flash memory module module occurs. If the entire 8-byte key is all zeros or all ones, the Verify Backdoor Access Key command fails with an access error. The CCIF flag is set after the Verify Backdoor Access Key operation completes.

Table 30-26. Verify Backdoor Access Key Command Error Handling

Error Condition	Error Bit
Command not available in current mode/security	FSTAT[ACCERR]
The supplied key is all-0s or all-Fs	FSTAT[ACCERR]
An incorrect backdoor key is supplied	FSTAT[ACCERR]
Backdoor key access has not been enabled (see the description of the FSEC register)	FSTAT[ACCERR]
This command is launched and the backdoor key has mismatched since the last power down reset	FSTAT[ACCERR]

30.4.11.11 Erase All Blocks Unsecure Command

The Erase All Blocks Unsecure operation erases all flash memory, verifies all memory contents, programs the security byte in the Flash Configuration Field to the unsecure state, and releases MCU security.

Table 30-27. Erase All Blocks Unsecure Command FCCOB Requirements

FCCOB Number	FCCOB Contents [7:0]
0	0x49 (ERSALLU)

After clearing CCIF to launch the Erase All Blocks Unsecure command, the flash memory module erases all program flash memory, then verifies that all are erased.

If the flash memory module verifies that all program flash memory was properly erased, access control is disabled, security is released by setting the FSEC[SEC] field to the unsecure state, and the security byte (see Flash Configuration Field Description) is programmed to the unsecure state by the Erase All Blocks Unsecure command. If the erase or program verify fails, the FSTAT[MGSTAT0] bit is set. The CCIF flag is set after the Erase All Blocks Unsecure operation completes.

Access control determined by the contents of the FXACC registers will not block execution of the Erase All Blocks Unsecure command. While most Flash memory will be erased, the program flash IFR space containing the Program Once XACC and SACC fields will not be erased and, therefore, the contents of the Program Once XACC and SACC fields will not change. The contents of the FXACC and FSACC registers will not be impacted by the execution of the Erase All Blocks Unsecure command. After completion of the Erase All Blocks Unsecure command, access control is disabled until the next reset of the flash module or the Read 1s All Blocks command is executed and fails (FSTAT[MGSTAT0] is set).

Table 30-28. Erase All Blocks Unsecure Command Error Handling

Error Condition	Error Bit
Command not available in current mode/security	FSTAT[ACCERR]
Any errors have been encountered during erase or program verify operations	FSTAT[MGSTAT0]

30.4.11.12 Read 1s All Execute-only Segments Command

The Read 1s All Execute-only Segments command checks if the program flash execute-only segments defined by the FXACC registers have been erased to the specified read margin level, if applicable, and releases flash access control if the readout passes, i.e. all data reads as '1'.

Table 30-29. Read 1s All Execute-only Segments Command FCCOB Requirements

FCCOB Number	FCCOB Contents [7:0]
0	0x4A (RD1XA)
1	Read-1 Margin Choice

After clearing CCIF to launch the Read 1s All Execute-only Segments command, the flash memory module :

- sets the read margin for 1s according to Table 30-30,
- checks the contents of the program flash execute-only segments are in the erased state.

If the flash memory module confirms that these segments are erased, flash access control is disabled until the next reset or, after programming any of the execute-only segments, the Read 1s All Execute-only Segments command is executed and fails with the FSTAT[MGSTAT0] bit set. If the read fails, i.e. all segments are not in the fully erased state, the FSTAT[MGSTAT0] bit is set.

The CCIF flag sets after the Read 1s All Execute-only Segments operation has completed.

Table 30-30. Margin Level Choices for Read 1s All Execute-only Segments

Read Margin Choice	Margin Level Description
0x00	Use the 'normal' read level for 1s
0x01	Apply the 'User' margin to the normal read-1 level
0x02	Apply the 'Factory' margin to the normal read-1 level

Table 30-31. Read 1s All Execute-only Segments Command Error Handling

Error Condition	Error Bit
Command not available in current mode/security	FSTAT[ACCERR]
An invalid margin choice is specified	FSTAT[ACCERR]
Sector size is larger than segment size	FSTAT[ACCERR]
Read-1s fails	FSTAT[MGSTAT0]

30.4.11.13 Erase All Execute-only Segments Command

The Erase All Execute-only Segments operation erases all program flash execute-only segments defined by the FXACC registers, verifies all segments are erased, and releases flash access control.

Table 30-32. Erase All Execute-only Segments Command FCCOB Requirements

FCCOB Number	FCCOB Contents [7:0]
0	0x4B (ERSXA)

After clearing CCIF to launch the Erase All Execute-only Segments command, the flash memory module erases all program flash execute-only segments, then verifies that all segments are erased.

If the flash memory module verifies that all segments were properly erased, flash access control is disabled until the next reset or, after programming any of the execute-only segments, the Read 1s All Execute-only Segments command is executed and fails with

the FSTAT[MGSTAT0] bit set. The Erase All Execute-only Segments command aborts if any XA controlled segment is protected. If the erase-verify fails, the FSTAT[MGSTAT0] bit is set. The CCIF flag is set after the Erase All Execute-only Segments operation completes.

Access control determined by the contents of the FXACC registers will not block execution of the Erase All Execute-only Segments command. While all XA controlled segments will be erased, the program flash IFR space containing the Program Once XACC fields will not be erased and, therefore, the contents of the Program Once XACC fields will not change. The contents of the FXACC registers will not be impacted by the execution of the Erase All Execute-only Segments command.

Table 30-33. Erase All Execute-only Segments Command Error Handling

Error Condition	Error Bit
Command not available in current mode/security	FSTAT[ACCERR]
Sector size is larger than segment size	FSTAT[ACCERR]
Any XA controlled segment in the program flash memory is protected	FSTAT[FPVIOL]
Any errors have been encountered during the verify operation	FSTAT[MGSTAT0]

30.4.12 Security

The flash memory module provides security information to the MCU based on contents of the FSEC security register.

The MCU then limits access to flash memory resources as defined in the device's Chip Configuration details. During reset, the flash memory module initializes the FSEC register using data read from the security byte of the Flash Configuration Field (see Flash Configuration Field Description).

The following fields are available in the FSEC register. The settings are described in the Flash Security Register (FTFA_FSEC) details.

Flash security features are discussed further in AN4507: Using the Kinetis Security and Flash Protection Features . Note that not all features described in the application note are available on this device.

Table 30-34. FSEC register fields

FSEC field	Description
KEYEN	Backdoor Key Access
MEEN	Mass Erase Capability
FSLACC	Factory Security Level Access
SEC	MCU security

30.4.12.1 Flash Memory Access by Mode and Security

The following table summarizes how access to the flash memory module is affected by security and operating mode.

Table 30-35. Flash Memory Access Summary

Operating Mode	Chip Security State	
	Unsecure	Secure
NVM Normal	Full command set	
NVM Special	Full command set	Only the Erase All Blocks, Erase All Blocks Unsecure and Read 1s All Blocks commands.

30.4.12.2 Changing the Security State

The security state out of reset can be permanently changed by programming the security byte of the flash configuration field. This assumes that you are starting from a mode where the necessary program flash erase and program commands are available and that the region of the program flash containing the flash configuration field is unprotected. If the flash security byte is successfully programmed, its new value takes affect after the next chip reset.

30.4.12.2.1 Unsecuring the Chip Using Backdoor Key Access

The chip can be unsecured by using the backdoor key access feature, which requires knowledge of the contents of the 8-byte backdoor key value stored in the Flash Configuration Field (see Flash Configuration Field Description). If the FSEC[KEYEN] bits are in the enabled state, the Verify Backdoor Access Key command (see Verify Backdoor Access Key Command) can be run; it allows the user to present prospective keys for comparison to the stored keys. If the keys match, the FSEC[SEC] bits are changed to unsecure the chip. The entire 8-byte key cannot be all 0s or all 1s; that is, 0000_0000_0000_0000h and FFFF_FFFF_FFFF_FFFFh are not accepted by the Verify Backdoor Access Key command as valid comparison values. While the Verify Backdoor Access Key command is active, program flash memory is not available for read access and returns invalid data.

The user code stored in the program flash memory must have a method of receiving the backdoor keys from an external stimulus. This external stimulus would typically be through one of the on-chip serial ports.

If the KEYEN bits are in the enabled state, the chip can be unsecured by the following backdoor key access sequence:

1. Follow the command sequence for the Verify Backdoor Access Key command as explained in Verify Backdoor Access Key Command
2. If the Verify Backdoor Access Key command is successful, the chip is unsecured and the FSEC[SEC] bits are forced to the unsecure state

An illegal key provided to the Verify Backdoor Access Key command prohibits further use of the Verify Backdoor Access Key command. A reset of the chip is the only method to re-enable the Verify Backdoor Access Key command when a comparison fails.

After the backdoor keys have been correctly matched, the chip is unsecured by changing the FSEC[SEC] bits. A successful execution of the Verify Backdoor Access Key command changes the security in the FSEC register only. It does not alter the security byte or the keys stored in the Flash Configuration Field (Flash Configuration Field Description). After the next reset of the chip, the security state of the flash memory module reverts back to the flash security byte in the Flash Configuration Field. The Verify Backdoor Access Key command sequence has no effect on the program and erase protections defined in the program flash protection registers.

If the backdoor keys successfully match, the unsecured chip has full control of the contents of the Flash Configuration Field. The chip may erase the sector containing the Flash Configuration Field and reprogram the flash security byte to the unsecure state and change the backdoor keys to any desired value.

30.4.13 Reset Sequence

On each system reset the flash memory module executes a sequence which establishes initial values for the flash block configuration parameters, FPROT, FOPT, FSEC, FXACC, FSACC, and FACNFG registers.

FSTAT[CCIF] is cleared throughout the reset sequence. The flash memory module holds off CPU access during the reset sequence. Flash reads are possible when the hold is removed. Completion of the reset sequence is marked by setting CCIF which enables flash user commands.

If a reset occurs while any flash command is in progress, that command is immediately aborted. The state of the word being programmed or the sector/block being erased is not guaranteed. Commands and operations do not automatically resume after exiting reset.

Chapter 31
Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC)

31.1 Introduction

The cyclic redundancy check (CRC) module generates 16/32-bit CRC code for error detection.

The CRC module provides a programmable polynomial and other parameters required to implement a 16-bit or 32-bit CRC standard.

The 16/32-bit code is calculated for 32 bits of data at a time.

31.1.1 Features

Features of the CRC module include:

- Hardware CRC generator circuit using a 16-bit or 32-bit programmable shift register
- Programmable initial seed value and polynomial
- Option to transpose input data or output data (the CRC result) bitwise or bytewise. This option is required for certain CRC standards. A bytewise transpose operation is not possible when accessing the CRC data register via 8-bit accesses. In this case, the user's software must perform the bytewise transpose function.
- Option for inversion of final CRC result
- 32-bit CPU register programming interface

31.1.2 Block diagram

The following is a block diagram of the CRC.

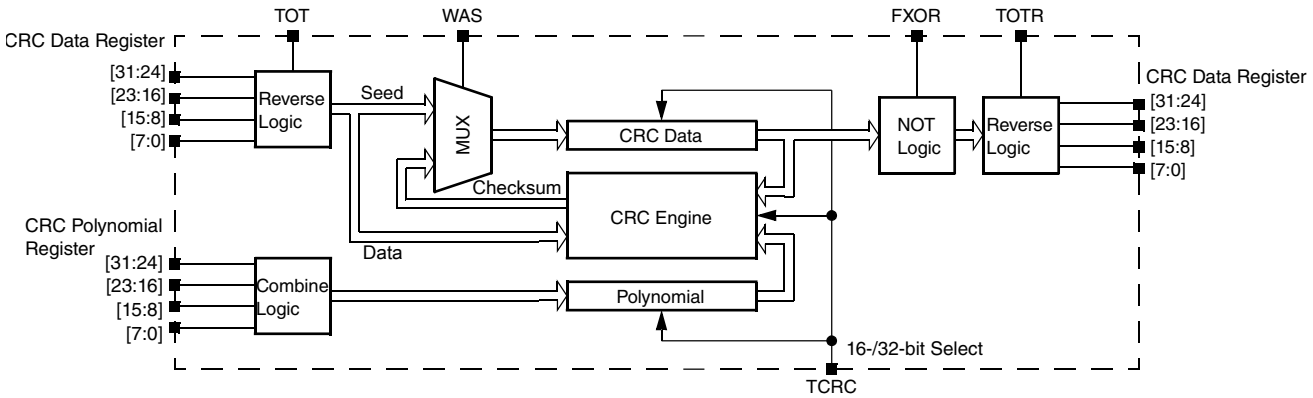


Figure 31-1. Programmable cyclic redundancy check (CRC) block diagram

31.1.3 Modes of operation

Various MCU modes affect the CRC module's functionality.

31.1.3.1 Run mode

This is the basic mode of operation.

31.1.3.2 Low-power modes (Wait or Stop)

Any CRC calculation in progress stops when the MCU enters a low-power mode that disables the module clock. It resumes after the clock is enabled or via the system reset for exiting the low-power mode. Clock gating for this module is dependent on the MCU.

31.2 Memory map and register descriptions

CRC memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4003_2000	CRC Data register (CRC_DATA)	32	R/W	FFFF_FFFFh	31.2.1/641
4003_2004	CRC Polynomial register (CRC_GPOLY)	32	R/W	0000_1021h	31.2.2/642
4003_2008	CRC Control register (CRC_CTRL)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	31.2.3/642

31.2.1 CRC Data register (CRC_DATA)

The CRC Data register contains the value of the seed, data, and checksum. When CTRL[WAS] is set, any write to the data register is regarded as the seed value. When CTRL[WAS] is cleared, any write to the data register is regarded as data for general CRC computation.

In 16-bit CRC mode, the HU and HL fields are not used for programming the seed value, and reads of these fields return an indeterminate value. In 32-bit CRC mode, all fields are used for programming the seed value.

When programming data values, the values can be written 8 bits, 16 bits, or 32 bits at a time, provided all bytes are contiguous; with MSB of data value written first.

After all data values are written, the CRC result can be read from this data register. In 16-bit CRC mode, the CRC result is available in the LU and LL fields. In 32-bit CRC mode, all fields contain the result. Reads of this register at any time return the intermediate CRC value, provided the CRC module is configured.

Address: 4003_2000h base + 0h offset = 4003_2000h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R W	HU								HL								LU								LL							
Reset	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1

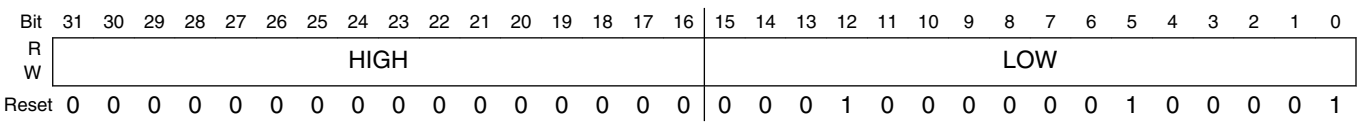
CRC_DATA field descriptions

Field	Description
31–24 HU	CRC High Upper Byte In 16-bit CRC mode (CTRL[TCRC] is 0), this field is not used for programming a seed value. In 32-bit CRC mode (CTRL[TCRC] is 1), values written to this field are part of the seed value when CTRL[WAS] is 1. When CTRL[WAS] is 0, data written to this field is used for CRC checksum generation in both 16-bit and 32-bit CRC modes.
23–16 HL	CRC High Lower Byte In 16-bit CRC mode (CTRL[TCRC] is 0), this field is not used for programming a seed value. In 32-bit CRC mode (CTRL[TCRC] is 1), values written to this field are part of the seed value when CTRL[WAS] is 1. When CTRL[WAS] is 0, data written to this field is used for CRC checksum generation in both 16-bit and 32-bit CRC modes.
15–8 LU	CRC Low Upper Byte When CTRL[WAS] is 1, values written to this field are part of the seed value. When CTRL[WAS] is 0, data written to this field is used for CRC checksum generation.
LL	CRC Low Lower Byte When CTRL[WAS] is 1, values written to this field are part of the seed value. When CTRL[WAS] is 0, data written to this field is used for CRC checksum generation.

31.2.2 CRC Polynomial register (CRC_GPOLY)

This register contains the value of the polynomial for the CRC calculation. The HIGH field contains the upper 16 bits of the CRC polynomial, which are used only in 32-bit CRC mode. Writes to the HIGH field are ignored in 16-bit CRC mode. The LOW field contains the lower 16 bits of the CRC polynomial, which are used in both 16- and 32-bit CRC modes.

Address: 4003_2000h base + 4h offset = 4003_2004h



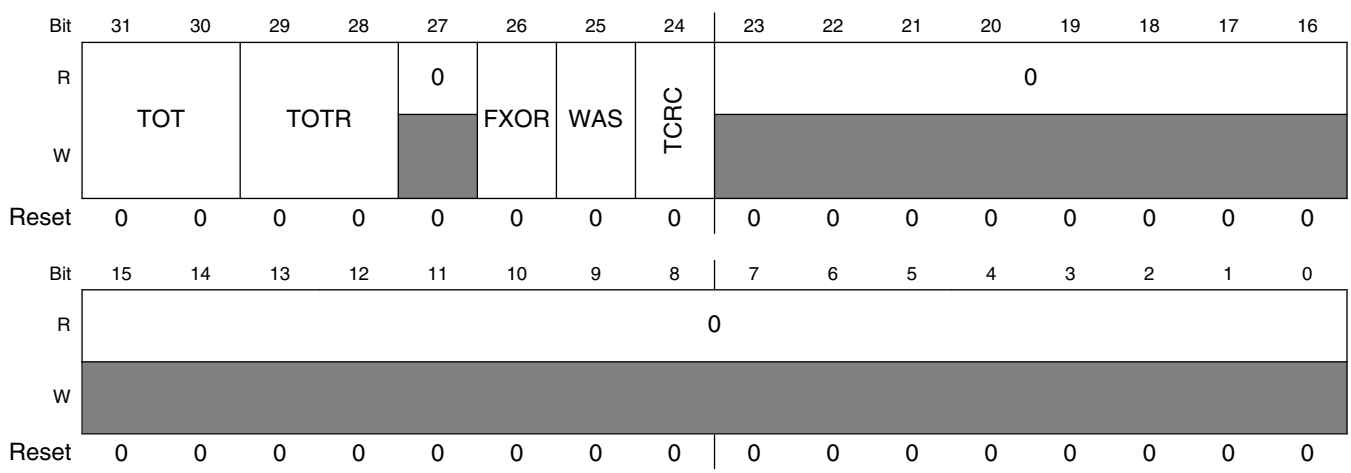
CRC_GPOLY field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 HIGH	High Polynominal Half-word Writable and readable in 32-bit CRC mode (CTRL[TCRC] is 1). This field is not writable in 16-bit CRC mode (CTRL[TCRC] is 0).
LOW	Low Polynominal Half-word Writable and readable in both 32-bit and 16-bit CRC modes.

31.2.3 CRC Control register (CRC_CTRL)

This register controls the configuration and working of the CRC module. Appropriate bits must be set before starting a new CRC calculation. A new CRC calculation is initialized by asserting CTRL[WAS] and then writing the seed into the CRC data register.

Address: 4003_2000h base + 8h offset = 4003_2008h



CRC_CTRL field descriptions

Field	Description
31–30 TOT	Type Of Transpose For Writes Defines the transpose configuration of the data written to the CRC data register. See the description of the transpose feature for the available transpose options. 00 No transposition. 01 Bits in bytes are transposed; bytes are not transposed. 10 Both bits in bytes and bytes are transposed. 11 Only bytes are transposed; no bits in a byte are transposed.
29–28 TOTR	Type Of Transpose For Read Identifies the transpose configuration of the value read from the CRC Data register. See the description of the transpose feature for the available transpose options. 00 No transposition. 01 Bits in bytes are transposed; bytes are not transposed. 10 Both bits in bytes and bytes are transposed. 11 Only bytes are transposed; no bits in a byte are transposed.
27 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
26 FXOR	Complement Read Of CRC Data Register Some CRC protocols require the final checksum to be XORed with 0xFFFFFFFF or 0xFFFF. Asserting this bit enables on the fly complementing of read data. 0 No XOR on reading. 1 Invert or complement the read value of the CRC Data register.
25 WAS	Write CRC Data Register As Seed When asserted, a value written to the CRC data register is considered a seed value. When deasserted, a value written to the CRC data register is taken as data for CRC computation. 0 Writes to the CRC data register are data values. 1 Writes to the CRC data register are seed values.
24 TCRC	Width of CRC protocol. 0 16-bit CRC protocol. 1 32-bit CRC protocol.
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

31.3 Functional description

31.3.1 CRC initialization/reinitialization

To enable the CRC calculation, the user must program CRC_CTRL[WAS], CRC_GPOLY,necessary parameters for transposition and CRC result inversion in the applicable registers. Asserting CRC_CTRL[WAS] enables the programming of the seed value into the CRC_DATA register.

After a completed CRC calculation, the module can be reinitialized for a new CRC computation by reasserting CRC_CTRL[WAS] and programming a new, or previously used, seed value. All other parameters must be set before programming the seed value and subsequent data values.

31.3.2 CRC calculations

In 16-bit and 32-bit CRC modes, data values can be programmed 8 bits, 16 bits, or 32 bits at a time, provided all bytes are contiguous. Noncontiguous bytes can lead to an incorrect CRC computation.

31.3.2.1 16-bit CRC

To compute a 16-bit CRC:

1. Clear CRC_CTRL[TCRC] to enable 16-bit CRC mode.
2. Program the transpose and complement options in the CTRL register as required for the CRC calculation. See Transpose feature and CRC result complement for details.
3. Write a 16-bit polynomial to the CRC_GPOLY[LOW] field. The CRC_GPOLY[HIGH] field is not usable in 16-bit CRC mode.
4. Set CRC_CTRL[WAS] to program the seed value.
5. Write a 16-bit seed to CRC_DATA[LU:LL]. CRC_DATA[HU:HL] are not used.
6. Clear CRC_CTRL[WAS] to start writing data values.
7. Write data values into CRC_DATA[HU:HL:LU:LL]. A CRC is computed on every data value write, and the intermediate CRC result is stored back into CRC_DATA[LU:LL].
8. When all values have been written, read the final CRC result from CRC_DATA[LU:LL].

Transpose and complement operations are performed on the fly while reading or writing values. See Transpose feature and CRC result complement for details.

31.3.2.2 32-bit CRC

To compute a 32-bit CRC:

1. Set CRC_CTRL[TCRC] to enable 32-bit CRC mode.
2. Program the transpose and complement options in the CTRL register as required for the CRC calculation. See Transpose feature and CRC result complement for details.
3. Write a 32-bit polynomial to CRC_GPOLY[HIGH:LOW].
4. Set CRC_CTRL[WAS] to program the seed value.
5. Write a 32-bit seed to CRC_DATA[HU:HL:LU:LL].
6. Clear CRC_CTRL[WAS] to start writing data values.
7. Write data values into CRC_DATA[HU:HL:LU:LL]. A CRC is computed on every data value write, and the intermediate CRC result is stored back into CRC_DATA[HU:HL:LU:LL].
8. When all values have been written, read the final CRC result from CRC_DATA[HU:HL:LU:LL]. The CRC is calculated bytewise, and two clocks are required to complete one CRC calculation.

Transpose and complement operations are performed on the fly while reading or writing values. See Transpose feature and CRC result complement for details.

31.3.3 Transpose feature

By default, the transpose feature is not enabled. However, some CRC standards require the input data and/or the final checksum to be transposed. The user software has the option to configure each transpose operation separately, as desired by the CRC standard. The data is transposed on the fly while being read or written.

Some protocols use little endian format for the data stream to calculate a CRC. In this case, the transpose feature usefully flips the bits. This transpose option is one of the types supported by the CRC module.

31.3.3.1 Types of transpose

The CRC module provides several types of transpose functions to flip the bits and/or bytes, for both writing input data and reading the CRC result, separately using the CTRL[TOT] or CTRL[TOTR] fields, according to the CRC calculation being used.

The following types of transpose functions are available for writing to and reading from the CRC data register:

1. CTRL[TOT] or CTRL[TOTR] is 00.

No transposition occurs.

2. CTRL[TOT] or CTRL[TOTR] is 01

   Bits in a byte are transposed, while bytes are not transposed.

   reg[31:0] becomes {reg[24:31], reg[16:23], reg[8:15], reg[0:7]}

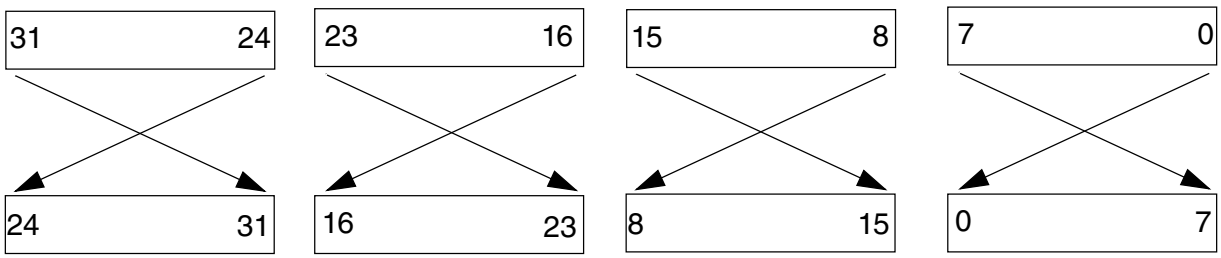


Figure 31-2. Transpose type 01

3. CTRL[TOT] or CTRL[TOTR] is 10.

   Both bits in bytes and bytes are transposed.

   reg[31:0] becomes = {reg[0:7], reg[8:15],reg[16:23], reg[24:31]}

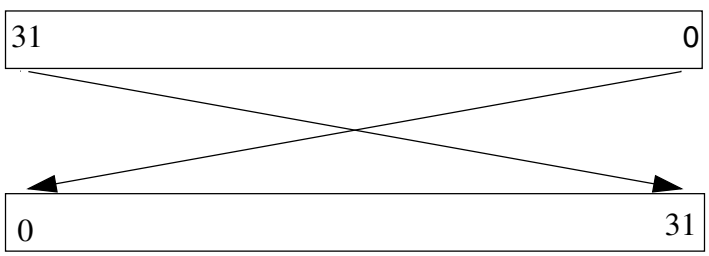


Figure 31-3. Transpose type 10

4. CTRL[TOT] or CTRL[TOTR] is 11.

   Bytes are transposed, but bits are not transposed.

   reg[31:0] becomes {reg[7:0], reg[15:8], reg[23:16], reg[31:24]}

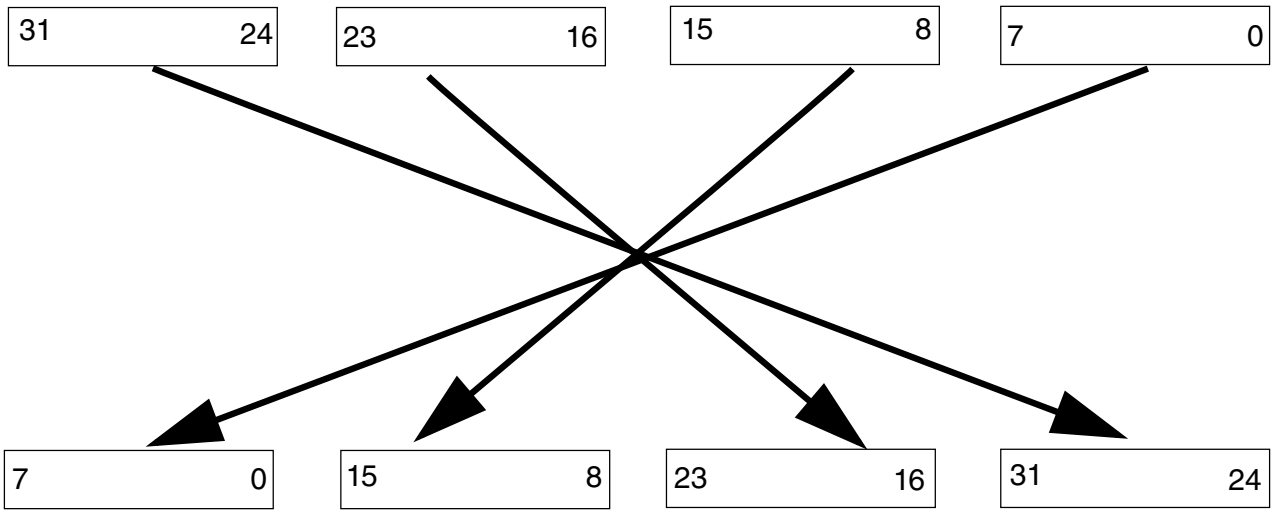


Figure 31-4. Transpose type 11

NOTE

- For 8-bit and 16-bit write accesses to the CRC data register, the data is transposed with zeros on the unused byte or bytes (taking 32 bits as a whole), but the CRC is calculated on the valid byte(s) only.
- When reading the CRC data register for a 16-bit CRC result and using transpose options 10 and 11, the resulting value after transposition resides in the CRC[HU:HL] fields. The user software must account for this situation when reading the 16-bit CRC result, so reading 32 bits is preferred.

31.3.4 CRC result complement

When CTRL[FXOR] is set, the checksum is complemented. The CRC result complement function outputs the complement of the checksum value stored in the CRC data register every time the CRC data register is read. When CTRL[FXOR] is cleared, reading the CRC data register accesses the raw checksum value.

Chapter 32
Random Number Generator Accelerator (RNGA)

32.1 Introduction

This chapter describes the random-number-generator accelerator RNGA, including a programming model, functional description, and application information. Throughout this chapter, the terms "RNG" and "RNGA" are meant to be synonymous.

32.1.1 Overview

RNGA is a digital integrated circuit capable of generating 32-bit random numbers. The random bits are generated using shift registers with clocks derived from two free-running, independent ring oscillators. The configuration of the shift registers ensures statistically good data, that is, data that looks random. The oscillators, with their unknown frequencies and independent phases, provide the means of generating the required entropy needed to create random data. The random words generated by RNGA are loaded into an output register (OR). RNGA is designed to generate an error interrupt (if not masked), if OR is read and does not contain valid random data. OR contains valid random data if the LVL field in the status register (SR) is 1.

It is important to note there is no known cryptographic proof showing this is a secure method of generating random data. In fact, there may be an attack against this random number generator if its output is used directly in a cryptographic application. The attack is based on the linearity of the internal shift registers. Therefore, it is highly recommended that this random data produced by this module be used as an entropy source to provide an input seed to a NIST-approved pseudo-random-number generator based on DES or SHA-1 and defined in *NIST FIPS PUB 186-2 Appendix 3* and *NIST FIPS PUB SP 800-90*.

The requirement is to maximize the entropy of this input seed. In order to do this, when data is extracted from RNGA as quickly as the hardware allows, there are about one or two bits of added entropy per 32-bit word. Any single bit of that word contains that

entropy. Therefore, when used as an entropy source, a random number should be generated for each bit of entropy required, and the least significant bit (any bit would be equivalent) of each word retained. The remainder of each random number should then be discarded. Used this way, even with full knowledge of the internal state of RNGA and all prior random numbers, an attacker is not able to predict the values of the extracted bits.

Other sources of entropy can be used along with RNGA to generate the seed to the pseudorandom algorithm. The more random sources combined to create the seed, the better. The following is a list of sources that can be easily combined with the output of this module:

- Current time using highest precision possible
- Real-time system inputs that can be characterized as "random"
- Other entropy supplied directly by the user

32.2 Modes of operation

RNGA supports the following modes of operation.

Table 32-1. Modes of operation supported by RNGA

Mode	Description
Normal	The ring-oscillator clocks are active; RNGA generates entropy (randomness) from the clocks and stores it in shift registers.
Sleep	The ring-oscillator clocks are inactive; RNGA does not generate entropy.

32.2.1 Entering Normal mode

To enter Normal mode, write 0 to CR[SLP].

32.2.2 Entering Sleep mode

To enter Sleep mode, write 1 to CR[SLP].

32.3 Memory map and register definition

This section describes the RNGA registers.

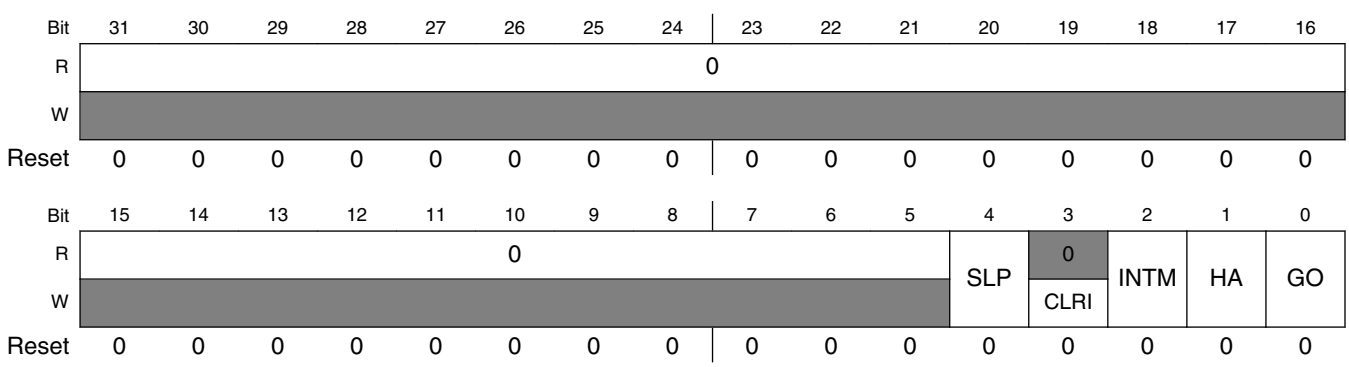
RNG memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4002_9000	RNGA Control Register (RNG_CR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	32.3.1/651
4002_9004	RNGA Status Register (RNG_SR)	32	R	0001_0000h	32.3.2/653
4002_9008	RNGA Entropy Register (RNG_ER)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	32.3.3/655
4002_900C	RNGA Output Register (RNG_OR)	32	R	0000_0000h	32.3.4/655

32.3.1 RNGA Control Register (RNG_CR)

Controls the operation of RNGA.

Address: 4002_9000h base + 0h offset = 4002_9000h



RNG_CR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–5 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
4 SLP	Sleep Specifies whether RNGA is in Sleep or Normal mode. **NOTE:** You can also enter Sleep mode by asserting the DOZE signal.

Table continues on the next page...

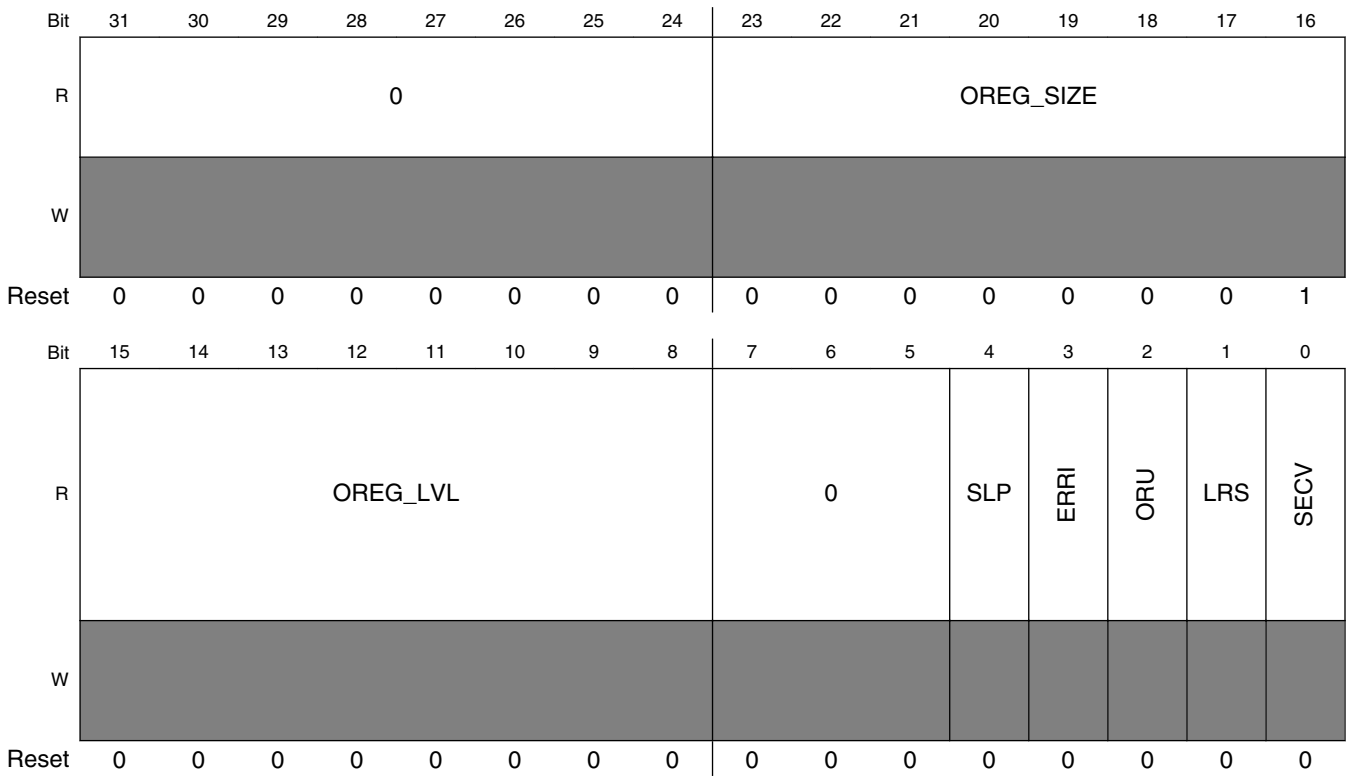
RNG_CR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Normal mode 1 Sleep (low-power) mode
3 CLRI	Clear Interrupt Clears the interrupt by resetting the error-interrupt indicator (SR[ERRI]). 0 Do not clear the interrupt. 1 Clear the interrupt. When you write 1 to this field, RNGA then resets the error-interrupt indicator (SR[ERRI]). This bit always reads as 0.
2 INTM	Interrupt Mask Masks the triggering of an error interrupt to the interrupt controller when an OR underflow condition occurs. An OR underflow condition occurs when you read OR[RANDOUT] and SR[OREG_LVL]=0. See the Output Register (OR) description. 0 Not masked 1 Masked
1 HA	High Assurance Enables notification of security violations (via SR[SECV]). A security violation occurs when you read OR[RANDOUT] and SR[OREG_LVL]=0. **NOTE:** This field is sticky. After enabling notification of security violations, you must reset RNGA to disable them again. 0 Disabled 1 Enabled
0 GO	Go Specifies whether random-data generation and loading (into OR[RANDOUT]) is enabled. **NOTE:** This field is sticky. You must reset RNGA to stop RNGA from loading OR[RANDOUT] with data. 0 Disabled 1 Enabled

32.3.2 RNGA Status Register (RNG_SR)

Indicates the status of RNGA. This register is read-only.

Address: 4002_9000h base + 4h offset = 4002_9004h



RNG_SR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–24 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
23–16 OREG_SIZE	Output Register Size Indicates the size of the Output (OR) register in terms of the number of 32-bit random-data words it can hold. 1 One word (this value is fixed)
15–8 OREG_LVL	Output Register Level Indicates the number of random-data words that are in OR[RANDOUT], which indicates whether OR[RANDOUT] is valid. **NOTE:** If you read OR[RANDOUT] when SR[OREG_LVL] is not 0, then the contents of a random number contained in OR[RANDOUT] are returned, and RNGA writes 0 to both OR[RANDOUT] and SR[OREG_LVL]. 0 No words (empty) 1 One word (valid)

Table continues on the next page...

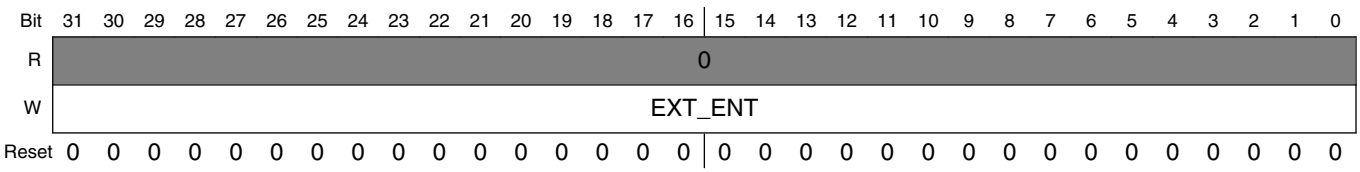
RNG_SR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
7–5 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
4 SLP	Sleep Specifies whether RNGA is in Sleep or Normal mode. **NOTE:** You can also enter Sleep mode by asserting the DOZE signal. 0 Normal mode 1 Sleep (low-power) mode
3 ERRI	Error Interrupt Indicates whether an OR underflow condition has occurred since you last cleared the error interrupt (CR[CLRI]) or RNGA was reset, regardless of whether the error interrupt is masked (CR[INTM]). An OR underflow condition occurs when you read OR[RANDOUT] and SR[OREG_LVL]=0. **NOTE:** After you reset the error-interrupt indicator (via CR[CLRI]), RNGA writes 0 to this field. 0 No underflow 1 Underflow
2 ORU	Output Register Underflow Indicates whether an OR underflow condition has occurred since you last read this register (SR) or RNGA was reset, regardless of whether the error interrupt is masked (CR[INTM]). An OR underflow condition occurs when you read OR[RANDOUT] and SR[OREG_LVL]=0. **NOTE:** After you read this register, RNGA writes 0 to this field. 0 No underflow 1 Underflow
1 LRS	Last Read Status Indicates whether the most recent read of OR[RANDOUT] caused an OR underflow condition, regardless of whether the error interrupt is masked (CR[INTM]). An OR underflow condition occurs when you read OR[RANDOUT] and SR[OREG_LVL]=0. **NOTE:** After you read this register, RNGA writes 0 to this field. 0 No underflow 1 Underflow
0 SECV	Security Violation Used only when high assurance is enabled (CR[HA]). Indicates that a security violation has occurred. **NOTE:** This field is sticky. To clear SR[SECV], you must reset RNGA. 0 No security violation 1 Security violation

32.3.3 RNGA Entropy Register (RNG_ER)

Specifies an entropy value that RNGA uses in addition to its ring oscillators to seed its pseudorandom algorithm. This is a write-only register; reads return all zeros.

Address: 4002_9000h base + 8h offset = 4002_9008h



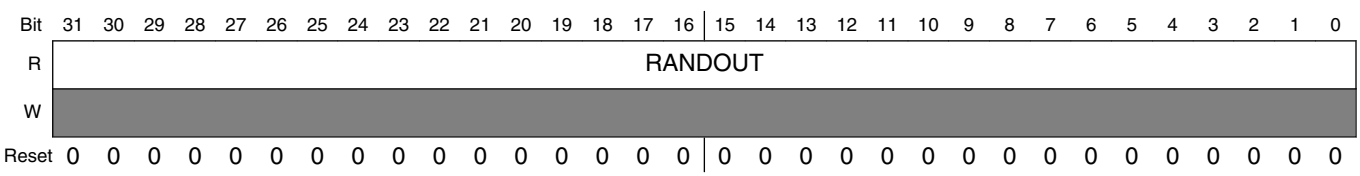
RNG_ER field descriptions

Field	Description
EXT_ENT	External Entropy Specifies an entropy value that RNGA uses in addition to its ring oscillators to seed its pseudorandom algorithm. **NOTE:** Specifying a value for this field is optional but recommended. You can write to this field at any time during operation.

32.3.4 RNGA Output Register (RNG_OR)

Stores a random-data word generated by RNGA.

Address: 4002_9000h base + Ch offset = 4002_900Ch



RNG_OR field descriptions

Field	Description
RANDOUT	Random Output Stores a random-data word generated by RNGA. This is a read-only field. **NOTE:** Before reading RANDOUT, be sure it is valid (SR[OREG_LVL]=1).

RNG_OR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description	
	0	Invalid data (if you read this field when it is 0 and SR[OREG_LVL] is 0, RNGA then writes 1 to SR[ERRI], SR[ORU], and SR[LRS]; when the error interrupt is not masked (CR[INTM]=0), RNGA also asserts an error interrupt request to the interrupt controller).
	All other values	Valid data (if you read this field when SR[OREG_LVL] is not 0, RNGA returns RANDOUT, and then writes 0 to this field and to SR[OREG_LVL]).

32.4 Functional description

This is a block diagram of RNGA.

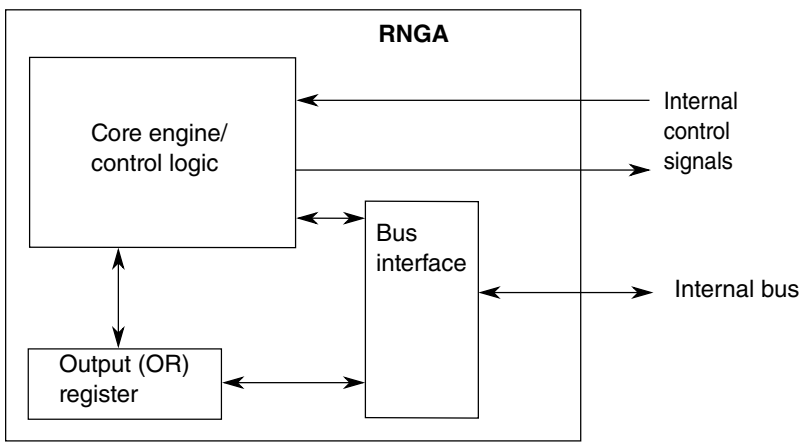


Figure 32-1. RNGA block diagram

32.4.1 Output (OR) register

The Output (OR) register provides temporary storage for random data generated by the core engine / control logic. The Status (SR) register allows the user to monitor the presence of valid random data in OR through SR[OREG_LVL].

If the OR is read while containing valid random data (as signaled by SR[OREG_LVL] = 1), the valid data is returned, then OR and SR[OREG_LVL] are both cleared. If the user reads from OR when it is empty, RNGA returns all zeros and, if the interrupt is enabled, RNGA drives a request to the interrupt controller. Polling SR[OREG_LVL] is very important to make sure random values are present before reading from OR.

32.4.2 Core engine / control logic

This block contains RNGA's control logic as well as its core engine used to generate random data.

32.4.2.1 Control logic

The control logic contains the address decoder, all addressable registers, and control state machines for RNGA. This block is responsible for communication with both the peripheral interface and the Output (OR) register interface. The block also controls the core engine to generate random data. The general functionality of the block is as follows:

After reset, RNGA operates in Normal mode as follows:

1. The core engine generates entropy and stores it in the shift registers.
2. After you enable random-data generation by loading CR[GO], every 256 clock cycles the core engine generates a new random-data word. If SR[OREG_LVL] = 0, then the control block loads the new random data into OR and set SR[OREG_LVL] = 1; else the new data is discarded.

32.4.2.2 Core engine

The core engine block contains the logic used to generate random data. The logic within the core engine contains the internal shift registers as well as the logic used to generate the two oscillator-based clocks. The control logic determines how the shift registers are configured as well as when the oscillator clocks are turned on.

32.5 Initialization/application information

The intended general operation of RNGA is as follows:

1. Reset/initialize.
2. Write 1 to CR[INTM], CR[HA], and CR[GO].
3. Poll SR[OREG_LVL] until it is not 0.
4. When SR[OREG_LVL] is not 0, read the available random data from OR[RANDOUT].
5. Repeat steps 3 and 4 as needed.

For application information, see Overview.

Chapter 33
Analog-to-Digital Converter (ADC)

33.1 Chip-specific Information for this Module

33.1.1 ADC instantiation information

This device contains one ADC.

33.1.1.1 Number of ADC channels

The number of ADC channels present on the device is determined by the pinout of the specific device package. For details regarding the number of ADC channel available on a particular package, refer to the signal multiplexing chapter of this MCU.

33.1.2 DMA Support on ADC

Applications may require continuous sampling of the ADC (4K samples/sec) that may have considerable load on the CPU. Though using PDB to trigger ADC may reduce some CPU load, the ADC supports DMA request functionality for higher performance when the ADC is sampled at a very high rate or cases where PDB is bypassed. The ADC can trigger the DMA (via DMA req) on conversion completion.

33.1.3 ADCx Connections/Channel Assignment

NOTE

As indicated by the following sections, each ADCx_DPx input and certain ADCx_DMx inputs may operate as single-ended ADC channels in single-ended mode.

33.1.3.1 ADC0 channel assignment

For 100-pin package:

Table 33-1. ADC0 Assignments

ADC Channel (SC1n[ADCH])	Channel	Input signal (SC1n[DIFF]= 1)	Input signal (SC1n[DIFF]= 0)
00000	DAD0	ADC0_DP0 and ADC0_DM0	ADC0_DP0
00001	DAD1	ADC0_DP1 and ADC0_DM1	ADC0_DP1
00010	DAD2	ADC0_DP2 and ADC0_DM2	ADC0_DP2
00011	DAD3	ADC0_DP3 and ADC0_DM3	ADC0_DP3
00100	AD4a	Reserved	ADC0_SE4a
00101[1]	AD5a	Reserved	ADC0_SE5a
00110[1]	AD6a	Reserved	ADC0_SE6a
00111[1]	AD7a	Reserved	ADC0_SE7a
00100[1]	AD4b	Reserved	ADC0_SE4b
00101[1]	AD5b	Reserved	ADC0_SE5b
00110[1]	AD6b	Reserved	ADC0_SE6b
00111[1]	AD7b	Reserved	ADC0_SE7b
01000	AD8	Reserved	ADC0_SE8
01001	AD9	Reserved	ADC0_SE9
01010	AD10	Reserved	Reserved
01011	AD11	Reserved	Reserved
01100	AD12	Reserved	ADC0_SE12
01101	AD13	Reserved	ADC0_SE13
01110	AD14	Reserved	ADC0_SE14
01111	AD15	Reserved	ADC0_SE15
10000	AD16	Reserved	VBAT
10001	AD17	Reserved	ADC0_SE17
10010	AD18	Reserved	ADC0_SE18
10011	AD19	Reserved	ADC0_DM0
10100	AD20	Reserved	ADC0_DM1
10101	AD21	Reserved	Reserved
10110	AD22	Reserved	Reserved
10111	AD23	Reserved	12-bit DAC0 Output/ADC0_SE23
11000	AD24	Reserved	Reserved
11001	AD25	Reserved	Reserved
11010	AD26	Temperature Sensor (Diff)	Temperature Sensor (S.E)
11011	AD27	Bandgap (Diff)	Bandgap (S.E)[2]
11100	AD28	Reserved	Reserved

Table continues on the next page...

Table 33-1. ADC0 Assignments (continued)

ADC Channel (SC1n[ADCH])	Channel	Input signal (SC1n[DIFF]= 1)	Input signal (SC1n[DIFF]= 0)
11101	AD29	–VREFH (Diff)	VREFH (S.E)
11110	AD30	Reserved	VREFL
11111	AD31	Module Disabled	Module Disabled

1. ADCx_CFG2[MUXSEL] bit selects between ADCx_SEn channels a and b. Refer to MUXSEL description in ADC chapter for details.
2. Prior to reading from this ADC channel, ensure that you enable the bandgap buffer by setting the PMC_REGSC[BGBE] bit. Refer to the device data sheet for the bandgap voltage (V_{BG}) specification.

For 64-pin package:

Table 33-2. ADC0 Assignments

ADC Channel (SC1n[ADCH])	Channel	Input signal (SC1n[DIFF]= 1)	Input signal (SC1n[DIFF]= 0)
00000	DAD0	ADC0_DP0 and ADC0_DM0	ADC0_DP0
00001	DAD1	Reserved	ADC0_DP1
00010	DAD2	Reserved	Reserved
00011	DAD3	ADC0_DP3 and ADC0_DM3	ADC0_DP3
00100	AD4a	Reserved	ADC0_SE4a
00101[1]	AD5a	Reserved	ADC0_SE5a
00110[1]	AD6a	Reserved	Reserved
00111[1]	AD7a	Reserved	Reserved
00100[1]	AD4b	Reserved	ADC0_SE4b
00101[1]	AD5b	Reserved	ADC0_SE5b
00110[1]	AD6b	Reserved	ADC0_SE6b
00111[1]	AD7b	Reserved	ADC0_SE7b
01000	AD8	Reserved	ADC0_SE8
01001	AD9	Reserved	ADC0_SE9
01010	AD10	Reserved	Reserved
01011	AD11	Reserved	Reserved
01100	AD12	Reserved	ADC0_SE12
01101	AD13	Reserved	ADC0_SE13
01110	AD14	Reserved	ADC0_SE14
01111	AD15	Reserved	ADC0_SE15
10000	AD16	Reserved	VBAT
10001	AD17	Reserved	Reserved
10010	AD18	Reserved	Reserved
10011	AD19	Reserved	ADC0_DM0
10100	AD20	Reserved	Reserved
10101	AD21	Reserved	Reserved

Table continues on the next page...

Table 33-2. ADC0 Assignments (continued)

ADC Channel (SC1n[ADCH])	Channel	Input signal (SC1n[DIFF]= 1)	Input signal (SC1n[DIFF]= 0)
10110	AD22	Reserved	Reserved
10111	AD23	Reserved	12-bit DAC0 Output/ADC0_SE23
11000	AD24	Reserved	Reserved
11001	AD25	Reserved	Reserved
11010	AD26	Temperature Sensor (Diff)	Temperature Sensor (S.E)
11011	AD27	Bandgap (Diff)	Bandgap (S.E)[2]
11100	AD28	Reserved	Reserved
11101	AD29	–VREFH (Diff)	VREFH (S.E)
11110	AD30	Reserved	VREFL
11111	AD31	Module Disabled	Module Disabled

1. ADCx_CFG2[MUXSEL] bit selects between ADCx_SEn channels a and b. Refer to MUXSEL description in ADC chapter for details.
2. Prior to reading from this ADC channel, ensure that you enable the bandgap buffer by setting the PMC_REGSC[BGBE] bit. Refer to the device data sheet for the bandgap voltage (V_{BG}) specification.

33.1.4 ADC Channels MUX Selection

The following figure shows the assignment of ADCx_SEn channels a and b through a MUX selection to ADC. To select between alternate set of channels, refer to ADCx_CFG2[MUXSEL] bit settings for more details.

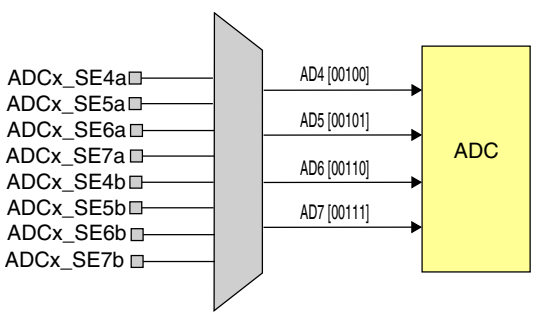


Figure 33-1. ADCx_SEn channels a and b selection

33.1.5 ADC Reference Options

The ADC supports the following references:

- VREFH/VREFL - connected as the primary reference option

ADCx_SC2[REFSEL] bit selects the voltage reference sources for ADC. Refer to REFSEL description in ADC chapter for more details.

33.1.6 VBAT connection to ADC input channel

The VBAT supply input can be converted as a single ended input to ADC0 Channel 16. When VBAT is greater than the selected voltage reference, the conversion result will show a saturated result (~0xFFFF in 16-bit operation). When measuring the VBAT voltage level the ADC should be configured for a long sample time (ADC0_CFG1[ADLSMP]=1, ADC0_CFG2[ADLSTS]=00).

33.1.7 ADC triggers

The ADC supports both software and hardware triggers. The primary hardware mechanism for triggering the ADC is the PDB. The PDB itself can be triggered by other peripherals. For example: RTC (Alarm, Seconds) signal is connected to the PDB. The PDB input trigger can receive the RTC (alarm/seconds) trigger forcing ADC conversions in run mode (where PDB is enabled). On the other hand, the ADC can conduct conversions in low power modes, not triggered by PDB. This allows the ADC to do conversions in low power mode and store the output in the result register. The ADC generates interrupt when the data is ready in the result register that wakes the system from low power mode. The PDB can also be bypassed by using the ADCxTRGSEL bits in the SIM_SOPT7 register.

Table 33-3. ADC Alternate trigger options

SIM_SOPT7[ADCxTRGSEL]	Selected source
0000	PDB external trigger pin input (PDB0_EXTRG)
0001	High speed comparator 0 output
0010	Reserved
0011	Reserved
0100	PIT trigger 0
0101	PIT trigger 1
0110	PIT trigger 2
0111	PIT trigger 3
1000	TPM0 Overflow
1001	TPM1 Overflow
1010	TPM2 Overflow
1011	Reserved
1100	RTC alarm

Table continues on the next page...

Table 33-3. ADC Alternate trigger options (continued)

SIM_SOPT7[ADCxTRGSEL]	Selected source
1101	RTC seconds
1110	LPTMR trigger
1111	TPM1 channel 0(A pretrigger) and channel 1(B pretrigger)

For operation of triggers in different modes, refer to Power Management chapter.

33.1.8 ADC conversion clock options

The ADC has multiple input clock sources. Selection is determined by ADCx_CFG1[ADICLK] bitfield. The following table shows the chip-specific clock assignments for this bitfield.

NOTE

The ALTCLK option is only usable when OSCERCLK is in the MHz range. A system with OSCERCLK in the kHz range has the optional clock source below minimum ADC clock operating frequency.

Table 33-4. ADC Conversion Clock Options

ADCx_CFG1[ADICLK]	ADC defined selection	Chip clock	Note
00	Bus Clock	Bus Clock	
01	ALTCLK2	IRC48MCLKIRC48MCLK	Note [1]
10	ALTCLK	OSCERCLK	Note [1]
11	Asynchronous clock (ADACK)	N/A - sourced from within ADC block	Note

1. For ADC operation in Compute only, PSTOP1, Stop and VLPS, ADACK and the alternate clock sources are allowed clock sources. Note however that ALTCLK2 is force disabled and therefore not available in VLPS.

33.1.9 ADC low-power modes

This table shows the ADC low-power modes and the corresponding chip low-power modes.

Table 33-5. ADC low-power modes

Module mode	Chip mode
Wait	Wait, VLPW
Normal Stop	Stop, VLPS
Low Power Stop	LLS, VLLS3, VLLS2, VLLS1, VLLS0

33.2 Introduction

The 16-bit analog-to-digital converter (ADC) is a successive approximation ADC designed for operation within an integrated microcontroller system-on-chip.

NOTE

For the chip specific modes of operation, see the power management information of the device.

33.2.1 Features

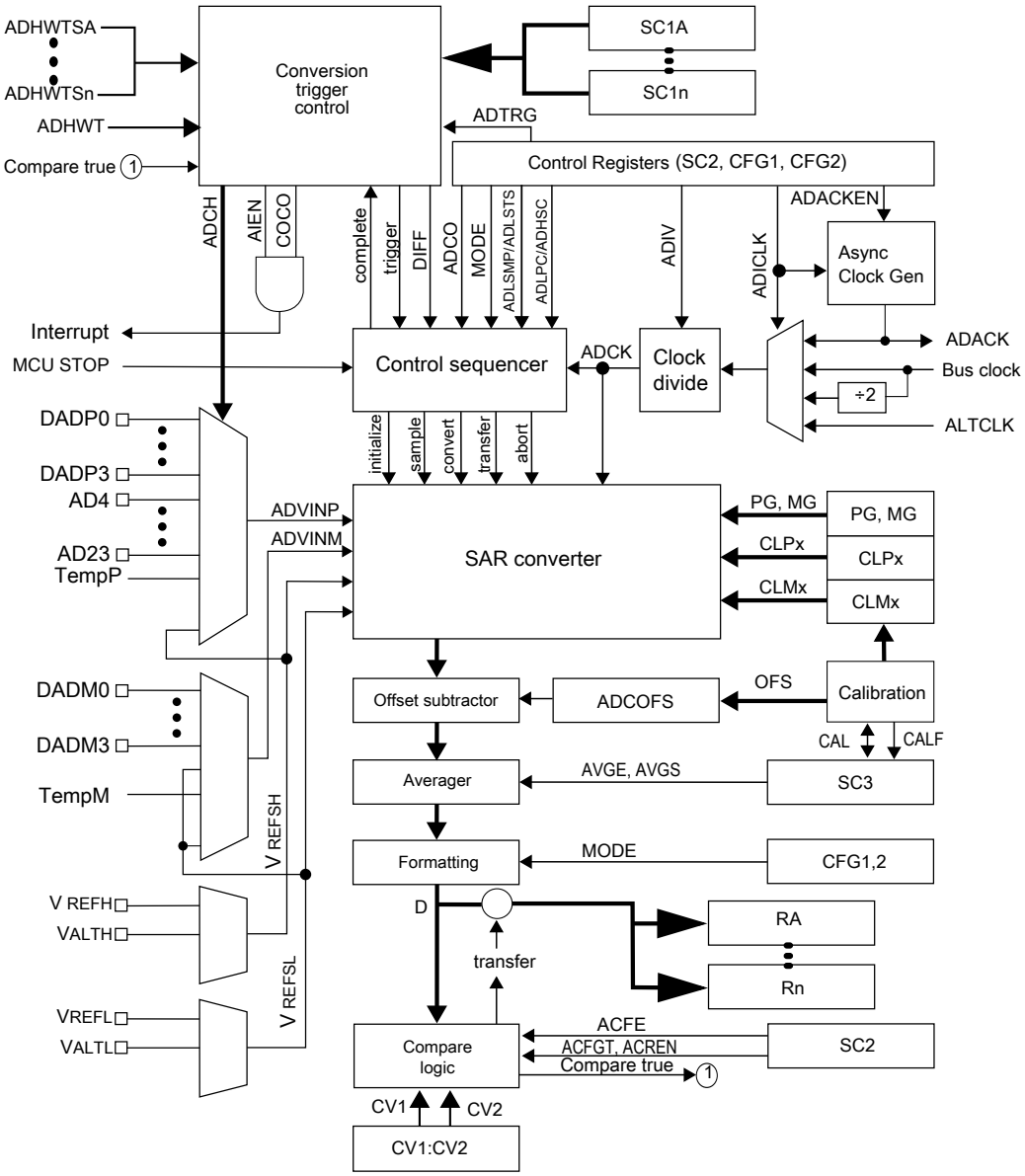
Following are the features of the ADC module.

- Linear successive approximation algorithm with up to 16-bit resolution
- Up to four pairs of differential and 24 single-ended external analog inputs
- Output modes:
  - differential 16-bit, 13-bit, 11-bit, and 9-bit modes
  - single-ended 16-bit, 12-bit, 10-bit, and 8-bit modes
- Output format in 2's complement 16-bit sign extended for differential modes
- Output in right-justified unsigned format for single-ended
- Single or continuous conversion, that is, automatic return to idle after single conversion
- Configurable sample time and conversion speed/power
- Conversion complete/hardware average complete flag and interrupt
- Input clock selectable from up to four sources
- Operation in low-power modes for lower noise
- Asynchronous clock source for lower noise operation with option to output the clock

- Selectable hardware conversion trigger with hardware channel select
- Automatic compare with interrupt for less-than, greater-than or equal-to, within range, or out-of-range, programmable value
- Temperature sensor
- Hardware average function
- Selectable voltage reference: external or alternate
- Self-Calibration mode

33.2.2 Block diagram

The following figure is the ADC module block diagram.


ADHWTSA
ADHWTSn
ADHWT
Compare true
Conversion trigger control
SC1A
SC1n
ADTRG
Control Registers (SC2, CFG1, CFG2)
ADACKEN
Async Clock Gen
ADICLK
ADIV
ADCH
AIEN
COCO
complete
trigger
DIFF
ADCO
MODE
ADLSMP/ADLSTS
ADLPC/ADHSC
Interrupt
MCU STOP
Control sequencer
ADCK
Clock divide
ADACK
Bus clock
÷2
ALTCLK
initialize
sample
convert
transfer
abort
DADP0
DADP3
AD4
AD23
TempP
ADVINP
ADVINM
SAR converter
PG, MG
CLPx
CLMx
DADM0
DADM3
TempM
Offset subtractor
ADCOFS
OFS
Calibration
CAL
CALF
Averager
AVGE, AVGS
SC3
Formatting
MODE
CFG1,2
V REFSH
V REFH
VALTH
V REFSL
VREFL
VALTL
D
transfer
RA
Rn
ACFE
ACFGT, ACREN
Compare true
Compare logic
SC2
CV1
CV2
CV1:CV2

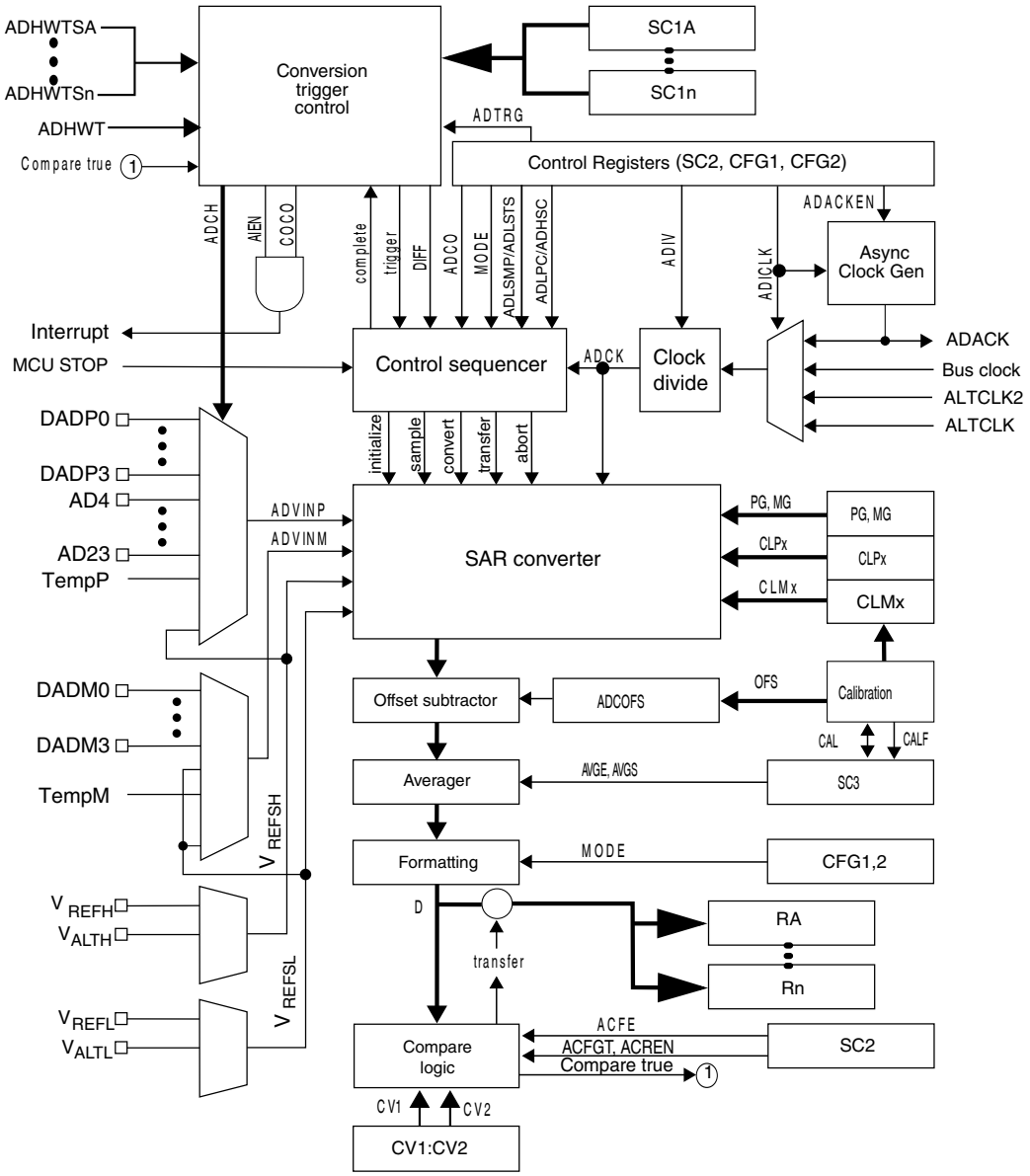


Figure 33-2. ADC block diagram

33.3 ADC signal descriptions

The ADC module supports up to 4 pairs of differential inputs and up to 24 single-ended inputs.

Each differential pair requires two inputs, DADPx and DADMx. The ADC also requires four supply/reference/ground connections.

NOTE

For the number of channels supported on this device as well as information regarding other chip-specific inputs into the ADC block, see the chip-specific ADC configuration information.

Table 33-6. ADC signal descriptions

Signal	Description	I/O
DADP3–DADP0	Differential Analog Channel Inputs	I
DADM3–DADM0	Differential Analog Channel Inputs	I
AD*n*	Single-Ended Analog Channel Inputs	I
V_{REFSH}	Voltage Reference Select High	I
V_{REFSL}	Voltage Reference Select Low	I
V_{DDA}	Analog Power Supply	I
V_{SSA}	Analog Ground	I

33.3.1 Analog Power (V_{DDA})

The ADC analog portion uses V_{DDA} as its power connection. In some packages, V_{DDA} is connected internally to V_{DD}. If externally available, connect the V_{DDA} pin to the same voltage potential as V_{DD}. External filtering may be necessary to ensure clean V_{DDA} for good results.

33.3.2 Analog Ground (V_{SSA})

The ADC analog portion uses V_{SSA} as its ground connection. In some packages, V_{SSA} is connected internally to V_{SS}. If externally available, connect the V_{SSA} pin to the same voltage potential as V_{SS}.

33.3.3 Voltage Reference Select

V_{REFSH} and V_{REFSL} are the high and low reference voltages for the ADC module.

The ADC can be configured to accept one of two voltage reference pairs for V_{REFSH} and V_{REFSL}. Each pair contains a positive reference that must be between the minimum Ref Voltage High and V_{DDA}, and a ground reference that must be at the same potential as V_{SSA}. The two pairs are external (V_{REFH} and V_{REFL}) and alternate (V_{ALTH} and V_{ALTL}). These voltage references are selected using SC2[REFSEL]. The alternate V_{ALTH} and

V_{ALTL} voltage reference pair may select additional external pins or internal sources depending on MCU configuration. See the chip configuration information on the Voltage References specific to this MCU.

In some packages, V_{REFH} is connected in the package to V_{DDA} and V_{REFL} to V_{SSA}. If externally available, the positive reference(s) may be connected to the same potential as V_{DDA} or may be driven by an external source to a level between the minimum Ref Voltage High and the V_{DDA} potential. V_{REFH} must never exceed V_{DDA}. Connect the ground references to the same voltage potential as V_{SSA}.

33.3.4 Analog Channel Inputs (ADx)

The ADC module supports up to 24 single-ended analog inputs. A single-ended input is selected for conversion through the SC1[ADCH] channel select bits when SC1n[DIFF] is low.

33.3.5 Differential Analog Channel Inputs (DADx)

The ADC module supports up to four differential analog channel inputs. Each differential analog input is a pair of external pins, DADPx and DADMx, referenced to each other to provide the most accurate analog to digital readings. A differential input is selected for conversion through SC1[ADCH] when SC1n[DIFF] is high. All DADPx inputs may be used as single-ended inputs if SC1n[DIFF] is low. In certain MCU configurations, some DADMx inputs may also be used as single-ended inputs if SC1n[DIFF] is low. For ADC connections specific to this device, see the chip-specific ADC information.

33.4 Memory map and register definitions

This section describes the ADC registers.

ADC memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4003_B000	ADC Status and Control Registers 1 (ADC0_SC1A)	32	R/W	0000_001Fh	33.4.1/671
4003_B004	ADC Status and Control Registers 1 (ADC0_SC1B)	32	R/W	0000_001Fh	33.4.1/671
4003_B008	ADC Configuration Register 1 (ADC0_CFG1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	33.4.2/675
4003_B00C	ADC Configuration Register 2 (ADC0_CFG2)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	33.4.3/676
4003_B010	ADC Data Result Register (ADC0_RA)	32	R	0000_0000h	33.4.4/677

Table continues on the next page...

ADC memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4003_B014	ADC Data Result Register (ADC0_RB)	32	R	0000_0000h	33.4.4/677
4003_B018	Compare Value Registers (ADC0_CV1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	33.4.5/679
4003_B01C	Compare Value Registers (ADC0_CV2)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	33.4.5/679
4003_B020	Status and Control Register 2 (ADC0_SC2)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	33.4.6/680
4003_B024	Status and Control Register 3 (ADC0_SC3)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	33.4.7/682
4003_B028	ADC Offset Correction Register (ADC0_OFS)	32	R/W	0000_0004h	33.4.8/683
4003_B02C	ADC Plus-Side Gain Register (ADC0_PG)	32	R/W	0000_8200h	33.4.9/684
4003_B030	ADC Minus-Side Gain Register (ADC0_MG)	32	R/W	0000_8200h	33.4.10/ 684
4003_B034	ADC Plus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADC0_CLPD)	32	R/W	0000_000Ah	33.4.11/ 685
4003_B038	ADC Plus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADC0_CLPS)	32	R/W	0000_0020h	33.4.12/ 686
4003_B03C	ADC Plus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADC0_CLP4)	32	R/W	0000_0200h	33.4.13/ 686
4003_B040	ADC Plus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADC0_CLP3)	32	R/W	0000_0100h	33.4.14/ 687
4003_B044	ADC Plus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADC0_CLP2)	32	R/W	0000_0080h	33.4.15/ 687
4003_B048	ADC Plus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADC0_CLP1)	32	R/W	0000_0040h	33.4.16/ 688
4003_B04C	ADC Plus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADC0_CLP0)	32	R/W	0000_0020h	33.4.17/ 688
4003_B054	ADC Minus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADC0_CLMD)	32	R/W	0000_000Ah	33.4.18/ 689
4003_B058	ADC Minus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADC0_CLMS)	32	R/W	0000_0020h	33.4.19/ 689
4003_B05C	ADC Minus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADC0_CLM4)	32	R/W	0000_0200h	33.4.20/ 690
4003_B060	ADC Minus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADC0_CLM3)	32	R/W	0000_0100h	33.4.21/ 690
4003_B064	ADC Minus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADC0_CLM2)	32	R/W	0000_0080h	33.4.22/ 691
4003_B068	ADC Minus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADC0_CLM1)	32	R/W	0000_0040h	33.4.23/ 691
4003_B06C	ADC Minus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADC0_CLM0)	32	R/W	0000_0020h	33.4.24/ 692

33.4.1 ADC Status and Control Registers 1 (ADC*x*_SC1*n*)

SC1A is used for both software and hardware trigger modes of operation.

To allow sequential conversions of the ADC to be triggered by internal peripherals, the ADC can have more than one status and control register: one for each conversion. The SC1B–SC1n registers indicate potentially multiple SC1 registers for use only in hardware trigger mode. See the chip configuration information about the number of SC1n registers specific to this device. The SC1n registers have identical fields, and are used in a "ping-pong" approach to control ADC operation.

At any one point in time, only one of the SC1n registers is actively controlling ADC conversions. Updating SC1A while SC1n is actively controlling a conversion is allowed, and vice-versa for any of the SC1n registers specific to this MCU.

Writing SC1A while SC1A is actively controlling a conversion aborts the current conversion. In Software Trigger mode, when SC2[ADTRG]=0, writes to SC1A subsequently initiate a new conversion, if SC1[ADCH] contains a value other than all 1s (module disabled).

Writing any of the SC1n registers while that specific SC1n register is actively controlling a conversion aborts the current conversion. None of the SC1B-SC1n registers are used for software trigger operation and therefore writes to the SC1B–SC1n registers do not initiate a new conversion.

Address: 4003_B000h base + 0h offset + (4d × i), where i=0d to 1d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0								COCO	AIEN	DIFF	ADCH				
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	1

ADCx_SC1n field descriptions

Field	Description
31–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
7 COCO	Conversion Complete Flag This is a read-only field that is set each time a conversion is completed when the compare function is disabled, or SC2[ACFE]=0 and the hardware average function is disabled, or SC3[AVGE]=0. When the compare function is enabled, or SC2[ACFE]=1, COCO is set upon completion of a conversion only if the compare result is true. When the hardware average function is enabled, or SC3[AVGE]=1, COCO is set upon completion of the selected number of conversions (determined by AVGS). COCO in SC1A is also set at the completion of a calibration sequence. COCO is cleared when the respective SC1n register is written or when the respective Rn register is read. 0 Conversion is not completed. 1 Conversion is completed.
6 AIEN	Interrupt Enable Enables conversion complete interrupts. When COCO becomes set while the respective AIEN is high, an interrupt is asserted. 0 Conversion complete interrupt is disabled. 1 Conversion complete interrupt is enabled.
5 DIFF	Differential Mode Enable Configures the ADC to operate in differential mode. When enabled, this mode automatically selects from the differential channels, and changes the conversion algorithm and the number of cycles to complete a conversion. 0 Single-ended conversions and input channels are selected. 1 Differential conversions and input channels are selected.
ADCH	Input channel select Selects one of the input channels. The input channel decode depends on the value of DIFF. DAD0-DAD3 are associated with the input pin pairs DADPx and DADMx. **NOTE:** Some of the input channel options in the bitfield-setting descriptions might not be available for your device. For the actual ADC channel assignments for your device, see the Chip Configuration details. The successive approximation converter subsystem is turned off when the channel select bits are all set, that is, ADCH = 11111. This feature allows explicit disabling of the ADC and isolation of the input channel from all sources. Terminating continuous conversions this way prevents an additional single conversion from being performed. It is not necessary to set ADCH to all 1s to place the ADC in a low-power state when continuous conversions are not enabled because the module automatically enters a low-power state when a conversion completes. 00000 When DIFF=0, DADP0 is selected as input; when DIFF=1, DAD0 is selected as input. 00001 When DIFF=0, DADP1 is selected as input; when DIFF=1, DAD1 is selected as input. 00010 When DIFF=0, DADP2 is selected as input; when DIFF=1, DAD2 is selected as input. 00011 When DIFF=0, DADP3 is selected as input; when DIFF=1, DAD3 is selected as input. 00100 When DIFF=0, AD4 is selected as input; when DIFF=1, it is reserved. 00101 When DIFF=0, AD5 is selected as input; when DIFF=1, it is reserved. 00110 When DIFF=0, AD6 is selected as input; when DIFF=1, it is reserved. 00111 When DIFF=0, AD7 is selected as input; when DIFF=1, it is reserved.

Table continues on the next page...

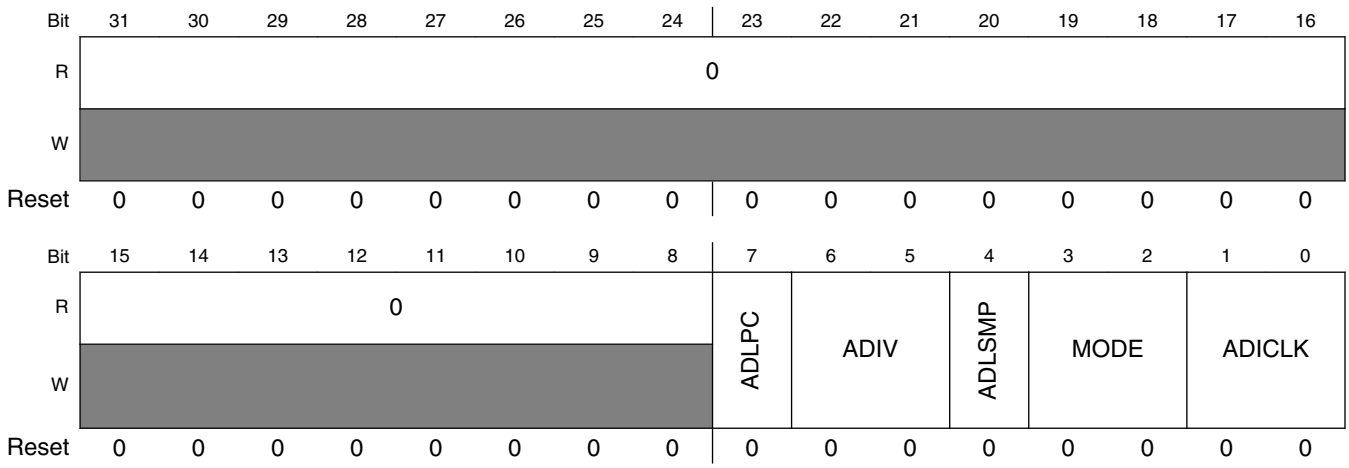
ADC*x*_SC1*n* field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description	
	01000	When DIFF=0, AD8 is selected as input; when DIFF=1, it is reserved.
	01001	When DIFF=0, AD9 is selected as input; when DIFF=1, it is reserved.
	01010	When DIFF=0, AD10 is selected as input; when DIFF=1, it is reserved.
	01011	When DIFF=0, AD11 is selected as input; when DIFF=1, it is reserved.
	01100	When DIFF=0, AD12 is selected as input; when DIFF=1, it is reserved.
	01101	When DIFF=0, AD13 is selected as input; when DIFF=1, it is reserved.
	01110	When DIFF=0, AD14 is selected as input; when DIFF=1, it is reserved.
	01111	When DIFF=0, AD15 is selected as input; when DIFF=1, it is reserved.
	10000	When DIFF=0, AD16 is selected as input; when DIFF=1, it is reserved.
	10001	When DIFF=0, AD17 is selected as input; when DIFF=1, it is reserved.
	10010	When DIFF=0, AD18 is selected as input; when DIFF=1, it is reserved.
	10011	When DIFF=0, AD19 is selected as input; when DIFF=1, it is reserved.
	10100	When DIFF=0, AD20 is selected as input; when DIFF=1, it is reserved.
	10101	When DIFF=0, AD21 is selected as input; when DIFF=1, it is reserved.
	10110	When DIFF=0, AD22 is selected as input; when DIFF=1, it is reserved.
	10111	When DIFF=0, AD23 is selected as input; when DIFF=1, it is reserved.
	11000	Reserved.
	11001	Reserved.
	11010	When DIFF=0, Temp Sensor (single-ended) is selected as input; when DIFF=1, Temp Sensor (differential) is selected as input.
	11011	When DIFF=0,Bandgap (single-ended) is selected as input; when DIFF=1, Bandgap (differential) is selected as input.
	11100	Reserved.
	11101	When DIFF=0,V_{REFSH} is selected as input; when DIFF=1, -V_{REFSH} (differential) is selected as input. Voltage reference selected is determined by SC2[REFSEL].
	11110	When DIFF=0,V_{REFSL} is selected as input; when DIFF=1, it is reserved. Voltage reference selected is determined by SC2[REFSEL].
	11111	Module is disabled.

33.4.2 ADC Configuration Register 1 (ADCx_CFG1)

The configuration Register 1 (CFG1) selects the mode of operation, clock source, clock divide, and configuration for low power or long sample time.

Address: 4003_B000h base + 8h offset = 4003_B008h



ADCx_CFG1 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
7 ADLPC	Low-Power Configuration Controls the power configuration of the successive approximation converter. This optimizes power consumption when higher sample rates are not required. 0 Normal power configuration. 1 Low-power configuration. The power is reduced at the expense of maximum clock speed.
6–5 ADIV	Clock Divide Select Selects the divide ratio used by the ADC to generate the internal clock ADCK. 00 The divide ratio is 1 and the clock rate is input clock. 01 The divide ratio is 2 and the clock rate is (input clock)/2. 10 The divide ratio is 4 and the clock rate is (input clock)/4. 11 The divide ratio is 8 and the clock rate is (input clock)/8.
4 ADLSMP	Sample Time Configuration Selects between different sample times based on the conversion mode selected. This field adjusts the sample period to allow higher impedance inputs to be accurately sampled or to maximize conversion speed for lower impedance inputs. Longer sample times can also be used to lower overall power consumption if continuous conversions are enabled and high conversion rates are not required. When ADLSMP=1, the long sample time select bits, (ADLSTS[1:0]), can select the extent of the long sample time.

Table continues on the next page...

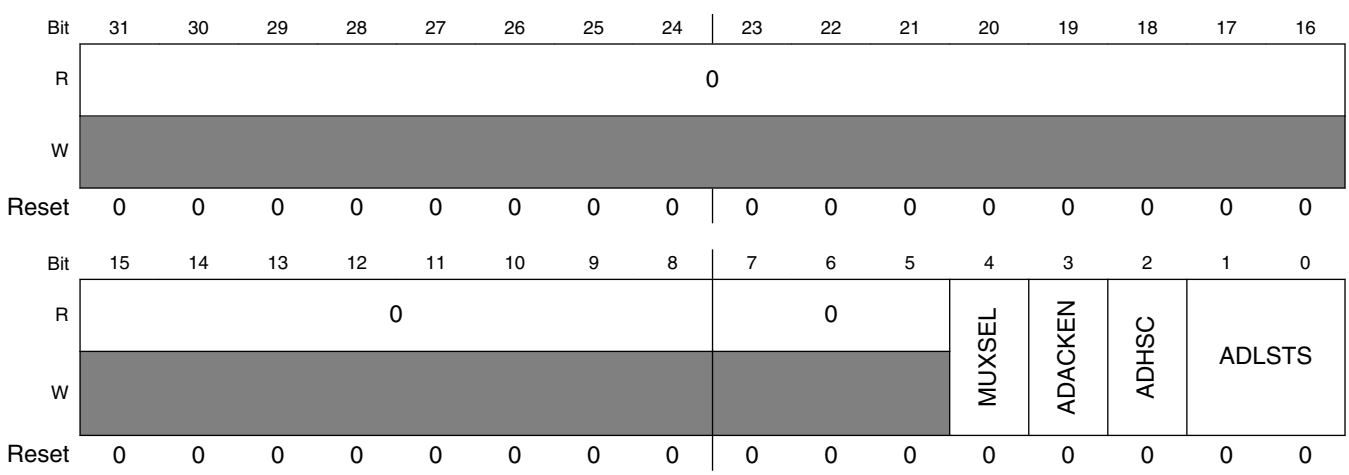
ADCx_CFG1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Short sample time. 1 Long sample time.
3–2 MODE	Conversion mode selection Selects the ADC resolution mode. 00 When DIFF=0:It is single-ended 8-bit conversion; when DIFF=1, it is differential 9-bit conversion with 2's complement output. 01 When DIFF=0:It is single-ended 12-bit conversion ; when DIFF=1, it is differential 13-bit conversion with 2's complement output. 10 When DIFF=0:It is single-ended 10-bit conversion. ; when DIFF=1, it is differential 11-bit conversion with 2's complement output 11 When DIFF=0:It is single-ended 16-bit conversion..; when DIFF=1, it is differential 16-bit conversion with 2's complement output
ADICLK	Input Clock Select Selects the input clock source to generate the internal clock, ADCK. Note that when the ADACK clock source is selected, it is not required to be active prior to conversion start. When it is selected and it is not active prior to a conversion start, when CFG2[ADACKEN]=0, the asynchronous clock is activated at the start of a conversion and deactivated when conversions are terminated. In this case, there is an associated clock startup delay each time the clock source is re-activated. 00 Bus clock 01 Alternate clock 2 (ALTCLK2) 10 Alternate clock (ALTCLK) 11 Asynchronous clock (ADACK)

33.4.3 ADC Configuration Register 2 (ADCx_CFG2)

Configuration Register 2 (CFG2) selects the special high-speed configuration for very high speed conversions and selects the long sample time duration during long sample mode.

Address: 4003_B000h base + Ch offset = 4003_B00Ch



ADCx_CFG2 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
7–5 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
4 MUXSEL	ADC Mux Select Changes the ADC mux setting to select between alternate sets of ADC channels. 0 ADxxa channels are selected. 1 ADxxb channels are selected.
3 ADACKEN	Asynchronous Clock Output Enable Enables the asynchronous clock source and the clock source output regardless of the conversion and status of CFG1[ADICLK]. Based on MCU configuration, the asynchronous clock may be used by other modules. See chip configuration information. Setting this field allows the clock to be used even while the ADC is idle or operating from a different clock source. Also, latency of initiating a single or first-continuous conversion with the asynchronous clock selected is reduced because the ADACK clock is already operational. 0 Asynchronous clock output disabled; Asynchronous clock is enabled only if selected by ADICLK and a conversion is active. 1 Asynchronous clock and clock output is enabled regardless of the state of the ADC.
2 ADHSC	High-Speed Configuration Configures the ADC for very high-speed operation. The conversion sequence is altered with 2 ADCK cycles added to the conversion time to allow higher speed conversion clocks. 0 Normal conversion sequence selected. 1 High-speed conversion sequence selected with 2 additional ADCK cycles to total conversion time.
ADLSTS	Long Sample Time Select Selects between the extended sample times when long sample time is selected, that is, when CFG1[ADLSMP]=1. This allows higher impedance inputs to be accurately sampled or to maximize conversion speed for lower impedance inputs. Longer sample times can also be used to lower overall power consumption when continuous conversions are enabled if high conversion rates are not required. 00 Default longest sample time; 20 extra ADCK cycles; 24 ADCK cycles total. 01 12 extra ADCK cycles; 16 ADCK cycles total sample time. 10 6 extra ADCK cycles; 10 ADCK cycles total sample time. 11 2 extra ADCK cycles; 6 ADCK cycles total sample time.

33.4.4 ADC Data Result Register (ADCx_R*n*)

The data result registers (Rn) contain the result of an ADC conversion of the channel selected by the corresponding status and channel control register (SC1A:SC1n). For every status and channel control register, there is a corresponding data result register.

Unused bits in R n are cleared in unsigned right-aligned modes and carry the sign bit (MSB) in sign-extended 2's complement modes. For example, when configured for 10-bit single-ended mode, D[15:10] are cleared. When configured for 11-bit differential mode, D[15:10] carry the sign bit, that is, bit 10 extended through bit 15.

The following table describes the behavior of the data result registers in the different modes of operation.

Table 33-7. Data result register description

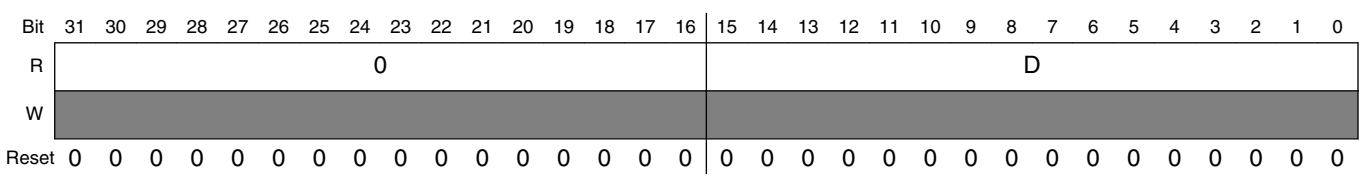
Conversion mode	D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0	Format
16-bit differential	S	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	Signed 2's complement
16-bit single-ended	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	Unsigned right justified
13-bit differential	S	S	S	S	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	Sign-extended 2's complement
12-bit single-ended	0	0	0	0	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	Unsigned right-justified
11-bit differential	S	S	S	S	S	S	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	Sign-extended 2's complement
10-bit single-ended	0	0	0	0	0	0	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	Unsigned right-justified
9-bit differential	S	S	S	S	S	S	S	S	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	Sign-extended 2's complement
8-bit single-ended	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	Unsigned right-justified

NOTE

S: Sign bit or sign bit extension;

D: Data, which is 2's complement data if indicated

Address: 4003_B000h base + 10h offset + (4d × i), where i=0d to 1d



ADCx_R*n* field descriptions

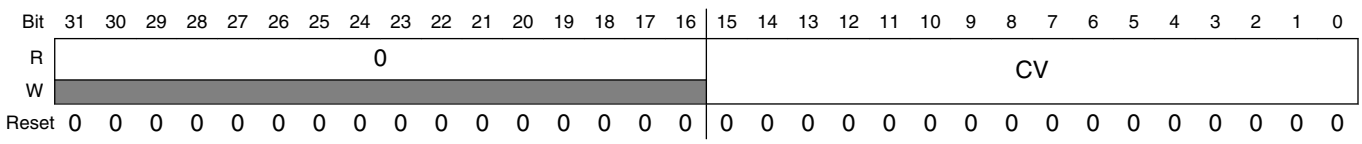
Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
D	Data result

33.4.5 Compare Value Registers (ADCx_CVn)

The Compare Value Registers (CV1 and CV2) contain a compare value used to compare the conversion result when the compare function is enabled, that is, SC2[ACFE]=1. This register is formatted in the same way as the Rn registers in different modes of operation for both bit position definition and value format using unsigned or sign-extended 2's complement. Therefore, the compare function uses only the CVn fields that are related to the ADC mode of operation.

The compare value 2 register (CV2) is used only when the compare range function is enabled, that is, SC2[ACREN]=1.

Address: 4003_B000h base + 18h offset + (4d × i), where i=0d to 1d



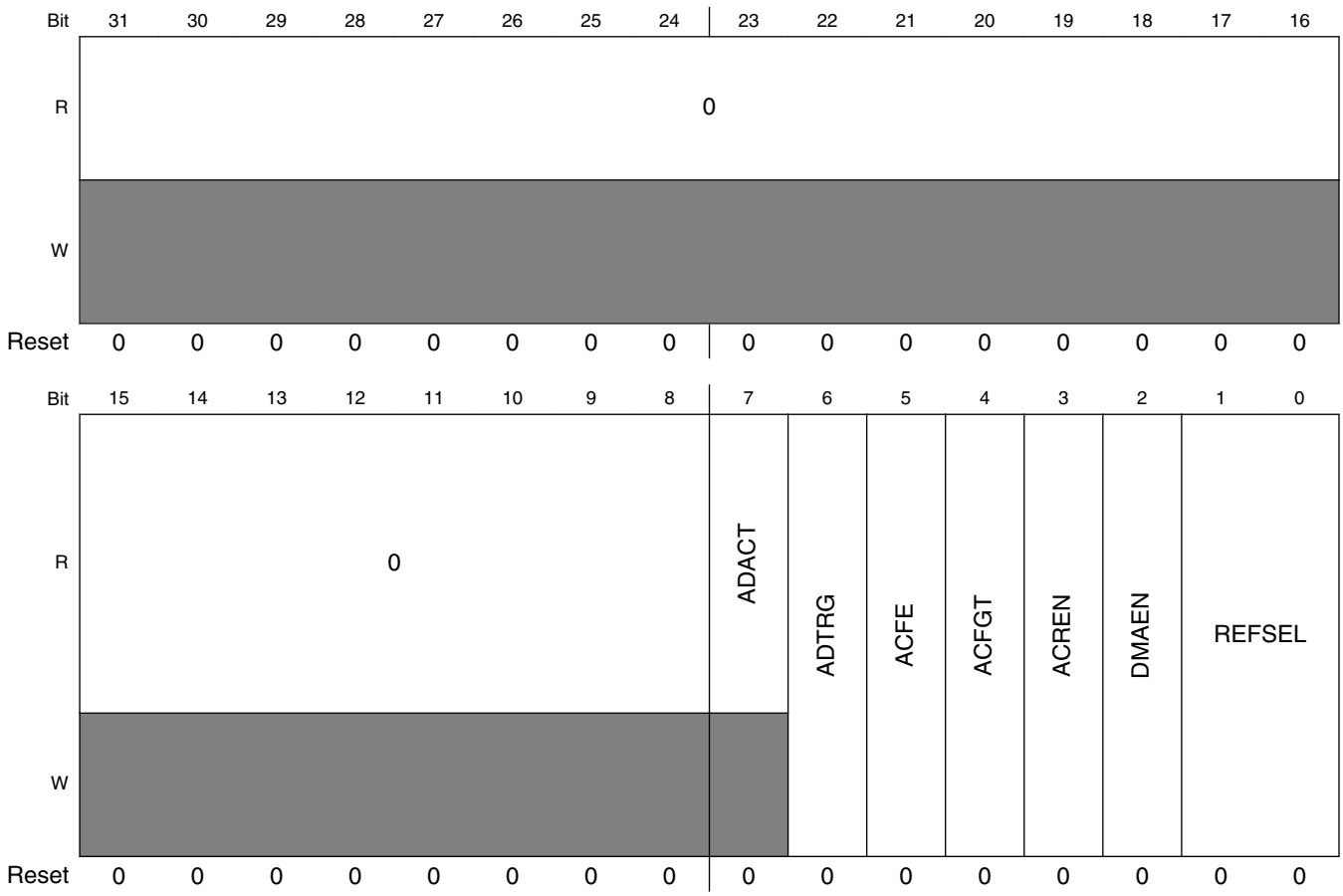
ADCx_CVn field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
CV	Compare Value.

33.4.6 Status and Control Register 2 (ADCx_SC2)

The status and control register 2 (SC2) contains the conversion active, hardware/software trigger select, compare function, and voltage reference select of the ADC module.

Address: 4003_B000h base + 20h offset = 4003_B020h



ADCx_SC2 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
7 ADACT	Conversion Active Indicates that a conversion or hardware averaging is in progress. ADACT is set when a conversion is initiated and cleared when a conversion is completed or aborted. 0 Conversion not in progress. 1 Conversion in progress.
6 ADTRG	Conversion Trigger Select Selects the type of trigger used for initiating a conversion. Two types of trigger are selectable:

Table continues on the next page...

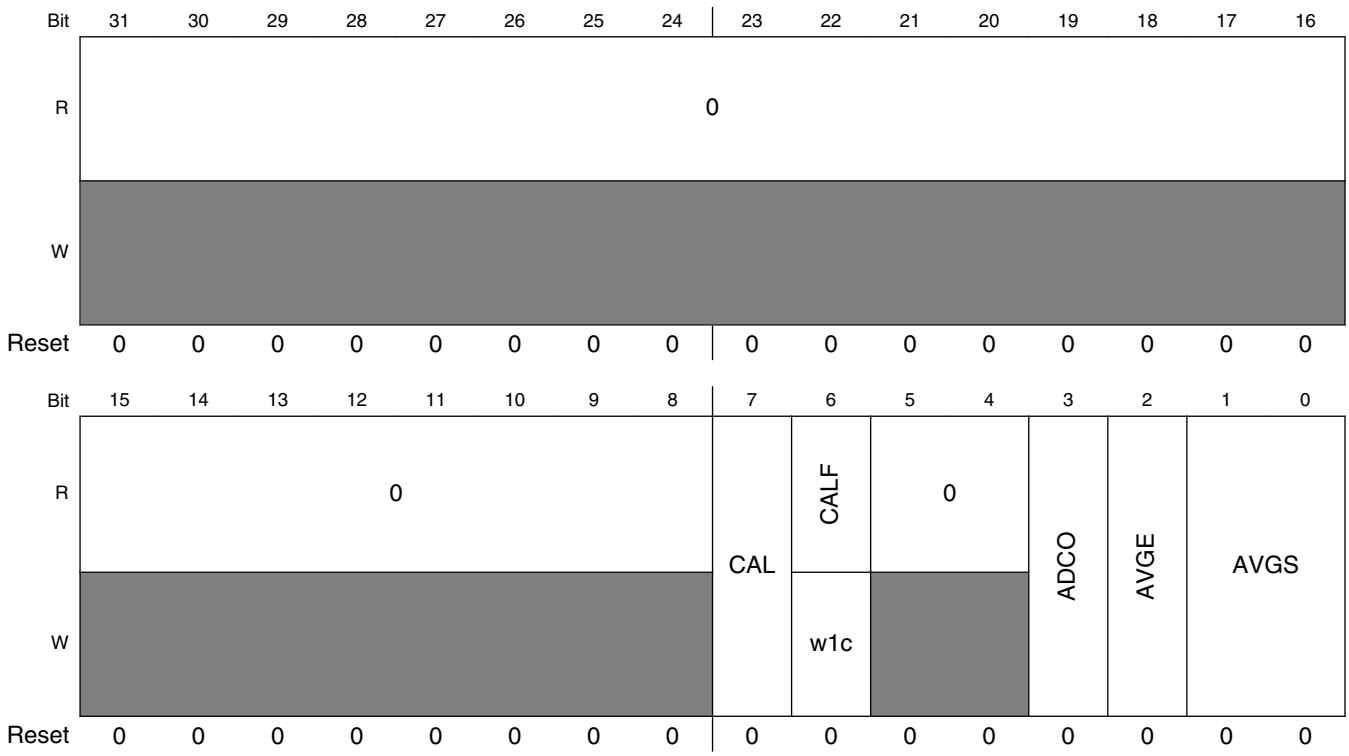
ADCx_SC2 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	• Software trigger: When software trigger is selected, a conversion is initiated following a write to SC1A. • Hardware trigger: When hardware trigger is selected, a conversion is initiated following the assertion of the ADHWT input after a pulse of the ADHWTSn input. 0 Software trigger selected. 1 Hardware trigger selected.
5 ACFE	Compare Function Enable Enables the compare function. 0 Compare function disabled. 1 Compare function enabled.
4 ACFGT	Compare Function Greater Than Enable Configures the compare function to check the conversion result relative to the CV1 and CV2 based upon the value of ACREN. ACFE must be set for ACFGT to have any effect. 0 Configures less than threshold, outside range not inclusive and inside range not inclusive; functionality based on the values placed in CV1 and CV2. 1 Configures greater than or equal to threshold, outside and inside ranges inclusive; functionality based on the values placed in CV1 and CV2.
3 ACREN	Compare Function Range Enable Configures the compare function to check if the conversion result of the input being monitored is either between or outside the range formed by CV1 and CV2 determined by the value of ACFGT. ACFE must be set for ACFGT to have any effect. 0 Range function disabled. Only CV1 is compared. 1 Range function enabled. Both CV1 and CV2 are compared.
2 DMAEN	DMA Enable 0 DMA is disabled. 1 DMA is enabled and will assert the ADC DMA request during an ADC conversion complete event noted when any of the SC1n[COCO] flags is asserted.
REFSEL	Voltage Reference Selection Selects the voltage reference source used for conversions. 00 Default voltage reference pin pair, that is, external pins V_{REFH} and V_{REFL} 01 Alternate reference pair, that is, V_{ALTH} and V_{ALTL} . This pair may be additional external pins or internal sources depending on the MCU configuration. See the chip configuration information for details specific to this MCU 10 Reserved 11 Reserved

33.4.7 Status and Control Register 3 (ADCx_SC3)

The Status and Control Register 3 (SC3) controls the calibration, continuous convert, and hardware averaging functions of the ADC module.

Address: 4003_B000h base + 24h offset = 4003_B024h



ADCx_SC3 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
7 CAL	Calibration Begins the calibration sequence when set. This field stays set while the calibration is in progress and is cleared when the calibration sequence is completed. CALF must be checked to determine the result of the calibration sequence. Once started, the calibration routine cannot be interrupted by writes to the ADC registers or the results will be invalid and CALF will set. Setting CAL will abort any current conversion.
6 CALF	Calibration Failed Flag Displays the result of the calibration sequence. The calibration sequence will fail if SC2[ADTRG] = 1, any ADC register is written, or any stop mode is entered before the calibration sequence completes. Writing 1 to CALF clears it. 0 Calibration completed normally. 1 Calibration failed. ADC accuracy specifications are not guaranteed.

Table continues on the next page...

ADCx_SC3 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
5–4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
3 ADCO	Continuous Conversion Enable Enables continuous conversions. 0 One conversion or one set of conversions if the hardware average function is enabled, that is, AVGE=1, after initiating a conversion. 1 Continuous conversions or sets of conversions if the hardware average function is enabled, that is, AVGE=1, after initiating a conversion.
2 AVGE	Hardware Average Enable Enables the hardware average function of the ADC. 0 Hardware average function disabled. 1 Hardware average function enabled.
AVGS	Hardware Average Select Determines how many ADC conversions will be averaged to create the ADC average result. 00 4 samples averaged. 01 8 samples averaged. 10 16 samples averaged. 11 32 samples averaged.

33.4.8 ADC Offset Correction Register (ADCx_OFS)

The ADC Offset Correction Register (OFS) contains the user-selected or calibration-generated offset error correction value. This register is a 2's complement, left-justified, 16-bit value . The value in OFS is subtracted from the conversion and the result is transferred into the result registers, Rn. If the result is greater than the maximum or less than the minimum result value, it is forced to the appropriate limit for the current mode of operation.

For more information regarding the calibration procedure, please refer to the Calibration function section.

Address: 4003_B000h base + 28h offset = 4003_B028h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																OFS															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0

ADCx_OFS field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
OFS	Offset Error Correction Value

33.4.9 ADC Plus-Side Gain Register (ADCx_PG)

The Plus-Side Gain Register (PG) contains the gain error correction for the plus-side input in differential mode or the overall conversion in single-ended mode. PG, a 16-bit real number in binary format, is the gain adjustment factor, with the radix point fixed between PG[15] and PG[14]. This register must be written by the user with the value described in the calibration procedure. Otherwise, the gain error specifications may not be met.

For more information regarding the calibration procedure, please refer to the Calibration function section.

Address: 4003_B000h base + 2Ch offset = 4003_B02Ch

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																PG															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ADCx_PG field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
PG	Plus-Side Gain

33.4.10 ADC Minus-Side Gain Register (ADCx_MG)

The Minus-Side Gain Register (MG) contains the gain error correction for the minus-side input in differential mode. This register is ignored in single-ended mode. MG, a 16-bit real number in binary format, is the gain adjustment factor, with the radix point fixed between MG[15] and MG[14]. This register must be written by the user with the value described in the calibration procedure. Otherwise, the gain error specifications may not be met.

For more information regarding the calibration procedure, please refer to the Calibration function section.

Address: 4003_B000h base + 30h offset = 4003_B030h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																MG															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ADCx_MG field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
MG	Minus-Side Gain

33.4.11 ADC Plus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADCx_CLPD)

The Plus-Side General Calibration Value Registers (CLPx) contain calibration information that is generated by the calibration function. These registers contain seven calibration values of varying widths: CLP0[5:0], CLP1[6:0], CLP2[7:0], CLP3[8:0], CLP4[9:0], CLPS[5:0], and CLPD[5:0]. CLPx are automatically set when the self-calibration sequence is done, that is, CAL is cleared. If these registers are written by the user after calibration, the linearity error specifications may not be met.

For more information regarding the calibration procedure, please refer to the Calibration function section.

Address: 4003_B000h base + 34h offset = 4003_B034h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																										CLPD					
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0

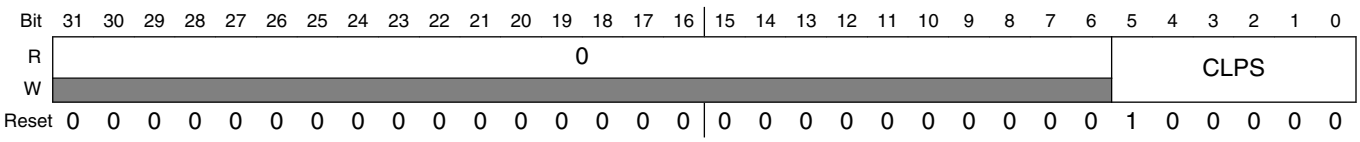
ADCx_CLPD field descriptions

Field	Description
31–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
CLPD	Calibration Value Calibration Value

33.4.12 ADC Plus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADCx_CLPS)

For more information, see CLPD register description.

Address: 4003_B000h base + 38h offset = 4003_B038h



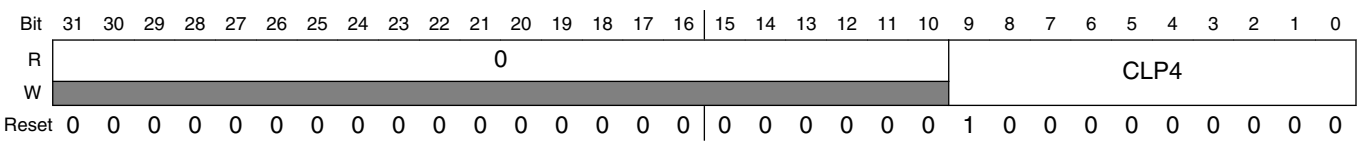
ADCx_CLPS field descriptions

Field	Description
31–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
CLPS	Calibration Value Calibration Value

33.4.13 ADC Plus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADCx_CLP4)

For more information, see CLPD register description.

Address: 4003_B000h base + 3Ch offset = 4003_B03Ch



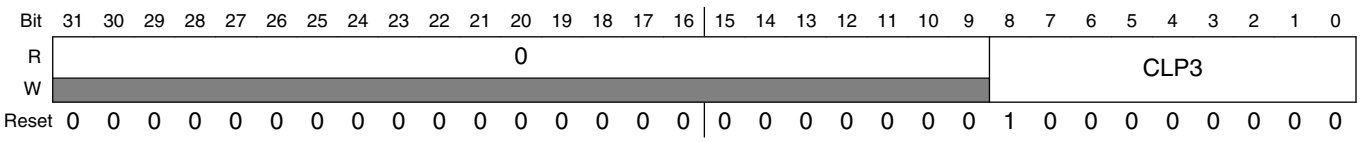
ADCx_CLP4 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–10 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
CLP4	Calibration Value Calibration Value

33.4.14 ADC Plus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADCx_CLP3)

For more information, see CLPD register description.

Address: 4003_B000h base + 40h offset = 4003_B040h



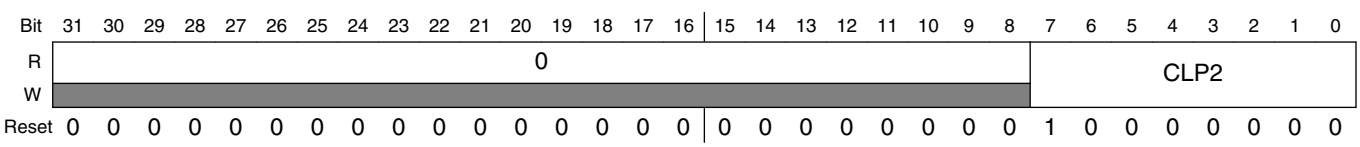
ADCx_CLP3 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–9 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
CLP3	Calibration Value Calibration Value

33.4.15 ADC Plus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADCx_CLP2)

For more information, see CLPD register description.

Address: 4003_B000h base + 44h offset = 4003_B044h



ADCx_CLP2 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
CLP2	Calibration Value Calibration Value

33.4.16 ADC Plus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADCx_CLP1)

For more information, see CLPD register description.

Address: 4003_B000h base + 48h offset = 4003_B048h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																CLP1															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0

ADCx_CLP1 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–7 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
CLP1	Calibration Value Calibration Value

33.4.17 ADC Plus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADCx_CLP0)

For more information, see CLPD register description.

Address: 4003_B000h base + 4Ch offset = 4003_B04Ch

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																										CLP0					
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0

ADCx_CLP0 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
CLP0	Calibration Value Calibration Value

33.4.18 ADC Minus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADCx_CLMD)

The Minus-Side General Calibration Value (CLMx) registers contain calibration information that is generated by the calibration function. These registers contain seven calibration values of varying widths: CLM0[5:0], CLM1[6:0], CLM2[7:0], CLM3[8:0], CLM4[9:0], CLMS[5:0], and CLMD[5:0]. CLMx are automatically set when the self-calibration sequence is done, that is, CAL is cleared. If these registers are written by the user after calibration, the linearity error specifications may not be met.

For more information regarding the calibration procedure, please refer to the Calibration function section.

Address: 4003_B000h base + 54h offset = 4003_B054h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																										CLMD					
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0

ADCx_CLMD field descriptions

Field	Description
31–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
CLMD	Calibration Value Calibration Value

33.4.19 ADC Minus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADCx_CLMS)

For more information, see CLMD register description.

Address: 4003_B000h base + 58h offset = 4003_B058h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																										CLMS					
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0

ADCx_CLMS field descriptions

Field	Description
31–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
CLMS	Calibration Value Calibration Value

33.4.20 ADC Minus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADCx_CLM4)

For more information, see CLMD register description.

Address: 4003_B000h base + 5Ch offset = 4003_B05Ch

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																CLM4															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ADCx_CLM4 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–10 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
CLM4	Calibration Value Calibration Value

33.4.21 ADC Minus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADCx_CLM3)

For more information, see CLMD register description.

Address: 4003_B000h base + 60h offset = 4003_B060h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																							CLM3								
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

ADCx_CLM3 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–9 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

Table continues on the next page...

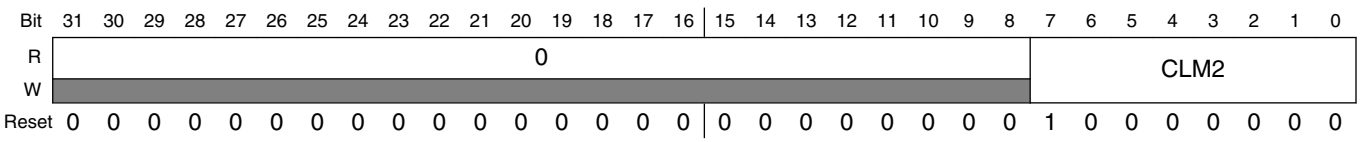
ADCx_CLM3 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
CLM3	Calibration Value Calibration Value

33.4.22 ADC Minus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADCx_CLM2)

For more information, see CLMD register description.

Address: 4003_B000h base + 64h offset = 4003_B064h



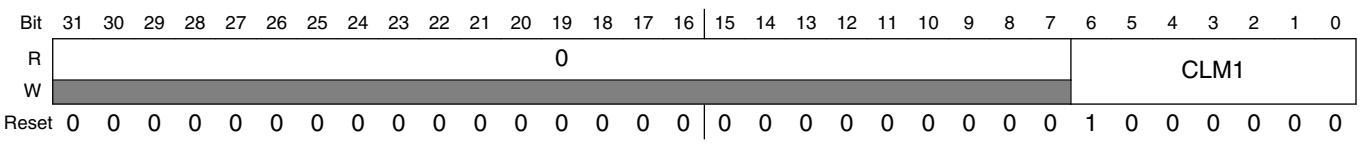
ADCx_CLM2 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
CLM2	Calibration Value Calibration Value

33.4.23 ADC Minus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADCx_CLM1)

For more information, see CLMD register description.

Address: 4003_B000h base + 68h offset = 4003_B068h



ADCx_CLM1 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–7 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
CLM1	Calibration Value Calibration Value

33.4.24 ADC Minus-Side General Calibration Value Register (ADCx_CLM0)

For more information, see CLMD register description.

Address: 4003_B000h base + 6Ch offset = 4003_B06Ch

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																										CLM0					
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0

ADCx_CLM0 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
CLM0	Calibration Value Calibration Value

33.5 Functional description

The ADC module is disabled during reset, in Low-Power Stop mode, or when SC1n[ADCH] are all high; see the power management information for details. The module is idle when a conversion has completed and another conversion has not been initiated. When it is idle and the asynchronous clock output enable is disabled, or CFG2[ADACKEN]= 0, the module is in its lowest power state. The ADC can perform an analog-to-digital conversion on any of the software selectable channels. All modes perform conversion by a successive approximation algorithm.

To meet accuracy specifications, the ADC module must be calibrated using the on-chip calibration function.

See Calibration function for details on how to perform calibration.

When the conversion is completed, the result is placed in the Rn data registers. The respective SC1n[COCO] is then set and an interrupt is generated if the respective conversion complete interrupt has been enabled, or, when SC1n[AIEN]=1.

The ADC module has the capability of automatically comparing the result of a conversion with the contents of the CV1 and CV2 registers. The compare function is enabled by setting SC2[ACFE] and operates in any of the conversion modes and configurations.

The ADC module has the capability of automatically averaging the result of multiple conversions. The hardware average function is enabled by setting SC3[AVGE] and operates in any of the conversion modes and configurations.

NOTE

For the chip specific modes of operation, see the power management information of this MCU.

33.5.1 Clock select and divide control

One of four clock sources can be selected as the clock source for the ADC module.

This clock source is then divided by a configurable value to generate the input clock ADCK, to the module. The clock is selected from one of the following sources by means of CFG1[ADICLK].

- Bus clock. This is the default selection following reset.
- ALTCLK2: As defined for this MCU. See the chip configuration information. Conversions are possible using ALTCLK2 as the input clock source while the MCU is in Normal Stop mode.
- ALTCLK: As defined for this MCU. See the chip configuration information. Conversions are possible using ALTCLK as the input clock source while the MCU is in Normal Stop mode.
- Asynchronous clock (ADACK): This clock is generated from a clock source within the ADC module. When the ADACK clock source is selected, it is not required to be active prior to conversion start. When it is selected and it is not active prior to a conversion start CFG2[ADACKEN]=0, ADACK is activated at the start of a conversion and deactivated when conversions are terminated. In this case, there is an associated clock startup delay each time the clock source is re-activated. To avoid the conversion time variability and latency associated with the ADACK clock startup, set CFG2[ADACKEN]=1 and wait the worst-case startup time of 5 μs prior to initiating any conversions using the ADACK clock source. Conversions are possible using ADACK as the input clock source while the MCU is in Normal Stop mode. See Power Control for more information.

Whichever clock is selected, its frequency must fall within the specified frequency range for ADCK. If the available clocks are too slow, the ADC may not perform according to specifications. If the available clocks are too fast, the clock must be divided to the appropriate frequency. This divider is specified by CFG1[ADIV] and can be divide-by 1, 2, 4, or 8.

33.5.2 Voltage reference selection

The ADC can be configured to accept one of the two voltage reference pairs as the reference voltage (V_{REFSH} and V_{REFSL}) used for conversions.

Each pair contains a positive reference that must be between the minimum Ref Voltage High and V_{DDA}, and a ground reference that must be at the same potential as V_{SSA}. The two pairs are external (V_{REFH} and V_{REFL}) and alternate (V_{ALTH} and V_{ALTL}). These voltage references are selected using SC2[REFSEL]. The alternate (V_{ALTH} and V_{ALTL}) voltage reference pair may select additional external pins or internal sources depending on MCU configuration. See the chip configuration information on the voltage references specific to this MCU.

33.5.3 Hardware trigger and channel selects

The ADC module has a selectable asynchronous hardware conversion trigger, ADHWT, that is enabled when SC2[ADTRG] is set and a hardware trigger select event, ADHWTSn, has occurred.

This source is not available on all MCUs. See the chip-specific ADC information for information on the ADHWT source and the ADHWTSn configurations specific to this MCU.

When an ADHWT source is available and hardware trigger is enabled, that is SC2[ADTRG]=1, a conversion is initiated on the rising-edge of ADHWT after a hardware trigger select event, that is, ADHWTSn, has occurred. If a conversion is in progress when a rising-edge of a trigger occurs, the rising-edge is ignored. In continuous convert configuration, only the initial rising-edge to launch continuous conversions is observed, and until conversion is aborted, the ADC continues to do conversions on the same SCn register that initiated the conversion. The hardware trigger function operates in conjunction with any of the conversion modes and configurations.

The hardware trigger select event, ADHWTSn, must be set prior to the receipt of the ADHWT signal. If these conditions are not met, the converter may ignore the trigger or use the incorrect configuration. If a hardware trigger select event is asserted during a conversion, it must stay asserted until the end of current conversion and remain set until the receipt of the ADHWT signal to trigger a new conversion. The channel and status fields selected for the conversion depend on the active trigger select signal:

- ADHWTSA active selects SC1A.
- ADHWTSn active selects SC1n.

Note

Asserting more than one hardware trigger select signal (ADHWTSn) at the same time results in unknown results. To avoid this, select only one hardware trigger select signal (ADHWTSn) prior to the next intended conversion.

When the conversion is completed, the result is placed in the Rn registers associated with the ADHWTSn received. For example:

- ADHWTSA active selects RA register
- ADHWTSn active selects Rn register

The conversion complete flag associated with the ADHWTSn received, that is, SC1n[COCO], is then set and an interrupt is generated if the respective conversion complete interrupt has been enabled, that is, SC1[AIEN]=1.

33.5.4 Conversion control

Conversions can be performed as determined by CFG1[MODE] and SC1n[DIFF] as shown in the description of CFG1[MODE].

Conversions can be initiated by a software or hardware trigger.

In addition, the ADC module can be configured for:

- Low-power operation
- Long sample time
- Continuous conversion
- Hardware average
- Automatic compare of the conversion result to a software determined compare value

33.5.4.1 Initiating conversions

A conversion is initiated:

- Following a write to SC1A, with SC1n[ADCH] not all 1's, if software triggered operation is selected, that is, when SC2[ADTRG]=0.
- Following a hardware trigger, or ADHWT event, if hardware triggered operation is selected, that is, SC2[ADTRG]=1, and a hardware trigger select event, ADHWTSn, has occurred. The channel and status fields selected depend on the active trigger select signal:
  - ADHWTSA active selects SC1A.

- ADHWTSn active selects SC1n.
- if neither is active, the off condition is selected

Note

Selecting more than one ADHWTSn prior to a conversion completion will result in unknown results. To avoid this, select only one ADHWTSn prior to a conversion completion.

- Following the transfer of the result to the data registers when continuous conversion is enabled, that is, when SC3[ADCO] = 1.

If continuous conversions are enabled, a new conversion is automatically initiated after the completion of the current conversion. In software triggered operation, that is, when SC2[ADTRG] = 0, continuous conversions begin after SC1A is written and continue until aborted. In hardware triggered operation, that is, when SC2[ADTRG] = 1 and one ADHWTSn event has occurred, continuous conversions begin after a hardware trigger event and continue until aborted.

If hardware averaging is enabled, a new conversion is automatically initiated after the completion of the current conversion until the correct number of conversions are completed. In software triggered operation, conversions begin after SC1A is written. In hardware triggered operation, conversions begin after a hardware trigger. If continuous conversions are also enabled, a new set of conversions to be averaged are initiated following the last of the selected number of conversions.

33.5.4.2 Completing conversions

A conversion is completed when the result of the conversion is transferred into the data result registers, Rn. If the compare functions are disabled, this is indicated by setting of SC1n[COCO]. If hardware averaging is enabled, the respective SC1n[COCO] sets only if the last of the selected number of conversions is completed. If the compare function is enabled, the respective SC1n[COCO] sets and conversion result data is transferred only if the compare condition is true. If both hardware averaging and compare functions are enabled, then the respective SC1n[COCO] sets only if the last of the selected number of conversions is completed and the compare condition is true. An interrupt is generated if the respective SC1n[AIEN] is high at the time that the respective SC1n[COCO] is set.

33.5.4.3 Aborting conversions

Any conversion in progress is aborted when:

- Writing to SC1A while it is actively controlling a conversion, aborts the current conversion. In Software Trigger mode, when SC2[ADTRG]=0, a write to SC1A initiates a new conversion if SC1A[ADCH] is equal to a value other than all 1s. Writing to any of the SC1B–SC1n registers while that specific SC1B–SC1n register is actively controlling a conversion aborts the current conversion. The SC1(B-n) registers are not used for software trigger operation and therefore writes to the SC1(B-n) registers do not initiate a new conversion.
- A write to any ADC register besides the SC1A-SC1n registers occurs. This indicates that a change in mode of operation has occurred and the current conversion is therefore invalid.
- The MCU is reset or enters Low-Power Stop modes.
- The MCU enters Normal Stop mode with ADACK or Alternate Clock Sources not enabled.

When a conversion is aborted, the contents of the data registers, Rn, are not altered. The data registers continue to be the values transferred after the completion of the last successful conversion. If the conversion was aborted by a reset or Low-Power Stop modes, RA and Rn return to their reset states.

33.5.4.4 Power control

The ADC module remains in its idle state until a conversion is initiated. If ADACK is selected as the conversion clock source, but the asynchronous clock output is disabled, that is CFG2[ADACKEN]=0, the ADACK clock generator also remains in its idle state (disabled) until a conversion is initiated. If the asynchronous clock output is enabled, that is, CFG2[ADACKEN]=1, it remains active regardless of the state of the ADC or the MCU power mode.

Power consumption when the ADC is active can be reduced by setting CFG1[ADLPC]. This results in a lower maximum value for f_{ADCK}.

33.5.4.5 Sample time and total conversion time

For short sample, that is, when CFG1[ADLSMP]=0, there is a 2-cycle adder for first conversion over the base sample time of four ADCK cycles. For high-speed conversions, that is, when CFG2[ADHSC]=1, there is an additional 2-cycle adder on any conversion. The table below summarizes sample times for the possible ADC configurations.

ADC configuration			Sample time (ADCK cycles)	
CFG1[ADLSMP]	CFG2[ADLSTS]	CFG2[ADHSC]	First or Single	Subsequent
0	X	0	6	4
1	00	0	24	
1	01	0	16	
1	10	0	10	
1	11	0	6	
0	X	1	8	6
1	00	1	26	
1	01	1	18	
1	10	1	12	
1	11	1	8	

The total conversion time depends upon:

- The sample time as determined by CFG1[ADLSMP] and CFG2[ADLSTS]
- The MCU bus frequency
- The conversion mode, as determined by CFG1[MODE] and SC1n[DIFF]
- The high-speed configuration, that is, CFG2[ADHSC]
- The frequency of the conversion clock, that is, f_{ADCK}.

CFG2[ADHSC] is used to configure a higher clock input frequency. This will allow faster overall conversion times. To meet internal ADC timing requirements, CFG2[ADHSC] adds additional ADCK cycles. Conversions with CFG2[ADHSC]=1 take two more ADCK cycles. CFG2[ADHSC] must be used when the ADCLK exceeds the limit for CFG2[ADHSC]=0.

After the module becomes active, sampling of the input begins.

1. CFG1[ADLSMP] and CFG2[ADLSTS] select between sample times based on the conversion mode that is selected.
2. When sampling is completed, the converter is isolated from the input channel and a successive approximation algorithm is applied to determine the digital value of the analog signal.
3. The result of the conversion is transferred to Rn upon completion of the conversion algorithm.

If the bus frequency is less than f_{ADCK}, precise sample time for continuous conversions cannot be guaranteed when short sample is enabled, that is, when CFG1[ADLSMP]=0.

The maximum total conversion time is determined by the clock source chosen and the divide ratio selected. The clock source is selectable by CFG1[ADICLK], and the divide ratio is specified by CFG1[ADIV].

The maximum total conversion time for all configurations is summarized in the equation below. See the following tables for the variables referenced in the equation.

$$\text{ConversionTime} = \text{SFCAdder} + \text{AverageNum} \times (\text{BCT} + \text{LSTAdder} + \text{HSCAdder})$$

Equation 1. Conversion time equation

Table 33-8. Single or first continuous time adder (SFCAdder)

CFG1[ADLSMP]	CFG2[ADACKEN]	CFG1[ADICLK]	Single or first continuous time adder (SFCAdder)
1	x	0x, 10	3 ADCK cycles + 5 bus clock cycles
1	1	11	3 ADCK cycles + 5 bus clock cycles[1]
1	0	11	5 µs + 3 ADCK cycles + 5 bus clock cycles
0	x	0x, 10	5 ADCK cycles + 5 bus clock cycles
0	1	11	5 ADCK cycles + 5 bus clock cycles[1]
0	0	11	5 µs + 5 ADCK cycles + 5 bus clock cycles

1. To achieve this time, CFG2[ADACKEN] must be 1 for at least 5 µs prior to the conversion is initiated.

Table 33-9. Average number factor (AverageNum)

SC3[AVGE]	SC3[AVGS]	Average number factor (AverageNum)
0	xx	1
1	00	4
1	01	8
1	10	16
1	11	32

Table 33-10. Base conversion time (BCT)

Mode	Base conversion time (BCT)
8b single-ended	17 ADCK cycles
9b differential	27 ADCK cycles
10b single-ended	20 ADCK cycles
11b differential	30 ADCK cycles
12b single-ended	20 ADCK cycles
13b differential	30 ADCK cycles

Table continues on the next page...

Table 33-10. Base conversion time (BCT) (continued)

Mode	Base conversion time (BCT)
16b single-ended	25 ADCK cycles
16b differential	34 ADCK cycles

Table 33-11. Long sample time adder (LSTAdder)

CFG1[ADLSMP]	CFG2[ADLSTS]	Long sample time adder (LSTAdder)
0	xx	0 ADCK cycles
1	00	20 ADCK cycles
1	01	12 ADCK cycles
1	10	6 ADCK cycles
1	11	2 ADCK cycles

Table 33-12. High-speed conversion time adder (HSCAdder)

CFG2[ADHSC]	High-speed conversion time adder (HSCAdder)
0	0 ADCK cycles
1	2 ADCK cycles

Note

The ADCK frequency must be between f_{ADCK} minimum and f_{ADCK} maximum to meet ADC specifications.

33.5.4.6 Conversion time examples

The following examples use the Equation 1 on page 699, and the information provided in Table 33-8 through Table 33-12.

33.5.4.6.1 Typical conversion time configuration

A typical configuration for ADC conversion is:

- 10-bit mode, with the bus clock selected as the input clock source
- The input clock divide-by-1 ratio selected
- Bus frequency of 8 MHz
- Long sample time disabled
- High-speed conversion disabled

The conversion time for a single conversion is calculated by using the Equation 1 on page 699, and the information provided in Table 33-8 through Table 33-12. The table below lists the variables of Equation 1 on page 699.

Table 33-13. Typical conversion time

Variable	Time
SFCAdder	5 ADCK cycles + 5 bus clock cycles
AverageNum	1
BCT	20 ADCK cycles
LSTAdder	0
HSCAdder	0

The resulting conversion time is generated using the parameters listed in the preceding table. Therefore, for a bus clock and an ADCK frequency equal to 8 MHz, the resulting conversion time is 3.75 µs.

33.5.4.6.2 Long conversion time configuration

A configuration for long ADC conversion is:

- 16-bit differential mode with the bus clock selected as the input clock source
- The input clock divide-by-8 ratio selected
- Bus frequency of 8 MHz
- Long sample time enabled
- Configured for longest adder
- High-speed conversion disabled
- Average enabled for 32 conversions

The conversion time for this conversion is calculated by using the Equation 1 on page 699, and the information provided in Table 33-8 through Table 33-12. The following table lists the variables of the Equation 1 on page 699.

Table 33-14. Typical conversion time

Variable	Time
SFCAdder	3 ADCK cycles + 5 bus clock cycles
AverageNum	32
BCT	34 ADCK cycles
LSTAdder	20 ADCK cycles
HSCAdder	0

The resulting conversion time is generated using the parameters listed in the preceding table. Therefore, for bus clock equal to 8 MHz and ADCK equal to 1 MHz, the resulting conversion time is 57.625 µs, that is, AverageNum. This results in a total conversion time of 1.844 ms.

33.5.4.6.3 Short conversion time configuration

A configuration for short ADC conversion is:

- 8-bit Single-Ended mode with the bus clock selected as the input clock source
- The input clock divide-by-1 ratio selected
- Bus frequency of 20 MHz
- Long sample time disabled
- High-speed conversion enabled

The conversion time for this conversion is calculated by using the Equation 1 on page 699, and the information provided in Table 33-8 through Table 33-12. The table below lists the variables of Equation 1 on page 699.

Table 33-15. Typical conversion time

Variable	Time
SFCAdder	5 ADCK cycles + 5 bus clock cycles
AverageNum	1
BCT	17 ADCK cycles
LSTAdder	0 ADCK cycles
HSCAdder	2

The resulting conversion time is generated using the parameters listed in in the preceding table. Therefore, for bus clock and ADCK frequency equal to 20 MHz, the resulting conversion time is 1.45 µs.

33.5.4.7 Hardware average function

The hardware average function can be enabled by setting SC3[AVGE]=1 to perform a hardware average of multiple conversions. The number of conversions is determined by the AVGS[1:0] bits, which can select 4, 8, 16, or 32 conversions to be averaged. While the hardware average function is in progress, SC2[ADACT] will be set.

After the selected input is sampled and converted, the result is placed in an accumulator from which an average is calculated once the selected number of conversions have been completed. When hardware averaging is selected, the completion of a single conversion will not set SC1n[COCO].

If the compare function is either disabled or evaluates true, after the selected number of conversions are completed, the average conversion result is transferred into the data result registers, Rn, and SC1n[COCO] is set. An ADC interrupt is generated upon the setting of SC1n[COCO] if the respective ADC interrupt is enabled, that is, SC1n[AIEN]=1.

Note

The hardware average function can perform conversions on a channel while the MCU is in Wait or Normal Stop modes. The ADC interrupt wakes the MCU when the hardware average is completed if SC1n[AIEN] is set.

33.5.5 Automatic compare function

The compare function can be configured to check whether the result is less than or greater-than-or-equal-to a single compare value, or, if the result falls within or outside a range determined by two compare values.

The compare mode is determined by SC2[ACFGT], SC2[ACREN], and the values in the compare value registers, CV1 and CV2. After the input is sampled and converted, the compare values in CV1 and CV2 are used as described in the following table. There are six Compare modes as shown in the following table.

Table 33-16. Compare modes

SC2[ACFGT]	SC2[ACREN]	ADCCV1 relative to ADCCV2	Function	Compare mode description
0	0	—	Less than threshold	Compare true if the result is less than the CV1 registers.
1	0	—	Greater than or equal to threshold	Compare true if the result is greater than or equal to CV1 registers.
0	1	Less than or equal	Outside range, not inclusive	Compare true if the result is less than CV1 **Or** the result is greater than CV2.
0	1	Greater than	Inside range, not inclusive	Compare true if the result is less than CV1 **And** the result is greater than CV2.
1	1	Less than or equal	Inside range, inclusive	Compare true if the result is greater than or equal to CV1 **And** the result is less than or equal to CV2.
1	1	Greater than	Outside range, inclusive	Compare true if the result is greater than or equal to CV1 **Or** the result is less than or equal to CV2.

With SC2[ACREN] =1, and if the value of CV1 is less than or equal to the value of CV2, then setting SC2[ACFGT] will select a trigger-if-inside-compare-range inclusive-of-endpoints function. Clearing SC2[ACFGT] will select a trigger-if-outside-compare-range, not-inclusive-of-endpoints function.

If CV1 is greater than CV2, setting SC2[ACFGT] will select a trigger-if-outside-compare-range, inclusive-of-endpoints function. Clearing SC2[ACFGT] will select a trigger-if-inside-compare-range, not-inclusive-of-endpoints function.

If the condition selected evaluates true, SC1n[COCO] is set.

Upon completion of a conversion while the compare function is enabled, if the compare condition is not true, SC1n[COCO] is not set and the conversion result data will not be transferred to the result register, Rn. If the hardware averaging function is enabled, the compare function compares the averaged result to the compare values. The same compare function definitions apply. An ADC interrupt is generated when SC1n[COCO] is set and the respective ADC interrupt is enabled, that is, SC1n[AIEN]=1.

Note

The compare function can monitor the voltage on a channel while the MCU is in Wait or Normal Stop modes. The ADC interrupt wakes the MCU when the compare condition is met.

33.5.6 Calibration function

The ADC contains a self-calibration function that is required to achieve the specified accuracy.

Calibration must be run, or valid calibration values written, after any reset and before a conversion is initiated. The calibration function sets the offset calibration value, the minus-side calibration values, and the plus-side calibration values. The offset calibration value is automatically stored in the ADC offset correction register (OFS), and the plus-side and minus-side calibration values are automatically stored in the ADC plus-side and minus-side calibration registers, CLPx and CLMx. The user must configure the ADC correctly prior to calibration, and must generate the plus-side and minus-side gain calibration results and store them in the ADC plus-side gain register (PG) after the calibration function completes.

Prior to calibration, the user must configure the ADC's clock source and frequency, low power configuration, voltage reference selection, sample time, and high speed configuration according to the application's clock source availability and needs. If the

application uses the ADC in a wide variety of configurations, the configuration for which the highest accuracy is required should be selected, or multiple calibrations can be done for the different configurations. For best calibration results:

- Set hardware averaging to maximum, that is, SC3[AVGE]=1 and SC3[AVGS]=11 for an average of 32
- Set ADC clock frequency f_{ADCK} less than or equal to 4 MHz
- $V_{REFH}=V_{DDA}$
- Calibrate at nominal voltage and temperature

The input channel, conversion mode continuous function, compare function, resolution mode, and differential/single-ended mode are all ignored during the calibration function.

To initiate calibration, the user sets SC3[CAL] and the calibration will automatically begin if the SC2[ADTRG] is 0. If SC2[ADTRG] is 1, SC3[CAL] will not get set and SC3[CALF] will be set. While calibration is active, no ADC register can be written and no stop mode may be entered, or the calibration routine will be aborted causing SC3[CAL] to clear and SC3[CALF] to set. At the end of a calibration sequence, SC1n[COCO] will be set. SC1n[AIEN] can be used to allow an interrupt to occur at the end of a calibration sequence. At the end of the calibration routine, if SC3[CALF] is not set, the automatic calibration routine is completed successfully.

To complete calibration, the user must generate the gain calibration values using the following procedure:

1. Initialize or clear a 16-bit variable in RAM.
2. Add the plus-side calibration results CLP0, CLP1, CLP2, CLP3, CLP4, and CLPS to the variable.
3. Divide the variable by two.
4. Set the MSB of the variable.
5. The previous two steps can be achieved by setting the carry bit, rotating to the right through the carry bit on the high byte and again on the low byte.
6. Store the value in the plus-side gain calibration register PG.
7. Repeat the procedure for the minus-side gain calibration value.

When calibration is complete, the user may reconfigure and use the ADC as desired. A second calibration may also be performed, if desired, by clearing and again setting SC3[CAL].

Overall, the calibration routine may take as many as 14k ADCK cycles and 100 bus cycles, depending on the results and the clock source chosen. For an 8 MHz clock source, this length amounts to about 1.7 ms. To reduce this latency, the calibration values, which are offset, plus-side and minus-side gain, and plus-side and minus-side calibration values, may be stored in flash memory after an initial calibration and recovered prior to the first ADC conversion. This method can reduce the calibration latency to 20 register store operations on all subsequent power, reset, or Low-Power Stop mode recoveries.

Further information on the calibration procedure can be found in the Calibration section of AN3949: ADC16 Calibration Procedure and Programmable Delay Block Synchronization.

33.5.7 User-defined offset function

OFS contains the user-selected or calibration-generated offset error correction value.

This register is a 2's complement, left-justified. The value in OFS is subtracted from the conversion and the result is transferred into the result registers, Rn. If the result is greater than the maximum or less than the minimum result value, it is forced to the appropriate limit for the current mode of operation.

The formatting of the OFS is different from the data result register, Rn, to preserve the resolution of the calibration value regardless of the conversion mode selected. Lower order bits are ignored in lower resolution modes. For example, in 8-bit single-ended mode, OFS[14:7] are subtracted from D[7:0]; OFS[15] indicates the sign (negative numbers are effectively added to the result) and OFS[6:0] are ignored. The same bits are used in 9-bit differential mode because OFS[15] indicates the sign bit, which maps to D[8]. For 16-bit differential mode, OFS[15:0] are directly subtracted from the conversion result data D[15:0]. In 16-bit single-ended mode, there is no field in the OFS corresponding to the least significant result D[0], so odd values, such as -1 or +1, cannot be subtracted from the result.

OFS is automatically set according to calibration requirements once the self-calibration sequence is done, that is, SC3[CAL] is cleared. The user may write to OFS to override the calibration result if desired. If the OFS is written by the user to a value that is different from the calibration value, the ADC error specifications may not be met. Storing the value generated by the calibration function in memory before overwriting with a user-specified value is recommended.

Note

There is an effective limit to the values of offset that can be set by the user. If the magnitude of the offset is too high, the results of the conversions will cap off at the limits.

The offset calibration function may be employed by the user to remove application offsets or DC bias values. OFS may be written with a number in 2's complement format and this offset will be subtracted from the result, or hardware averaged value. To add an offset, store the negative offset in 2's complement format and the effect will be an addition. An offset correction that results in an out-of-range value will be forced to the minimum or maximum value. The minimum value for single-ended conversions is 0x0000; for a differential conversion it is 0x8000.

To preserve accuracy, the calibrated offset value initially stored in OFS must be added to the user-defined offset. For applications that may change the offset repeatedly during operation, store the initial offset calibration value in flash so it can be recovered and added to any user offset adjustment value and the sum stored in OFS.

33.5.8 Temperature sensor

The ADC module includes a temperature sensor whose output is connected to one of the ADC analog channel inputs.

The following equation provides an approximate transfer function of the temperature sensor.

$$Temp = 25 - \left(\left(V_{TEMP} - V_{TEMP25} \right) \div m \right)$$

Equation 2. Approximate transfer function of the temperature sensor

where:

- V_{TEMP} is the voltage of the temperature sensor channel at the ambient temperature.
- V_{TEMP25} is the voltage of the temperature sensor channel at 25 °C.
- m is referred as temperature sensor slope in the device data sheet. It is the hot or cold voltage versus temperature slope in V/°C.

For temperature calculations, use the V_{TEMP25} and temperature sensor slope values from the ADC Electricals table.

In application code, the user reads the temperature sensor channel, calculates V_{TEMP}, and compares to V_{TEMP25}. If V_{TEMP} is greater than V_{TEMP25} the cold slope value is applied in the preceding equation. If V_{TEMP} is less than V_{TEMP25}, the hot slope value is applied in the preceding equation. ADC Electricals table may only specify one temperature sensor slope value. In that case, the user could use the same slope for the calculation across the operational temperature range.

For more information on using the temperature sensor, see the application note titled *Temperature Sensor for the HCS08 Microcontroller Family* (document AN3031).

33.5.9 MCU wait mode operation

Wait mode is a lower-power consumption Standby mode from which recovery is fast because the clock sources remain active.

If a conversion is in progress when the MCU enters Wait mode, it continues until completion. Conversions can be initiated while the MCU is in Wait mode by means of the hardware trigger or if continuous conversions are enabled.

The bus clock, ADACK, and Alternate Clock sources are available as conversion clock sources while in Wait mode. The use of ALTCLK as the conversion clock source in Wait is dependent on the definition of ALTCLK for this MCU. See the Chip Configuration information on ALTCLK specific to this MCU.

If the compare and hardware averaging functions are disabled, a conversion complete event sets SC1n[COCO] and generates an ADC interrupt to wake the MCU from Wait mode if the respective ADC interrupt is enabled, that is, when SC1n[AIEN]=1. If the hardware averaging function is enabled, SC1n[COCO] will set, and generate an interrupt if enabled, when the selected number of conversions are completed. If the compare function is enabled, SC1n[COCO] will set, and generate an interrupt if enabled, only if the compare conditions are met. If a single conversion is selected and the compare trigger is not met, the ADC will return to its idle state and cannot wake the MCU from Wait mode unless a new conversion is initiated by the hardware trigger.

33.5.10 MCU Normal Stop mode operation

Stop mode is a low-power consumption Standby mode during which most or all clock sources on the MCU are disabled.

33.5.10.1 Normal Stop mode with Bus Clock selected

If the Bus Clock is selected as the conversion clock, executing a stop instruction aborts the current conversion and places the ADC in its Idle state. The contents of the ADC registers, including Rn, are unaffected by Normal Stop mode. After exiting from Normal Stop mode, a software or hardware trigger is required to resume conversions.

33.5.10.2 Normal Stop mode with ADACK or Alternate clock sources enabled

If ADACK or an Alternate clock source is selected as the conversion clock, the ADC continues operation during Normal Stop mode. See the chip-specific ADC information for configuration information for this device.

If a conversion is in progress when the MCU enters Normal Stop mode, it continues until completion. Conversions can be initiated while the MCU is in Normal Stop mode by means of the hardware trigger or if continuous conversions are enabled.

If the compare and hardware averaging functions are disabled, a conversion complete event sets SC1n[COCO] and generates an ADC interrupt to wake the MCU from Normal Stop mode if the respective ADC interrupt is enabled, that is, when SC1n[AIEN]=1. The result register, Rn, will contain the data from the first completed conversion that occurred during Normal Stop mode. If the hardware averaging function is enabled, SC1n[COCO] will set, and generate an interrupt if enabled, when the selected number of conversions are completed. If the compare function is enabled, SC1n[COCO] will set, and generate an interrupt if enabled, only if the compare conditions are met. If a single conversion is selected and the compare is not true, the ADC will return to its idle state and cannot wake the MCU from Normal Stop mode unless a new conversion is initiated by another hardware trigger.

33.5.11 MCU Low-Power Stop mode operation

The ADC module is automatically disabled when the MCU enters Low-Power Stop mode.

All module registers contain their reset values following exit from Low-Power Stop mode. Therefore, the module must be re-enabled and re-configured following exit from Low-Power Stop mode.

NOTE

For the chip specific modes of operation, see the power management information for the device.

33.6 Initialization information

This section gives an example that provides some basic direction on how to initialize and configure the ADC module.

The user can configure the module for 16-bit, 12-bit, 10-bit, or 8-bit single-ended resolution or 16-bit, 13-bit, 11-bit, or 9-bit differential resolution, single or continuous conversion, and a polled or interrupt approach, among many other options. For information used in this example, refer to Table 33-11, Table 33-12, and Table 33-13.

Note

Hexadecimal values are designated by a preceding 0x, binary values designated by a preceding %, and decimal values have no preceding character.

33.6.1 ADC module initialization example

33.6.1.1 Initialization sequence

Before the ADC module can be used to complete conversions, an initialization procedure must be performed. A typical sequence is:

1. Calibrate the ADC by following the calibration instructions in Calibration function.
2. Update CFG to select the input clock source and the divide ratio used to generate ADCK. This register is also used for selecting sample time and low-power configuration.
3. Update SC2 to select the conversion trigger, hardware or software, and compare function options, if enabled.
4. Update SC3 to select whether conversions will be continuous or completed only once (ADCO) and whether to perform hardware averaging.
5. Update SC1:SC1n registers to select whether conversions will be single-ended or differential and to enable or disable conversion complete interrupts. Also, select the input channel which can be used to perform conversions.

33.6.1.2 Pseudo-code example

In this example, the ADC module is set up with interrupts enabled to perform a single 10-bit conversion at low-power with a long sample time on input channel 1, where ADCK is derived from the bus clock divided by 1.

CFG1 = 0x98 (%10011000)

```
        Bit 7   ADLPC   1       Configures for low power, lowers maximum clock speed.
        Bit 6:5 ADIV    00      Sets the ADCK to the input clock ÷ 1.
        Bit 4   ADLSMP  1       Configures for long sample time.
        Bit 3:2   MODE   10     Selects the single-ended 10-bit conversion, differential 11-
bit conversion.
        Bit 1:0   ADICLK   00    Selects the bus clock.
```

SC2 = 0x00 (%00000000)

```
        Bit 7   ADACT   0        Flag indicates if a conversion is in progress.
        Bit 6   ADTRG   0        Software trigger selected.
        Bit 5   ACFE    0        Compare function disabled.
        Bit 4   ACFGT   0        Not used in this example.
        Bit 3   ACREN   0       Compare range disabled.
 Bit 2 DMAEN 0 DMA request disabled.
        Bit 1:0 REFSEL  00      Selects default voltage reference pin pair (External pins
VREFH and VREFL).
```

SC1A = 0x41 (%01000001)

```
        Bit 7   COCO    0       Read-only flag which is set when a conversion completes.
        Bit 6   AIEN    1       Conversion complete interrupt enabled.
 Bit 5 DIFF 0 Single-ended conversion selected.
        Bit 4:0 ADCH    00001   Input channel 1 selected as ADC input channel.
```

RA = 0xxx

```
        Holds results of conversion.
```

CV = 0xxx

```
        Holds compare value when compare function enabled.
```

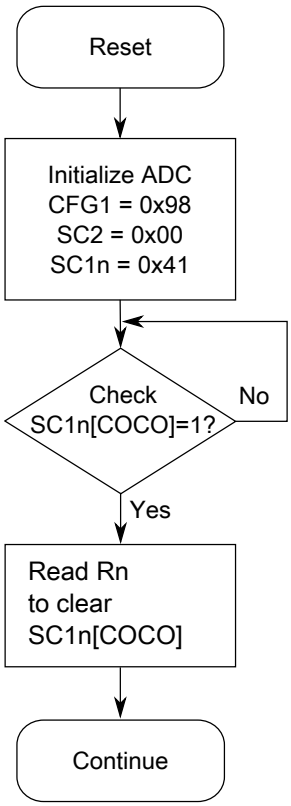


Figure 33-3. Initialization flowchart example

33.7 Application information

The ADC has been designed to be integrated into a microcontroller for use in embedded control applications requiring an ADC.

For guidance on selecting optimum external component values and converter parameters see AN4373: Cookbook for SAR ADC Measurements.

33.7.1 External pins and routing

33.7.1.1 Analog supply pins

Depending on the device, the analog power and ground supplies, V_{DDA} and V_{SSA}, of the ADC module are available as:

- V_{DDA} and V_{SSA} available as separate pins—When available on a separate pin, both V_{DDA} and V_{SSA} must be connected to the same voltage potential as their corresponding MCU digital supply, V_{DD} and V_{SS}, and must be routed carefully for maximum noise immunity and bypass capacitors placed as near as possible to the package.

- V_{SSA} is shared on the same pin as the MCU digital V_{SS}.
- V_{SSA} and V_{DDA} are shared with the MCU digital supply pins—In these cases, there are separate pads for the analog supplies bonded to the same pin as the corresponding digital supply so that some degree of isolation between the supplies is maintained.

If separate power supplies are used for analog and digital power, the ground connection between these supplies must be at the V_{SSA} pin. This must be the only ground connection between these supplies, if possible. V_{SSA} makes a good single point ground location.

33.7.1.2 Analog voltage reference pins

In addition to the analog supplies, the ADC module has connections for two reference voltage inputs used by the converter:

- V_{REFSH} is the high reference voltage for the converter.
- V_{REFSL} is the low reference voltage for the converter.

The ADC can be configured to accept one of two voltage reference pairs for V_{REFSH} and V_{REFSL}. Each pair contains a positive reference and a ground reference. The two pairs are external, V_{REFH} and V_{REFL} and alternate, V_{ALTH} and V_{ALTL}. These voltage references are selected using SC2[REFSEL]. The alternate voltage reference pair, V_{ALTH} and V_{ALTL}, may select additional external pins or internal sources based on MCU configuration. See the chip configuration information on the voltage references specific to this MCU.

In some packages, the external or alternate pairs are connected in the package to V_{DDA} and V_{SSA}, respectively. One of these positive references may be shared on the same pin as V_{DDA} on some devices. One of these ground references may be shared on the same pin as V_{SSA} on some devices.

If externally available, the positive reference may be connected to the same potential as V_{DDA} or may be driven by an external source to a level between the minimum Ref Voltage High and the V_{DDA} potential. The positive reference must never exceed V_{DDA}. If externally available, the ground reference must be connected to the same voltage potential as V_{SSA}. The voltage reference pairs must be routed carefully for maximum noise immunity and bypass capacitors placed as near as possible to the package.

AC current in the form of current spikes required to supply charge to the capacitor array at each successive approximation step is drawn through the V_{REFH} and V_{REFL} loop. The best external component to meet this current demand is a 0.1 µF capacitor with good

high-frequency characteristics. This capacitor is connected between V_{REFH} and V_{REFL} and must be placed as near as possible to the package pins. Resistance in the path is not recommended because the current causes a voltage drop that could result in conversion errors. Inductance in this path must be minimum, that is, parasitic only.

33.7.1.3 Analog input pins

The external analog inputs are typically shared with digital I/O pins on MCU devices.

Empirical data shows that capacitors on the analog inputs improve performance in the presence of noise or when the source impedance is high. Use of 0.01 μF capacitors with good high-frequency characteristics is sufficient. These capacitors are not necessary in all cases, but when used, they must be placed as near as possible to the package pins and be referenced to V_{SSA}.

For proper conversion, the input voltage must fall between V_{REFH} and V_{REFL}. If the input is equal to or exceeds V_{REFH}, the converter circuit converts the signal to 0xFFF, which is full scale 12-bit representation, 0x3FF, which is full scale 10-bit representation, or 0xFF, which is full scale 8-bit representation. If the input is equal to or less than V_{REFL}, the converter circuit converts it to 0x000. Input voltages between V_{REFH} and V_{REFL} are straight-line linear conversions. There is a brief current associated with V_{REFL} when the sampling capacitor is charging.

For minimal loss of accuracy due to current injection, pins adjacent to the analog input pins must not be transitioning during conversions.

33.7.2 Sources of error

33.7.2.1 Sampling error

For proper conversions, the input must be sampled long enough to achieve the proper accuracy.

$$RAS + RADIN = SC / (FMAX * NUMTAU * CADIN)$$

Figure 33-4. Sampling equation

Where:

RAS = External analog source resistance

SC = Number of ADCK cycles used during sample window

CADIN = Internal ADC input capacitance

NUMTAU = -ln(LSBERR / 2^N)

LSBERR = value of acceptable sampling error in LSBs

N = 8 in 8-bit mode, 10 in 10-bit mode, 12 in 12-bit mode or 16 in 16-bit mode

Higher source resistances or higher-accuracy sampling is possible by setting CFG1[ADLSMP] and changing CFG2[ADLSTS] to increase the sample window, or decreasing ADCK frequency to increase sample time.

33.7.2.2 Pin leakage error

Leakage on the I/O pins can cause conversion error if the external analog source resistance, R_{AS}, is high. If this error cannot be tolerated by the application, keep R_{AS} lower than V_{REFH} / (4 × I_{LEAK} × 2^N) for less than 1/4 LSB leakage error, where N = 8 in 8-bit mode, 10 in 10-bit mode, 12 in 12-bit mode, or 16 in 16-bit mode.

33.7.2.3 Noise-induced errors

System noise that occurs during the sample or conversion process can affect the accuracy of the conversion. The ADC accuracy numbers are guaranteed as specified only if the following conditions are met:

- There is a 0.1 µF low-ESR capacitor from V_{REFH} to V_{REFL}.
- There is a 0.1 µF low-ESR capacitor from V_{DDA} to V_{SSA}.
- If inductive isolation is used from the primary supply, an additional 1 µF capacitor is placed from V_{DDA} to V_{SSA}.
- V_{SSA}, and V_{REFL}, if connected, is connected to V_{SS} at a quiet point in the ground plane.
- Operate the MCU in Wait or Normal Stop mode before initiating (hardware-triggered conversions) or immediately after initiating (hardware- or software-triggered conversions) the ADC conversion.

- For software triggered conversions, immediately follow the write to SC1 with a Wait instruction or Stop instruction.
- For Normal Stop mode operation, select ADACK or an Alternate clock as the clock source. Operation in Normal Stop reduces V_{DD} noise but increases effective conversion time due to stop recovery.

- There is no I/O switching, input or output, on the MCU during the conversion.

There are some situations where external system activity causes radiated or conducted noise emissions or excessive V_{DD} noise is coupled into the ADC. In these situations, or when the MCU cannot be placed in Wait or Normal Stop mode, or I/O activity cannot be halted, the following actions may reduce the effect of noise on the accuracy:

- Place a 0.01 µF capacitor (C_{AS}) on the selected input channel to V_{REFL} or V_{SSA}. This improves noise issues, but affects the sample rate based on the external analog source resistance.
- Average the result by converting the analog input many times in succession and dividing the sum of the results. Four samples are required to eliminate the effect of a 1 LSB, one-time error.
- Reduce the effect of synchronous noise by operating off the asynchronous clock, that is, ADACK, and averaging. Noise that is synchronous to ADCK cannot be averaged out.

33.7.2.4 Code width and quantization error

The ADC quantizes the ideal straight-line transfer function into 65536 steps in the 16-bit mode.. Each step ideally has the same height, that is, 1 code, and width. The width is defined as the delta between the transition points to one code and the next. The ideal code width for an N-bit converter, where N can be 16, 12, 10, or 8, defined as 1 LSB, is:

$$1LSB=\left(V_{REFH}\right)/2^{N}$$

Equation 3. Ideal code width for an N-bit converter

There is an inherent quantization error due to the digitization of the result. For 8-bit, 10-bit, or 12-bit conversions, the code transitions when the voltage is at the midpoint between the points where the straight line transfer function is exactly represented by the actual transfer function. Therefore, the quantization error will be ± 1/2 LSB in 8-bit, 10-bit, or 12-bit modes. As a consequence, however, the code width of the first (0x000) conversion is only 1/2 LSB and the code width of the last (0xFF or 0x3FF) is 1.5 LSB.

For 16-bit conversions, the code transitions only after the full code width is present, so the quantization error is -1 LSB to 0 LSB and the code width of each step is 1 LSB.

33.7.2.5 Linearity errors

The ADC may also exhibit non-linearity of several forms. Every effort has been made to reduce these errors, but the system designers must be aware of these errors because they affect overall accuracy:

- Zero-scale error (E_{ZS}), sometimes called offset: This error is defined as the difference between the actual code width of the first conversion and the ideal code width. This is 1/2 LSB in 8-bit, 10-bit, or 12-bit modes and 1 LSB in 16-bit mode. If the first conversion is 0x001, the difference between the actual 0x001 code width and its ideal (1 LSB) is used.
- Full-scale error (E_{FS}): This error is defined as the difference between the actual code width of the last conversion and the ideal code width. This is 1.5 LSB in 8-bit, 10-bit, or 12-bit modes and 1 LSB in 16-bit mode. If the last conversion is 0x3FE, the difference between the actual 0x3FE code width and its ideal (1 LSB) is used.
- Differential non-linearity (DNL): This error is defined as the worst-case difference between the actual code width and the ideal code width for all conversions.
- Integral non-linearity (INL): This error is defined as the highest-value or absolute value that the running sum of DNL achieves. More simply, this is the worst-case difference of the actual transition voltage to a given code and its corresponding ideal transition voltage, for all codes.
- Total unadjusted error (TUE): This error is defined as the difference between the actual transfer function and the ideal straight-line transfer function and includes all forms of error.

33.7.2.6 Code jitter, non-monotonicity, and missing codes

Analog-to-digital converters are susceptible to three special forms of error:

- Code jitter: Code jitter occurs when a given input voltage converts to one of the two values when sampled repeatedly. Ideally, when the input voltage is infinitesimally smaller than the transition voltage, the converter yields the lower code, and vice-versa. However, even small amounts of system noise can cause the converter to be indeterminate, between two codes, for a range of input voltages around the transition voltage.

This error may be reduced by repeatedly sampling the input and averaging the result. Additionally, the techniques discussed in Noise-induced errors reduces this error.

- Non-monotonicity: Non-monotonicity occurs when, except for code jitter, the converter converts to a lower code for a higher input voltage.
- Missing codes: Missing codes are those values never converted for any input value.

In 8-bit or 10-bit mode, the ADC is guaranteed to be monotonic and have no missing codes.

Chapter 34
Comparator (CMP)

34.1 Chip-specific Information for this Module

34.1.1 CMP input connections

The following table shows the fixed internal connections to the CMP.

Table 34-1. CMP input connections

CMP Inputs	CMP0
IN0	CMP0_IN0
IN1	CMP0_IN1
IN2	CMP0_IN2
IN3	CMP0_IN3
IN4	—
IN5	CMP0_IN5
IN6	Bandgap [1]
IN7	6-bit DAC0 Reference

1. This is the PMC bandgap 1V reference voltage. Prior to using this CMP channel, ensure that you enable the bandgap buffer by setting the PMC_REGSC[BGBE] bit. Refer to the device data sheet for the bandgap voltage (V_{BG}) specification.

34.1.2 CMP external references

The 6-bit DAC sub-block supports only one reference as follows:

- VDD - V_{in1} input
- VDD - V_{in2} input

34.1.3 External window/sample input

Individual PDB pulse-out signals control each CMP Sample/Window timing.

34.1.4 CMP trigger mode

The CMP and 6-bit DAC sub-block supports trigger mode operation when the CMPx_CR1[TRIGM] is set. When trigger mode is enabled, the trigger event will initiate a compare sequence that must first enable the CMP and DAC prior to performing a CMP operation and capturing the output. In this device, control for this two staged sequencing is provided from the LPTMR. The LPTMR triggering output is always enabled when the LPTMR is enabled. The first signal is supplied to enable the CMP and DAC and is asserted at the same time as the TCF flag is set. The delay to the second signal that triggers the CMP to capture the result of the compare operation is dependent on the LPTMR configuration. In Time Counter mode with prescaler enabled, the delay is 1/2 Prescaler output period. In Time Counter mode with prescaler bypassed, the delay is 1/2 Prescaler clock period.

The delay between the first signal from LPTMR and the second signal from LPTMR must be greater than the Analog comparator initialization delay as defined in the device datasheet.

34.2 Introduction

The comparator (CMP) module provides a circuit for comparing two analog input voltages. The comparator circuit is designed to operate across the full range of the supply voltage, known as rail-to-rail operation.

The Analog MUX (ANMUX) provides a circuit for selecting an analog input signal from eight channels. One signal is provided by the 6-bit digital-to-analog converter (DAC). The mux circuit is designed to operate across the full range of the supply voltage.

The 6-bit DAC is 64-tap resistor ladder network which provides a selectable voltage reference for applications where voltage reference is needed. The 64-tap resistor ladder network divides the supply reference V_{in} into 64 voltage levels. A 6-bit digital signal input selects the output voltage level, which varies from V_{in} to $V_{in}/64$. V_{in} can be selected from two voltage sources, V_{in1} and V_{in2}. The 6-bit DAC from a comparator is available as an on-chip internal signal only and is not available externally to a pin.

34.2.1 CMP features

The CMP has the following features:

- Operational over the entire supply range
- Inputs may range from rail to rail
- Programmable hysteresis control
- Selectable interrupt on rising-edge, falling-edge, or both rising or falling edges of the comparator output
- Selectable inversion on comparator output
- Capability to produce a wide range of outputs such as:
  - Sampled
  - Windowed, which is ideal for certain PWM zero-crossing-detection applications
  - Digitally filtered:
    - Filter can be bypassed
    - Can be clocked via external SAMPLE signal or scaled bus clock
- External hysteresis can be used at the same time that the output filter is used for internal functions
- Two software selectable performance levels:
  - Shorter propagation delay at the expense of higher power
  - Low power, with longer propagation delay
- DMA transfer support
  - A comparison event can be selected to trigger a DMA transfer
- Functional in all modes of operation except VLLS0
- The window and filter functions are not available in the following modes:
  - Stop
  - VLPS
  - LLS
  - VLLSx

34.2.2 6-bit DAC key features

The 6-bit DAC has the following features:

- 6-bit resolution

- Selectable supply reference source
- Power Down mode to conserve power when not in use
- Option to route the output to internal comparator input

34.2.3 ANMUX key features

The ANMUX has the following features:

- Two 8-to-1 channel mux
- Operational over the entire supply range

34.2.4 CMP, DAC and ANMUX diagram

The following figure shows the block diagram for the High-Speed Comparator, DAC, and ANMUX modules.

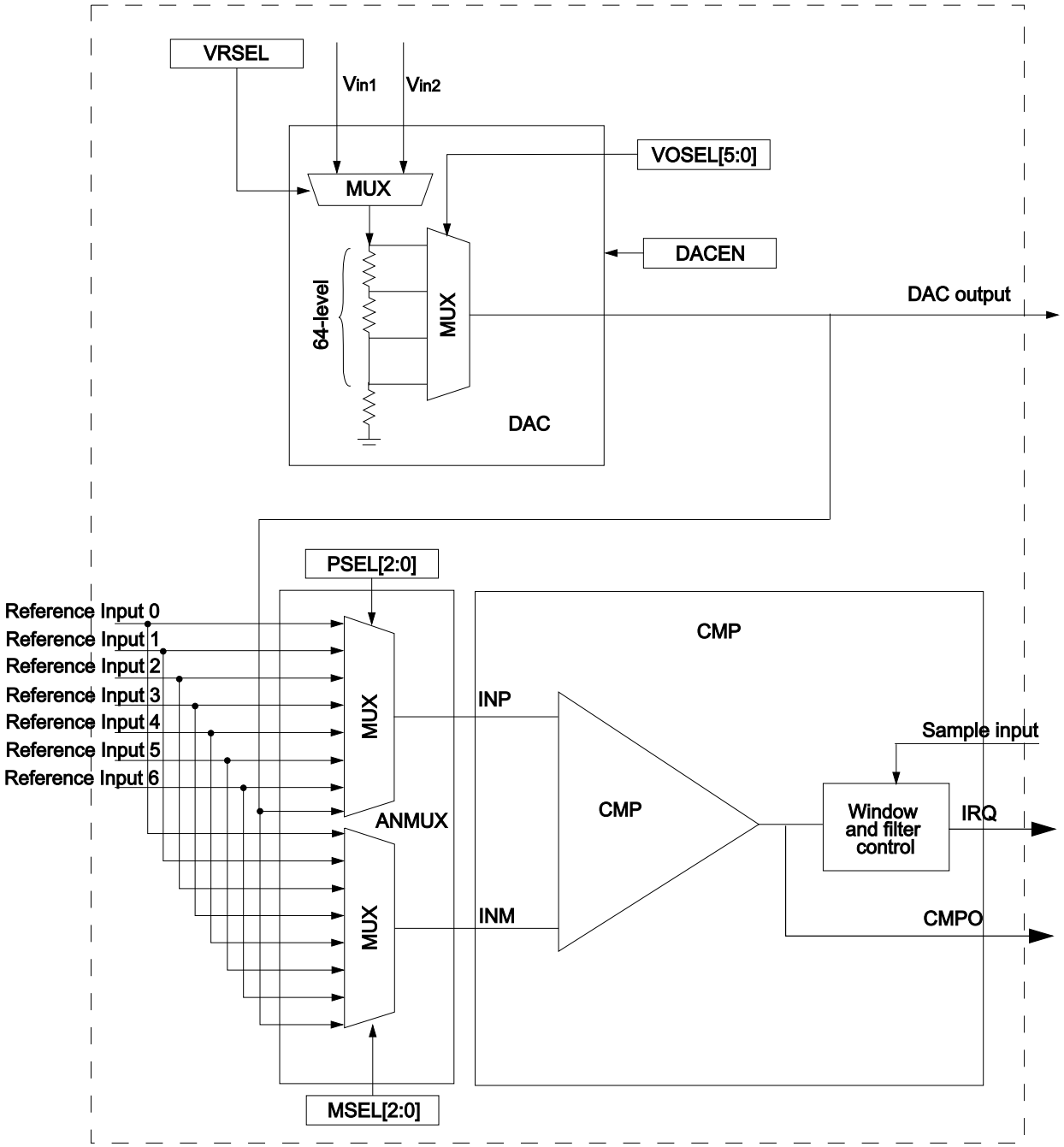


Figure 34-1. CMP, DAC and ANMUX block diagram

34.2.5 CMP block diagram

The following figure shows the block diagram for the CMP module.

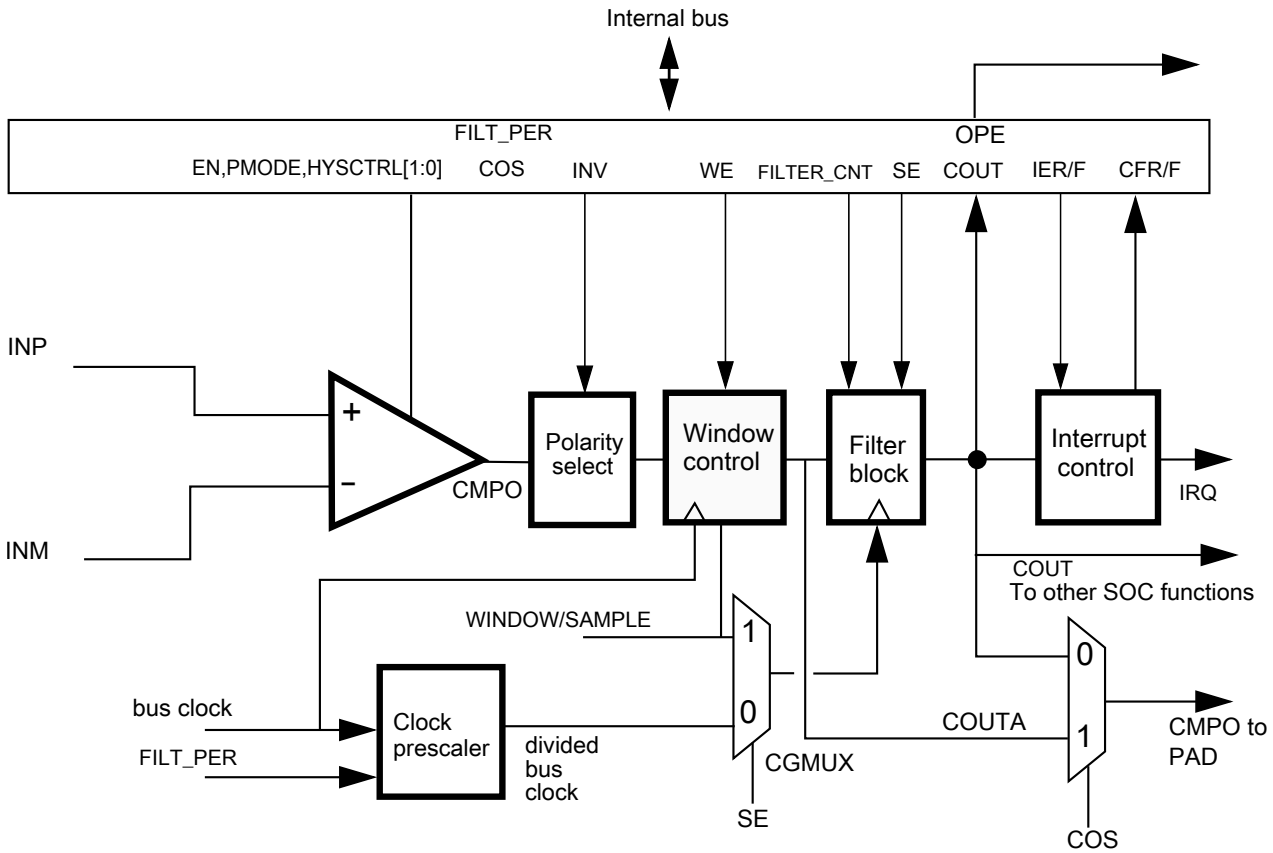


Figure 34-2. Comparator module block diagram

In the CMP block diagram:

- The Window Control block is bypassed when CR1[WE] = 0
- If CR1[WE] = 1, the comparator output will be sampled on every bus clock when WINDOW=1 to generate COUTA. Sampling does NOT occur when WINDOW = 0.
- The Filter block is bypassed when not in use.
- The Filter block acts as a simple sampler if the filter is bypassed and CR0[FILTER_CNT] is set to 0x01.
- The Filter block filters based on multiple samples when the filter is bypassed and CR0[FILTER_CNT] is set greater than 0x01.
  - If CR1[SE] = 1, the external SAMPLE input is used as sampling clock
  - If CR1[SE] = 0, the divided bus clock is used as sampling clock

- If enabled, the Filter block will incur up to one bus clock additional latency penalty on COUT due to the fact that COUT, which is crossing clock domain boundaries, must be resynchronized to the bus clock.
- CR1[WE] and CR1[SE] are mutually exclusive.

34.3 Memory map/register definitions

CMP memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4007_3000	CMP Control Register 0 (CMP0_CR0)	8	R/W	00h	34.3.1/725
4007_3001	CMP Control Register 1 (CMP0_CR1)	8	R/W	00h	34.3.2/726
4007_3002	CMP Filter Period Register (CMP0_FPR)	8	R/W	00h	34.3.3/728
4007_3003	CMP Status and Control Register (CMP0_SCR)	8	R/W	00h	34.3.4/728
4007_3004	DAC Control Register (CMP0_DACCR)	8	R/W	00h	34.3.5/729
4007_3005	MUX Control Register (CMP0_MUXCR)	8	R/W	00h	34.3.6/730

34.3.1 CMP Control Register 0 (CMPx_CR0)

Address: 4007_3000h base + 0h offset = 4007_3000h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0	FILTER_CNT			0	0	HYSTCTR	
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

CMPx_CR0 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
6–4 FILTER_CNT	Filter Sample Count Represents the number of consecutive samples that must agree prior to the comparator ouput filter accepting a new output state. For information regarding filter programming and latency, see the Functional description. 000 Filter is disabled. If SE = 1, then COUT is a logic 0. This is not a legal state, and is not recommended. If SE = 0, COUT = COUTA. 001 One sample must agree. The comparator output is simply sampled. 010 2 consecutive samples must agree. 011 3 consecutive samples must agree. 100 4 consecutive samples must agree.

Table continues on the next page...

CMPx_CR0 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	101 5 consecutive samples must agree. 110 6 consecutive samples must agree. 111 7 consecutive samples must agree.
3 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
2 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
HYSTCTR	Comparator hard block hysteresis control Defines the programmable hysteresis level. The hysteresis values associated with each level are device-specific. See the Data Sheet of the device for the exact values. 00 Level 0 01 Level 1 10 Level 2 11 Level 3

34.3.2 CMP Control Register 1 (CMPx_CR1)

Address: 4007_3000h base + 1h offset = 4007_3001h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	SE	WE	TRIGM	PMODE	INV	COS	OPE	EN
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

CMPx_CR1 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 SE	Sample Enable At any given time, either SE or WE can be set. If a write to this register attempts to set both, then SE is set and WE is cleared. However, avoid writing 1s to both field locations because this "11" case is reserved and may change in future implementations. 0 Sampling mode is not selected. 1 Sampling mode is selected.
6 WE	Windowing Enable At any given time, either SE or WE can be set. If a write to this register attempts to set both, then SE is set and WE is cleared. However, avoid writing 1s to both field locations because this "11" case is reserved and may change in future implementations. 0 Windowing mode is not selected. 1 Windowing mode is selected.
5 TRIGM	Trigger Mode Enable CMP and DAC are configured to CMP Trigger mode when CMP_CR1[TRIGM] is set to 1. In addition, the CMP should be enabled. If the DAC is to be used as a reference to the CMP, it should also be enabled.

Table continues on the next page...

CMPx_CR1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	CMP Trigger mode depends on an external timer resource to periodically enable the CMP and 6-bit DAC in order to generate a triggered compare. Upon setting TRIGM, the CMP and DAC are placed in a standby state until an external timer resource trigger is received. See the chip configuration for details about the external timer resource. 0 Trigger mode is disabled. 1 Trigger mode is enabled.
4 PMODE	Power Mode Select See the electrical specifications table in the device Data Sheet for details. 0 Low-Speed (LS) Comparison mode selected. In this mode, CMP has slower output propagation delay and lower current consumption. 1 High-Speed (HS) Comparison mode selected. In this mode, CMP has faster output propagation delay and higher current consumption.
3 INV	Comparator INVERT Allows selection of the polarity of the analog comparator function. It is also driven to the COUT output, on both the device pin and as SCR[COUT], when OPE=0. 0 Does not invert the comparator output. 1 Inverts the comparator output.
2 COS	Comparator Output Select 0 Set the filtered comparator output (CMPO) to equal COUT. 1 Set the unfiltered comparator output (CMPO) to equal COUTA.
1 OPE	Comparator Output Pin Enable 0 CMPO is not available on the associated CMPO output pin. If the comparator does not own the pin, this field has no effect. 1 CMPO is available on the associated CMPO output pin. The comparator output (CMPO) is driven out on the associated CMPO output pin if the comparator owns the pin. If the comparator does not own the field, this bit has no effect.
0 EN	Comparator Module Enable Enables the Analog Comparator module. When the module is not enabled, it remains in the off state, and consumes no power. When the user selects the same input from analog mux to the positive and negative port, the comparator is disabled automatically. 0 Analog Comparator is disabled. 1 Analog Comparator is enabled.

34.3.3 CMP Filter Period Register (CMPx_FPR)

Address: 4007_3000h base + 2h offset = 4007_3002h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	FILT_PER							
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

CMPx_FPR field descriptions

Field	Description
FILT_PER	Filter Sample Period Specifies the sampling period, in bus clock cycles, of the comparator output filter, when CR1[SE]=0. Setting FILT_PER to 0x0 disables the filter. Filter programming and latency details appear in the Functional description. This field has no effect when CR1[SE]=1. In that case, the external SAMPLE signal is used to determine the sampling period.

34.3.4 CMP Status and Control Register (CMPx_SCR)

Address: 4007_3000h base + 3h offset = 4007_3003h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0	DMAEN	0	IER	IEF	CFR	CFF	COUT
Write						w1c	w1c	
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

CMPx_SCR field descriptions

Field	Description
7 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
6 DMAEN	DMA Enable Control Enables the DMA transfer triggered from the CMP module. When this field is set, a DMA request is asserted when CFR or CFF is set. 0 DMA is disabled. 1 DMA is enabled.
5 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
4 IER	Comparator Interrupt Enable Rising Enables the CFR interrupt from the CMP. When this field is set, an interrupt will be asserted when CFR is set.

Table continues on the next page...

CMPx_SCR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Interrupt is disabled. 1 Interrupt is enabled.
3 IEF	Comparator Interrupt Enable Falling Enables the CFF interrupt from the CMP. When this field is set, an interrupt will be asserted when CFF is set. 0 Interrupt is disabled. 1 Interrupt is enabled.
2 CFR	Analog Comparator Flag Rising Detects a rising-edge on COUT, when set, during normal operation. CFR is cleared by writing 1 to it. During Stop modes, CFR is level sensitive . 0 Rising-edge on COUT has not been detected. 1 Rising-edge on COUT has occurred.
1 CFF	Analog Comparator Flag Falling Detects a falling-edge on COUT, when set, during normal operation. CFF is cleared by writing 1 to it. During Stop modes, CFF is level sensitive . 0 Falling-edge on COUT has not been detected. 1 Falling-edge on COUT has occurred.
0 COUT	Analog Comparator Output Returns the current value of the Analog Comparator output, when read. The field is reset to 0 and will read as CR1[INV] when the Analog Comparator module is disabled, that is, when CR1[EN] = 0. Writes to this field are ignored.

34.3.5 DAC Control Register (CMPx_DACCR)

Address: 4007_3000h base + 4h offset = 4007_3004h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	DACEN	VRSEL	VOSEL					
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

CMPx_DACCR field descriptions

Field	Description
7 DACEN	DAC Enable Enables the DAC. When the DAC is disabled, it is powered down to conserve power. 0 DAC is disabled. 1 DAC is enabled.
6 VRSEL	Supply Voltage Reference Source Select

Table continues on the next page...

CMPx_DACCR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 V_{in1} is selected as resistor ladder network supply reference. 1 V_{in2} is selected as resistor ladder network supply reference.
VOSEL	DAC Output Voltage Select Selects an output voltage from one of 64 distinct levels. DACO = (V_{in} /64) * (VOSEL[5:0] + 1) , so the DACO range is from V_{in} /64 to V_{in} .

34.3.6 MUX Control Register (CMPx_MUXCR)

Address: 4007_3000h base + 5h offset = 4007_3005h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	Reserved	0	PSEL			MSEL		
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

CMPx_MUXCR field descriptions

Field	Description
7 Reserved	Bit can be programmed to zero only . This field is reserved.
6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
5–3 PSEL	Plus Input Mux Control Determines which input is selected for the plus input of the comparator. For INx inputs, see CMP, DAC, and ANMUX block diagrams. **NOTE:** When an inappropriate operation selects the same input for both muxes, the comparator automatically shuts down to prevent itself from becoming a noise generator. 000 IN0 001 IN1 010 IN2 011 IN3 100 IN4 101 IN5 110 IN6 111 IN7
MSEL	Minus Input Mux Control Determines which input is selected for the minus input of the comparator. For INx inputs, see CMP, DAC, and ANMUX block diagrams. **NOTE:** When an inappropriate operation selects the same input for both muxes, the comparator automatically shuts down to prevent itself from becoming a noise generator. 000 IN0

Table continues on the next page...

CMPx_MUXCR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	001 IN1 010 IN2 011 IN3 100 IN4 101 IN5 110 IN6 111 IN7

34.4 Functional description

The CMP module can be used to compare two analog input voltages applied to INP and INM.

CMPO is high when the non-inverting input is greater than the inverting input, and is low when the non-inverting input is less than the inverting input. This signal can be selectively inverted by setting CR1[INV] = 1.

SCR[IER] and SCR[IEF] are used to select the condition which will cause the CMP module to assert an interrupt to the processor. SCR[CFF] is set on a falling-edge and SCR[CFR] is set on rising-edge of the comparator output. The optionally filtered CMPO can be read directly through SCR[COUT].

34.4.1 CMP functional modes

There are the following main sub-blocks to the CMP module:

- The comparator itself
- The window function
- The filter function

The filter, CR0[FILTER_CNT], can be clocked from an internal or external clock source. The filter is programmable with respect to the number of samples that must agree before a change in the output is registered. In the simplest case, only one sample must agree. In this case, the filter acts as a simple sampler.

The external sample input is enabled using CR1[SE]. When set, the output of the comparator is sampled only on rising edges of the sample input.

The "windowing mode" is enabled by setting CR1[WE]. When set, the comparator output is sampled only when WINDOW=1. This feature can be used to ignore the comparator output during time periods in which the input voltages are not valid. This is especially useful when implementing zero-crossing-detection for certain PWM applications.

The comparator filter and sampling features can be combined as shown in the following table. Individual modes are discussed below.

Table 34-2. Comparator sample/filter controls

Mode #	CR1[EN]	CR1[WE]	CR1[SE]	CR0[FILTER_CNT]	FPR[FILT_PER]	Operation
1	0	X	X	X	X	**Disabled** See the Disabled mode (# 1).
2A	1	0	0	0x00	X	**Continuous Mode** See the Continuous mode (#s 2A & 2B).
2B	1	0	0	X	0x00	
3A	1	0	1	0x01	X	**Sampled, Non-Filtered mode** See the Sampled, Non-Filtered mode (#s 3A & 3B).
3B	1	0	0	0x01	> 0x00	
4A	1	0	1	> 0x01	X	**Sampled, Filtered mode** See the Sampled, Filtered mode (#s 4A & 4B).
4B	1	0	0	> 0x01	> 0x00	
5A	1	1	0	0x00	X	**Windowed mode** Comparator output is sampled on every rising bus clock edge when SAMPLE=1 to generate COUTA. See the Windowed mode (#s 5A & 5B).
5B	1	1	0	X	0x00	
6	1	1	0	0x01	0x01–0xFF	**Windowed/Resampled mode** Comparator output is sampled on every rising bus clock edge when SAMPLE=1 to generate COUTA, which is then resampled on an interval determined by FILT_PER to generate COUT. See the Windowed/Resampled mode (# 6).
7	1	1	0	> 0x01	0x01–0xFF	**Windowed/Filtered mode** Comparator output is sampled on every rising bus clock edge when SAMPLE=1 to generate COUTA, which is then resampled and filtered to generate COUT. See the Windowed/Filtered mode (#7).
All other combinations of CR1[EN], CR1[WE], CR1[SE], CR0[FILTER_CNT], and FPR[FILT_PER] are illegal.						

For cases where a comparator is used to drive a fault input, for example, for a motor-control module such as FTM, it must be configured to operate in Continuous mode so that an external fault can immediately pass through the comparator to the target fault circuitry.

Note

Filtering and sampling settings must be changed only after setting CR1[SE]=0 and CR0[FILTER_CNT]=0x00. This resets the filter to a known state.

34.4.1.1 Disabled mode (# 1)

In Disabled mode, the analog comparator is non-functional and consumes no power. CMPO is 0 in this mode.

34.4.1.2 Continuous mode (#s 2A & 2B)

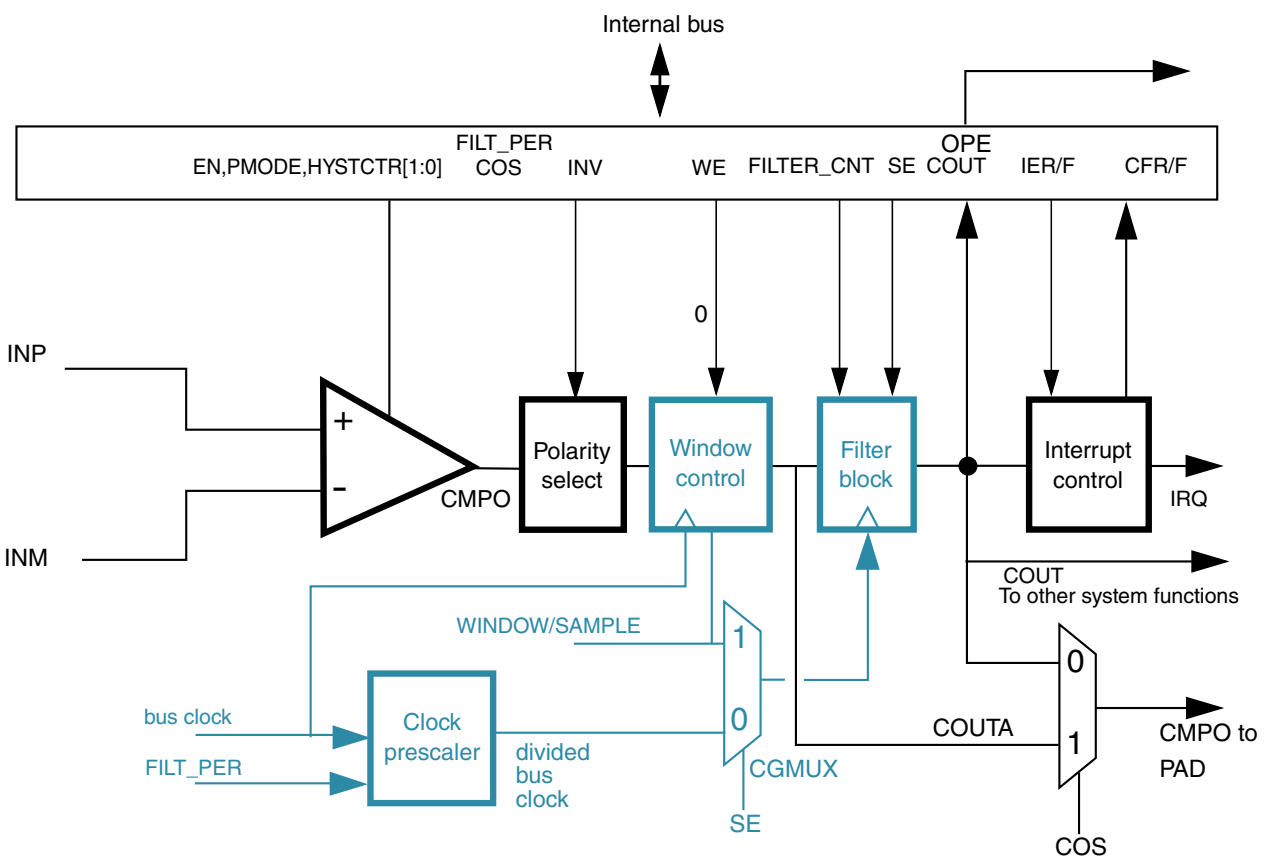


Figure 34-3. Comparator operation in Continuous mode

The analog comparator block is powered and active. CMPO may be optionally inverted, but is not subject to external sampling or filtering. Both window control and filter blocks are completely bypassed. SCR[COUT] is updated continuously. The path from comparator input pins to output pin is operating in combinational unclocked mode. COUT and COUTA are identical.

For control configurations which result in disabling the filter block, see the Filter Block Bypass Logic diagram.

34.4.1.3 Sampled, Non-Filtered mode (#s 3A & 3B)

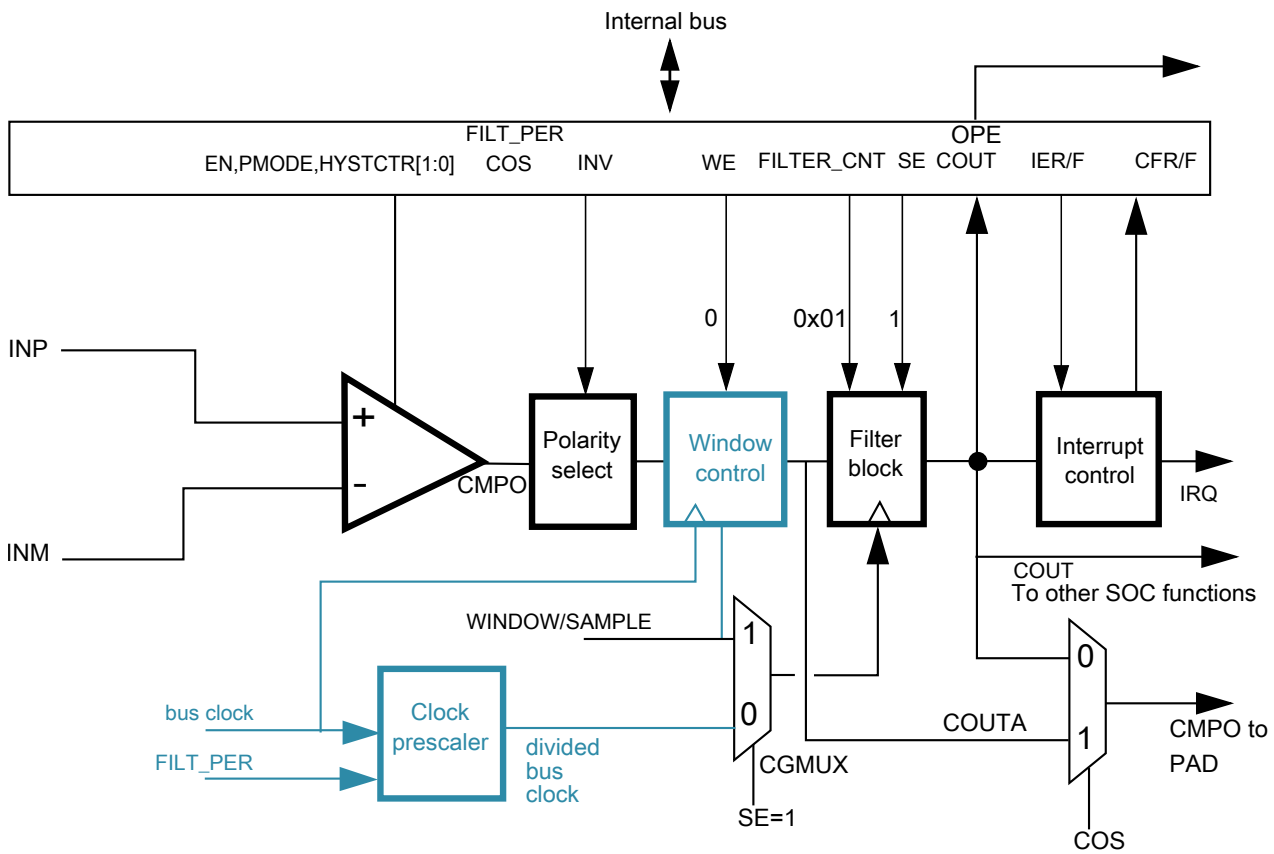


Figure 34-4. Sampled, Non-Filtered (# 3A): sampling point externally driven

In Sampled, Non-Filtered mode, the analog comparator block is powered and active. The path from analog inputs to COUTA is combinational unclocked. Windowing control is completely bypassed. COUTA is sampled whenever a rising-edge is detected on the filter block clock input.

The only difference in operation between Sampled, Non-Filtered (# 3A) and Sampled, Non-Filtered (# 3B) is in how the clock to the filter block is derived. In #3A, the clock to filter block is externally derived while in #3B, the clock to filter block is internally derived.

The comparator filter has no other function than sample/hold of the comparator output in this mode (# 3B).

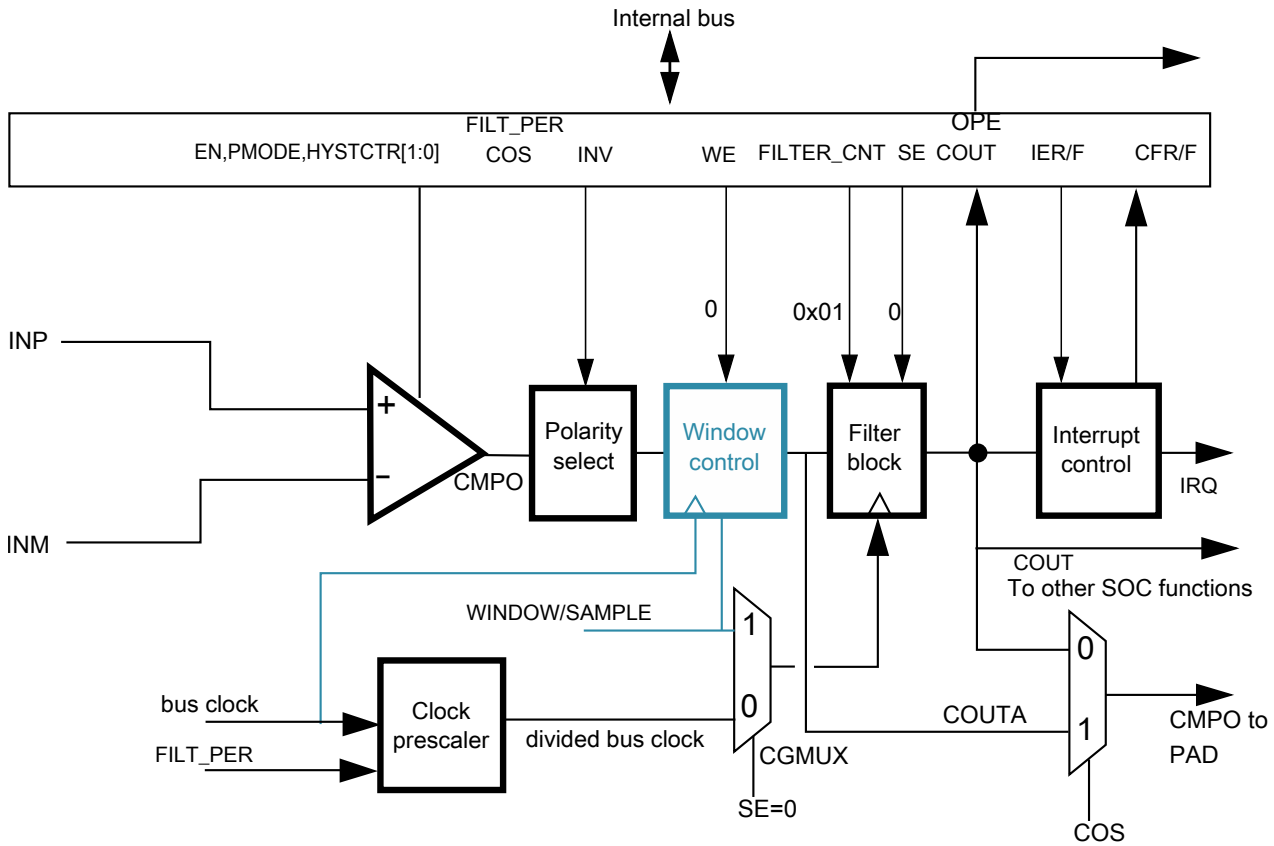


Figure 34-5. Sampled, Non-Filtered (# 3B): sampling interval internally derived

34.4.1.4 Sampled, Filtered mode (#s 4A & 4B)

In Sampled, Filtered mode, the analog comparator block is powered and active. The path from analog inputs to COUTA is combinational unclocked. Windowing control is completely bypassed. COUTA is sampled whenever a rising edge is detected on the filter block clock input.

The only difference in operation between Sampled, Non-Filtered (# 3A) and Sampled, Filtered (# 4A) is that, now, CR0[FILTER_CNT]>1, which activates filter operation.

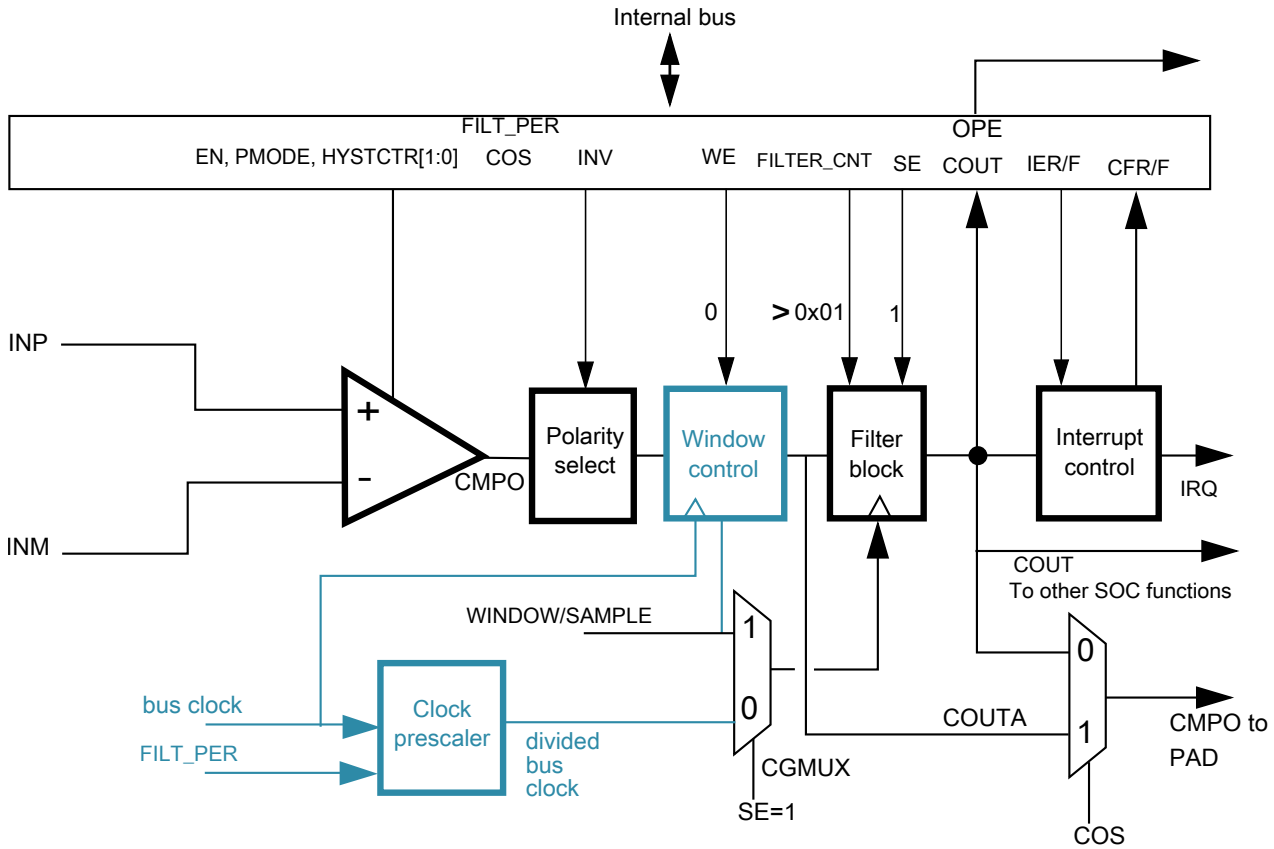


Figure 34-6. Sampled, Filtered (# 4A): sampling point externally driven

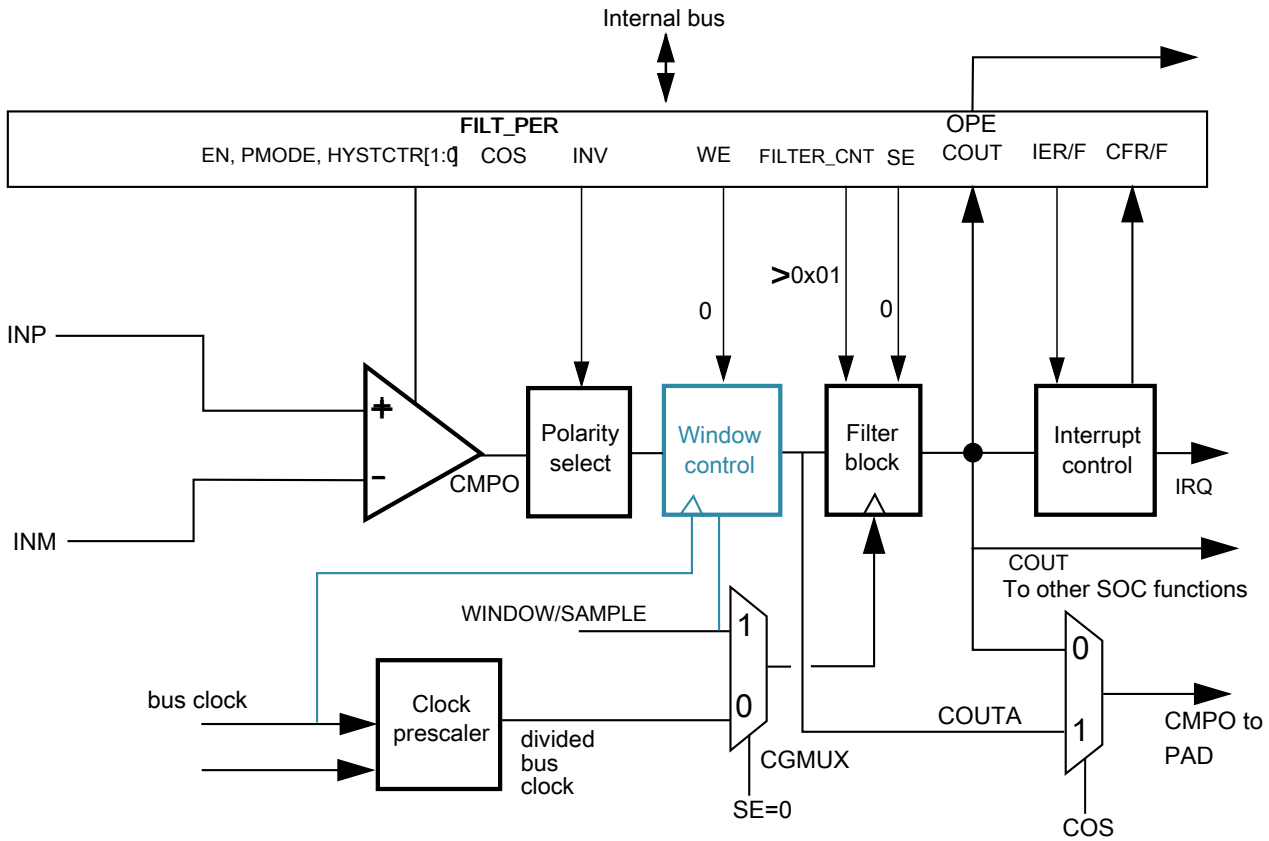


Figure 34-7. Sampled, Filtered (# 4B): sampling point internally derived

The only difference in operation between Sampled, Non-Filtered (# 3B) and Sampled, Filtered (# 4B) is that now, CR0[FILTER_CNT]>1, which activates filter operation.

34.4.1.5 Windowed mode (#s 5A & 5B)

The following figure illustrates comparator operation in the Windowed mode, ignoring latency of the analog comparator, polarity select, and window control block. It also assumes that the polarity select is set to non-inverting state.

NOTE

The analog comparator output is passed to COUTA only when the WINDOW signal is high.

In actual operation, COUTA may lag the analog inputs by up to one bus clock cycle plus the combinational path delay through the comparator and polarity select logic.

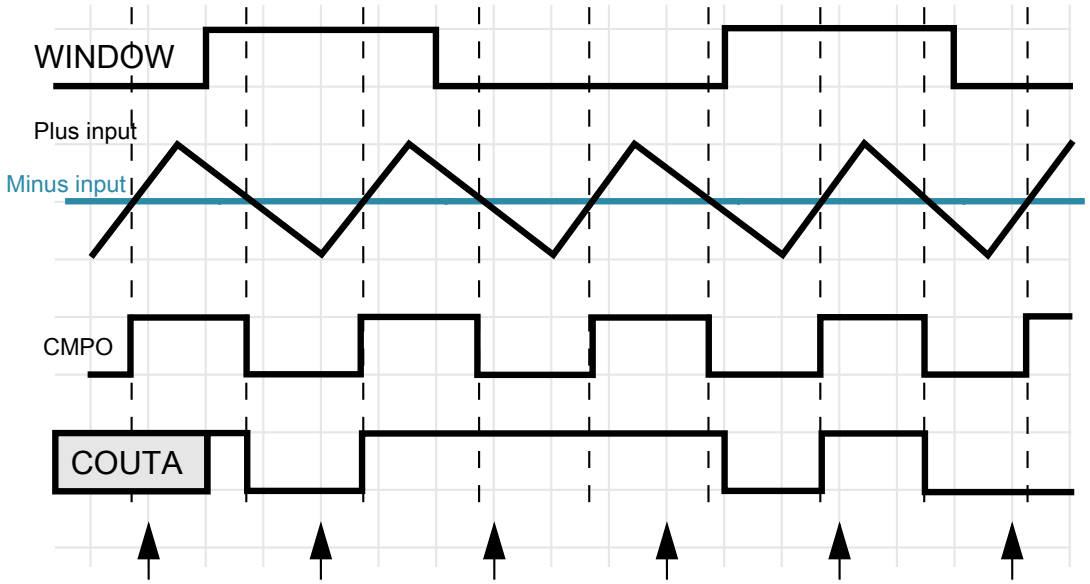


Figure 34-8. Windowed mode operation

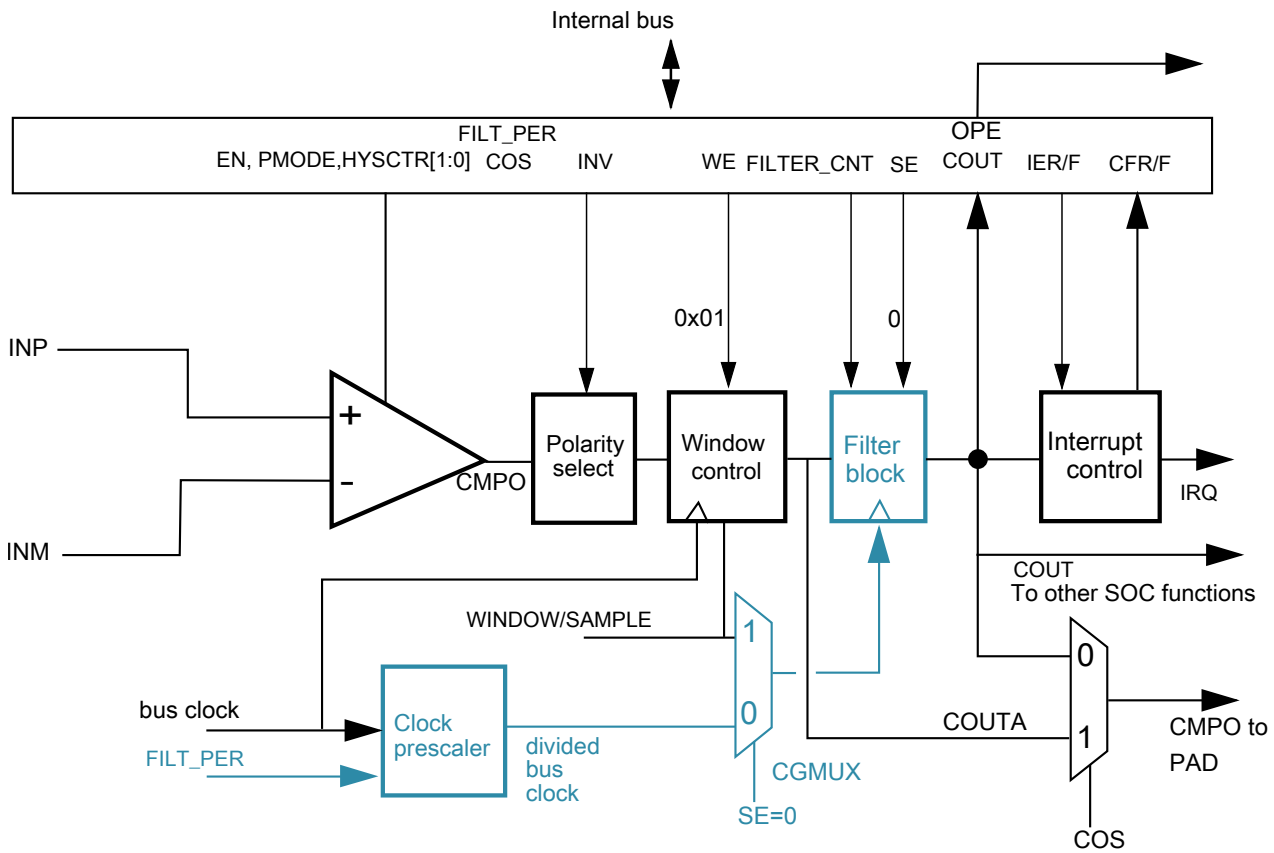


Figure 34-9. Windowed mode

For control configurations which result in disabling the filter block, see Filter Block Bypass Logic diagram.

When any windowed mode is active, COUTA is clocked by the bus clock whenever WINDOW = 1. The last latched value is held when WINDOW = 0.

34.4.1.6 Windowed/Resampled mode (# 6)

The following figure uses the same input stimulus shown in Figure 34-8, and adds resampling of COUTA to generate COUT. Samples are taken at the time points indicated by the arrows in the figure. Again, prop delays and latency are ignored for the sake of clarity.

This example was generated solely to demonstrate operation of the comparator in windowed/resampled mode, and does not reflect any specific application. Depending upon the sampling rate and window placement, COUT may not see zero-crossing events detected by the analog comparator. Sampling period and/or window placement must be carefully considered for a given application.

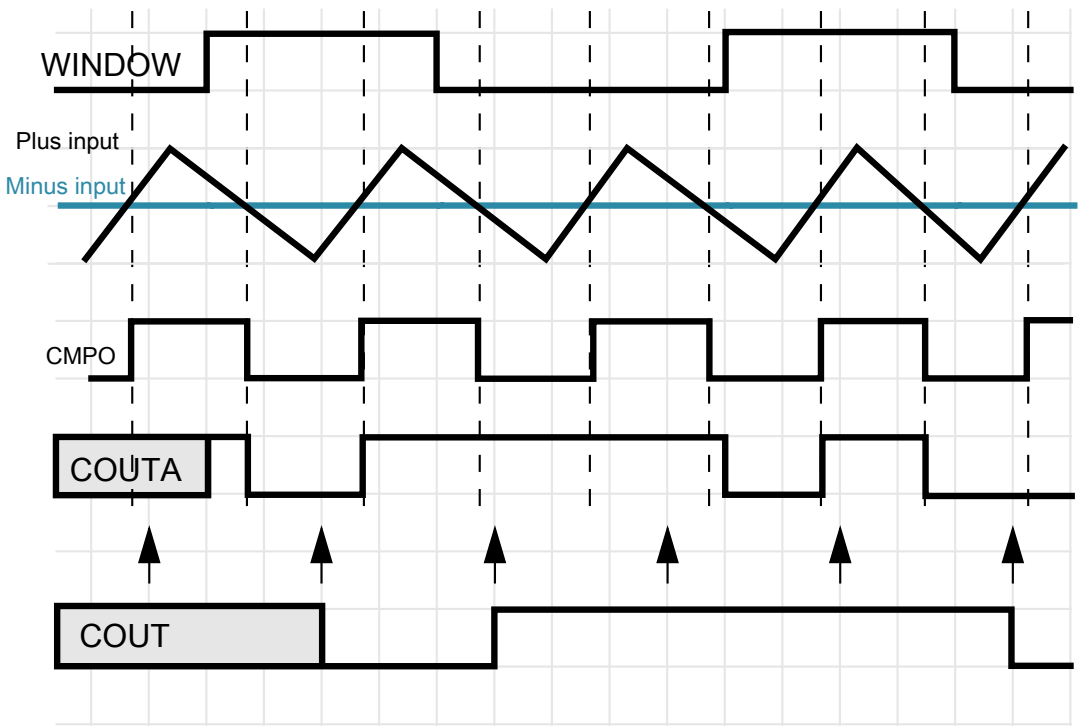


Figure 34-10. Windowed/resampled mode operation

This mode of operation results in an unfiltered string of comparator samples where the interval between the samples is determined by FPR[FILT_PER] and the bus clock rate. Configuration for this mode is virtually identical to that for the Windowed/Filtered Mode shown in the next section. The only difference is that the value of CR0[FILTER_CNT] must be 1.

34.4.1.7 Windowed/Filtered mode (#7)

This is the most complex mode of operation for the comparator block, as it uses both windowing and filtering features. It also has the highest latency of any of the modes. This can be approximated: up to 1 bus clock synchronization in the window function + ((CR0[FILTER_CNT] * FPR[FILT_PER]) + 1) * bus clock for the filter function.

When any windowed mode is active, COUTA is clocked by the bus clock whenever WINDOW = 1. The last latched value is held when WINDOW = 0.

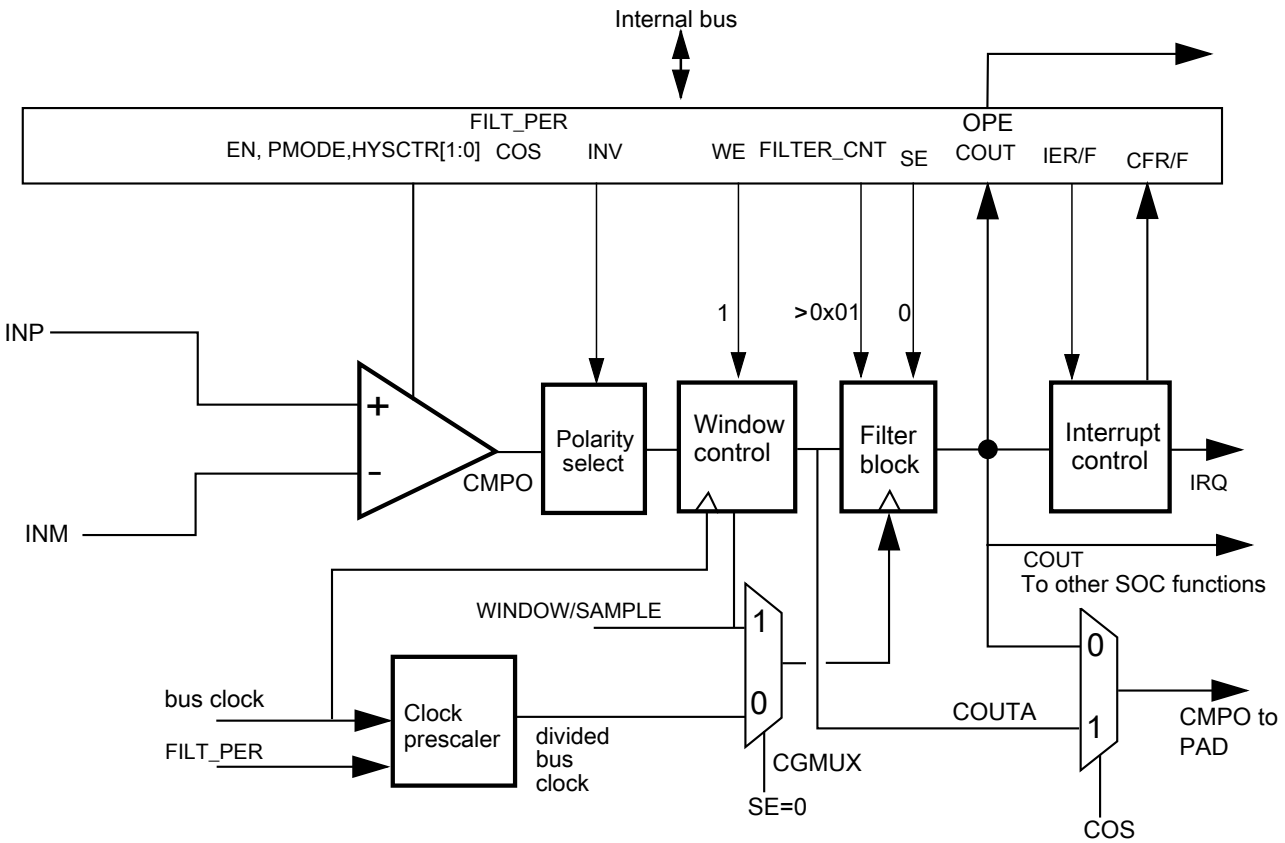


Figure 34-11. Windowed/Filtered mode

34.4.2 Power modes

34.4.2.1 Wait mode operation

During Wait and VLPW modes, the CMP, if enabled, continues to operate normally and a CMP interrupt can wake the MCU.

34.4.2.2 Stop mode operation

Depending on clock restrictions related to the MCU core or core peripherals, the MCU is brought out of stop when a compare event occurs and the corresponding interrupt is enabled. Similarly, if CR1[OPE] is enabled, the comparator output operates as in the normal operating mode and comparator output is placed onto the external pin. In Stop modes, the comparator can be operational in both:

- High-Speed (HS) Comparison mode when CR1[PMODE] = 1
- Low-Speed (LS) Comparison mode when CR1[PMODE] = 0

It is recommended to use the LS mode to minimize power consumption.

If stop is exited with a reset, all comparator registers are put into their reset state.

34.4.2.3 Low-Leakage mode operation

When the chip is in Low-Leakage modes:

- The CMP module is partially functional and is limited to Low-Speed mode, regardless of CR1[PMODE] setting
- Windowed, Sampled, and Filtered modes are not supported
- The CMP output pin is latched and does not reflect the compare output state.

The positive- and negative-input voltage can be supplied from external pins or the DAC output. The MCU can be brought out of the Low-Leakage mode if a compare event occurs and the CMP interrupt is enabled. After wakeup from low-leakage modes, the CMP module is in the reset state except for SCR[CFF] and SCR[CFR].

34.4.3 Startup and operation

A typical startup sequence is listed here.

- The time required to stabilize COUT will be the power-on delay of the comparators plus the largest propagation delay from a selected analog source through the analog comparator, windowing function and filter. See the Data Sheets for power-on delays of the comparators. The windowing function has a maximum of one bus clock period delay. The filter delay is specified in the Low-pass filter.
- During operation, the propagation delay of the selected data paths must always be considered. It may take many bus clock cycles for COUT and SCR[CFR]/SCR[CFF]

to reflect an input change or a configuration change to one of the components involved in the data path.
- When programmed for filtering modes, COUT will initially be equal to 0, until sufficient clock cycles have elapsed to fill all stages of the filter. This occurs even if COUTA is at a logic 1.

34.4.4 Low-pass filter

The low-pass filter operates on the unfiltered and unsynchronized and optionally inverted comparator output COUTA and generates the filtered and synchronized output COUT.

Both COUTA and COUT can be configured as module outputs and are used for different purposes within the system.

Synchronization and edge detection are always used to determine status register bit values. They also apply to COUT for all sampling and windowed modes. Filtering can be performed using an internal timebase defined by FPR[FILT_PER], or using an external SAMPLE input to determine sample time.

The need for digital filtering and the amount of filtering is dependent on user requirements. Filtering can become more useful in the absence of an external hysteresis circuit. Without external hysteresis, high-frequency oscillations can be generated at COUTA when the selected INM and INP input voltages differ by less than the offset voltage of the differential comparator.

34.4.4.1 Enabling filter modes

Filter modes can be enabled by:

- Setting CR0[FILTER_CNT] > 0x01 and
- Setting FPR[FILT_PER] to a nonzero value or setting CR1[SE]=1

If using the divided bus clock to drive the filter, it will take samples of COUTA every FPR[FILT_PER] bus clock cycles.

The filter output will be at logic 0 when first initalized, and will subsequently change when all the consecutive CR0[FILTER_CNT] samples agree that the output value has changed. In other words, SCR[COUT] will be 0 for some initial period, even when COUTA is at logic 1.

Setting both CR1[SE] and FPR[FILT_PER] to 0 disables the filter and eliminates switching current associated with the filtering process.

Note

Always switch to this setting prior to making any changes in filter parameters. This resets the filter to a known state. Switching CR0[FILTER_CNT] on the fly without this intermediate step can result in unexpected behavior.

If CR1[SE]=1, the filter takes samples of COUTA on each positive transition of the sample input. The output state of the filter changes when all the consecutive CR0[FILTER_CNT] samples agree that the output value has changed.

34.4.4.2 Latency issues

The value of FPR[FILT_PER] or SAMPLE period must be set such that the sampling period is just longer than the period of the expected noise. This way a noise spike will corrupt only one sample. The value of CR0[FILTER_CNT] must be chosen to reduce the probability of noisy samples causing an incorrect transition to be recognized. The probability of an incorrect transition is defined as the probability of an incorrect sample raised to the power of CR0[FILTER_CNT].

The values of FPR[FILT_PER] or SAMPLE period and CR0[FILTER_CNT] must also be traded off against the desire for minimal latency in recognizing actual comparator output transitions. The probability of detecting an actual output change within the nominal latency is the probability of a correct sample raised to the power of CR0[FILTER_CNT].

The following table summarizes maximum latency values for the various modes of operation *in the absence of noise*. Filtering latency is restarted each time an actual output transition is masked by noise.

Table 34-3. Comparator sample/filter maximum latencies

Mode #	CR1[EN]	CR1[WE]	CR1[SE]	CR0[FILTER_CNT]	FPR[FILT_PER]	Operation	Maximum latency[1]
1	0	X	X	X	X	Disabled	N/A
2A	1	0	0	0x00	X	Continuous Mode	T_{PD}
2B	1	0	0	X	0x00		
3A	1	0	1	0x01	X	Sampled, Non-Filtered mode	$T_{PD} + T_{SAMPLE} + T_{per}$
3B	1	0	0	0x01	> 0x00		T_{PD} + (FPR[FILT_PER] * T_{per}) + T_{per}
4A	1	0	1	> 0x01	X	Sampled, Filtered mode	T_{PD} + (CR0[FILTER_CNT] * T_{SAMPLE}) + T_{per}
4B	1	0	0	> 0x01	> 0x00		T_{PD} + (CR0[FILTER_CNT] * FPR[FILT_PER] x T_{per}) + T_{per}

Table continues on the next page...

Table 34-3. Comparator sample/filter maximum latencies (continued)

Mode #	CR1[EN]	CR1[WE]	CR1[SE]	CR0[FILTER_CNT]	FPR[FILT_PER]	Operation	Maximum latency[1]
5A	1	1	0	0x00	X	Windowed mode	$T_{PD} + T_{per}$
5B	1	1	0	X	0x00		$T_{PD} + T_{per}$
6	1	1	0	0x01	0x01 - 0xFF	Windowed / Resampled mode	T_{PD} + (FPR[FILT_PER] * T_{per}) + $2T_{per}$
7	1	1	0	> 0x01	0x01 - 0xFF	Windowed / Filtered mode	T_{PD} + (CR0[FILTER_CNT] * FPR[FILT_PER] x T_{per}) + $2T_{per}$

1. T_{PD} represents the intrinsic delay of the analog component plus the polarity select logic. T_{SAMPLE} is the clock period of the external sample clock. T_{per} is the period of the bus clock.

34.5 CMP interrupts

The CMP module is capable of generating an interrupt on either the rising- or falling-edge of the comparator output, or both.

The following table gives the conditions in which the interrupt request is asserted and deasserted.

When	Then
SCR[IER] and SCR[CFR] are set	The interrupt request is asserted
SCR[IEF] and SCR[CFF] are set	The interrupt request is asserted
SCR[IER] and SCR[CFR] are cleared for a rising-edge interrupt	The interrupt request is deasserted
SCR[IEF] and SCR[CFF] are cleared for a falling-edge interrupt	The interrupt request is deasserted

34.6 DMA support

Normally, the CMP generates a CPU interrupt if there is a change on the COUT. When DMA support is enabled by setting SCR[DMAEN] and the interrupt is enabled by setting SCR[IER], SCR[IEF], or both, the corresponding change on COUT forces a DMA transfer request rather than a CPU interrupt instead. When the DMA has completed the transfer, it sends a transfer completing indicator that deasserts the DMA transfer request and clears the flag to allow a subsequent change on comparator output to occur and force another DMA request.

The comparator can remain functional in STOP modes.

When DMA support is enabled by setting SCR[DMAEN] and the interrupt is enabled by setting SCR[IER], SCR[IEF], or both, the corresponding change on COUT forces a DMA transfer request to wake up the system from STOP modes. After the data transfer has finished, system will go back to STOP modes. Refer to DMA chapters in the device reference manual for the asynchronous DMA function for details.

34.7 CMP Asynchronous DMA support

The comparator can remain functional in STOP modes.

When DMA support is enabled by setting SCR[DMAEN] and the interrupt is enabled by setting SCR[IER], SCR[IEF], or both, the corresponding change on COUT forces a DMA transfer request to wake up the system from STOP modes. After the data transfer has finished, system will go back to STOP modes. Refer to DMA chapters in the device reference manual for the asynchronous DMA function for details.

34.8 Digital-to-analog converter

The figure found here shows the block diagram of the DAC module.

It contains a 64-tap resistor ladder network and a 64-to-1 multiplexer, which selects an output voltage from one of 64 distinct levels that outputs from DACO. It is controlled through the DAC Control Register (DACCR). Its supply reference source can be selected from two sources V_{in1} and V_{in2}. The module can be powered down or disabled when not in use. When in Disabled mode, DACO is connected to the analog ground.

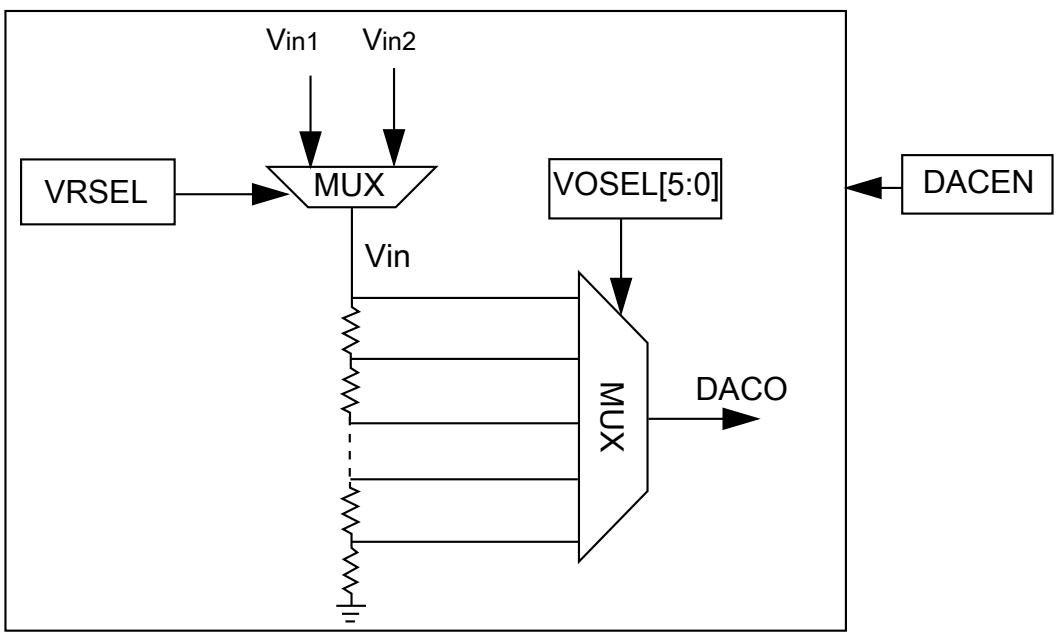


Figure 34-12. 6-bit DAC block diagram

34.9 DAC functional description

This section provides DAC functional description information.

34.9.1 Voltage reference source select

- V_{in1} connects to the primary voltage source as supply reference of 64 tap resistor ladder
- V_{in2} connects to an alternate voltage source

34.10 DAC resets

This module has a single reset input, corresponding to the chip-wide peripheral reset.

34.11 DAC clocks

This module has a single clock input, the bus clock.

34.12 DAC interrupts

This module has no interrupts.

Chapter 35
12-bit Digital-to-Analog Converter (DAC)

35.1 Chip-specific Information for this Module

35.1.1 12-bit DAC Overview

This device contains one 12-bit digital-to-analog converter (DAC) with programmable reference generator output. The DAC includes a FIFO for DMA support.

35.1.2 12-bit DAC Output

The output of the DAC can be placed on an external pin or set as one of the inputs to the analog comparator or ADC.

35.1.3 12-bit DAC Reference

For this device only VDDA can be as the DAC reference. There is no impact by DACx_C0[DACRFS] control bit.

35.2 Introduction

The 12-bit digital-to-analog converter (DAC) is a low-power, general-purpose DAC. The output of the DAC can be placed on an external pin or set as one of the inputs to the analog comparator, op-amps, or ADC.

35.3 Features

The features of the DAC module include:

- On-chip programmable reference generator output. The voltage output range is from 1⁄4096 V_{in} to V_{in}, and the step is 1⁄4096 V_{in}, where V_{in} is the input voltage.
- V_{in} can be selected from two reference sources
- Static operation in Normal Stop mode
- 16-word data buffer supported with configurable watermark and multiple operation modes
- DMA support

35.4 Block diagram

The block diagram of the DAC module is as follows:

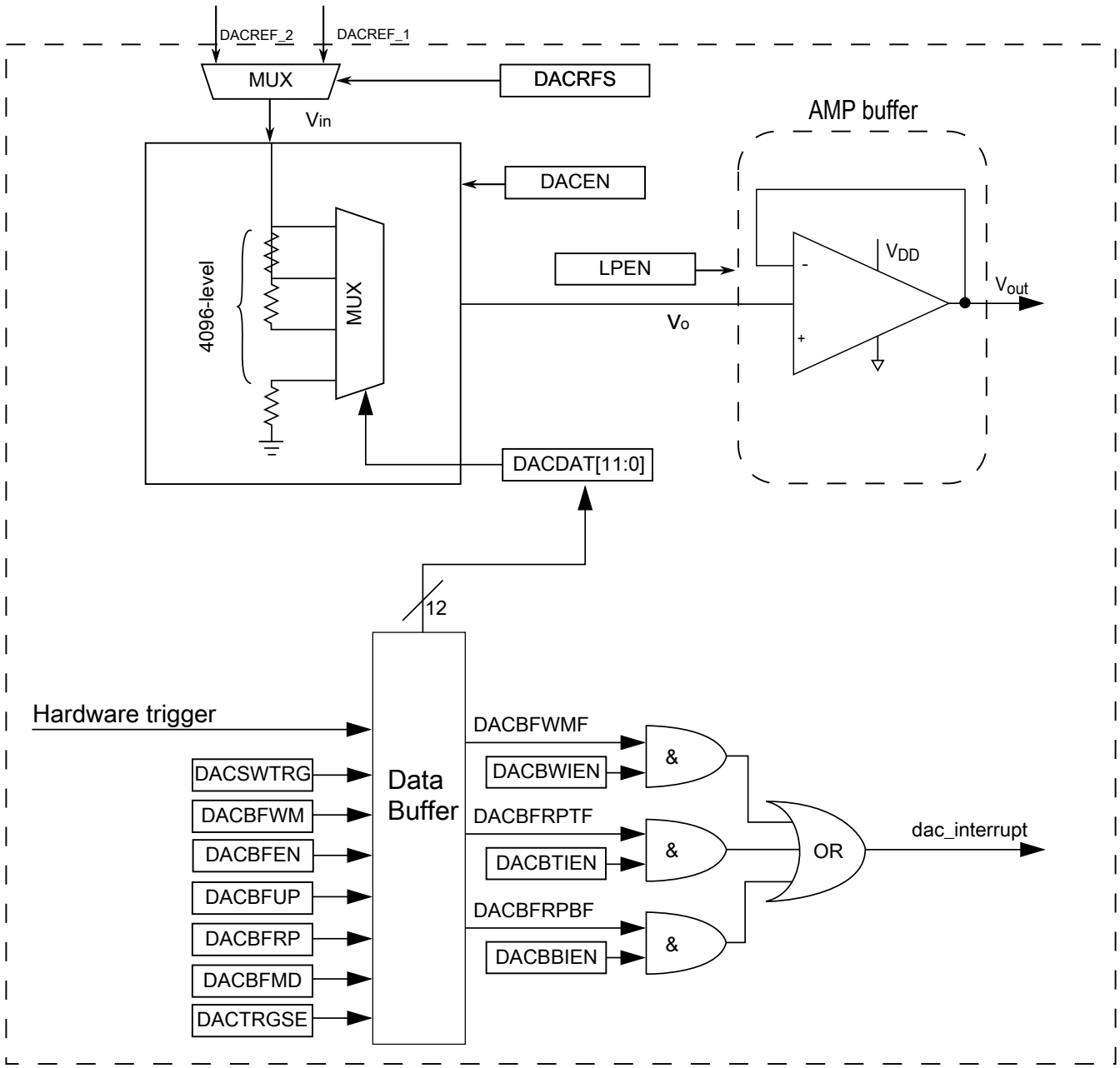


Figure 35-1. DAC block diagram

35.5 Memory map/register definition

The DAC has registers to control analog comparator and programmable voltage divider to perform the digital-to-analog functions.

DAC memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4003_F000	DAC Data Low Register (DAC0_DAT0L)	8	R/W	00h	35.5.1/753
4003_F001	DAC Data High Register (DAC0_DAT0H)	8	R/W	00h	35.5.2/753
4003_F002	DAC Data Low Register (DAC0_DAT1L)	8	R/W	00h	35.5.1/753
4003_F003	DAC Data High Register (DAC0_DAT1H)	8	R/W	00h	35.5.2/753
4003_F004	DAC Data Low Register (DAC0_DAT2L)	8	R/W	00h	35.5.1/753
4003_F005	DAC Data High Register (DAC0_DAT2H)	8	R/W	00h	35.5.2/753
4003_F006	DAC Data Low Register (DAC0_DAT3L)	8	R/W	00h	35.5.1/753
4003_F007	DAC Data High Register (DAC0_DAT3H)	8	R/W	00h	35.5.2/753
4003_F008	DAC Data Low Register (DAC0_DAT4L)	8	R/W	00h	35.5.1/753
4003_F009	DAC Data High Register (DAC0_DAT4H)	8	R/W	00h	35.5.2/753
4003_F00A	DAC Data Low Register (DAC0_DAT5L)	8	R/W	00h	35.5.1/753
4003_F00B	DAC Data High Register (DAC0_DAT5H)	8	R/W	00h	35.5.2/753
4003_F00C	DAC Data Low Register (DAC0_DAT6L)	8	R/W	00h	35.5.1/753
4003_F00D	DAC Data High Register (DAC0_DAT6H)	8	R/W	00h	35.5.2/753
4003_F00E	DAC Data Low Register (DAC0_DAT7L)	8	R/W	00h	35.5.1/753
4003_F00F	DAC Data High Register (DAC0_DAT7H)	8	R/W	00h	35.5.2/753
4003_F010	DAC Data Low Register (DAC0_DAT8L)	8	R/W	00h	35.5.1/753
4003_F011	DAC Data High Register (DAC0_DAT8H)	8	R/W	00h	35.5.2/753
4003_F012	DAC Data Low Register (DAC0_DAT9L)	8	R/W	00h	35.5.1/753
4003_F013	DAC Data High Register (DAC0_DAT9H)	8	R/W	00h	35.5.2/753
4003_F014	DAC Data Low Register (DAC0_DAT10L)	8	R/W	00h	35.5.1/753
4003_F015	DAC Data High Register (DAC0_DAT10H)	8	R/W	00h	35.5.2/753
4003_F016	DAC Data Low Register (DAC0_DAT11L)	8	R/W	00h	35.5.1/753
4003_F017	DAC Data High Register (DAC0_DAT11H)	8	R/W	00h	35.5.2/753
4003_F018	DAC Data Low Register (DAC0_DAT12L)	8	R/W	00h	35.5.1/753
4003_F019	DAC Data High Register (DAC0_DAT12H)	8	R/W	00h	35.5.2/753
4003_F01A	DAC Data Low Register (DAC0_DAT13L)	8	R/W	00h	35.5.1/753
4003_F01B	DAC Data High Register (DAC0_DAT13H)	8	R/W	00h	35.5.2/753
4003_F01C	DAC Data Low Register (DAC0_DAT14L)	8	R/W	00h	35.5.1/753
4003_F01D	DAC Data High Register (DAC0_DAT14H)	8	R/W	00h	35.5.2/753
4003_F01E	DAC Data Low Register (DAC0_DAT15L)	8	R/W	00h	35.5.1/753
4003_F01F	DAC Data High Register (DAC0_DAT15H)	8	R/W	00h	35.5.2/753
4003_F020	DAC Status Register (DAC0_SR)	8	R/W	02h	35.5.3/754
4003_F021	DAC Control Register (DAC0_C0)	8	R/W	00h	35.5.4/755
4003_F022	DAC Control Register 1 (DAC0_C1)	8	R/W	00h	35.5.5/756
4003_F023	DAC Control Register 2 (DAC0_C2)	8	R/W	0Fh	35.5.6/757

35.5.1 DAC Data Low Register (DAC*x*_DAT*n*L)

Address: 4003_F000h base + 0h offset + (2d × i), where i=0d to 15d

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	DATA0							
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

DAC*x*_DAT*n*L field descriptions

Field	Description
DATA0	DATA0 When the DAC buffer is not enabled, DATA[11:0] controls the output voltage based on the following formula: $V_{out} = V_{in} * (1 + DACDAT0[11:0])/4096$ When the DAC buffer is enabled, DATA is mapped to the 16-word buffer.

35.5.2 DAC Data High Register (DAC*x*_DAT*n*H)

Address: 4003_F000h base + 1h offset + (2d × i), where i=0d to 15d

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0				DATA1			
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

DAC*x*_DAT*n*H field descriptions

Field	Description
7–4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
DATA1	DATA1 When the DAC Buffer is not enabled, DATA[11:0] controls the output voltage based on the following formula. $V_{out} = V_{in} * (1 + DACDAT0[11:0])/4096$ When the DAC buffer is enabled, DATA[11:0] is mapped to the 16-word buffer.

35.5.3 DAC Status Register (DACx_SR)

If DMA is enabled, the flags can be cleared automatically by DMA when the DMA request is done. Writing 0 to a field clears it whereas writing 1 has no effect. After reset, DACBFRPTF is set and can be cleared by software, if needed. The flags are set only when the data buffer status is changed.

Address: 4003_F000h base + 20h offset = 4003_F020h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0					DACBFWMF	DACBFRPTF	DACBFRPBF
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0

DACx_SR field descriptions

Field	Description
7–3 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
2 DACBFWMF	DAC Buffer Watermark Flag This bit is set if the remaining FIFO data is less than the watermark setting. It is cleared automatically by writing data into FIFO by DMA or CPU. Write to this bit is ignored in FIFO mode. 0 The DAC buffer read pointer has not reached the watermark level. 1 The DAC buffer read pointer has reached the watermark level.
1 DACBFRPTF	DAC Buffer Read Pointer Top Position Flag In FIFO mode, it is FIFO nearly empty flag. It is set when only one data remains in FIFO. Any DAC trigger does not increase the Read Pointer if this bit is set to avoid any possible glitch or abrupt change at DAC output. It is cleared automatically if FIFO is not empty. 0 The DAC buffer read pointer is not zero. 1 The DAC buffer read pointer is zero.
0 DACBFRPBF	DAC Buffer Read Pointer Bottom Position Flag In FIFO mode, it is FIFO FULL status bit. It means FIFO read pointer equals Write Pointer because of Write Pointer increase. If this bit is set, any write to FIFO from either DMA or CPU is ignored by DAC. It is cleared if there is any DAC trigger making the DAC read pointer increase. Write to this bit is ignored in FIFO mode. 0 The DAC buffer read pointer is not equal to C2[DACBFUP]. 1 The DAC buffer read pointer is equal to C2[DACBFUP].

35.5.4 DAC Control Register (DACx_C0)

Address: 4003_F000h base + 21h offset = 4003_F021h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	DACEN	DACRFS	DACTRGSEL	0	LPEN	DACBWIEN	DACBTIEN	DACBBIEN
Write				DACSWTRG				
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

DACx_C0 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 DACEN	DAC Enable Starts the Programmable Reference Generator operation. 0 The DAC system is disabled. 1 The DAC system is enabled.
6 DACRFS	DAC Reference Select 0 The DAC selects DACREF_1 as the reference voltage. 1 The DAC selects DACREF_2 as the reference voltage.
5 DACTRGSEL	DAC Trigger Select 0 The DAC hardware trigger is selected. 1 The DAC software trigger is selected.
4 DACSWTRG	DAC Software Trigger Active high. This is a write-only field, which always reads 0. If DAC software trigger is selected and buffer is enabled, writing 1 to this field will advance the buffer read pointer once. 0 The DAC soft trigger is not valid. 1 The DAC soft trigger is valid.
3 LPEN	DAC Low Power Control **NOTE:** See the 12-bit DAC electrical characteristics of the device data sheet for details on the impact of the modes below. 0 High-Power mode 1 Low-Power mode
2 DACBWIEN	DAC Buffer Watermark Interrupt Enable 0 The DAC buffer watermark interrupt is disabled. 1 The DAC buffer watermark interrupt is enabled.
1 DACBTIEN	DAC Buffer Read Pointer Top Flag Interrupt Enable 0 The DAC buffer read pointer top flag interrupt is disabled. 1 The DAC buffer read pointer top flag interrupt is enabled.
0 DACBBIEN	DAC Buffer Read Pointer Bottom Flag Interrupt Enable

Table continues on the next page...

DACx_C0 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 The DAC buffer read pointer bottom flag interrupt is disabled. 1 The DAC buffer read pointer bottom flag interrupt is enabled.

35.5.5 DAC Control Register 1 (DACx_C1)

Address: 4003_F000h base + 22h offset = 4003_F022h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	DMAEN	0		DACBFWM		DACBFMD		DACBFEN
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

DACx_C1 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 DMAEN	DMA Enable Select 0 DMA is disabled. 1 DMA is enabled. When DMA is enabled, the DMA request will be generated by original interrupts. The interrupts will not be presented on this module at the same time.
6–5 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
4–3 DACBFWM	DAC Buffer Watermark Select In normal mode it controls when SR[DACBFWMF] is set. When the DAC buffer read pointer reaches the word defined by this field, which is 1–4 words away from the upper limit (DACBUP), SR[DACBFWMF] will be set. This allows user configuration of the watermark interrupt. In FIFO mode, it is FIFO watermark select field. 00 In normal mode, 1 word . In FIFO mode, 2 or less than 2 data remaining in FIFO will set watermark status bit. 01 In normal mode, 2 words . In FIFO mode, Max/4 or less than Max/4 data remaining in FIFO will set watermark status bit. 10 In normal mode, 3 words . In FIFO mode, Max/2 or less than Max/2 data remaining in FIFO will set watermark status bit. 11 In normal mode, 4 words . In FIFO mode, Max-2 or less than Max-2 data remaining in FIFO will set watermark status bit.
2–1 DACBFMD	DAC Buffer Work Mode Select 00 Normal mode 01 Swing mode 10 One-Time Scan mode 11 FIFO mode
0 DACBFEN	DAC Buffer Enable 0 Buffer read pointer is disabled. The converted data is always the first word of the buffer. 1 Buffer read pointer is enabled. The converted data is the word that the read pointer points to. It means converted data can be from any word of the buffer.

35.5.6 DAC Control Register 2 (DAC*x*_C2)

Address: 4003_F000h base + 23h offset = 4003_F023h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	DACBFRP				DACBFUP			
Reset	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1

DAC*x*_C2 field descriptions

Field	Description
7–4 DACBFRP	DAC Buffer Read Pointer In normal mode it keeps the current value of the buffer read pointer. FIFO mode, it is the FIFO read pointer. It is writable in FIFO mode. User can configure it to same address to reset FIFO as empty.
DACBFUP	DAC Buffer Upper Limit In normal mode it selects the upper limit of the DAC buffer. The buffer read pointer cannot exceed it. In FIFO mode it is the FIFO write pointer. User cannot set Buffer Up limit in FIFO mode. In Normal mode its reset value is MAX. When IP is configured to FIFO mode, this register becomes Write_Pointer, and its value is initially set to equal READ_POINTER automatically, and the FIFO status is empty. It is writable and user can configure it to the same address to reset FIFO as empty.

35.6 Functional description

The 12-bit DAC module can select one of the two reference inputs—DACREF_1 and DACREF_2 as the DAC reference voltage, V_{in} by C0 [DACRFS]. See the chip-specific DAC information to determine the source options for DACREF_1 and DACREF_2.

When the DAC is enabled, it converts the data in DACDAT0[11:0] or the data from the DAC data buffer to a stepped analog output voltage. The output voltage range is from V_{in} to $V_{in}/4096$, and the step is $V_{in}/4096$.

35.6.1 DAC data buffer operation

When the DAC is enabled and the buffer is not enabled, the DAC module always converts the data in DAT0 to the analog output voltage.

When both the DAC and the buffer are enabled, the DAC converts the data in the data buffer to analog output voltage. The data buffer read pointer advances to the next word whenever a hardware or software trigger event occurs.

The data buffer can be configured to operate in Normal mode, Swing mode, One-Time Scan mode or FIFO mode. When the buffer operation is switched from one mode to another, the read pointer does not change. The read pointer can be set to any value between 0 and C2[DACBFUP] by writing C2[DACBFRP].

35.6.1.1 DAC data buffer interrupts

There are several interrupts and associated flags that can be configured for the DAC buffer. SR[DACBFRPBF] is set when the DAC buffer read pointer reaches the DAC buffer upper limit, that is, C2[DACBFRP] = C2[DACBFUP]. SR[DACBFRPTF] is set when the DAC read pointer is equal to the start position, 0. Finally, SR[DACBFWMF] is set when the DAC buffer read pointer has reached the position defined by C1[DACBFWM]. C1[DACBFWM] can be used to generate an interrupt when the DAC buffer read pointer is between 1 to 4 words from C2[DACBFUP].

35.6.1.2 Modes of DAC data buffer operation

The following table describes the different modes of data buffer operation for the DAC module.

Table 35-1. Modes of DAC data buffer operation

Modes	Description
Buffer Normal mode	This is the default mode. The buffer works as a circular buffer. The read pointer increases by one, every time the trigger occurs. When the read pointer reaches the upper limit, it goes to 0 directly in the next trigger event.
Buffer Swing mode	This mode is similar to the normal mode. However, when the read pointer reaches the upper limit, it does not go to 0. It will descend by 1 in the next trigger events until 0 is reached.
Buffer One-time Scan mode	The read pointer increases by 1 every time the trigger occurs. When it reaches the upper limit, it stops there. If read pointer is reset to the address other than the upper limit, it will increase to the upper address and stop there again. **NOTE:** If the software set the read pointer to the upper limit, the read pointer will not advance in this mode.
FIFO Mode	In FIFO mode, the buffer is organized as a FIFO. For a valid write to any DACDATx, the data is put into the FIFO, and the write pointer is automatically incremented. The module is connected internally to a 32bit interface. For any 16bit or 8bit FIFO access, address bit[1] needs to be 0; otherwise, the write is ignored. For any 32bit FIFO access, the Write_Pointer needs to be an EVEN number; otherwise, the write is ignored.

Table 35-1. Modes of DAC data buffer operation

Modes	Description
	NOTE: A successful 32bit FIFO write will increase the write pointer by 2. Any write will cause the FIFO over-flow will be ignored, the cases includes: 1.FIFO is full, the write will be ignored. 2.FIFO is nearly full (FIFO_SIZE-1), 32bit write will be ignored. **NOTE:** For 8bit write, address bit[0] determine which byte lane will be written to the FIFO according to little endian alignment. Only both byte lanes are written will the write pointer increase. User need to make sure 8bit access happened in pair and both upper & lower bytes are written. There is no requirement on which byte write first. In FIFO mode, there is no change to read access of DACDATx (from normal mode), read to DACDATx will return the DATA addressed by the access address to the data buffer, and both write pointer and read pointer in FIFO mode will NOT be changed by read access. FIFO write can be happened when DAC is not enabled for 1st data conversion enable. But FIFO mode need to work at buffer Enabled at DACC1[DACBFEN]. In FIFO mode, the DATA BUF will be organized as FIFO.

35.6.2 DMA operation

When DMA is enabled, DMA requests are generated instead of interrupt requests. The DMA Done signal clears the DMA request.

The status register flags are still set and are cleared automatically when the DMA completes.

35.6.3 Resets

During reset, the DAC is configured in the default mode and is disabled.

35.6.4 Low-Power mode operation

The following table shows the wait mode and the stop mode operation of the DAC module.

Table 35-2. Modes of operation

Modes of operation	Description
Wait mode	The DAC will operate normally, if enabled.
Stop mode	If enabled, the DAC module continues to operate in Normal Stop mode and the output voltage will hold the value before stop. In low-power stop modes, the DAC is fully shut down.

NOTE

The assignment of module modes to core modes is chip-specific. For module-to-core mode assignments, see the chapter that describes how modules are configured.

Chapter 36
Programmable Delay Block (PDB)

36.1 Chip-specific Information for this Module

36.1.1 PDB Instantiation

36.1.1.1 PDB Output Triggers

Table 36-1. PDB output triggers

Number of PDB channels for ADC trigger	1
Number of pre-triggers per PDB channel	2
Number of DAC triggers	1
Number of PulseOut	1

36.1.1.2 PDB Input Trigger Connections

Table 36-2. PDB Input Trigger Options

PDB Trigger	PDB Input
0000	External Trigger
0001	CMP 0
0010	Reserved
0011	Reserved
0100	PIT Ch 0 Output
0101	PIT Ch 1 Output
0110	PIT Ch 2 Output
0111	PIT Ch 3 Output
1000	TPM0 Overflow

Table continues on the next page...

Table 36-2. PDB Input Trigger Options (continued)

PDB Trigger	PDB Input
1001	TPM1 Overflow
1010	TPM2 Overflow
1011	Reserved
1100	RTC Alarm
1101	RTC Seconds
1110	LPTMR Output
1111	Software Trigger

36.1.2 PDB Module Interconnections

PDB trigger outputs	Connection
Channel 0 triggers	ADC0 trigger
DAC triggers	DAC0 trigger
Pulse-out	Pulse-out connected to each CMP module's sample/window input to control sample operation

36.1.3 Back-to-back acknowledgement connections

Back-to-back operation enables the ADC conversions complete to trigger the next PDB channel pre-trigger and trigger output.

In this MCU, PDB back-to-back operation acknowledgment connections are implemented as follows:

- PDB channel 0 trigger/pre-trigger 0 acknowledgement input: ADC0SC1B_COCO
- PDB channel 0 trigger/pre-trigger 1 acknowledgement input: ADC0SC1A_COCO

So, the back-to-back chain is connected as a ring:

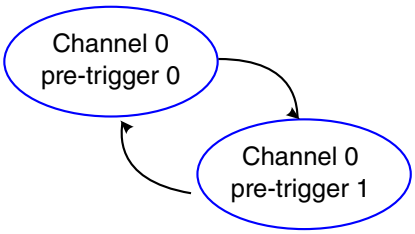


Figure 36-1. PDB back-to-back chain

The application code can set the PDB*x*_CH*n*C1[BB] bits to configure the PDB pre-triggers as a single chain or several chains.

36.1.4 PDB Interval Trigger Connections to DAC

In this MCU, PDB interval trigger connections to DAC are implemented as follows.

- PDB interval trigger 0 connects to DAC0 hardware trigger input.

36.1.5 DAC External Trigger Input Connections

In this MCU, the following DAC external trigger inputs are implemented.

- DAC external trigger input 0: ADC0SC1A_COCO

36.1.6 Pulse-Out Connection

36.1.7 Pulse-Out Enable Register Implementation

The following table shows the comparison of pulse-out enable register at the module and chip level.

Table 36-3. PDB pulse-out enable register

Register	Module implementation	Chip implementation
POnEN	7:0 - POEN 31:8 - Reserved	

36.2 Introduction

The Programmable Delay Block (PDB) provides controllable delays from either an internal or an external trigger, or a programmable interval tick, to the hardware trigger inputs of ADCs and/or generates the interval triggers to DACs, so that the precise timing between ADC conversions and/or DAC updates can be achieved. The PDB can optionally provide pulse outputs (Pulse-Out's) that are used as the sample window in the CMP block.

36.2.1 Features

- Up to 15 trigger input sources and one software trigger source
- Up to 8 configurable PDB channels for ADC hardware trigger
  - One PDB channel is associated with one ADC
  - One trigger output for ADC hardware trigger and up to 8 pre-trigger outputs for ADC trigger select per PDB channel
  - Trigger outputs can be enabled or disabled independently
  - One 16-bit delay register per pre-trigger output
  - Optional bypass of the delay registers of the pre-trigger outputs
  - Operation in One-Shot or Continuous modes
  - Optional back-to-back mode operation, which enables the ADC conversions complete to trigger the next PDB channel
  - One programmable delay interrupt
  - One sequence error interrupt
  - One channel flag and one sequence error flag per pre-trigger
  - DMA support
- Up to 8 pulse outputs (pulse-out's)
  - Pulse-out's can be enabled or disabled independently
  - Programmable pulse width

NOTE

The number of PDB input and output triggers are chip-specific. See the chip-specific PDB information for details.

36.2.2 Implementation

In this section, the following letters refer to the number of output triggers:

- N—Total available number of PDB channels.
- n—PDB channel number, valid from 0 to *N*-1.
- M—Total available pre-trigger per PDB channel.
- m—Pre-trigger number, valid from 0 to *M*-1.
- X—Total number of DAC interval triggers.
- x—DAC interval trigger output number, valid from 0 to *X*-1.
- Y—Total number of Pulse-Out's.
- y—Pulse-Out number, valid value is from 0 to *Y*-1.

NOTE

The number of module output triggers to core is chip-specific. For module to core output triggers implementation, see the chip configuration information.

36.2.3 Back-to-back acknowledgment connections

PDB back-to-back operation acknowledgment connections are chip-specific. For implementation, see the chip configuration information.

36.2.4 DAC External Trigger Input Connections

The implementation of DAC external trigger inputs is chip-specific. See the chip configuration information for details.

36.2.5 Block diagram

This diagram illustrates the major components of the PDB.

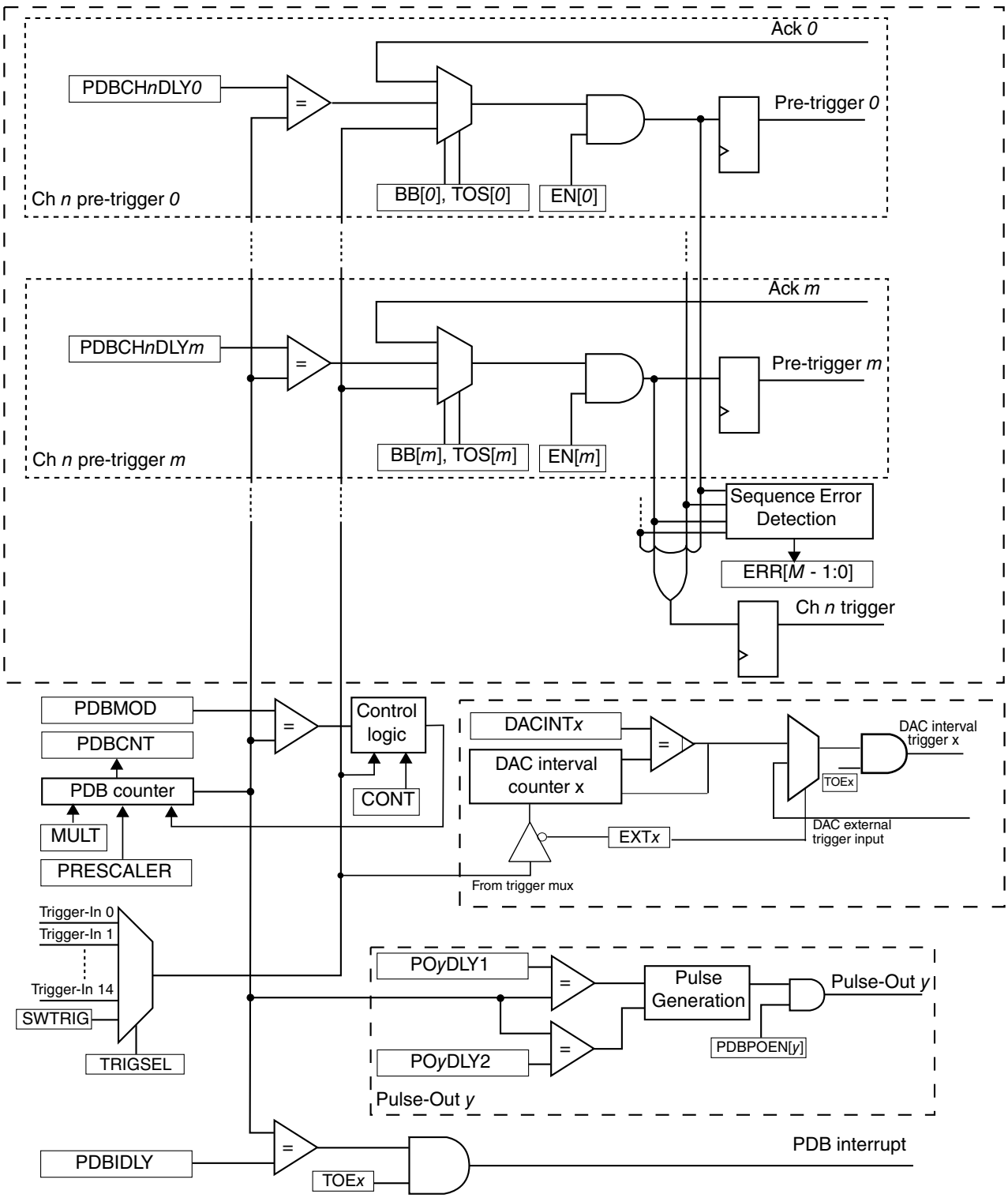


Figure 36-2. PDB block diagram

In this diagram, only one PDB channel *n*, one DAC interval trigger *x*, and one Pulse-Out *y* are shown. The PDB-enabled control logic and the sequence error interrupt logic are not shown.

36.2.6 Modes of operation

PDB ADC trigger operates in the following modes:

- Disabled—Counter is off, all pre-trigger and trigger outputs are low if PDB is not in back-to-back operation of Bypass mode.
- Debug—Counter is paused when processor is in Debug mode, and the counter for the DAC trigger is also paused in Debug mode.
- Enabled One-Shot—Counter is enabled and restarted at count zero upon receiving a positive edge on the selected trigger input source or software trigger is selected and SC[SWTRIG] is written with 1. In each PDB channel, an enabled pre-trigger asserts once per trigger input event. The trigger output asserts whenever any of the pre-triggers is asserted.
- Enabled Continuous—Counter is enabled and restarted at count zero. The counter is rolled over to zero again when the count reaches the value specified in the modulus register, and the counting is restarted. This enables a continuous stream of pre-triggers/trigger outputs as a result of a single trigger input event.
- Enabled Bypassed—The pre-trigger and trigger outputs assert immediately after a positive edge on the selected trigger input source or software trigger is selected and SC[SWTRIG] is written with 1, that is the delay registers are bypassed. It is possible to bypass any one or more of the delay registers; therefore, this mode can be used in conjunction with One-Shot or Continuous mode.

36.3 Memory map and register definition

PDB memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4003_6000	Status and Control register (PDB0_SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	36.3.1/768
4003_6004	Modulus register (PDB0_MOD)	32	R/W	0000_FFFFh	36.3.2/771
4003_6008	Counter register (PDB0_CNT)	32	R	0000_0000h	36.3.3/772
4003_600C	Interrupt Delay register (PDB0_IDLY)	32	R/W	0000_FFFFh	36.3.4/772
4003_6010	Channel n Control register 1 (PDB0_CH0C1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	36.3.5/773

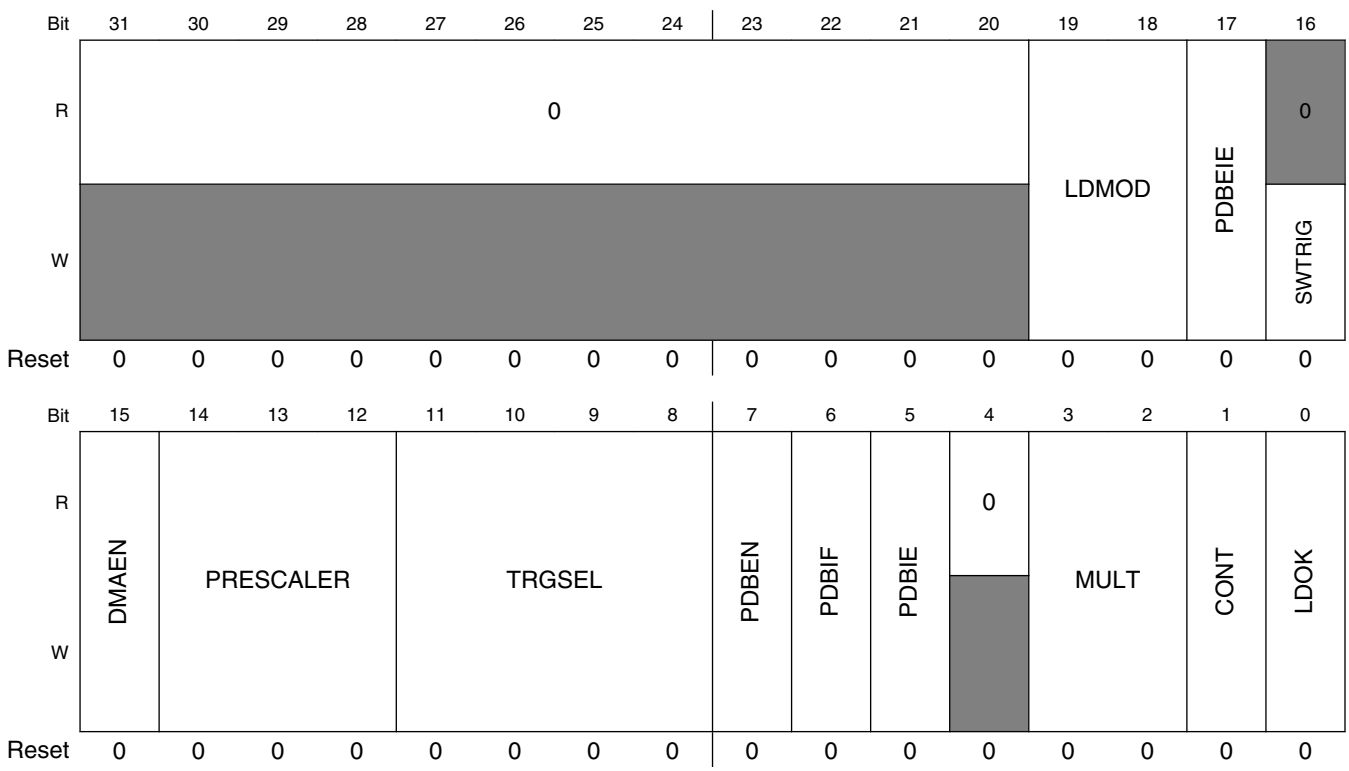
Table continues on the next page...

PDB memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4003_6014	Channel n Status register (PDB0_CH0S)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	36.3.6/774
4003_6018	Channel n Delay 0 register (PDB0_CH0DLY0)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	36.3.7/774
4003_601C	Channel n Delay 1 register (PDB0_CH0DLY1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	36.3.8/775
4003_6150	DAC Interval Trigger n Control register (PDB0_DACINTC0)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	36.3.9/776
4003_6154	DAC Interval n register (PDB0_DACINT0)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	36.3.10/ 776
4003_6190	Pulse-Out n Enable register (PDB0_POEN)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	36.3.11/ 777
4003_6194	Pulse-Out n Delay register (PDB0_PO0DLY)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	36.3.12/ 777

36.3.1 Status and Control register (PDBx_SC)

Address: 4003_6000h base + 0h offset = 4003_6000h



PDBx_SC field descriptions

Field	Description
31–20 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

Table continues on the next page...

PDBx_SC field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
19–18 LDMOD	Load Mode Select Selects the mode to load the MOD, IDLY, CH*n*DLY*m*, INT*x*, and PO*y*DLY registers, after 1 is written to LDOK. 00 The internal registers are loaded with the values from their buffers immediately after 1 is written to LDOK. 01 The internal registers are loaded with the values from their buffers when the PDB counter reaches the MOD register value after 1 is written to LDOK. 10 The internal registers are loaded with the values from their buffers when a trigger input event is detected after 1 is written to LDOK. 11 The internal registers are loaded with the values from their buffers when either the PDB counter reaches the MOD register value or a trigger input event is detected, after 1 is written to LDOK.
17 PDBEIE	PDB Sequence Error Interrupt Enable Enables the PDB sequence error interrupt. When this field is set, any of the PDB channel sequence error flags generates a PDB sequence error interrupt. 0 PDB sequence error interrupt disabled. 1 PDB sequence error interrupt enabled.
16 SWTRIG	Software Trigger When PDB is enabled and the software trigger is selected as the trigger input source, writing 1 to this field resets and restarts the counter. Writing 0 to this field has no effect. Reading this field results 0.
15 DMAEN	DMA Enable When DMA is enabled, the PDBIF flag generates a DMA request instead of an interrupt. 0 DMA disabled. 1 DMA enabled.
14–12 PRESCALER	Prescaler Divider Select 000 Counting uses the peripheral clock divided by multiplication factor selected by MULT. 001 Counting uses the peripheral clock divided by twice of the multiplication factor selected by MULT. 010 Counting uses the peripheral clock divided by four times of the multiplication factor selected by MULT. 011 Counting uses the peripheral clock divided by eight times of the multiplication factor selected by MULT. 100 Counting uses the peripheral clock divided by 16 times of the multiplication factor selected by MULT. 101 Counting uses the peripheral clock divided by 32 times of the multiplication factor selected by MULT. 110 Counting uses the peripheral clock divided by 64 times of the multiplication factor selected by MULT. 111 Counting uses the peripheral clock divided by 128 times of the multiplication factor selected by MULT.
11–8 TRGSEL	Trigger Input Source Select Selects the trigger input source for the PDB. The trigger input source can be internal or external (EXTRG pin), or the software trigger. Refer to chip configuration details for the actual PDB input trigger connections.

Table continues on the next page...

PDBx_SC field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0000 Trigger-In 0 is selected. 0001 Trigger-In 1 is selected. 0010 Trigger-In 2 is selected. 0011 Trigger-In 3 is selected. 0100 Trigger-In 4 is selected. 0101 Trigger-In 5 is selected. 0110 Trigger-In 6 is selected. 0111 Trigger-In 7 is selected. 1000 Trigger-In 8 is selected. 1001 Trigger-In 9 is selected. 1010 Trigger-In 10 is selected. 1011 Trigger-In 11 is selected. 1100 Trigger-In 12 is selected. 1101 Trigger-In 13 is selected. 1110 Trigger-In 14 is selected. 1111 Software trigger is selected.
7 PDBEN	PDB Enable 0 PDB disabled. Counter is off. 1 PDB enabled.
6 PDBIF	PDB Interrupt Flag This field is set when the counter value is equal to the IDLY register. Writing zero clears this field.
5 PDBIE	PDB Interrupt Enable Enables the PDB interrupt. When this field is set and DMAEN is cleared, PDBIF generates a PDB interrupt. 0 PDB interrupt disabled. 1 PDB interrupt enabled.
4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
3–2 MULT	Multiplication Factor Select for Prescaler Selects the multiplication factor of the prescaler divider for the counter clock. 00 Multiplication factor is 1. 01 Multiplication factor is 10. 10 Multiplication factor is 20. 11 Multiplication factor is 40.
1 CONT	Continuous Mode Enable Enables the PDB operation in Continuous mode. 0 PDB operation in One-Shot mode 1 PDB operation in Continuous mode
0 LDOK	Load OK

Table continues on the next page...

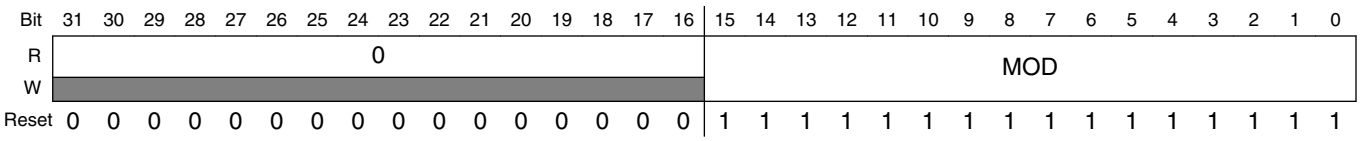
PDBx_SC field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	Writing 1 to LDOK bit updates the MOD, IDLY, CHnDLYm, DACINTx, and POyDLY registers with the values previously written to their internal buffers (and stored there). The new values of MOD, IDLY, CHnDLYm, DACINTx, and POyDLY registers will take effect according to the setting of the LDMOD field (Load Mode Select). Before 1 is written to the LDOK field, the values in the internal buffers of these registers are not effective, and new values cannot be written to the internal buffers until the existing values in the internal buffers are loaded into their corresponding registers. • LDOK can be written only when PDBEN is set, or LDOK can be written at the same time when PDBEN is written to 1. • LDOK is automatically cleared when the values in the internal buffers are loaded into the registers or when PDBEN bit (PDB Enable) is cleared. • Writing 0 to LDOK has no effect.

36.3.2 Modulus register (PDBx_MOD)

Note: This register is internally buffered, and any values written to the register are written to its internal buffer instead; in other words, the internal device bus does not write directly to this register. The value in this register's internal buffer is loaded into this register only after "1" is written to the SC[LDOK] bit.

Address: 4003_6000h base + 4h offset = 4003_6004h

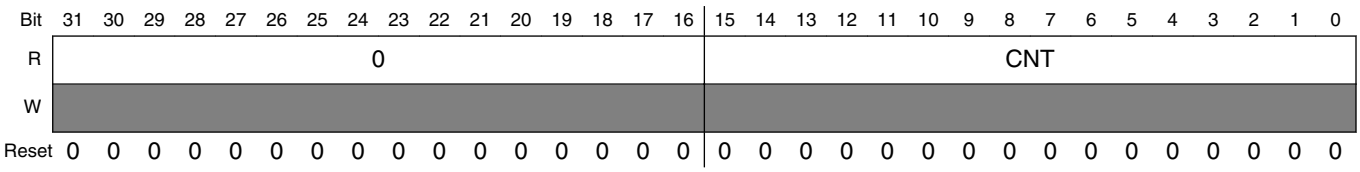


PDBx_MOD field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
MOD	PDB Modulus Specifies the period of the counter. When the counter reaches this value, it will be reset back to zero. If the PDB is in Continuous mode, the count begins anew. Reading this field returns the value of the internal register that is effective for the current cycle of PDB.

36.3.3 Counter register (PDBx_CNT)

Address: 4003_6000h base + 8h offset = 4003_6008h



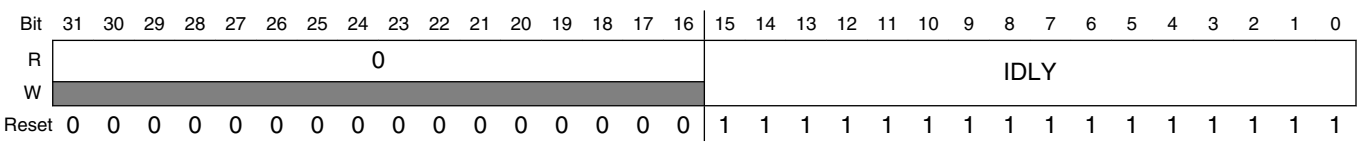
PDBx_CNT field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
CNT	PDB Counter Contains the current value of the counter.

36.3.4 Interrupt Delay register (PDBx_IDLY)

Note: This register is internally buffered, and any values written to the register are written to its internal buffer instead; in other words, the internal device bus does not write directly to this register. The value in this register's internal buffer is loaded into this register only after "1" is written to the SC[LDOK] bit.

Address: 4003_6000h base + Ch offset = 4003_600Ch



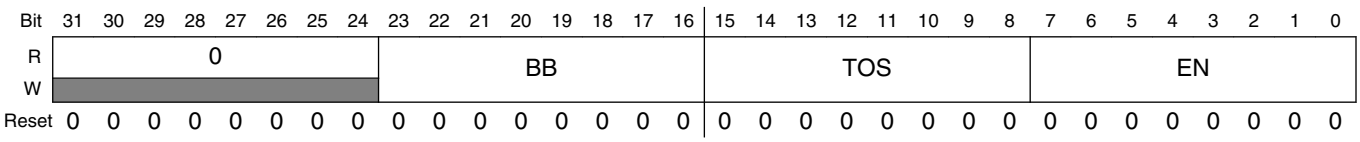
PDBx_IDLY field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
IDLY	PDB Interrupt Delay Specifies the delay value to schedule the PDB interrupt. It can be used to schedule an independent interrupt at some point in the PDB cycle. If enabled, a PDB interrupt is generated, when the counter is equal to the IDLY. Reading this field returns the value of internal register that is effective for the current cycle of the PDB.

36.3.5 Channel n Control register 1 (PDB*x*_CH*n*C1)

Each PDB channel has one control register, CHnC1. The fields in this register control the functionality of each PDB channel operation.

Address: 4003_6000h base + 10h offset + (40d × i), where i=0d to 0d

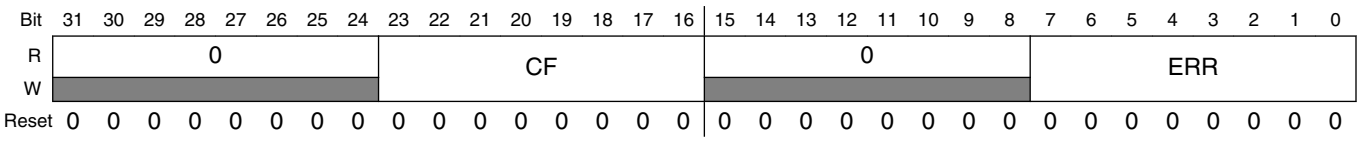


PDB*x*_CH*n*C1 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–24 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
23–16 BB	PDB Channel Pre-Trigger Back-to-Back Operation Enable Enables the PDB ADC pre-trigger operation as back-to-back mode. Only lower M pre-trigger bits are implemented in this MCU. Back-to-back operation enables the ADC conversions complete to trigger the next PDB channel pre-trigger and trigger output, so that the ADC conversions can be triggered on the next set of configuration and results registers. Application code must enable only the back-to-back operation of the PDB pre-triggers at the leading of the back-to-back connection chain. 0 PDB channel's corresponding pre-trigger back-to-back operation disabled. 1 PDB channel's corresponding pre-trigger back-to-back operation enabled.
15–8 TOS	PDB Channel Pre-Trigger Output Select These bits select the PDB ADC pre-trigger outputs. Only lower M pre-trigger bits are implemented in this MCU. 0 PDB channel's corresponding pre-trigger is in bypassed mode. The pre-trigger asserts one peripheral clock cycle after a rising edge is detected on selected trigger input source or software trigger is selected and SWTRIG is written with 1. 1 PDB channel's corresponding pre-trigger asserts when the counter reaches the channel delay register plus one peripheral clock cycle after a rising edge is detected on selected trigger input source or software trigger is selected and SETRIG is written with 1.
EN	PDB Channel Pre-Trigger Enable Enables the PDB ADC pre-trigger outputs. Only lower M pre-trigger fields are implemented in this MCU. 0 PDB channel's corresponding pre-trigger disabled. 1 PDB channel's corresponding pre-trigger enabled.

36.3.6 Channel n Status register (PDBx_CHnS)

Address: 4003_6000h base + 14h offset + (40d × i), where i=0d to 0d



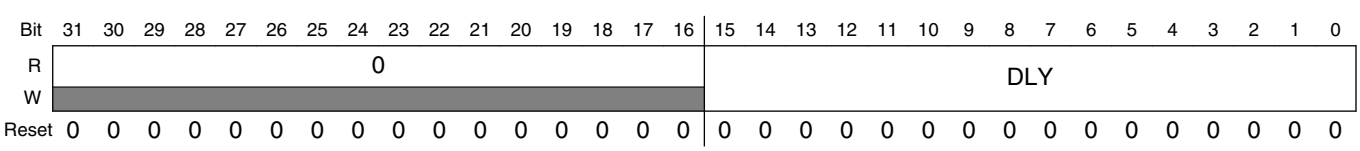
PDBx_CHnS field descriptions

Field	Description
31–24 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
23–16 CF	PDB Channel Flags The CF[*m*] field is set when the PDB counter matches the CH*n*DLY*m*. Write 0 to clear these bits.
15–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
ERR	PDB Channel Sequence Error Flags Only the lower M bits are implemented in this MCU. 0 Sequence error not detected on PDB channel's corresponding pre-trigger. 1 Sequence error detected on PDB channel's corresponding pre-trigger. ADCn block can be triggered for a conversion by one pre-trigger from PDB channel *n*. When one conversion, which is triggered by one of the pre-triggers from PDB channel *n*, is in progress, new trigger from PDB channel's corresponding pre-trigger m cannot be accepted by ADCn, and ERR[m] is set. Writing 0's to clear the sequence error flags.

36.3.7 Channel n Delay 0 register (PDBx_CHnDLY0)

Note: This register is internally buffered, and any values written to the register are written to its internal buffer instead; in other words, the internal device bus does not write directly to this register. The value in this register's internal buffer is loaded into this register only after "1" is written to the SC[LDOK] bit.

Address: 4003_6000h base + 18h offset + (40d × i), where i=0d to 0d



PDBx_CHnDLY0 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
DLY	PDB Channel Delay Specifies the delay value for the channel's corresponding pre-trigger. The pre-trigger asserts when the counter is equal to DLY. Reading this field returns the value of internal register that is effective for the current PDB cycle.

36.3.8 Channel n Delay 1 register (PDBx_CHnDLY1)

Note: This register is internally buffered, and any values written to the register are written to its internal buffer instead; in other words, the internal device bus does not write directly to this register. The value in this register's internal buffer is loaded into this register only after "1" is written to the SC[LDOK] bit.

Address: 4003_6000h base + 1Ch offset + (40d × i), where i=0d to 0d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																DLY															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PDBx_CHnDLY1 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
DLY	PDB Channel Delay These bits specify the delay value for the channel's corresponding pre-trigger. The pre-trigger asserts when the counter is equal to DLY. Reading these bits returns the value of internal register that is effective for the current PDB cycle.

36.3.9 DAC Interval Trigger n Control register (PDBx_DACINTC*n*)

Address: 4003_6000h base + 150h offset + (8d × i), where i=0d to 0d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0														EXT	TOE
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PDBx_DACINTC*n* field descriptions

Field	Description
31–2 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
1 EXT	DAC External Trigger Input Enable This bit enables the external trigger for DAC interval counter. 0 DAC external trigger input disabled. DAC interval counter is reset and started counting when a rising edge is detected on selected trigger input source or software trigger is selected and SWTRIG is written with 1. 1 DAC external trigger input enabled. DAC interval counter is bypassed and DAC external trigger input triggers the DAC interval trigger.
0 TOE	DAC Interval Trigger Enable Enables the DAC interval trigger. 0 DAC interval trigger disabled. 1 DAC interval trigger enabled.

36.3.10 DAC Interval n register (PDBx_DACINT*n*)

Note: This register is internally buffered, and any values written to the register are written to its internal buffer instead; in other words, the internal device bus does not write directly to this register. The value in this register's internal buffer is loaded into this register only after "1" is written to the SC[LDOK] bit.

Address: 4003_6000h base + 154h offset + (8d × i), where i=0d to 0d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																INT															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PDBx_DACINTn field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
INT	DAC Interval These bits specify the interval value for DAC interval trigger. DAC interval trigger triggers DAC[1:0] update when the DAC interval counter is equal to the DACINT. Reading these bits returns the value of internal register that is effective for the current PDB cycle.

36.3.11 Pulse-Out n Enable register (PDBx_POEN)

Address: 4003_6000h base + 190h offset = 4003_6190h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																								POEN							
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PDBx_POEN field descriptions

Field	Description
31–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
POEN	PDB Pulse-Out Enable Enables the pulse output. Only lower Y bits are implemented in this MCU. 0 PDB Pulse-Out disabled 1 PDB Pulse-Out enabled

36.3.12 Pulse-Out n Delay register (PDBx_POnDLY)

Note: This register is internally buffered, and any values written to the register are written to its internal buffer instead; in other words, the internal device bus does not write directly to this register. The value in this register's internal buffer is loaded into this register only after "1" is written to the SC[LDOK] bit.

Address: 4003_6000h base + 194h offset + (4d × i), where i=0d to 0d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	DLY1																DLY2															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PDBx_PO*n*DLY field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 DLY1	PDB Pulse-Out Delay 1 These bits specify the delay 1 value for the PDB Pulse-Out. Pulse-Out goes high when the PDB counter is equal to the DLY1. Reading these bits returns the value of internal register that is effective for the current PDB cycle.
DLY2	PDB Pulse-Out Delay 2 These bits specify the delay 2 value for the PDB Pulse-Out. Pulse-Out goes low when the PDB counter is equal to the DLY2. Reading these bits returns the value of internal register that is effective for the current PDB cycle.

36.4 Functional description

36.4.1 PDB pre-trigger and trigger outputs

The PDB contains a counter whose output is compared to several different digital values. If the PDB is enabled, then a trigger input event will reset the counter and make it start to count. A trigger input event is defined as a rising edge being detected on a selected trigger input source, or if a software trigger is selected and SC[SWTRIG] is written with 1. For each channel, a delay *m* determines the time between assertion of the trigger input event to the time at which changes in the pre-trigger *m* output signal are started. The time is defined as:

- Trigger input event to pre-trigger *m* = (prescaler × multiplication factor × delay *m*) + 2 peripheral clock cycles
- Add 1 additional peripheral clock cycle to determine the time when the channel trigger output changes.

Each channel is associated with 1 ADC block. PDB channel n pre-trigger outputs 0 to *M*; each pre-trigger output is connected to ADC hardware trigger select and hardware trigger inputs. The pre-triggers are used to precondition the ADC block before the actual trigger occurs. When the ADC receives the rising edge of the trigger, the ADC will start the conversion according to the precondition determined by the pre-triggers. The ADC contains *M* sets of configuration and result registers, allowing it to alternate conversions between *M* different analog sources (like a ping-pong game). The pre-trigger outputs are used to specify which signal will be sampled next. When a pre-trigger *m* is asserted, the ADC conversion is triggered with set *m* of the configuration and result registers.

The waveforms shown in the following diagram show the pre-trigger and trigger outputs of PDB channel *n*. The delays can be independently set using the CH*n*DLY*m* registers, and the pre-triggers can be enabled or disabled in CH*n*C1[EN[*m*]].

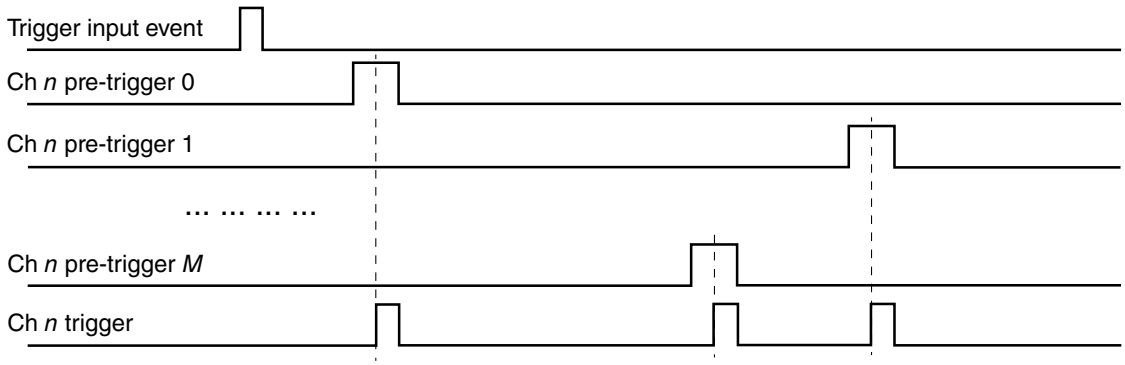


Figure 36-3. Pre-trigger and trigger outputs

The delay in CH*n*DLY*m* register can be optionally bypassed, if CH*n*C1[TOS[*m*]] is cleared. In this case, when the trigger input event occurs, the pre-trigger *m* is asserted after 2 peripheral clock cycles.

The PDB can be configured for back-to-back operation. Back-to-back operation enables the ADC conversion completions to trigger the next PDB channel pre-trigger and trigger outputs, so that the ADC conversions can be triggered on the next set of configuration and results registers. When back-to-back operation is enabled by setting CH*n*C1[BB[*m*]], then the delay *m* is ignored and the pre-trigger *m* is asserted 2 peripheral cycles after the acknowledgment *m* is received. The acknowledgment connections in this MCU are described in Back-to-back acknowledgment connections.

When a pre-trigger from a PDB channel *n* is asserted, the associated lock of the pre-trigger becomes active. The associated lock is released by the rising edge of the corresponding ADC*n*SC1[COCO]; the ADC*n*SC1[COCO] should be cleared after the conversion result is read, so that the next rising edge of ADC*n*SC1[COCO] can be generated to clear the lock later. The lock becomes inactive when:

- the rising edge of corresponding ADC*n*SC1[COCO] occurs,
- or the corresponding PDB pre-trigger is disabled,
- or the PDB is disabled

The channel *n* trigger output is suppressed when any of the locks of the pre-triggers in channel *n* is active. If a new pre-trigger *m* asserts when there is active lock in the PDB channel *n*, then a register flag bit CH*n*S[ERR[*m*]] (associated with the pre-trigger *m*) is set. If SC[PDBEIE] is set, then the sequence error interrupt is generated. A sequence error typically happens because the delay *m* is set too short and the pre-trigger *m* asserts before the previously triggered ADC conversion finishes.

When the PDB counter reaches the value set in IDLY register, the SC[PDBIF] flag is set. A PDB interrupt can be generated if SC[PDBIE] is set and SC[DMAEN] is cleared. If SC[DMAEN] is set, then the PDB requests a DMA transfer when the SC[PDBIF] flag is set.

The modulus value in the MOD register is used to reset the counter back to zero at the end of the count. If SC[CONT] is set, then the counter will then resume a new count; otherwise, the counter operation will stop until the next trigger input event occurs.

36.4.2 PDB trigger input source selection

The PDB has up to 15 trigger input sources, namely Trigger-In 0 to Trigger-In 14. They are connected to on-chip or off-chip event sources. The PDB can be triggered by software through SC[SWTRIG].

For the trigger input sources implemented in this MCU, see chip configuration information.

36.4.3 Pulse-Out's

PDB can generate pulse outputs of configurable width.

- When the PDB counter reaches the value set in PO*y*DLY[DLY1], then the Pulse-Out goes high.
- When the PDB counter reaches PO*y*DLY[DLY2], then it goes low.

PO*y*DLY[DLY2] can be set either greater or less than PO*y*DLY[DLY1].

ADC pre-trigger/trigger outputs and Pulse-Out generation have the same time base, because they both share the PDB counter. The pulse-out connections implemented in this MCU are described in the device's chip configuration details.

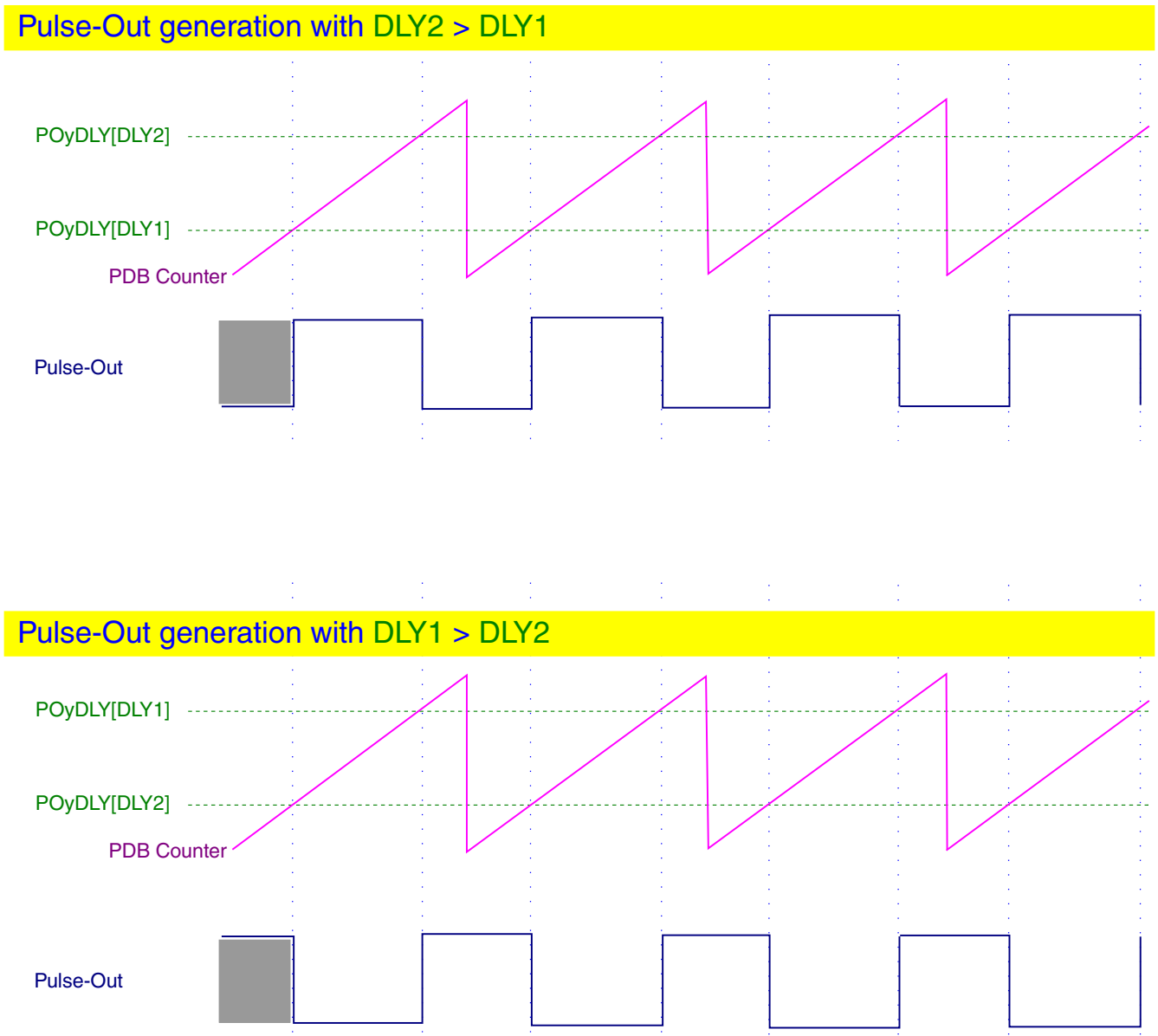


Figure 36-4. How Pulse Out is generated

36.4.4 Updating the delay registers

The following registers control the timing of the PDB operation; and in some of the applications, they may need to become effective at the same time.

- PDB Modulus register (MOD)
- PDB Interrupt Delay register (IDLY)
- PDB Channel *n* Delay *m* register (CH*n*DLY*m*)

- DAC Interval *x* register (DACINT*x*)
- PDB Pulse-Out *y* Delay register (PO*y*DLY)

The internal registers of them are buffered and any values written to them are written first to their buffers. The circumstances that cause their internal registers to be updated with the values from the buffers are summarized as shown in the table below.

Table 36-4. Circumstances of update to the delay registers

SC[LDMOD]	Update to the delay registers
00	The internal registers are loaded with the values from their buffers immediately after 1 is written to SC[LDOK].
01	The PDB counter reaches the MOD register value after 1 is written to SC[LDOK].
10	A trigger input event is detected after 1 is written to SC[LDOK].
11	Either the PDB counter reaches the MOD register value, or a trigger input event is detected, after 1 is written to SC[LDOK].

After 1 is written to SC[LDOK], the buffers cannot be written until the values in buffers are loaded into their internal registers. SC[LDOK] is self-cleared when the internal registers are loaded, so the application code can read it to determine the updates to the internal registers.

The following diagrams show the cases of the internal registers being updated with SC[LDMOD] is 00 and x1.

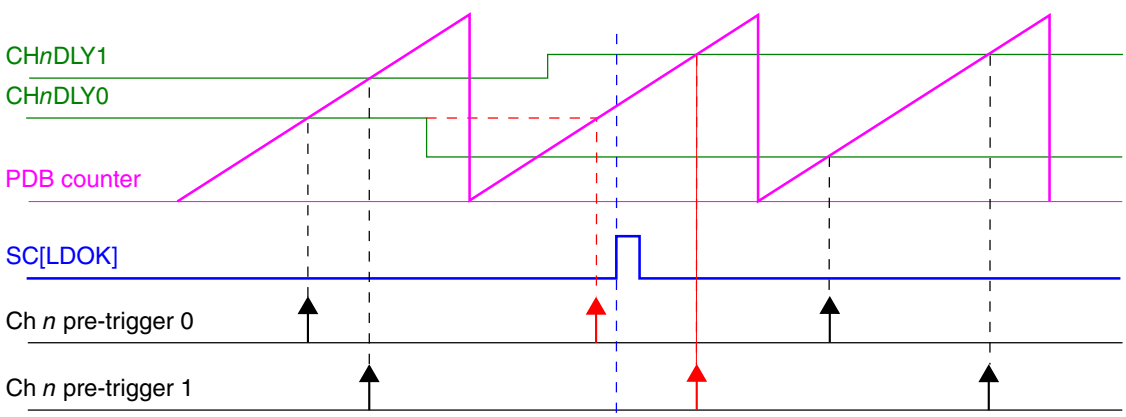


Figure 36-5. Registers update with SC[LDMOD] = 00

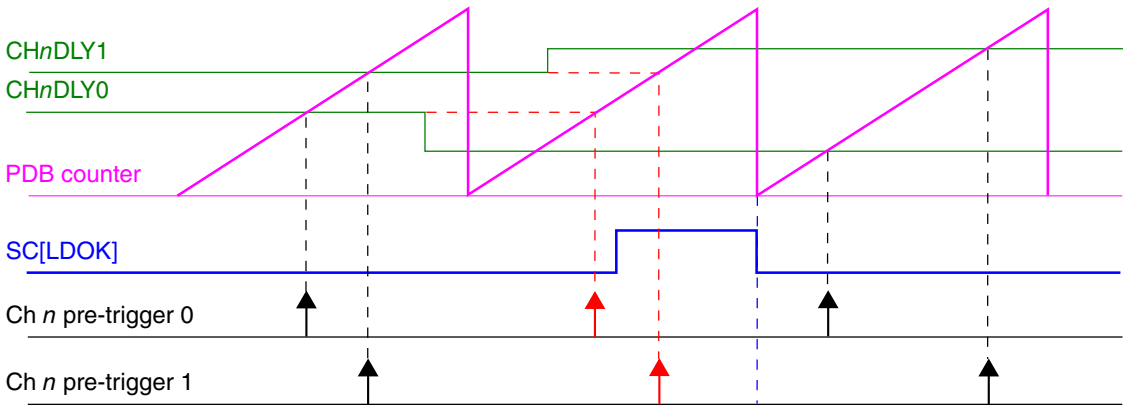


Figure 36-6. Registers update with SC[LDMOD] = x1

36.4.5 Interrupts

PDB can generate two interrupts: PDB interrupt and PDB sequence error interrupt. The following table summarizes the interrupts.

Table 36-5. PDB interrupt summary

Interrupt	Flags	Enable bit
PDB Interrupt	SC[PDBIF]	SC[PDBIE] = 1 and SC[DMAEN] = 0
PDB Sequence Error Interrupt	CH*n*S[ERR*m*]	SC[PDBEIE] = 1

36.4.6 DMA

If SC[DMAEN] is set, PDB can generate a DMA transfer request when SC[PDBIF] is set. When DMA is enabled, the PDB interrupt is not issued.

36.5 Application information

36.5.1 Impact of using the prescaler and multiplication factor on timing resolution

Use of prescaler and multiplication factor greater than 1 limits the count/delay accuracy in terms of peripheral clock cycles (to the modulus of the prescaler X multiplication factor). If the multiplication factor is set to 1 and the prescaler is set to 2 then the only values of total peripheral clocks that can be detected are even values; if prescaler is set to 4 then the only values of total peripheral clocks that can be decoded as detected are mod(4) and so forth. If the applications need a really long delay value and use a prescaler set to 128, then the resolution would be limited to 128 peripheral clock cycles.

Therefore, use the lowest possible prescaler and multiplication factor for a given application.

Chapter 37
Timer/PWM Module (TPM)

37.1 Chip-specific Information for this Module

37.1.1 TPM Instantiation Information

This device contains 3 Low Power TPM modules (TPM). All TPM modules in the device are configured with basic TPM functionality with quadrature decoder function and all can be functional in Stop/VLPS mode. The clock source is either external or internal in Stop/VLPS mode.

The following table shows how these modules are configured.

Table 37-1. TPM configuration

TPM instance	Number of channels	Features/usage
TPM0	6	Quadrature decoder, Basic TPM, functional in Stop/VLPS mode
TPM1	2	Quadrature decoder, Basic TPM,functional in Stop/VLPS mode
TPM2	2	Quadrature decoder, Basic TPM,functional in Stop/VLPS mode

NOTE

As there are only 2 channels (channel 0-1) available on TPM1/TPM2, channel 2-5 related registers (such as Status and Control register, Value register) are not applicable for TPM1/TPM2 on this device.

37.1.2 Clock Options

The TPM blocks are clocked from a single TPM clock that can be selected from OSCERCLK, MCGIRCLK, MCGPLLCLK, or MCGFLLCLK. The selected source is controlled by SIM_SOPT2[TPMSRC] and SIM_SOPT2[PLLFLLSEL]control registers.

Each TPM also supports an external clock mode (TPM_SC[CMOD]=1x) in which the counter increments after a synchronized (to the selected TPM clock source) rising edge detect of an external clock input. The available external clock (either TPM_CLKIN0 or TPM_CLKIN1) is selected by SIM_SOPT9[TPMxCLKSEL] control register. To guarantee valid operation the selected external clock must be less than half the frequency of the selected TPM clock source.

37.1.3 Trigger Options

Each TPM has a selectable trigger input source controlled by the TPMx_CONF[TRGSEL] field to use for starting the counter and/or reloading the counter. The options available are shown in the following table.

Table 37-2. TPM trigger options

TPMx_CONF[TRGSEL]	Selected source
0000	External Trigger
0001	CMP 0
0010	Reserved
0011	Reserved
0100	PIT Ch 0 Output
0101	PIT Ch 1 Output
0110	PIT Ch 2 Output
0111	PIT Ch 3 Output
1000	TPM0 overflow
1001	TPM1 overflow
1010	TPM2 overflow
1011	Reserved
1100	RTC Alarm
1101	RTC Seconds
1110	LPTMR Output
1111	Software Trigger

37.1.4 Global Timebase

Each TPM has a global timebase feature controlled by the TPMx_CONF[GTBEEN] bit. TPM1 is configured as the global time when this option is enabled.

37.1.5 TPM Interrupts

The TPM has multiple sources of interrupt. However, these sources are OR'd together to generate a single interrupt request to the interrupt controller. When an TPM interrupt occurs, read the TPM status registers to determine the exact interrupt source.

37.2 Introduction

The TPM (Timer/PWM Module) is a 2- to 8-channel timer which supports input capture, output compare, and the generation of PWM signals to control electric motor and power management applications.

The counter, compare and capture registers are clocked by an asynchronous clock that can remain enabled in low power modes. An example of using the TPM with the asynchronous DMA is described in AN4631:Using the Asynchronous DMA features of the Kinetis L Series .

37.2.1 TPM Philosophy

The TPM is built upon a very simple timer (HCS08 Timer PWM Module – TPM) used for many years on NXP's 8-bit microcontrollers. The TPM extends the functionality to support operation in low power modes by clocking the counter, compare and capture registers from an asynchronous clock that can remain functional in low power modes.

37.2.2 Features

The TPM features include:

- TPM clock mode is selectable
  - Can increment on every edge of the asynchronous counter clock
  - Can increment on rising edge of an external clock input synchronized to the asynchronous counter clock

- Prescaler divide-by 1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 32, 64, or 128
- TPM includes a 16-bit counter
  - It can be a free-running counter or modulo counter
  - The counting can be up or up-down
- Includes 6 channels that can be configured for input capture, output compare, edge-aligned PWM mode, or center-aligned PWM mode
  - In input capture mode the capture can occur on rising edges, falling edges or both edges
  - In output compare mode the output signal can be set, cleared, pulsed, or toggled on match
  - All channels can be configured for edge-aligned PWM mode or center-aligned PWM mode
- Support the generation of an interrupt and/or DMA request per channel
- Support the generation of an interrupt and/or DMA request when the counter overflows
- Support selectable trigger input to optionally reset or cause the counter to start incrementing.
  - The counter can also optionally stop incrementing on counter overflow
- Support the generation of hardware triggers when the counter overflows and per channel

37.2.3 Modes of operation

During debug mode, the TPM can can be configured to temporarily pause all counting until the core returns to normal user operating mode or to operate normally. When the counter is paused, trigger inputs and input capture events are ignored.

During doze mode, the TPM can be configured to operate normally or to pause all counting for the duration of doze mode. When the counter is paused, trigger inputs and input capture events are ignored.

During stop mode, the TPM counter clock can remain functional and the TPM can generate an asynchronous interrupt to exit the MCU from stop mode.

37.2.4 Block diagram

The TPM uses one input/output (I/O) pin per channel, CHn (TPM channel (n)) where n is the channel number.

The following figure shows the TPM structure. The central component of the TPM is the 16-bit counter with programmable final value and its counting can be up or up-down.

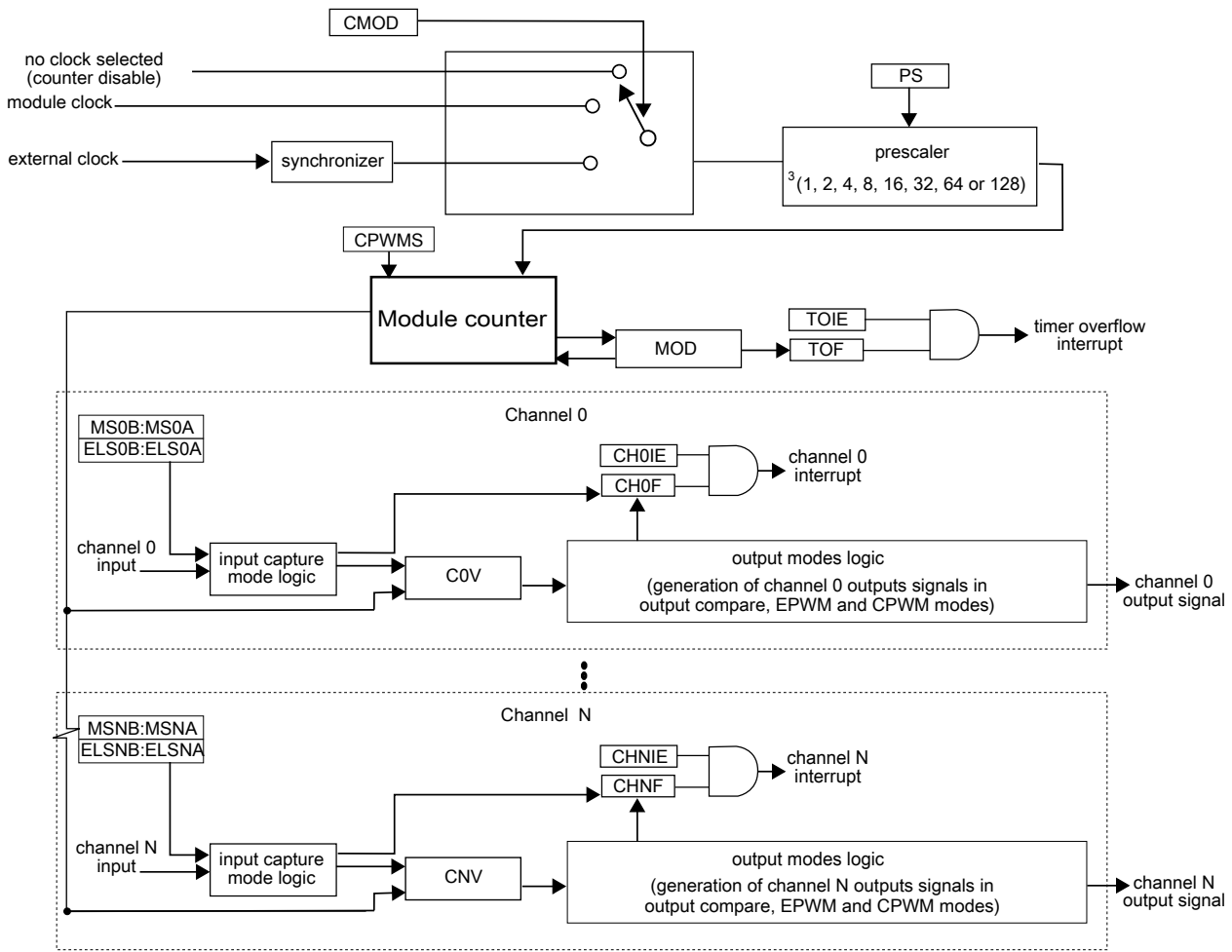


Figure 37-1. TPM block diagram

37.3 TPM Signal Descriptions

Table 37-3 shows the user-accessible signals for the TPM.

Table 37-3. TPM signal descriptions

Signal	Description	I/O
TPM_EXTCLK	External clock. TPM external clock can be selected to increment the TPM counter on every rising edge synchronized to the counter clock.	I
TPM_CHn	TPM channel (n = 5 to 0). A TPM channel pin is configured as output when configured in an output compare or PWM mode and the TPM counter is enabled, otherwise the TPM channel pin is an input.	I/O

37.3.1 TPM_EXTCLK — TPM External Clock

The rising edge of the external input signal is used to increment the TPM counter if selected by CMOD[1:0] bits in the SC register. This input signal must be less than half of the TPM counter clock frequency. The TPM counter prescaler selection and settings are also used when an external input is selected.

37.3.2 TPM_CHn — TPM Channel (n) I/O Pin

Each TPM channel can be configured to operate either as input or output. The direction associated with each channel, input or output, is selected according to the mode assigned for that channel.

37.4 Memory Map and Register Definition

This section provides a detailed description of all TPM registers.

Attempting to access a reserved register location in the TPM memory map will generate a bus error.

TPM memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4003_8000	Version ID Register (TPM0_VERID)	32	R	0500_0007h	37.4.1/793
4003_8004	Parameter Register (TPM0_PARAM)	32	R	See section	37.4.2/793
4003_8008	TPM Global Register (TPM0_GLOBAL)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.3/794
4003_8010	Status and Control (TPM0_SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.4/795
4003_8014	Counter (TPM0_CNT)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.5/796
4003_8018	Modulo (TPM0_MOD)	32	R/W	0000_FFFFh	37.4.6/797

Table continues on the next page...

TPM memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4003_801C	Capture and Compare Status (TPM0_STATUS)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.7/797
4003_8020	Channel (n) Status and Control (TPM0_C0SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.8/799
4003_8024	Channel (n) Value (TPM0_C0V)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.9/801
4003_8028	Channel (n) Status and Control (TPM0_C1SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.8/799
4003_802C	Channel (n) Value (TPM0_C1V)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.9/801
4003_8030	Channel (n) Status and Control (TPM0_C2SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.8/799
4003_8034	Channel (n) Value (TPM0_C2V)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.9/801
4003_8038	Channel (n) Status and Control (TPM0_C3SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.8/799
4003_803C	Channel (n) Value (TPM0_C3V)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.9/801
4003_8040	Channel (n) Status and Control (TPM0_C4SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.8/799
4003_8044	Channel (n) Value (TPM0_C4V)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.9/801
4003_8048	Channel (n) Status and Control (TPM0_C5SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.8/799
4003_804C	Channel (n) Value (TPM0_C5V)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.9/801
4003_8064	Combine Channel Register (TPM0_COMBINE)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.10/ 802
4003_806C	Channel Trigger (TPM0_TRIG)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.11/ 804
4003_8070	Channel Polarity (TPM0_POL)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.12/ 805
4003_8078	Filter Control (TPM0_FILTER)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.13/ 806
4003_8080	Quadrature Decoder Control and Status (TPM0_QDCTRL)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.14/ 807
4003_8084	Configuration (TPM0_CONF)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.15/ 808
4003_9000	Version ID Register (TPM1_VERID)	32	R	0500_0007h	37.4.1/793
4003_9004	Parameter Register (TPM1_PARAM)	32	R	See section	37.4.2/793
4003_9008	TPM Global Register (TPM1_GLOBAL)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.3/794
4003_9010	Status and Control (TPM1_SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.4/795
4003_9014	Counter (TPM1_CNT)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.5/796
4003_9018	Modulo (TPM1_MOD)	32	R/W	0000_FFFFh	37.4.6/797
4003_901C	Capture and Compare Status (TPM1_STATUS)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.7/797
4003_9020	Channel (n) Status and Control (TPM1_C0SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.8/799
4003_9024	Channel (n) Value (TPM1_C0V)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.9/801
4003_9028	Channel (n) Status and Control (TPM1_C1SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.8/799
4003_902C	Channel (n) Value (TPM1_C1V)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.9/801
4003_9030	Channel (n) Status and Control (TPM1_C2SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.8/799
4003_9034	Channel (n) Value (TPM1_C2V)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.9/801
4003_9038	Channel (n) Status and Control (TPM1_C3SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.8/799
4003_903C	Channel (n) Value (TPM1_C3V)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.9/801

Table continues on the next page...

TPM memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4003_9040	Channel (n) Status and Control (TPM1_C4SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.8/799
4003_9044	Channel (n) Value (TPM1_C4V)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.9/801
4003_9048	Channel (n) Status and Control (TPM1_C5SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.8/799
4003_904C	Channel (n) Value (TPM1_C5V)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.9/801
4003_9064	Combine Channel Register (TPM1_COMBINE)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.10/ 802
4003_906C	Channel Trigger (TPM1_TRIG)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.11/ 804
4003_9070	Channel Polarity (TPM1_POL)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.12/ 805
4003_9078	Filter Control (TPM1_FILTER)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.13/ 806
4003_9080	Quadrature Decoder Control and Status (TPM1_QDCTRL)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.14/ 807
4003_9084	Configuration (TPM1_CONF)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.15/ 808
4003_A000	Version ID Register (TPM2_VERID)	32	R	0500_0007h	37.4.1/793
4003_A004	Parameter Register (TPM2_PARAM)	32	R	See section	37.4.2/793
4003_A008	TPM Global Register (TPM2_GLOBAL)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.3/794
4003_A010	Status and Control (TPM2_SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.4/795
4003_A014	Counter (TPM2_CNT)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.5/796
4003_A018	Modulo (TPM2_MOD)	32	R/W	0000_FFFFh	37.4.6/797
4003_A01C	Capture and Compare Status (TPM2_STATUS)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.7/797
4003_A020	Channel (n) Status and Control (TPM2_C0SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.8/799
4003_A024	Channel (n) Value (TPM2_C0V)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.9/801
4003_A028	Channel (n) Status and Control (TPM2_C1SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.8/799
4003_A02C	Channel (n) Value (TPM2_C1V)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.9/801
4003_A030	Channel (n) Status and Control (TPM2_C2SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.8/799
4003_A034	Channel (n) Value (TPM2_C2V)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.9/801
4003_A038	Channel (n) Status and Control (TPM2_C3SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.8/799
4003_A03C	Channel (n) Value (TPM2_C3V)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.9/801
4003_A040	Channel (n) Status and Control (TPM2_C4SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.8/799
4003_A044	Channel (n) Value (TPM2_C4V)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.9/801
4003_A048	Channel (n) Status and Control (TPM2_C5SC)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.8/799
4003_A04C	Channel (n) Value (TPM2_C5V)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.9/801
4003_A064	Combine Channel Register (TPM2_COMBINE)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.10/ 802
4003_A06C	Channel Trigger (TPM2_TRIG)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.11/ 804

Table continues on the next page...

TPM memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4003_A070	Channel Polarity (TPM2_POL)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.12/ 805
4003_A078	Filter Control (TPM2_FILTER)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.13/ 806
4003_A080	Quadrature Decoder Control and Status (TPM2_QDCTRL)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.14/ 807
4003_A084	Configuration (TPM2_CONF)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	37.4.15/ 808

37.4.1 Version ID Register (TPMx_VERID)

Address: Base address + 0h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	MAJOR								MINOR								FEATURE															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1

TPMx_VERID field descriptions

Field	Description
31–24 MAJOR	Major Version Number This read only field returns the major version number for the module specification.
23–16 MINOR	Minor Version Number This read only field returns the minor version number for the module specification.
FEATURE	Feature Identification Number 0x0001 Standard feature set. 0x0003 Standard feature set with Filter and Combine registers implemented. 0x0007 Standard feature set with Filter, Combine and Quadrature registers implemented.

37.4.2 Parameter Register (TPMx_PARAM)

Address: Base address + 4h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0								WIDTH								TRIG								CHAN							
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0

TPMx_PARAM field descriptions

Field	Description
31–24 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
23–16 WIDTH	Counter Width Width of the counter and timer channels.
15–8 TRIG	Trigger Count Number of trigger inputs implemented.
CHAN	Channel Count Number of timer channels implemented.

37.4.3 TPM Global Register (TPMx_GLOBAL)

Address: Base address + 8h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0														RST	0
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

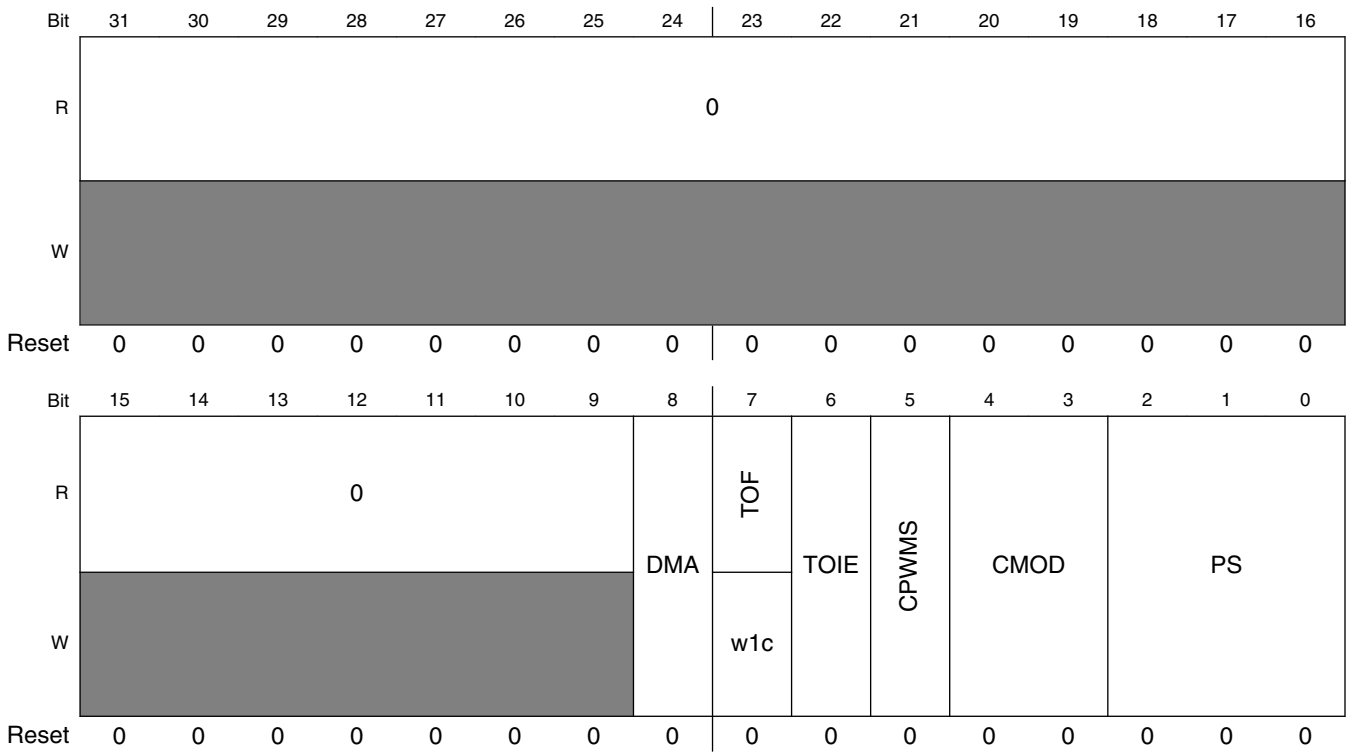
TPMx_GLOBAL field descriptions

Field	Description
31–2 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
1 RST	Software Reset Reset all internal logic and registers, except the Global Register. Remains set until cleared by software. 0 Module is not reset. 1 Module is reset.
0 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

37.4.4 Status and Control (TPMx_SC)

SC contains the overflow status flag and control bits used to configure the interrupt enable, module configuration and prescaler factor. These controls relate to all channels within this module.

Address: Base address + 10h offset



TPMx_SC field descriptions

Field	Description
31–9 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
8 DMA	DMA Enable Enables DMA transfers for the overflow flag. 0 Disables DMA transfers. 1 Enables DMA transfers.
7 TOF	Timer Overflow Flag Set by hardware when the TPM counter equals the value in the MOD register and increments. Writing a 1 to TOF clears it. Writing a 0 to TOF has no effect. If another TPM overflow occurs between the flag setting and the flag clearing, the write operation has no effect; therefore, TOF remains set indicating another overflow has occurred. In this case a TOF interrupt request is not lost due to a delay in clearing the previous TOF.

Table continues on the next page...

TPMx_SC field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 TPM counter has not overflowed. 1 TPM counter has overflowed.
6 TOIE	Timer Overflow Interrupt Enable Enables TPM overflow interrupts. 0 Disable TOF interrupts. Use software polling or DMA request. 1 Enable TOF interrupts. An interrupt is generated when TOF equals one.
5 CPWMS	Center-Aligned PWM Select Selects CPWM mode. This mode configures the TPM to operate in up-down counting mode. This field is write protected. It can be written only when the counter is disabled. 0 TPM counter operates in up counting mode. 1 TPM counter operates in up-down counting mode.
4–3 CMOD	Clock Mode Selection Selects the TPM counter clock modes. When disabling the counter, this field remain set until acknolwedged in the TPM clock domain. 00 TPM counter is disabled 01 TPM counter increments on every TPM counter clock 10 TPM counter increments on rising edge of TPM_EXTCLK synchronized to the TPM counter clock 11 TPM counter increments on rising edge of the selected external input trigger.
PS	Prescale Factor Selection Selects one of 8 division factors for the clock mode selected by CMOD. This field is write protected. It can be written only when the counter is disabled. 000 Divide by 1 001 Divide by 2 010 Divide by 4 011 Divide by 8 100 Divide by 16 101 Divide by 32 110 Divide by 64 111 Divide by 128

37.4.5 Counter (TPMx_CNT)

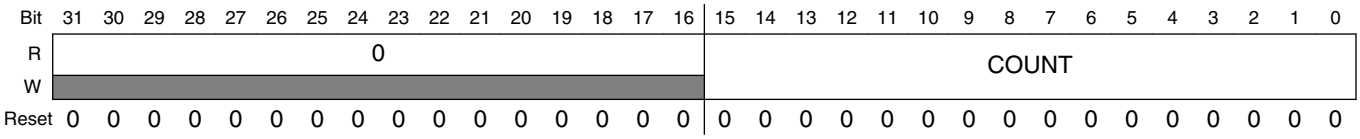
The CNT register contains the TPM counter value.

Reset clears the CNT register. Writing any value to COUNT also clears the counter.

When debug is active, the TPM counter does not increment unless configured otherwise.

Reading the CNT register adds two wait states to the register access due to synchronization delays.

Address: Base address + 14h offset



TPMx_CNT field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
COUNT	Counter value

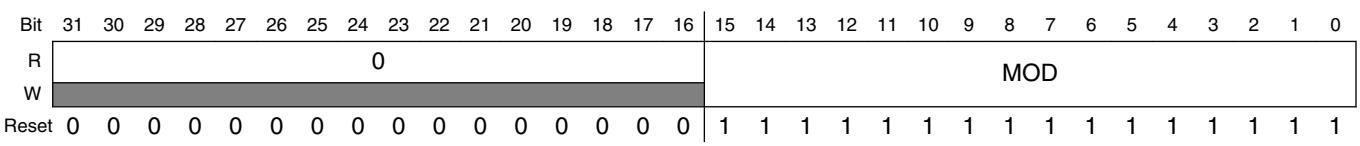
37.4.6 Modulo (TPMx_MOD)

The Modulo register contains the modulo value for the TPM counter. When the TPM counter reaches the modulo value and increments, the overflow flag (TOF) is set and the next value of TPM counter depends on the selected counting method (see Counter).

Writing to the MOD register latches the value into a buffer. The MOD register is updated with the value of its write buffer according to MOD Register Update . Additional writes to the MOD write buffer are ignored until the register has been updated.

It is recommended to initialize the TPM counter (write to CNT) before writing to the MOD register to avoid confusion about when the first counter overflow will occur.

Address: Base address + 18h offset



TPMx_MOD field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
MOD	Modulo value This field must be written with single 16-bit or 32-bit access.

37.4.7 Capture and Compare Status (TPMx_STATUS)

The STATUS register contains a copy of the status flag, CnSC[CHnF] for each TPM channel, as well as SC[TOF], for software convenience.

Each CHnF bit in STATUS is a mirror of CHnF bit in CnSC. All CHnF bits can be checked using only one read of STATUS. All CHnF bits can be cleared by writing all ones to STATUS.

Hardware sets the individual channel flags when an event occurs on the channel. Writing a 1 to CHF clears it. Writing a 0 to CHF has no effect.

If another event occurs between the flag setting and the write operation, the write operation has no effect; therefore, CHF remains set indicating another event has occurred. In this case a CHF interrupt request is not lost due to the clearing sequence for a previous CHF.

Address: Base address + 1Ch offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0							TOF	0		CH5F	CH4F	CH3F	CH2F	CH1F	CH0F
W								w1c			w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

TPMx_STATUS field descriptions

Field	Description
31–9 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
8 TOF	Timer Overflow Flag See register description 0 TPM counter has not overflowed. 1 TPM counter has overflowed.
7–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
5 CH5F	Channel 5 Flag See the register description.

Table continues on the next page...

TPMx_STATUS field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 No channel event has occurred. 1 A channel event has occurred.
4 CH4F	Channel 4 Flag See the register description. 0 No channel event has occurred. 1 A channel event has occurred.
3 CH3F	Channel 3 Flag See the register description. 0 No channel event has occurred. 1 A channel event has occurred.
2 CH2F	Channel 2 Flag See the register description. 0 No channel event has occurred. 1 A channel event has occurred.
1 CH1F	Channel 1 Flag See the register description. 0 No channel event has occurred. 1 A channel event has occurred.
0 CH0F	Channel 0 Flag See the register description. 0 No channel event has occurred. 1 A channel event has occurred.

37.4.8 Channel (n) Status and Control (TPMx_C*n*SC)

CnSC contains the channel-interrupt-status flag and control bits used to configure the interrupt enable, channel configuration, and pin function. When switching from one channel mode to a different channel mode, the channel must first be disabled and this must be acknowledged in the TPM counter clock domain.

Table 37-4. Mode, Edge, and Level Selection

CPWMS	MSnB:MSnA	ELSnB:ELSnA	Mode	Configuration
X	00	00	None	Channel disabled
X	01	00	Software compare	Pin not used for TPM
0	00	01	Input capture	Capture on Rising Edge Only

Table continues on the next page...

Table 37-4. Mode, Edge, and Level Selection (continued)

CPWMS	MSnB:MSnA	ELSnB:ELSnA	Mode	Configuration
		10		Capture on Falling Edge Only
		11		Capture on Rising or Falling Edge
	01	01	Output compare	Toggle Output on match
		10		Clear Output on match
		11		Set Output on match
	10	10	Edge-aligned PWM	High-true pulses (clear Output on match, set Output on reload)
		X1		Low-true pulses (set Output on match, clear Output on reload)
	11	10	Output compare	Pulse Output low on match
		01		Pulse Output high on match
1	10	10	Center-aligned PWM	High-true pulses (clear Output on match-up, set Output on match-down)
		01		Low-true pulses (set Output on match-up, clear Output on match-down)

Address: Base address + 20h offset + (8d × i), where i=0d to 5d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0								CHF	CHIE	MSB	MSA	ELSB	ELSA	0	DMA
W									w1c							
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

TPMx_C*n*SC field descriptions

Field	Description
31–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
7 CHF	Channel Flag

Table continues on the next page...

TPMx_C*n*SC field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	Set by hardware when an event occurs on the channel. CHF is cleared by writing a 1 to the CHF bit. Writing a 0 to CHF has no effect. If another event occurs between the CHF sets and the write operation, the write operation has no effect; therefore, CHF remains set indicating another event has occurred. In this case a CHF interrupt request is not lost due to the delay in clearing the previous CHF. 0 No channel event has occurred. 1 A channel event has occurred.
6 CHIE	Channel Interrupt Enable Enables channel interrupts. 0 Disable channel interrupts. 1 Enable channel interrupts.
5 MSB	Channel Mode Select Used for further selections in the channel logic. Its functionality is dependent on the channel mode. When a channel is disabled, this field will not change state until acknowledged in the TPM counter clock domain.
4 MSA	Channel Mode Select Used for further selections in the channel logic. Its functionality is dependent on the channel mode. When a channel is disabled, this field will not change state until acknowledged in the TPM counter clock domain.
3 ELSB	Edge or Level Select The functionality of ELSB and ELSA depends on the channel mode. When a channel is disabled, this field will not change state until acknowledged in the TPM counter clock domain.
2 ELSA	Edge or Level Select The functionality of ELSB and ELSA depends on the channel mode. When a channel is disabled, this field will not change state until acknowledged in the TPM counter clock domain.
1 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
0 DMA	DMA Enable Enables DMA transfers for the channel. 0 Disable DMA transfers. 1 Enable DMA transfers.

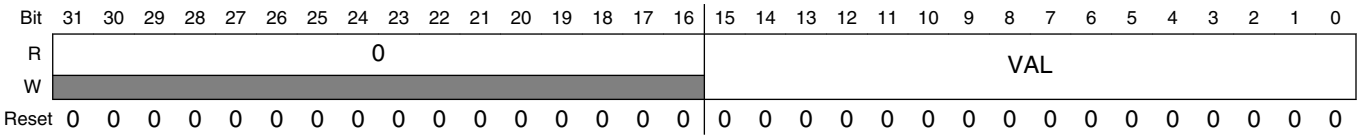
37.4.9 Channel (n) Value (TPMx_C*n*V)

These registers contain the captured TPM counter value for the input modes or the match value for the output modes.

In input capture mode, any write to a CnV register is ignored.

In compare modes, writing to a CnV register latches the value into a buffer. A CnV register is updated with the value of its write buffer according to CnV Register Update . Additional writes to the CnV write buffer are ignored until the register has been updated.

Address: Base address + 24h offset + (8d × i), where i=0d to 5d



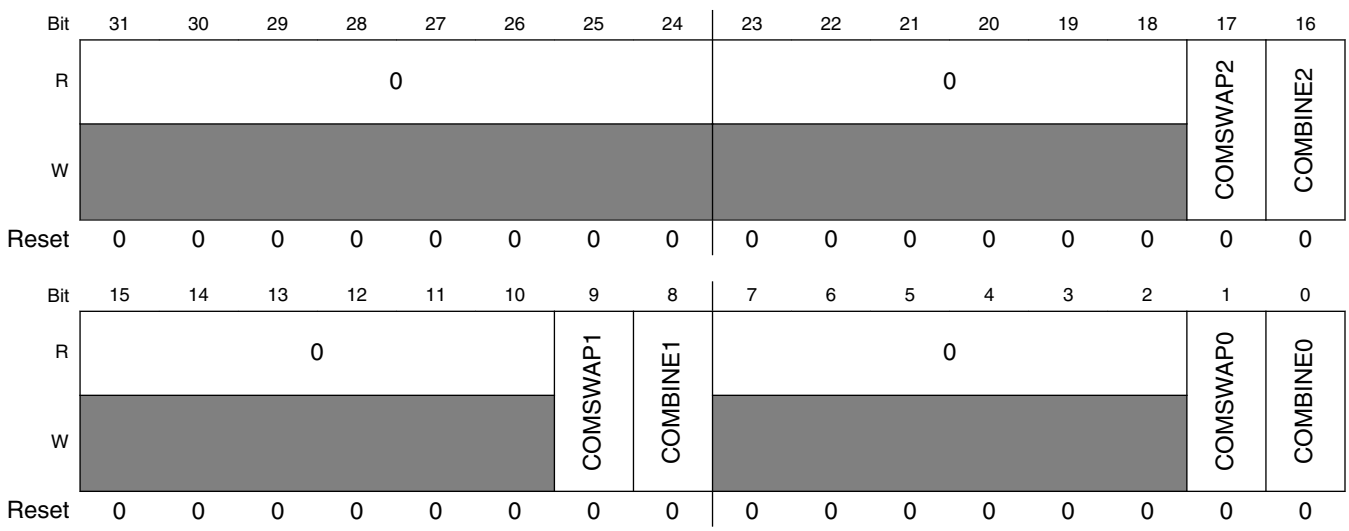
TPMx_C*n*V field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
VAL	Channel Value Captured TPM counter value of the input modes or the match value for the output modes. This field must be written with single 16-bit or 32-bit access.

37.4.10 Combine Channel Register (TPMx_COMBINE)

This register contains the control bits used to configure the combine channel modes for each pair of channels (n) and (n+1), where n is all the even numbered channels.

Address: Base address + 64h offset



TPMx_COMBINE field descriptions

Field	Description
31–24 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
23–18 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
17 COMSWAP2	Combine Channels 4 and 5 Swap

Table continues on the next page...

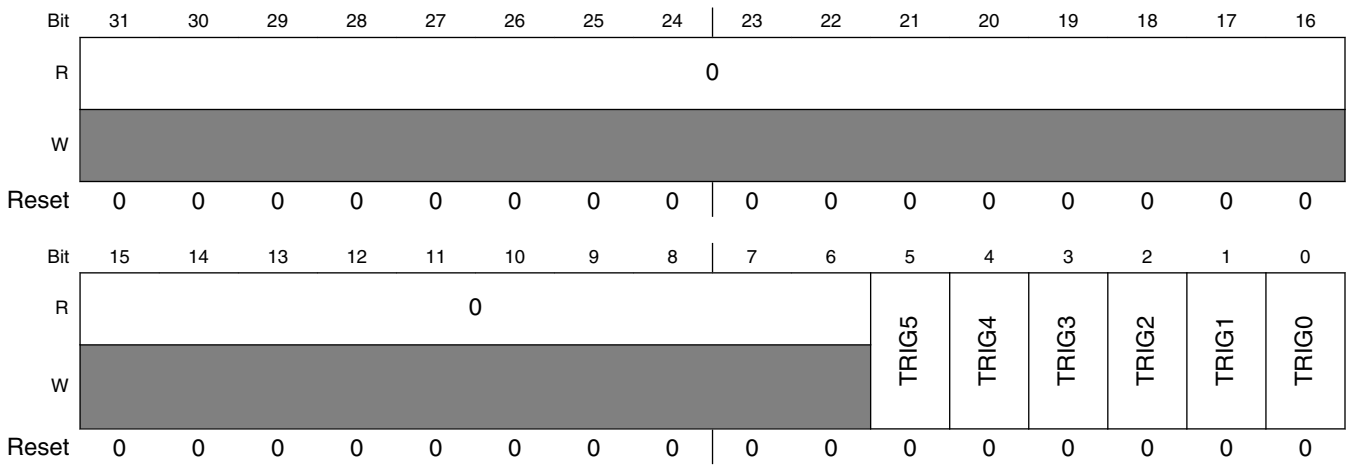
TPMx_COMBINE field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	When set in combine mode, the even channel is used for the input capture and 1st compare, the odd channel is used for the 2nd compare. 0 Even channel is used for input capture and 1st compare. 1 Odd channel is used for input capture and 1st compare.
16 COMBINE2	Combine Channels 4 and 5 Enables the combine feature for channels 2 and 3. In input capture mode, the combined channels use the even channel input. In software compare modes, the even channel match asserts the output trigger and the odd channel match negates the output trigger. In PWM modes, the even channel match is used for the 1st compare and odd channel match for the 2nd compare. 0 Channels 4 and 5 are independent. 1 Channels 4 and 5 are combined.
15–10 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
9 COMSWAP1	Combine Channels 2 and 3 Swap When set in combine mode, the odd channel is used for the input capture and 1st compare, the even channel is used for the 2nd compare. 0 Even channel is used for input capture and 1st compare. 1 Odd channel is used for input capture and 1st compare.
8 COMBINE1	Combine Channels 2 and 3 Enables the combine feature for channels 2 and 3. In input capture mode, the combined channels use the even channel input. In software compare modes, the even channel match asserts the output trigger and the odd channel match negates the output trigger. In PWM modes, the even channel match is used for the 1st compare and odd channel match for the 2nd compare. 0 Channels 2 and 3 are independent. 1 Channels 2 and 3 are combined.
7–2 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
1 COMSWAP0	Combine Channel 0 and 1 Swap When set in combine mode, the even channel is used for the input capture and 1st compare, the odd channel is used for the 2nd compare. 0 Even channel is used for input capture and 1st compare. 1 Odd channel is used for input capture and 1st compare.
0 COMBINE0	Combine Channels 0 and 1 Enables the combine feature for channels 0 and 1. In input capture mode, the combined channels use the even channel input. In software compare modes, the even channel match asserts the output trigger and the odd channel match negates the output trigger. In PWM modes, the even channel match is used for the 1st compare and odd channel match for the 2nd compare. 0 Channels 0 and 1 are independent. 1 Channels 0 and 1 are combined.

37.4.11 Channel Trigger (TPMx_TRIG)

This register configures the trigger input for each channel.

Address: Base address + 6Ch offset



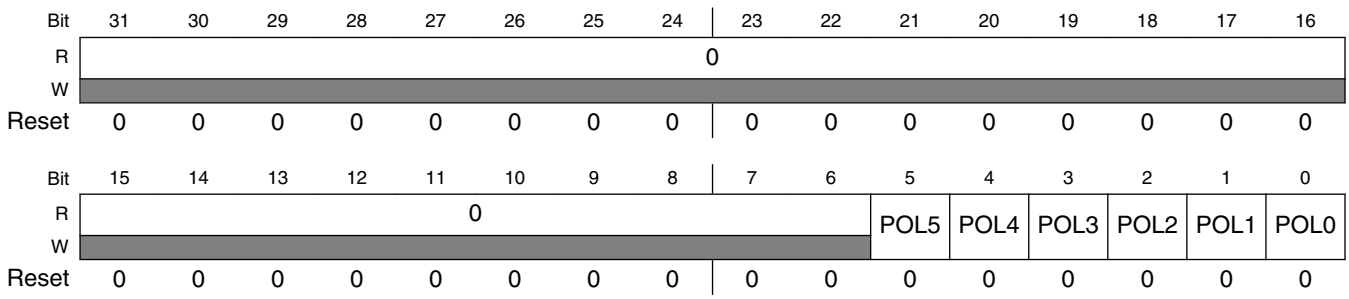
TPMx_TRIG field descriptions

Field	Description
31–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
5 TRIG5	Channel 5 Trigger 0 No effect. 1 The input trigger is used for input capture and modulates output (for output compare and PWM).
4 TRIG4	Channel 4 Trigger 0 No effect. 1 The input trigger is used for input capture and modulates output (for output compare and PWM).
3 TRIG3	Channel 3 Trigger 0 No effect. 1 The input trigger is used for input capture and modulates output (for output compare and PWM).
2 TRIG2	Channel 2 Trigger 0 No effect. 1 The input trigger is used for input capture and modulates output (for output compare and PWM).
1 TRIG1	Channel 1 Trigger 0 No effect. 1 The input trigger is used for input capture and modulates output (for output compare and PWM).
0 TRIG0	Channel 0 Trigger 0 No effect. 1 The input trigger is used for input capture and modulates output (for output compare and PWM).

37.4.12 Channel Polarity (TPMx_POL)

This register defines the input and output polarity of each of the channels.

Address: Base address + 70h offset



TPMx_POL field descriptions

Field	Description
31–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
5 POL5	Channel 5 Polarity 0 The channel polarity is active high. 1 The channel polarity is active low.
4 POL4	Channel 4 Polarity 0 The channel polarity is active high 1 The channel polarity is active low.
3 POL3	Channel 3 Polarity 0 The channel polarity is active high. 1 The channel polarity is active low.
2 POL2	Channel 2 Polarity 0 The channel polarity is active high. 1 The channel polarity is active low.
1 POL1	Channel 1 Polarity 0 The channel polarity is active high. 1 The channel polarity is active low.
0 POL0	Channel 0 Polarity 0 The channel polarity is active high. 1 The channel polarity is active low.

37.4.13 Filter Control (TPMx_FILTER)

This register selects the filter value of the channel inputs, and an additional output delay value for the channel outputs. In PWM combine modes, the filter can effectively implements deadtime insertion.

Address: Base address + 78h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0								CH5FVAL				CH4FVAL				CH3FVAL				CH2FVAL				CH1FVAL				CH0FVAL			
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

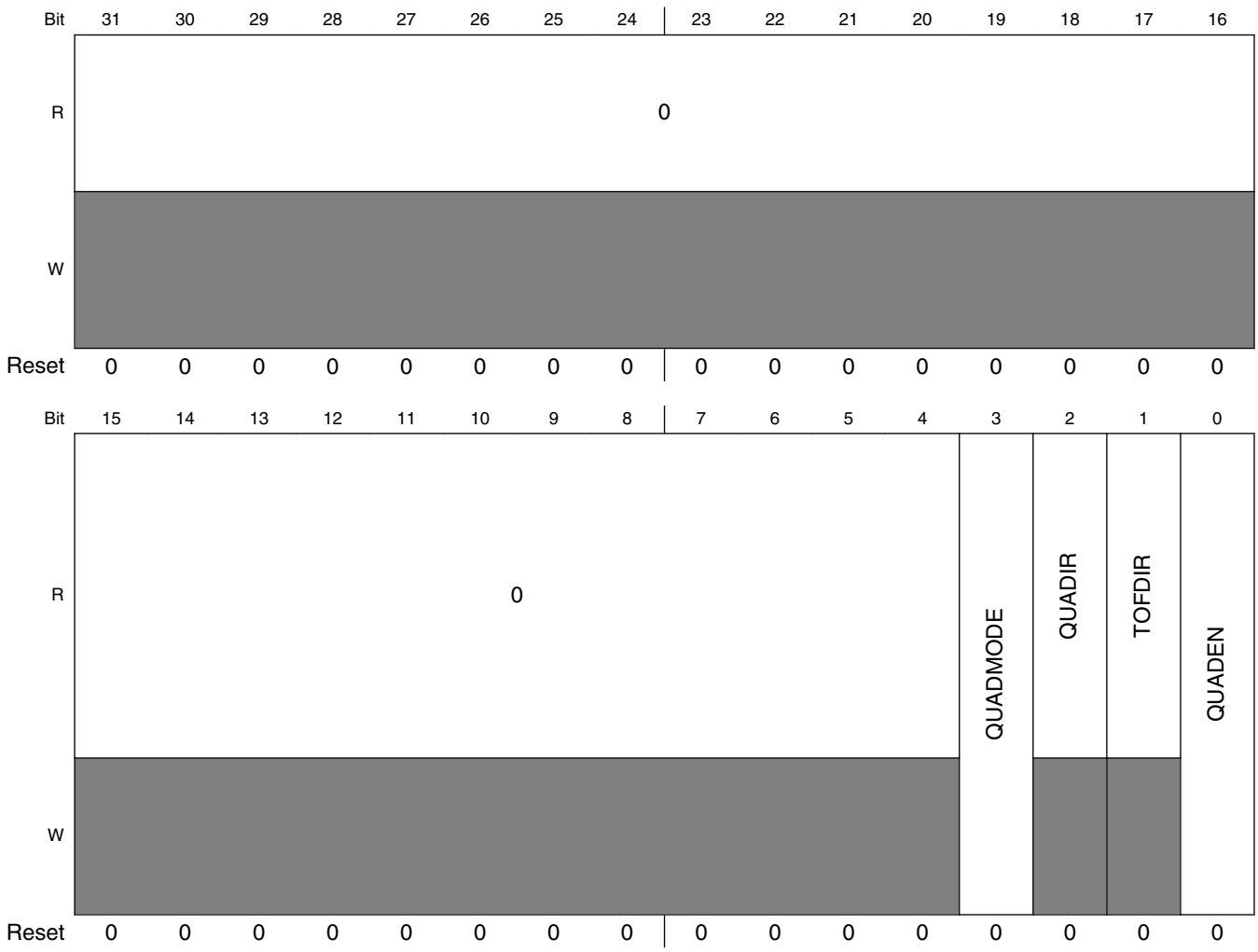
TPMx_FILTER field descriptions

Field	Description
31–24 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
23–20 CH5FVAL	Channel 5 Filter Value Selects the filter value for the channel input and the delay value for the channel output. The filter/delay is disabled when the value is zero, otherwise the filter/delay is configured as (CH5FVAL * 4) clock cycles.
19–16 CH4FVAL	Channel 4 Filter Value Selects the filter value for the channel input and the delay value for the channel output. The filter/delay is disabled when the value is zero, otherwise the filter/delay is configured as (CH4FVAL * 4) clock cycles.
15–12 CH3FVAL	Channel 3 Filter Value Selects the filter value for the channel input and the delay value for the channel output. The filter/delay is disabled when the value is zero, otherwise the filter/delay is configured as (CH3FVAL * 4) clock cycles.
11–8 CH2FVAL	Channel 2 Filter Value Selects the filter value for the channel input and the delay value for the channel output. The filter/delay is disabled when the value is zero, otherwise the filter/delay is configured as (CH2FVAL * 4) clock cycles.
7–4 CH1FVAL	Channel 1 Filter Value Selects the filter value for the channel input and the delay value for the channel output. The filter/delay is disabled when the value is zero, otherwise the filter/delay is configured as (CH1FVAL * 4) clock cycles.
CH0FVAL	Channel 0 Filter Value Selects the filter value for the channel input and the delay value for the channel output. The filter/delay is disabled when the value is zero, otherwise the filter/delay is configured as (CH0FVAL * 4) clock cycles.

37.4.14 Quadrature Decoder Control and Status (TPMx_QDCTRL)

This register has the control and status bits for the quadrature decoder mode.

Address: Base address + 80h offset



TPMx_QDCTRL field descriptions

Field	Description
31–4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
3 QUADMODE	Quadrature Decoder Mode Selects the encoding mode used in the quadrature decoder mode. 0 Phase encoding mode. 1 Count and direction encoding mode.
2 QUADIR	Counter Direction in Quadrature Decode Mode

Table continues on the next page...

TPMx_QDCTRL field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	Indicates the counting direction. 0 Counter direction is decreasing (counter decrement). 1 Counter direction is increasing (counter increment).
1 TOFDIR	Indicates if the TOF bit was set on the top or the bottom of counting. 0 TOF bit was set on the bottom of counting. There was an FTM counter decrement and FTM counter changes from its minimum value (zero) to its maximum value (MOD register). 1 TOF bit was set on the top of counting. There was an FTM counter increment and FTM counter changes from its maximum value (MOD register) to its minimum value (zero).
0 QUADEN	Enables the quadrature decoder mode. In this mode, the channel 0 and channel 1 inputs control the TPM counter direction and can only be used for software compare. The quadrature decoder mode has precedence over the other modes. 0 Quadrature decoder mode is disabled. 1 Quadrature decoder mode is enabled.

37.4.15 Configuration (TPMx_CONF)

This register selects the behavior in debug and wait modes and the use of an external global time base.

Address: Base address + 84h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0				TRGSEL				TRGSRC	TRGPOL	0		CPOT	CROT	CSOO	CSOT
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0						GTBEEN	GTBSYNC	DBGMODE		DOZEEN	0				
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

TPMx_CONF field descriptions

Field	Description
31–28 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

Table continues on the next page...

TPMx_CONF field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
27–24 TRGSEL	Trigger Select Selects the input trigger to use for starting, reloading and/or pausing the counter. The source of the trigger (external or internal to the TPM) is configured by the TRGSRC field. This field should only be changed when the TPM counter is disabled. Refer to the chip configuration section for available external trigger options. The available internal trigger sources are listed below. 0001 Channel 0 pin input capture 0010 Channel 1 pin input capture 0011 Channel 0 or Channel 1 pin input capture 0100 Channel 2 pin input capture 0101 Channel 0 or Channel 2 pin input capture 0110 Channel 1 or Channel 2 pin input capture 0111 Channel 0 or Channel 1 or Channel 2 pin input capture 1000 Channel 3 pin input capture 1001 Channel 0 or Channel 3 pin input capture 1010 Channel 1 or Channel 3 pin input capture 1011 Channel 0 or Channel 1 or Channel 3 pin input capture 1100 Channel 2 or Channel 3 pin input capture 1101 Channel 0 or Channel 2 or Channel 3 pin input capture 1110 Channel 1 or Channel 2 or Channel 3 pin input capture 1111 Channel 0 or Channel 1 or Channel 2 or Channel 3 pin input capture
23 TRGSRC	Trigger Source Selects between internal (channel pin input capture) or external trigger sources. When selecting an internal trigger, the channel selected should be configured for input capture. Only a rising edge input capture can be used to initially start the counter using the CSOT configuration; either rising edge or falling edge input capture can be used to reload the counter using the CROT configuration; and the state of the channel input pin is used to pause the counter using the CPOT configuration. The channel polarity register can be used to invert the polarity of the channel input pins. This field should only be changed when the TPM counter is disabled. 0 Trigger source selected by TRGSEL is external. 1 Trigger source selected by TRGSEL is internal (channel pin input capture).
22 TRGPOL	Trigger Polarity Selects the polarity of the external trigger source. This field should only be changed when the TPM counter is disabled. 0 Trigger is active high. 1 Trigger is active low.
21–20 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
19 CPOT	Counter Pause On Trigger When enabled, the counter will pause incrementing while the trigger remains asserted (level sensitive). This field should only be changed when the TPM counter is disabled.
18 CROT	Counter Reload On Trigger

Table continues on the next page...

TPMx_CONF field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	When set, the TPM counter will reload with 0 (and initialize PWM outputs to their default value) when a rising edge is detected on the selected trigger input. The trigger input is ignored if the TPM counter is paused during debug mode or doze mode. This field should only be changed when the TPM counter is disabled. 0 Counter is not reloaded due to a rising edge on the selected input trigger 1 Counter is reloaded when a rising edge is detected on the selected input trigger
17 CSOO	Counter Stop On Overflow When set, the TPM counter will stop incrementing once the counter equals the MOD value and incremented (this also sets the TOF). Reloading the counter with 0 due to writing to the counter register or due to a trigger input does not cause the counter to stop incrementing. Once the counter has stopped incrementing, the counter will not start incrementing unless it is disabled and then enabled again, or a rising edge on the selected trigger input is detected when CSOT set. This field should only be changed when the TPM counter is disabled. 0 TPM counter continues incrementing or decrementing after overflow 1 TPM counter stops incrementing or decrementing after overflow.
16 CSOT	Counter Start on Trigger When set, the TPM counter will not start incrementing after it is enabled until a rising edge on the selected trigger input is detected. If the TPM counter is stopped due to an overflow, a rising edge on the selected trigger input will also cause the TPM counter to start incrementing again. The trigger input is ignored if the TPM counter is paused during debug mode or doze mode. This field should only be changed when the TPM counter is disabled. 0 TPM counter starts to increment immediately, once it is enabled. 1 TPM counter only starts to increment when it a rising edge on the selected input trigger is detected, after it has been enabled or after it has stopped due to overflow.
15–10 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
9 GTBEEN	Global time base enable Configures the TPM to use an externally generated global time base counter. When an externally generated timebase is used, the internal TPM counter is not used by the channels but can be used to generate a periodic interruptor DMA request using the Modulo register and timer overflow flag. 0 All channels use the internally generated TPM counter as their timebase 1 All channels use an externally generated global timebase as their timebase
8 GTBSYNC	Global Time Base Synchronization When enabled, the TPM counter is synchronized to the global time base. It uses the global timebase enable, trigger and overflow to ensure the TPM counter starts incrementing at the same time as the global timebase, stops incrementing at the same time as the global timebase and is reset at the same time as the global timebase. This field should only be changed when the TPM counter is disabled. 0 Global timebase synchronization disabled. 1 Global timebase synchronization enabled.
7–6 DBGMODE	Debug Mode Configures the TPM behavior in debug mode. All other configurations are reserved.

Table continues on the next page...

TPMx_CONF field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	00 TPM counter is paused and does not increment during debug mode. Trigger inputs and input capture events are also ignored. 11 TPM counter continues in debug mode.
5 DOZEEN	Doze Enable Configures the TPM behavior in wait mode. 0 Internal TPM counter continues in Doze mode. 1 Internal TPM counter is paused and does not increment during Doze mode. Trigger inputs and input capture events are also ignored.
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

37.5 Functional description

The following sections describe the TPM features.

37.5.1 Clock domains

The TPM module supports two clock domains.

The bus clock domain is used by the register interface and for synchronizing interrupts and DMA requests.

The TPM counter clock domain is used to clock the counter and prescaler along with the output compare and input capture logic. The TPM counter clock is considered asynchronous to the bus clock, can be a higher or lower frequency than the bus clock and can remain operational in Stop mode. Multiple TPM instances are all clocked by the same TPM counter clock in support of the external timebase feature.

37.5.1.1 Counter Clock Mode

The CMOD[1:0] bits in the SC register either disable the TPM counter or select one of two possible clock modes for the TPM counter. After any reset, CMOD[1:0] = 0:0 so the TPM counter is disabled.

The CMOD[1:0] bits may be read or written at any time. Disabling the TPM counter by writing zero to the CMOD[1:0] bits does not affect the TPM counter value or other registers, but must be acknowledged by the TPM counter clock domain before they read as zero.

The external clock input passes through a synchronizer clocked by the TPM counter clock to assure that counter transitions are properly aligned to counter clock transitions. Therefore, to meet Nyquist criteria considering also jitter, the frequency of the external clock source must be less than half of the counter clock frequency.

37.5.2 Prescaler

The selected counter clock source passes through a prescaler that is a 7-bit counter.

The value of the prescaler is selected by the PS[2:0] bits. The following figure shows an example of the prescaler counter and TPM counter.

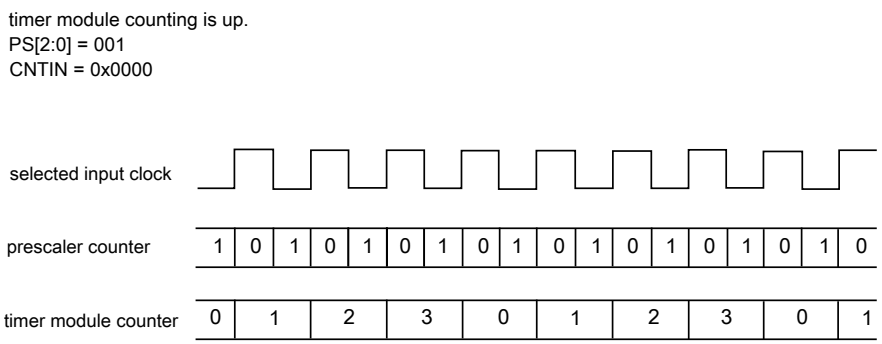


Figure 37-2. Example of the Prescaler Counter

37.5.3 Counter

The TPM has a 16-bit counter that is used by the channels either for input or output modes.

The counter updates from the selected clock divided by the prescaler.

The TPM counter has these modes of operation:

- up counting (see Up counting)
- up-down counting (see Up-down counting)

37.5.3.1 Up counting

Up counting is selected when SC[CPWMS] = 0.

The value of zero is loaded into the TPM counter, and the counter increments until the value of MOD is reached, at which point the counter is reloaded with zero.

The TPM period when using up counting is (MOD + 0x0001) × period of the TPM counter clock.

The TOF bit is set when the TPM counter changes from MOD to zero.

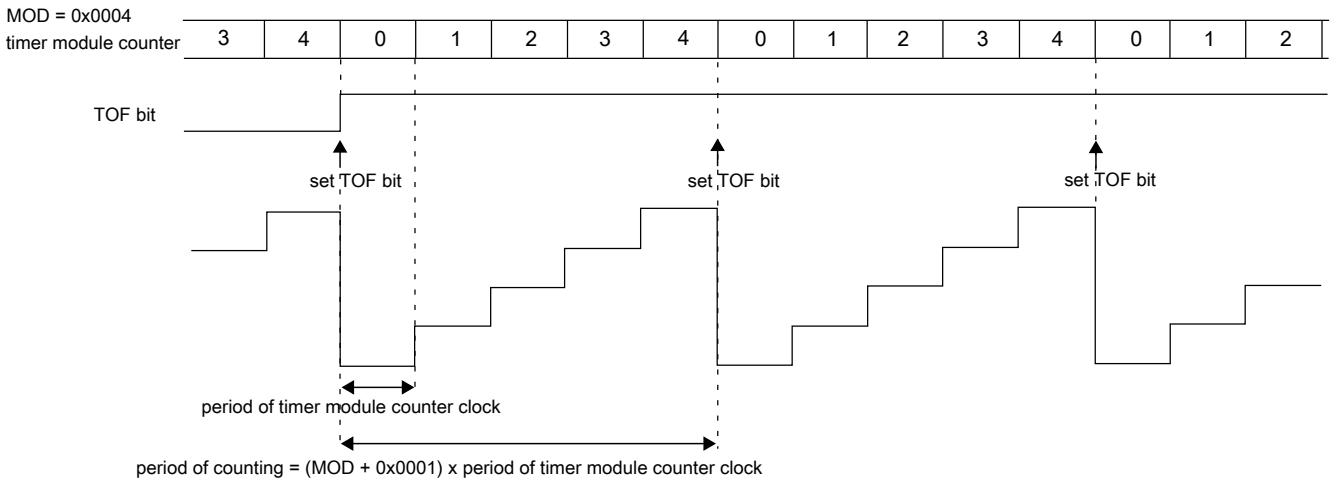


Figure 37-3. Example of TPM Up Counting

Note

- MOD = 0000 is a redundant condition. In this case, the TPM counter is always equal to MOD and the TOF bit is set in each rising edge of the TPM counter clock.

37.5.3.2 Up-down counting

Up-down counting is selected when SC[CPWMS] = 1. When configured for up-down counting, configuring CONF[MOD] to less than 2 is not supported.

The value of 0 is loaded into the TPM counter, and the counter increments until the value of MOD is reached, at which point the counter is decremented until it returns to zero and the up-down counting restarts.

The TPM period when using up-down counting is 2 × MOD × period of the TPM counter clock.

The TOF bit is set when the TPM counter changes from MOD to (MOD – 1).

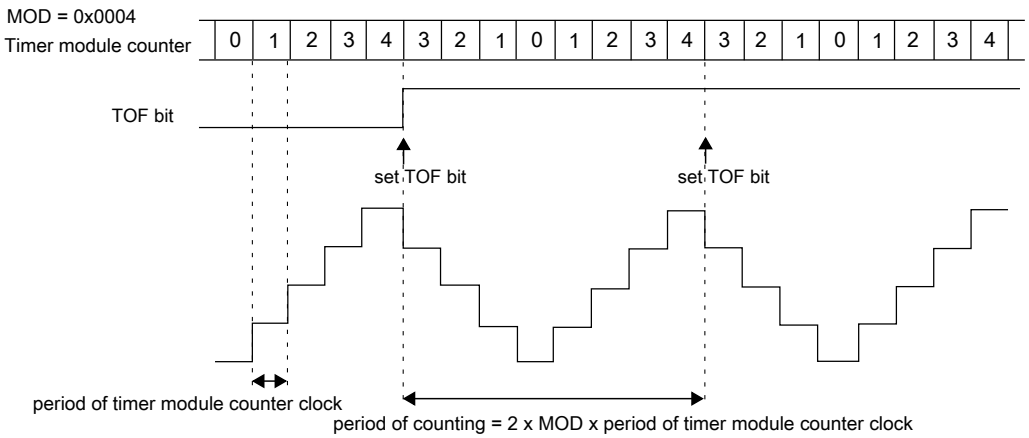


Figure 37-4. Example of up-down counting

37.5.3.3 Counter Reset

Any write to CNT resets the TPM counter and the channel outputs to their initial values (except for channels in output compare mode).

37.5.3.4 Global time base (GTB)

The global time base (GTB) is a TPM function that allows multiple TPM modules to share the same timebase. When the global time base is enabled (CONF[GTBEEN] = 1), the local TPM channels use the counter value, counter enable and overflow indication from the TPM generating the global time base. If the local TPM counter is not generating the global time base, then it can be used as an independent counter or pulse accumulator.

The local TPM counter can also be configured to synchronize to the global time base, by configuring (GTBSYNC = 1). When synchronized to the global time base, the local counter will use the counter enable and counter overflow indication from the TPM generating the global time base. This enables multiple TPM to be configured with the same phase, but with different periods (although the global time base must be configured with the longest period).

37.5.3.5 Counter trigger

The TPM counter can be configured to start, stop or reset in response to a hardware trigger input. The trigger input is synchronized to the asynchronous counter clock, so there is a 3 counter clock delay between the trigger assertion and the counter responding.

- When (CSOT = 1), the counter will not start incrementing until a rising edge is detected on the trigger input.
- When (CSOO= 1), the counter will stop incrementing whenever the TOF flag is set. The counter does not increment again unless it is disabled, or if CSOT = 1 and a rising edge is detected on the trigger input.
- When (CROT= 1), the counter will reset to zero as if an overflow occurred whenever a rising edge is detected on the trigger input.
- When (CPOT = 1), the counter will pause incrementing whenever the trigger input is asserted. The counter will continue incrementing when the trigger input negates.

The polarity of the external input trigger can be configured by the TRGPOL register bit.

When an internal trigger source is selected, the trigger input is selected from one or more channel input capture events. The input capture filters are used with the internal trigger sources and the POLn bits can be used to invert the polarity of the input channels. Note that following restrictions apply with input capture channel sources.

- When (CSOT = 1), the counter will only start incrementing on a rising edge on the channel input, provided ELSnA = 1.
- When (CROT= 1), the counter will reset to zero on either edge of the channel input, as configured by ELSnB:ELSnA.
- When (CPOT = 1), the counter will pause incrementing whenever the channel input is asserted.

37.5.4 Input Capture Mode

The input capture mode is selected when (CPWMS = 0), (MSnB:MSnA = 0:0), and (ELSnB:ELSnA ≠ 0:0).

When a selected edge occurs on the channel input, the current value of the TPM counter is captured into the CnV register, at the same time the CHnF bit is set and the channel interrupt is generated if enabled by CHnIE = 1 (see the following figure).

When a channel is configured for input capture, the TPM_CHn pin is an edge-sensitive input. ELSnB:ELSnA control bits determine which edge, falling or rising, triggers input-capture event. Note that the maximum frequency for the channel input signal to be detected correctly is counter clock divided by 4, which is required to meet Nyquist criteria for signal sampling.

Writes to the CnV register are ignored in input capture mode.

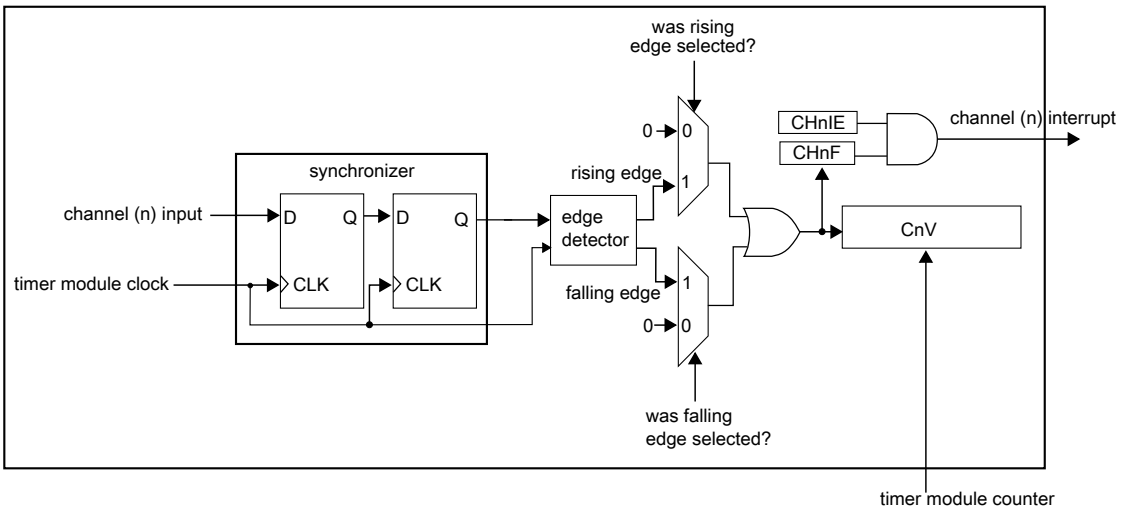


Figure 37-5. Input capture mode

The CHnF bit is set on the third rising edge of the counter clock after a valid edge occurs on the channel input.

37.5.5 Output Compare Mode

The output compare mode is selected when (CPWMS = 0), and (MSnB:MSnA = X:1).

In output compare mode, the TPM can generate timed pulses with programmable position, polarity, duration, and frequency. When the counter matches the value in the CnV register of an output compare channel, the channel (n) output can be set, cleared or toggled if MSnB is clear. If MSnB is set then the channel (n) output is pulsed high or low for as long as the counter matches the value in the CnV register.

When a channel is initially configured to output compare mode, the channel output updates with its negated value (logic 0 for set/toggle/pulse high and logic one for clear/ pulse low).

The CHnF bit is set and the channel (n) interrupt is generated (if CHnIE = 1) at the channel (n) match (TPM counter = CnV).

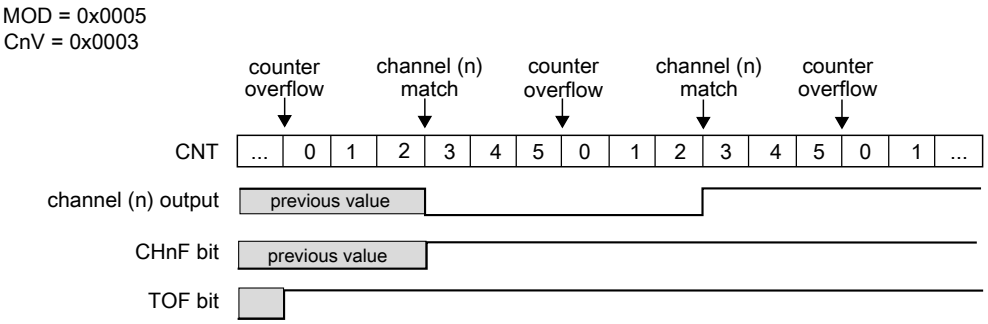


Figure 37-6. Example of the output compare mode when the match toggles the channel output

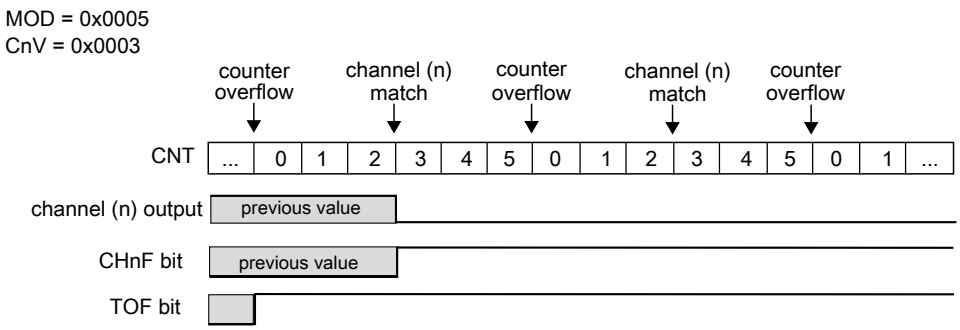


Figure 37-7. Example of the output compare mode when the match clears the channel output

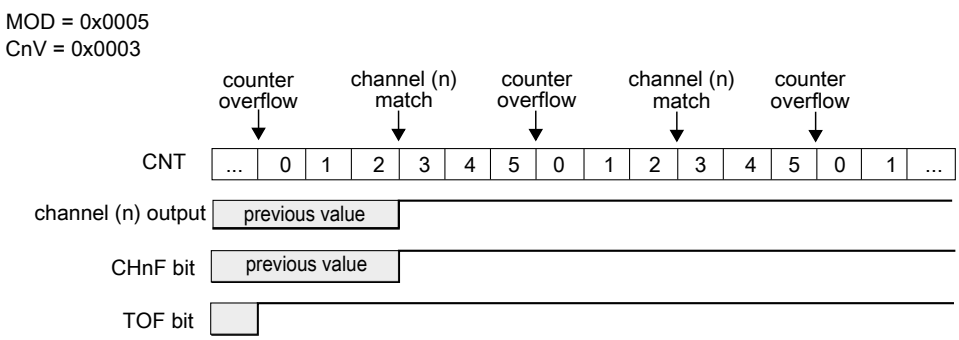


Figure 37-8. Example of the output compare mode when the match sets the channel output

It is possible to use the output compare mode with (ELSnB:ELSnA = 0:0). In this case, when the counter reaches the value in the CnV register, the CHnF bit is set and the channel (n) interrupt is generated (if CHnIE = 1), however the channel (n) output is not modified and controlled by TPM.

37.5.6 Edge-Aligned PWM (EPWM) Mode

The edge-aligned mode is selected when (CPWMS = 0), and (MSnB:MSnA = 1:0).

The EPWM period is determined by (MOD + 0x0001) and the pulse width (duty cycle) is determined by CnV.

The CHnF bit is set and the channel (n) interrupt is generated (if CHnIE = 1) at the channel (n) match (TPM counter = CnV), that is, at the end of the pulse width.

This type of PWM signal is called edge-aligned because the leading edges of all PWM signals are aligned with the beginning of the period, which is the same for all channels within an TPM.

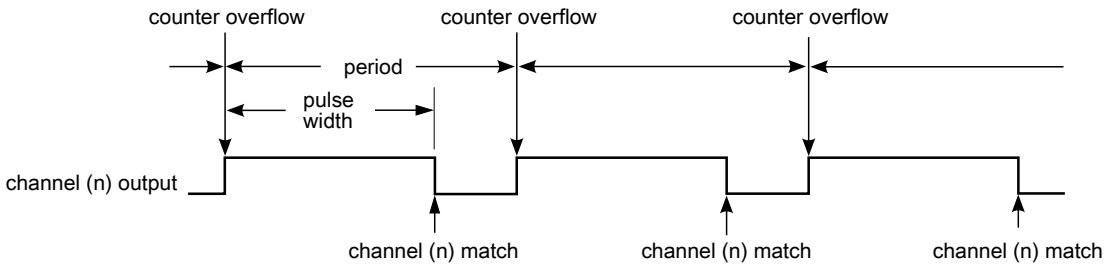


Figure 37-9. EPWM period and pulse width with ELSnB:ELSnA = 1:0

If (ELSnB:ELSnA = 0:0) when the counter reaches the value in the CnV register, the CHnF bit is set and the channel (n) interrupt is generated (if CHnIE = 1), however the channel (n) output is not controlled by TPM.

If (ELSnB:ELSnA = 1:0), then the channel (n) output is forced high at the counter overflow (when the zero is loaded into the TPM counter), and it is forced low at the channel (n) match (TPM counter = CnV) (see the following figure).

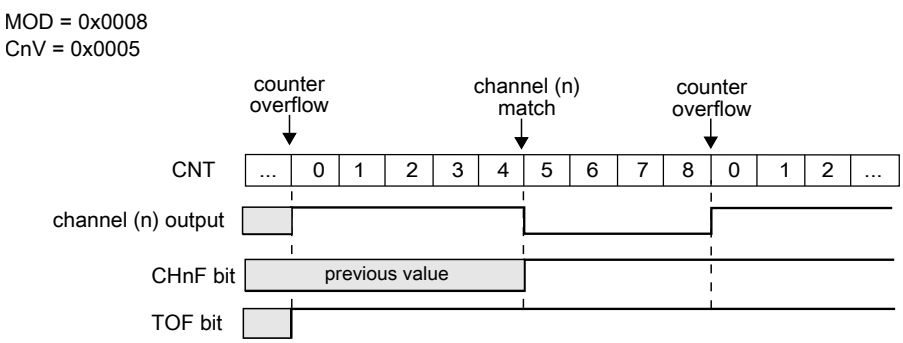


Figure 37-10. EPWM signal with ELSnB:ELSnA = 1:0

If (ELSnB:ELSnA = X:1), then the channel (n) output is forced low at the counter overflow (when zero is loaded into the TPM counter), and it is forced high at the channel (n) match (TPM counter = CnV) (see the following figure).

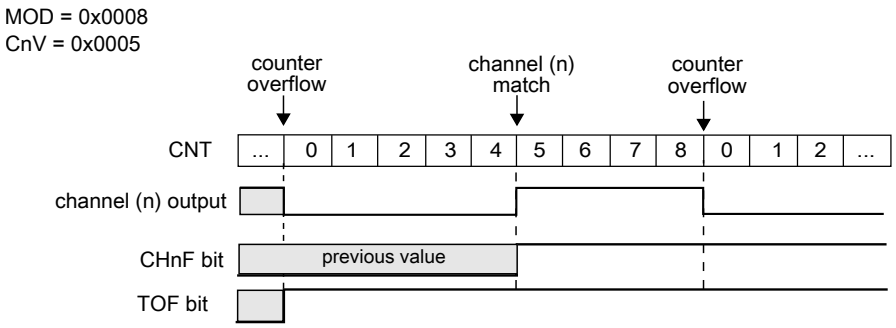


Figure 37-11. EPWM signal with ELSnB:ELSnA = X:1

If (CnV = 0x0000), then the channel (n) output is a 0% duty cycle EPWM signal. If (CnV > MOD), then the channel (n) output is a 100% duty cycle EPWM signal and CHnF bit is not set since there is never a channel (n) match. Therefore, MOD must be less than 0xFFFF in order to get a 100% duty cycle EPWM signal.

37.5.7 Center-Aligned PWM (CPWM) Mode

The center-aligned mode is selected when (CPWMS = 1) and (MSnB:MSnA = 1:0).

The CPWM pulse width (duty cycle) is determined by 2 × CnV and the period is determined by 2 × MOD (see the following figure). MOD must be kept in the range of 0x0001 to 0x7FFF because values outside this range can produce ambiguous results.

In the CPWM mode, the TPM counter counts up until it reaches MOD and then counts down until it reaches zero.

The CHnF bit is set and channel (n) interrupt is generated (if CHnIE = 1) at the channel (n) match (TPM counter = CnV) when the TPM counting is down (at the begin of the pulse width) and when the TPM counting is up (at the end of the pulse width).

This type of PWM signal is called center-aligned because the pulse width centers for all channels are when the TPM counter is zero.

The other channel modes are not designed to be used with the up-down counter (CPWMS = 1). Therefore, all TPM channels should be used in CPWM mode when (CPWMS = 1).

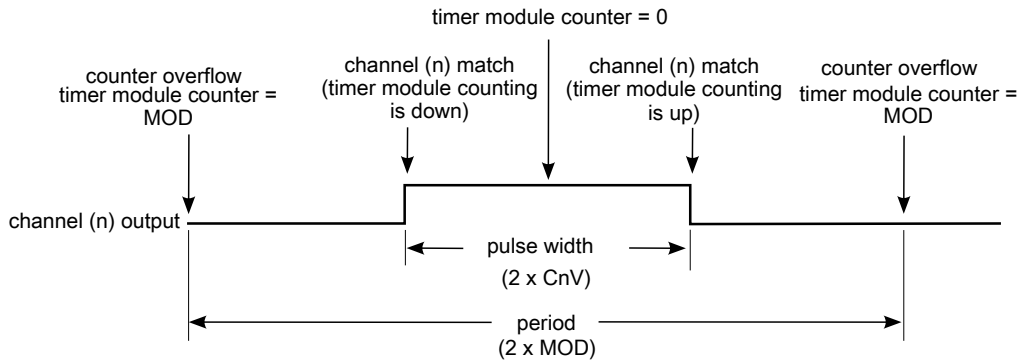


Figure 37-12. CPWM period and pulse width with ELSnB:ELSnA = 1:0

If (ELSnB:ELSnA = 0:0) when the TPM counter reaches the value in the CnV register, the CHnF bit is set and the channel (n) interrupt is generated (if CHnIE = 1), however the channel (n) output is not controlled by TPM.

If (ELSnB:ELSnA = 1:0), then the channel (n) output is forced high at the channel (n) match (TPM counter = CnV) when counting down, and it is forced low at the channel (n) match when counting up (see the following figure).

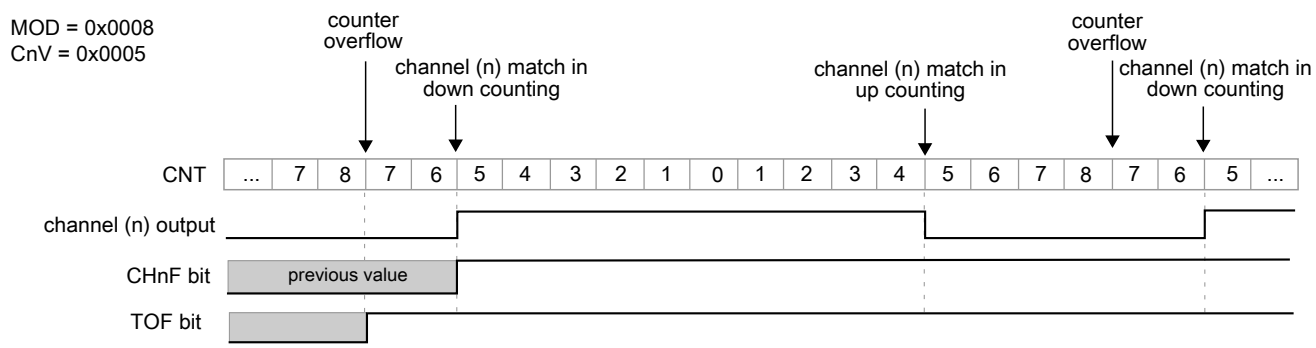


Figure 37-13. CPWM signal with ELSnB:ELSnA = 1:0

If (ELSnB:ELSnA = X:1), then the channel (n) output is forced low at the channel (n) match (TPM counter = CnV) when counting down, and it is forced high at the channel (n) match when counting up (see the following figure).

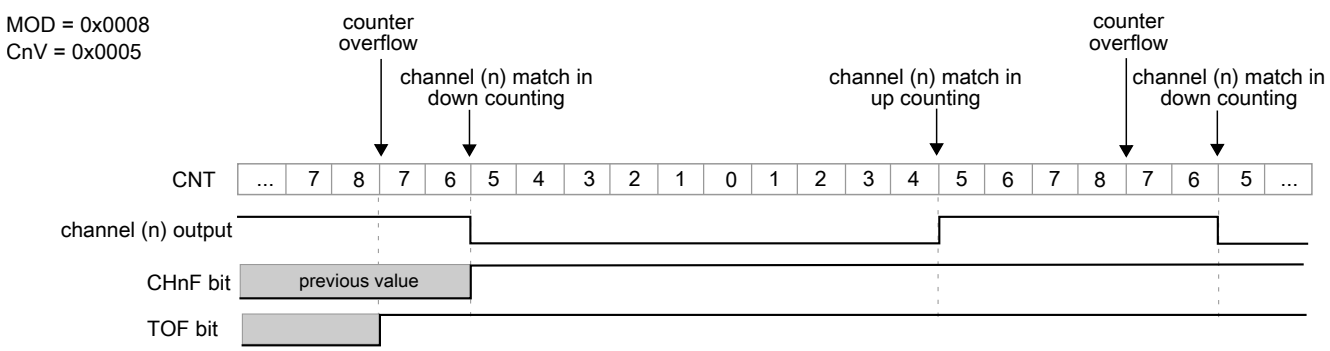


Figure 37-14. CPWM signal with ELSnB:ELSnA = X:1

If (CnV = 0x0000) then the channel (n) output is a 0% duty cycle CPWM signal.

If (CnV > MOD), then the channel (n) output is a 100% duty cycle CPWM signal, although the CHnF bit is set when the counter changes from incrementing to decrementing. Therefore, MOD must be less than 0xFFFF in order to get a 100% duty cycle CPWM signal.

37.5.8 Combine PWM mode

The Combine PWM mode is selected when:

- MSnB:MSnA = 10
- COMBINEn = 1
- QUADEN = 0, and
- CPWMS = 0

In Combine PWM mode, an even channel (n) and adjacent odd channel (n+1) are combined to generate a PWM signal in the channel (n) output.

In the Combine mode, the PWM period is determined by (MOD + 0x0001) and the PWM pulse width (duty cycle) is determined by (|C(n+1)V − C(n)V|).

The CHnF bit is set and the channel (n) interrupt is generated (if CHnIE = 1) at the channel (n) match (TPM counter = C(n)V). The CH(n+1)F bit is set and the channel (n +1) interrupt is generated, if CH(n+1)IE = 1, at the channel (n+1) match (TPM counter = C(n+1)V).

If channel (n) (ELSnB:ELSnA = X:1), then the channel (n) output is forced low at the beginning of the period (TPM counter is zero) and at the channel (n+1) match (TPM counter = C(n+1)V). It is forced high at the channel (n) match (TPM counter = C(n)V).

If channel (n) (ELSnB:ELSnA = 1:0), then the channel (n) output is forced high at the beginning of the period (TPM counter is zero) and at the channel (n+1) match (TPM counter = C(n+1)V). It is forced low at the channel (n) match (TPM counter = C(n)V).

When (COMSWAPn = 1), then the channel (n) output is forced low or high at the beginning of the period (TPM counter is zero) and at the channel (n) match (TPM counter = C(n)V). It is forced high or low at the channel (n+1) match (TPM counter = C(n+1)V).

The channel (n+1) output is generated the same as the channel (n) output, but the output polarity is controlled by the channel (n+1) ELSnB:ELSnA configuration.

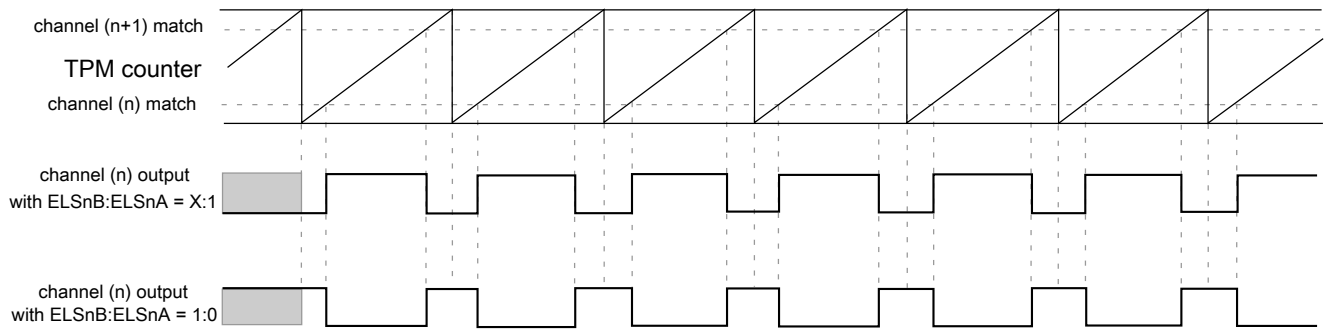


Figure 37-15. Combine mode

The following figures illustrate the PWM signals generation using Combine mode.

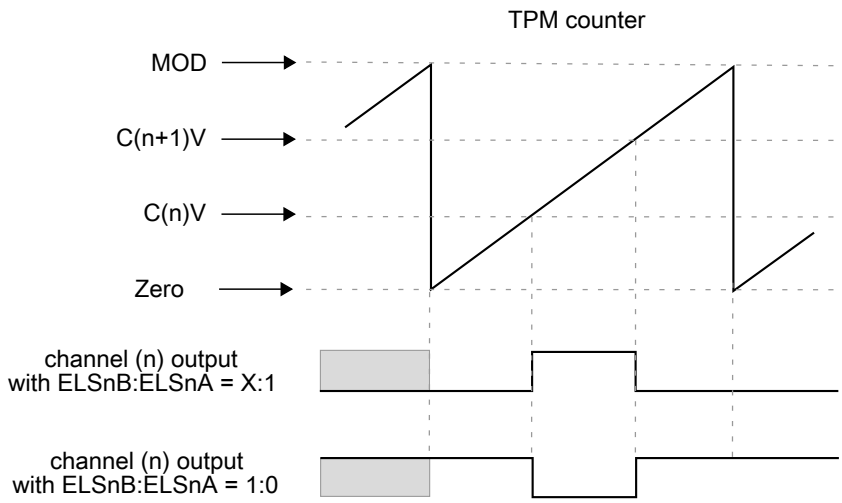


Figure 37-16. Channel (n) output if (C(n)V < MOD) and (C(n+1)V < MOD) and (C(n)V < C(n+1)V)

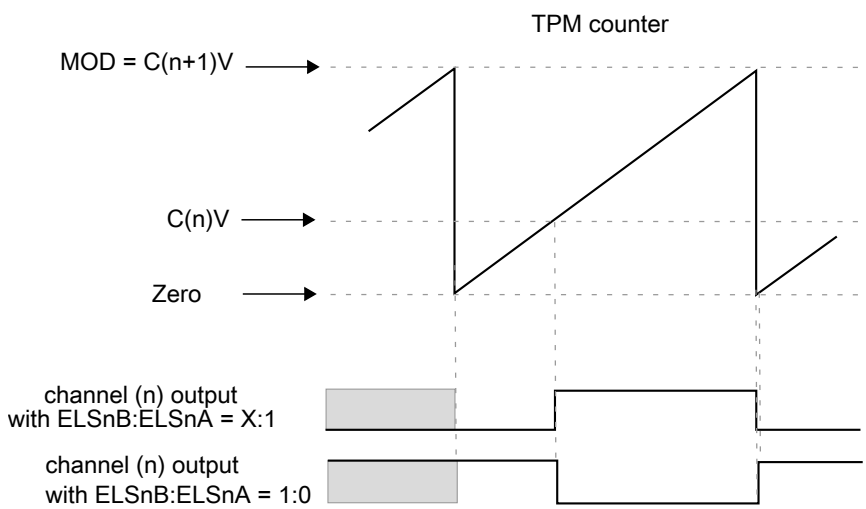


Figure 37-17. Channel (n) output if (C(n)V < MOD) and (C(n+1)V = MOD)

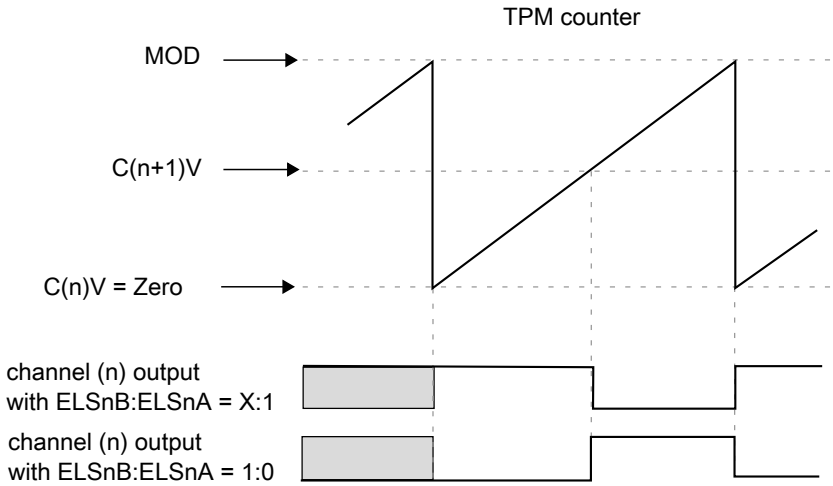


Figure 37-18. Channel (n) output if (C(n)V = zero) and (C(n+1)V < MOD)

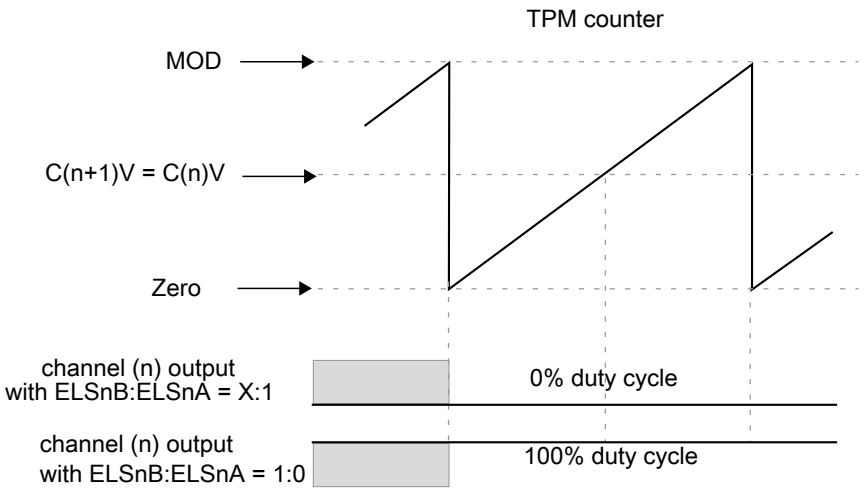


Figure 37-19. Channel (n) output if (C(n)V < MOD) and (C(n+1)V < MOD) and (C(n)V = C(n +1)V)

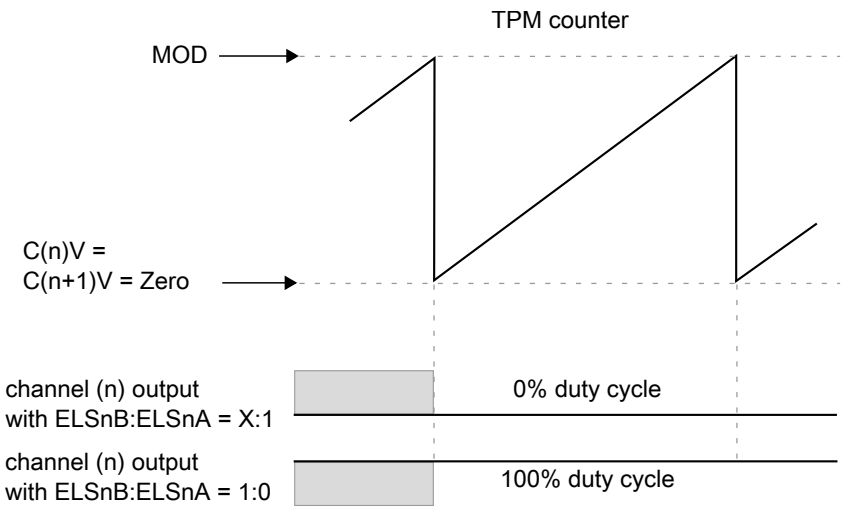


Figure 37-20. Channel (n) output if (C(n)V = C(n+1)V = zero)

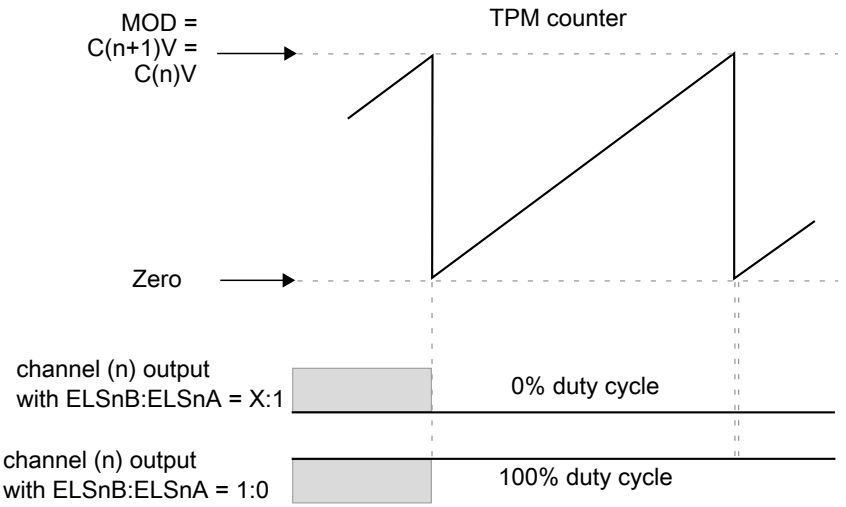


Figure 37-21. Channel (n) output if (C(n)V = C(n+1)V = MOD)

37.5.9 Combine Input Capture mode

The Combine Input Capture mode is selected if COMBINEn= 1 and MSnB:MSnA = 00 and ELSnB:ELSnA != 00. This mode allows to measure a pulse width of the signal on the input of channel (n) of a channel pair. The channel (n) filter can be active in this mode.

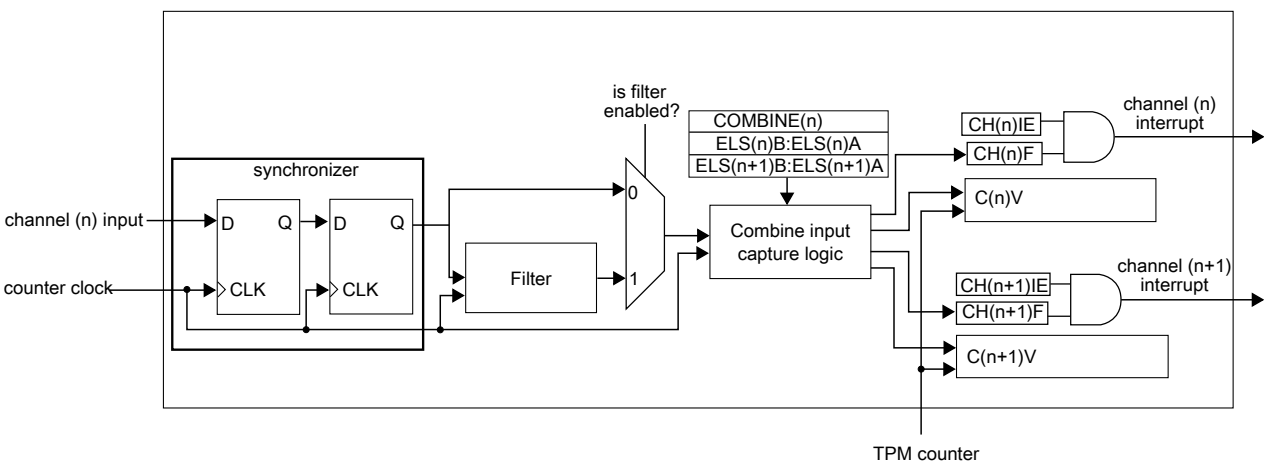


Figure 37-22. Combine Input Capture mode block diagram

The ELS(n)B:ELS(n)A bits select the edge that is captured by channel (n), and ELS(n +1)B:ELS(n+1)A bits select the edge that is captured by channel (n+1).

In the Combine Input Capture mode, only channel (n) input is used and channel (n+1) input is ignored, when COMSWAPn=1 then only channel (n+1) input is used and channel (n) input is ignored.

If the selected edge by channel (n) bits is detected at channel (n) input, then CH(n)F bit is set and the channel (n) interrupt is generated (if CH(n)IE = 1). If the selected edge by channel (n+1) bits is detected at channel (n) input, then CH(n+1)F bit is set and the channel (n+1) interrupt is generated (if CH(n+1)IE = 1).

The C(n)V register stores the value of TPM counter when the selected edge by channel (n) is detected at channel (n) input. The C(n+1)V register stores the value of TPM counter when the selected edge by channel (n+1) is detected at channel (n) input.

Note

- The CH(n)F, CH(n)IE, MS(n)A, ELS(n)B, and ELS(n)A bits are channel (n) bits.
- The CH(n+1)F, CH(n+1)IE, MS(n+1)A, ELS(n+1)B, and ELS(n+1)A bits are channel (n+1) bits.
- The Combine Input Capture mode must be used with ELS(n)B:ELS(n)A = 0:1 or 1:0, ELS(n+1)B:ELS(n+1)A = 0:1 or 1:0.

37.5.10 Input Capture Filter

The input capture filter function is only in input capture mode, or in software compare mode when quadrature decoder mode is enabled.

First, the input signal is synchronized by the counter clock. Following synchronization, the input signal enters the filter block. See the following figure.

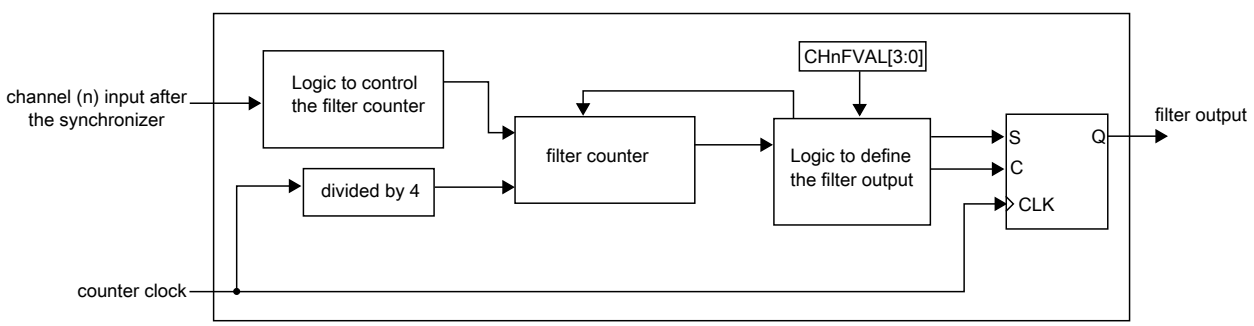


Figure 37-23. Channel input filter

When there is a state change in the input signal, the counter is reset and starts counting up. As long as the new state is stable on the input, the counter continues to increment. When the counter is equal to (CHnFVAL[3:0] × 4), the state change of the input signal is validated.

If the opposite edge appears on the input signal before it can be validated, the counter is reset. At the next input transition, the counter starts counting again. Any pulse that is shorter than the minimum value selected by (CHnFVAL[3:0] × 4 counter clocks) is regarded as a glitch and is not passed through the filter. A timing diagram of the input filter is shown in the following figure.

The filter function is disabled when CHnFVAL[3:0] bits are zero. In this case, the input signal is delayed by 2 rising edges of the counter clock. If (CHnFVAL[3:0] ≠ 0000), then the input signal is delayed by the minimum pulse width (CHnFVAL[3:0] × 4 system clocks) plus a further 3 rising edges of the system clock: two rising edges to the synchronizer, plus one more to the edge detector. In other words, CHnF is set (3 + 4 × CHnFVAL[3:0]) counter clock periods after a valid edge occurs on the channel input.

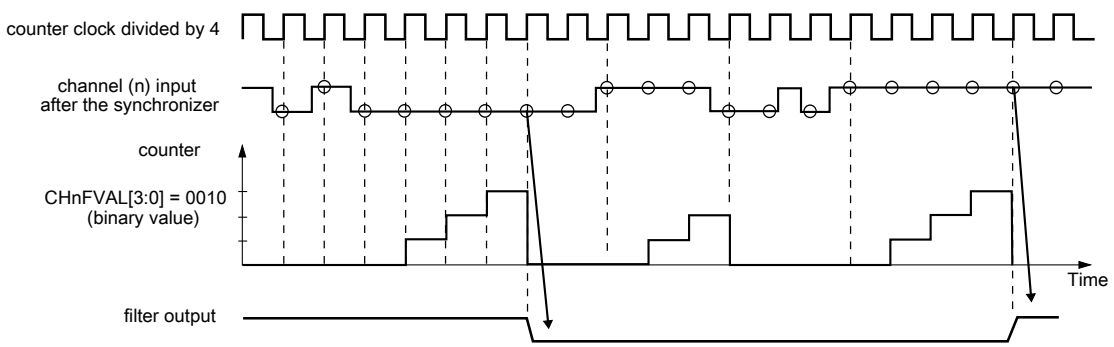


Figure 37-24. Channel input filter example

37.5.11 Deadtime insertion

The deadtime insertion is enabled in PWM combine modes when CHnFVAL is non-zero. The deadtime delay that is used for each TPM channel is defined as (CHnFVAL[3:0] x 4).

The deadtime delay insertion ensures that no two complementary signals (channels (n) and (n+1)) drive the active state at the same time.

If POL(n) = 0, POL(n+1) = 1, and the deadtime is enabled, then when the channel (n) match (TPM counter = C(n)V) occurs, the channel (n) output remains at the low value until the end of the deadtime delay when the channel (n) output is set. Similarly, when the channel (n+1) match (TPM counter = C(n+1)V) occurs, the channel (n+1) output remains at the low value until the end of the deadtime delay when the channel (n+1) output is set. See the following figures.

If POL(n) = 1, POL(n+1) = 0, and the deadtime is enabled, then when the channel (n) match (TPM counter = C(n)V) occurs, the channel (n) output remains at the high value until the end of the deadtime delay when the channel (n) output is cleared. Similarly,

when the channel (n+1) match (TPM counter = C(n+1)V) occurs, the channel (n+1) output remains at the high value until the end of the deadtime delay when the channel (n +1) output is cleared.

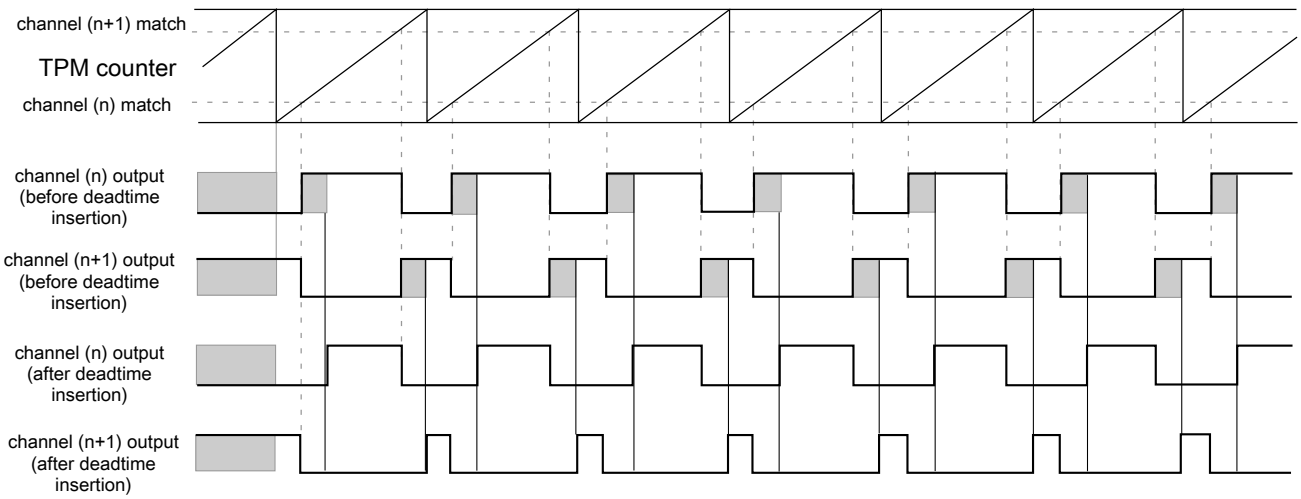


Figure 37-25. Deadtime insertion with ELSnB:ELSnA = X:1, POL(n) = 0, and POL(n+1) = 1

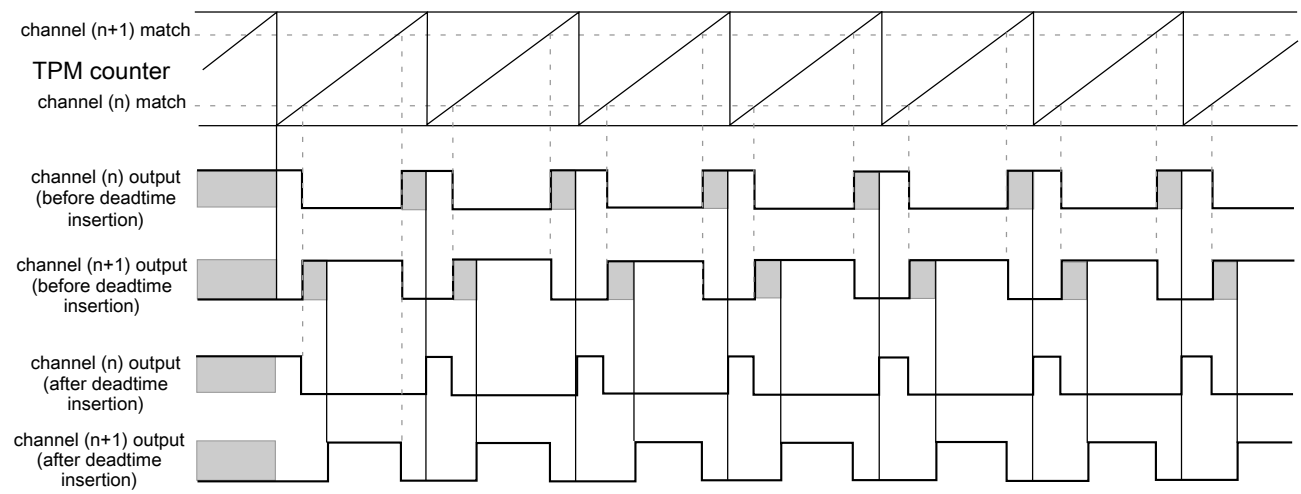


Figure 37-26. Deadtime insertion with ELSnB:ELSnA = 1:0, POL(n) = 0, and POL(n+1) = 1

37.5.12 Quadrature Decoder mode

The Quadrature Decoder mode is selected if (QUADEN = 1). The Quadrature Decoder mode uses the channel 0 (phase A) and channel 1 (phase B) input signals to control the TPM counter increment and decrement. The following figure shows the quadrature decoder block diagram.

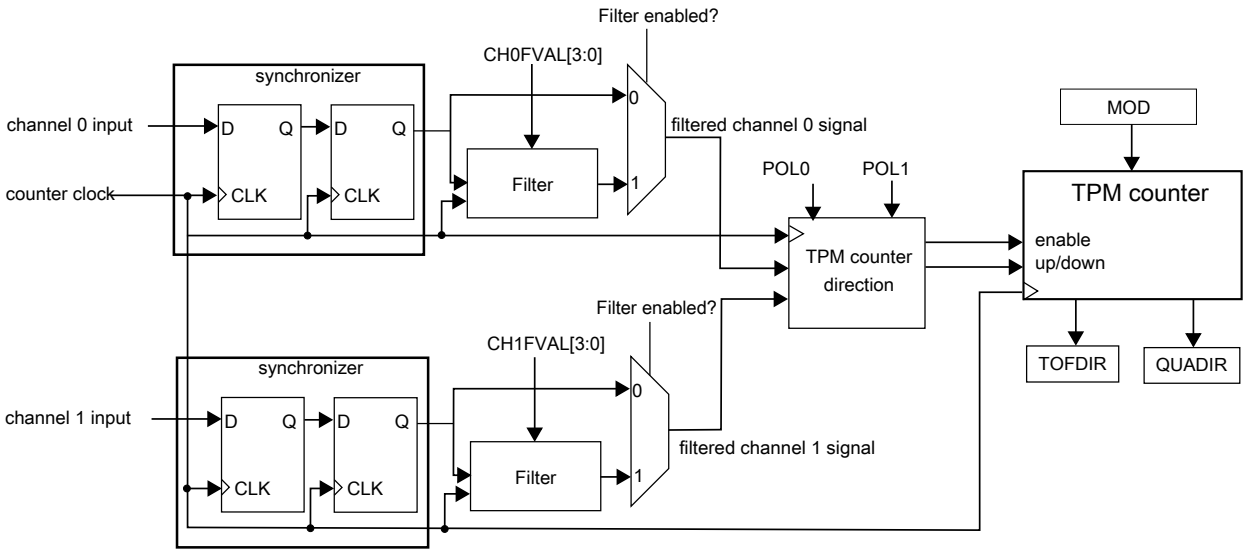


Figure 37-27. Quadrature Decoder block diagram

The input capture filter and channel polarity registers are used to configure the input filter and polarity for the channel 0 and channel 1 inputs in quadrature decode mode.

Note

Notice that the TPM counter is clocked by the channel 0 and channel 1 input signals when quadrature decoder mode is selected. Therefore In quadrature decoder mode, channel 0 and channel 1 can only be used in software compare mode and other TPM channels can only be used in input capture or output compare modes.

The QUADMODE selects the encoding mode used in the Quadrature Decoder mode. If QUADMODE = 1, then the count and direction encoding mode is enabled; see the following figure. In this mode, the channel 1 input value indicates the counting direction, and the channel 0 input defines the counting rate. The TPM counter is updated when there is a rising edge at channel 0 input signal.

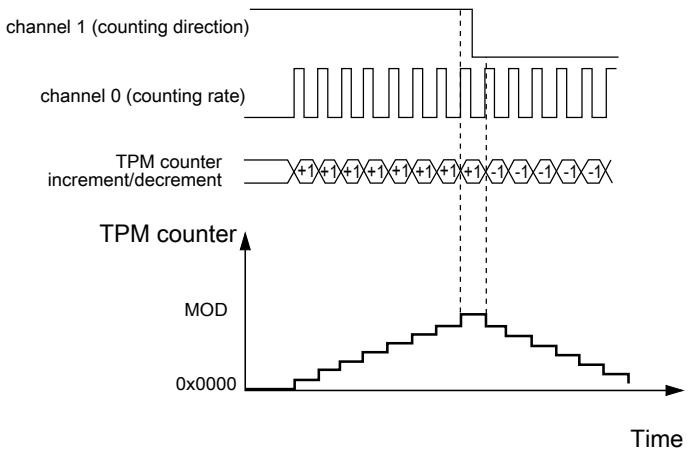


Figure 37-28. Quadrature Decoder – Count and Direction Encoding mode

If QUADMODE = 0, then the Phase Encoding mode is enabled; see the following figure. In this mode, the relationship between channel 0 and channel 1 signals indicates the counting direction, and channel 0 and channel 1 signals define the counting rate. The TPM counter is updated when there is an edge either at the channel 0 or channel 1 signals.

If CH0POL= 0 and CH1POL = 0, then the TPM counter increment happens when:

- there is a rising edge at channel 0 signal and channel 1 signal is at logic zero;
- there is a rising edge at channel 1 signal and channel 0 signal is at logic one;
- there is a falling edge at channel 1 signal and channel 0 signal is at logic zero;
- there is a falling edge at channel 0 signal and channel 1 signal is at logic one;

and the TPM counter decrement happens when:

- there is a falling edge at channel 0 signal and channel 1 signal is at logic zero;
- there is a falling edge at channel 1 signal and channel 0 signal is at logic one;
- there is a rising edge at channel 1 signal and channel 0 signal is at logic zero;
- there is a rising edge at channel 0 signal and channel 1 signal is at logic one.

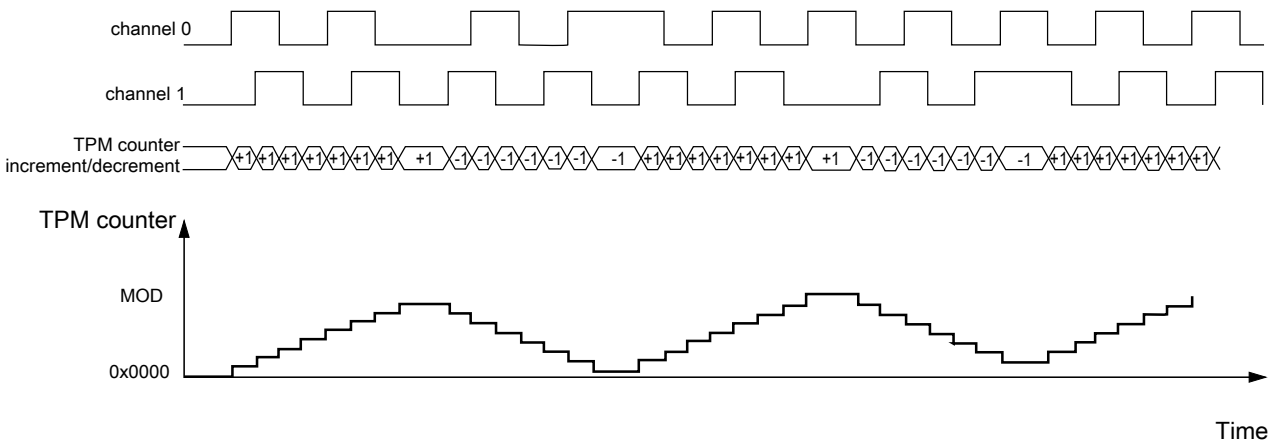


Figure 37-29. Quadrature Decoder – Phase Encoding mode

The following figure shows the TPM counter overflow in up counting. In this case, when the TPM counter changes from MOD to zero, TOF and TOFDIR bits are set. TOF bit indicates the TPM counter overflow occurred. TOFDIR indicates the counting was up when the TPM counter overflow occurred.

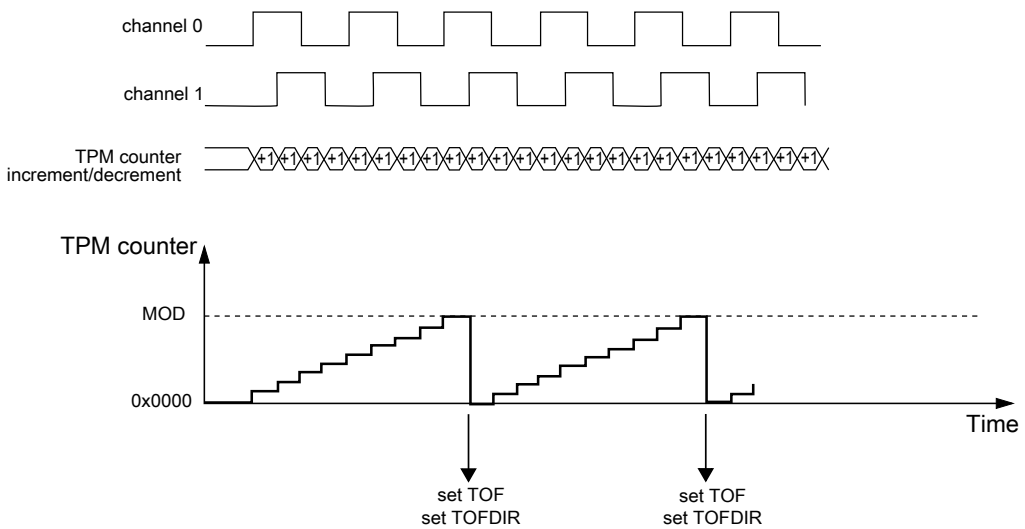


Figure 37-30. TPM Counter overflow in up counting for Quadrature Decoder mode

The following figure shows the TPM counter overflow in down counting. In this case, when the TPM counter changes from zero to MOD, TOF bit is set and TOFDIR bit is cleared. TOF bit indicates the TPM counter overflow occurred. TOFDIR indicates the counting was down when the TPM counter overflow occurred.

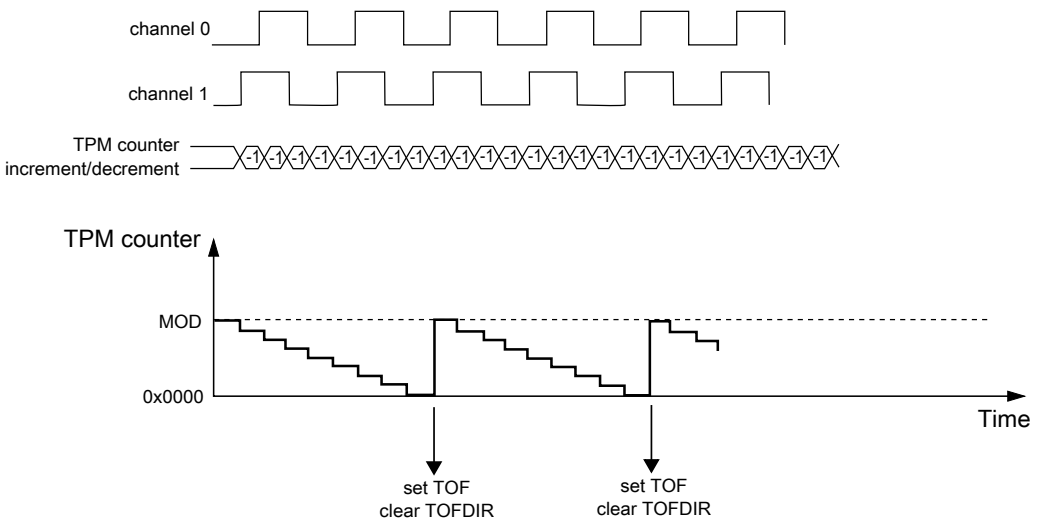


Figure 37-31. TPM counter overflow in down counting for Quadrature Decoder mode

37.5.13 Registers Updated from Write Buffers

37.5.13.1 MOD Register Update

If (CMOD[1:0] = 0:0) then MOD register is updated when MOD register is written.

If (CMOD[1:0] ≠ 0:0), then MOD register is updated according to the CPWMS bit, that is:

- If the selected mode is not CPWM then MOD register is updated after MOD register was written and the TPM counter changes from MOD to zero.
- If the selected mode is CPWM then MOD register is updated after MOD register was written and the TPM counter changes from MOD to (MOD – 1).

37.5.13.2 CnV Register Update

If (CMOD[1:0] = 0:0) then CnV register is updated when CnV register is written.

If (CMOD[1:0] ≠ 0:0), then CnV register is updated according to the selected mode, that is:

- If the selected mode is output compare then CnV register is updated on the next TPM counter increment (end of the prescaler counting) after CnV register was written.

- If the selected mode is EPWM then CnV register is updated after CnV register was written and the TPM counter changes from MOD to zero.
- If the selected mode is CPWM then CnV register is updated after CnV register was written and the TPM counter changes from MOD to (MOD – 1).

37.5.14 DMA

The channel and overflow flags generate a DMA transfer request according to DMA and CHnIE/TOIE bits.

See the following table for more information.

Table 37-5. DMA Transfer Request

DMA	CHnIE/ TOIE	Channel/Overflow DMA Transfer Request	Channel/Overflow Interrupt
0	0	The channel/overflow DMA transfer request is not generated.	The channel/overflow interrupt is not generated.
0	1	The channel/overflow DMA transfer request is not generated.	The channel/overflow interrupt is generated if (CHnF/TOF = 1).
1	0	The channel/overflow DMA transfer request is generated if (CHnF/TOF = 1).	The channel/overflow interrupt is not generated.
1	1	The channel/overflow DMA transfer request is generated if (CHnF/TOF = 1).	The channel/overflow interrupt is generated if (CHnF/TOF = 1).

If DMA = 1, the CHnF/TOF bit can be cleared either by DMA transfer done or writing a one to CHnF/TOF bit (see the following table).

Table 37-6. Clear CHnF/TOF Bit

DMA	How CHnF/TOF Bit Can Be Cleared
0	CHnF/TOF bit is cleared by writing a 1 to CHnF/TOF bit.
1	CHnF/TOF bit is cleared either when the DMA transfer is done or by writing a 1 to CHnF/TOF bit.

37.5.15 Output triggers

The TPM generates output triggers for the counter and each channel that can be used to trigger events in other peripherals.

The counter trigger asserts whenever the TOF is set and remains asserted until the next increment.

Each TPM channel generates both a pre-trigger output and a trigger output. The pre-trigger output asserts whenever the CHnF is set, the trigger output asserts on the first counter increment after the pre-trigger asserts, and then both the trigger and pre-trigger negate on the first counter increment after the trigger asserts.

When (COMBINEn = 1) in output compare modes, the pre-trigger output for both channel (n) and channel (n+1) will assert when CH(n)F is set and will negate when CH(n +1)F is set. The trigger continues to assert on the first counter increment after the pre-trigger asserts and negates at the same time as the pre-trigger negation.

37.5.16 Reset Overview

The TPM is reset whenever any chip reset occurs.

When the TPM exits from reset:

- the TPM counter and the prescaler counter are zero and are stopped (CMOD[1:0] = 0:0);
- the timer overflow interrupt is zero;
- the channels interrupts are zero;
- the channels are in input capture mode;
- the channels outputs are zero;
- the channels pins are not controlled by TPM (ELS(n)B:ELS(n)A = 0:0).

37.5.17 TPM Interrupts

This section describes TPM interrupts.

37.5.17.1 Timer Overflow Interrupt

The timer overflow interrupt is generated when (TOIE = 1) and (TOF = 1).

37.5.17.2 Channel (n) Interrupt

The channel (n) interrupt is generated when (CHnIE = 1) and (CHnF = 1).

Chapter 38
Periodic Interrupt Timer (PIT)

38.1 Chip-specific Information for this Module

38.1.1 PIT/DMA Periodic Trigger Assignments

The PIT generates periodic trigger events to the DMA Mux as shown in the table below.

Table 38-1. PIT channel assignments for periodic DMA triggering

DMA Channel Number	PIT Channel
DMA Channel 0	PIT Channel 0
DMA Channel 1	PIT Channel 1
DMA Channel 2	PIT Channel 2
DMA Channel 3	PIT Channel 3

38.1.2 PIT/ADC Triggers

PIT triggers are selected as ADCx trigger sources using the SIM_SOPT7[ADCxTRGSEL] fields. For more details, refer to SIM chapter.

38.2 Introduction

The PIT module is an array of timers that can be used to raise interrupts and trigger DMA channels.

38.2.1 Block diagram

The following figure shows the block diagram of the PIT module.

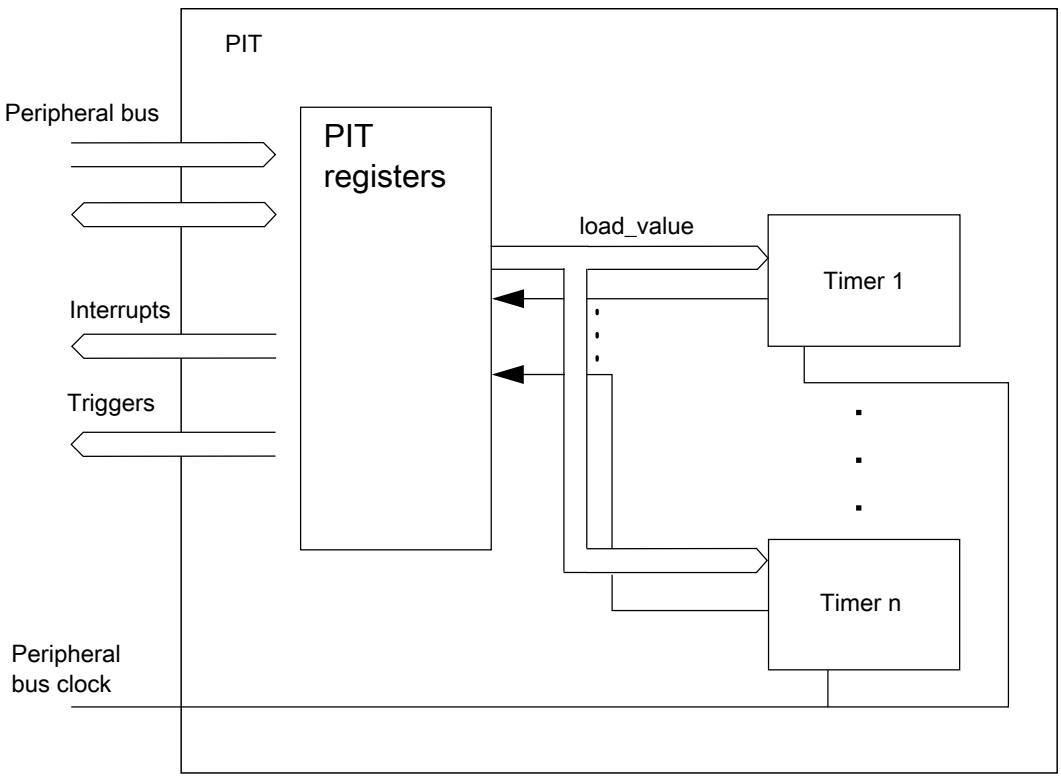


Figure 38-1. Block diagram of the PIT

NOTE

See the chip-specific PIT information for the number of PIT channels used in this MCU.

38.2.2 Features

The main features of this block are:

- Ability of timers to generate DMA trigger pulses
- Ability of timers to generate interrupts
- Maskable interrupts
- Independent timeout periods for each timer

38.3 Signal description

The PIT module has no external pins.

38.4 Memory map/register description

This section provides a detailed description of all registers accessible in the PIT module.

- Reserved registers will read as 0, writes will have no effect.
- See the chip-specific PIT information for the number of PIT channels used in this MCU.

PIT memory map

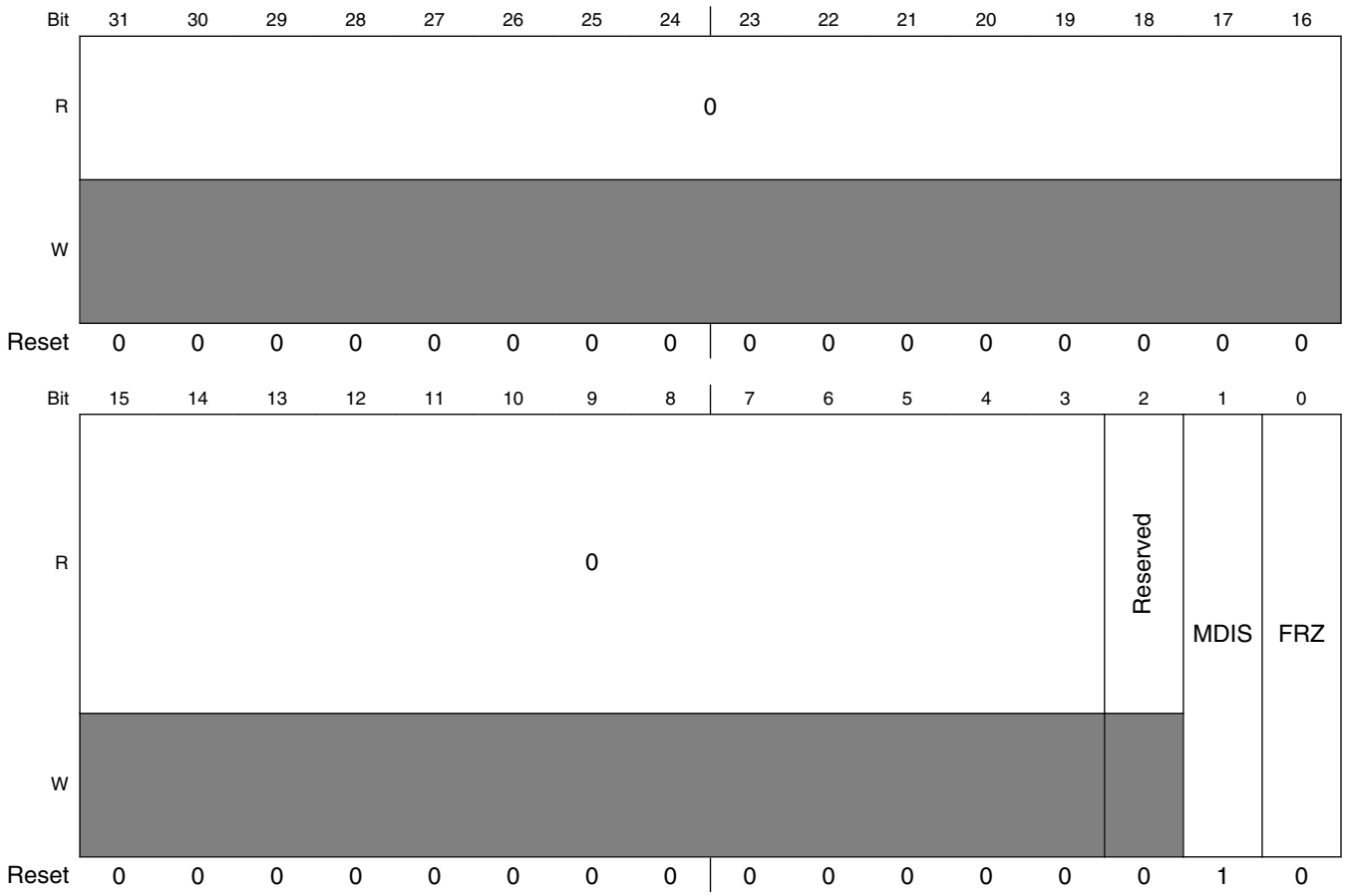
Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4003_7000	PIT Module Control Register (PIT_MCR)	32	R/W	0000_0002h	38.4.1/838
4003_70E0	PIT Upper Lifetime Timer Register (PIT_LTMR64H)	32	R	0000_0000h	38.4.2/839
4003_70E4	PIT Lower Lifetime Timer Register (PIT_LTMR64L)	32	R	0000_0000h	38.4.3/839
4003_7100	Timer Load Value Register (PIT_LDVAL0)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	38.4.4/840
4003_7104	Current Timer Value Register (PIT_CVAL0)	32	R	0000_0000h	38.4.5/840
4003_7108	Timer Control Register (PIT_TCTRL0)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	38.4.6/841
4003_710C	Timer Flag Register (PIT_TFLG0)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	38.4.7/842
4003_7110	Timer Load Value Register (PIT_LDVAL1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	38.4.4/840
4003_7114	Current Timer Value Register (PIT_CVAL1)	32	R	0000_0000h	38.4.5/840
4003_7118	Timer Control Register (PIT_TCTRL1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	38.4.6/841
4003_711C	Timer Flag Register (PIT_TFLG1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	38.4.7/842
4003_7120	Timer Load Value Register (PIT_LDVAL2)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	38.4.4/840
4003_7124	Current Timer Value Register (PIT_CVAL2)	32	R	0000_0000h	38.4.5/840
4003_7128	Timer Control Register (PIT_TCTRL2)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	38.4.6/841
4003_712C	Timer Flag Register (PIT_TFLG2)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	38.4.7/842
4003_7130	Timer Load Value Register (PIT_LDVAL3)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	38.4.4/840
4003_7134	Current Timer Value Register (PIT_CVAL3)	32	R	0000_0000h	38.4.5/840
4003_7138	Timer Control Register (PIT_TCTRL3)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	38.4.6/841
4003_713C	Timer Flag Register (PIT_TFLG3)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	38.4.7/842

38.4.1 PIT Module Control Register (PIT_MCR)

This register enables or disables the PIT timer clocks and controls the timers when the PIT enters the Debug mode.

Access: User read/write

Address: 4003_7000h base + 0h offset = 4003_7000h



PIT_MCR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–3 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
2 Reserved	This field is reserved.
1 MDIS	Module Disable - (PIT section) Disables the standard timers. This field must be enabled before any other setup is done. 0 Clock for standard PIT timers is enabled. 1 Clock for standard PIT timers is disabled.

Table continues on the next page...

PIT_MCR field descriptions (continued)

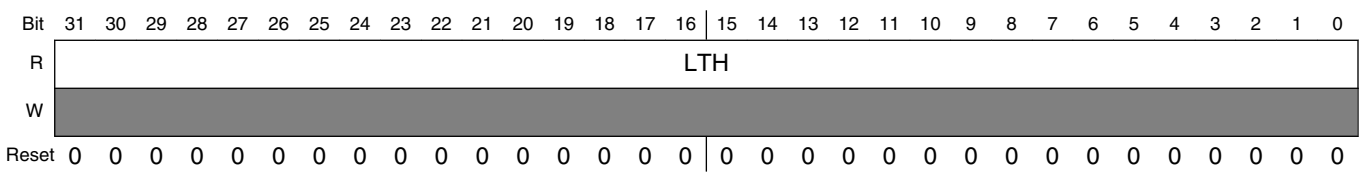
Field	Description
0 FRZ	Freeze Allows the timers to be stopped when the device enters the Debug mode. 0 Timers continue to run in Debug mode. 1 Timers are stopped in Debug mode.

38.4.2 PIT Upper Lifetime Timer Register (PIT_LTMR64H)

This register is intended for applications that chain timer 0 and timer 1 to build a 64-bit lifetimer.

Access: User read only

Address: 4003_7000h base + E0h offset = 4003_70E0h



PIT_LTMR64H field descriptions

Field	Description
LTH	Life Timer value Shows the timer value of timer 1. If this register is read at a time t1, LTMR64L shows the value of timer 0 at time t1.

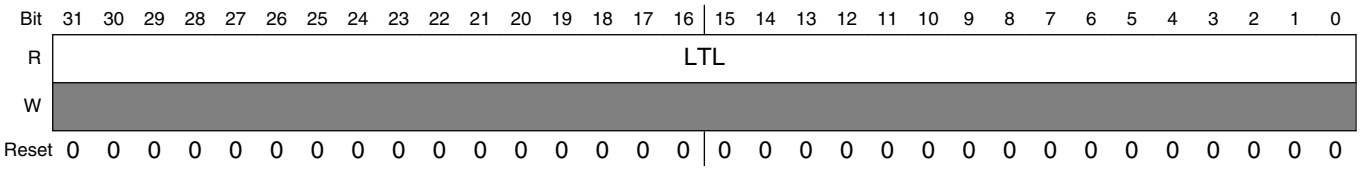
38.4.3 PIT Lower Lifetime Timer Register (PIT_LTMR64L)

This register is intended for applications that chain timer 0 and timer 1 to build a 64-bit lifetimer.

To use LTMR64H and LTMR64L, timer 0 and timer 1 need to be chained. To obtain the correct value, first read LTMR64H and then LTMR64L. LTMR64H will have the value of CVAL1 at the time of the first access, LTMR64L will have the value of CVAL0 at the time of the first access, therefore the application does not need to worry about carry-over effects of the running counter.

Access: User read only

Address: 4003_7000h base + E4h offset = 4003_70E4h



PIT_LTMR64L field descriptions

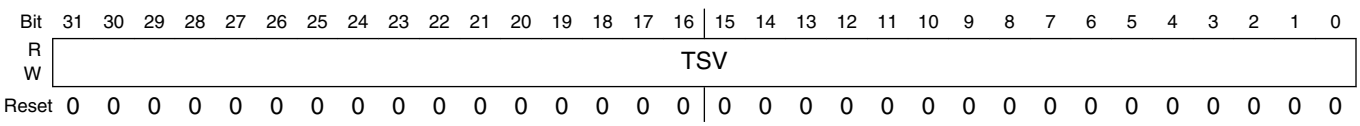
Field	Description
LTL	Life Timer value Shows the value of timer 0 at the time LTMR64H was last read. It will only update if LTMR64H is read.

38.4.4 Timer Load Value Register (PIT_LDVAL*n*)

These registers select the timeout period for the timer interrupts.

Access: User read/write

Address: 4003_7000h base + 100h offset + (16d × i), where i=0d to 3d



PIT_LDVAL*n* field descriptions

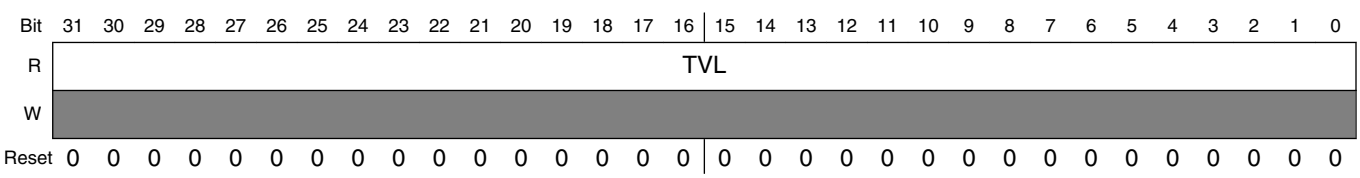
Field	Description
TSV	Timer Start Value Sets the timer start value. The timer will count down until it reaches 0, then it will generate an interrupt and load this register value again. Writing a new value to this register will not restart the timer; instead the value will be loaded after the timer expires. To abort the current cycle and start a timer period with the new value, the timer must be disabled and enabled again.

38.4.5 Current Timer Value Register (PIT_CVAL*n*)

These registers indicate the current timer position.

Access: User read only

Address: 4003_7000h base + 104h offset + (16d × i), where i=0d to 3d



PIT_CVAL*n* field descriptions

Field	Description
TVL	Current Timer Value Represents the current timer value, if the timer is enabled. **NOTE:** • If the timer is disabled, do not use this field as its value is unreliable. • The timer uses a downcounter. The timer values are frozen in Debug mode if MCR[FRZ] is set.

38.4.6 Timer Control Register (PIT_TCTRL*n*)

These registers contain the control bits for each timer.

Access: User read/write

Address: 4003_7000h base + 108h offset + (16d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0													CHN	TIE	TEN
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PIT_TCTRL*n* field descriptions

Field	Description
31–3 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
2 CHN	Chain Mode When activated, Timer n-1 needs to expire before timer n can decrement by 1. Timer 0 cannot be chained. 0 Timer is not chained. 1 Timer is chained to previous timer. For example, for Channel 2, if this field is set, Timer 2 is chained to Timer 1.
1 TIE	Timer Interrupt Enable When an interrupt is pending, or, TFLGn[TIF] is set, enabling the interrupt will immediately cause an interrupt event. To avoid this, the associated TFLGn[TIF] must be cleared first. 0 Interrupt requests from Timer n are disabled. 1 Interrupt will be requested whenever TIF is set.
0 TEN	Timer Enable Enables or disables the timer.

Table continues on the next page...

PIT_TCTRL*n* field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Timer n is disabled. 1 Timer n is enabled.

38.4.7 Timer Flag Register (PIT_TFLG*n*)

These registers hold the PIT interrupt flags.

Access: User read/write

Address: 4003_7000h base + 10Ch offset + (16d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0															TIF
W																w1c
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

PIT_TFLG*n* field descriptions

Field	Description
31–1 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
0 TIF	Timer Interrupt Flag Sets to 1 at the end of the timer period. Writing 1 to this flag clears it. Writing 0 has no effect. If enabled, or, when TCTRLn[TIE] = 1, TIF causes an interrupt request. 0 Timeout has not yet occurred. 1 Timeout has occurred.

38.5 Functional description

This section provides the functional description of the module.

38.5.1 General operation

This section gives detailed information on the internal operation of the module. Each timer can be used to generate trigger pulses and interrupts. Each interrupt is available on a separate interrupt line.

38.5.1.1 Timers

The timers generate triggers at periodic intervals, when enabled. The timers load the start values as specified in their LDVAL registers, count down to 0 and then load the respective start value again. Each time a timer reaches 0, it will generate a trigger pulse and set the interrupt flag.

All interrupts can be enabled or masked by setting TCTRLn[TIE]. A new interrupt can be generated only after the previous one is cleared.

If desired, the current counter value of the timer can be read via the CVAL registers.

The counter period can be restarted, by first disabling, and then enabling the timer with TCTRLn[TEN]. See the following figure.

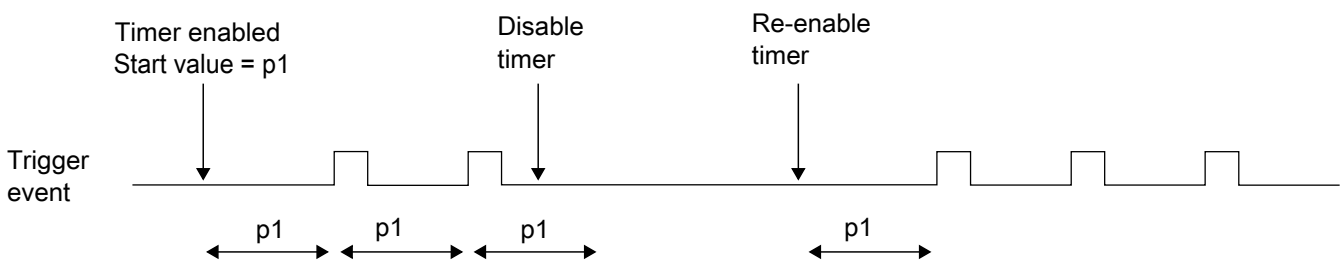


Figure 38-2. Stopping and starting a timer

The counter period of a running timer can be modified, by first disabling the timer, setting a new load value, and then enabling the timer again. See the following figure.

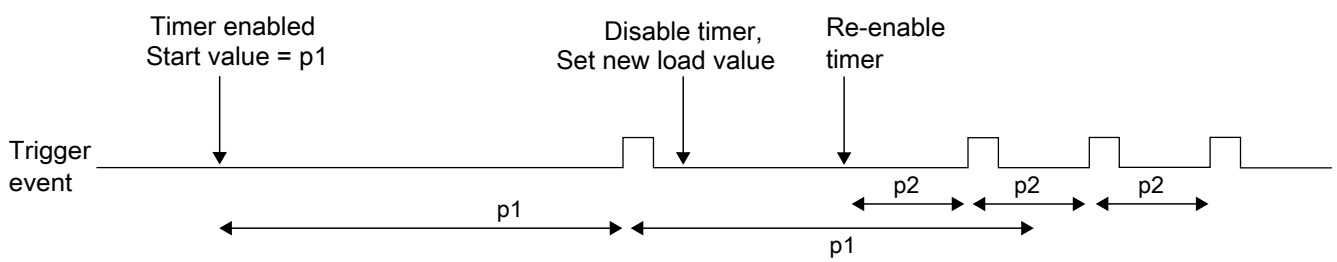


Figure 38-3. Modifying running timer period

It is also possible to change the counter period without restarting the timer by writing LDVAL with the new load value. This value will then be loaded after the next trigger event. See the following figure.

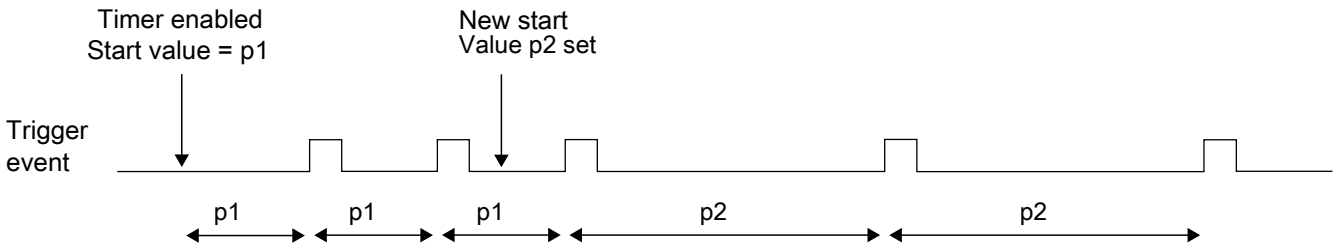


Figure 38-4. Dynamically setting a new load value

38.5.1.2 Debug mode

In Debug mode, the timers will be frozen based on MCR[FRZ]. This is intended to aid software development, allowing the developer to halt the processor, investigate the current state of the system, for example, the timer values, and then continue the operation.

38.5.2 Interrupts

All the timers support interrupt generation. See the MCU specification for related vector addresses and priorities.

Timer interrupts can be enabled by setting TCTRLn[TIE]. TFLGn[TIF] are set to 1 when a timeout occurs on the associated timer, and are cleared to 0 by writing a 1 to the corresponding TFLGn[TIF].

38.5.3 Chained timers

When a timer has chain mode enabled, it will only count after the previous timer has expired. So if timer n-1 has counted down to 0, counter n will decrement the value by one. This allows to chain some of the timers together to form a longer timer. The first timer (timer 0) cannot be chained to any other timer.

38.6 Initialization and application information

In the example configuration:

- The PIT clock has a frequency of 50 MHz.

- Timer 1 creates an interrupt every 5.12 ms.
- Timer 3 creates a trigger event every 30 ms.

The PIT module must be activated by writing a 0 to MCR[MDIS].

The 50 MHz clock frequency equates to a clock period of 20 ns. Timer 1 needs to trigger every 5.12 ms/20 ns = 256,000 cycles and Timer 3 every 30 ms/20 ns = 1,500,000 cycles. The value for the LDVAL register trigger is calculated as:

LDVAL trigger = (period / clock period) -1

This means LDVAL1 and LDVAL3 must be written with 0x0003E7FF and 0x0016E35F respectively.

The interrupt for Timer 1 is enabled by setting TCTRL1[TIE]. The timer is started by writing 1 to TCTRL1[TEN].

Timer 3 shall be used only for triggering. Therefore, Timer 3 is started by writing a 1 to TCTRL3[TEN]. TCTRL3[TIE] stays at 0.

The following example code matches the described setup:

```
// turn on PIT
PIT_MCR = 0x00;


// Timer 1
PIT_LDVAL1 = 0x0003E7FF; // setup timer 1 for 256000 cycles
PIT_TCTRL1 = TIE; // enable Timer 1 interrupts
PIT_TCTRL1 |= TEN; // start Timer 1


// Timer 3
PIT_LDVAL3 = 0x0016E35F; // setup timer 3 for 1500000 cycles
PIT_TCTRL3 |= TEN; // start Timer 3
```

38.7 Example configuration for chained timers

In the example configuration:

- The PIT clock has a frequency of 100 MHz.
- Timers 1 and 2 are available.
- An interrupt shall be raised every 1 minute.

The PIT module needs to be activated by writing a 0 to MCR[MDIS].

The 100 MHz clock frequency equates to a clock period of 10 ns, so the PIT needs to count for 6000 million cycles, which is more than a single timer can do. So, Timer 1 is set up to trigger every 6 s (600 million cycles). Timer 2 is chained to Timer 1 and programmed to trigger 10 times.

The value for the LDVAL register trigger is calculated as number of cycles-1, so LDVAL1 receives the value 0x23C345FF and LDVAL2 receives the value 0x00000009.

The interrupt for Timer 2 is enabled by setting TCTRL2[TIE], the Chain mode is activated by setting TCTRL2[CHN], and the timer is started by writing a 1 to TCTRL2[TEN]. TCTRL1[TEN] needs to be set, and TCTRL1[CHN] and TCTRL1[TIE] are cleared.

The following example code matches the described setup:

```
// turn on PIT
PIT_MCR = 0x00;


// Timer 2
PIT_LDVAL2 = 0x00000009; // setup Timer 2 for 10 counts
PIT_TCTRL2 = TIE; // enable Timer 2 interrupt
PIT_TCTRL2 |= CHN; // chain Timer 2 to Timer 1
PIT_TCTRL2 |= TEN; // start Timer 2


// Timer 1
PIT_LDVAL1 = 0x23C345FF; // setup Timer 1 for 600 000 000 cycles
PIT_TCTRL1 = TEN; // start Timer 1
```

38.8 Example configuration for the lifetime timer

To configure the lifetimer timer, channels 0 and 1 need to be chained together.

First the PIT module needs to be activated by writing a 0 to the MDIS bit in the CTRL register, then the LDVAL registers need to be set to the maximum value.

The timer is a downcounter.

The following example code matches the described setup:

```
// turn on PIT
PIT_MCR = 0x00;


// Timer 1
PIT_LDVAL1 = 0xFFFFFFFF; // setup timer 1 for maximum counting period
PIT_TCTRL1 = 0x0; // disable timer 1 interrupts
PIT_TCTRL1 |= CHN; // chain timer 1 to timer 0
PIT_TCTRL1 |= TEN; // start timer 1


// Timer 0
```

```
PIT_LDVAL0 = 0xFFFFFFFF; // setup timer 0 for maximum counting period
PIT_TCTRL0 = TEN; // start timer 0
```

To access the lifetime, read first LTMR64H and then LTMR64L.

```
current_uptime = PIT_LTMR64H<<32;
current_uptime = current_uptime + PIT_LTMR64L;
```

Chapter 39
Low Power Timer (LPTMR)

39.1 Chip-specific Information for this Module

39.1.1 LPTMR prescaler/glitch filter clocking options

The prescaler and glitch filter of the LPTMR module can be clocked from one of four sources determined by the LPTMR0_PSR[PCS] bitfield. The following table shows the chip-specific clock assignments for this bitfield.

NOTE

The chosen clock must remain enabled if the LPTMR is to continue operating in all required low-power modes.

LPTMR0_PSR[PCS]	Prescaler/glitch filter clock number	Chip clock
00	0	MCGIRCLK — internal reference clock (not available in VLPS/LLS/VLLS modes)
01	1	LPO — 1 kHz clock (not available in VLLS0 mode)
10	2	ERCLK32K — secondary external reference clock
11	3	OSCERCLK_UNDIV — Undivided external reference clock (not available in VLLS0 mode)

See Clock Distribution for more details on these clocks.

39.1.2 LPTMR pulse counter input options

The LPTMR_CSR[TPS] bitfield configures the input source used in pulse counter mode. The following table shows the chip-specific input assignments for this bitfield.

LPTMR_CSR[TPS]	Pulse counter input number	Chip input
00	0	CMP0 output
01	1	LPTMR_ALT1 pin
10	2	LPTMR_ALT2 pin
11	3	Reserved

39.2 Introduction

The low-power timer (LPTMR) can be configured to operate as a time counter with optional prescaler, or as a pulse counter with optional glitch filter, across all power modes, including the low-leakage modes. It can also continue operating through most system reset events, allowing it to be used as a time of day counter.

39.2.1 Features

The features of the LPTMR module include:

- 16-bit time counter or pulse counter with compare
  - Optional interrupt can generate asynchronous wakeup from any low-power mode
  - Hardware trigger output
  - Counter supports free-running mode or reset on compare
- Configurable clock source for prescaler/glitch filter
- Configurable input source for pulse counter
  - Rising-edge or falling-edge

39.2.2 Modes of operation

The following table describes the operation of the LPTMR module in various modes.

Table 39-1. Modes of operation

Modes	Description
Run	The LPTMR operates normally.

Table continues on the next page...

Table 39-1. Modes of operation (continued)

Modes	Description
Wait	The LPTMR continues to operate normally and may be configured to exit the low-power mode by generating an interrupt request.
Stop	The LPTMR continues to operate normally and may be configured to exit the low-power mode by generating an interrupt request.
Low-Leakage	The LPTMR continues to operate normally and may be configured to exit the low-power mode by generating an interrupt request.
Debug	The LPTMR operates normally in Pulse Counter mode, but counter does not increment in Time Counter mode.

39.3 LPTMR signal descriptions

Table 39-2. LPTMR signal descriptions

Signal	I/O	Description
LPTMR0_ALT*n*	I	Pulse Counter Input pin

39.3.1 Detailed signal descriptions

Table 39-3. LPTMR interface—detailed signal descriptions

Signal	I/O	Description	
LPTMR_ALT*n*	I	Pulse Counter Input The LPTMR can select one of the input pins to be used in Pulse Counter mode.	
		State meaning	Assertion—If configured for pulse counter mode with active-high input, then assertion causes the CNR to increment. Deassertion—If configured for pulse counter mode with active-low input, then deassertion causes the CNR to increment.
		Timing	Assertion or deassertion may occur at any time; input may assert asynchronously to the bus clock.

39.4 Memory map and register definition

LPTMR memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4004_0000	Low Power Timer Control Status Register (LPTMR0_CSR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	39.4.1/852
4004_0004	Low Power Timer Prescale Register (LPTMR0_PSR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	39.4.2/853
4004_0008	Low Power Timer Compare Register (LPTMR0_CMR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	39.4.3/855
4004_000C	Low Power Timer Counter Register (LPTMR0_CNR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	39.4.4/855

39.4.1 Low Power Timer Control Status Register (LPTMRx_CSR)

Address: 4004_0000h base + 0h offset = 4004_0000h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0								TCF	TIE	TPS		TPP	TFC	TMS	TEN
W									w1c							
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

LPTMRx_CSR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
7 TCF	Timer Compare Flag TCF is set when the LPTMR is enabled and the CNR equals the CMR and increments. TCF is cleared when the LPTMR is disabled or a logic 1 is written to it. 0 The value of CNR is not equal to CMR and increments. 1 The value of CNR is equal to CMR and increments.
6 TIE	Timer Interrupt Enable When TIE is set, the LPTMR Interrupt is generated whenever TCF is also set. 0 Timer interrupt disabled. 1 Timer interrupt enabled.
5–4 TPS	Timer Pin Select Configures the input source to be used in Pulse Counter mode. TPS must be altered only when the LPTMR is disabled. The input connections vary by device. See the for information on the connections to these inputs. 00 Pulse counter input 0 is selected.

Table continues on the next page...

LPTMRx_CSR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	01 Pulse counter input 1 is selected. 10 Pulse counter input 2 is selected. 11 Pulse counter input 3 is selected.
3 TPP	Timer Pin Polarity Configures the polarity of the input source in Pulse Counter mode. TPP must be changed only when the LPTMR is disabled. 0 Pulse Counter input source is active-high, and the CNR will increment on the rising-edge. 1 Pulse Counter input source is active-low, and the CNR will increment on the falling-edge.
2 TFC	Timer Free-Running Counter When clear, TFC configures the CNR to reset whenever TCF is set. When set, TFC configures the CNR to reset on overflow. TFC must be altered only when the LPTMR is disabled. 0 CNR is reset whenever TCF is set. 1 CNR is reset on overflow.
1 TMS	Timer Mode Select Configures the mode of the LPTMR. TMS must be altered only when the LPTMR is disabled. 0 Time Counter mode. 1 Pulse Counter mode.
0 TEN	Timer Enable When TEN is clear, it resets the LPTMR internal logic, including the CNR and TCF. When TEN is set, the LPTMR is enabled. While writing 1 to this field, CSR[5:1] must not be altered. 0 LPTMR is disabled and internal logic is reset. 1 LPTMR is enabled.

39.4.2 Low Power Timer Prescale Register (LPTMRx_PSR)

Address: 4004_0000h base + 4h offset = 4004_0004h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0								PRESCALE					PBYP	PCS	
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

LPTMRx_PSR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–7 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
6–3 PRESCALE	Prescale Value Configures the size of the Prescaler in Time Counter mode or width of the glitch filter in Pulse Counter mode. PRESCALE must be altered only when the LPTMR is disabled. 0000 Prescaler divides the prescaler clock by 2; glitch filter does not support this configuration. 0001 Prescaler divides the prescaler clock by 4; glitch filter recognizes change on input pin after 2 rising clock edges. 0010 Prescaler divides the prescaler clock by 8; glitch filter recognizes change on input pin after 4 rising clock edges. 0011 Prescaler divides the prescaler clock by 16; glitch filter recognizes change on input pin after 8 rising clock edges. 0100 Prescaler divides the prescaler clock by 32; glitch filter recognizes change on input pin after 16 rising clock edges. 0101 Prescaler divides the prescaler clock by 64; glitch filter recognizes change on input pin after 32 rising clock edges. 0110 Prescaler divides the prescaler clock by 128; glitch filter recognizes change on input pin after 64 rising clock edges. 0111 Prescaler divides the prescaler clock by 256; glitch filter recognizes change on input pin after 128 rising clock edges. 1000 Prescaler divides the prescaler clock by 512; glitch filter recognizes change on input pin after 256 rising clock edges. 1001 Prescaler divides the prescaler clock by 1024; glitch filter recognizes change on input pin after 512 rising clock edges. 1010 Prescaler divides the prescaler clock by 2048; glitch filter recognizes change on input pin after 1024 rising clock edges. 1011 Prescaler divides the prescaler clock by 4096; glitch filter recognizes change on input pin after 2048 rising clock edges. 1100 Prescaler divides the prescaler clock by 8192; glitch filter recognizes change on input pin after 4096 rising clock edges. 1101 Prescaler divides the prescaler clock by 16,384; glitch filter recognizes change on input pin after 8192 rising clock edges. 1110 Prescaler divides the prescaler clock by 32,768; glitch filter recognizes change on input pin after 16,384 rising clock edges. 1111 Prescaler divides the prescaler clock by 65,536; glitch filter recognizes change on input pin after 32,768 rising clock edges.
2 PBYP	Prescaler Bypass When PBYP is set, the selected prescaler clock in Time Counter mode or selected input source in Pulse Counter mode directly clocks the CNR. When PBYP is clear, the CNR is clocked by the output of the prescaler/glitch filter. PBYP must be altered only when the LPTMR is disabled. 0 Prescaler/glitch filter is enabled. 1 Prescaler/glitch filter is bypassed.
PCS	Prescaler Clock Select Selects the clock to be used by the LPTMR prescaler/glitch filter. PCS must be altered only when the LPTMR is disabled. The clock connections vary by device. **NOTE:** See the chip configuration details for information on the connections to these inputs.

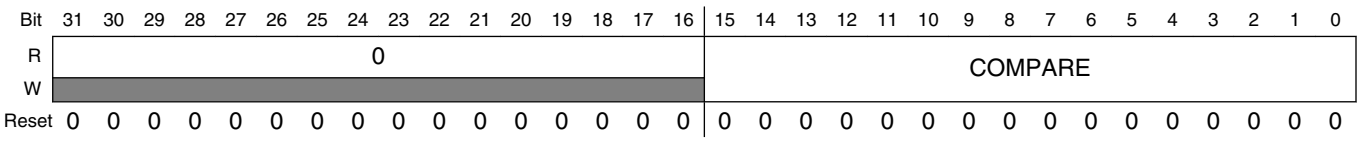
Table continues on the next page...

LPTMRx_PSR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	00 Prescaler/glitch filter clock 0 selected. 01 Prescaler/glitch filter clock 1 selected. 10 Prescaler/glitch filter clock 2 selected. 11 Prescaler/glitch filter clock 3 selected.

39.4.3 Low Power Timer Compare Register (LPTMRx_CMR)

Address: 4004_0000h base + 8h offset = 4004_0008h



LPTMRx_CMR field descriptions

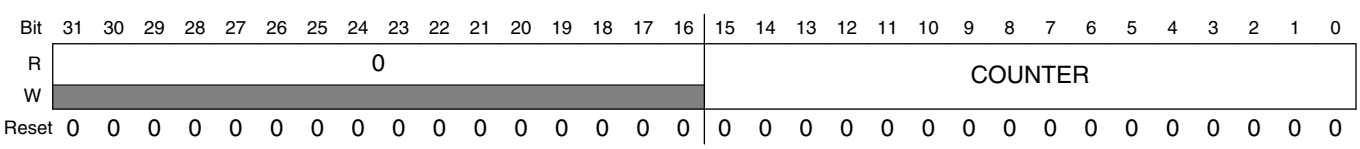
Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
COMPARE	Compare Value When the LPTMR is enabled and the CNR equals the value in the CMR and increments, TCF is set and the hardware trigger asserts until the next time the CNR increments. If the CMR is 0, the hardware trigger will remain asserted until the LPTMR is disabled. If the LPTMR is enabled, the CMR must be altered only when TCF is set.

39.4.4 Low Power Timer Counter Register (LPTMRx_CNR)

NOTE

See LPTMR counter for details on how to read counter value.

Address: 4004_0000h base + Ch offset = 4004_000Ch



LPTMRx_CNR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

Table continues on the next page...

LPTMRx_CNR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
COUNTER	Counter Value The CNR returns the value of the LPTMR counter at the time this register was last written. Writing the CNR will latch the current value of the LPTMR for subsequent reading, the value written is ignored.

39.5 Functional description

39.5.1 LPTMR power and reset

The LPTMR remains powered in all power modes, including low-leakage modes. If the LPTMR is not required to remain operating during a low-power mode, then it must be disabled before entering the mode.

The LPTMR is reset only on global Power On Reset (POR) or Low Voltage Detect (LVD). When configuring the LPTMR registers, the CSR must be initially written with the timer disabled, before configuring the PSR and CMR. Then, CSR[TIE] must be set as the last step in the initialization. This ensures the LPTMR is configured correctly and the LPTMR counter is reset to zero following a warm reset.

39.5.2 LPTMR clocking

The LPTMR prescaler/glitch filter can be clocked by one of the four clocks. The clock source must be enabled before the LPTMR is enabled.

NOTE

The clock source selected need to be configured to remain enabled in low-power modes, otherwise the LPTMR will not operate during low-power modes.

In Pulse Counter mode with the prescaler/glitch filter bypassed, the selected input source directly clocks the CNR and no other clock source is required. To minimize power in this case, configure the prescaler clock source for a clock that is not toggling.

NOTE

The clock source or pulse input source selected for the LPTMR should not exceed the frequency f_{LPTMR} defined in the device datasheet.

39.5.3 LPTMR prescaler/glitch filter

The LPTMR prescaler and glitch filter share the same logic which operates as a prescaler in Time Counter mode and as a glitch filter in Pulse Counter mode.

NOTE

The prescaler/glitch filter configuration must not be altered when the LPTMR is enabled.

39.5.3.1 Prescaler enabled

In Time Counter mode, when the prescaler is enabled, the output of the prescaler directly clocks the CNR. When the LPTMR is enabled, the CNR will increment every 2^2 to 2^{16} prescaler clock cycles. After the LPTMR is enabled, the first increment of the CNR will take an additional one or two prescaler clock cycles due to synchronization logic.

39.5.3.2 Prescaler bypassed

In Time Counter mode, when the prescaler is bypassed, the selected prescaler clock increments the CNR on every clock cycle. When the LPTMR is enabled, the first increment will take an additional one or two prescaler clock cycles due to synchronization logic.

39.5.3.3 Glitch filter

In Pulse Counter mode, when the glitch filter is enabled, the output of the glitch filter directly clocks the CNR. When the LPTMR is first enabled, the output of the glitch filter is asserted, that is, logic 1 for active-high and logic 0 for active-low. The following table shows the change in glitch filter output with the selected input source.

If	Then
The selected input source remains deasserted for at least 2^1 to 2^{15} consecutive prescaler clock rising edges	The glitch filter output will also deassert.
The selected input source remains asserted for at least 2^1 to 2^{15} consecutive prescaler clock rising-edges	The glitch filter output will also assert.

NOTE

The input is only sampled on the rising clock edge.

The CNR will increment each time the glitch filter output asserts. In Pulse Counter mode, the maximum rate at which the CNR can increment is once every 2^2 to 2^{16} prescaler clock edges. When first enabled, the glitch filter will wait an additional one or two prescaler clock edges due to synchronization logic.

39.5.3.4 Glitch filter bypassed

In Pulse Counter mode, when the glitch filter is bypassed, the selected input source increments the CNR every time it asserts. Before the LPTMR is first enabled, the selected input source is forced to be asserted. This prevents the CNR from incrementing if the selected input source is already asserted when the LPTMR is first enabled.

39.5.4 LPTMR compare

When the CNR equals the value of the CMR and increments, the following events occur:

- CSR[TCF] is set.
- LPTMR interrupt is generated if CSR[TIE] is also set.
- LPTMR hardware trigger is generated.
- CNR is reset if CSR[TFC] is clear.

When the LPTMR is enabled, the CMR can be altered only when CSR[TCF] is set. When updating the CMR, the CMR must be written and CSR[TCF] must be cleared before the LPTMR counter has incremented past the new LPTMR compare value.

39.5.5 LPTMR counter

The CNR increments by one on every:

- Prescaler clock in Time Counter mode with prescaler bypassed
- Prescaler output in Time Counter mode with prescaler enabled
- Input source assertion in Pulse Counter mode with glitch filter bypassed
- Glitch filter output in Pulse Counter mode with glitch filter enabled

The CNR is reset when the LPTMR is disabled or if the counter register overflows. If CSR[TFC] is cleared, then the CNR is also reset whenever CSR[TCF] is set.

The CNR continues incrementing when the core is halted in Debug mode when configured for Pulse Counter mode, the CNR will stop incrementing when the core is halted in Debug mode when configured for Time Counter mode.

The CNR cannot be initialized, but can be read at any time. On each read of the CNR, software must first write to the CNR with any value. This will synchronize and register the current value of the CNR into a temporary register. The contents of the temporary register are returned on each read of the CNR.

When reading the CNR, the bus clock must be at least two times faster than the rate at which the LPTMR counter is incrementing, otherwise incorrect data may be returned.

39.5.6 LPTMR hardware trigger

The LPTMR hardware trigger asserts at the same time the CSR[TCF] is set and can be used to trigger hardware events in other peripherals without software intervention. The hardware trigger is always enabled.

When	Then
The CMR is set to 0 with CSR[TFC] clear	The LPTMR hardware trigger will assert on the first compare and does not deassert.
The CMR is set to a nonzero value, or, if CSR[TFC] is set	The LPTMR hardware trigger will assert on each compare and deassert on the following increment of the CNR.

39.5.7 LPTMR interrupt

The LPTMR interrupt is generated whenever CSR[TIE] and CSR[TCF] are set. CSR[TCF] is cleared by disabling the LPTMR or by writing a logic 1 to it.

CSR[TIE] can be altered and CSR[TCF] can be cleared while the LPTMR is enabled.

The LPTMR interrupt is generated asynchronously to the system clock and can be used to generate a wakeup from any low-power mode, including the low-leakage modes, provided the LPTMR is enabled as a wakeup source.

Chapter 40
Real Time Clock (RTC)

40.1 Chip-specific Information for this Module

40.1.1 RTC_CLKOUT signal

When the RTC is enabled and the port control module selects the RTC_CLKOUT function, the RTC_CLKOUT signal outputs a 1 Hz or 32 kHz output derived from RTC oscillator as shown below.

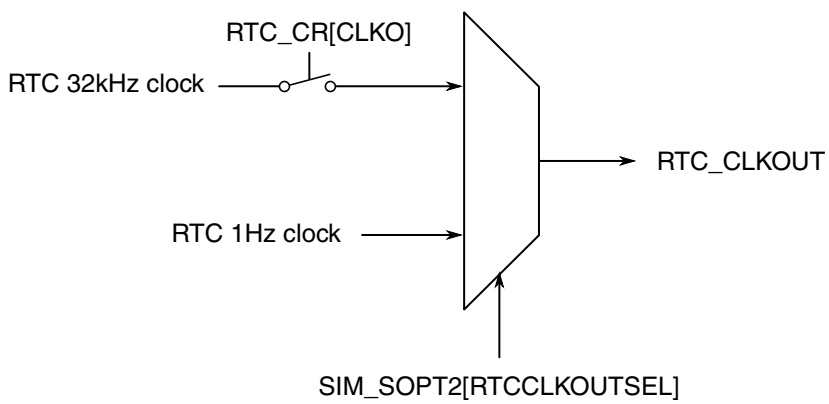


Figure 40-1. RTC_CLKOUT generation

40.2 Introduction

40.2.1 Features

The RTC module features include:

- Independent power supply, POR, and 32 kHz crystal oscillator

- 32-bit seconds counter with roll-over protection and 32-bit alarm
- 16-bit prescaler with compensation that can correct errors between 0.12 ppm and 3906 ppm
- Register write protection
  - Lock register requires VBAT POR or software reset to enable write access
  - Access control registers require system reset to enable read and/or write access
- 1 Hz square wave output with optional interrupt

40.2.2 Modes of operation

The RTC remains functional in all low power modes and can generate an interrupt to exit any low power mode. It operates in one of two modes of operation: chip power-up and chip power-down.

During chip power-down, RTC is powered from the backup power supply (VBAT) and is electrically isolated from the rest of the chip but continues to increment the time counter (if enabled) and retain the state of the RTC registers. The RTC registers are not accessible.

During chip power-up, RTC remains powered from the backup power supply (VBAT). All RTC registers are accessible by software and all functions are operational. If enabled, the 32.768 kHz clock can be supplied to the rest of the chip.

40.2.3 RTC signal descriptions

Table 40-1. RTC signal descriptions

Signal	Description	I/O
EXTAL32	32.768 kHz oscillator input	I
XTAL32	32.768 kHz oscillator output	O
RTC_CLKOUT	1 Hz square-wave output or OSCERCLK	O
$\overline{\text{RTC\_WAKEUP}}$	Wakeup for external device	O

40.2.3.1 RTC clock output

The clock to the seconds counter is available on the RTC_CLKOUT signal. It is a 1 Hz square wave output. See RTC_CLKOUT options for details.

40.2.3.2 RTC wakeup pin

The RTC wakeup pin is an open drain, active low, output that allows the RTC to wakeup the chip via an external component. The wakeup pin asserts when the wakeup pin enable is set and either the RTC interrupt is asserted or the wakeup pin is turned on via a register bit. The wakeup pin does not assert from the RTC seconds interrupt.

NOTE

The wakeup pin is optional and may not be implemented on all devices.

40.3 Register definition

All registers must be accessed using 32-bit writes and all register accesses incur three wait states.

Write accesses to any register by non-supervisor mode software, when the supervisor access bit in the control register is clear, will terminate with a bus error.

Read accesses by non-supervisor mode software complete as normal.

Writing to a register protected by the write access register or lock register does not generate a bus error, but the write will not complete.

Reading a register protected by the read access register does not generate a bus error, but the register will read zero.

RTC memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4003_D000	RTC Time Seconds Register (RTC_TSR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	40.3.1/864
4003_D004	RTC Time Prescaler Register (RTC_TPR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	40.3.2/864
4003_D008	RTC Time Alarm Register (RTC_TAR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	40.3.3/865
4003_D00C	RTC Time Compensation Register (RTC_TCR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	40.3.4/865
4003_D010	RTC Control Register (RTC_CR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	40.3.5/866
4003_D014	RTC Status Register (RTC_SR)	32	R/W	0000_0001h	40.3.6/868
4003_D018	RTC Lock Register (RTC_LR)	32	R/W	0000_00FFh	40.3.7/869
4003_D01C	RTC Interrupt Enable Register (RTC_IER)	32	R/W	0000_0007h	40.3.8/870
4003_D800	RTC Write Access Register (RTC_WAR)	32	R/W	0000_00FFh	40.3.9/871
4003_D804	RTC Read Access Register (RTC_RAR)	32	R/W	0000_00FFh	40.3.10/ 873

40.3.1 RTC Time Seconds Register (RTC_TSR)

Address: 4003_D000h base + 0h offset = 4003_D000h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R W	TSR																															
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

RTC_TSR field descriptions

Field	Description
TSR	Time Seconds Register When the time counter is enabled, the TSR is read only and increments once a second provided SR[TOF] or SR[TIF] are not set. The time counter will read as zero when SR[TOF] or SR[TIF] are set. When the time counter is disabled, the TSR can be read or written. Writing to the TSR when the time counter is disabled will clear the SR[TOF] and/or the SR[TIF]. Writing to TSR with zero is supported, but not recommended because TSR will read as zero when SR[TIF] or SR[TOF] are set (indicating the time is invalid).

40.3.2 RTC Time Prescaler Register (RTC_TPR)

Address: 4003_D000h base + 4h offset = 4003_D004h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																TPR															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

RTC_TPR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
TPR	Time Prescaler Register When the time counter is enabled, the TPR is read only and increments every 32.768 kHz clock cycle. The time counter will read as zero when SR[TOF] or SR[TIF] are set. When the time counter is disabled, the TPR can be read or written. The TSR[TSR] increments when bit 14 of the TPR transitions from a logic one to a logic zero.

40.3.3 RTC Time Alarm Register (RTC_TAR)

Address: 4003_D000h base + 8h offset = 4003_D008h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R W	TAR																															
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

RTC_TAR field descriptions

Field	Description
TAR	Time Alarm Register When the time counter is enabled, the SR[TAF] is set whenever the TAR[TAR] equals the TSR[TSR] and the TSR[TSR] increments. Writing to the TAR clears the SR[TAF].

40.3.4 RTC Time Compensation Register (RTC_TCR)

Address: 4003_D000h base + Ch offset = 4003_D00Ch

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	CIC								TCV								CIR								TCR							
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

RTC_TCR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–24 CIC	Compensation Interval Counter Current value of the compensation interval counter. If the compensation interval counter equals zero then it is loaded with the contents of the CIR. If the CIC does not equal zero then it is decremented once a second.
23–16 TCV	Time Compensation Value Current value used by the compensation logic for the present second interval. Updated once a second if the CIC equals 0 with the contents of the TCR field. If the CIC does not equal zero then it is loaded with zero (compensation is not enabled for that second increment).
15–8 CIR	Compensation Interval Register Configures the compensation interval in seconds from 1 to 256 to control how frequently the TCR should adjust the number of 32.768 kHz cycles in each second. The value written should be one less than the number of seconds. For example, write zero to configure for a compensation interval of one second. This register is double buffered and writes do not take affect until the end of the current compensation interval.
TCR	Time Compensation Register Configures the number of 32.768 kHz clock cycles in each second. This register is double buffered and writes do not take affect until the end of the current compensation interval.

Table continues on the next page...

RTC_TCR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	80h Time Prescaler Register overflows every 32896 clock cycles. ... ... FFh Time Prescaler Register overflows every 32769 clock cycles. 00h Time Prescaler Register overflows every 32768 clock cycles. 01h Time Prescaler Register overflows every 32767 clock cycles. .... 7Fh Time Prescaler Register overflows every 32641 clock cycles.

40.3.5 RTC Control Register (RTC_CR)

Address: 4003_D000h base + 10h offset = 4003_D010h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0								0							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0	Reserved	SC2P	SC4P	SC8P	SC16P	CLKO	OSCE	0			WPS	UM	SUP	WPE	SWR
W		0														
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

RTC_CR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–24 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

Table continues on the next page...

RTC_CR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
23–15 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
14 Reserved	This field is reserved. It must always be written to 0.
13 SC2P	Oscillator 2pF Load Configure 0 Disable the load. 1 Enable the additional load.
12 SC4P	Oscillator 4pF Load Configure 0 Disable the load. 1 Enable the additional load.
11 SC8P	Oscillator 8pF Load Configure 0 Disable the load. 1 Enable the additional load.
10 SC16P	Oscillator 16pF Load Configure 0 Disable the load. 1 Enable the additional load.
9 CLKO	Clock Output 0 The 32 kHz clock is output to other peripherals. 1 The 32 kHz clock is not output to other peripherals.
8 OSCE	Oscillator Enable 0 32.768 kHz oscillator is disabled. 1 32.768 kHz oscillator is enabled. After setting this bit, wait the oscillator startup time before enabling the time counter to allow the 32.768 kHz clock time to stabilize.
7–5 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
4 WPS	Wakeup Pin Select The wakeup pin is optional and not available on all devices. 0 Wakeup pin asserts (active low, open drain) if the RTC interrupt asserts or the wakeup pin is turned on. 1 Wakeup pin instead outputs the RTC 32kHz clock, provided the wakeup pin is turned on and the 32kHz clock is output to other peripherals.
3 UM	Update Mode Allows SR[TCE] to be written even when the Status Register is locked. When set, the SR[TCE] can always be written if the SR[TIF] or SR[TOF] are set or if the SR[TCE] is clear. 0 Registers cannot be written when locked. 1 Registers can be written when locked under limited conditions.
2 SUP	Supervisor Access 0 Non-supervisor mode write accesses are not supported and generate a bus error. 1 Non-supervisor mode write accesses are supported.

Table continues on the next page...

RTC_CR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
1 WPE	Wakeup Pin Enable The wakeup pin is optional and not available on all devices. 0 Wakeup pin is disabled. 1 Wakeup pin is enabled and wakeup pin asserts if the RTC interrupt asserts or the wakeup pin is turned on.
0 SWR	Software Reset 0 No effect. 1 Resets all RTC registers except for the SWR bit and the RTC_WAR and RTC_RAR registers . The SWR bit is cleared by VBAT POR and by software explicitly clearing it.

40.3.6 RTC Status Register (RTC_SR)

Address: 4003_D000h base + 14h offset = 4003_D014h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0											TCE	0	TAF	TOF	TIF
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1

RTC_SR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–5 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
4 TCE	Time Counter Enable When time counter is disabled the TSR register and TPR register are writeable, but do not increment. When time counter is enabled the TSR register and TPR register are not writeable, but increment. 0 Time counter is disabled. 1 Time counter is enabled.
3 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
2 TAF	Time Alarm Flag Time alarm flag is set when the TAR[TAR] equals the TSR[TSR] and the TSR[TSR] increments. This bit is cleared by writing the TAR register.

Table continues on the next page...

RTC_SR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Time alarm has not occurred. 1 Time alarm has occurred.
1 TOF	Time Overflow Flag Time overflow flag is set when the time counter is enabled and overflows. The TSR and TPR do not increment and read as zero when this bit is set. This bit is cleared by writing the TSR register when the time counter is disabled. 0 Time overflow has not occurred. 1 Time overflow has occurred and time counter is read as zero.
0 TIF	Time Invalid Flag The time invalid flag is set on VBAT POR or software reset. The TSR and TPR do not increment and read as zero when this bit is set. This bit is cleared by writing the TSR register when the time counter is disabled. 0 Time is valid. 1 Time is invalid and time counter is read as zero.

40.3.7 RTC Lock Register (RTC_LR)

Address: 4003_D000h base + 18h offset = 4003_D018h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0								1	LRL	SRL	CRL	TCL	1		
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1

RTC_LR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
7 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 1.
6 LRL	Lock Register Lock After being cleared, this bit can be set only by VBAT POR or software reset. 0 Lock Register is locked and writes are ignored. 1 Lock Register is not locked and writes complete as normal.
5 SRL	Status Register Lock After being cleared, this bit can be set only by VBAT POR or software reset.

Table continues on the next page...

RTC_LR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Status Register is locked and writes are ignored. 1 Status Register is not locked and writes complete as normal.
4 CRL	Control Register Lock After being cleared, this bit can only be set by VBAT POR. 0 Control Register is locked and writes are ignored. 1 Control Register is not locked and writes complete as normal.
3 TCL	Time Compensation Lock After being cleared, this bit can be set only by VBAT POR or software reset. 0 Time Compensation Register is locked and writes are ignored. 1 Time Compensation Register is not locked and writes complete as normal.
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 1.

40.3.8 RTC Interrupt Enable Register (RTC_IER)

Address: 4003_D000h base + 1Ch offset = 4003_D01Ch

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0								WPON	Reserved		TSIE	Reserved	TAIE	TOIE	TIIE
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1

RTC_IER field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
15–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
7 WPON	Wakeup Pin On The wakeup pin is optional and not available on all devices. Whenever the wakeup pin is enabled and this bit is set, the wakeup pin will assert.

Table continues on the next page...

RTC_IER field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 No effect. 1 If the wakeup pin is enabled, then the wakeup pin will assert.
6–5 Reserved	This field is reserved.
4 TSIE	Time Seconds Interrupt Enable The seconds interrupt is an edge-sensitive interrupt with a dedicated interrupt vector. It is generated at least once a second and requires no software overhead (there is no corresponding status flag to clear). The frequency of the seconds interrupt is configured by TSIC. 0 Seconds interrupt is disabled. 1 Seconds interrupt is enabled.
3 Reserved	This field is reserved.
2 TAIE	Time Alarm Interrupt Enable 0 Time alarm flag does not generate an interrupt. 1 Time alarm flag does generate an interrupt.
1 TOIE	Time Overflow Interrupt Enable 0 Time overflow flag does not generate an interrupt. 1 Time overflow flag does generate an interrupt.
0 TIIE	Time Invalid Interrupt Enable 0 Time invalid flag does not generate an interrupt. 1 Time invalid flag does generate an interrupt.

40.3.9 RTC Write Access Register (RTC_WAR)

Address: 4003_D000h base + 800h offset = 4003_D800h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0								IERW	LRW	SRW	CRW	TCRW	TARW	TPRW	TSRW
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1

RTC_WAR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
7 IERW	Interrupt Enable Register Write After being cleared, this bit is set only by system reset. It is not affected by VBAT POR or software reset. 0 Writes to the Interupt Enable Register are ignored. 1 Writes to the Interrupt Enable Register complete as normal.
6 LRW	Lock Register Write After being cleared, this bit is set only by system reset. It is not affected by VBAT POR or software reset. 0 Writes to the Lock Register are ignored. 1 Writes to the Lock Register complete as normal.
5 SRW	Status Register Write After being cleared, this bit is set only by system reset. It is not affected by VBAT POR or software reset. 0 Writes to the Status Register are ignored. 1 Writes to the Status Register complete as normal.
4 CRW	Control Register Write After being cleared, this bit is set only by system reset. It is not affected by VBAT POR or software reset. 0 Writes to the Control Register are ignored. 1 Writes to the Control Register complete as normal.
3 TCRW	Time Compensation Register Write After being cleared, this bit is set only by system reset. It is not affected by VBAT POR or software reset. 0 Writes to the Time Compensation Register are ignored. 1 Writes to the Time Compensation Register complete as normal.
2 TARW	Time Alarm Register Write After being cleared, this bit is set only by system reset. It is not affected by VBAT POR or software reset. 0 Writes to the Time Alarm Register are ignored. 1 Writes to the Time Alarm Register complete as normal.
1 TPRW	Time Prescaler Register Write After being cleared, this bit is set only by system reset. It is not affected by VBAT POR or software reset. 0 Writes to the Time Prescaler Register are ignored. 1 Writes to the Time Prescaler Register complete as normal.
0 TSRW	Time Seconds Register Write After being cleared, this bit is set only by system reset. It is not affected by VBAT POR or software reset. 0 Writes to the Time Seconds Register are ignored. 1 Writes to the Time Seconds Register complete as normal.

40.3.10 RTC Read Access Register (RTC_RAR)

Address: 4003_D000h base + 804h offset = 4003_D804h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0								IERR	LRR	SRR	CRR	TCRR	TARR	TPRR	TSRR
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1

RTC_RAR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
7 IERR	Interrupt Enable Register Read After being cleared, this bit is set only by system reset. It is not affected by VBAT POR or software reset. 0 Reads to the Interrupt Enable Register are ignored. 1 Reads to the Interrupt Enable Register complete as normal.
6 LRR	Lock Register Read After being cleared, this bit is set only by system reset. It is not affected by VBAT POR or software reset. 0 Reads to the Lock Register are ignored. 1 Reads to the Lock Register complete as normal.
5 SRR	Status Register Read After being cleared, this bit is set only by system reset. It is not affected by VBAT POR or software reset. 0 Reads to the Status Register are ignored. 1 Reads to the Status Register complete as normal.
4 CRR	Control Register Read After being cleared, this bit is set only by system reset. It is not affected by VBAT POR or software reset. 0 Reads to the Control Register are ignored. 1 Reads to the Control Register complete as normal.
3 TCRR	Time Compensation Register Read After being cleared, this bit is set only by system reset. It is not affected by VBAT POR or software reset. 0 Reads to the Time Compensation Register are ignored. 1 Reads to the Time Compensation Register complete as normal.
2 TARR	Time Alarm Register Read After being cleared, this bit is set only by system reset. It is not affected by VBAT POR or software reset.

Table continues on the next page...

RTC_RAR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Reads to the Time Alarm Register are ignored. 1 Reads to the Time Alarm Register complete as normal.
1 TPRR	Time Prescaler Register Read After being cleared, this bit is set only by system reset. It is not affected by VBAT POR or software reset. 0 Reads to the Time Pprescaler Register are ignored. 1 Reads to the Time Prescaler Register complete as normal.
0 TSRR	Time Seconds Register Read After being cleared, this bit is set only by system reset. It is not affected by VBAT POR or software reset. 0 Reads to the Time Seconds Register are ignored. 1 Reads to the Time Seconds Register complete as normal.

40.4 Functional description

40.4.1 Power, clocking, and reset

The RTC is an always powered block that remains active in all low power modes and is powered by the battery power supply (VBAT). The battery power supply ensures that the RTC registers retain their state during chip power-down and that the RTC time counter remains operational.

The time counter within the RTC is clocked by a 32.768 kHz clock and can supply this clock to other peripherals. The 32.768 kHz clock can only be sourced from an external crystal using the oscillator that is part of the RTC module.

The RTC includes its own analog POR block, which generates a VBAT power-on-reset signal whenever the RTC module is powered up and initializes all RTC registers to their default state. A software reset bit can also initialize all RTC registers. The RTC also monitors the chip power supply and electrically isolates itself when the rest of the chip is powered down.

NOTE

An attempt to access an RTC register, except the access control registers, results in a bus error when:

- VBAT is powered down,
- the RTC is electrically isolated, or
- VBAT POR is asserted.

To determine if the VBAT domain is active, software can use the ADC to measure VBAT via an internal connection. See the chip-specific ADC information to find the ADC input channel assignments.

40.4.1.1 Oscillator control

The 32.768 kHz crystal oscillator is disabled at VBAT POR and must be enabled by software. After enabling the cystal oscillator, wait the oscillator startup time before setting SR[TCE] or using the oscillator clock external to the RTC.

The crystal oscillator includes tunable capacitors that can be configured by software. Do not change the capacitance unless the oscillator is disabled.

40.4.1.2 Software reset

Writing 1 to CR[SWR] forces the equivalent of a VBAT POR to the rest of the RTC module. CR[SWR] is not affected by the software reset and must be cleared by software. The access control registers are not affected by either VBAT POR or the software reset; they are reset by the chip reset.

40.4.1.3 Supervisor access

When the supervisor access control bit is clear, only supervisor mode software can write to the RTC registers, non-supervisor mode software will generate a bus error. Both supervisor and non-supervisor mode software can always read the RTC registers.

40.4.2 Time counter

The time counter consists of a 32-bit seconds counter that increments once every second and a 16-bit prescaler register that increments once every 32.768 kHz clock cycle.

Reading the time counter (either seconds or prescaler) while it is incrementing may return invalid data due to synchronization of the read data bus. If it is necessary for software to read the prescaler or seconds counter when they could be incrementing, it is recommended that two read accesses are performed and that software verifies that the same data was returned for both reads.

The time seconds register and time prescaler register can be written only when SR[TCE] is clear. Always write to the prescaler register before writing to the seconds register, because the seconds register increments on the falling edge of bit 14 of the prescaler register.

The time prescaler register increments provided SR[TCE] is set, SR[TIF] is clear, SR[TOF] is clear, and the 32.768 kHz clock source is present. After enabling the oscillator, wait the oscillator startup time before setting SR[TCE] to allow time for the oscillator clock output to stabilize.

If the time seconds register overflows then the SR[TOF] will set and the time prescaler register will stop incrementing. Clear SR[TOF] by initializing the time seconds register. The time seconds register and time prescaler register read as zero whenever SR[TOF] is set.

SR[TIF] is set on VBAT POR and software reset and is cleared by initializing the time seconds register. The time seconds register and time prescaler register read as zero whenever SR[TIF] is set.

40.4.3 Compensation

The compensation logic provides an accurate and wide compensation range and can correct errors as high as 3906 ppm and as low as 0.12 ppm. The compensation factor must be calculated externally to the RTC and supplied by software to the compensation register. The RTC itself does not calculate the amount of compensation that is required, although the 1 Hz clock is output to an external pin in support of external calibration logic.

Crystal compensation can be supported by using firmware and crystal characteristics to determine the compensation amount. Temperature compensation can be supported by firmware that periodically measures the external temperature via ADC and updates the compensation register based on a look-up table that specifies the change in crystal frequency over temperature.

The compensation logic alters the number of 32.768 kHz clock cycles it takes for the prescaler register to overflow and increment the time seconds counter. The time compensation value is used to adjust the number of clock cycles between -127 and +128. Cycles are added or subtracted from the prescaler register when the prescaler register equals 0x3FFF and then increments. The compensation interval is used to adjust the frequency at which the time compensation value is used, that is, from once a second to once every 256 seconds.

Updates to the time compensation register will not take effect until the next time the time seconds register increments and provided the previous compensation interval has expired. When the compensation interval is set to other than once a second then the compensation is applied in the first second interval and the remaining second intervals receive no compensation.

Compensation is disabled by configuring the time compensation register to zero.

40.4.4 Time alarm

The Time Alarm register (TAR), SR[TAF], and IER[TAIE] allow the RTC to generate an interrupt at a predefined time. The 32-bit TAR is compared with the 32-bit Time Seconds register (TSR) each time it increments. SR[TAF] will set when TAR equals TSR and TSR increments.

SR[TAF] is cleared by writing TAR. This will usually be the next alarm value, although writing a value that is less than TSR, such as 0, will prevent SR[TAF] from setting again. SR[TAF] cannot otherwise be disabled, although the interrupt it generates is enabled or disabled by IER[TAIE].

40.4.5 Update mode

The Update Mode field in the Control register (CR[UM]) configures software write access to the Time Counter Enable (SR[TCE]) field. When CR[UM] is clear, SR[TCE] can be written only when LR[SRL] is set. When CR[UM] is set, SR[TCE] can also be written when SR[TCE] is clear or when SR[TIF] or SR[TOF] are set. This allows the time seconds and prescaler registers to be initialized whenever time is invalidated, while preventing the time seconds and prescaler registers from being changed on the fly. When LR[SRL] is set, CR[UM] has no effect on SR[TCE].

40.4.6 Register lock

The Lock register (LR) can be used to block write accesses to certain registers until the next VBAT POR or software reset. Locking the Control register (CR) will disable the software reset. Locking LR will block future updates to LR.

Write accesses to a locked register are ignored and do not generate a bus error.

40.4.7 Access control

The read access and write access registers are implemented in the chip power domain and reset on the chip reset. They are not affected by the VBAT POR or the software reset. They are used to block read or write accesses to each register until the next chip system reset. When accesses are blocked, the bus access is not seen in the VBAT power supply and does not generate a bus error.

40.4.8 Interrupt

The RTC interrupt is asserted whenever a status flag and the corresponding interrupt enable bit are both set. It is always asserted on VBAT POR, and software reset, and when the VBAT power supply is powered down. The RTC interrupt is enabled at the chip level by enabling the chip-specific RTC clock gate control bit. The RTC interrupt can be used to wakeup the chip from any low-power mode. If the RTC wakeup pin is enabled and the chip is powered down, the RTC interrupt will cause the wakeup pin to assert.

The optional RTC seconds interrupt is an edge-sensitive interrupt with a dedicated interrupt vector that is generated once a second and requires no software overhead (there is no corresponding status flag to clear). It is enabled in the RTC by the time seconds interrupt enable bit and enabled at the chip level by setting the chip-specific RTC clock gate control bit. The RTC seconds interrupt does not cause the RTC wakeup pin to assert. This interrupt is optional and may not be implemented on all devices.

Chapter 41
Universal Serial Bus Full Speed OTG Controller (USBFSOTG)

41.1 Chip-specific Information for this Module

41.1.1 Universal Serial Bus (USB) FS Subsystem

The USB FS subsystem includes these components:

- Dual-role USB OTG-capable (On-The-Go) controller that supports a full-speed (FS) device or FS/LS host. The module complies with the USB 2.0 specification.
- USB transceiver that includes internal 15 kΩ pulldowns on the D+ and D- lines for host mode functionality.
- IRC48 with clock recovery block to eliminate the 48MHz crystal. This is available for USB device mode only.
- A configurable connection to allow any UART transmit and receive pins to be connected to the Full Speed USB physical layer.

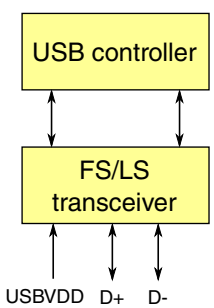


Figure 41-1. USB FS/LS Subsystem Overview

NOTE

Use the following code sequence to select USB clock source, USB clock divide ratio, and enable its clock gate to avoid

potential clock glitches which may result in USB enumeration stage failure.

1. Select the USB clock source by configuring SIM_SOPT2.
2. Select the desired clock divide ratio by configuring SIM_CLKDIV2.
3. Enable USB clock gate by setting SIM_SCGC4.

41.1.1.1 FS/LS USB OTG Instantiation

The device does not contain a separate VBUS detect signal. To detect valid VBUS in device mode use a GPIO.

The USB transceiver includes 15k pulldowns on the D+ and D- lines for host mode functionality.

41.1.1.1.1 Wake-up functionality on USB

Following wake-up functionality is supported on USB:

- Wake on VBUS detect in all power modes. If the VBUS is connected to USBVDD input via external regulator, then it can be used to detect attach or detach event down to STOP/VLPS mode(or LLS/VLLS3/VLLS2 using LLWU input). If USBVDD is powered from the board instead of VBUS, then GPIO pin should be used for this function. A resistor divider should be used to keep the detect input voltage within valid input range for the GPIO.
- Any activity on DP/DM wakes the system from low power mode, except in LLS/VLLS mode where USB is not powered.

41.1.1.1.2 UART Over USB Capability

This device supports a connection whereby one of UART(configurable via SIM_MISCCTL) may be connected to the FS USB physical layer (and the USB controller disconnected) to allow simple debugging capabilities for applications which do not have direct physical access to UARTx/LPUARTx. For more details on the control bits, please refer to relative sections in USB and SIM chapters.

By setting the UARTSEL bit in the USBx_USBCTRL register and setting UARTSELONUSB bits in the SIM_MISCCTL register, one of UART(UART0,1,2,or LPUART0) will be connected to the FS USB physical layer. This configures the FS USB DP/DM signals to be configured as normal UART signals, which do not operate in differential mode. When UARTCHLS bit in the USBx_USBCTRL register is set to 1’b0,

FS USB DP/DM signal pins will be used as UART TX/RX. When UARTCHLS bit in the USBx_USBCTRL register is set to 1'b1, FS USB DP/DM signal pins will be used as UART RX/TX.

NOTE

USBVDD must be powered, to use this UART over USB function.

41.1.1.2 USB Wakeup

When the USB detects that there is no activity on the USB bus for more than 3 ms, the INT_STAT[SLEEP] bit is set. This bit can cause an interrupt and software decides the appropriate action.

Waking from a low power mode (except in LLS/VLLS mode where USB is not powered) occurs through an asynchronous interrupt triggered by activity on the USB bus. Setting the USBTRC0[USBRESMEN] bit enables this function.

The following wakeup functionality is also supported:

- In Stop/VLPS, the USB controller can generate an interrupt on USBVDD detection.
- In LLS/VLLS except VLLS1/0, USBVDD is an input pin to the LLWU and a transition on it can generate a wakeup.
- In LLS/VLLS, USB0_DP and USB0_DM are input pins to the LLWU and a transition on those pins can generate a wakeup provided the USB is powered and in host mode.

41.1.1.3 USB Power Distribution

This chip includes a separate USBVDD supply pad that powers the USB transceiver. USBVDD can be powered at nominal USB voltage level (3.3V) while the main MCU supply pins are powered across the full operating range for the device.

41.1.1.3.1 AA/AAA cells power supply

The chip can be powered by two AA/AAA cells. In this case, the MCU is powered through VDD which is within the 1.8 to 3.0 V range. After USB cable insertion is detected, the off-chip regulator is enabled to power the USB transceiver.

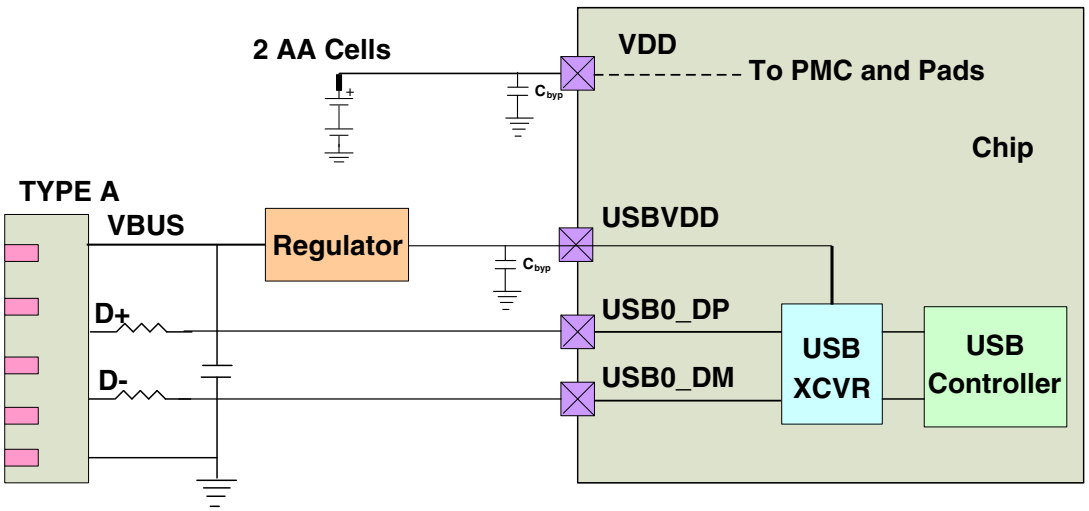


Figure 41-2. USB regulator AA cell usecase

41.1.1.3.2 Li-Ion battery power supply

The chip can also be powered by a single Li-ion battery. In this case, the regulator supplies VDD and USBVDD supply inputs. When connected to a USB host, the input source of this regulator is switched to the USB bus supply from the Li-ion battery.

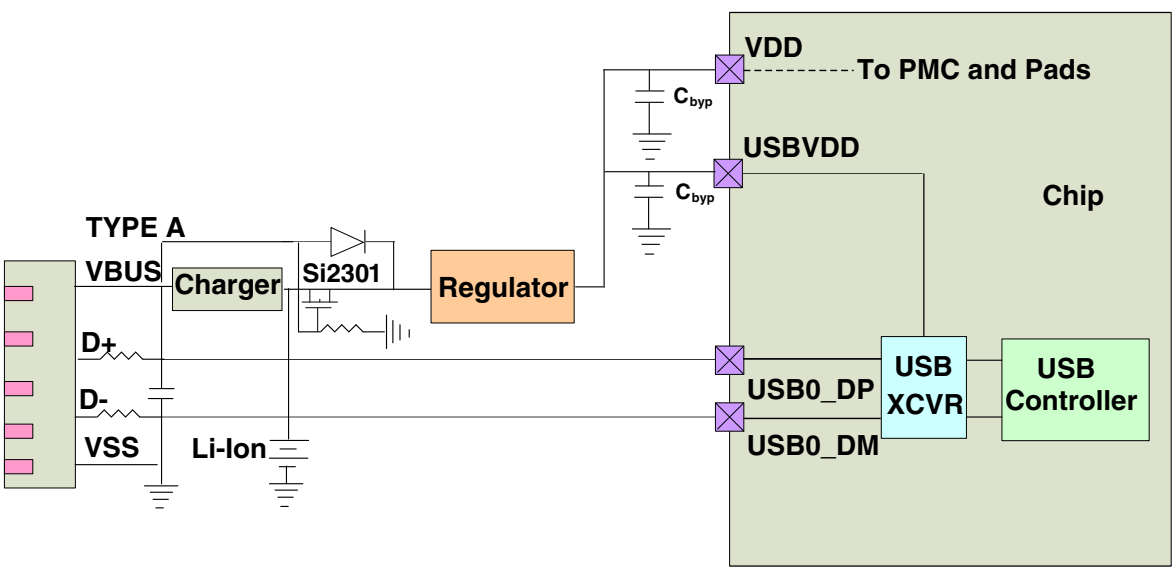


Figure 41-3. USB regulator Li-ion usecase

41.1.1.3.3 USB bus power supply

The chip can also be powered by the USB bus directly. In this case, the regulator supplies VDD and USBVDD supply inputs.

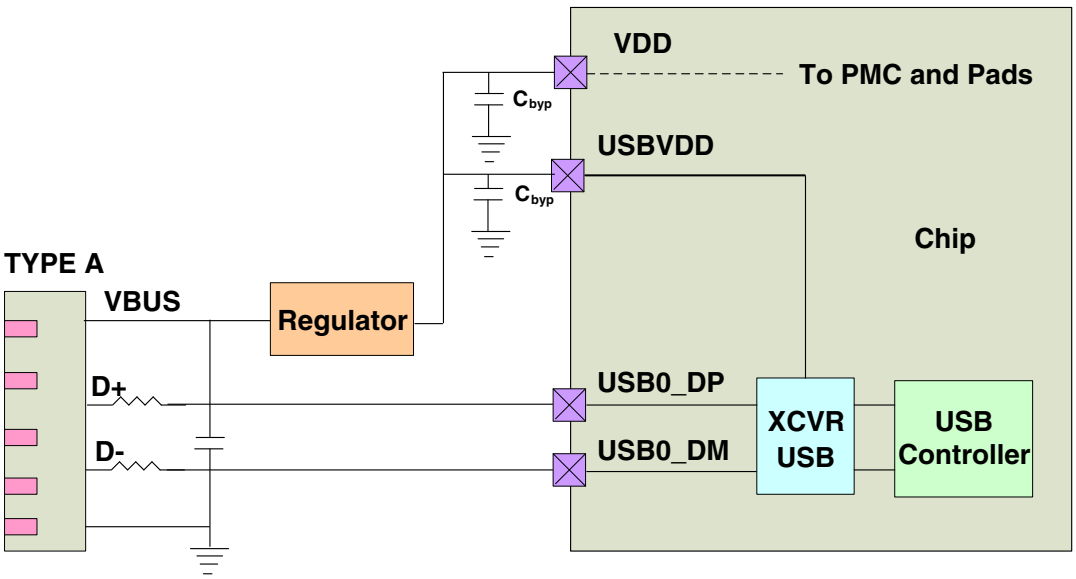


Figure 41-4. USB regulator bus supply

41.1.1.4 USB controller configuration

This section summarizes how the module has been configured in the chip.

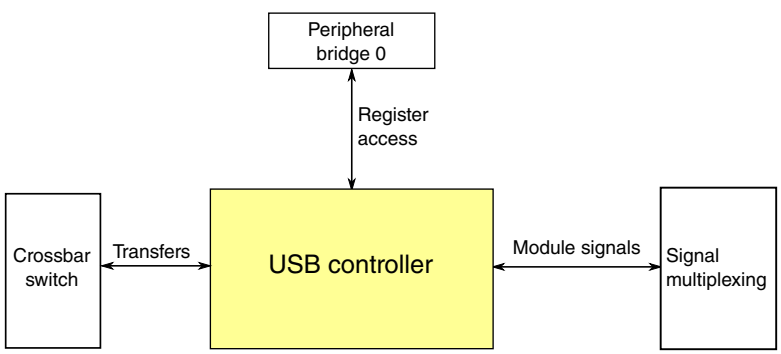


Figure 41-5. USB controller configuration

Table 41-1. Reference links to related information

Topic	Related module	Reference
Full description	USB controller	USB controller
System memory map		System memory map
Clocking		Clock Distribution
Transfers	Crossbar switch	Crossbar switch
Signal Multiplexing	Port control	Signal Multiplexing

NOTE

When USB is not used in the application, it is recommended that the USB supply pad USBVDD is tied to ground through 10kΩ; leaving this pin floating is not recommended.

41.2 Introduction

This chapter describes the USB full speed OTG controller. The OTG implementation in this module provides limited host functionality and device solutions for implementing a USB 2.0 full-speed/low-speed compliant peripheral. The OTG logic implements features required by the *On-The-Go and Embedded Host Supplement to the USB 2.0 Specification* (usb.org, 2008). The USB full speed controller interfaces to a USBFS/LS transceiver.

NOTE

This chapter describes the following registers that have similar names: USB_OTGCTL, USB_CTL, USB_CTRL, and USB_CONTROL. These are all separate registers.

41.2.1 References

The following publications are referenced in this document. For copies or updates to these specifications, see the USB Implementers Forum, Inc. website at http://www.usb.org.

- *Universal Serial Bus Specification, Revision 2.0* , 2000, with amendments including those listed below
- *Errata for "USB Revision 2.0 April 27, 2000" as of 12/7/2000*
- *Errata for "USB Revision 2.0 April 27, 2000" as of May 28, 2002*
- *Pull-up / Pull-down Resistors* (USB Engineering Change Notice)
- *Suspend Current Limit Changes* (USB Engineering Change Notice)
- *Device Capacitance* (USB Engineering Change Notice)
- *USB 2.0 Connect Timing Update* (USB Engineering Change Notice as of April 4, 2013)
- *USB 2.0 VBUS Max Limit* (USB Engineering Change Notice)

- *On-The-Go and Embedded Host Supplement to the USB Revision 2.0 Specification*, Revision 2.0 version 1.1a, July 27, 2012
- *Maximum VBUS Voltage* (USB OTGEH Engineering Change Notice)
- *Universal Serial Bus Micro-USB Cables and Connectors Specification*, Revision 1.01, 2007

41.2.2 USB—Overview

The USB is a cable bus that supports data exchange between a host computer and a wide range of simultaneously accessible peripherals. The attached peripherals share USB bandwidth through a host-scheduled, token-based protocol. The bus allows peripherals to be attached, configured, used, and detached while the host and other peripherals are in operation.

USB software provides a uniform view of the system for all application software, hiding implementation details to make application software more portable. It manages the dynamic attach and detach of peripherals.

There is only one host in any USB system. The USB interface to the host computer system is referred to as the Host Controller.

There may be multiple USB devices in any system such as human interface devices, speakers, printers, etc. USB devices present a standard USB interface in terms of comprehension, response, and standard capability.

The host initiates transactions to specific peripherals, whereas the device responds to control transactions. The device sends and receives data to and from the host using a standard USB data format. USB 2.0 full-speed /low-speed peripherals operate at 12Mbit/s or 1.5 Mbit/s.

For additional information, see the USB 2.0 specification.

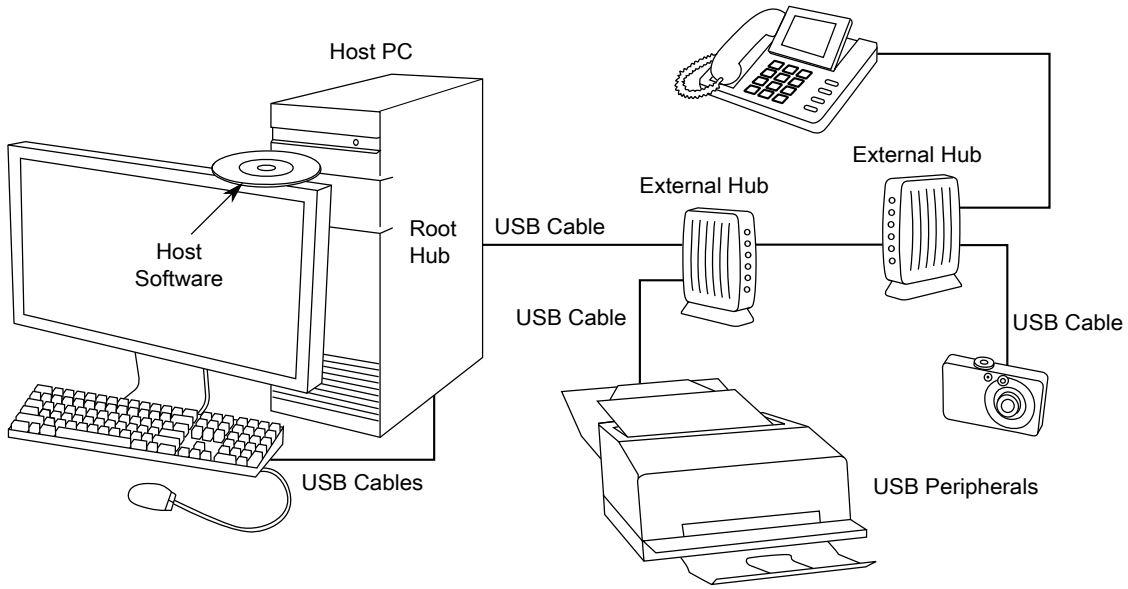


Figure 41-6. Example USB 2.0 system configuration

41.2.3 USB On-The-Go

USB is a popular standard for connecting peripherals and portable consumer electronic devices such as digital cameras and tablets to host PCs. The On-The-Go (OTG) Supplement to the USB Specification extends USB to peer-to-peer application. Using USB OTG technology, consumer electronics, peripherals, and portable devices can connect to each other to exchange data. For example, a digital camera can connect directly to a printer, or a keyboard can connect to a tablet to exchange data.

With the USB On-The-Go product, you can develop a fully USB-compliant peripheral device that can also assume the role of a USB host. Software determines the role of the device based on hardware signals, and then initializes the device in the appropriate mode of operation (host or peripheral) based on how it is connected. After connecting, the devices can negotiate using the OTG protocols to assume the role of host or peripheral based on the task to be accomplished.

For additional information, see the *On-The-Go and Embedded Host Supplement to the USB 2.0 Specification*.

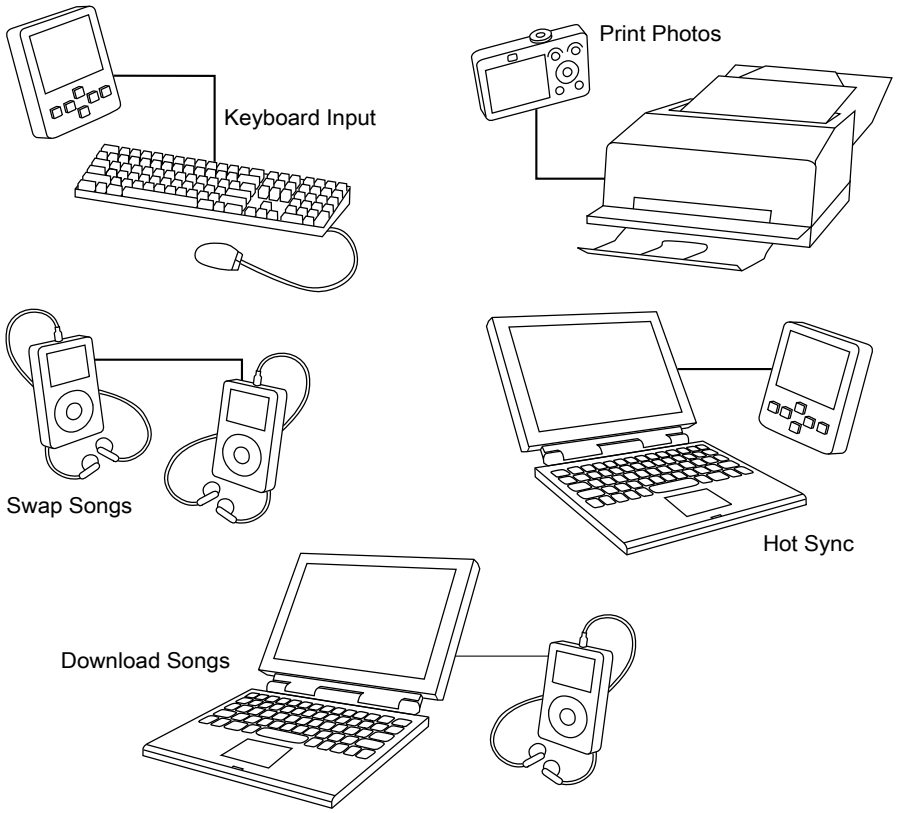


Figure 41-7. Example USB 2.0 On-The-Go configurations

41.2.4 USBFS Features

- USB 1.1 and 2.0 compatible FS device and FS/LS host controller with On-The-Go protocol logic
- 16 bidirectional endpoints
- DMA or FIFO data stream interfaces
- Low-power consumption
- IRC48M with clock-recovery is supported to eliminate the 48 MHz crystal. It is used for USB device-only implementation.

41.3 Functional description

USBOTG communicates with the processor core through status registers, control registers, and data structures in memory.

41.3.1 Data Structures

To efficiently manage USB endpoint communications, USBFS implements a Buffer Descriptor Table (BDT) in system memory. See Figure 41-11.

41.3.2 On-chip transceiver required external components

USB system operation requires external components to ensure that driver output impedance, eye diagram, and VBUS cable fault tolerance requirements are met. DM and DP I/O pads must connect through series resistors (approximately 33 Ω each) to the USB connector on the application printed circuit board (PCB). Additionally, signal quality optimizes when these 33 Ω resistors are mounted closer to the processor than to the USB board-level connector. The USB transceiver includes:

- An internal 1.5 kΩ pullup resistor on the USB_DP line for full-speed device (controlled by USB_CONTROL[DPPULLUPNONOTG] or USB_OTGCTL[DPHIGH])
- Internal 15 kΩ pulldown resistors on the USB_DP and USB_DM signals, which are primarily intended for Host mode operation but are also useful in Device mode as explained below.

NOTE

For device operation, the internal 15 kΩ pulldowns should be enabled to keep the DP and DM ports in a known quiescent state when the VBUS detection software determines that the USB connection is not activated, including the cases when no cable to a host is present or when the USB port is not used. The internal 15 kΩ pulldowns should be controlled by USB_CTRL[PDE] in this case.

For host operation, the internal 15 kΩ pulldowns are enabled automatically, as required by the USB 2.0 specification, when USB_CTL[HOSTMODEEN] is asserted high.

The following diagrams provide overviews of host-only, device-only, and dual-role connections, respectively. The VDD pin connections in the following figures are shown as examples only. The VDD supply voltage can be chosen from the range shown for that pin in the device datasheet for this SOC, while the USBVDD supply must be 3.3v nominal for USB compliance. For more details, see the *Kinetis Peripheral Module Quick Reference*(KQRUG).

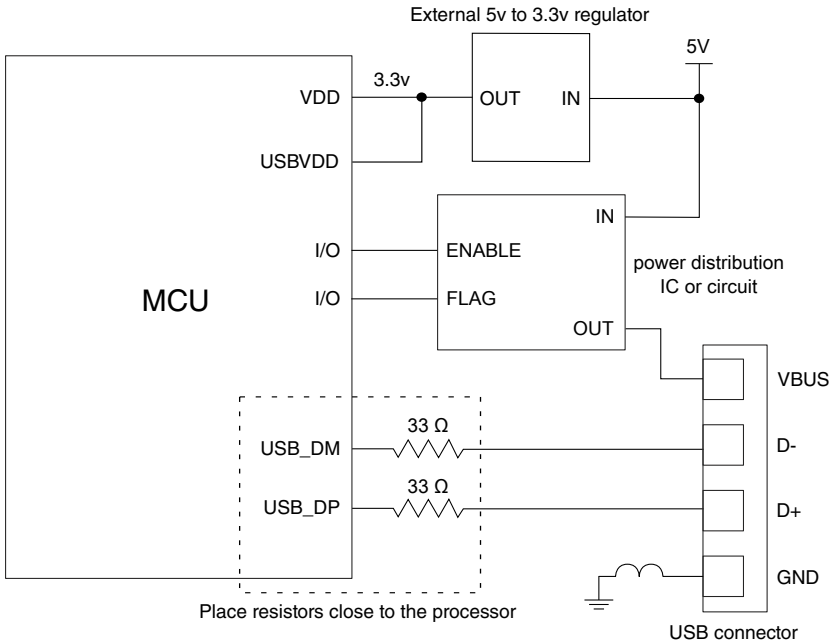


Figure 41-8. Host-only diagram

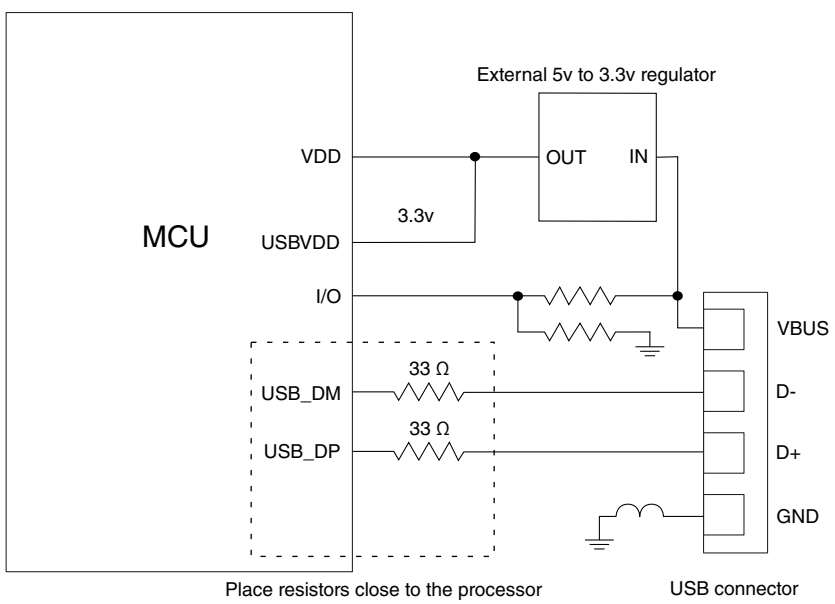


Figure 41-9. Typical Device-only diagram (bus-powered with external regulator)

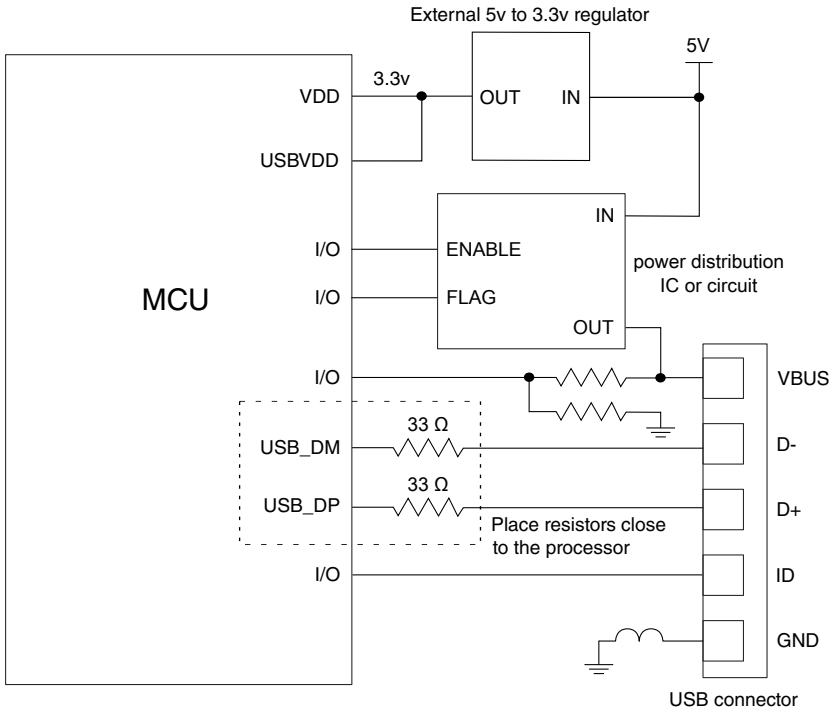


Figure 41-10. Dual-role diagram

41.4 Programmers interface

This section discusses the major components of the programming model for the USB module.

41.4.1 Buffer Descriptor Table

To efficiently manage USB endpoint communications USBFS implements a Buffer Descriptor Table (BDT) in system memory. The BDT resides on a 512-byte boundary in system memory and is pointed to by the BDT Page Registers. Every endpoint direction requires two 8-byte Buffer Descriptor (BD) entries. Therefore, a system with 16 fully bidirectional endpoints would require 512 bytes of system memory to implement the BDT. The two BD entries allows for an EVEN BD and ODD BD entry for each endpoint direction. This allows the microprocessor to process one BD while USBFS is processing the other BD. Double buffering BDs in this way allows USBFS to transfer data easily at the maximum throughput provided by USB.

Software should manage buffers for USBFS by updating the BDT when needed. This allows USBFS to efficiently manage data transmission and reception, while the microprocessor performs communication overhead processing and other function

dependent applications. Because the buffers are shared between the microprocessor and USBFS, a simple semaphore mechanism is used to distinguish who is allowed to update the BDT and buffers in system memory. A semaphore, the OWN bit, is cleared to 0 when the BD entry is owned by the microprocessor. The microprocessor is allowed read and write access to the BD entry and the buffer in system memory when the OWN bit is 0. When the OWN bit is set to 1, the BD entry and the buffer in system memory are owned by USBFS. USBFS now has full read and write access and the microprocessor must not modify the BD or its corresponding data buffer. The BD also contains indirect address pointers to where the actual buffer resides in system memory. This indirect address mechanism is shown in the following diagram.

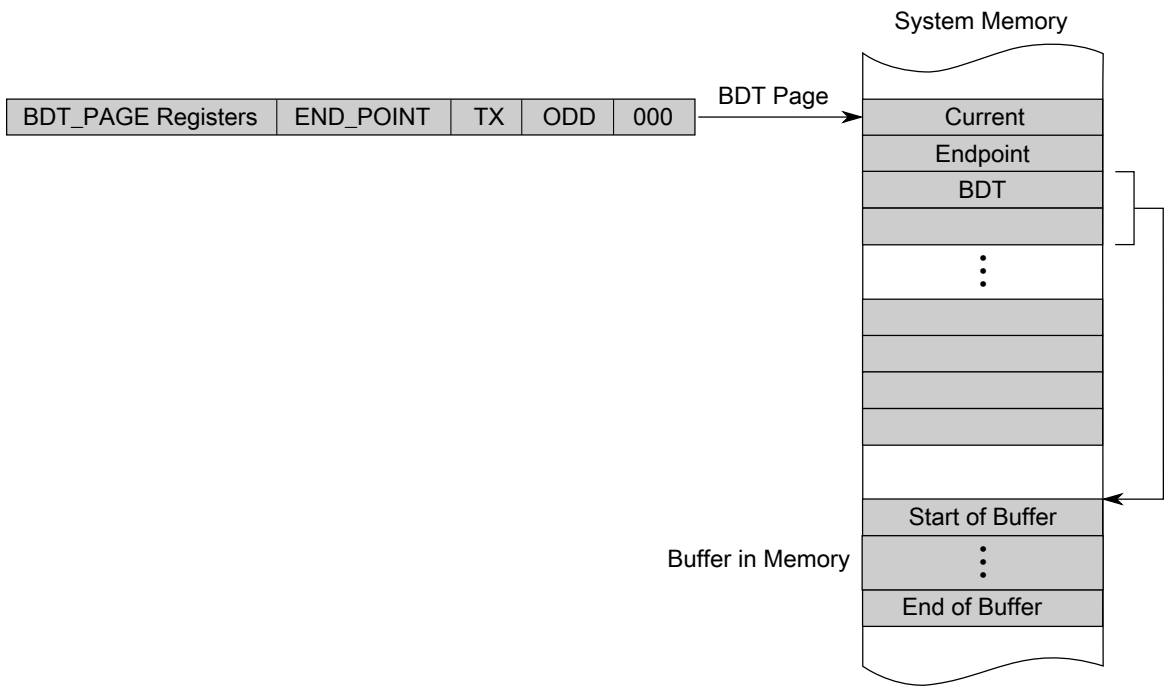


Figure 41-11. Buffer descriptor table

41.4.2 RX vs. TX as a USB peripheral device or USB host

The USBFS core uses software control to switch between two modes of operation:

- USB peripheral device
- USB hosts

In either mode, USB host or USB peripheral device, the same data paths and buffer descriptors are used for the transmission and reception of data. For this reason, a USBFS core-centric nomenclature is used to describe the direction of the data transfer between the USBFS core and USB:

- "RX" (or "receive") describes transfers that move data from USB to memory.
- "TX" (or "transmit") describes transfers that move data from memory to USB.

The following table shows how the data direction corresponds to the USB token type in host and peripheral device applications.

Table 41-2. Data direction for USB host or USB peripheral device

	RX	TX
Device	OUT or SETUP	IN
Host	IN	OUT or SETUP

41.4.3 Addressing BDT entries

An understanding of the addressing mechanism of the Buffer Descriptor Table is useful when accessing endpoint data via USBFS or microprocessor. Some points of interest are:

- The BDT occupies up to 512 bytes of system memory.
- 16 bidirectional endpoints can be supported with a full BDT of 512 bytes.
- 16 bytes are needed for each USB endpoint direction.
- Applications with fewer than 16 endpoints require less RAM to implement the BDT.
- The BDT Page Registers (BDT_PAGE) point to the starting location of the BDT.
- The BDT must be located on a 512-byte boundary in system memory.
- All enabled TX and RX endpoint BD entries are indexed into the BDT to allow easy access via USBFS or MCU core.

When a USB token on an enabled endpoint is received, USBFS uses its integrated DMA controller to interrogate the BDT. USBFS reads the corresponding endpoint BD entry to determine whether it owns the BD and corresponding buffer in system memory.

To compute the entry point into the BDT, the BDT_PAGE registers are concatenated with the current endpoint and the TX and ODD fields to form a 32-bit address. This address mechanism is shown in the following tables:

Table 41-3. BDT Address Calculation

31:24	23:16	15:9	8:5	4	3	2:0
BDT_PAGE_03	BDT_PAGE_02	BDT_PAGE_01[7:1]	Endpoint	TX	ODD	000

Table 41-4. BDT address calculation fields

Field	Description
BDT_PAGE	BDT_PAGE registers in the Control Register Block

Table continues on the next page...

Table 41-4. BDT address calculation fields (continued)

Field	Description
ENDPOINT	ENDPOINT field from the USB TOKEN
TX	1 for transmit transfers and 0 for receive transfers
ODD	Maintained within the USBFS SIE. It corresponds to the buffer currently in use. The buffers are used in a ping-pong fashion.

41.4.4 Buffer Descriptors (BDs)

A buffer descriptor provides endpoint buffer control information for USBFS and the processor. The Buffer Descriptors have different meaning based on whether it is USBFS or the processor reading the BD in memory.

The USBFS Controller uses the data stored in the BDs to determine:

- Who owns the buffer in system memory
- Data0 or Data1 PID
- Whether to release ownership upon packet completion
- No address increment (FIFO mode)
- Whether data toggle synchronization is enabled
- How much data is to be transmitted or received
- Where the buffer resides in system memory

While the processor uses the data stored in the BDs to determine:

- Who owns the buffer in system memory
- Data0 or Data1 PID
- The received TOKEN PID
- How much data was transmitted or received
- Where the buffer resides in system memory

The format for the BD is shown in the following figure.

Table 41-5. Buffer descriptor format

31:26	25:16	15:8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0

Table continues on the next page...

Table 41-5. Buffer descriptor format (continued)

RSVD	BC (10 bits)	RSVD	OWN	DATA0/1	KEEP/ TOK_PID[3]	NINC/ TOK_PID[2]	DTS/ TOK_PID[1]	BDT_STALL/ TOK_PID[0]	0	0
Buffer Address (32-Bits)										

Table 41-6. Buffer descriptor fields

Field	Description
31–26 RSVD	Reserved
25–16 BC	Byte Count Represents the 10-bit byte count. The USBFS SIE changes this field upon the completion of a RX transfer with the byte count of the data received.
15–8 RSVD	Reserved
7 OWN	Determines whether the processor or USBFS currently owns the buffer. Except when KEEP=1, the SIE hands ownership back to the processor after completing the token by clearing this bit. This must always be the last byte of the BD that the processor updates when it initializes a BD. 0 The processor has access to the BD. USBFS ignores all other fields in the BD. 1 USBFS has access to the BD. While USBFS owns the BD, the processor should not modify any other fields in the BD.
6 DATA0/1	Defines whether a DATA0 field (DATA0/1=0) or a DATA1 (DATA0/1=1) field was transmitted or received. It is unchanged by USBFS.
5 KEEP/ TOK_PID[3]	This bit has two functions: • KEEP bit—When written by the processor, it serves as the KEEP bit. Typically, this bit is 1 with ISO endpoints feeding a FIFO. The microprocessor is not informed that a token has been processed, the data is simply transferred to or from the FIFO. When KEEP is set, normally the NINC bit is also set to prevent address increment. 0 Allows USBFS to release the BD when a token has been processed. 1 This bit is unchanged by USBFS. Bit 3 of the current token PID is written back to the BD by USBFS. • TOK_PID[3]—If the OWN bit is also set, the BD remains owned by USBFS indefinitely; when written by USB, it serves as the TOK_PID[3] bit. 0 or 1 Bit 3 of the current token PID is written back to the BD by USBFS. Typically, this bit is 1 with ISO endpoints feeding a FIFO. The microprocessor is not informed that a token has been processed, the data is simply transferred to or from the FIFO. When KEEP is set, normally the NINC bit is also set to prevent address increment.
4 NINC/ TOK_PID[2]	No Increment (NINC) Disables the DMA engine address increment. This forces the DMA engine to read or write from the same address. This is useful for endpoints when data needs to be read from or written to a single location such as a FIFO. Typically this bit is set with the KEEP bit for ISO endpoints that are interfacing to a FIFO. 0 USBFS writes bit 2 of the current token PID to the BD. 1 This bit is unchanged by USBFS.

Table continues on the next page...

Table 41-6. Buffer descriptor fields (continued)

Field	Description
3 DTS/ TOK_PID[1]	Setting this bit enables USBFS to perform Data Toggle Synchronization. • If KEEP=0, bit 1 of the current token PID is written back to the BD. • If KEEP=1, this bit is unchanged by USBFS. 0 Data Toggle Synchronization is disabled. 1 Enables USBFS to perform Data Toggle Synchronization.
2 BDT_STALL TOK_PID[0]	Setting this bit causes USBFS to issue a STALL handshake if a token is received by the SIE that would use the BDT in this location. The BDT is not consumed by the SIE (the owns bit remains set and the rest of the BDT is unchanged) when a BDT_STALL bit is set. • If KEEP=0, bit 0 of the current token PID is written back to the BD. • If KEEP=1, this bit is unchanged by USBFS. 0 No stall issued. 1 The BDT is not consumed by the SIE (the OWN bit remains set and the rest of the BDT is unchanged). Setting BDT_STALL also causes the corresponding USB_ENDPT*n*[EPSTALL] bit to set. This causes USBOTG to issue a STALL handshake for both directions of the associated endpoint. To clear the stall condition: 1. Clear the associated USB_ENDPT*n*[EPSTALL] bit. 2. Write the BDT to clear OWN and BDT_STALL.
TOK_PID[n]	Bits [5:2] can also represent the current token PID. The current token PID is written back in to the BD by USBFS when a transfer completes. The values written back are the token PID values from the USB specification: • 0x1h for an OUT token. • 0x9h for an IN token. • 0xDh for a SETUP token. In host mode, this field is used to report the last returned PID or a transfer status indication. The possible values returned are: • 0x3h DATA0 • 0xBh DATA1 • 0x2h ACK • 0xEh STALL • 0xAh NAK • 0x0h Bus Timeout • 0xFh Data Error
1–0 Reserved	Reserved, should read as zeroes.
ADDR[31:0]	Address Represents the 32-bit buffer address in system memory; this address must also be 32-bit aligned. These bits are unchanged by USBFS.

41.4.5 USB transaction

When USBFS transmits or receives data, it computes the BDT address using the address generation shown in "Addressing Buffer Descriptor Entries" table.

If OWN =1, the following process occurs:

1. USBFS reads the BDT.
2. The SIE transfers the data via the DMA to or from the buffer pointed to by the ADDR field of the BD.
3. When the TOKEN is complete, USBFS updates the BDT and, if KEEP=0, changes the OWN bit to 0.
4. The STAT register is updated and the TOK_DNE interrupt is set.
5. When the processor processes the TOK_DNE interrupt, it reads from the status register all the information needed to process the endpoint.
6. At this point, the processor allocates a new BD so that additional USB data can be transmitted or received for that endpoint, and then processes the last BD.

The following figure shows a timeline of how a typical USB token is processed after the BDT is read and OWN=1.

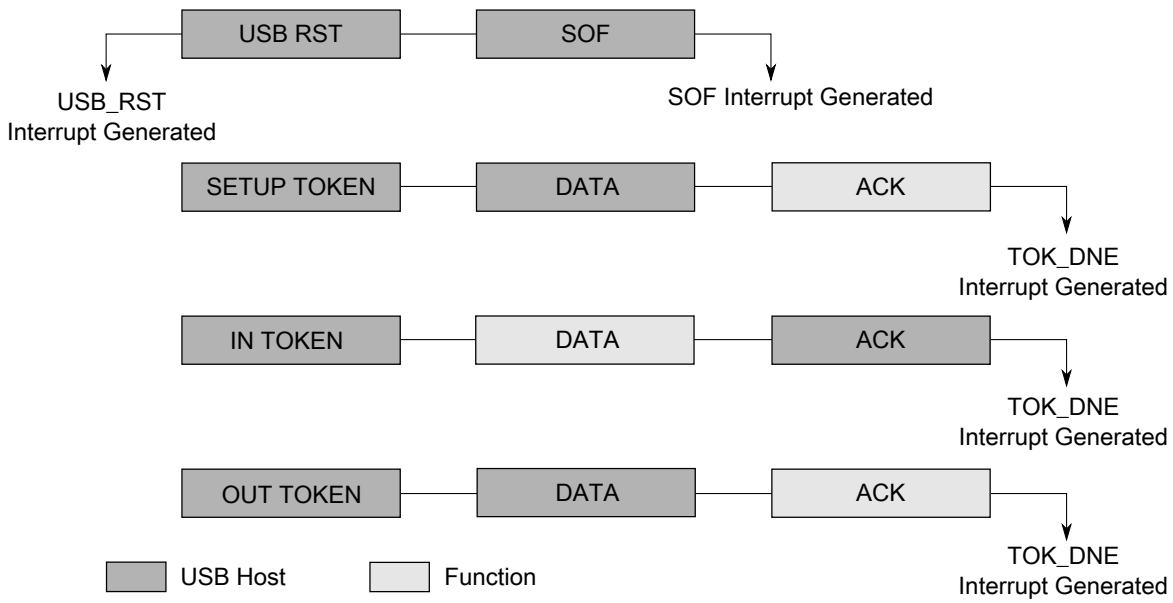


Figure 41-12. USB token transaction

The USB has two sources for the DMA overrun error:

Memory Latency

The memory latency may be too high and cause the receive FIFO to overflow. This is predominantly a hardware performance issue, usually caused by transient memory access issues.

Oversized Packets

The packet received may be larger than the negotiated *MaxPacket* size. Typically, this is caused by a software bug. For DMA overrun errors due to oversized data packets, the USB specification is ambiguous. It assumes correct software drivers on both sides. NAKing the packet can result in retransmission of the already oversized packet data. Therefore, in response to oversized packets, the USB core continues ACKing the packet for non-isochronous transfers.

Table 41-7. USB responses to DMA overrun errors

Errors due to Memory Latency	Errors due to Oversized Packets
Non-Acknowledgment (NAK) or Bus Timeout (BTO) — See bit 4 in "Error Interrupt Status Register (ERRSTAT)" as appropriate for the class of transaction.	Continues acknowledging (ACKing) the packet for non-isochronous transfers.
—	The data written to memory is clipped to the MaxPacket size so as not to corrupt system memory.
The DMAERR bit is set in the ERRSTAT register for host and device modes of operation. Depending on the values of the INTENB and ERRENB register, the core may assert an interrupt to notify the processor of the DMA error.	Asserts ERRSTAT[DMAERR] ,which can trigger an interrupt and TOKDNE interrupt fires. Note: The TOK_PID field of the BDT is not 1111 because the DMAERR is not due to latency.
• For host mode, the TOKDNE interrupt is generated and the TOK_PID field of the BDT is 1111 to indicate the DMA latency error. Host mode software can decide to retry or move to next scheduled item. • In device mode, the BDT is not written back nor is the TOKDNE interrupt triggered because it is assumed that a second attempt is queued and will succeed in the future.	The packet length field written back to the BDT is the MaxPacket value that represents the length of the clipped data actually written to memory.
From here, the software can decide an appropriate course of action for future transactions such as stalling the endpoint, canceling the transfer, disabling the endpoint, etc.	

41.5 Memory map/Register definitions

This section provides the memory map and detailed descriptions of all USB interface registers.

USB memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4007_2000	Peripheral ID register (USB0_PERID)	8	R	04h	41.5.1/900
4007_2004	Peripheral ID Complement register (USB0_IDCOMP)	8	R	FBh	41.5.2/900
4007_2008	Peripheral Revision register (USB0_REV)	8	R	33h	41.5.3/901
4007_200C	Peripheral Additional Info register (USB0_ADDINFO)	8	R	01h	41.5.4/901
4007_2010	OTG Interrupt Status register (USB0_OTGISTAT)	8	R/W	00h	41.5.5/902
4007_2014	OTG Interrupt Control register (USB0_OTGICR)	8	R/W	00h	41.5.6/903

Table continues on the next page...

USB memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4007_2018	OTG Status register (USB0_OTGSTAT)	8	R/W	00h	41.5.7/904
4007_201C	PROCESS PHOTG Control register (USB0_OTGCTL)	8	R/W	00h	41.5.8/905
4007_2080	Interrupt Status register (USB0_ISTAT)	8	R/W	00h	41.5.9/906
4007_2084	Interrupt Enable register (USB0_INTEN)	8	R/W	00h	41.5.10/ 907
4007_2088	Error Interrupt Status register (USB0_ERRSTAT)	8	R/W	00h	41.5.11/ 908
4007_208C	Error Interrupt Enable register (USB0_ERREN)	8	R/W	00h	41.5.12/ 909
4007_2090	Status register (USB0_STAT)	8	R	00h	41.5.13/ 910
4007_2094	Control register (USB0_CTL)	8	R/W	00h	41.5.14/ 911
4007_2098	Address register (USB0_ADDR)	8	R/W	00h	41.5.15/ 912
4007_209C	BDT Page register 1 (USB0_BDTPAGE1)	8	R/W	00h	41.5.16/ 913
4007_20A0	Frame Number register Low (USB0_FRMNUML)	8	R/W	00h	41.5.17/ 913
4007_20A4	Frame Number register High (USB0_FRMNUMH)	8	R/W	00h	41.5.18/ 914
4007_20A8	Token register (USB0_TOKEN)	8	R/W	00h	41.5.19/ 914
4007_20AC	SOF Threshold register (USB0_SOFTHLD)	8	R/W	00h	41.5.20/ 915
4007_20B0	BDT Page Register 2 (USB0_BDTPAGE2)	8	R/W	00h	41.5.21/ 916
4007_20B4	BDT Page Register 3 (USB0_BDTPAGE3)	8	R/W	00h	41.5.22/ 916
4007_20C0	Endpoint Control register (USB0_ENDPT0)	8	R/W	00h	41.5.23/ 917
4007_20C4	Endpoint Control register (USB0_ENDPT1)	8	R/W	00h	41.5.23/ 917
4007_20C8	Endpoint Control register (USB0_ENDPT2)	8	R/W	00h	41.5.23/ 917
4007_20CC	Endpoint Control register (USB0_ENDPT3)	8	R/W	00h	41.5.23/ 917
4007_20D0	Endpoint Control register (USB0_ENDPT4)	8	R/W	00h	41.5.23/ 917
4007_20D4	Endpoint Control register (USB0_ENDPT5)	8	R/W	00h	41.5.23/ 917
4007_20D8	Endpoint Control register (USB0_ENDPT6)	8	R/W	00h	41.5.23/ 917

Table continues on the next page...

USB memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4007_20DC	Endpoint Control register (USB0_ENDPT7)	8	R/W	00h	41.5.23/ 917
4007_20E0	Endpoint Control register (USB0_ENDPT8)	8	R/W	00h	41.5.23/ 917
4007_20E4	Endpoint Control register (USB0_ENDPT9)	8	R/W	00h	41.5.23/ 917
4007_20E8	Endpoint Control register (USB0_ENDPT10)	8	R/W	00h	41.5.23/ 917
4007_20EC	Endpoint Control register (USB0_ENDPT11)	8	R/W	00h	41.5.23/ 917
4007_20F0	Endpoint Control register (USB0_ENDPT12)	8	R/W	00h	41.5.23/ 917
4007_20F4	Endpoint Control register (USB0_ENDPT13)	8	R/W	00h	41.5.23/ 917
4007_20F8	Endpoint Control register (USB0_ENDPT14)	8	R/W	00h	41.5.23/ 917
4007_20FC	Endpoint Control register (USB0_ENDPT15)	8	R/W	00h	41.5.23/ 917
4007_2100	USB Control register (USB0_USBCTRL)	8	R/W	C0h	41.5.24/ 918
4007_2104	USB OTG Observe register (USB0_OBSERVE)	8	R	50h	41.5.25/ 919
4007_2108	USB OTG Control register (USB0_CONTROL)	8	R/W	00h	41.5.26/ 920
4007_210C	USB Transceiver Control register 0 (USB0_USBTRC0)	8	R/W	00h	41.5.27/ 920
4007_2114	Frame Adjust Register (USB0_USBFRMADJUST)	8	R/W	00h	41.5.28/ 922
4007_212C	Miscellaneous Control register (USB0_MISCCTRL)	8	R/W	00h	41.5.29/ 922
4007_2130	Peripheral mode stall disable for endpoints 7 to 0 in IN direction (USB0_STALL_IL_DIS)	8	R/W	00h	41.5.30/ 923
4007_2134	Peripheral mode stall disable for endpoints 15 to 8 in IN direction (USB0_STALL_IH_DIS)	8	R/W	00h	41.5.31/ 924
4007_2138	Peripheral mode stall disable for endpoints 7 to 0 in OUT direction (USB0_STALL_OL_DIS)	8	R/W	00h	41.5.32/ 925
4007_213C	Peripheral mode stall disable for endpoints 15 to 8 in OUT direction (USB0_STALL_OH_DIS)	8	R/W	00h	41.5.33/ 926
4007_2140	USB Clock recovery control (USB0_CLK_RECOVER_CTRL)	8	R/W	00h	41.5.34/ 928
4007_2144	PROCESS PHIRC48M oscillator enable register (USB0_CLK_RECOVER_IRC_EN)	8	R/W	01h	41.5.35/ 929
4007_2154	Clock recovery combined interrupt enable (USB0_CLK_RECOVER_INT_EN)	8	R/W	10h	41.5.36/ 930

Table continues on the next page...

USB memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4007_215C	Clock recovery separated interrupt status (USB0_CLK_RECOVER_INT_STATUS)	8	w1c	00h	41.5.37/ 930

41.5.1 Peripheral ID register (USBx_PERID)

Reads back the value of 0x04. This value is defined for the USB peripheral.

Address: 4007_2000h base + 0h offset = 4007_2000h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0		ID					
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0

USBx_PERID field descriptions

Field	Description
7–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
ID	Peripheral Identification This field always reads 0x4h.

41.5.2 Peripheral ID Complement register (USBx_IDCOMP)

Reads back the complement of the Peripheral ID register. For the USB peripheral, the value is 0xFB.

Address: 4007_2000h base + 4h offset = 4007_2004h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	1		NID					
Write								
Reset	1	1	1	1	1	0	1	1

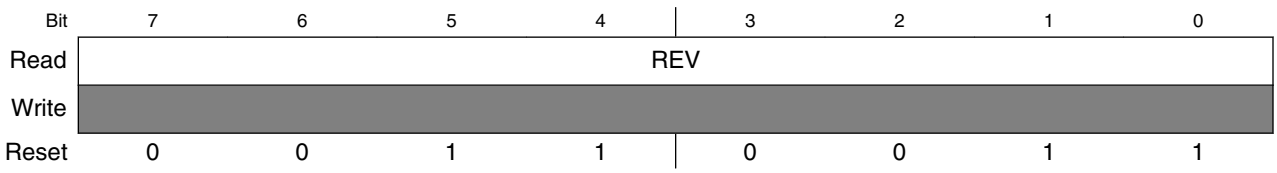
USBx_IDCOMP field descriptions

Field	Description
7–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 1.
NID	Ones' complement of PERID[ID] bits.

41.5.3 Peripheral Revision register (USB*x*_REV)

Contains the revision number of the USB module.

Address: 4007_2000h base + 8h offset = 4007_2008h



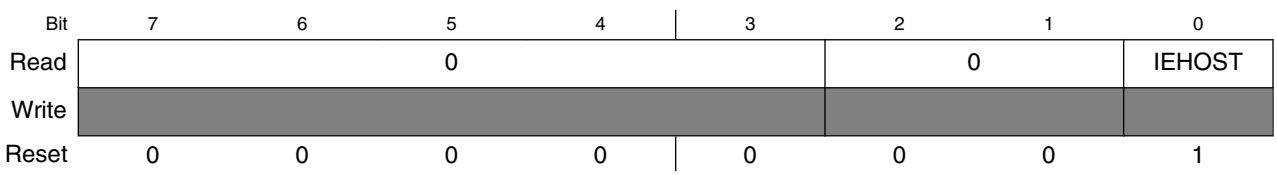
USB*x*_REV field descriptions

Field	Description
REV	Revision Indicates the revision number of the USB Core.

41.5.4 Peripheral Additional Info register (USB*x*_ADDINFO)

Reads back the value of the Host Enable bit.

Address: 4007_2000h base + Ch offset = 4007_200Ch



USB*x*_ADDINFO field descriptions

Field	Description
7–3 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
2–1 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
0 IEHOST	This bit is set if host mode is enabled.

41.5.5 OTG Interrupt Status register (USBx_OTGISTAT)

Records changes to the state of the one-millisecond timer and line state stable logic. Software can read this register to determine the event that triggers an interrupt. Only bits that have changed since the last software read are set. Writing a one to a bit clears the associated interrupt.

Address: 4007_2000h base + 10h offset = 4007_2010h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	Reserved	ONEMSEC	LINE_ STATE_ CHG	0	Reserved	Reserved	0	Reserved
Write	w1c	w1c	w1c		w1c	w1c		w1c
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

USBx_OTGISTAT field descriptions

Field	Description
7 Reserved	This field is reserved. Software must not change the value of this bitfield.
6 ONEMSEC	This bit is set when the 1 millisecond timer expires. This bit stays asserted until cleared by software. The interrupt must be serviced every millisecond to avoid losing 1msec counts.
5 LINE_STATE_ CHG	This interrupt is set when the USB line state (CTL[SE0] and CTL[JSTATE] bits) are stable without change for 1 millisecond, and the value of the line state is different from the last time when the line state was stable. It is set on transitions between SE0 and J-state, SE0 and K-state, and J-state and K-state. Changes in J-state while SE0 is true do not cause an interrupt. This interrupt can be used in detecting Reset, Resume, Connect, and Data Line Pulse signaling.
4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
3 Reserved	This field is reserved. Software must not change the value of this bitfield.
2 Reserved	This field is reserved. Software must not change the value of this bitfield.
1 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
0 Reserved	This field is reserved. Software must not change the value of this bitfield.

41.5.6 OTG Interrupt Control register (USB*x*_OTGICR)

Enables the corresponding interrupt status bits defined in the OTG Interrupt Status Register.

Address: 4007_2000h base + 14h offset = 4007_2014h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	Reserved	ONEMSECEN	LINESTATEEN	0	Reserved	Reserved	0	Reserved
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

USB*x*_OTGICR field descriptions

Field	Description
7 Reserved	Software must not change the value of this bitfield. This field is reserved.
6 ONEMSECEN	One Millisecond Interrupt Enable 0 Diables the 1ms timer interrupt. 1 Enables the 1ms timer interrupt.
5 LINESTATEEN	Line State Change Interrupt Enable 0 Disables the LINE_STAT_CHG interrupt. 1 Enables the LINE_STAT_CHG interrupt.
4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
3 Reserved	Software must not change the value of this bitfield. This field is reserved.
2 Reserved	Software must not change the value of this bitfield. This field is reserved.
1 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
0 Reserved	Software must not change the value of this bitfield. This field is reserved.

41.5.7 OTG Status register (USB*x*_OTGSTAT)

Displays the actual value from the one-millisecond timer and line state stable logic.

Address: 4007_2000h base + 18h offset = 4007_2018h

Bit	7	6	5	4
Read	0	ONEMSECEN	LINESTATESTABLE	0
Write				
Reset	0	0	0	0

Bit	3	2	1	0
Read	0	0	0	0
Write				
Reset	0	0	0	0

USB*x*_OTGSTAT field descriptions

Field	Description
7 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
6 ONEMSECEN	This bit is reserved for the 1ms count, but it is not useful to software.
5 LINESTATESTABLE	Indicates that the internal signals that control the LINE_STATE_CHG field of OTGISTAT are stable for at least 1 ms. This bit is used to provide a hardware debounce of the linestate in detection of Connect, Disconnect and Resume signaling. First read LINE_STATE_CHG field and then read this field. If this field reads as 1, then the value of LINE_STATE_CHG can be considered stable. 0 The LINE_STAT_CHG bit is not yet stable. 1 The LINE_STAT_CHG bit has been debounced and is stable.
4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
3 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
2 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
1 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
0 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

41.5.8 OTG Control register (USBx_OTGCTL)

Controls the operation of VBUS and Data Line termination resistors.

Address: 4007_2000h base + 1Ch offset = 4007_201Ch

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	DPHIGH	0	DPLOW	DMLOW	0	OTGEN	0	
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

USBx_OTGCTL field descriptions

Field	Description
7 DPHIGH	D+ Data Line pullup resistor enable 0 D+ pullup resistor is not enabled 1 D+ pullup resistor is enabled
6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
5 DPLOW	D+ Data Line pull-down resistor enable This bit should always be enabled together with bit 4 (DMLOW) 0 D+ pulldown resistor is not enabled. 1 D+ pulldown resistor is enabled.
4 DMLOW	D– Data Line pull-down resistor enable 0 D- pulldown resistor is not enabled. 1 D- pulldown resistor is enabled.
3 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
2 OTGEN	On-The-Go pullup/pulldown resistor enable 0 If USB_EN is 1 and HOST_MODE is 0 in the Control Register (CTL), then the D+ Data Line pull-up resistors are enabled. If HOST_MODE is 1 the D+ and D– Data Line pull-down resistors are engaged. 1 The pull-up and pull-down controls in this register are used.
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

41.5.9 Interrupt Status register (USBx_ISTAT)

Contains fields for each of the interrupt sources within the USB Module. Each of these fields are qualified with their respective interrupt enable bits. All fields of this register are logically OR'd together along with the OTG Interrupt Status Register (OTGSTAT) to form a single interrupt source for the processor's interrupt controller. After an interrupt bit has been set it may only be cleared by writing a one to the respective interrupt bit. This register contains the value of 0x00 after a reset.

Address: 4007_2000h base + 80h offset = 4007_2080h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	STALL	ATTACH	RESUME	SLEEP	TOKDNE	SOFTOK	ERROR	USBRST
Write	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

USBx_ISTAT field descriptions

Field	Description
7 STALL	Stall Interrupt In Device mode this bit is asserted when a STALL handshake is sent by the SIE. In Host mode this bit is set when the USB Module detects a STALL acknowledge during the handshake phase of a USB transaction.This interrupt can be used to determine whether the last USB transaction was completed successfully or stalled.
6 ATTACH	Attach Interrupt This field is set when the USB Module detects an attach of a USB device. This field is only valid if CTL[HOSTMODEEN]=1. This interrupt signifies that a peripheral is now present and must be configured; it is asserted if there have been no transitions on the USB for 2.5 µs and the current bus state is not SE0." 0 No Attach is detected since the last time the ATTACH bit was cleared. 1 A peripheral is now present and must be configured (a stable non-SE0 state is detected for more than 2.5 µs).
5 RESUME	This bit is set when a K-state is observed on the DP/DM signals for 2.5 µs. When not in suspend mode this interrupt must be disabled.
4 SLEEP	This bit is set when the USB Module detects a constant idle on the USB bus for 3 ms. The sleep timer is reset by activity on the USB bus.
3 TOKDNE	This bit is set when the current token being processed has completed. The processor must immediately read the STATUS (STAT) register to determine the EndPoint and BD used for this token. Clearing this bit (by writing a one) causes STAT to be cleared or the STAT holding register to be loaded into the STAT register.
2 SOFTOK	This bit is set when the USB Module receives a Start Of Frame (SOF) token. In Host mode this field is set when the SOF threshold is reached (MISCCTRL[SOFBUSSET]=0), or when the SOF counter reaches 0 (MISCCTRL[SOFBUSSET]=1), so that software can prepare for the next SOF.

Table continues on the next page...

USBx_ISTAT field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
1 ERROR	This bit is set when any of the error conditions within Error Interrupt Status (ERRSTAT) register occur. The processor must then read the ERRSTAT register to determine the source of the error.
0 USBRST	This bit is set when the USB Module has decoded a valid USB reset. This informs the processor that it should write 0x00 into the address register and enable endpoint 0. USBRST is set after a USB reset has been detected for 2.5 microseconds. It is not asserted again until the USB reset condition has been removed and then reasserted.

41.5.10 Interrupt Enable register (USBx_INTEN)

Contains enable fields for each of the interrupt sources within the USB Module. Setting any of these bits enables the respective interrupt source in the ISTAT register. This register contains the value of 0x00 after a reset.

Address: 4007_2000h base + 84h offset = 4007_2084h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	STALLEN	ATTACHEN	RESUMEEN	SLEEPEN	TOKDNEEN	SOFTOKEN	ERROREN	USBRSTEN
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

USBx_INTEN field descriptions

Field	Description
7 STALLEN	STALL Interrupt Enable 0 Diasbles the STALL interrupt. 1 Enables the STALL interrupt.
6 ATTACHEN	ATTACH Interrupt Enable 0 Disables the ATTACH interrupt. 1 Enables the ATTACH interrupt.
5 RESUMEEN	RESUME Interrupt Enable 0 Disables the RESUME interrupt. 1 Enables the RESUME interrupt.
4 SLEEPEN	SLEEP Interrupt Enable 0 Disables the SLEEP interrupt. 1 Enables the SLEEP interrupt.
3 TOKDNEEN	TOKDNE Interrupt Enable 0 Disables the TOKDNE interrupt. 1 Enables the TOKDNE interrupt.
2 SOFTOKEN	SOFTOK Interrupt Enable 0 Disbles the SOFTOK interrupt. 1 Enables the SOFTOK interrupt.

Table continues on the next page...

USBx_INTEN field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
1 ERROREN	ERROR Interrupt Enable 0 Disables the ERROR interrupt. 1 Enables the ERROR interrupt.
0 USBRSTEN	USBRST Interrupt Enable 0 Disables the USBRST interrupt. 1 Enables the USBRST interrupt.

41.5.11 Error Interrupt Status register (USBx_ERRSTAT)

Contains enable bits for each of the error sources within the USB Module. Each of these bits are qualified with their respective error enable bits. All bits of this register are logically OR'd together and the result placed in the ERROR bit of the ISTAT register. After an interrupt bit has been set it may only be cleared by writing a one to the respective interrupt bit. Each bit is set as soon as the error condition is detected. Therefore, the interrupt does not typically correspond with the end of a token being processed. This register contains the value of 0x00 after a reset.

Address: 4007_2000h base + 88h offset = 4007_2088h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	BTSERR	OWNERR	DMAERR	BTOERR	DFN8	CRC16	CRC5EOF	PIDERR
Write	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

USBx_ERRSTAT field descriptions

Field	Description
7 BTSERR	This bit is set when a bit stuff error is detected. If set, the corresponding packet is rejected due to the error.
6 OWNERR	This field is valid when the USB Module is operating in peripheral mode (CTL[HOSTMODEEN]=0). It is set if the USB Module requires a new BD for SETUP, ISO IN, or ISO OUT transfer while a new BD is not available.
5 DMAERR	This bit is set if the USB Module has requested a DMA access to read a new BDT but has not been given the bus before it needs to receive or transmit data. If processing a TX transfer this would cause a transmit data underflow condition. If processing a RX transfer this would cause a receive data overflow condition. This interrupt is useful when developing device arbitration hardware for the microprocessor and the USB module to minimize bus request and bus grant latency. This bit is also set if a data packet to or from the host is larger than the buffer size allocated in the BDT. In this case the data packet is truncated as it is put in buffer memory.
4 BTOERR	This bit is set when a bus turnaround timeout error occurs. The USB module contains a bus turnaround timer that keeps track of the amount of time elapsed between the token and data phases of a SETUP or OUT TOKEN or the data and handshake phases of a IN TOKEN. If more than 16 bit times are counted from the previous EOP before a transition from IDLE, a bus turnaround timeout error occurs.

Table continues on the next page...

USBx_ERRSTAT field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
3 DFN8	This bit is set if the data field received was not 8 bits in length. USB Specification 1.0 requires that data fields be an integral number of bytes. If the data field was not an integral number of bytes, this bit is set.
2 CRC16	This bit is set when a data packet is rejected due to a CRC16 error.
1 CRC5EOF	This error interrupt has two functions. When the USB Module is operating in peripheral mode (CTL[HOSTMODEEN]=0), this interrupt detects CRC5 errors in the token packets generated by the host. If set the token packet was rejected due to a CRC5 error. When the USB Module is operating in host mode (CTL[HOSTMODEEN]=1), this interrupt detects End Of Frame (EOF) error conditions. This occurs when the USB Module is transmitting or receiving data and the SOF counter reaches zero. This interrupt is useful when developing USB packet scheduling software to ensure that no USB transactions cross the start of the next frame.
0 PIDERR	This bit is set when the PID check field fails.

41.5.12 Error Interrupt Enable register (USBx_ERREN)

Contains enable bits for each of the error interrupt sources within the USB module. Setting any of these bits enables the respective interrupt source in ERRSTAT. Each bit is set as soon as the error condition is detected. Therefore, the interrupt does not typically correspond with the end of a token being processed. This register contains the value of 0x00 after a reset.

Address: 4007_2000h base + 8Ch offset = 4007_208Ch

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	BTSERREN	OWNERREN	DMAERREN	BTOERREN	DFN8EN	CRC16EN	CRC5EOFEN	PIDERREN
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

USBx_ERREN field descriptions

Field	Description
7 BTSERREN	BTSERR Interrupt Enable 0 Disables the BTSERR interrupt. 1 Enables the BTSERR interrupt.
6 OWNERREN	OWNERR Interrupt Enable This field is valid when the USB module is operating in peripheral mode (CTL[HOSTMODEEN]=0). 0 Disables the OWNERR interrupt. 1 Enables the OWNERR interrupt.
5 DMAERREN	DMAERR Interrupt Enable 0 Disables the DMAERR interrupt. 1 Enables the DMAERR interrupt.

Table continues on the next page...

USBx_ERREN field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
4 BTOERREN	BTOERR Interrupt Enable 0 Disables the BTOERR interrupt. 1 Enables the BTOERR interrupt.
3 DFN8EN	DFN8 Interrupt Enable 0 Disables the DFN8 interrupt. 1 Enables the DFN8 interrupt.
2 CRC16EN	CRC16 Interrupt Enable 0 Disables the CRC16 interrupt. 1 Enables the CRC16 interrupt.
1 CRC5EOFEN	CRC5/EOF Interrupt Enable 0 Disables the CRC5/EOF interrupt. 1 Enables the CRC5/EOF interrupt.
0 PIDERREN	PIDERR Interrupt Enable 0 Disables the PIDERR interrupt. 1 Enters the PIDERR interrupt.

41.5.13 Status register (USBx_STAT)

Reports the transaction status within the USB module. When the processor's interrupt controller has received a TOKDNE, interrupt the Status Register must be read to determine the status of the previous endpoint communication. The data in the status register is valid when TOKDNE interrupt is asserted. The Status register is actually a read window into a status FIFO maintained by the USB module. When the USB module uses a BD, it updates the Status register. If another USB transaction is performed before the TOKDNE interrupt is serviced, the USB module stores the status of the next transaction in the STAT FIFO. Thus STAT is actually a four byte FIFO that allows the processor core to process one transaction while the SIE is processing the next transaction. Clearing the TOKDNE bit in the ISTAT register causes the SIE to update STAT with the contents of the next STAT value. If the data in the STAT holding register is valid, the SIE immediately reasserts to TOKDNE interrupt.

Address: 4007_2000h base + 90h offset = 4007_2090h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	ENDP				TX	ODD	0	
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

USBx_STAT field descriptions

Field	Description
7–4 ENDP	This four-bit field encodes the endpoint address that received or transmitted the previous token. This allows the processor core to determine the BDT entry that was updated by the last USB transaction.
3 TX	Transmit Indicator 0 The most recent transaction was a receive operation. 1 The most recent transaction was a transmit operation.
2 ODD	This bit is set if the last buffer descriptor updated was in the odd bank of the BDT.
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

41.5.14 Control register (USBx_CTL)

Provides various control and configuration information for the USB module.

Address: 4007_2000h base + 94h offset = 4007_2094h

Bit	7	6	5	4
Read Write	JSTATE	SE0	TXSUSPENDTOKENBUSY	RESET
Reset	0	0	0	0

Bit	3	2	1	0
Read Write	HOSTMODEEN	RESUME	ODDRST	USBENSOFEN
Reset	0	0	0	0

USBx_CTL field descriptions

Field	Description
7 JSTATE	Live USB differential receiver JSTATE signal The polarity of this signal is affected by the current state of LSEN .
6 SE0	Live USB Single Ended Zero signal
5 TXSUSPENDTOKENBUSY	In Host mode, TOKEN_BUSY is set when the USB module is busy executing a USB token. Software must not write more token commands to the Token Register when TOKEN_BUSY is set. Software should check this field before writing any tokens to the Token Register to ensure that token commands are not lost. In Device mode, TXD_SUSPEND is set when the SIE has disabled packet transmission and reception. Clearing this bit allows the SIE to continue token processing. This bit is set by the SIE when a SETUP Token is received allowing software to dequeue any pending packet transactions in the BDT before resuming token processing.
4 RESET	Setting this bit enables the USB Module to generate USB reset signaling. This allows the USB Module to reset USB peripherals. This control signal is only valid in Host mode (CTL[HOSTMODEEN]=1). Software must set RESET to 1 for the required amount of time and then clear it to 0 to end reset signaling.

Table continues on the next page...

USBx_CTL field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
3 HOSTMODEEN	When set to 1, this bit enables the USB Module to operate in Host mode. In host mode, the USB module performs USB transactions under the programmed control of the host processor.
2 RESUME	When set to 1 this bit enables the USB Module to execute resume signaling. This allows the USB Module to perform remote wake-up. Software must set RESUME to 1 for the required amount of time and then clear it to 0. If HOSTMODEENis set, the USB module appends a Low Speed End of Packet to the Resume signaling when the RESUME bit is cleared.
1 ODDRST	Setting this bit to 1 resets all the BDT ODD ping/pong fields to 0, which then specifies the EVEN BDT bank.
0 USBENSOFEN	USB Enable Setting this bit enables the USB-FS to operate; clearing it disables the USB-FS. Setting the bit causes the SIE to reset all of its ODD bits to the BDTs. Therefore, setting this bit resets much of the logic in the SIE. When host mode is enabled, clearing this bit causes the SIE to stop sending SOF tokens. 0 Disables the USB Module. 1 Enables the USB Module.

41.5.15 Address register (USBx_ADDR)

Holds the unique USB address that the USB module decodes when in Peripheral mode (CTL[HOSTMODEEN]=0). When operating in Host mode (CTL[HOSTMODEEN]=1) the USB module transmits this address with a TOKEN packet. This enables the USB module to uniquely address any USB peripheral. In either mode, CTL[USBENSOFEN] must be 1. The Address register is reset to 0x00 after the reset input becomes active or the USB module decodes a USB reset signal. This action initializes the Address register to decode address 0x00 as required by the USB specification.

Address: 4007_2000h base + 98h offset = 4007_2098h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	LSEN	ADDR						
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

USBx_ADDR field descriptions

Field	Description
7 LSEN	Low Speed Enable bit Informs the USB module that the next token command written to the token register must be performed at low speed. This enables the USB module to perform the necessary preamble required for low-speed data transmissions.
ADDR	USB Address

Table continues on the next page...

USBx_ADDR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	Defines the USB address that the USB module decodes in peripheral mode, or transmits when in host mode.

41.5.16 BDT Page register 1 (USBx_BDTPAGE1)

Provides address bits 15 through 9 of the base address where the current Buffer Descriptor Table (BDT) resides in system memory. See Buffer Descriptor Table. The 32-bit BDT Base Address is always aligned on 512-byte boundaries, so bits 8 through 0 of the base address are always zero.

Address: 4007_2000h base + 9Ch offset = 4007_209Ch

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	BDTBA							0
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

USBx_BDTPAGE1 field descriptions

Field	Description
7–1 BDTBA	Provides address bits 15 through 9 of the BDT base address.
0 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

41.5.17 Frame Number register Low (USBx_FRMNUML)

The Frame Number registers (low and high) contain the 11-bit frame number. These registers are updated with the current frame number whenever a SOF TOKEN is received.

Address: 4007_2000h base + A0h offset = 4007_20A0h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	FRM[7:0]							
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

USBx_FRMNUML field descriptions

Field	Description
FRM[7:0]	This 8-bit field and the 3-bit field in the Frame Number Register High are used to compute the address where the current Buffer Descriptor Table (BDT) resides in system memory.

41.5.18 Frame Number register High (USBx_FRMNUMH)

The Frame Number registers (low and high) contain the 11-bit frame number. These registers are updated with the current frame number whenever a SOF TOKEN is received.

Address: 4007_2000h base + A4h offset = 4007_20A4h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0					FRM[10:8]		
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

USBx_FRMNUMH field descriptions

Field	Description
7–3 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
FRM[10:8]	This 3-bit field and the 8-bit field in the Frame Number Register Low are used to compute the address where the current Buffer Descriptor Table (BDT) resides in system memory.

41.5.19 Token register (USBx_TOKEN)

Used to initiate USB transactions when in host mode (CTL[HOSTMODEEN]=1). When the software needs to execute a USB transaction to a peripheral, it writes the TOKEN type and endpoint to this register. After this register has been written, the USB module begins the specified USB transaction to the address contained in the address register. The processor core must always check that the TOKEN_BUSY bit in the control register is not 1 before writing to the Token Register. This ensures that the token commands are not overwritten before they can be executed. The address register and endpoint control register 0 are also used when performing a token command and therefore must also be written before the Token Register. The address register is used to select the USB peripheral address transmitted by the token command. The endpoint control register determines the handshake and retry policies used during the transfer.

Address: 4007_2000h base + A8h offset = 4007_20A8h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	TOKENPID				TOKENENDPT			
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

USBx_TOKEN field descriptions

Field	Description
7–4 TOKENPID	Contains the token type executed by the USB module. 0001 OUT Token. USB Module performs an OUT (TX) transaction. 1001 IN Token. USB Module performs an In (RX) transaction. 1101 SETUP Token. USB Module performs a SETUP (TX) transaction
TOKENENDPT	Holds the Endpoint address for the token command. The four bit value written must be a valid endpoint.

41.5.20 SOF Threshold register (USBx_SOFTHLD)

The SOF Threshold Register is used only in Host mode (CTL[HOSTMODEEN]=1). When in Host mode, the 14-bit SOF counter counts the interval between SOF frames. The SOF must be transmitted every 1ms so therefore the SOF counter is loaded with a value of 12000. When the SOF counter reaches zero, a Start Of Frame (SOF) token is transmitted.

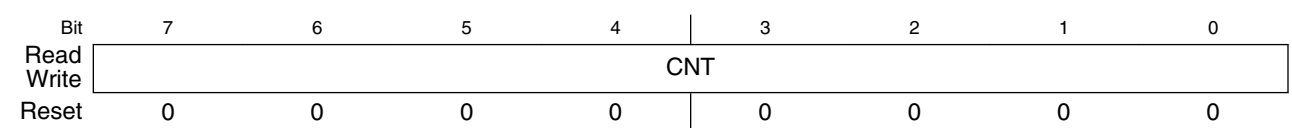
The SOF threshold register is used to program the number of USB byte times when SOFDYNTHLD=0, or 8 byte times when SOFDYNTHLD=1, before the SOF stops initiating token packet transactions. This register must be set to a value that ensures that other packets are not actively being transmitted when the SOF time counts to zero. When the SOF counter reaches the threshold value, no more tokens are transmitted until after the SOF has been transmitted.

The value programmed into the threshold register must reserve enough time to ensure the worst case transaction completes. In general the worst case transaction is an IN token followed by a data packet from the peripheral device followed by the response from the host. The actual time required is a function of the maximum packet size on the bus.

Typical values for the SOF threshold are:

- 64-byte packets=74;
- 32-byte packets=42;
- 16-byte packets=26;
- 8-byte packets=18.

Address: 4007_2000h base + ACh offset = 4007_20ACh



USBx_SOFTHLD field descriptions

Field	Description
CNT	Represents the SOF count threshold in byte times when SOFDYNTHLD=0 or 8 byte times when SOFDYNTHLD=1.

41.5.21 BDT Page Register 2 (USBx_BDTPAGE2)

Contains an 8-bit value used to compute the address where the current Buffer Descriptor Table (BDT) resides in system memory. See Buffer Descriptor Table.

Address: 4007_2000h base + B0h offset = 4007_20B0h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	BDTBA							
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

USBx_BDTPAGE2 field descriptions

Field	Description
BDTBA	Provides address bits 23 through 16 of the BDT base address that defines the location of Buffer Descriptor Table resides in system memory.

41.5.22 BDT Page Register 3 (USBx_BDTPAGE3)

Contains an 8-bit value used to compute the address where the current Buffer Descriptor Table (BDT) resides in system memory. See Buffer Descriptor Table.

Address: 4007_2000h base + B4h offset = 4007_20B4h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	BDTBA							
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

USBx_BDTPAGE3 field descriptions

Field	Description
BDTBA	Provides address bits 31 through 24 of the BDT base address that defines the location of Buffer Descriptor Table resides in system memory.

41.5.23 Endpoint Control register (USB*x*_ENDPT*n*)

Contains the endpoint control bits for each of the 16 endpoints available within the USB module for a decoded address. The format for these registers is shown in the following figure. Endpoint 0 (ENDPT0) is associated with control pipe 0, which is required for all USB functions. Therefore, after a USBRST interrupt occurs the processor core should set ENDPT0 to contain 0x0D.

In Host mode ENDPT0 is used to determine the handshake, retry and low speed characteristics of the host transfer. For Control, Bulk and Interrupt transfers, the EPHSHK bit should be 1. For Isochronous transfers it should be 0. Common values to use for ENDPT0 in host mode are 0x4D for Control, Bulk, and Interrupt transfers, and 0x4C for Isochronous transfers.

The three bits EPCTLDIS, EPRXEN, and EPTXEN define if an endpoint is enabled and define the direction of the endpoint. The endpoint enable/direction control is defined in the following table.

Table 41-8. Endpoint enable and direction control

EPCTLDIS	EPRXEN	EPTXEN	Endpoint enable/direction control
X	0	0	Disable endpoint
X	0	1	Enable endpoint for Tx transfers only
X	1	0	Enable endpoint for Rx transfers only
1	1	1	Enable endpoint for Rx and Tx transfers
0	1	1	Enable Endpoint for RX and TX as well as control (SETUP) transfers.

Address: 4007_2000h base + C0h offset + (4d × i), where i=0d to 15d

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	HOSTWOHUB	RETRYDIS	0	EPCTLDIS	EPRXEN	EPTXEN	EPSTALL	EPHSHK
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

USB*x*_ENDPT*n* field descriptions

Field	Description
7 HOSTWOHUB	Host without a hub This is a Host mode only field and is present in the control register for endpoint 0 (ENDPT0) only.

Table continues on the next page...

USBx_ENDPTn field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Low-speed device connected to Host through a hub. PRE_PID will be generated as required. 1 Low-speed device directly connected. No hub, or no low-speed device attached.
6 RETRYDIS	This is a Host mode only bit and is present in the control register for endpoint 0 (ENDPT0) only. When set this bit causes the host to not retry NAK'ed (Negative Acknowledgement) transactions. When a transaction is NAKed, the BDT PID field is updated with the NAK PID, and the TOKEN_DNE interrupt is set. When this bit is cleared, NAKed transactions are retried in hardware. This bit must be set when the host is attempting to poll an interrupt endpoint.
5 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
4 EPCTLDIS	This bit, when set, disables control (SETUP) transfers. When cleared, control transfers are enabled. This applies if and only if the EPRXEN and EPTXEN bits are also set. See Table 41-8
3 EPRXEN	This bit, when set, enables the endpoint for RX transfers. See Table 41-8
2 EPTXEN	This bit, when set, enables the endpoint for TX transfers. See Table 41-8
1 EPSTALL	When set, this bit indicates that the endpoint is stalled. This bit has priority over all other control bits in this register, but it is only valid if EPTXEN=1 or EPRXEN=1. Any access to this endpoint causes the USB Module to return a STALL handshake. After an endpoint is stalled it requires intervention from the Host Controller.
0 EPHSHK	When set this bit enables an endpoint to perform handshaking during a transaction to this endpoint. This bit is generally 1 unless the endpoint is Isochronous.

41.5.24 USB Control register (USBx_USBCTRL)

Address: 4007_2000h base + 100h offset = 4007_2100h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	SUSP	PDE	UARTCHLS	UARTSEL	0			
Write								
Reset	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0

USBx_USBCTRL field descriptions

Field	Description
7 SUSP	Places the USB transceiver into the suspend state. 0 USB transceiver is not in suspend state. 1 USB transceiver is in suspend state.
6 PDE	Enables the weak pulldowns on the USB transceiver. 0 Weak pulldowns are disabled on D+ and D–. 1 Weak pulldowns are enabled on D+ and D–.
5 UARTCHLS	UART Signal Channel Select This field is valid only when USB signals are selected to be used as UART signals.

Table continues on the next page...

USBx_USBCTRL field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 USB DP/DM signals used as UART TX/RX. 1 USB DP/DM signals used as UART RX/TX.
4 UARTSEL	Selects USB signals to be used as UART signals. 0 USB signals not used as UART signals. 1 USB signals used as UART signals.
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

41.5.25 USB OTG Observe register (USBx_OBSERVE)

Provides visibility on the state of the pull-ups and pull-downs at the transceiver. Useful when interfacing to an external OTG control module via a serial interface.

Address: 4007_2000h base + 104h offset = 4007_2104h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	DPPU	DPPD	0	DMPD	0			
Write								
Reset	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	0

USBx_OBSERVE field descriptions

Field	Description
7 DPPU	Provides observability of the D+ Pullup enable at the USB transceiver. 0 D+ pullup disabled. 1 D+ pullup enabled.
6 DPPD	Provides observability of the D+ Pulldown enable at the USB transceiver. 0 D+ pulldown disabled. 1 D+ pulldown enabled.
5 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
4 DMPD	Provides observability of the D- Pulldown enable at the USB transceiver. 0 D– pulldown disabled. 1 D– pulldown enabled.
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

41.5.26 USB OTG Control register (USBx_CONTROL)

Address: 4007_2000h base + 108h offset = 4007_2108h

Bit	7	6	5	4
Read	0			DPPULLUPNONOTG
Write				
Reset	0	0	0	0

Bit	3	2	1	0
Read	0			
Write				
Reset	0	0	0	0

USBx_CONTROL field descriptions

Field	Description
7–5 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
4 DPPULLUPNONOTG	Provides control of the DP Pullup in USBOTG, if USB is configured in non-OTG device mode. 0 DP Pullup in non-OTG device mode is not enabled. 1 DP Pullup in non-OTG device mode is enabled.
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

41.5.27 USB Transceiver Control register 0 (USBx_USBTRC0)

Includes signals for basic operation of the on-chip USB Full Speed transceiver and configuration of the USB data connection that are not otherwise included in the USB Full Speed controller registers. VREGIN interrupt detection using the VFEDG_DET and VREDG_DET bitfields may be used for VBUS detection in bus-powered device use cases when the USB receptacle VBUS pin is connected to VREGIN.

Address: 4007_2000h base + 10Ch offset = 4007_210Ch

Bit	7	6	5	4
Read		0	USBRESMEN	VFEDG_DET
Write	USBRESET			
Reset	0	0	0	0

Bit	3	2	1	0
Read	VREDG_DET	USB_CLK_ RECOVERY_INT	SYNC_DET	USB_RESUME_INT
Write				
Reset	0	0	0	0

USB*x*_USBTRC0 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 USBRESET	USB Reset Generates a hard reset to USBOTG. After this bit is set and the reset occurs, this bit is automatically cleared. **NOTE: This bit is always read as zero. Wait two USB clock cycles after setting this bit before accessing other USB register bit fields.** 0 Normal USB module operation. 1 Returns the USB module to its reset state.
6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
5 USBRESMEN	Asynchronous Resume Interrupt Enable This bit, when set, allows the USB module to send an asynchronous wakeup event to the MCU upon detection of resume signaling on the USB bus. The MCU then re-enables clocks to the USB module. It is used for low-power suspend mode when USB module clocks are stopped or the USB transceiver is in Suspend mode. Async wakeup only works in device mode. 0 USB asynchronous wakeup from suspend mode disabled. 1 USB asynchronous wakeup from suspend mode enabled. The asynchronous resume interrupt differs from the synchronous resume interrupt in that it asynchronously detects K-state using the unfiltered state of the D+ and D– pins. This interrupt should only be enabled when the Transceiver is suspended.
4 VFEDG_DET	VREGIN Falling Edge Interrupt Detect Use USB*x*_MISCCTRL[VFEDG_EN] to enable this bitfield. 0 VREGIN falling edge interrupt has not been detected. 1 VREGIN falling edge interrupt has been detected.
3 VREDG_DET	VREGIN Rising Edge Interrupt Detect Use USB*x*_MISCCTRL[VREDG_EN] to enable this bitfield. 0 VREGIN rising edge interrupt has not been detected. 1 VREGIN rising edge interrupt has been detected.
2 USB_CLK_ RECOVERY_INT	Combined USB Clock Recovery interrupt status This read-only field will be set to value high at 1'b1 when any of USB clock recovery interrupt conditions are detected and those interrupts are unmasked. For customer use the only unmasked USB clock recovery interrupt condition results from an overflow of the frequency trim setting values indicating that the frequency trim calculated is out of the adjustment range of the IRC48M output clock. To clear this bit after it has been set, Write 0xFF to register USB_CLK_RECOVER_INT_STATUS.
1 SYNC_DET	Synchronous USB Interrupt Detect 0 Synchronous interrupt has not been detected. 1 Synchronous interrupt has been detected.
0 USB_RESUME_ INT	USB Asynchronous Interrupt 0 No interrupt was generated. 1 Interrupt was generated because of the USB asynchronous interrupt.

41.5.28 Frame Adjust Register (USBx_USBFRMADJUST)

Address: 4007_2000h base + 114h offset = 4007_2114h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	ADJ							
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

USBx_USBFRMADJUST field descriptions

Field	Description
ADJ	Frame Adjustment In Host mode, the frame adjustment is a twos complement number that adjusts the period of each USB frame in 12-MHz clock periods. A SOF is normally generated every 12,000 12-MHz clock cycles. The Frame Adjust Register can adjust this by -128 to +127 to compensate for inaccuracies in the USB 48-MHz clock. Changes to the ADJ bit take effect at the start of the next frame.

41.5.29 Miscellaneous Control register (USBx_MISCCTRL)

Address: 4007_2000h base + 12Ch offset = 4007_212Ch

Bit	7	6	5	4
Read Write	STL_ADJ_EN	0		VFEDG_EN
Reset	0	0	0	0

Bit	3	2	1	0
Read Write	VREDG_EN	OWNERRISODIS	SOFBUSSET	SOFDYNTHLD
Reset	0	0	0	0

USBx_MISCCTRL field descriptions

Field	Description
7 STL_ADJ_EN	USB Peripheral mode Stall Adjust Enable This field is valid only in peripheral mode (CTL[HOSTMODEEN]=0). By default (STL_ADJ_EN = 0), when an endpoint is stalled (ENDPTn[END_STALL]=1), both IN and OUT directions of the endpoint are stalled. If STL_ADJ_EN = 1, then when an endpoint is stalled (ENDPTn[END_STALL]=1), then the USBx_STALL_xx_DIS registers can be used to control which endpoint direction(s) are affected. 0 If USB_ENDPTn[END_STALL] = 1, both IN and OUT directions for the associated endpoint will be stalled 1 If USB_ENDPTn[END_STALL] = 1, the USB_STALL_xx_DIS registers control which directions for the associated endpoint will be stalled.
6–5 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
4 VFEDG_EN	VREGIN Falling Edge Interrupt Enable

Table continues on the next page...

USBx_MISCCTRL field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 VREGIN falling edge interrupt disabled. 1 VREGIN falling edge interrupt enabled.
3 VREDG_EN	VREGIN Rising Edge Interrupt Enable 0 VREGIN rising edge interrupt disabled. 1 VREGIN rising edge interrupt enabled.
2 OWNERRISODIS	OWN Error Detect for ISO IN / ISO OUT Disable This field is only valid for Peripheral mode, that is, CTL[HOSTMODEEN]=0. 0 OWN error detect for ISO IN / ISO OUT is not disabled. 1 OWN error detect for ISO IN / ISO OUT is disabled.
1 SOFBUSSET	SOF_TOK Interrupt Generation Mode Select This field is only valid for Host mode, that is, CTL[HOSTMODEEN]=1. 0 SOF_TOK interrupt is set according to SOF threshold value. 1 SOF_TOK interrupt is set when SOF counter reaches 0.
0 SOFDYNTHLD	Dynamic SOF Threshold Compare mode This field is only valid for Host mode, that is, CTL[HOSTMODEEN]=1. 0 SOF_TOK interrupt is set when byte times SOF threshold is reached. 1 SOF_TOK interrupt is set when 8 byte times SOF threshold is reached or overstepped.

41.5.30 Peripheral mode stall disable for endpoints 7 to 0 in IN direction (USBx_STALL_IL_DIS)

This register is valid only in Peripheral mode(CTL[HOSTMODEEN]=0) and when stall adjust enable bit is set (MISCCTRL[STL_ADJ_EN]=1).

When an endpoint is stalled (ENDPTn[END_STALL]=1), the fields in this register enable or disable stalling of the IN direction of the endpoints 7 to 0.

Address: 4007_2000h base + 130h offset = 4007_2130h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	STALL_I_DIS7	STALL_I_DIS6	STALL_I_DIS5	STALL_I_DIS4	STALL_I_DIS3	STALL_I_DIS2	STALL_I_DIS1	STALL_I_DIS0
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

USBx_STALL_IL_DIS field descriptions

Field	Description
7 STALL_I_DIS7	Disable endpoint 7 IN direction.

Table continues on the next page...

USBx_STALL_IL_DIS field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Endpoint 7 IN direction stall is enabled. 1 Endpoint 7 IN direction stall is disabled.
6 STALL_I_DIS6	Disable endpoint 6 IN direction. 0 Endpoint 6 IN direction stall is enabled. 1 Endpoint 6 IN direction stall is disabled.
5 STALL_I_DIS5	Disable endpoint 5 IN direction. 0 Endpoint 5 IN direction stall is enabled. 1 Endpoint 5 IN direction stall is disabled.
4 STALL_I_DIS4	Disable endpoint 4 IN direction. 0 Endpoint 4 IN direction stall is enabled. 1 Endpoint 4 IN direction stall is disabled.
3 STALL_I_DIS3	Disable endpoint 3 IN direction. 0 Endpoint 3 IN direction stall is enabled. 1 Endpoint 3 IN direction stall is disabled.
2 STALL_I_DIS2	Disable endpoint 2 IN direction. 0 Endpoint 2 IN direction stall is enabled. 1 Endpoint 2 IN direction stall is disabled.
1 STALL_I_DIS1	Disable endpoint 1 IN direction. 0 Endpoint 1 IN direction stall is enabled. 1 Endpoint 1 IN direction stall is disabled.
0 STALL_I_DIS0	Disable endpoint 0 IN direction. 0 Endpoint 0 IN direction stall is enabled. 1 Endpoint 0 IN direction stall is disabled.

41.5.31 Peripheral mode stall disable for endpoints 15 to 8 in IN direction (USBx_STALL_IH_DIS)

This register is valid only in Peripheral mode(CTL[HOSTMODEEN]=0) and when stall adjust enable bit is set (MISCCTRL[STL_ADJ_EN]=1).

When an endpoint is stalled (ENDPTn[END_STALL]=1), the fields in this register enable or disable stalling of the IN direction of the endpoints 15 to 8.

Address: 4007_2000h base + 134h offset = 4007_2134h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	STALL_I_ DIS15	STALL_I_ DIS14	STALL_I_ DIS13	STALL_I_ DIS12	STALL_I_ DIS11	STALL_I_ DIS10	STALL_I_ DIS9	STALL_I_ DIS8
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

USBx_STALL_IH_DIS field descriptions

Field	Description
7 STALL_I_DIS15	Disable endpoint 15 IN direction. 0 Endpoint 15 IN direction stall is enabled. 1 Endpoint 15 IN direction stall is disabled.
6 STALL_I_DIS14	Disable endpoint 14 IN direction. 0 Endpoint 14 IN direction stall is enabled. 1 Endpoint 14 IN direction stall is disabled.
5 STALL_I_DIS13	Disable endpoint 13 IN direction. 0 Endpoint 13 IN direction stall is enabled. 1 Endpoint 13 IN direction stall is disabled.
4 STALL_I_DIS12	Disable endpoint 12 IN direction. 0 Endpoint 12 IN direction stall is enabled. 1 Endpoint 12 IN direction stall is disabled.
3 STALL_I_DIS11	Disable endpoint 11 IN direction. 0 Endpoint 11 IN direction stall is enabled. 1 Endpoint 11 IN direction stall is disabled.
2 STALL_I_DIS10	Disable endpoint 10 IN direction. 0 Endpoint 10 IN direction stall is enabled. 1 Endpoint 10 IN direction stall is disabled.
1 STALL_I_DIS9	Disable endpoint 9 IN direction. 0 Endpoint 9 IN direction stall is enabled. 1 Endpoint 9 IN direction stall is disabled.
0 STALL_I_DIS8	Disable endpoint 8 IN direction. 0 Endpoint 8 IN direction stall is enabled. 1 Endpoint 8 IN direction stall is disabled.

41.5.32 Peripheral mode stall disable for endpoints 7 to 0 in OUT direction (USBx_STALL_OL_DIS)

This register is valid only in Peripheral mode(CTL[HOSTMODEEN]=0) and when stall adjust enable bit is set (MISCCTRL[STL_ADJ_EN]=1).

When an endpoint is stalled (ENDPTn[END_STALL]=1), the fields in this register enable or disable stalling of the OUT direction for the endpoints 7 to 0.

Address: 4007_2000h base + 138h offset = 4007_2138h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	STALL_O_DIS7	STALL_O_DIS6	STALL_O_DIS5	STALL_O_DIS4	STALL_O_DIS3	STALL_O_DIS2	STALL_O_DIS1	STALL_O_DIS0
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

USBx_STALL_OL_DIS field descriptions

Field	Description
7 STALL_O_DIS7	Disable endpoint 7 OUT direction. 0 Endpoint 7 OUT direction stall is enabled. 1 Endpoint 7 OUT direction stall is disabled.
6 STALL_O_DIS6	Disable endpoint 6 OUT direction. 0 Endpoint 6 OUT direction stall is enabled. 1 Endpoint 6 OUT direction stall is disabled.
5 STALL_O_DIS5	Disable endpoint 5 OUT direction. 0 Endpoint 5 OUT direction stall is enabled. 1 Endpoint 5 OUT direction stall is disabled.
4 STALL_O_DIS4	Disable endpoint 4 OUT direction. 0 Endpoint 4 OUT direction stall is enabled. 1 Endpoint 4 OUT direction stall is disabled.
3 STALL_O_DIS3	Disable endpoint 3 OUT direction. 0 Endpoint 3 OUT direction stall is enabled. 1 Endpoint 3 OUT direction stall is disabled.
2 STALL_O_DIS2	Disable endpoint 2 OUT direction. 0 Endpoint 2 OUT direction stall is enabled. 1 Endpoint 2 OUT direction stall is disabled.
1 STALL_O_DIS1	Disable endpoint 1 OUT direction. 0 Endpoint 1 OUT direction stall is enabled. 1 Endpoint 1 OUT direction stall is disabled.
0 STALL_O_DIS0	Disable endpoint 0 OUT direction. 0 Endpoint 0 OUT direction stall is enabled. 1 Endpoint 0 OUT direction stall is disabled.

41.5.33 Peripheral mode stall disable for endpoints 15 to 8 in OUT direction (USBx_STALL_OH_DIS)

This register is valid only in Peripheral mode(CTL[HOSTMODEEN]=0) and when stall adjust enable bit is set (MISCCTRL[STL_ADJ_EN]=1).

When an endpoint is stalled (ENDPTn[END_STALL]=1), the fields in this register enable or disable stalling of the OUT direction for the endpoints 15 to 8.

Address: 4007_2000h base + 13Ch offset = 4007_213Ch

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	STALL_O_DIS15	STALL_O_DIS14	STALL_O_DIS13	STALL_O_DIS12	STALL_O_DIS11	STALL_O_DIS10	STALL_O_DIS9	STALL_O_DIS8
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

USBx_STALL_OH_DIS field descriptions

Field	Description
7 STALL_O_DIS15	Disable endpoint 15 OUT direction. 0 Endpoint 15 OUT direction stall is enabled. 1 Endpoint 15 OUT direction stall is disabled.
6 STALL_O_DIS14	Disable endpoint 14 OUT direction. 0 Endpoint 14 OUT direction stall is enabled. 1 Endpoint 14 OUT direction stall is disabled.
5 STALL_O_DIS13	Disable endpoint 13 OUT direction. 0 Endpoint 13 OUT direction stall is enabled. 1 Endpoint 13 OUT direction stall is disabled.
4 STALL_O_DIS12	Disable endpoint 12 OUT direction. 0 Endpoint 12 OUT direction stall is enabled. 1 Endpoint 12 OUT direction stall is disabled.
3 STALL_O_DIS11	Disable endpoint 11 OUT direction. 0 Endpoint 11 OUT direction stall is enabled. 1 Endpoint 11 OUT direction stall is disabled.
2 STALL_O_DIS10	Disable endpoint 10 OUT direction. 0 Endpoint 10 OUT direction stall is enabled. 1 Endpoint 10 OUT direction stall is disabled.
1 STALL_O_DIS9	Disable endpoint 9 OUT direction. 0 Endpoint 9 OUT direction stall is enabled. 1 Endpoint 9 OUT direction stall is disabled.
0 STALL_O_DIS8	Disable endpoint 8 OUT direction. 0 Endpoint 8 OUT direction stall is enabled. 1 Endpoint 8 OUT direction stall is disabled.

41.5.34 USB Clock recovery control (USBx_CLK_RECOVER_CTRL)

Signals in this register control the crystal-less USB clock mode in which the internal IRC48M oscillator is tuned to match the clock extracted from the incoming USB data stream.

The IRC48Minternal oscillator module must be enabled in register USB_CLK_RECOVER_IRC_EN for this mode.

Address: 4007_2000h base + 140h offset = 4007_2140h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	CLOCK_ RECOVER_ EN	RESET_ RESUME_ ROUGH_EN	RESTART_ IFRTRIM_ EN	Reserved		Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

USBx_CLK_RECOVER_CTRL field descriptions

Field	Description
7 CLOCK_ RECOVER_EN	Crystal-less USB enable This bit must be enabled if user wants to use the crystal-less USB mode for the Full Speed USB controller and transceiver. **NOTE: This bit should not be set for USB host mode or OTG.** 0 Disable clock recovery block (default) 1 Enable clock recovery block
6 RESET_ RESUME_ ROUGH_EN	Reset/resume to rough phase enable The clock recovery block tracks the IRC48M to get an accurate 48Mhz clock. It has two phases after user enables clock_recover_en bit, rough phase and tracking phase. The step to fine tune the IRC48M by adjusting the trim fine value is different during these 2 phases. The step in rough phase is larger than that in tracking phase. Switch back to rough stage whenever USB bus reset or bus resume occurs. 0 Always works in tracking phase after the first time rough to track transition (default) 1 Go back to rough stage whenever bus reset or bus resume occurs
5 RESTART_ IFRTRIM_EN	Restart from IFR trim value IRC48M has a default trim fine value whose default value is factory trimmed (the IFR trim value). Clock recover block tracks the accuracy of the clock 48Mhz and keeps updating the trim fine value accordingly 0 Trim fine adjustment always works based on the previous updated trim fine value (default) 1 Trim fine restarts from the IFR trim value whenever bus_reset/bus_resume is detected or module enable is desasserted
4–3 Reserved	This field is reserved.
2 Reserved	This field is reserved. This bit is for NXP use only. Customers should not change this bit from its default state.
1 Reserved	This field is reserved. This bit is for NXP use only. Customers should not change this bit from its default state.

Table continues on the next page...

USBx_CLK_RECOVER_CTRL field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
0 Reserved	This field is reserved. Default should not be changed

41.5.35 IRC48M oscillator enable register (USBx_CLK_RECOVER_IRC_EN)

Controls basic operation of the on-chip IRC48M module used to produce nominal 48MHz clocks for USB crystal-less operation and other functions.

See additional information about the IRC48M operation in the Clock Distribution chapter.

Address: 4007_2000h base + 144h offset = 4007_2144h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	Reserved						IRC_EN	REG_EN
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1

USBx_CLK_RECOVER_IRC_EN field descriptions

Field	Description
7–2 Reserved	This field is reserved.
1 IRC_EN	IRC48M enable This bit is used to enable the on-chip IRC48M module to generate clocks for crystal-less USB. It can be used for FS USB device mode operation. This bit must be set before using the crystal-less USB clock configuration. 0 Disable the IRC48M module (default) 1 Enable the IRC48M module
0 REG_EN	IRC48M regulator enable This bit is used to enable the local analog regulator for IRC48M module. This bit must be set if user wants to use the crystal-less USB clock configuration. 0 IRC48M local regulator is disabled 1 IRC48M local regulator is enabled (default)

41.5.36 Clock recovery combined interrupt enable (USB*x*_CLK_RECOVER_INT_EN)

Enables or masks the individual interrupt flags which are logically OR'ed together to produce the combined interrupt indication on the USB_CLK_RECOVERY_INT bit in the USB_USBTRC0 register if the indicated conditions have been detected in the USB clock recovery algorithm operation.

Address: 4007_2000h base + 154h offset = 4007_2154h

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	Reserved			OVF_ ERROR_EN	Reserved			
Reset	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0

USB*x*_CLK_RECOVER_INT_EN field descriptions

Field	Description
7–5 Reserved	This field is reserved. Should always be written as 0.
4 OVF_ERROR_ EN	Determines whether OVF_ERROR condition signal is used in generation of USB_CLK_RECOVERY_INT. 0 The interrupt will be masked 1 The interrupt will be enabled (default)
Reserved	This field is reserved. Should always be written as 0.

41.5.37 Clock recovery separated interrupt status (USB*x*_CLK_RECOVER_INT_STATUS)

A Write operation with value high at 1'b1 on any combination of individual bits will clear those bits.

Address: 4007_2000h base + 15Ch offset = 4007_215Ch

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	Reserved			OVF_ ERROR	Reserved			
Write	w1c			w1c	w1c			
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

USBx_CLK_RECOVER_INT_STATUS field descriptions

Field	Description
7–5 Reserved	This field is reserved. Should always be written as 0.
4 OVF_ERROR	Indicates that the USB clock recovery algorithm has detected that the frequency trim adjustment needed for the IRC48M output clock is outside the available TRIM_FINE adjustment range for the IRC48M module. 0 No interrupt is reported 1 Unmasked interrupt has been generated
Reserved	This field is reserved. Should always be written as 0.

41.6 OTG and Host mode operation

The Host mode logic allows portable, mobile, and other devices using this SOC to function as a USB Embedded Host (EH) Controller. The OTG logic adds an interface to allow the OTG Host Negotiation and Session Request Protocols (HNP and SRP) to be implemented in software.

Host mode is intended for use in handheld-portable devices to allow easy connection to simple HID class devices such as printers and keyboards. It is not intended to perform the functions of a full OHCI or UHCI compatible host controller found on PC motherboards. Host mode allows bulk, isochronous, interrupt and control transfers. Bulk data transfers are performed at nearly the full USB interface bandwidth. Support is provided for ISO transfers, but the number of ISO streams that can be practically supported is affected by the interrupt latency of the processor servicing the Token Done interrupts from the SIE. Custom drivers must be written to support Host mode operation.

Setting the HOST_MODE_EN bit in the CTL register enables Host mode. The USB-FS core can only operate as a peripheral device or in Host mode. It cannot operate in both modes simultaneously. When HOST_MODE is enabled, only endpoint zero is used. All other endpoints should be disabled by software.

41.7 Host Mode Operation Examples

The following sections illustrate the steps required to perform USB host functions using the USB-FS core. For more information about these procedures, see the *Universal Serial Bus Specification, Revision 2.0*, "Chapter 9 USB Device Framework."

To enable host mode and discover a connected device:

1. Enable Host Mode (CTL[HOST_MODE_EN]=1). The pull-down resistors are enabled, and pull-up disabled. Start of Frame (SOF) generation begins. SOF counter loaded with 12,000. Disable SOF packet generation to eliminate noise on the USB by writing the USB enable bit to 0 (CTL[USB_EN]=0).
2. Enable the ATTACH interrupt (INTEN[ATTACHEN]=1).
3. Wait for ATTACH interrupt (ISTAT[ATTACH]). Signaled by USB peripheral device pull-up resistor changing the state of DPLUS or DMINUS from 0 to 1 (SE0 to J or K state).
4. Check the state of the JSTATE and SE0 bits in the control register. If the connecting device is low speed (JSTATE bit is 0), set the low-speed bit in the address registers (ADDR[LS_EN]=1) and the Host Without Hub bit in endpoint 0 register control (ENDPT0[HOSTWOHUB]=1).
5. Enable RESET (CTL[RESET]=1) for 10 ms.
6. Enable SOF packet to keep the connected device from going to suspend (CTL[USB_EN=1]).
7. Enumerate the attached device by sending the appropriate commands to the default control pipe of the connected device.

To complete a control transaction to a connected device:

1. Complete all the steps to discover a connected device
2. Set up the endpoint control register for bidirectional control transfers ENDPT0[4:0] = 0x0d.
3. Place a copy of the device framework setup command in a memory buffer.
4. Initialize current even or odd TX EP0 BDT to transfer the 8 bytes of command data for a device framework command (for example, a GET DEVICE DESCRIPTOR).
   - Set the BDT command word to 0x00080080 –Byte count to 8, OWN bit to 1.
   - Set the BDT buffer address field to the start address of the 8 byte command buffer.
5. Set the USB device address of the peripheral device in the address register (ADDR[6:0]). After the USB bus reset, the device USB address is zero. It is set to some other value usually 1 by the Set Address device framework command.

6. Write the TOKEN register with a SETUP to Endpoint 0, the peripheral device default control pipe (TOKEN=0xD0). This initiates a setup token on the bus followed by a data packet. The device handshake is returned in the BDT PID field after the packets complete. When the BDT is written, a Token Done (ISTAT[TOKDNE]) interrupt is asserted. This completes the setup phase of the setup transaction.
7. To initiate the data phase of the setup transaction (that is, get the data for the GET DEVICE DESCRIPTOR command), set up a buffer in memory for the data to be transferred.
8. Initialize the current even or odd TX EP0 BDT to transfer the data.
    - Set the BDT command word to 0x004000C0 – BC to 64 (the byte count of the data buffer in this case), OWN bit to 1, Data toggle to Data1.
    - Set the BDT buffer address field to the start address of the data buffer
9. Write the TOKEN register with an IN or OUT token to Endpoint 0, the peripheral device default control pipe, an IN token for a GET DEVICE DESCRIPTOR command (TOKEN=0x90). This initiates an IN token on the bus followed by a data packet from the device to the host. When the data packet completes, the BDT is written and a Token Done (ISTAT[DNE]) interrupt is asserted. For control transfers with a single packet data phase this completes the data phase of the setup transaction.
10. To initiate the status phase of the setup transaction, set up a buffer in memory to receive or send the zero length status phase data packet.
11. Initialize the current even or odd TX EP0 BDT to transfer the status data.
    - Set the BDT command word to 0x00000080 – BC to 0 (the byte count of the data buffer in this case), OWN bit to 1, Data toggle to Data1.
    - Set the BDT buffer address field to the start address of the data buffer
12. Write the TOKEN register with a IN or OUT token to Endpoint 0, the peripheral device default control pipe, an OUT token for a GET DEVICE DESCRIPTOR command (TOKEN=0x10). This initiates an OUT token on the bus followed by a zero length data packet from the host to the device. When the data packet completes, the BDT is written with the handshake from the device and a Token Done (ISTAT[TOKDNE]) interrupt is asserted. This completes the data phase of the setup transaction.

To send a full speed bulk data transfer to a peripheral device:

1. Complete all steps to discover a connected device and to configure a connected device. Write the ADDR register with the address of the peripheral device. Typically, there is only one other device on the USB bus in host mode so it is expected that the address is 0x01 and should remain constant.
2. Write 0x1D to ENDPT0 register to enable transmit and receive transfers with handshaking enabled.
3. Setup the even TX EP0 BDT to transfer up to 64 bytes.
4. Set the USB device address of the peripheral device in the address register (ADDR[6:0]).
5. Write the TOKEN register with an OUT token to the desired endpoint. The write to this register triggers the USB-FS transmit state machines to begin transmitting the token and the data.
6. Setup the odd TX EP0 BDT to transfer up to 64 bytes.
7. Write the TOKEN register with an OUT token as in step 4. Two tokens can be queued at a time to allow the packets to be double buffered to achieve maximum throughput.
8. Wait for the TOKDNE interrupt. This indicates that one of the BDTs has been released back to the processor and the transfer has completed. If the peripheral device asserts NAKs, the USB-FS continues to retry the transfer indefinitely without processor intervention unless the ENDPT0[RETRYDIS] is 1. If the retry disable field is set, the handshake (ACK, NAK, STALL, or ERROR (0xf)) is returned in the BDT PID field. If a stall interrupt occurs, the pending packet must be dequeued and the error condition in the peripheral device cleared. If a Reset interrupt occurs (SE0 for more than 2.5 μs), the peripheral device has detached.
9. After the TOK_DNE interrupt occurs, the BDTs can be examined and the next data packet queued by returning to step 2.

41.8 On-The-Go operation

The USB-OTG core provides sensors and controls to enable On-The-Go (OTG) operation. These sensors are used by the OTG driver software to implement the Host Negotiation Protocol (HNP) and Session Request Protocol (SRP) and give access to the OTG protocol control signals. The following state machines show the OTG operations involved with HNP and SRP protocols from either end of the USB cable.

41.8.1 OTG dual role A device operation

A device is considered the A device because of the type of cable attached. If the USB Type Standard-A or Micro-A plug is plugged into the device, it is considered the A device.

A dual role A device operates as the following flow diagram and state description table illustrates.

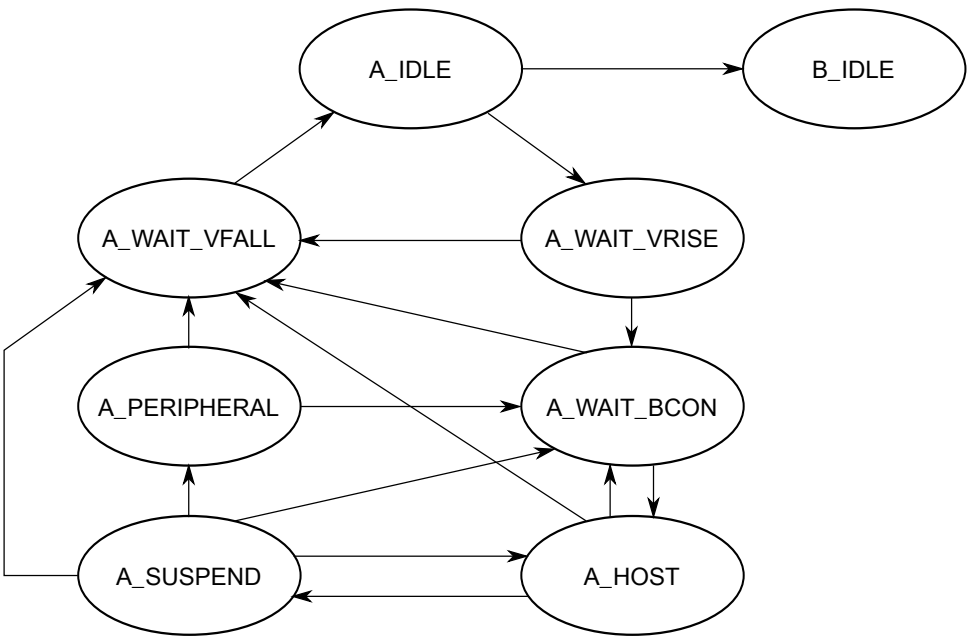


Figure 41-13. Dual role A device flow diagram

Table 41-9. State descriptions for the dual role A device flow

State	Action	Response
A_IDLE	If ID Interrupt. The cable has been unplugged or a Type B cable has been attached. The device now acts as a Type B device.	Go to B_IDLE
	If the A application wants to use the bus or if the B device is doing an SRP as indicated by an A_SESS_VLD Interrupt or Attach or Port Status Change Interrupt check data line for 5 –10 msec pulsing.	Go to A_WAIT_VRISE Turn on DRV_VBUS
A_WAIT_VRISE	If ID Interrupt or if A_VBUS_VLD is false after 100 msec The cable has been changed or the A device cannot support the current required from the B device.	Go to A_WAIT_VFALL Turn off DRV_VBUS
	If A_VBUS_VLD interrupt	Go to A_WAIT_BCON
A_WAIT_BCON	After 200 ms without Attach or ID Interrupt. (This could wait forever if desired.)	Go to A_WAIT_FALL Turn off DRV_VBUS
	A_VBUS_VLD Interrupt and B device attaches	Go to A_HOST

Table continues on the next page...

Table 41-9. State descriptions for the dual role A device flow (continued)

State	Action	Response
		Turn on Host mode
A_HOST	Enumerate Device determine OTG Support.	
	If A_VBUS_VLD/ Interrupt or A device is done and does not think it wants to do something soon or the B device disconnects	Go to A_WAIT_VFALL Turn off Host mode Turn off DRV_VBUS
	If the A device is finished with session or if the A device wants to allow the B device to take bus.	Go to A_SUSPEND
	ID Interrupt or the B device disconnects	Go to A_WAIT_BCON
A_SUSPEND	If ID Interrupt, or if 150 ms B disconnect timeout (This timeout value could be longer) or if A_VBUS_VLD\ Interrupt	Go to A_WAIT_VFALL Turn off DRV_VBUS
	If HNP enabled, and B disconnects in 150 ms then B device is becoming the host.	Go to A_PERIPHERAL Turn off Host mode
	If A wants to start another session	Go to A_HOST
A_PERIPHERAL	If ID Interrupt or if A_VBUS_VLD interrupt	Go to A_WAIT_VFALL Turn off DRV_VBUS.
	If 3 –200 ms of Bus Idle	Go to A_WAIT_BCON Turn on Host mode
A_WAIT_VFALL	If ID Interrupt or (A_SESS_VLD/ & b_conn/)	Go to A_IDLE

41.8.2 OTG dual role B device operation

A device is considered a B device if it is connected to the bus with a USB Type Standard-B, Mini-B, or Micro-B plug inserted into the local USB receptacle. The Type Mini-B plug and receptacle are now only allowed for dedicated peripheral devices, not dual role/OTG devices.

A dual role B device operates as the following flow diagram and state description table illustrates.

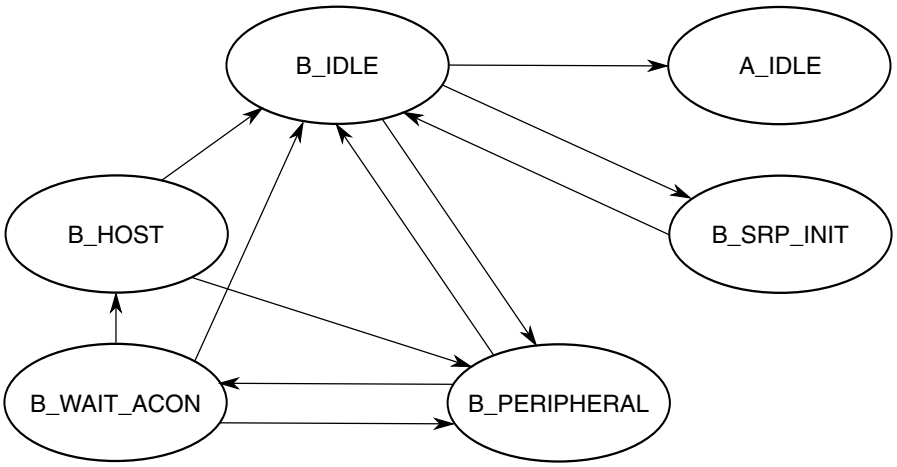


Figure 41-14. Dual role B device flow diagram

Table 41-10. State descriptions for the dual role B device flow

State	Action	Response
B_IDLE	If ID\ Interrupt. A Type A cable has been plugged in and the device should now respond as a Type A device.	Go to A_IDLE
	If B_SESS_VLD Interrupt. The A device has turned on VBUS and begins a session.	Go to B_PERIPHERAL Turn on DP_HIGH
	If B application wants the bus and Bus is Idle for 2 ms and the B_SESS_END bit is set, the B device can perform an SRP.	Go to B_SRP_INIT Pulse CHRG_VBUS Pulse DP_HIGH 5-10 ms
B_SRP_INIT	If ID\ Interrupt or SRP Done (SRP must be done in less than 100 ms.)	Go to B_IDLE
B_PERIPHERAL	If HNP enabled and the bus is suspended and B wants the bus, the B device can become the host.	Go to B_WAIT_ACON Turn off DP_HIGH
B_WAIT_ACON	If A connects, an attach interrupt is received	Go to B_HOST Turn on Host Mode
	If ID\ Interrupt or B_SESS_VLD/ Interrupt If the cable changes or if VBUS goes away, the host doesn't support us. Go to B_IDLE	Go to B_IDLE
	If 3.125 ms expires or if a Resume occurs	Go to B_PERIPHERAL
B_HOST	If ID\ Interrupt or B_SESS_VLD\ Interrupt If the cable changes or if VBUS goes away, the host doesn't support us.	Go to B_IDLE
	If B application is done or A disconnects	Go to B_PERIPHERAL

41.9 Device mode IRC48M operation

The following are the IRC48M initialization code steps:

1. Enable the IRC48M clock: USB_CLK_RECOVER_IRC_EN[IRC_EN] = 1b
2. Enable the USB clock recovery tuning: USB_CLK_RECOVER_CTRL[CLOCK_RECOVER_EN] = 1b
3. Choose the clock source of USB by configuring the muxes and dividers. The IRC48M is muxed by setting SIM_SOPT2[MCGPLLFLL]=11b for USB usage.
4. The selected mux output clock can be divided by the USB clock divider, so set these fields so no clock division is enabled. This is the equation for the divider:

   Divider output clock = Divider input clock × [(USBFRAC+1) / (USBDIV+1)].
   So set SIM_CLKDIV2[USBDIV] = 000b and SIM_CLKDIV2[USBFRAC] = 0b
5. The USB clock source must choose the output of the divided clock.

For chip-specific details, see the USB FS OTG controller clocking information in the "Clock Distribution" chapter.

Chapter 42
CAN (FlexCAN)

42.1 Chip-specific Information for this Module

42.1.1 Number of FlexCAN modules

For KS22, the device contains two identical FlexCAN modules. For KS20, it only has one FlexCAN module.

42.1.2 Reset value of MDIS bit

The CAN_MCR[MDIS] bit is set after reset. Therefore, FlexCAN module is disabled following a reset.

42.1.3 Number of message buffers

Each FlexCAN module contains 16 message buffers. Each message buffer is 16 bytes.

42.1.4 FlexCAN Clocking

42.1.4.1 Clocking Options

CAN_CTRL1[CLKSRC] register bit selects between clocking the FlexCAN from the internal bus clock or the input clock (OSCERCLK). In this case, a clock source with PLL FM jitter must not be used.

42.1.4.2 Clock Gating

The clock to each CAN module can be gated on and off using the SCGC*n*[CAN*x*] bits. These bits are cleared after any reset, which disables the clock to the corresponding module. The appropriate clock enable bit should be set by software at the beginning of the FlexCAN initialization routine to enable the module clock before attempting to initialize any of the FlexCAN registers.

42.1.5 FlexCAN Interrupts

The FlexCAN has multiple sources of interrupt requests. However, some of these sources are OR'd together to generate a single interrupt request. See below for the mapping of the individual interrupt sources to the interrupt request:

Request	Sources
Message buffer	Message buffers 0-15
Bus off	Bus off
Error	• Bit1 error • Bit0 error • Acknowledge error • Cyclic redundancy check (CRC) error • Form error • Stuffing error • Transmit error warning • Receive error warning
Transmit Warning	Transmit Warning
Receive Warning	Receive Warning
Wake-up	Wake-up

42.1.6 FlexCAN Operation in Low Power Modes

The FlexCAN module is operational in VLPR and VLPW modes. With the 2 MHz bus clock, the fastest supported FlexCAN transfer rate is 250 kbps. The bit timing parameters in the module must be adjusted for the new frequency, but full functionality is possible.

The FlexCAN module can be configured to generate a wakeup interrupt in STOP and VLPS modes. When the FlexCAN is configured to generate a wakeup, a recessive to dominant transition on the CAN bus generates an interrupt.

42.1.7 FlexCAN Doze Mode

The Doze mode for the FlexCAN module is the same as the Wait and VLPW modes for the chip.

42.1.8 FlexCAN glitch filter

This chip supports wakeup from the FlexCAN module's Stop and Doze mode through a CAN wakeup interrupt. Any recessive to dominant transition on the CAN bus (CAN_RX) can wake the chip from Stop or Doze mode. An optional glitch filter is connected on CAN_RX to the interrupt generation logic path.

The glitch filter provides the following functionality:

- Filtering out of unwanted noise on the CAN bus
- Selection of the wakeup source, either from the filtered or unfiltered CAN bus
- Routing of the wakeup source to either the synchronous (Doze) or asynchronous (Stop) wakeup path within the FlexCAN module

The reference clock for the glitch filter is a 4 MHz clock derived from the MCGIRCLK. The MCGIRCLK must remain on if the user wants a low power wakeup through the glitch filter. The glitch filter counts 11 cycles of the 4 MHz clock before recognizing it as a valid recessive to dominant transition.

42.2 Introduction

The FlexCAN module is a communication controller implementing the CAN protocol according to the ISO 11898-1 standard and CAN 2.0 B protocol specifications. A general block diagram is shown in the following figure, which describes the main subblocks implemented in the FlexCAN module, including one associated memory for storing message buffers, Receive Global Mask registers, Receive Individual Mask registers, Receive FIFO filters, and Receive FIFO ID filters. The functions of the submodules are described in subsequent sections.

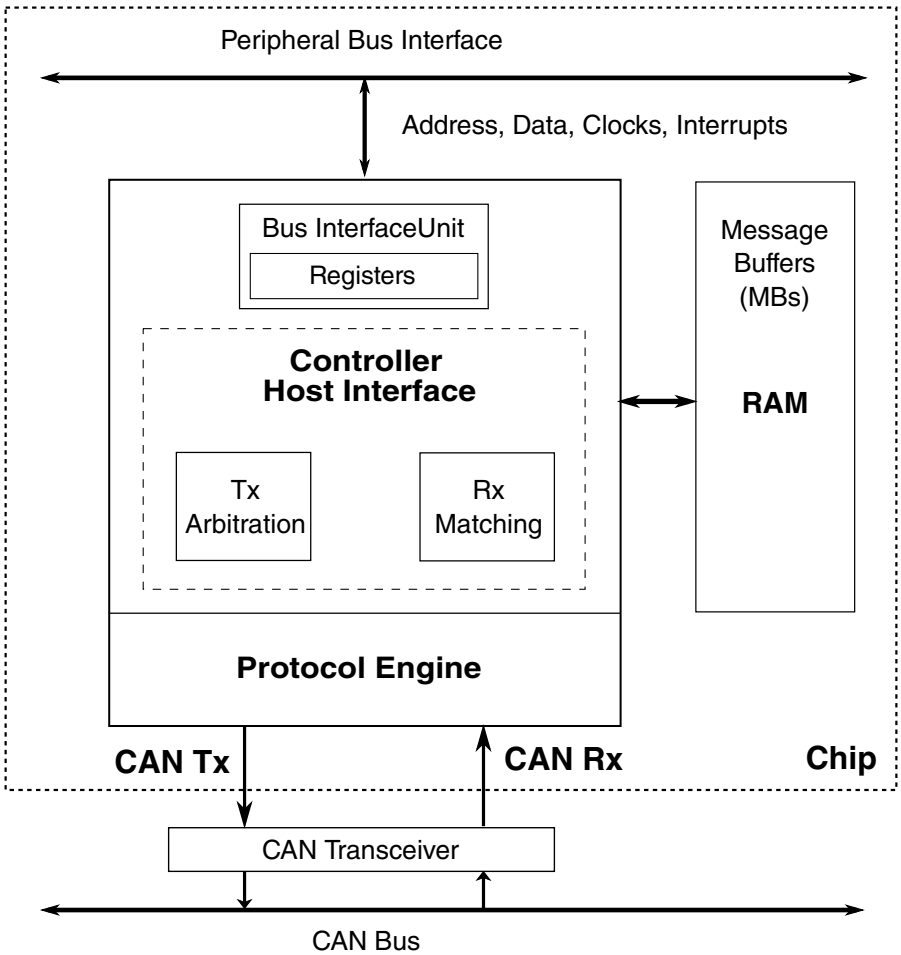


Figure 42-1. FlexCAN block diagram

42.2.1 Overview

The CAN protocol was primarily designed to be used as a vehicle serial data bus, meeting the specific requirements of this field:

- Real-time processing
- Reliable operation in the EMI environment of a vehicle
- Cost-effectiveness
- Required bandwidth

The FlexCAN module is a full implementation of the CAN protocol specification, the CAN 2.0 version B protocol, which supports both standard and extended message frames. The message buffers are stored in an embedded RAM dedicated to the FlexCAN module. See the chip configuration details for the actual number of message buffers configured in the chip.

The Protocol Engine (PE) submodule manages the serial communication on the CAN bus:

- Requesting RAM access for receiving and transmitting message frames
- Validating received messages
- Performing error handling

The Controller Host Interface (CHI) sub-module handles message buffer selection for reception and transmission, taking care of arbitration and ID matching algorithms.

The Bus Interface Unit (BIU) sub-module controls the access to and from the internal interface bus, in order to establish connection to the CPU and to other blocks. Clocks, address and data buses, interrupt outputs, DMA and test signals are accessed through the BIU.

42.2.2 FlexCAN module features

The FlexCAN module includes these distinctive features:

- Full implementation of the CAN protocol specification, Version 2.0 B
    - Standard data frames
    - Extended data frames
    - Zero to eight bytes data length
    - Programmable bit rate up to 1 Mb/sec
    - Content-related addressing
- Compliant with the ISO 11898-1 standard
- Flexible mailboxes of zero to eight bytes data length
- Each mailbox configurable as receive or transmit, all supporting standard and extended messages
- Individual Rx Mask registers per mailbox
- Full-featured Rx FIFO with storage capacity for up to six frames and automatic internal pointer handling with DMA support
- Transmission abort capability
- Flexible message buffers (MBs), totaling 16 message buffers of 8 bytes data length each, configurable as Rx or Tx

- Programmable clock source to the CAN Protocol Interface, either peripheral clock or oscillator clock
- RAM not used by reception or transmission structures can be used as general purpose RAM space
- Listen-Only mode capability
- Programmable Loop-Back mode supporting self-test operation
- Programmable transmission priority scheme: lowest ID, lowest buffer number, or highest priority
- Time stamp based on 16-bit free-running timer
- Global network time, synchronized by a specific message
- Maskable interrupts
- Independence from the transmission medium (an external transceiver is assumed)
- Short latency time due to an arbitration scheme for high-priority messages
- Low power modes, with programmable wake up on bus activity
- Remote request frames may be handled automatically or by software
- CAN bit time settings and configuration bits can only be written in Freeze mode
- Tx mailbox status (Lowest priority buffer or empty buffer)
- Identifier Acceptance Filter Hit Indicator (IDHIT) register for received frames
- SYNCH bit available in Error in Status 1 register to inform that the module is synchronous with CAN bus
- CRC status for transmitted message
- Rx FIFO Global Mask register
- Selectable priority between mailboxes and Rx FIFO during matching process
- Powerful Rx FIFO ID filtering, capable of matching incoming IDs against either 128 extended, 256 standard, or 512 partial (8 bit) IDs, with up to 32 individual masking capability
- 100% backward compatibility with previous FlexCAN version

42.2.3 Modes of operation

The FlexCAN module has these functional modes:

- Normal mode (User or Supervisor):

  In Normal mode, the module operates receiving and/or transmitting message frames, errors are handled normally, and all CAN Protocol functions are enabled. User and Supervisor Modes differ in the access to some restricted control registers.

- Freeze mode:

  Freeze mode is enabled when the FRZ bit in MCR is asserted. If enabled, Freeze mode is entered when MCR[HALT] is set or when Debug mode is requested at chip level and MCR[FRZ_ACK] is asserted by the FlexCAN. In this mode, no transmission or reception of frames is done and synchronicity to the CAN bus is lost. See Freeze mode for more information.

- Loop-Back mode:

  The module enters this mode when the LPB field in the Control 1 Register is asserted. In this mode, FlexCAN performs an internal loop back that can be used for self-test operation. The bit stream output of the transmitter is internally fed back to the receiver input. The Rx CAN input pin is ignored and the Tx CAN output goes to the recessive state (logic '1'). FlexCAN behaves as it normally does when transmitting and treats its own transmitted message as a message received from a remote node. In this mode, FlexCAN ignores the bit sent during the ACK slot in the CAN frame acknowledge field to ensure proper reception of its own message. Both transmit and receive interrupts are generated.

- Listen-Only mode:

  The module enters this mode when the LOM field in the Control 1 Register is asserted. In this mode, transmission is disabled, all error counters are frozen, and the module operates in a CAN Error Passive mode. Only messages acknowledged by another CAN station will be received. If FlexCAN detects a message that has not been acknowledged, it will flag a BIT0 error (without changing the REC), as if it was trying to acknowledge the message.

For low-power operation, the FlexCAN module has:

- Module Disable mode:

This low-power mode is entered when the MDIS bit in the MCR Register is asserted by the CPU and the LPM_ACK is asserted by the FlexCAN. When disabled, the module requests to disable the clocks to the CAN Protocol Engine and Controller Host Interface submodules. Exit from this mode is done by negating the MDIS bit in the MCR register. See Module Disable mode for more information.

- Doze mode:

  This low power mode is entered when the DOZE bit in MCR is asserted and Doze mode is requested at chip level and the LPM_ACK bit in the MCR Register is asserted by the FlexCAN. When in Doze mode, the module requests to disable the clocks to the CAN Protocol Engine and the CAN Controller-Host Interface sub-modules. Exit from this mode happens when the DOZE bit in MCR is negated, when the chip is removed from Doze mode, or when activity is detected on the CAN bus and the Self Wake Up mechanism is enabled. See Doze mode for more information.

- Stop mode:

  This low power mode is entered when Stop mode is requested at chip level and the LPM_ACK bit in the MCR Register is asserted by the FlexCAN. When in Stop Mode, the module puts itself in an inactive state and then informs the CPU that the clocks can be shut down globally. Exit from this mode happens when the Stop mode request is removed, or when activity is detected on the CAN bus and the Self Wake Up mechanism is enabled. See Stop mode for more information.

42.3 FlexCAN signal descriptions

The FlexCAN module has two I/O signals connected to the external chip pins. These signals are summarized in the following table and described in more detail in the next subsections.

Table 42-1. FlexCAN signal descriptions

Signal	Description	I/O
CAN Rx	CAN Receive Pin	Input
CAN Tx	CAN Transmit Pin	Output

42.3.1 CAN Rx

This pin is the receive pin from the CAN bus transceiver. Dominant state is represented by logic level 0. Recessive state is represented by logic level 1.

42.3.2 CAN Tx

This pin is the transmit pin to the CAN bus transceiver. Dominant state is represented by logic level 0. Recessive state is represented by logic level 1.

42.4 Memory map/register definition

This section describes the registers and data structures in the FlexCAN module. The base address of the module depends on the particular memory map of the chip.

42.4.1 FlexCAN memory mapping

The memory map for the FlexCAN module is shown in the following table.

The address space occupied by FlexCAN has 128 bytes for registers starting at the module base address, followed by embedded RAM starting at address offset 0x0080.

Each individual register is identified by its complete name and the corresponding mnemonic. The access type can be Supervisor (S) or Unrestricted (U). Most of the registers can be configured to have either Supervisor or Unrestricted access by programming the SUPV field in the MCR register. These registers are identified as S/U in the Access column of Table 42-2.

Table 42-2. Register access and reset information

Register	Access type	Affected by hard reset	Affected by soft reset
Module Configuration Register (CAN_MCR)	S	Yes	Yes
Control 1 register (CAN_CTRL1)	S/U	Yes	No
Free Running Timer register (CAN_TIMER)	S/U	Yes	Yes
Rx Mailboxes Global Mask register (CAN_RXMGMASK)	S/U	No	No
Rx Buffer 14 Mask register (CAN_RX14MASK)	S/U	No	No
Rx Buffer 15 Mask register (CAN_RX15MASK)	S/U	No	No
Error Counter Register (CAN_ECR)	S/U	Yes	Yes
Error and Status 1 Register (CAN_ESR1)	S/U	Yes	Yes
Interrupt Masks 1 register (CAN_IMASK1)	S/U	Yes	Yes
Interrupt Flags 1 register (CAN_IFLAG1)	S/U	Yes	Yes
Control 2 Register (CAN_CTRL2)	S/U	Yes	No
Error and Status 2 Register (CAN_ESR2)	S/U	Yes	Yes
CRC Register (CAN_CRCR)	S/U	Yes	Yes

Table continues on the next page...

Table 42-2. Register access and reset information (continued)

Register	Access type	Affected by hard reset	Affected by soft reset
Rx FIFO Global Mask register (CAN_RXFGMASK)	S/U	No	No
Rx FIFO Information Register (CAN_RXFIR)	S/U	No	No
CAN Bit Timing Register (CAN_CBT)	S/U	Yes	No
Message buffers	S/U	No	No
Rx Individual Mask Registers	S/U	No	No

The FlexCAN module can store CAN messages for transmission and reception using mailboxes and Rx FIFO structures.

The table below shows the FlexCAN memory map.

The address range from offset 0x80 to 0x17F allocates the sixteen 128-bit Message Buffers (MBs).

The memory maps for the message buffers are in FlexCAN message buffer memory map.

CAN memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4002_4000	Module Configuration Register (CAN0_MCR)	32	R/W	See section	42.4.2/952
4002_4004	Control 1 register (CAN0_CTRL1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	42.4.3/957
4002_4008	Free Running Timer (CAN0_TIMER)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	42.4.4/961
4002_4010	Rx Mailboxes Global Mask Register (CAN0_RXMGMASK)	32	R/W	Undefined	42.4.5/962
4002_4014	Rx 14 Mask register (CAN0_RX14MASK)	32	R/W	Undefined	42.4.6/963
4002_4018	Rx 15 Mask register (CAN0_RX15MASK)	32	R/W	Undefined	42.4.7/964
4002_401C	Error Counter (CAN0_ECR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	42.4.8/964
4002_4020	Error and Status 1 register (CAN0_ESR1)	32	R/W	See section	42.4.9/966
4002_4028	Interrupt Masks 1 register (CAN0_IMASK1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	42.4.10/ 972
4002_4030	Interrupt Flags 1 register (CAN0_IFLAG1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	42.4.11/ 972
4002_4034	Control 2 register (CAN0_CTRL2)	32	R/W	See section	42.4.12/ 975
4002_4038	Error and Status 2 register (CAN0_ESR2)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	42.4.13/ 978
4002_4044	CRC Register (CAN0_CRCR)	32	R	0000_0000h	42.4.14/ 980
4002_4048	Rx FIFO Global Mask register (CAN0_RXFGMASK)	32	R/W	Undefined	42.4.15/ 980

Table continues on the next page...

CAN memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4002_404C	Rx FIFO Information Register (CAN0_RXFIR)	32	R	Undefined	42.4.16/ 981
4002_4050	CAN Bit Timing Register (CAN0_CBT)	32	R/W	See section	42.4.17/ 982
4002_4880	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN0_RXIMR0)	32	R/W	Undefined	42.4.18/ 984
4002_4884	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN0_RXIMR1)	32	R/W	Undefined	42.4.18/ 984
4002_4888	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN0_RXIMR2)	32	R/W	Undefined	42.4.18/ 984
4002_488C	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN0_RXIMR3)	32	R/W	Undefined	42.4.18/ 984
4002_4890	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN0_RXIMR4)	32	R/W	Undefined	42.4.18/ 984
4002_4894	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN0_RXIMR5)	32	R/W	Undefined	42.4.18/ 984
4002_4898	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN0_RXIMR6)	32	R/W	Undefined	42.4.18/ 984
4002_489C	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN0_RXIMR7)	32	R/W	Undefined	42.4.18/ 984
4002_48A0	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN0_RXIMR8)	32	R/W	Undefined	42.4.18/ 984
4002_48A4	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN0_RXIMR9)	32	R/W	Undefined	42.4.18/ 984
4002_48A8	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN0_RXIMR10)	32	R/W	Undefined	42.4.18/ 984
4002_48AC	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN0_RXIMR11)	32	R/W	Undefined	42.4.18/ 984
4002_48B0	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN0_RXIMR12)	32	R/W	Undefined	42.4.18/ 984
4002_48B4	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN0_RXIMR13)	32	R/W	Undefined	42.4.18/ 984
4002_48B8	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN0_RXIMR14)	32	R/W	Undefined	42.4.18/ 984
4002_48BC	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN0_RXIMR15)	32	R/W	Undefined	42.4.18/ 984
4002_5000	Module Configuration Register (CAN1_MCR)	32	R/W	See section	42.4.2/952
4002_5004	Control 1 register (CAN1_CTRL1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	42.4.3/957
4002_5008	Free Running Timer (CAN1_TIMER)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	42.4.4/961
4002_5010	Rx Mailboxes Global Mask Register (CAN1_RXMGMASK)	32	R/W	Undefined	42.4.5/962
4002_5014	Rx 14 Mask register (CAN1_RX14MASK)	32	R/W	Undefined	42.4.6/963
4002_5018	Rx 15 Mask register (CAN1_RX15MASK)	32	R/W	Undefined	42.4.7/964
4002_501C	Error Counter (CAN1_ECR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	42.4.8/964

Table continues on the next page...

CAN memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4002_5020	Error and Status 1 register (CAN1_ESR1)	32	R/W	See section	42.4.9/966
4002_5028	Interrupt Masks 1 register (CAN1_IMASK1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	42.4.10/ 972
4002_5030	Interrupt Flags 1 register (CAN1_IFLAG1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	42.4.11/ 972
4002_5034	Control 2 register (CAN1_CTRL2)	32	R/W	See section	42.4.12/ 975
4002_5038	Error and Status 2 register (CAN1_ESR2)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	42.4.13/ 978
4002_5044	CRC Register (CAN1_CRCR)	32	R	0000_0000h	42.4.14/ 980
4002_5048	Rx FIFO Global Mask register (CAN1_RXFGMASK)	32	R/W	Undefined	42.4.15/ 980
4002_504C	Rx FIFO Information Register (CAN1_RXFIR)	32	R	Undefined	42.4.16/ 981
4002_5050	CAN Bit Timing Register (CAN1_CBT)	32	R/W	See section	42.4.17/ 982
4002_5880	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN1_RXIMR0)	32	R/W	Undefined	42.4.18/ 984
4002_5884	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN1_RXIMR1)	32	R/W	Undefined	42.4.18/ 984
4002_5888	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN1_RXIMR2)	32	R/W	Undefined	42.4.18/ 984
4002_588C	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN1_RXIMR3)	32	R/W	Undefined	42.4.18/ 984
4002_5890	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN1_RXIMR4)	32	R/W	Undefined	42.4.18/ 984
4002_5894	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN1_RXIMR5)	32	R/W	Undefined	42.4.18/ 984
4002_5898	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN1_RXIMR6)	32	R/W	Undefined	42.4.18/ 984
4002_589C	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN1_RXIMR7)	32	R/W	Undefined	42.4.18/ 984
4002_58A0	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN1_RXIMR8)	32	R/W	Undefined	42.4.18/ 984
4002_58A4	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN1_RXIMR9)	32	R/W	Undefined	42.4.18/ 984
4002_58A8	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN1_RXIMR10)	32	R/W	Undefined	42.4.18/ 984
4002_58AC	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN1_RXIMR11)	32	R/W	Undefined	42.4.18/ 984
4002_58B0	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN1_RXIMR12)	32	R/W	Undefined	42.4.18/ 984

Table continues on the next page...

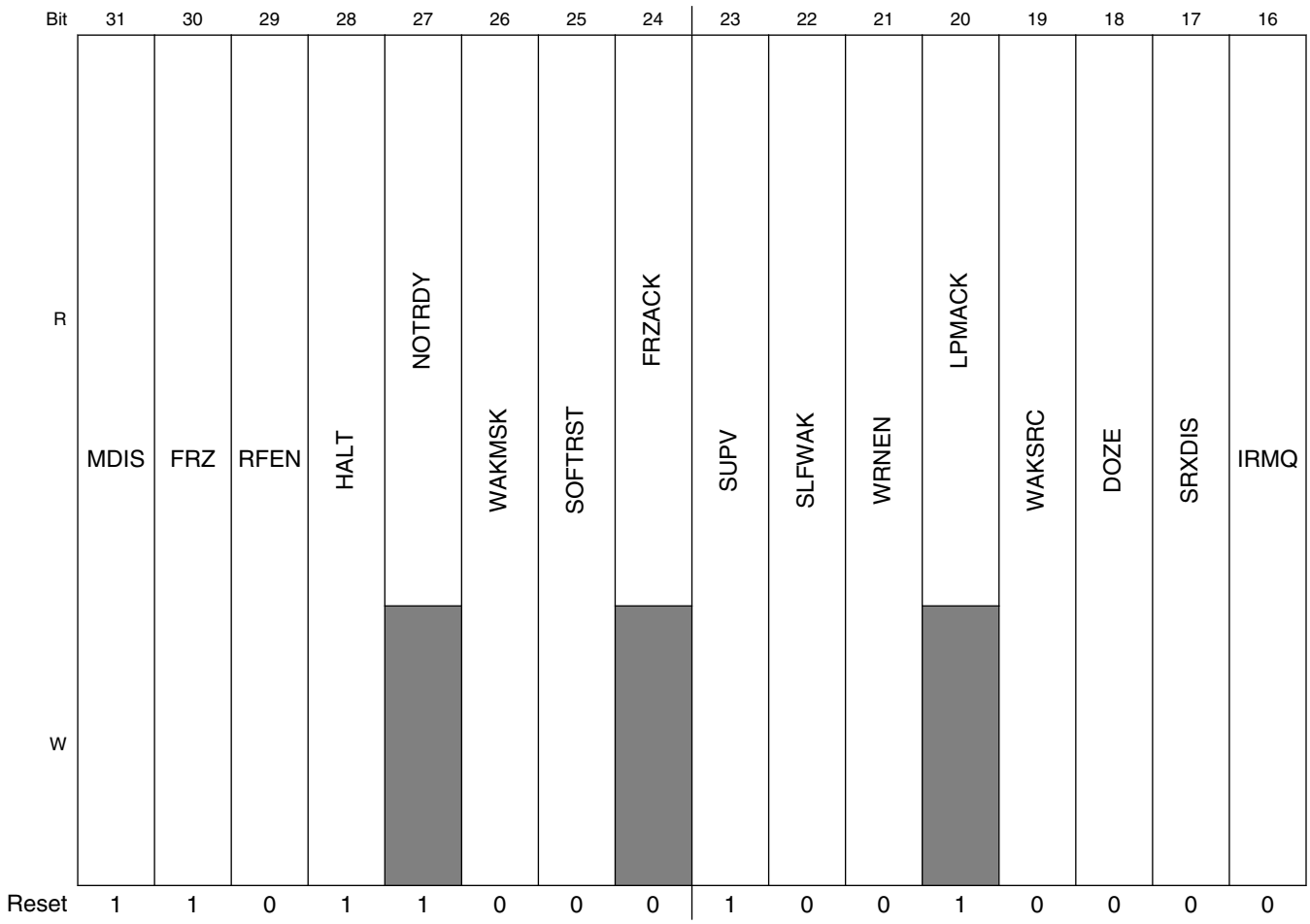
CAN memory map (continued)

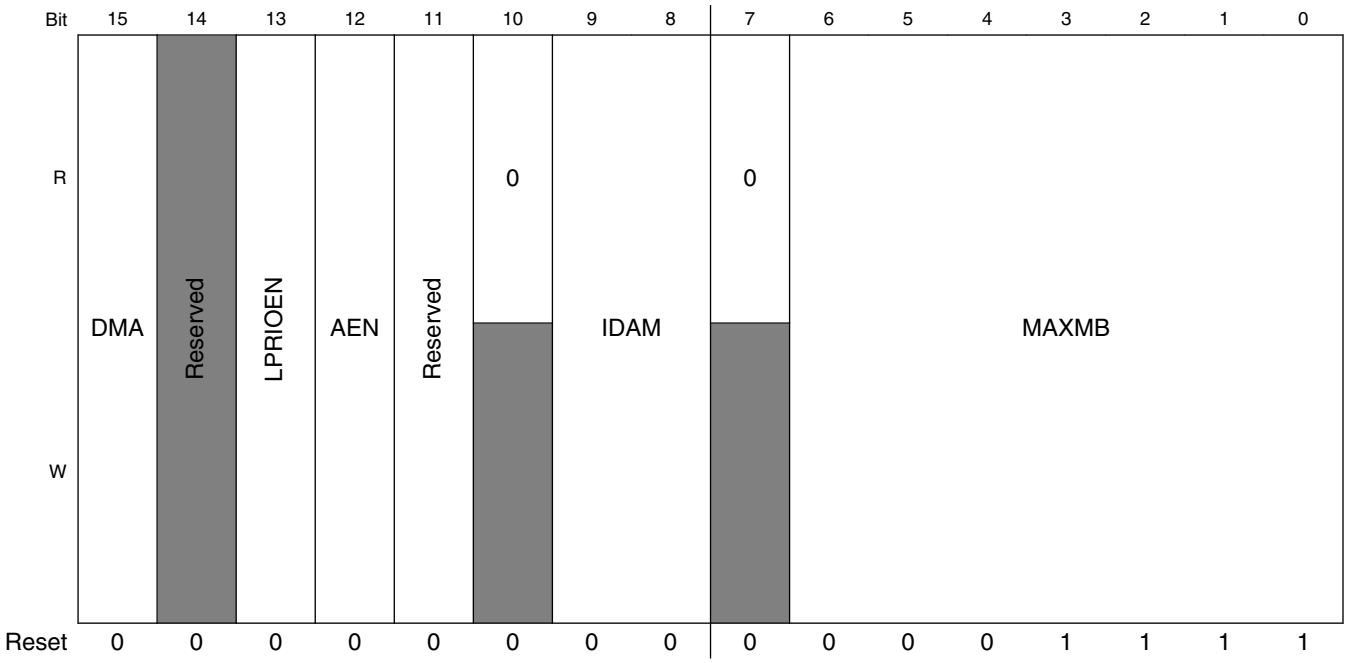
Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4002_58B4	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN1_RXIMR13)	32	R/W	Undefined	42.4.18/ 984
4002_58B8	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN1_RXIMR14)	32	R/W	Undefined	42.4.18/ 984
4002_58BC	Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN1_RXIMR15)	32	R/W	Undefined	42.4.18/ 984

42.4.2 Module Configuration Register (CANx_MCR)

This register defines global system configurations, such as the module operation modes and the maximum message buffer configuration.

Address: Base address + 0h offset





CANx_MCR field descriptions

Field	Description
31 MDIS	Module Disable This bit controls whether FlexCAN is enabled or not. When disabled, FlexCAN disables the clocks to the CAN Protocol Engine and Controller Host Interface sub-modules. This bit is not affected by soft reset. 0 Enable the FlexCAN module. 1 Disable the FlexCAN module.
30 FRZ	Freeze Enable The FRZ bit specifies the FlexCAN behavior when the HALT bit in the CAN_MCR Register is set or when Debug mode is requested at chip level. When FRZ is asserted, FlexCAN is enabled to enter Freeze mode. Negation of this bit field causes FlexCAN to exit from Freeze mode. 0 Not enabled to enter Freeze mode. 1 Enabled to enter Freeze mode.
29 RFEN	Rx FIFO Enable This bit controls whether the Rx FIFO feature is enabled or not. When RFEN is set, MBs 0 to 5 cannot be used for normal reception and transmission because the corresponding memory region (0x80-0xDC) is used by the FIFO engine as well as additional MBs (up to 32, depending on CAN_CTRL2[RFFN] setting) which are used as Rx FIFO ID Filter Table elements. RFEN also impacts the definition of the minimum number of peripheral clocks per CAN bit as described in the table "Minimum Ratio Between Peripheral Clock Frequency and CAN Bit Rate" (see Arbitration and matching timing). This bit can be written in Freeze mode only because it is blocked by hardware in other modes. 0 Rx FIFO not enabled. 1 Rx FIFO enabled.
28 HALT	Halt FlexCAN

Table continues on the next page...

CANx_MCR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	Assertion of this bit puts the FlexCAN module into Freeze mode. The CPU should clear it after initializing the Message Buffers and the Control Registers CAN_CTRL1 and CAN_CTRL2. No reception or transmission is performed by FlexCAN before this bit is cleared. Freeze mode cannot be entered while FlexCAN is in a low power mode. 0 No Freeze mode request. 1 Enters Freeze mode if the FRZ bit is asserted.
27 NOTRDY	FlexCAN Not Ready This read-only bit indicates that FlexCAN is either in Disable mode, Doze mode, Stop mode or Freeze mode. It is negated once FlexCAN has exited these modes. This bit is not affected by soft reset. 0 FlexCAN module is either in Normal mode, Listen-Only mode or Loop-Back mode. 1 FlexCAN module is either in Disable mode, Doze mode, Stop mode or Freeze mode.
26 WAKMSK	Wake Up Interrupt Mask This bit enables the Wake Up Interrupt generation under Self Wake Up mechanism. 0 Wake Up Interrupt is disabled. 1 Wake Up Interrupt is enabled.
25 SOFTRST	Soft Reset When this bit is asserted, FlexCAN resets its internal state machines and some of the memory mapped registers. The SOFTRST bit can be asserted directly by the CPU when it writes to the MCR Register, but it is also asserted when global soft reset is requested at chip level. Because soft reset is synchronous and has to follow a request/acknowledge procedure across clock domains, it may take some time to fully propagate its effect. The SOFTRST bit remains asserted while reset is pending, and is automatically negated when reset completes. Therefore, software can poll this bit to know when the soft reset has completed. Soft reset cannot be applied while clocks are shut down in a low power mode. The module should be first removed from low power mode, and then soft reset can be applied. This bit is not affected by soft reset. 0 No reset request. 1 Resets the registers affected by soft reset.
24 FRZACK	Freeze Mode Acknowledge This read-only bit indicates that FlexCAN is in Freeze mode and its prescaler is stopped. The Freeze mode request cannot be granted until current transmission or reception processes have finished. Therefore the software can poll the FRZACK bit to know when FlexCAN has actually entered Freeze mode. If Freeze Mode request is negated, then this bit is negated after the FlexCAN prescaler is running again. If Freeze mode is requested while FlexCAN is in a low power mode, then the FRZACK bit will be set only when the low-power mode is exited. See Section "Freeze Mode". This bit is not affected by soft reset. **NOTE:** FRZACK will be asserted within 178 CAN bits from the freeze mode request by the CPU, and negated within 2 CAN bits after the freeze mode request removal (see Section "Protocol Timing"). 0 FlexCAN not in Freeze mode, prescaler running. 1 FlexCAN in Freeze mode, prescaler stopped.
23 SUPV	Supervisor Mode This bit configures the FlexCAN to be either in Supervisor or User mode. The registers affected by this bit are marked as S/U in the Access Type column of the module memory map. Reset value of this bit is 1, so

Table continues on the next page...

CANx_MCR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	the affected registers start with Supervisor access allowance only. This bit can be written only in Freeze mode because it is blocked by hardware in other modes. 0 FlexCAN is in User mode. Affected registers allow both Supervisor and Unrestricted accesses. 1 FlexCAN is in Supervisor mode. Affected registers allow only Supervisor access. Unrestricted access behaves as though the access was done to an unimplemented register location.
22 SLFWAK	Self Wake Up This bit enables the Self Wake Up feature when FlexCAN is in a low-power mode other than Disable mode. When this feature is enabled, the FlexCAN module monitors the bus for wake up event, that is, a recessive-to-dominant transition. If a wake up event is detected during Doze mode, FlexCAN requests to resume its clocks and, if enabled to do so, generates a Wake Up interrupt to the CPU. If a wake up event is detected during Stop mode, then FlexCAN generates, if enabled to do so, a Wake Up interrupt to the CPU so that it can exit Stop mode globally and FlexCAN can request to resume the clocks. When FlexCAN is in a low-power mode other than Disable mode, this bit cannot be written as it is blocked by hardware. 0 FlexCAN Self Wake Up feature is disabled. 1 FlexCAN Self Wake Up feature is enabled.
21 WRNEN	Warning Interrupt Enable When asserted, this bit enables the generation of the TWRNINT and RWRNINT flags in the Error and Status Register 1 (ESR1). If WRNEN is negated, the TWRNINT and RWRNINT flags will always be zero, independent of the values of the error counters, and no warning interrupt will ever be generated. This bit can be written in Freeze mode only because it is blocked by hardware in other modes. 0 TWRNINT and RWRNINT bits are zero, independent of the values in the error counters. 1 TWRNINT and RWRNINT bits are set when the respective error counter transitions from less than 96 to greater than or equal to 96.
20 LPMACK	Low-Power Mode Acknowledge This read-only bit indicates that FlexCAN is in a low-power mode (Disable mode, Doze mode, Stop mode). A low-power mode cannot be entered until all current transmission or reception processes have finished, so the CPU can poll the LPMACK bit to know when FlexCAN has actually entered low power mode. This bit is not affected by soft reset. **NOTE:** LPMACK will be asserted within 180 CAN bits from the low-power mode request by the CPU, and negated within 2 CAN bits after the low-power mode request removal (see Section "Protocol Timing"). 0 FlexCAN is not in a low-power mode. 1 FlexCAN is in a low-power mode.
19 WAKSRC	Wake Up Source This bit defines whether the integrated low-pass filter is applied to protect the Rx CAN input from spurious wake up. This bit can be written only in Freeze mode because it is blocked by hardware in other modes. 0 FlexCAN uses the unfiltered Rx input to detect recessive to dominant edges on the CAN bus. 1 FlexCAN uses the filtered Rx input to detect recessive to dominant edges on the CAN bus.
18 DOZE	Doze Mode Enable

Table continues on the next page...

CANx_MCR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	This bit defines whether FlexCAN is allowed to enter low-power mode when Doze mode is requested at chip level . This bit is automatically reset when FlexCAN wakes up from Doze mode upon detecting activity on the CAN bus (self wake-up enabled). 0 FlexCAN is not enabled to enter low-power mode when Doze mode is requested. 1 FlexCAN is enabled to enter low-power mode when Doze mode is requested.
17 SRXDIS	Self Reception Disable This bit defines whether FlexCAN is allowed to receive frames transmitted by itself. If this bit is asserted, frames transmitted by the module will not be stored in any MB, regardless if the MB is programmed with an ID that matches the transmitted frame, and no interrupt flag or interrupt signal will be generated due to the frame reception. This bit can be written only in Freeze mode because it is blocked by hardware in other modes. 0 Self reception enabled. 1 Self reception disabled.
16 IRMQ	Individual Rx Masking And Queue Enable This bit indicates whether Rx matching process will be based either on individual masking and queue or on masking scheme with CAN_RXMGMASK, CAN_RX14MASK, CAN_RX15MASK and CAN_RXFGMASK. This bit can be written in Freeze mode only because it is blocked by hardware in other modes. 0 Individual Rx masking and queue feature are disabled. For backward compatibility with legacy applications, the reading of C/S word locks the MB even if it is EMPTY. 1 Individual Rx masking and queue feature are enabled.
15 DMA	DMA Enable The DMA Enable bit controls whether the DMA feature is enabled or not. The DMA feature can only be used in Rx FIFO, consequently the bit CAN_MCR[RFEN] must be asserted. When DMA and RFEN are set, the CAN_IFLAG1[BUF5I] generates the DMA request and no RX FIFO interrupt is generated. This bit can be written in Freeze mode only as it is blocked by hardware in other modes. 0 DMA feature for RX FIFO disabled. 1 DMA feature for RX FIFO enabled.
14 Reserved	This field is reserved.
13 LPRIOEN	Local Priority Enable This bit is provided for backwards compatibility with legacy applications. It controls whether the local priority feature is enabled or not. It is used to expand the ID used during the arbitration process. With this expanded ID concept, the arbitration process is done based on the full 32-bit word, but the actual transmitted ID still has 11-bit for standard frames and 29-bit for extended frames. This bit can be written only in Freeze mode because it is blocked by hardware in other modes. 0 Local Priority disabled. 1 Local Priority enabled.
12 AEN	Abort Enable When asserted, this bit enables the Tx abort mechanism. This mechanism guarantees a safe procedure for aborting a pending transmission, so that no frame is sent in the CAN bus without notification. This bit can be written only in Freeze mode because it is blocked by hardware in other modes.

Table continues on the next page...

CANx_MCR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	NOTE: When CAN_MCR[AEN] is asserted, only the abort mechanism (see Transmission abort mechanism) must be used for updating Mailboxes configured for transmission. **CAUTION:** Writing the Abort code into Rx Mailboxes can cause unpredictable results when the CAN_MCR[AEN] is asserted. 0 Abort disabled. 1 Abort enabled.
11 Reserved	This field is reserved. When writing to this field, always write the reset value.
10 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
9–8 IDAM	ID Acceptance Mode This 2-bit field identifies the format of the Rx FIFO ID Filter Table elements. Note that all elements of the table are configured at the same time by this field (they are all the same format). See Section "Rx FIFO Structure". This field can be written only in Freeze mode because it is blocked by hardware in other modes. 00 Format A: One full ID (standard and extended) per ID Filter Table element. 01 Format B: Two full standard IDs or two partial 14-bit (standard and extended) IDs per ID Filter Table element. 10 Format C: Four partial 8-bit Standard IDs per ID Filter Table element. 11 Format D: All frames rejected.
7 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
MAXMB	Number Of The Last Message Buffer This 7-bit field defines the number of the last Message Buffers that will take part in the matching and arbitration processes. The reset value (0x0F) is equivalent to a 16 MB configuration. This field can be written only in Freeze mode because it is blocked by hardware in other modes. Number of the last MB = MAXMB **NOTE:** MAXMB must be programmed with a value smaller than or equal to the number of available Message Buffers. Additionally, the definition of MAXMB value must take into account the region of MBs occupied by Rx FIFO and its ID filters table space defined by RFFN bit in CAN_CTRL2 register. MAXMB also impacts the definition of the minimum number of peripheral clocks per CAN bit as described in Table "Minimum Ratio Between Peripheral Clock Frequency and CAN Bit Rate" (see Arbitration and matching timing).

42.4.3 Control 1 register (CANx_CTRL1)

This register is defined for specific FlexCAN control features related to the CAN bus, such as bit-rate, programmable sampling point within an Rx bit, Loop Back mode, Listen-Only mode, Bus Off recovery behavior and interrupt enabling (Bus-Off, Error, Warning). It also determines the Division Factor for the clock prescaler.

The CAN bit timing variables (PRESDIV, PROPSEG, PSEG1, PSEG2 and RJW) can also be configured in CAN_CBT register, which extends the range of all these variables. If CAN_CBT[BTF] is set, PRESDIV, PROPSEG, PSEG1, PSEG2 and RJW fields of CAN_CTRL1 become read only.

The contents of this register are not affected by soft reset.

NOTE

The CAN bit variables in CAN_CTRL1 and in CAN_CBT are stored in the same register.

Address: Base address + 4h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R W	PRESDIV								RJW		PSEG1			PSEG2		
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R W	BOFFMSK	ERRMSK	CLKSRC	LPB	TWRNMSK	RWRNMSK	Reserved	Reserved	SMP	BOFFREC	TSYN	LBUF	LOM	PROPSEG		
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

CANx_CTRL1 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–24 PRESDIV	Prescaler Division Factor This 8-bit field defines the ratio between the PE clock frequency and the Serial Clock (Sclock) frequency. The Sclock period defines the time quantum of the CAN protocol. For the reset value, the Sclock frequency is equal to the PE clock frequency. The Maximum value of this field is 0xFF, that gives a minimum Sclock frequency equal to the PE clock frequency divided by 256. See Section "Protocol Timing". This field can be written only in Freeze mode because it is blocked by hardware in other modes. Sclock frequency = PE clock frequency / (PRESDIV + 1)
23–22 RJW	Resync Jump Width This 2-bit field defines the maximum number of time quanta that a bit time can be changed by one re-synchronization. One time quantum is equal to the Sclock period. The valid programmable values are 0–3. This field can be written only in Freeze mode because it is blocked by hardware in other modes.

Table continues on the next page...

CANx_CTRL1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	Resync Jump Width = RJW + 1.
21–19 PSEG1	Phase Segment 1 This 3-bit field defines the length of Phase Segment 1 in the bit time. The valid programmable values are 0–7. This field can be written only in Freeze mode because it is blocked by hardware in other modes. Phase Buffer Segment 1 = (PSEG1 + 1) × Time-Quanta.
18–16 PSEG2	Phase Segment 2 This 3-bit field defines the length of Phase Segment 2 in the bit time. The valid programmable values are 1–7. This field can be written only in Freeze mode because it is blocked by hardware in other modes. Phase Buffer Segment 2 = (PSEG2 + 1) × Time-Quanta.
15 BOFFMSK	Bus Off Interrupt Mask This bit provides a mask for the Bus Off Interrupt BOFFINT in CAN_ESR1 register. 0 Bus Off interrupt disabled. 1 Bus Off interrupt enabled.
14 ERRMSK	Error Interrupt Mask This bit provides a mask for the Error Interrupt ERRINT in the CAN_ESR1 register. 0 Error interrupt disabled. 1 Error interrupt enabled.
13 CLKSRC	CAN Engine Clock Source This bit selects the clock source to the CAN Protocol Engine (PE) to be either the peripheral clock or the oscillator clock. The selected clock is the one fed to the prescaler to generate the Serial Clock (Sclock). In order to guarantee reliable operation, this bit can be written only in Disable mode because it is blocked by hardware in other modes. See Protocol timing". 0 The CAN engine clock source is the oscillator clock. Under this condition, the oscillator clock frequency must be lower than the bus clock. 1 The CAN engine clock source is the peripheral clock.
12 LPB	Loop Back Mode This bit configures FlexCAN to operate in Loop-Back mode. In this mode, FlexCAN performs an internal loop back that can be used for self test operation. The bit stream output of the transmitter is fed back internally to the receiver input. The Rx CAN input pin is ignored and the Tx CAN output goes to the recessive state (logic 1). FlexCAN behaves as it normally does when transmitting, and treats its own transmitted message as a message received from a remote node. In this mode, FlexCAN ignores the bit sent during the ACK slot in the CAN frame acknowledge field, generating an internal acknowledge bit to ensure proper reception of its own message. Both transmit and receive interrupts are generated. This bit can be written only in Freeze mode because it is blocked by hardware in other modes. **NOTE:** In this mode, the CAN_MCR[SRXDIS] cannot be asserted because this will impede the self reception of a transmitted message. 0 Loop Back disabled. 1 Loop Back enabled.
11 TWRNMSK	Tx Warning Interrupt Mask

Table continues on the next page...

CANx_CTRL1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	This bit provides a mask for the Tx Warning Interrupt associated with the TWRNINT flag in the Error and Status Register 1 (ESR1). This bit is read as zero when CAN_MCR[WRNEN] bit is negated. This bit can be written only if CAN_MCR[WRNEN] bit is asserted. 0 Tx Warning Interrupt disabled. 1 Tx Warning Interrupt enabled.
10 RWRNMSK	Rx Warning Interrupt Mask This bit provides a mask for the Rx Warning Interrupt associated with the RWRNINT flag in the Error and Status Register 1 (ESR1). This bit is read as zero when CAN_MCR[WRNEN] bit is negated. This bit can be written only if CAN_MCR[WRNEN] bit is asserted. 0 Rx Warning Interrupt disabled. 1 Rx Warning Interrupt enabled.
9 Reserved	This field is reserved.
8 Reserved	This field is reserved.
7 SMP	CAN Bit Sampling This bit defines the sampling mode of CAN bits at the Rx input. It can be written in Freeze mode only because it is blocked by hardware in other modes. **NOTE:** For proper operation, to assert SMP it is necessary to guarantee a minimum value of 2 TQs in CAN_CTRL1[PSEG1] (or CAN_CBT[EPSEG1]). 0 Just one sample is used to determine the bit value. 1 Three samples are used to determine the value of the received bit: the regular one (sample point) and 2 preceding samples; a majority rule is used.
6 BOFFREC	Bus Off Recovery This bit defines how FlexCAN recovers from Bus Off state. If this bit is negated, automatic recovering from Bus Off state occurs according to the CAN Specification 2.0B. If the bit is asserted, automatic recovering from Bus Off is disabled and the module remains in Bus Off state until the bit is negated by the user. If the negation occurs before 128 sequences of 11 recessive bits are detected on the CAN bus, then Bus Off recovery happens as if the BOFFREC bit had never been asserted. If the negation occurs after 128 sequences of 11 recessive bits occurred, then FlexCAN will re-synchronize to the bus by waiting for 11 recessive bits before joining the bus. After negation, the BOFFREC bit can be re-asserted again during Bus Off, but it will be effective only the next time the module enters Bus Off. If BOFFREC was negated when the module entered Bus Off, asserting it during Bus Off will not be effective for the current Bus Off recovery. 0 Automatic recovering from Bus Off state enabled. 1 Automatic recovering from Bus Off state disabled.
5 TSYN	Timer Sync This bit enables a mechanism that resets the free-running timer each time a message is received in Message Buffer 0. This feature provides means to synchronize multiple FlexCAN stations with a special “SYNC” message, that is, global network time. If the RFEN bit in CAN_MCR is set (Rx FIFO enabled), the first available Mailbox, according to CAN_CTRL2[RFFN] setting, is used for timer synchronization instead of MB0. This bit can be written in Freeze mode only because it is blocked by hardware in other modes.

Table continues on the next page...

CANx_CTRL1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Timer Sync feature disabled 1 Timer Sync feature enabled
4 LBUF	Lowest Buffer Transmitted First This bit defines the ordering mechanism for Message Buffer transmission. When asserted, the CAN_MCR[LPRIOEN] bit does not affect the priority arbitration. This bit can be written in Freeze mode only because it is blocked by hardware in other modes. 0 Buffer with highest priority is transmitted first. 1 Lowest number buffer is transmitted first.
3 LOM	Listen-Only Mode This bit configures FlexCAN to operate in Listen-Only mode. In this mode, transmission is disabled, all error counters described in CAN_ECR register are frozen and the module operates in a CAN Error Passive mode. Only messages acknowledged by another CAN station will be received. If FlexCAN detects a message that has not been acknowledged, it will flag a BIT0 error without changing the receive error counter (RXERRCNT) in CAN_ECR register, as if it was trying to acknowledge the message. Listen-Only mode is acknowledged by the state of CAN_ESR1[FLTCONF] field indicating Passive Error. There can be some delay between the Listen-Only mode request and acknowledge. This bit can be written in Freeze mode only because it is blocked by hardware in other modes. 0 Listen-Only mode is deactivated. 1 FlexCAN module operates in Listen-Only mode.
PROPSEG	Propagation Segment This 3-bit field defines the length of the Propagation Segment in the bit time. The valid programmable values are 0–7. This field can be written only in Freeze mode because it is blocked by hardware in other modes. Propagation Segment Time = (PROPSEG + 1) × Time-Quanta. Time-Quantum = one Sclock period.

42.4.4 Free Running Timer (CANx_TIMER)

This register represents a 16-bit free running counter that can be read and written by the CPU. The timer starts from 0x0 after Reset, counts linearly to 0xFFFF, and wraps around.

The timer is incremented by the CAN bit clock, which defines the baud rate on the CAN bus. During a message transmission/reception, it increments by one for each bit that is received or transmitted. When there is no message on the bus, it counts using the previously programmed baud rate. The timer is not incremented during Disable, Doze, Stop and Freeze modes.

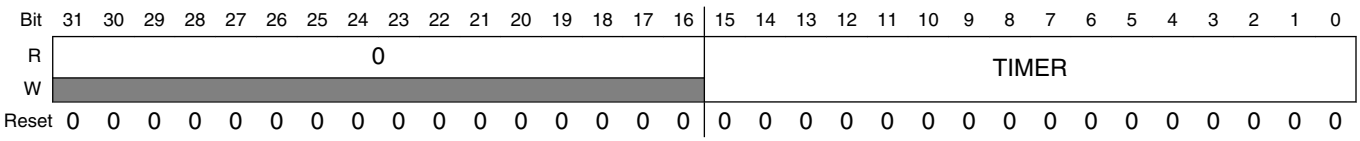
The timer value is captured when the second bit of the identifier field of any frame is on the CAN bus. This captured value is written into the Time Stamp entry in a message buffer after a successful reception or transmission of a message.

If bit CAN_CTRL1[TSYN] is asserted, the Timer is reset whenever a message is received in the first available Mailbox, according to CAN_CTRL2[RFFN] setting.

The CPU can write to this register anytime. However, if the write occurs at the same time that the Timer is being reset by a reception in the first Mailbox, then the write value is discarded.

Reading this register affects the Mailbox Unlocking procedure, see Section "Mailbox Lock Mechanism".

Address: Base address + 8h offset



CANx_TIMER field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
TIMER	Timer Value Contains the free-running counter value.

42.4.5 Rx Mailboxes Global Mask Register (CANx_RXMGMASK)

This register is located in RAM.

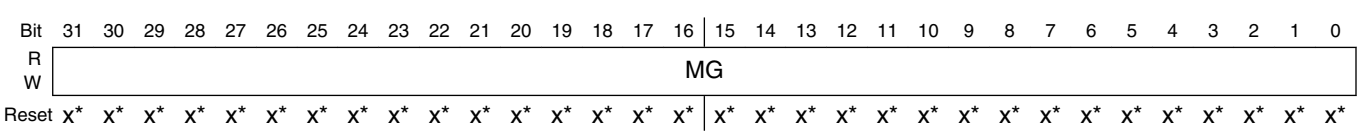
RXMGMASK is provided for legacy application support.

- When the CAN_MCR[IRMQ] bit is negated, RXMGMASK is always in effect (the bits in the MG field will mask the Mailbox filter bits).
- When the CAN_MCR[IRMQ] bit is asserted, RXMGMASK has no effect (the bits in the MG field will not mask the Mailbox filter bits).

RXMGMASK is used to mask the filter fields of all Rx MBs, excluding MBs 14-15, which have individual mask registers.

This register can only be written in Freeze mode as it is blocked by hardware in other modes.

Address: Base address + 10h offset



* Notes:

- x = Undefined at reset.

CANx_RXMGMASK field descriptions

Field	Description
MG	Rx Mailboxes Global Mask Bits These bits mask the Mailbox filter bits. Note that the alignment with the ID word of the Mailbox is not perfect as the two most significant MG bits affect the fields RTR and IDE, which are located in the Control and Status word of the Mailbox. The following table shows in detail which MG bits mask each Mailbox filter field.

SMB[RTR] [1]	CAN_CTRL2[RRS]	CAN_CTRL2[EACEN]	Mailbox filter fields			
			MB[RTR]	MB[IDE]	MB[ID]	Reserved
0	-	0	note [2]	note [3]	MG[28:0]	MG[31:29]
0	-	1	MG[31]	MG[30]	MG[28:0]	MG[29]
1	0	-	-	-	-	MG[31:0]
1	1	0	-	-	MG[28:0]	MG[31:29]
1	1	1	MG[31]	MG[30]	MG[28:0]	MG[29]

0 The corresponding bit in the filter is "don't care."
1 The corresponding bit in the filter is checked.

1. RTR bit of the Incoming Frame. It is saved into an auxiliary MB called Rx Serial Message Buffer (Rx SMB).
2. If the CTRL2[EACEN] bit is negated, the RTR bit of Mailbox is never compared with the RTR bit of the incoming frame.
3. If the CAN_CTRL2[EACEN] bit is negated, the IDE bit of Mailbox is always compared with the IDE bit of the incoming frame.

42.4.6 Rx 14 Mask register (CANx_RX14MASK)

This register is located in RAM.

RX14MASK is provided for legacy application support. When the CAN_MCR[IRMQ] bit is asserted, RX14MASK has no effect.

RX14MASK is used to mask the filter fields of Message Buffer 14.

This register can only be programmed while the module is in Freeze mode as it is blocked by hardware in other modes.

Address: Base address + 14h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R W	RX14M																															
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

* Notes:
- x = Undefined at reset.

CANx_RX14MASK field descriptions

Field	Description
RX14M	Rx Buffer 14 Mask Bits Each mask bit masks the corresponding Mailbox 14 filter field in the same way that RXMGMASK masks other Mailboxes' filters. See the description of the CAN_RXMGMASK register. 0 The corresponding bit in the filter is "don't care." 1 The corresponding bit in the filter is checked.

42.4.7 Rx 15 Mask register (CANx_RX15MASK)

This register is located in RAM.

RX15MASK is provided for legacy application support. When the CAN_MCR[IRMQ] bit is asserted, RX15MASK has no effect.

RX15MASK is used to mask the filter fields of Message Buffer 15.

This register can be programmed only while the module is in Freeze mode because it is blocked by hardware in other modes.

Address: Base address + 18h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R W	RX15M																															
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

* Notes:
- x = Undefined at reset.

CANx_RX15MASK field descriptions

Field	Description
RX15M	Rx Buffer 15 Mask Bits Each mask bit masks the corresponding Mailbox 15 filter field in the same way that RXMGMASK masks other Mailboxes' filters. See the description of the CAN_RXMGMASK register. 0 The corresponding bit in the filter is "don't care." 1 The corresponding bit in the filter is checked.

42.4.8 Error Counter (CANx_ECR)

This register has two 8-bit fields reflecting the value of the FlexCAN error counters:

- Transmit Error Counter (TXERRCNT field)
- Receive Error Counter (RXERRCNT field)

The Fault Confinement State (FLTCONF field in Error and Status Register 1 - CAN_ESR1) is updated based on TXERRCNT and RXERRCNT counters. TXERRCNT and RXERRCNT counters can be written in Freeze mode only. The rules for increasing and decreasing these counters are described in the CAN protocol and are completely implemented in the FlexCAN module.

The following are the basic rules for FlexCAN bus state transitions:

- If the value of TXERRCNT or RXERRCNT increases to be greater than or equal to 128, the FLTCONF field in the Error and Status Register is updated to reflect "Error Passive" state.
- If the FlexCAN state is "Error Passive", and either TXERRCNT or RXERRCNT decrements to a value less than or equal to 127 while the other already satisfies this condition, the FLTCONF field in the Error and Status Register is updated to reflect "Error Active" state.
- If the value of TXERRCNT increases to be greater than 255, the FLTCONF field in the Error and Status Register is updated to reflect "Bus Off" state, and an interrupt may be issued. The value of TXERRCNT is then reset to zero.
- If FlexCAN is in "Bus Off' state, then TXERRCNT is cascaded together with another internal counter to count the 128th occurrences of 11 consecutive recessive bits on the bus. Hence, TXERRCNT is reset to zero and counts in a manner where the internal counter counts 11 such bits and then wraps around while incrementing the TXERRCNT. When TXERRCNT reaches the value of 128, the FLTCONF field in the Error and Status Register is updated to be "Error Active" and both error counters are reset to zero. At any instance of dominant bit following a stream of less than 11 consecutive recessive bits, the internal counter resets itself to zero without affecting the TXERRCNT value.
- If during system start-up, only one node is operating, then its TXERRCNT increases in each message it is trying to transmit, as a result of acknowledge errors (indicated by the ACKERR bit in the Error and Status Register). After the transition to "Error Passive" state, the TXERRCNT does not increment anymore by acknowledge errors. Therefore the device never goes to the "Bus Off" state.
- If the RXERRCNT increases to a value greater than 127, it is not incremented further, even if more errors are detected while being a receiver. At the next successful message reception, the counter is set to a value between 119 and 127 to resume to "Error Active" state.

Address: Base address + 1Ch offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R W	Reserved								Reserved								RXERRCNT								TXERRCNT							
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

CANx_ECR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–24 Reserved	This field is reserved.
23–16 Reserved	This field is reserved.
15–8 RXERRCNT	Receive Error Counter Receive Error Counter for all errors detected in received messages. The RXERRCNT counter is read-only except in Freeze mode, where it can be written by the CPU.
TXERRCNT	Transmit Error Counter Transmit Error Counter for all errors detected in transmitted messages. The TXERRCNT counter is read-only except in Freeze mode, where it can be written by the CPU.

42.4.9 Error and Status 1 register (CANx_ESR1)

This register reports various error conditions detected in the reception and transmission of a CAN frame, some general status of the device and it is the source of some interrupts to the CPU.

The reported error conditions are BIT1ERR, BIT0ERR, ACKKERR, CRCERR, FRMERR and STFERR.

An error detected in a single CAN frame may be reported by one or more error flags. Also, error reporting is cummulative in case more error events happen in the next frames while the CPU does not attempt to read this register.

TXWRN, RXWRN, IDLE, TX, FLTCONF, RX and SYNCH are status bits.

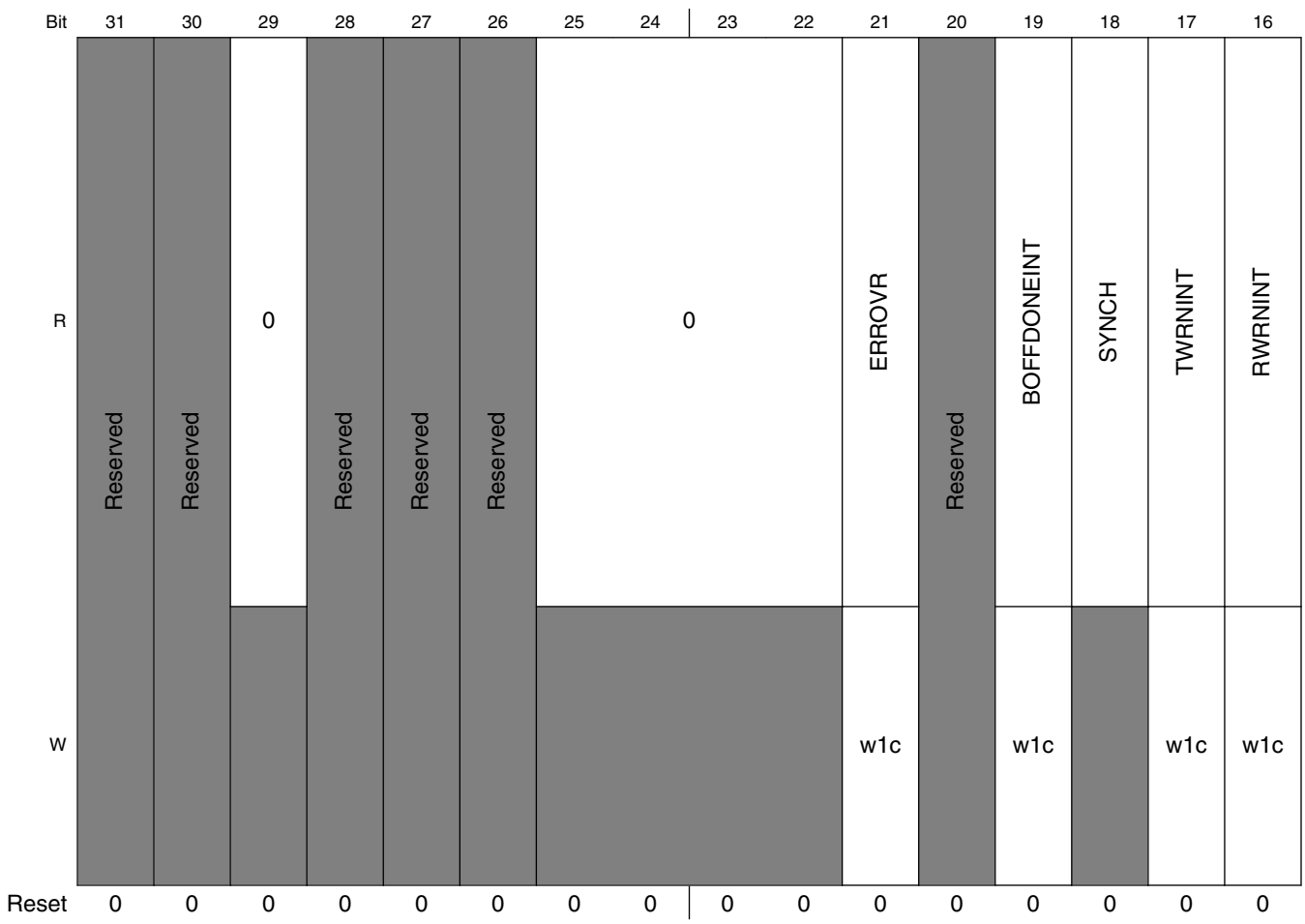
BOFFINT, BOFFDONEINT, ERRINT, WAKINT, TWRNINT and RWRNINT are interrupt bits. It is recommended the CPU to use the following procedure when servicing interrupt requests generated by these bits:

- Read this register to capture all error condition and status bits. This action clear the respective bits that were set since the last read access.
- Write 1 to clear the interrupt bit that has triggered the interrupt request.
- Write 1 to clear the ERR_OVR bit if it is set.

Starting from all error flags cleared, a first error event sets the ERRINT (provided the corresponding mask bit is asserted). If other error events in subsequent frames happen before the CPU to serve the interrupt request, the ERR_OVR bit is set to indicate that errors from different frames had accumulated.

SYNCH	IDLE	TX	RX	FlexCAN State
0	0	0	0	Not synchronized to CAN bus
1	1	x	x	Idle
1	0	1	0	Transmitting
1	0	0	1	Receiving

Address: Base address + 20h offset



Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	BIT1ERR	BIT0ERR	ACKERR	CRCERR	FRMERR	STFERR	TXWRN	RXWRN	IDLE	TX	FLTCONF		RX	BOFFINT	ERRINT	WAKINT
W														w1c	w1c	w1c
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

CANx_ESR1 field descriptions

Field	Description
31 Reserved	This field is reserved.
30 Reserved	This field is reserved.
29 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
28 Reserved	This field is reserved.
27 Reserved	This field is reserved.
26 Reserved	This field is reserved.
25–22 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
21 ERROVR	Error Overrun bit This bit indicates that an error condition occurred when any error flag is already set. This bit is cleared by writing it to 1.

Table continues on the next page...

CANx_ESR1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Overrun has not occurred. 1 Overrun has occured.
20 Reserved	This field is reserved.
19 BOFFDONEINT	Bus Off Done Interrupt This bit is set when the Tx Error Counter (TXERRCNT) has finished counting 128 occurrences of 11 consecutive recessive bits on the CAN bus and is ready to leave Bus Off. If the corresponding mask bit in the Control 2 Register (BOFFDONEMSK) is set, an interrupt is generated to the CPU. This bit is cleared by writing it to 1. Writing 0 has no effect. 0 No such occurrence. 1 FlexCAN module has completed Bus Off process.
18 SYNCH	CAN Synchronization Status This read-only flag indicates whether the FlexCAN is synchronized to the CAN bus and able to participate in the communication process. It is set and cleared by the FlexCAN. See the table in the overall CAN_ESR1 register description. 0 FlexCAN is not synchronized to the CAN bus. 1 FlexCAN is synchronized to the CAN bus.
17 TWRNINT	Tx Warning Interrupt Flag If the WRNEN bit in CAN_MCR is asserted, the TWRNINT bit is set when the TXWRN flag transitions from 0 to 1, meaning that the Tx error counter reached 96. If the corresponding mask bit in the Control 1 Register (CAN_CTRL1[TWRNMSK]) is set, an interrupt is generated to the CPU. This bit is cleared by writing it to 1. When WRNEN is negated, this flag is masked. CPU must clear this flag before disabling the bit. Otherwise it will be set when the WRNEN is set again. Writing 0 has no effect. This flag is not generated during Bus Off state. This bit is not updated during Freeze mode. 0 No such occurrence. 1 The Tx error counter transitioned from less than 96 to greater than or equal to 96.
16 RWRNINT	Rx Warning Interrupt Flag If the WRNEN bit in CAN_MCR is asserted, the RWRNINT bit is set when the RXWRN flag transitions from 0 to 1, meaning that the Rx error counters reached 96. If the corresponding mask bit in the Control 1 Register (CAN_CTRL1[RWRNMSK]) is set, an interrupt is generated to the CPU. This bit is cleared by writing it to 1. When WRNEN is negated, this flag is masked. CPU must clear this flag before disabling the bit. Otherwise it will be set when the WRNEN is set again. Writing 0 has no effect. This bit is not updated during Freeze mode. 0 No such occurrence. 1 The Rx error counter transitioned from less than 96 to greater than or equal to 96.
15 BIT1ERR	Bit1 Error This bit indicates when an inconsistency occurs between the transmitted and the received bit in a message. **NOTE:** This bit is not set by a transmitter in case of arbitration field or ACK slot, or in case of a node sending a passive error flag that detects dominant bits. 0 No such occurrence. 1 At least one bit sent as recessive is received as dominant.

Table continues on the next page...

CANx_ESR1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
14 BIT0ERR	Bit0 Error This bit indicates when an inconsistency occurs between the transmitted and the received bit in a message. 0 No such occurrence. 1 At least one bit sent as dominant is received as recessive.
13 ACKERR	Acknowledge Error This bit indicates that an Acknowledge Error has been detected by the transmitter node, that is, a dominant bit has not been detected during the ACK SLOT. 0 No such occurrence. 1 An ACK error occurred since last read of this register.
12 CRCERR	Cyclic Redundancy Check Error This bit indicates that a CRC Error has been detected by the receiver node, that is, the calculated CRC is different from the received. 0 No such occurrence. 1 A CRC error occurred since last read of this register.
11 FRMERR	Form Error This bit indicates that a Form Error has been detected by the receiver node, that is, a fixed-form bit field contains at least one illegal bit. 0 No such occurrence. 1 A Form Error occurred since last read of this register.
10 STFERR	Stuffing Error This bit indicates that a Stuffing Error has been detected by the receiver node. 0 No such occurrence. 1 A Stuffing Error occurred since last read of this register.
9 TXWRN	TX Error Warning This bit indicates when repetitive errors are occurring during message transmission and is affected by the value of TXERRCNT in CAN_ECR register only. This bit is not updated during Freeze mode. 0 No such occurrence. 1 TXERRCNT is greater than or equal to 96.
8 RXWRN	Rx Error Warning This bit indicates when repetitive errors are occurring during message reception and is affected by the value of RXERRCNT in CAN_ECR register only. This bit is not updated during Freeze mode. 0 No such occurrence. 1 RXERRCNT is greater than or equal to 96.
7 IDLE	This bit indicates when CAN bus is in IDLE state. See the table in the overall CAN_ESR1 register description. 0 No such occurrence. 1 CAN bus is now IDLE.

Table continues on the next page...

CANx_ESR1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
6 TX	FlexCAN In Transmission This bit indicates if FlexCAN is transmitting a message. See the table in the overall CAN_ESR1 register description. 0 FlexCAN is not transmitting a message. 1 FlexCAN is transmitting a message.
5–4 FLTCONF	Fault Confinement State This 2-bit field indicates the Confinement State of the FlexCAN module. If the LOM bit in the Control Register 1 is asserted, after some delay that depends on the CAN bit timing the FLTCONF field will indicate “Error Passive”. The very same delay affects the way how FLTCONF reflects an update to CAN_ECR register by the CPU. It may be necessary up to one CAN bit time to get them coherent again. This bit field is affected by soft reset, but if the LOM bit is asserted, its reset value lasts just one CAN bit. After this time, FLTCONF reports "Error Passive". 00 Error Active 01 Error Passive 1x Bus Off
3 RX	FlexCAN In Reception This bit indicates if FlexCAN is receiving a message. See the table in the overall CAN_ESR1 register description. 0 FlexCAN is not receiving a message. 1 FlexCAN is receiving a message.
2 BOFFINT	Bus Off Interrupt This bit is set when FlexCAN enters ‘Bus Off’ state. If the corresponding mask bit in the Control Register 1 (CAN_CTRL1[BOFFMSK]) is set, an interrupt is generated to the CPU. This bit is cleared by writing it to 1. Writing 0 has no effect. 0 No such occurrence. 1 FlexCAN module entered Bus Off state.
1 ERRINT	Error Interrupt This bit indicates that at least one of the Error Bits (BIT1ERR, BIT0ERR, ACKERR. CRCERR, FRMERR or STFERR) is set. If the corresponding mask bit CAN_CTRL1[ERRMSK] is set, an interrupt is generated to the CPU. This bit is cleared by writing it to 1. Writing 0 has no effect. 0 No such occurrence. 1 Indicates setting of any Error Bit in the Error and Status Register.
0 WAKINT	Wake-Up Interrupt This field applies when FlexCAN is in low-power mode under Self Wake Up mechanism: • Doze mode • Stop mode When a recessive-to-dominant transition is detected on the CAN bus and if the CAN_MCR[WAKMSK] bit is set, an interrupt is generated to the CPU. This bit is cleared by writing it to 1. When CAN_MCR[SLFWAK] is negated, this flag is masked. The CPU must clear this flag before disabling the bit. Otherwise it will be set when the SLFWAK is set again. Writing 0 has no effect.

Table continues on the next page...

CANx_ESR1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 No such occurrence. 1 Indicates a recessive to dominant transition was received on the CAN bus.

42.4.10 Interrupt Masks 1 register (CANx_IMASK1)

This register allows any number of a range of the 16 Message Buffer Interrupts to be enabled or disabled for MB15 to MB0. It contains one interrupt mask bit per buffer, enabling the CPU to determine which buffer generates an interrupt after a successful transmission or reception, that is, when the corresponding CAN_IFLAG1 bit is set.

Address: Base address + 28h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R W	BUF31TO0M																															
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

CANx_IMASK1 field descriptions

Field	Description
BUF31TO0M	Buffer MB $_i$ Mask Each bit enables or disables the corresponding FlexCAN Message Buffer Interrupt for MB31 to MB0. **NOTE:** Setting or clearing a bit in the CAN_IMASK1 Register can assert or negate an interrupt request, if the corresponding IFLAG1 bit is set. 0 The corresponding buffer Interrupt is disabled. 1 The corresponding buffer Interrupt is enabled.

42.4.11 Interrupt Flags 1 register (CANx_IFLAG1)

This register defines the flags for the 16 Message Buffer interrupts for MB15 to MB0. It contains one interrupt flag bit per buffer. Each successful transmission or reception sets the corresponding CAN_IFLAG1 bit. If the corresponding CAN_IMASK1 bit is set, an interrupt will be generated. The interrupt flag must be cleared by writing 1 to it. Writing 0 has no effect. There is an exception when DMA for Rx FIFO is enabled, as described below.

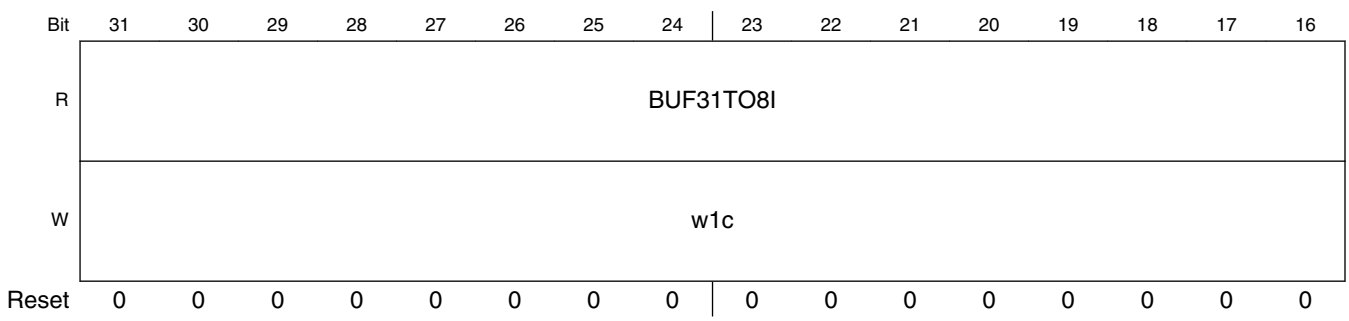
The BUF7I to BUF5I flags are also used to represent FIFO interrupts when the Rx FIFO is enabled. When the bit CAN_MCR[RFEN] is set and the bit CAN_MCR[DMA] is negated, the function of the 8 least significant interrupt flags changes: BUF7I, BUF6I and BUF5I indicate operating conditions of the FIFO, BUF0I is used to empty FIFO, and BUF4I to BUF1I bits are reserved.

Before enabling the CAN_MCR[RFEN], the CPU must service the IFLAG bits asserted in the Rx FIFO region; see Section "Rx FIFO". Otherwise, these IFLAG bits will mistakenly show the related MBs now belonging to FIFO as having contents to be serviced. When the CAN_MCR[RFEN] bit is negated, the FIFO flags must be cleared. The same care must be taken when an CAN_CTRL2[RFFN] value is selected extending Rx FIFO filters beyond MB7. For example, when RFFN is 0x8, the MB0-23 range is occupied by Rx FIFO filters and related IFLAG bits must be cleared.

When both the CAN_MCR[RFEN] and CAN_MCR[DMA] bits are asserted (DMA feature for Rx FIFO enabled), the function of the 8 least significant interrupt flags (BUF7I - BUF0I) are changed to support the DMA operation. BUF7I and BUF6I are not used, as well as, BUF4I to BUF1I. BUF5I indicates operating condition of FIFO, and BUF0I is used to empty FIFO. Moreover, BUF5I does not generate a CPU interrupt, but generates a DMA request. IMASK1 bits in Rx FIFO region are not considered when bit CAN_MCR[DMA] is enabled. In addition the CPU must not clear the flag BUF5I when DMA is enabled. Before enabling the bit CAN_MCR[DMA], the CPU must service the IFLAGs asserted in the Rx FIFO region. When the bit CAN_MCR[DMA] is negated, the FIFO must be empty.

Before updating CAN_MCR[MAXMB] field, CPU must service the CAN_IFLAG1 bits whose MB value is greater than the CAN_MCR[MAXMB] to be updated; otherwise, they will remain set and be inconsistent with the number of MBs available.

Address: Base address + 30h offset



Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	BUF31TO8I								BUF7I	BUF6I	BUF5I	BUF4TO1I				BUF0I
W	w1c								w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c				w1c
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

CANx_IFLAG1 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–8 BUF31TO8I	Buffer MB_i Interrupt Each bit flags the corresponding FlexCAN Message Buffer interrupt for MB15 to MB8. 0 The corresponding buffer has no occurrence of successfully completed transmission or reception. 1 The corresponding buffer has successfully completed transmission or reception.
7 BUF7I	Buffer MB7 Interrupt Or "Rx FIFO Overflow" When the RFEN bit in the CAN_MCR register is cleared (Rx FIFO disabled), this bit flags the interrupt for MB7. **NOTE:** This flag is cleared by the FlexCAN whenever the bit CAN_MCR[RFEN] is changed by CPU writes. The BUF7I flag represents "Rx FIFO Overflow" when CAN_MCR[RFEN] is set. In this case, the flag indicates that a message was lost because the Rx FIFO is full. Note that the flag will not be asserted when the Rx FIFO is full and the message was captured by a Mailbox. 0 No occurrence of MB7 completing transmission/reception when MCR[RFEN]=0, or of Rx FIFO overflow when MCR[RFEN]=1 1 MB7 completed transmission/reception when MCR[RFEN]=0, or Rx FIFO overflow when MCR[RFEN]=1
6 BUF6I	Buffer MB6 Interrupt Or "Rx FIFO Warning" When the RFEN bit in the CAN_MCR register is cleared (Rx FIFO disabled), this bit flags the interrupt for MB6. **NOTE:** This flag is cleared by the FlexCAN whenever the bit CAN_MCR[RFEN] is changed by CPU writes. The BUF6I flag represents "Rx FIFO Warning" when CAN_MCR[RFEN] is set. In this case, the flag indicates when the number of unread messages within the Rx FIFO is increased to 5 from 4 due to the reception of a new one, meaning that the Rx FIFO is almost full. Note that if the flag is cleared while the number of unread messages is greater than 4, it does not assert again until the number of unread messages within the Rx FIFO is decreased to be equal to or less than 4. 0 No occurrence of MB6 completing transmission/reception when MCR[RFEN]=0, or of Rx FIFO almost full when MCR[RFEN]=1 1 MB6 completed transmission/reception when MCR[RFEN]=0, or Rx FIFO almost full when MCR[RFEN]=1
5 BUF5I	Buffer MB5 Interrupt Or "Frames available in Rx FIFO" When the RFEN bit in the MCR is cleared (Rx FIFO disabled), this bit flags the interrupt for MB5.

Table continues on the next page...

CANx_IFLAG1 field descriptions (continued)

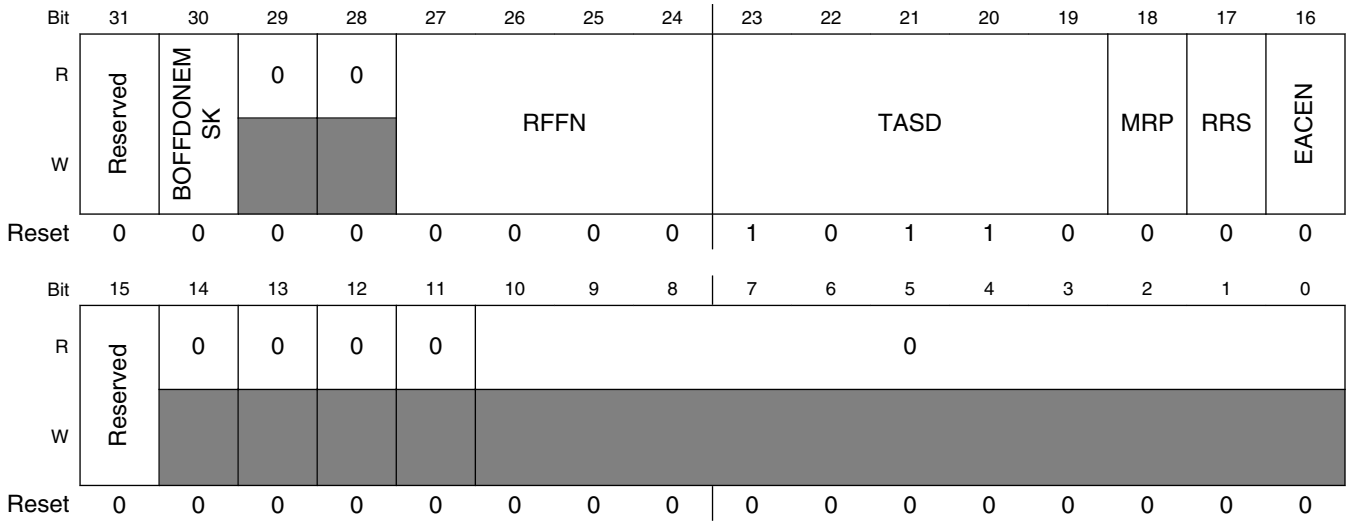
Field	Description
	NOTE: This flag is cleared by the FlexCAN whenever the bit MCR[RFEN] is changed by CPU writes. When MCR[RFEN] is set (Rx FIFO enabled), the BUF5I flag represents "Frames available in Rx FIFO" and indicates that at least one frame is available to be read from the Rx FIFO. When the MCR[DMA] bit is enabled, this flag generates a DMA request and the CPU must not clear this bit by writing 1 in BUF5I. 0 No occurrence of MB5 completing transmission/reception when MCR[RFEN]=0, or of frame(s) available in the FIFO, when MCR[RFEN]=1 1 MB5 completed transmission/reception when MCR[RFEN]=0, or frame(s) available in the Rx FIFO when MCR[RFEN]=1. It generates a DMA request in case of MCR[RFEN] and MCR[DMA] are enabled.
4–1 BUF4TO1I	Buffer MB $_i$ Interrupt Or "reserved" When the RFEN bit in the CAN_MCR register is cleared (Rx FIFO disabled), these bits flag the interrupts for MB4 to MB1. **NOTE:** These flags are cleared by the FlexCAN whenever the bit CAN_MCR[RFEN] is changed by CPU writes. The BUF4TO1I flags are reserved when CAN_MCR[RFEN] is set. 0 The corresponding buffer has no occurrence of successfully completed transmission or reception when MCR[RFEN]=0. 1 The corresponding buffer has successfully completed transmission or reception when MCR[RFEN]=0.
0 BUF0I	Buffer MB0 Interrupt Or Clear FIFO bit When the RFEN bit in MCR is cleared (Rx FIFO disabled), this bit flags the interrupt for MB0. If the Rx FIFO is enabled, this bit is used to trigger the clear FIFO operation. This operation empties FIFO contents. Before performing this operation the CPU must service all FIFO related IFLAGs. When the bit MCR[DMA] is enabled this operation also clears the BUF5I flag and consequently abort the DMA request. The clear FIFO operation occurs when the CPU writes 1 in BUF0I. It is only allowed in Freeze Mode and is blocked by hardware in other conditions. 0 The corresponding buffer has no occurrence of successfully completed transmission or reception when MCR[RFEN]=0. 1 The corresponding buffer has successfully completed transmission or reception when MCR[RFEN]=0.

42.4.12 Control 2 register (CANx_CTRL2)

This register complements Control1 Register providing control bits for memory write access in Freeze Mode, for extending FIFO filter quantity, and for adjust the operation of internal FlexCAN processes like matching and arbitration.

The contents of this register are not affected by soft reset.

Address: Base address + 34h offset



CANx_CTRL2 field descriptions

Field	Description
31 Reserved	This field is reserved. When writing to this field, always write the reset value.
30 BOFFDONEMSK	Bus Off Done Interrupt Mask This bit provides a mask for the Bus Off Done Interrupt in CAN_ESR1 register. 0 Bus Off Done interrupt disabled. 1 Bus Off Done interrupt enabled.
29 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
28 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
27–24 RFFN	Number Of Rx FIFO Filters This 4-bit field defines the number of Rx FIFO filters, as shown in the following table. The maximum selectable number of filters is determined by the chip. This field can only be written in Freeze mode as it is blocked by hardware in other modes. This field must not be programmed with values that make the number of Message Buffers occupied by Rx FIFO and ID Filter exceed the number of Mailboxes present, defined by CAN_MCR[MAXMB]. **NOTE:** Each group of eight filters occupies a memory space equivalent to two Message Buffers which means that the more filters are implemented the less Mailboxes will be available. Considering that the Rx FIFO occupies the memory space originally reserved for MB0-5, RFFN should be programmed with a value corresponding to a number of filters not greater than the number of available memory words which can be calculated as follows: (SETUP_MB - 6) × 4 where SETUP_MB is the least between the parameter NUMBER_OF_MB and CAN_MCR[MAXMB]. The number of remaining Mailboxes available will be: (SETUP_MB - 8) - (RFFN × 2)

Table continues on the next page...

CANx_CTRL2 field descriptions (continued)

<table>
<tr><th>Field</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>
If the Number of Rx FIFO Filters programmed through RFFN exceeds the SETUP_MB value (memory space available) the exceeding ones will not be functional.

NOTE:
• The number of the last remaining available mailboxes is defined by the least value between the NUMBER_OF_MB minus 1 and the CAN_MCR[MAXMB] field.
• If Rx Individual Mask Registers are not enabled then all Rx FIFO filters are affected by the Rx FIFO Global Mask.

<table>
<tr><th>RFFN[3:0]</th><th>Number of Rx FIFO filter elements</th><th>Message Buffers occupied by Rx FIFO and ID Filter Table</th><th>Remaining Available Mailboxes</th><th>Rx FIFO ID Filter Table Elements Affected by Rx Individual Masks</th><th>Rx FIFO ID Filter Table Elements Affected by Rx FIFO Global Mask</th></tr>
<tr><td>0x0</td><td>8</td><td>MB 0-7</td><td>MB 8-63</td><td>Elements 0-7</td><td>none</td></tr>
<tr><td>0x1</td><td>16</td><td>MB 0-9</td><td>MB 10-63</td><td>Elements 0-9</td><td>Elements 10-15</td></tr>
<tr><td>0x2</td><td>24</td><td>MB 0-11</td><td>MB 12-63</td><td>Elements 0-11</td><td>Elements 12-23</td></tr>
<tr><td>0x3</td><td>32</td><td>MB 0-13</td><td>MB 14-63</td><td>Elements 0-13</td><td>Elements 14-31</td></tr>
<tr><td>0x4</td><td>40</td><td>MB 0-15</td><td>MB 16-63</td><td>Elements 0-15</td><td>Elements 16-39</td></tr>
<tr><td>0x5</td><td>48</td><td>MB 0-17</td><td>MB 18-63</td><td>Elements 0-17</td><td>Elements 18-47</td></tr>
<tr><td>0x6</td><td>56</td><td>MB 0-19</td><td>MB 20-63</td><td>Elements 0-19</td><td>Elements 20-55</td></tr>
<tr><td>0x7</td><td>64</td><td>MB 0-21</td><td>MB 22-63</td><td>Elements 0-21</td><td>Elements 22-63</td></tr>
<tr><td>0x8</td><td>72</td><td>MB 0-23</td><td>MB 24-63</td><td>Elements 0-23</td><td>Elements 24-71</td></tr>
<tr><td>0x9</td><td>80</td><td>MB 0-25</td><td>MB 26-63</td><td>Elements 0-25</td><td>Elements 26-79</td></tr>
<tr><td>0xA</td><td>88</td><td>MB 0-27</td><td>MB 28-63</td><td>Elements 0-27</td><td>Elements 28-87</td></tr>
<tr><td>0xB</td><td>96</td><td>MB 0-29</td><td>MB 30-63</td><td>Elements 0-29</td><td>Elements 30-95</td></tr>
<tr><td>0xC</td><td>104</td><td>MB 0-31</td><td>MB 32-63</td><td>Elements 0-31</td><td>Elements 32-103</td></tr>
<tr><td>0xD</td><td>112</td><td>MB 0-33</td><td>MB 34-63</td><td>Elements 0-31</td><td>Elements 32-111</td></tr>
<tr><td>0xE</td><td>120</td><td>MB 0-35</td><td>MB 36-63</td><td>Elements 0-31</td><td>Elements 32-119</td></tr>
<tr><td>0xF</td><td>128</td><td>MB 0-37</td><td>MB 38-63</td><td>Elements 0-31</td><td>Elements 32-127</td></tr>
</table>
</td></tr>
<tr><td>23–19
TASD</td><td>Tx Arbitration Start Delay

This 5-bit field indicates how many CAN bits the Tx arbitration process start point can be delayed from the first bit of CRC field on CAN bus. See Tx Arbitration start delay for more details. This field can be written only in Freeze mode because it is blocked by hardware in other modes.</td></tr>
<tr><td>18
MRP</td><td>Mailboxes Reception Priority

If this bit is set the matching process starts from the Mailboxes and if no match occurs the matching continues on the Rx FIFO. This bit can be written only in Freeze mode because it is blocked by hardware in other modes.

0 Matching starts from Rx FIFO and continues on Mailboxes.
1 Matching starts from Mailboxes and continues on Rx FIFO.</td></tr>
<tr><td>17
RRS</td><td>Remote Request Storing</td></tr>
</table>

Table continues on the next page...

CANx_CTRL2 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	If this bit is asserted Remote Request Frame is submitted to a matching process and stored in the corresponding Message Buffer in the same fashion of a Data Frame. No automatic Remote Response Frame will be generated. If this bit is negated the Remote Request Frame is submitted to a matching process and an automatic Remote Response Frame is generated if a Message Buffer with CODE=0b1010 is found with the same ID. This bit can be written only in Freeze mode because it is blocked by hardware in other modes. 0 Remote Response Frame is generated. 1 Remote Request Frame is stored.
16 EACEN	Entire Frame Arbitration Field Comparison Enable For Rx Mailboxes This bit controls the comparison of IDE and RTR bits within Rx Mailboxes filters with their corresponding bits in the incoming frame by the matching process. This bit does not affect matching for Rx FIFO. This bit can be written only in Freeze mode because it is blocked by hardware in other modes. 0 Rx Mailbox filter's IDE bit is always compared and RTR is never compared despite mask bits. 1 Enables the comparison of both Rx Mailbox filter's IDE and RTR bit with their corresponding bits within the incoming frame. Mask bits do apply.
15 Reserved	This field is reserved. When writing to this field, always write the reset value.
14 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
13 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
12 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
11 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

42.4.13 Error and Status 2 register (CANx_ESR2)

This register reports some general status information.

Address: Base address + 38h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0									LPTM						
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0	VPS	IMB	0												
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

CANx_ESR2 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–23 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
22–16 LPTM	Lowest Priority Tx Mailbox If CAN_ESR2[VPS] is asserted, this field indicates the lowest number inactive Mailbox (see the CAN_ESR2[IMB] bit description). If there is no inactive Mailbox then the Mailbox indicated depends on CAN_CTRL1[LBUF] bit value. If CAN_CTRL1[LBUF] bit is negated then the Mailbox indicated is the one that has the greatest arbitration value (see the "Highest priority Mailbox first" section). If CAN_CTRL1[LBUF] bit is asserted then the Mailbox indicated is the highest number active Tx Mailbox. If a Tx Mailbox is being transmitted it is not considered in LPTM calculation. If CAN_ESR2[IMB] is not asserted and a frame is transmitted successfully, LPTM is updated with its Mailbox number.
15 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
14 VPS	Valid Priority Status This bit indicates whether CAN_ESR2[IMB] and CAN_ESR2[LPTM] contents are currently valid or not. It is asserted upon every complete Tx arbitration process unless the CPU writes to Control and Status word of a Mailbox that has already been scanned, that is, it is behind Tx Arbitration Pointer, during the Tx arbitration process. If there is no inactive Mailbox and only one Tx Mailbox that is being transmitted then VPS is not asserted. This bit is negated upon the start of every Tx arbitration process or upon a write to Control and Status word of any Mailbox. **NOTE:** CAN_ESR2[VPS] is not affected by any CPU write into Control Status (C/S) of a MB that is blocked by abort mechanism. When CAN_MCR[AEN] is asserted, the abort code write in C/S of a MB that is being transmitted (pending abort), or any write attempt into a Tx MB with CAN_IFLAG set is blocked. 0 Contents of IMB and LPTM are invalid. 1 Contents of IMB and LPTM are valid.
13 IMB	Inactive Mailbox If ESR2[VPS] is asserted, this bit indicates whether there is any inactive Mailbox (CODE field is either 0b1000 or 0b0000). This bit is asserted in the following cases: • During arbitration, if an CAN_ESR2[LPTM] is found and it is inactive. • If CAN_ESR2[IMB] is not asserted and a frame is transmitted successfully. This bit is cleared in all start of arbitration (see Section "Arbitration process"). **NOTE:** CAN_ESR2[LPTM] mechanism have the following behavior: if an MB is successfully transmitted and CAN_ESR2[IMB]=0 (no inactive Mailbox), then CAN_ESR2[VPS] and CAN_ESR2[IMB] are asserted and the index related to the MB just transmitted is loaded into CAN_ESR2[LPTM]. 0 If ESR2[VPS] is asserted, the ESR2[LPTM] is not an inactive Mailbox. 1 If ESR2[VPS] is asserted, there is at least one inactive Mailbox. LPTM content is the number of the first one.
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

42.4.14 CRC Register (CANx_CRCR)

This register provides information about the CRC of transmitted messages. This register is updated at the same time the Tx Interrupt Flag is asserted.

Address: Base address + 44h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0								MBCRC							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0	TXCRC														
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

CANx_CRCR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–23 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
22–16 MBCRC	CRC Mailbox This field indicates the number of the Mailbox corresponding to the value in CAN_CRCR[TXCRC] field.
15 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
TXCRC	Transmitted CRC value This field indicates the CRC value of the last transmitted message.

42.4.15 Rx FIFO Global Mask register (CANx_RXFGMASK)

This register is located in RAM.

If Rx FIFO is enabled, RXFGMASK is used to mask the Rx FIFO ID Filter Table elements that do not have a corresponding RXIMR according to CAN_CTRL2[RFFN] field setting.

This register can only be written in Freeze mode as it is blocked by hardware in other modes.

Address: Base address + 48h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R W	FGM																															
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

* Notes:
- x = Undefined at reset.

CANx_RXFGMASK field descriptions

Field	Description
FGM	Rx FIFO Global Mask Bits These bits mask the ID Filter Table elements bits in a perfect alignment. The following table shows how the FGM bits correspond to each IDAF field.

Rx FIFO ID Filter Table Elements Format (CAN_MCR[IDAM])	Identifier Acceptance Filter Fields					
	RTR	IDE	RXIDA	RXIDB [1]	RXIDC [2]	Reserved
A	FGM[31]	FGM[30]	FGM[29:1]	-	-	FGM[0]
B	FGM[31], FGM[15]	FGM[30], FGM[14]	-	FGM[29:16], FGM[13:0]		-
C	-	-		-	FGM[31:24], FGM[23:16], FGM[15:8], FGM[7:0]	

0 The corresponding bit in the filter is "don't care."
1 The corresponding bit in the filter is checked.

1. If CAN_MCR[IDAM] field is equivalent to the format B only the fourteen most significant bits of the Identifier of the incoming frame are compared with the Rx FIFO filter.
2. If CAN_MCR[IDAM] field is equivalent to the format C only the eight most significant bits of the Identifier of the incoming frame are compared with the Rx FIFO filter.

42.4.16 Rx FIFO Information Register (CANx_RXFIR)

RXFIR provides information on Rx FIFO.

This register is the port through which the CPU accesses the output of the RXFIR FIFO located in RAM. The RXFIR FIFO is written by the FlexCAN whenever a new message is moved into the Rx FIFO as well as its output is updated whenever the output of the Rx FIFO is updated with the next message. See Section "Rx FIFO" for instructions on reading this register.

Address: Base address + 4Ch offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																							IDHIT								
W																																
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

* Notes:
- x = Undefined at reset.

CANx_RXFIR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–9 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
IDHIT	Identifier Acceptance Filter Hit Indicator This field indicates which Identifier Acceptance Filter was hit by the received message that is in the output of the Rx FIFO. If multiple filters match the incoming message ID then the first matching IDAF found (lowest number) by the matching process is indicated. This field is valid only while the CAN_IFLAG1[BUF5I] is asserted.

42.4.17 CAN Bit Timing Register (CANx_CBT)

This register is an alternative way to store the CAN bit timing variables described in CAN_CTRL1 register. EPRESDIV, EPROPSEG, EPSEG1, EPSEG2 and ERJW are extended versions of PRESDIV, PROPSEG, PSEG1, PSEG2 and RJW bit fields respectively.

The BTF bit selects the use of the timing variables defined in this register.

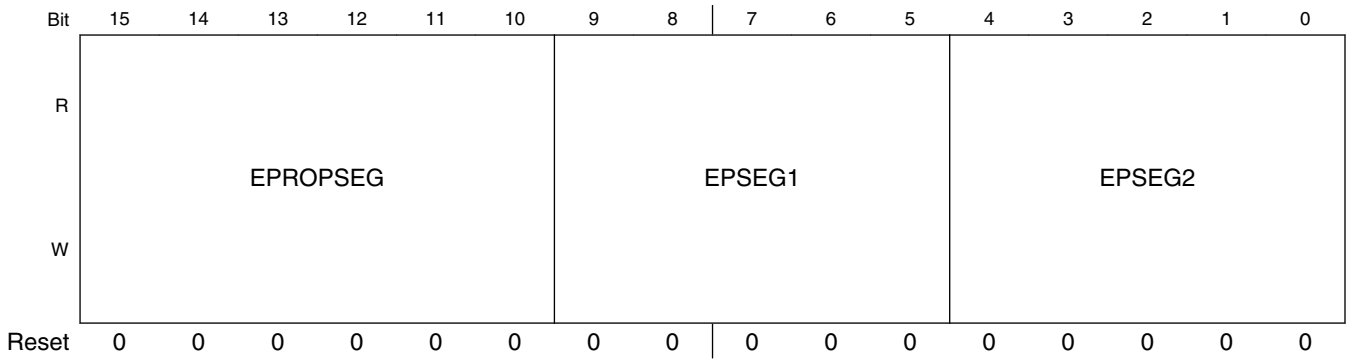
The contents of this register are not affected by soft reset.

NOTE

The CAN bit variables in CAN_CTRL1 and in CAN_CBT are stored in the same register.

Address: Base address + 50h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	BTF	EPRESDIV							Reserved	ERJW						
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0



CANx_CBT field descriptions

Field	Description
31 BTF	Bit Timing Format Enable Enables the use of extended CAN bit timing fields EPRESDIV, EPROPSEG, EPSEG1, EPSEG2 and ERJW replacing the CAN bit timing variables defined in CAN_CTRL1 register. This field can be written in Freeze mode only. 0 Extended bit time definitions disabled. 1 Extended bit time definitions enabled.
30–21 EPRESDIV	Extended Prescaler Division Factor This 10-bit field defines the ratio between the PE clock frequency and the Serial Clock (Sclock) frequency when CAN_CBT[BTF] bit is asserted, otherwise it has no effect. It extends the CAN_CTRL1[PRESDIV] value range. The Sclock period defines the time quantum of the CAN protocol. For the reset value, the Sclock frequency is equal to the PE clock frequency (see Protocol timing). This field can be written only in Freeze mode because it is blocked by hardware in other modes. Sclock frequency = PE clock frequency / (EPRESDIV + 1)
20 Reserved	This field is reserved.
19–16 ERJW	Extended Resync Jump Width This 4-bit field defines the maximum number of time quanta that a bit time can be changed by one re-synchronization when CAN_CBT[BTF] bit is asserted, otherwise it has no effect. It extends the CAN_CTRL1[RJW] value range. One time quantum is equal to the Sclock period. This field can be written only in Freeze mode because it is blocked by hardware in other modes. Resync Jump Width = ERJW + 1.
15–10 EPROPSEG	Extended Propagation Segment This 6-bit field defines the length of the Propagation Segment in the bit time when CAN_CBT[BTF] bit is asserted, otherwise it has no effect. It extends the CAN_CTRL1[PROPSEG] value range. This field can be written only in Freeze mode because it is blocked by hardware in other modes. Propagation Segment Time = (EPROPSEG + 1) × Time-Quanta. Time-Quantum = one Sclock period.
9–5 EPSEG1	Extended Phase Segment 1

Table continues on the next page...

CANx_CBT field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	This 5-bit field defines the length of Phase Segment 1 in the bit time when CAN_CBT[BTF] bit is asserted, otherwise it has no effect. It extends the CAN_CTRL1[PSEG1] value range. This field can be written only in Freeze mode because it is blocked by hardware in other modes. Phase Buffer Segment 1 = (EPSEG1 + 1) × Time-Quanta. Time-Quantum = one Sclock period.
EPSEG2	Extended Phase Segment 2 This 5-bit field defines the length of Phase Segment 2 in the bit time when CAN_CBT[BTF] bit is asserted, otherwise it has no effect. It extends the CAN_CTRL1[PSEG2] value range. This field can be written only in Freeze mode because it is blocked by hardware in other modes. Phase Buffer Segment 1 = (EPSEG2 + 1) × Time-Quanta. Time-Quantum = one Sclock period.

42.4.18 Rx Individual Mask Registers (CANx_RXIMR*n*)

The RX Individual Mask Registers are used to store the acceptance masks for ID filtering in Rx MBs and the Rx FIFO.

When the Rx FIFO is disabled (CAN_MCR[RFEN] bit is negated), an individual mask is provided for each available Rx Mailbox on a one-to-one correspondence. When the Rx FIFO is enabled (CAN_MCR[RFEN] bit is asserted), an individual mask is provided for each Rx FIFO ID Filter Table Element on a one-to-one correspondence depending on the setting of CAN_CTRL2[RFFN] (see Rx FIFO).

CAN_RXIMR0 stores the individual mask associated to either MB0 or ID Filter Table Element 0, CAN_RXIMR1 stores the individual mask associated to either MB1 or ID Filter Table Element 1 and so on.

CAN_RXIMR registers can only be accessed by the CPU while the module is in Freeze mode, otherwise, they are blocked by hardware. These registers are not affected by reset. They are located in RAM and must be explicitly initialized prior to any reception.

Address: Base address + 880h offset + (4d × i), where i=0d to 15d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R W	MI																															
Reset	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*	x*

* Notes:
- x = Undefined at reset.

CANx_RXIMR*n* field descriptions

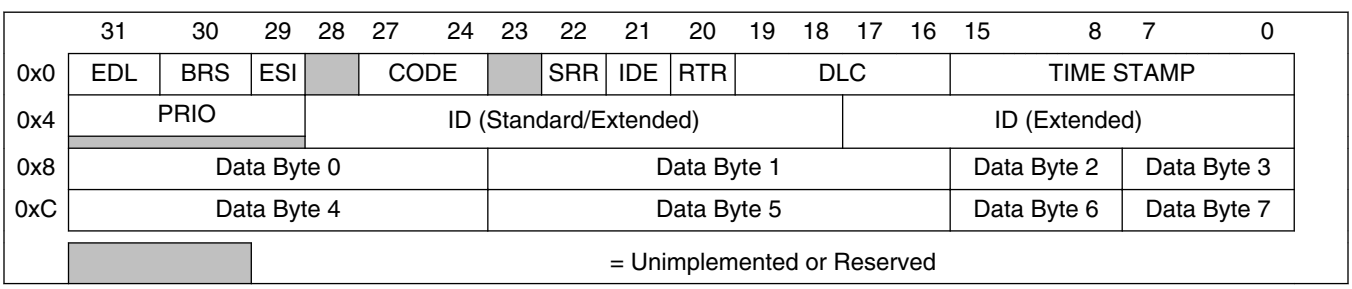
Field	Description
MI	Individual Mask Bits Each Individual Mask Bit masks the corresponding bit in both the Mailbox filter and Rx FIFO ID Filter Table element in distinct ways. For Mailbox filters, see the RXMGMASK register description. For Rx FIFO ID Filter Table elements, see the RXFGMASK register description. 0 The corresponding bit in the filter is "don't care." 1 The corresponding bit in the filter is checked.

42.4.53 Message buffer structure

The message buffer structure used by the FlexCAN module is represented in the following figure. Both Extended (29-bit identifier) and Standard (11-bit identifier) frames used in the CAN specification (Version 2.0 Part B) are represented. Each individual MB is formed by 16 bytes.

The memory area from 0x80 to 0x17F is used by the mailboxes.

Table 42-3. Message buffer structure



CODE - Message Buffer Code

This 4-bit field can be accessed (read or write) by the CPU and by the FlexCAN module itself, as part of the message buffer matching and arbitration process. The encoding is shown in Table 42-4 and Table 42-5. See Functional description for additional information.

Table 42-4. Message buffer code for Rx buffers

CODE description	Rx code BEFORE receive new frame	SRV[1]	Rx code AFTER successful reception[2]	RRS[3]	Comment
0b0000: INACTIVE - MB is not active.	INACTIVE	-	-	-	MB does not participate in the matching process.
0b0100: EMPTY - MB is active and empty.	EMPTY	-	FULL	-	When a frame is received successfully (after the Move-in) process), the CODE field is automatically updated to FULL.
0b0010: FULL - MB is full.	FULL	Yes	FULL	-	The act of reading the C/S word followed by unlocking the MB (SRV) does not make the code return to EMPTY. It remains FULL. If a new frame is moved to the MB after the MB was serviced, the code still remains FULL. See Matching process for matching details related to FULL code.
		No	OVERRUN	-	If the MB is FULL and a new frame is moved to this MB before the CPU services it, the CODE field is automatically updated to OVERRUN. See Matching process for details about overrun behavior.
0b0110: OVERRUN - MB is being overwritten into a full buffer.	OVERRUN	Yes	FULL	-	If the CODE field indicates OVERRUN and CPU has serviced the MB, when a new frame is moved to the MB then the code returns to FULL.

Table continues on the next page...

Table 42-4. Message buffer code for Rx buffers (continued)

CODE description	Rx code BEFORE receive new frame	SRV[1]	Rx code AFTER successful reception[2]	RRS[3]	Comment
		No	OVERRUN	-	If the CODE field already indicates OVERRUN, and another new frame must be moved, the MB will be overwritten again, and the code will remain OVERRUN. See Matching process for details about overrun behavior.
0b1010: RANSWER[4] - A frame was configured to recognize a Remote Request Frame and transmit a Response Frame in return.	RANSWER	-	TANSWER(0b1110)	0	A Remote Answer was configured to recognize a remote request frame received. After that an MB is set to transmit a response frame. The code is automatically changed to TANSWER (0b1110). See Matching process for details. If CAN_CTRL2[RRS] is negated, transmit a response frame whenever a remote request frame with the same ID is received.
		-	-	1	This code is ignored during matching and arbitration process. See Matching process for details.
CODE[0]=1: BUSY - FlexCAN is updating the contents of the MB. The CPU must not access the MB.	BUSY[5]	-	FULL	-	Indicates that the MB is being updated. It will be negated automatically and does not interfere with the next CODE.
		-	OVERRUN	-	

1. SRV: Serviced MB. MB was read and unlocked by reading TIMER or other MB.
2. A frame is considered a successful reception after the frame to be moved to MB (move-in process). See Move-in for details.
3. Remote Request Stored bit, see "Control 2 Register (CAN_CTRL2)" for details.

4. Code 0b1010 is not considered Tx and an MB with this code should not be aborted.
5. Note that for Tx MBs, the BUSY bit should be ignored upon read, except when AEN bit is set in the MCR register. If this bit is asserted, the corresponding MB does not participate in the matching process.

Table 42-5. Message buffer code for Tx buffers

CODE Description	Tx Code BEFORE tx frame	MB RTR	Tx Code AFTER successful transmission	Comment
0b1000: INACTIVE - MB is not active	INACTIVE	-	-	MB does not participate in arbitration process.
0b1001: ABORT - MB is aborted	ABORT	-	-	MB does not participate in arbitration process.
0b1100: DATA - MB is a Tx Data Frame (MB RTR must be 0)	DATA	0	INACTIVE	Transmit data frame unconditionally once. After transmission, the MB automatically returns to the INACTIVE state.
0b1100: REMOTE - MB is a Tx Remote Request Frame (MB RTR must be 1)	REMOTE	1	EMPTY	Transmit remote request frame unconditionally once. After transmission, the MB automatically becomes an Rx Empty MB with the same ID.
0b1110: TANSWER - MB is a Tx Response Frame from an incoming Remote Request Frame	TANSWER	-	RANSWER	This is an intermediate code that is automatically written to the MB by the CHI as a result of a match to a remote request frame. The remote response frame will be transmitted unconditionally once, and then the code will automatically return to RANSWER (0b1010). The CPU can also write this code with the same effect. The remote response frame can be either a data frame or another remote request frame depending on the RTR bit value. See Matching process and Arbitration process for details.

SRR - Substitute Remote Request

Fixed recessive bit, used only in extended format. It must be set to one by the user for transmission (Tx Buffers) and will be stored with the value received on the CAN bus for Rx receiving buffers. It can be received as either recessive or dominant. If FlexCAN receives this bit as dominant, then it is interpreted as an arbitration loss.

1 = Recessive value is compulsory for transmission in extended format frames

0 = Dominant is not a valid value for transmission in extended format frames

IDE - ID Extended Bit

This field identifies whether the frame format is standard or extended.

1 = Frame format is extended

0 = Frame format is standard

RTR - Remote Transmission Request

This bit affects the behavior of remote frames and is part of the reception filter. See Table 42-4, Table 42-5, and the description of the RRS bit in Control 2 Register (CAN_CTRL2) for additional details.

If FlexCAN transmits this bit as '1' (recessive) and receives it as '0' (dominant), it is interpreted as an arbitration loss. If this bit is transmitted as '0' (dominant), then if it is received as '1' (recessive), the FlexCAN module treats it as a bit error. If the value received matches the value transmitted, it is considered a successful bit transmission.

1 = Indicates the current MB may have a remote request frame to be transmitted if MB is Tx. If the MB is Rx then incoming remote request frames may be stored.

0 = Indicates the current MB has a data frame to be transmitted. In Rx MB it may be considered in matching processes.

DLC - Length of Data in Bytes

This 4-bit field is the length (in bytes) of the Rx or Tx data, which is located in offset 0x8 through 0xF of the MB space (see Table 42-3) . In reception, this field is written by the FlexCAN module, copied from the DLC (Data Length Code) field of the received frame. In transmission, this field is written by the CPU and corresponds to the DLC field value of the frame to be transmitted. When RTR = 1, the frame to be transmitted is a remote frame and does not include the data field, regardless of the DLC field (see Table 42-6).

TIME STAMP - Free-Running Counter Time Stamp

This 16-bit field is a copy of the Free-Running Timer, captured for Tx and Rx frames at the time when the beginning of the Identifier field appears on the CAN bus.

PRIO - Local priority

This 3-bit field is used only when LPRIO_EN bit is set in CAN_MCR, and it only makes sense for Tx mailboxes. These bits are not transmitted. They are appended to the regular ID to define the transmission priority. See Arbitration process.

ID - Frame Identifier

In standard frame format, only the 11 most significant bits (28 to 18) are used for frame identification in both receive and transmit cases. The 18 least significant bits are ignored. In extended frame format, all bits are used for frame identification in both receive and transmit cases.

DATA BYTE 0 to 7 - Data Field

Up to eight bytes can be used for a data frame.

For Rx frames, the data is stored as it is received from the CAN bus. DATA BYTE (*n*) is valid only if *n* is less than DLC as shown in the table below.

Table 42-6. DATA BYTEs validity

DLC	Valid DATA BYTEs
0	none
1	DATA BYTE 0
2	DATA BYTE 0 to 1
3	DATA BYTE 0 to 2
4	DATA BYTE 0 to 3
5	DATA BYTE 0 to 4
6	DATA BYTE 0 to 5
7	DATA BYTE 0 to 6
8 or above	DATA BYTE 0 to 7

42.4.54 Rx FIFO structure

When the CAN_MCR[RFEN] bit is set, the memory area from 0x80 to 0xDC (which is normally occupied by MBs 0–5) is used by the reception FIFO engine.

The region 0x80-0x8C contains the output of the FIFO which must be read by the CPU as a message buffer. This output contains the oldest message that has been received but not yet read. The region 0x90-0xDC is reserved for internal use of the FIFO engine.

An additional memory area, which starts at 0xE0 and may extend up to 0x17C (normally occupied by MBs 6–15) depending on the CAN_CTRL2[RFFN] field setting, contains the ID filter table (configurable from 8 to 40 table elements) that specifies filtering criteria for accepting frames into the FIFO.

Out of reset, the ID filter table flexible memory area defaults to 0xE0 and extends only to 0xFC, which corresponds to MBs 6 to 7 for RFFN = 0, for backward compatibility with previous versions of FlexCAN.

The following shows the Rx FIFO data structure.

Table 42-7. Rx FIFO structure

	31–28	24–23	22	21	20	19–18	17–16	15–8	7–0
0x80	IDHIT		SRR	IDE	RTR	DLC		TIME STAMP	
0x84		ID standard						ID extended	
0x88	Data byte 0		Data byte 1					Data byte 2	Data byte 3
0x8C	Data byte 4		Data byte 5					Data byte 6	Data byte 7
0x90 to 0xDC	Reserved								
0xE0	ID filter table element 0								
0xE4	ID filter table element 1								
0xE8 to 0x2D4	ID filter table elements 2 to 125								
0x2D8	ID filter table element 126								
0x2DC	ID filter table element 127								

= Unimplemented or reserved

Each ID filter table element occupies an entire 32-bit word and can be compounded by one, two, or four Identifier Acceptance Filters (IDAF) depending on the CAN_MCR[IDAM] field setting. The following figures show the IDAF indexation.

The following table shows the three different formats of the ID table elements. Note that all elements of the table must have the same format. See Rx FIFO for more information.

Table 42-8. ID table structure

Format	31	30	29–24	23–16	15	14	13–8	7–1	0
A	RTR	IDE	RXIDA (standard = 29–19, extended = 29–1)						
B	RTR	IDE	RXIDB_0		RTR	IDE	RXIDB_1		

Table continues on the next page...

Table 42-8. ID table structure (continued)

C			(standard = 29–19, extended = 29–16)			(standard = 13–3, extended = 13–0)
	RXIDC_0 (std/ext = 31–24)		RXIDC_1 (std/ext = 23–16)	RXIDC_2 (std/ext = 15–8)		RXIDC_3 (std/ext = 7–0)
	= Unimplemented or Reserved					

RTR — Remote Frame

This bit specifies if Remote Frames are accepted into the FIFO if they match the target ID.

1 = Remote Frames can be accepted and data frames are rejected

0 = Remote Frames are rejected and data frames can be accepted

IDE — Extended Frame

Specifies whether extended or standard frames are accepted into the FIFO if they match the target ID.

1 = Extended frames can be accepted and standard frames are rejected

0 = Extended frames are rejected and standard frames can be accepted

RXIDA — Rx Frame Identifier (Format A)

Specifies an ID to be used as acceptance criteria for the FIFO. In the standard frame format, only the 11 most significant bits (29 to 19) are used for frame identification. In the extended frame format, all bits are used.

RXIDB_0, RXIDB_1 — Rx Frame Identifier (Format B)

Specifies an ID to be used as acceptance criteria for the FIFO. In the standard frame format, the 11 most significant bits (a full standard ID) (29 to 19 and 13 to 3) are used for frame identification. In the extended frame format, all 14 bits of the field are compared to the 14 most significant bits of the received ID.

RXIDC_0, RXIDC_1, RXIDC_2, RXIDC_3 — Rx Frame Identifier (Format C)

Specifies an ID to be used as acceptance criteria for the FIFO. In both standard and extended frame formats, all 8 bits of the field are compared to the 8 most significant bits of the received ID.

IDHIT — Identifier Acceptance Filter Hit Indicator

This 9-bit field indicates which Identifier Acceptance Filter was hit by the received message that is in the output of the Rx FIFO. See Rx FIFO for more information.

42.5 Functional description

The FlexCAN module is a CAN protocol engine with a very flexible mailbox system for transmitting and receiving CAN frames. The mailbox system is composed by a set of Message Buffers (MB) that store configuration and control data, time stamp, message ID and data (see Message buffer structure). The memory corresponding to the first 38 MBs can be configured to support a FIFO reception scheme with a powerful ID filtering mechanism, capable of checking incoming frames against a table of IDs (up to 128 extended IDs or 256 standard IDs or 512 8-bit ID slices), with individual mask register for up to 32 ID Filter Table elements.

Simultaneous reception through FIFO and mailbox is supported. For mailbox reception, a matching algorithm makes it possible to store received frames only into MBs that have the same ID programmed on its ID field. A masking scheme makes it possible to match the ID programmed on the MB with a range of IDs on received CAN frames. For transmission, an arbitration algorithm decides the prioritization of MBs to be transmitted based on the message ID (optionally augmented by 3 local priority bits) or the MB ordering.

Before proceeding with the functional description, an important concept must be explained. A Message Buffer is said to be "active" at a given time if it can participate in both the Matching and Arbitration processes. An Rx MB with a 0b0000 code is inactive (refer to Table 42-4). Similarly, a Tx MB with a 0b1000 or 0b1001 code is also inactive (refer to Table 42-5).

42.5.1 Transmit process

To transmit a CAN frame, the CPU must prepare a Message Buffer for transmission by executing the following procedure:

1. Check whether the respective interrupt bit is set and clear it.
2. If the MB is active (transmission pending), write the ABORT code (0b1001) to the CODE field of the Control and Status word to request an abortion of the transmission. Wait for the corresponding IFLAG bit to be asserted by polling the CAN_IFLAG register or by the interrupt request if enabled by the respective IMASK bit. Then read back the CODE field to check if the transmission was aborted or transmitted (see Transmission abort mechanism). If backwards compatibility is

desired (CAN_MCR[AEN] bit is negated), just write the INACTIVE code (0b1000) to the CODE field to inactivate the MB but then the pending frame may be transmitted without notification (see Mailbox inactivation).

3. Write the ID word.
4. Write the data bytes.
5. Write the DLC, Control, and CODE fields of the Control and Status word to activate the MB.

When the MB is activated, it participates in the arbitration process and is eventually transmitted according to its priority.

At the end of the successful transmission, the value of the Free Running Timer is written into the Time Stamp field, the CODE field in the Control and Status word is updated, the CRC Register is updated, a status flag is set in the Interrupt Flag Register and an interrupt is generated if allowed by the corresponding Interrupt Mask Register bit. The new CODE field after transmission depends on the code that was used to activate the MB (see Table 42-4 and Table 42-5 in Message buffer structure).

When the Abort feature is enabled (CAN_MCR[AEN] is asserted), after the Interrupt Flag is asserted for a Mailbox configured as transmit buffer, the Mailbox is blocked. Therefore the CPU is not able to update it until the Interrupt Flag is negated by CPU. This means that the CPU must clear the corresponding IFLAG bit before starting to prepare this MB for a new transmission or reception.

42.5.2 Arbitration process

The arbitration process scans the Mailboxes searching the Tx one that holds the message to be sent in the next opportunity. This Mailbox is called the *arbitration winner*.

The scan starts from the lowest number Mailbox and runs toward the higher ones.

The arbitration process is triggered in the following events:

- From the CRC field of the CAN frame. The start point depends on the CAN_CTRL2[TASD] field value.
- During the Error Delimiter field of a CAN frame.
- During the Overload Delimiter field of a CAN frame.
- When the winner is inactivated and the CAN bus has still not reached the first bit of the Intermission field.

- When there is CPU write to the C/S word of a winner MB and the CAN bus has still not reached the first bit of the Intermission field.
- When CHI is in Idle state and the CPU writes to the C/S word of any MB.
- When FlexCAN exits Bus Off state.
- Upon leaving Freeze mode or Low Power mode.

If the arbitration process does not manage to evaluate all Mailboxes before the CAN bus has reached the first bit of the Intermission field the temporary arbitration winner is invalidated and the FlexCAN will not compete for the CAN bus in the next opportunity.

The arbitration process selects the winner among the active Tx Mailboxes at the end of the scan according to both CAN_CTRL1[LBUF] and CAN_MCR[LPRIOEN] bits settings.

42.5.2.1 Lowest-number Mailbox first

If CAN_CTRL1[LBUF] bit is asserted the first (lowest number) active Tx Mailbox found is the arbitration winner. CAN_MCR[LPRIOEN] bit has no effect when CAN_CTRL1[LBUF] is asserted.

42.5.2.2 Highest-priority Mailbox first

If CAN_CTRL1[LBUF] bit is negated, then the arbitration process searches the active Tx Mailbox with the highest priority, which means that this Mailbox's frame would have a higher probability to win the arbitration on CAN bus when multiple external nodes compete for the bus at the same time.

The sequence of bits considered for this arbitration is called the *arbitration value* of the Mailbox. The highest-priority Tx Mailbox is the one that has the lowest arbitration value among all Tx Mailboxes.

If two or more Mailboxes have equivalent arbitration values, the Mailbox with the lowest number is the arbitration winner.

The composition of the arbitration value depends on CAN_MCR[LPRIOEN] bit setting.

42.5.2.2.1 Local Priority disabled

If CAN_MCR[LPRIOEN] bit is negated the arbitration value is built in the exact sequence of bits as they would be transmitted in a CAN frame (see the following table) in such a way that the Local Priority is disabled.

Table 42-9. Composition of the arbitration value when Local Priority is disabled

Format	Mailbox Arbitration Value (32 bits)				
Standard (IDE = 0)	Standard ID (11 bits)	RTR (1 bit)	IDE (1 bit)	- (18 bits)	- (1 bit)
Extended (IDE = 1)	Extended ID[28:18] (11 bits)	SRR (1 bit)	IDE (1 bit)	Extended ID[17:0] (18 bits)	RTR (1 bit)

42.5.2.2.2 Local Priority enabled

If Local Priority is desired CAN_MCR[LPRIOEN] must be asserted. In this case the Mailbox PRIO field is included at the very left of the arbitration value (see the following table).

Table 42-10. Composition of the arbitration value when Local Priority is enabled

Format	Mailbox Arbitration Value (35 bits)					
Standard (IDE = 0)	PRIO (3 bits)	Standard ID (11 bits)	RTR (1 bit)	IDE (1 bit)	- (18 bits)	- (1 bit)
Extended (IDE = 1)	PRIO (3 bits)	Extended ID[28:18] (11 bits)	SRR (1 bit)	IDE (1 bit)	Extended ID[17:0] (18 bits)	RTR (1 bit)

As the PRIO field is the most significant part of the arbitration value Mailboxes with low PRIO values have higher priority than Mailboxes with high PRIO values regardless the rest of their arbitration values.

Note that the PRIO field is not part of the frame on the CAN bus. Its purpose is only to affect the internal arbitration process.

42.5.2.3 Arbitration process (continued)

After the arbitration winner is found, its content is copied to a hidden auxiliary MB called Tx Serial Message Buffer (Tx SMB), which has the same structure as a normal MB but is not user accessible. This operation is called move-out and after it is done, write access to the C/S word of the corresponding MB is blocked (if the AEN bit in CAN_MCR register is asserted). Write access is restored in the following events:

- After the MB is transmitted and the corresponding IFLAG bit is cleared by the CPU
- FlexCAN enters in Freeze mode or Bus Off
- FlexCAN loses the bus arbitration or there is an error during the transmission

At the first opportunity window on the CAN bus, the message on the Tx SMB is transmitted according to the CAN protocol rules.

Arbitration process can be triggered in the following situations:

- During Rx and Tx frames from CAN CRC field to end of frame. CAN_CTRL2[TASD] bit value may be changed to optimize the arbitration start point.
- During CAN BusOff state from TX_ERR_CNT=124 to 128. CAN_CTRL2[TASD] bit value may be changed to optimize the arbitration start point.
- During C/S write by CPU in BusIdle. First C/S write starts arbitration process and a second C/S write during this same arbitration restarts the process. If other C/S writes are performed, Tx arbitration process is pending. If there is no arbitration winner after the arbitration process has finished, then the TX arbitration machine begins a new arbitration process. If there is a pending arbitration and BusIdle state starts then an arbitration process is triggered. In this case the first and second C/S write in BusIdle will not restart the arbitration process. It is possible that there is not enough time to finish arbitration in WaitForBusIdle state and the next state is Idle. In this case the scan is not interrupted, and it is completed during BusIdle state. During this arbitration C/S write does not cause arbitration restart.
- Arbitration winner deactivation during a valid arbitration window.
- Upon exiting Freeze mode (first bit of the WaitForBusIdle state). If there is a re-synchronization during WaitForBusIdle, the arbitration process is restarted.

Arbitration process stops in the following situations:

- All Mailboxes were scanned
- A Tx active Mailbox is found in case of Lowest Buffer feature enabled
- Arbitration winner inactivation or abort during any arbitration process
- There was not enough time to finish Tx arbitration process (for instance, when a deactivation was performed near the end of frame). In this case arbitration process is pending.
- Error or Overload flag in the bus
- Low Power or Freeze mode request in Idle state

Arbitration is considered pending as described below:

- It was not possible to finish arbitration process in time
- C/S write during arbitration if write is performed in a MB whose number is lower than the Tx arbitration pointer

- Any C/S write if there is no Tx Arbitration process in progress
- Rx Match has just updated a Rx Code to Tx Code
- Entering Busoff state

C/S write during arbitration has the following effect:

- If C/S write is performed in the arbitration winner, a new process is restarted immediately.
- If C/S write is performed in a MB whose number is higher than the Tx arbitration pointer, the ongoing arbitration process will scan this MB as normal.

42.5.3 Receive process

To be able to receive CAN frames into a Mailbox, the CPU must prepare it for reception by executing the following steps:

1. If the Mailbox is active (either Tx or Rx) inactivate the Mailbox (see Mailbox inactivation), preferably with a safe inactivation (see Transmission abort mechanism).
2. Write the ID word
3. Write the EMPTY code (0b0100) to the CODE field of the Control and Status word to activate the Mailbox.

After the MB is activated, it will be able to receive frames that match the programmed filter. At the end of a successful reception, the Mailbox is updated by the *move-in* process (see Move-in) as follows:

1. The received Data field (8 bytes at most for Classical CAN message format) is stored.
2. The received Identifier field is stored.
3. The value of the Free Running Timer at the time of the second bit of frame's Identifier field is written into the Mailbox's Time Stamp field.
4. The received SRR, IDE, RTR and DLC fields are stored.
5. The CODE field in the Control and Status word is updated (see Table 42-4 and Table 42-5 in Section Message buffer structure).
6. A status flag is set in the Interrupt Flag Register and an interrupt is generated if allowed by the corresponding Interrupt Mask Register bit.

The recommended way for CPU servicing (read) the frame received in an Mailbox is using the following procedure:

1. Read the Control and Status word of that Mailbox.
2. Check if the BUSY bit is deasserted, indicating that the Mailbox is locked. Repeat step 1) while it is asserted. See Mailbox lock mechanism.
3. Read the contents of the Mailbox. Once Mailbox is locked now, its contents won't be modified by FlexCAN Move-in processes. See Move-in.
4. Acknowledge the proper flag at IFLAG registers.
5. Read the Free Running Timer. It is optional but recommended to unlock Mailbox as soon as possible and make it available for reception.

The CPU should poll for frame reception by the status flag bit for the specific Mailbox in one of the IFLAG Registers and not by the CODE field of that Mailbox. Polling the CODE field does not work because once a frame was received and the CPU services the Mailbox (by reading the C/S word followed by unlocking the Mailbox), the CODE field will not return to EMPTY. It will remain FULL, as explained in Table 42-4 . If the CPU tries to workaround this behavior by writing to the C/S word to force an EMPTY code after reading the Mailbox without a prior *safe inactivation*, a newly received frame matching the filter of that Mailbox may be lost.

CAUTION

In summary: *never do polling by reading directly the C/S word of the Mailboxes. Instead, read the IFLAG registers.*

Note that the received frame's Identifier field is always stored in the matching Mailbox, thus the contents of the ID field in an Mailbox may change if the match was due to masking. When CAN_MCR[SRXDIS] bit is asserted, FlexCAN will not store frames transmitted by itself in any MB, even if it contains a matching Rx Mailbox, and no interrupt flag or interrupt signal will be generated. Otherwise, when CAN_MCR[SRXDIS] bit is deasserted, FlexCAN can receive frames transmitted by itself if there exists a matching Rx Mailbox.

To be able to receive CAN frames through the Rx FIFO, the CPU must enable and configure the Rx FIFO during Freeze mode (see Rx FIFO). Upon receiving the Frames Available in Rx FIFO interrupt (see the description of the BUF5I bit "Frames available in Rx FIFO" bit in the CAN_IFLAG1 register), the CPU should service the received frame using the following procedure:

1. Read the Control and Status word (optional: needed only if a mask was used for IDE and RTR bits)
2. Read the ID field (optional: needed only if a mask was used)
3. Read the Data field
4. Read the CAN_RXFIR register (optional)
5. Clear the Frames Available in Rx FIFO interrupt by writing 1 to CAN_IFLAG1[BUF5I] bit (mandatory: releases the MB and allows the CPU to read the next Rx FIFO entry)

When CAN_MCR[DMA] is asserted, upon receiving a frame in FIFO, CAN_IFLAG1[BUF5I] generates a DMA request and does not generate a CPU interrupt (see Rx FIFO under DMA Operation). The CAN_IMASK1 bits in Rx FIFO region are not used.

The DMA controller must service the received frame using the following procedure:

1. Read the Control and Status word (read 0x80 address, optional)
2. Read the ID field (read 0x84 address, optional)
3. Read all Data Bytes (start read at 0x88 address, optional)
4. Read the last Data Bytes (read 0x8C address is mandatory)

42.5.4 Matching process

The matching process scans the MB memory looking for Rx MBs programmed with the same ID as the one received from the CAN bus. If the FIFO is enabled, the priority of scanning can be selected between Mailboxes and FIFO filters. The matching starts from the lowest number Message Buffer toward the higher ones. If no match is found within the first structure then the other is scanned subsequently. In the event that the FIFO is full, the matching algorithm always looks for a matching MB outside the FIFO region.

As the frame is being received, it is stored in a hidden auxiliary MB called Rx Serial Message Buffer (Rx SMB).

The matching process start point depends on the following conditions:

- If the received frame is a remote frame, the start point is the CRC field of the frame

- If the received frame is a data frame with DLC field equal to zero, the start point is the CRC field of the frame
- If the received frame is a data frame with DLC field different than zero, the start point is the DATA field of the frame

If a matching ID is found in the FIFO table or in one of the Mailboxes, the contents of the Rx SMB are transferred to the FIFO or to the matched Mailbox by the move-in process. If any CAN protocol error is detected then no match results are transferred to the FIFO or to the matched Mailbox at the end of reception.

The matching process scans all matching elements of both Rx FIFO (if enabled) and the active Rx Mailboxes (CODE is EMPTY, FULL, OVERRUN or RANSWER) in search of a successful comparison with the matching elements of the Rx SMB that is receiving the frame on the CAN bus. The Rx SMB has the same structure of a Mailbox. The reception structures (Rx FIFO or Mailboxes) associated with the matching elements that had a successful comparison are the *matched structures*. The *matching winner* is selected at the end of the scan among those matched structures and depends on conditions described ahead. See the following table.

Table 42-11. Matching architecture

Structure	SMB[RTR]	CTRL2[RRS]	CTRL2[EACEN]	MB[IDE]	MB[RTR]	MB[ID[1]]	MB[CODE]
Mailbox	0	-	0	cmp[2]	no_cmp[3]	cmp_msk[4]	EMPTY or FULL or OVERRUN
Mailbox	0	-	1	cmp_msk	cmp_msk	cmp_msk	EMPTY or FULL or OVERRUN
Mailbox	1	0	-	cmp	no_cmp	cmp	RANSWER
Mailbox	1	1	0	cmp	no_cmp	cmp_msk	EMPTY or FULL or OVERRUN
Mailbox	1	1	1	cmp_msk	cmp_msk	cmp_msk	EMPTY or FULL or OVERRUN
FIFO[5]	-	-	-	cmp_msk	cmp_msk	cmp_msk	-

1. For Mailbox structure, If SMB[IDE] is asserted, the ID is 29 bits (ID Standard + ID Extended). If SMB[IDE] is negated, the ID is only 11 bits (ID Standard). For FIFO structure, the ID depends on IDAM.
2. cmp: Compares the Rx SMB contents with the MB contents regardless the masks.
3. no_cmp: The Rx SMB contents are not compared with the MB contents.
4. cmp_msk: Compares the Rx SMB contents with MB contents taking into account the masks.
5. SMB[IDE] and SMB[RTR] are not taken into account when IDAM is type C.

A reception structure is *free-to-receive* when any of the following conditions is satisfied:

- The CODE field of the Mailbox is EMPTY

- The CODE field of the Mailbox is either FULL or OVERRUN and it has already been serviced (the C/S word was read by the CPU and unlocked as described in Mailbox lock mechanism)
- The CODE field of the Mailbox is either FULL or OVERRUN and an inactivation (see Mailbox inactivation) is performed
- The Rx FIFO is not full

The scan order for Mailboxes and Rx FIFO is from the matching element with lowest number to the higher ones.

The matching winner search for Mailboxes is affected by the CAN_MCR[IRMQ] bit. If it is negated, the matching winner is the first matched Mailbox regardless if it is free-to-receive or not. If it is asserted, the matching winner is selected according to the priority below:

1. the first free-to-receive matched Mailbox;
2. the last non free-to-receive matched Mailbox.

It is possible to select the priority of scan between Mailboxes and Rx FIFO by the CAN_CTRL2[MRP] bit.

If the selected priority is Rx FIFO first:

- If the Rx FIFO is a matched structure and is free-to-receive, then the Rx FIFO is the matching winner regardless of the scan for Mailboxes
- Otherwise (the Rx FIFO is not a matched structure or is not free-to-receive), then the matching winner is searched among Mailboxes as described above

If the selected priority is Mailboxes first:

- If a free-to-receive matched Mailbox is found, it is the matching winner regardless of the scan for Rx FIFO
- If no matched Mailbox is found, then the matching winner is searched in the scan for the Rx FIFO
- If both conditions above are not satisfied and a non free-to-receive matched Mailbox is found, then the matching winner determination is conditioned by the CAN_MCR[IRMQ] bit:
- - If CAN_MCR[IRMQ] bit is negated, the matching winner is the first matched Mailbox
  - If CAN_MCR[IRMQ] bit is asserted, the matching winner is the Rx FIFO if it is a free-to-receive matched structure; otherwise, the matching winner is the last non free-to-receive matched Mailbox

See the following table for a summary of matching possibilities.

Table 42-12. Matching possibilities and resulting reception structures

RFEN	IRMQ	MRP	Matched in MB	Matched in FIFO	Reception structure	Description
No FIFO, only MB, match is always MB first						
0	0	X[1]	None[2]	-[3]	None	Frame lost by no match
0	0	X	Free[4]	-	FirstMB	
0	1	X	None	-	None	Frame lost by no match
0	1	X	Free	-	FirstMb	
0	1	X	NotFree	-	LastMB	Overrun
FIFO enabled, no match in FIFO is as if FIFO does not exist						
1	0	X	None	None[5]	None	Frame lost by no match
1	0	X	Free	None	FirstMB	
1	1	X	None	None	None	Frame lost by no match
1	1	X	Free	None	FirstMb	
1	1	X	NotFree	None	LastMB	Overrun
FIFO enabled, Queue disabled						
1	0	0	X	NotFull[6]	FIFO	
1	0	0	None	Full[7]	None	Frame lost by FIFO full (FIFO Overflow)
1	0	0	Free	Full	FirstMB	
1	0	0	NotFree	Full	FirstMB	
1	0	1	None	NotFull	FIFO	
1	0	1	None	Full	None	Frame lost by FIFO full (FIFO Overflow)
1	0	1	Free	X	FirstMB	
1	0	1	NotFree	X	FirtsMb	Overrun
FIFO enabled, Queue enabled						
1	1	0	X	NotFull	FIFO	
1	1	0	None	Full	None	Frame lost by FIFO full (FIFO Overflow)
1	1	0	Free	Full	FirstMB	
1	1	0	NotFree	Full	LastMb	Overrun
1	1	1	None	NotFull	FIFO	
1	1	1	Free	X	FirstMB	
1	1	1	NotFree	NotFull	FIFO	
1	1	1	NotFree	Full	LastMb	Overrun

1. This is a don't care condition.
2. Matched in MB "None" means that the frame has not matched any MB (free-to-receive or non-free-to-receive).

3. This is a forbidden condition.
4. Matched in MB "Free" means that the frame matched at least one MB free-to-receive regardless of whether it has matched MBs non-free-to-receive.
5. Matched in FIFO "None" means that the frame has not matched any filter in FIFO. It is as if the FIFO didn't exist (CAN_CTRL2[RFEN]=0).
6. Matched in FIFO "NotFull" means that the frame has matched a FIFO filter and has empty slots to receive it.
7. Matched in FIFO "Full" means that the frame has matched a FIFO filter but couldn't store it because it has no empty slots to receive it.

If a non-safe Mailbox inactivation (see Mailbox inactivation) occurs during matching process and the Mailbox inactivated is the temporary matching winner, then the temporary matching winner is invalidated. The matching elements scan is not stopped nor restarted, it continues normally. The consequence is that the current matching process works as if the matching elements compared before the inactivation did not exist, therefore a message may be lost.

Suppose, for example, that the FIFO is disabled, IRMQ is enabled and there are two MBs with the same ID, and FlexCAN starts receiving messages with that ID. Let us say that these MBs are the second and the fifth in the array. When the first message arrives, the matching algorithm finds the first match in MB number 2. The code of this MB is EMPTY, so the message is stored there. When the second message arrives, the matching algorithm finds MB number 2 again, but it is not "free-to-receive", so it keeps looking, finds MB number 5 and stores the message there. If yet another message with the same ID arrives, the matching algorithm finds out that there are no matching MBs that are "free-to-receive", so it decides to overwrite the last matched MB, which is number 5. In doing so, it sets the CODE field of the MB to indicate OVERRUN.

The ability to match the same ID in more than one MB can be exploited to implement a reception queue (in addition to the full featured FIFO) to allow more time for the CPU to service the MBs. By programming more than one MB with the same ID, received messages are queued into the MBs. The CPU can examine the Time Stamp field of the MBs to determine the order in which the messages arrived.

Matching to a range of IDs is possible by using ID Acceptance Masks. FlexCAN supports individual masking per MB. See the description of the Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN_RXIMRx). During the matching algorithm, if a mask bit is asserted, then the corresponding ID bit is compared. If the mask bit is negated, the corresponding ID bit is a "don't care". Note that the Individual Mask Registers are implemented in RAM, so they are not initialized out of reset. Also, they can only be programmed while the module is in Freeze mode; otherwise, they are blocked by hardware.

FlexCAN also supports an alternate masking scheme with only four mask registers (CAN_RXFGMASK, CAN_RXMGMASK, CAN_RX14MASK and CAN_RX15MASK) for backwards compatibility with legacy applications. This alternate masking scheme is enabled when the IRMQ bit in the CAN_MCR Register is negated.

42.5.5 Move process

There are two types of move process: move-in and move-out.

42.5.5.1 Move-in

The move-in process is the copy of a message received by an Rx SMB to a Rx Mailbox or FIFO that has matched it. If the move destination is the Rx FIFO, attributes of the message are also copied to the CAN_RXFIR FIFO. Each Rx SMB has its own move-in process, but only one is performed at a given time as described ahead. The move-in starts only when the message held by the Rx SMB has a corresponding matching winner (see Matching process) and all of the following conditions are true:

- The CAN bus has reached or let past either:
  - The second bit of Intermission field next to the frame that carried the message that is in the Rx SMB
  - The first bit of an overload frame next to the frame that carried the message that is in the Rx SMB
- There is no ongoing matching process
- The destination Mailbox is not locked by the CPU
- There is no ongoing move-in process from another Rx SMB. If more than one move-in processes are to be started at the same time both are performed and the newest substitutes the oldest.

The term *pending move-in* is used throughout the documentation and stands for a move-to-be that still does not satisfy all of the aforementioned conditions.

The move-in is cancelled and the Rx SMB is able to receive another message if any of the following conditions is satisfied:

- The destination Mailbox is inactivated after the CAN bus has reached the first bit of Intermission field next to the frame that carried the message and its matching process has finished
- There is a previous pending move-in to the same destination Mailbox
- The Rx SMB is receiving a frame transmitted by the FlexCAN itself and the self-reception is disabled (CAN_MCR[SRXDIS] bit is asserted)
- Any CAN protocol error is detected

Note that the pending move-in is not cancelled if the module enters Freeze or Low-Power mode. It only stays on hold waiting for exiting Freeze and Low-Power mode and to be unlocked. If an MB is unlocked during Freeze mode, the move-in happens immediately.

The move-in process is the execution by the FlexCAN of the following steps:

1. Push IDHIT into the RXFIR FIFO if the message is destined to the Rx FIFO.
2. Read DATA0-3 and DATA4-7 words from the Rx SMB.
3. Write DATA0-3 and DATA4-7 words to the Rx Mailbox
4. Read the Control/Status and ID words from the Rx SMB.
5. Write Control/Status and ID words to the Rx Mailbox, and update the CODE field.

The move-in process is not atomic, in such a way that it is immediately cancelled by the inactivation of the destination Mailbox (see Mailbox inactivation) and in this case the Mailbox may be left partially updated, thus incoherent. The exception is if the move-in destination is an Rx FIFO Message Buffer, then the process cannot be cancelled.

The BUSY Bit (least significant bit of the CODE field) of the destination Message Buffer is asserted while the move-in is being performed to alert the CPU that the Message Buffer content is temporarily incoherent.

42.5.5.2 Move-out

The move-out process is the copy of the content from a Tx Mailbox to the Tx SMB when a message for transmission is available (see Section "Arbitration process"). The move-out occurs in the following conditions:

- The first bit of Intermission field
- During Bus Off state when TX Error Counter is in the 124 to 128 range
- During Bus Idle state
- During Wait For Bus Idle state

The move-out process is not atomic. Only the CPU has priority to access the memory concurrently out of Bus Idle state. In Bus Idle, the move-out has the lowest priority to the concurrent memory accesses.

42.5.6 Data coherence

In order to maintain data coherency and FlexCAN proper operation, the CPU must obey the rules described in Transmit process and Receive process.

42.5.6.1 Transmission abort mechanism

The abort mechanism provides a safe way to request the abortion of a pending transmission. A feedback mechanism is provided to inform the CPU if the transmission was aborted or if the frame could not be aborted and was transmitted instead.

Two primary conditions must be fulfilled in order to abort a transmission:

- CAN_MCR[AEN] bit must be asserted
- The first CPU action must be the writing of abort code (0b1001) into the CODE field of the Control and Status word.

Active MBs configured for transmission must be aborted first before they can be updated. If the abort code is written to a Mailbox that is currently being transmitted or to a Mailbox that was already loaded into the Tx SMB for transmission, the write operation is blocked and the transmission is not disturbed. However, the abort request is captured and kept pending until one of the following conditions is satisfied:

- The module loses the bus arbitration
- There is an error during the transmission
- The module is put into Freeze mode
- The module enters the BusOff state
- There is an overload frame

If none of the conditions above are reached, the MB is transmitted correctly, the interrupt flag is set in the IFLAG register, and an interrupt to the CPU is generated (if enabled). The abort request is automatically cleared when the interrupt flag is set. On the other hand, if one of the above conditions is reached, the frame is not transmitted; therefore, the abort code is written into the CODE field, the interrupt flag is set in the IFLAG, and an interrupt is (optionally) generated to the CPU.

If the CPU writes the abort code before the transmission begins internally, then the write operation is not blocked; therefore, the MB is updated and the interrupt flag is set. In this way the CPU just needs to read the abort code to make sure the active MB was *safely inactivated*. Although the AEN bit is asserted and the CPU wrote the abort code, in this case the MB is inactivated and not aborted, because the transmission did not start yet. One Mailbox is only aborted when the abort request is captured and kept pending until one of the previous conditions are satisfied.

The abort procedure can be summarized as follows:

- CPU checks the corresponding IFLAG and clears it, if asserted.

- CPU writes 0b1001 into the CODE field of the C/S word.
- CPU waits for the corresponding IFLAG indicating that the frame was either transmitted or aborted.
- CPU reads the CODE field to check if the frame was either transmitted (CODE=0b1000) or aborted (CODE=0b1001).
- It is necessary to clear the corresponding IFLAG in order to allow the MB to be reconfigured.

42.5.6.2 Mailbox inactivation

Inactivation is a mechanism provided to protect the Mailbox against updates by the FlexCAN internal processes, thus allowing the CPU to rely on Mailbox data coherence after having updated it, even in Normal mode.

Inactivation of transmission Mailboxes must be performed just when MCR[AEN] bit is deasserted.

If a Mailbox is inactivated, it participates in neither the arbitration process nor the matching process until it is reactivated. See Transmit process and Receive process for more detailed instructions on how to inactivate and reactivate a Mailbox.

To inactivate a Mailbox, the CPU must update its CODE field to INACTIVE (either 0b0000 or 0b1000).

Because the user is not able to synchronize the CODE field update with the FlexCAN internal processes, an inactivation can have the following consequences:

- A frame in the bus that matches the filtering of the inactivated Rx Mailbox may be lost without notice, even if there are other Mailboxes with the same filter
- A frame containing the message within the inactivated Tx Mailbox may be transmitted without setting the respective IFLAG

In order to perform a *safe inactivation* and avoid the above consequences for Tx Mailboxes, the CPU must use the Transmission Abort mechanism (see Transmission abort mechanism).

The inactivation automatically unlocks the Mailbox (see Mailbox lock mechanism).

NOTE

Message Buffers that are part of the Rx FIFO cannot be inactivated. There is no write protection on the FIFO region by

FlexCAN. CPU must maintain data coherency in the FIFO region when RFEN is asserted.

42.5.6.3 Mailbox lock mechanism

Other than Mailbox inactivation, FlexCAN has another data coherence mechanism for the receive process. When the CPU reads the Control and Status word of an Rx MB with codes FULL or OVERRUN, FlexCAN assumes that the CPU wants to read the whole MB in an atomic operation, and therefore it sets an internal lock flag for that MB. The lock is released when the CPU reads the Free Running Timer (global unlock operation), or when it reads the Control and Status word of another MB regardless of its code. A CPU write into the C/S word also unlocks the MB, but this procedure is not recommended for normal unlock use because it cancels a pending-move and potentially may lose a received message. The MB locking prevents a new frame from being written into the MB while the CPU is reading it.

NOTE

The locking mechanism applies only to Rx MBs that are not part of the FIFO and have a code different than INACTIVE (0b0000) or EMPTY[1] (0b0100). Also, Tx MBs can not be locked.

Suppose, for example, that the FIFO is disabled and the second and the fifth MBs of the array are programmed with the same ID, and FlexCAN has already received and stored messages into these two MBs. Suppose now that the CPU decides to read MB number 5 and at the same time another message with the same ID is arriving. When the CPU reads the Control and Status word of MB number 5, this MB is locked. The new message arrives and the matching algorithm finds out that there are no "free-to-receive" MBs, so it decides to override MB number 5. However, this MB is locked, so the new message can not be written there. It will remain in the Rx SMB waiting for the MB to be unlocked, and only then will be written to the MB.

If the MB is not unlocked in time and yet another new message with the same ID arrives, then the new message overwrites the one on the Rx SMB and there will be no indication of lost messages either in the CODE field of the MB or in the Error and Status Register.

While the message is being moved-in from the Rx SMB to the MB, the BUSY bit on the CODE field is asserted. If the CPU reads the Control and Status word and finds out that the BUSY bit is set, it should defer accessing the MB until the BUSY bit is negated.

1. In previous FlexCAN versions, reading the C/S word locked the MB even if it was EMPTY. This behavior is maintained when the IRMQ bit is negated.

Note

If the BUSY bit is asserted or if the MB is empty, then reading the Control and Status word does not lock the MB.

Inactivation takes precedence over locking. If the CPU inactivates a locked Rx MB, then its lock status is negated and the MB is marked as invalid for the current matching round. Any pending message on the Rx SMB will not be transferred anymore to the MB. An MB is unlocked when the CPU reads the Free Running Timer Register (see Section "Free Running Timer Register (CAN_TIMER)"), or the C/S word of another MB.

Lock and unlock mechanisms have the same functionality in both Normal and Freeze modes.

An unlock during Normal or Freeze mode results in the move-in of the pending message. However, the move-in is postponed if an unlock occurs during a low power mode (see Modes of operation), and it takes place only when the module resumes to Normal or Freeze modes.

42.5.7 Rx FIFO

The Rx FIFO is receive-only and is enabled by asserting the CAN_MCR[RFEN] bit. The reset value of this bit is zero to maintain software backward compatibility with previous versions of the module that did not have the FIFO feature.

The FIFO is 6-message deep. The memory region occupied by the FIFO structure (both Message Buffers and FIFO engine) is described in Rx FIFO structure. The CPU can read the received messages sequentially, in the order they were received, by repeatedly reading a Message Buffer structure at the output of the FIFO.

The CAN_IFLAG1[BUF5I] (Frames available in Rx FIFO) is asserted when there is at least one frame available to be read from the FIFO. An interrupt is generated if it is enabled by the corresponding mask bit. Upon receiving the interrupt, the CPU can read the message (accessing the output of the FIFO as a Message Buffer) and the CAN_RXFIR register and then clear the interrupt. If there are more messages in the FIFO the act of clearing the interrupt updates the output of the FIFO with the next message and update the CAN_RXFIR with the attributes of that message, reissuing the interrupt to the CPU. Otherwise, the flag remains negated. The output of the FIFO is only valid whilst the CAN_IFLAG1[BUF5I] is asserted.

The CAN_IFLAG1[BUF6I] (Rx FIFO Warning) is asserted when the number of unread messages within the Rx FIFO is increased to 5 from 4 due to the reception of a new one, meaning that the Rx FIFO is almost full. The flag remains asserted until the CPU clears it.

The CAN_IFLAG1[BUF7I] (Rx FIFO Overflow) is asserted when an incoming message was lost because the Rx FIFO is full. Note that the flag will not be asserted when the Rx FIFO is full and the message was captured by a Mailbox. The flag remains asserted until the CPU clears it.

Clearing one of those three flags does not affect the state of the other two.

An interrupt is generated if an IFLAG bit is asserted and the corresponding mask bit is asserted too.

A powerful filtering scheme is provided to accept only frames intended for the target application, reducing the interrupt servicing work load. The filtering criteria is specified by programming a table of up to 128 32-bit registers, according to CAN_CTRL2[RFFN] setting, that can be configured to one of the following formats (see also Rx FIFO structure):

- Format A: 128 IDAFs (extended or standard IDs including IDE and RTR)
- Format B: 256 IDAFs (standard IDs or extended 14-bit ID slices including IDE and RTR)
- Format C: 512 IDAFs (standard or extended 8-bit ID slices)

Note

A chosen format is applied to all entries of the filter table. It is not possible to mix formats within the table.

Every frame available in the FIFO has a corresponding IDHIT (Identifier Acceptance Filter Hit Indicator) that can read in the IDHIT field from C/S word, as shown in the Rx FIFO Structure description. Another way the CPU can obtain this information is by accessing the CAN_RXFIR register. The CAN_RXFIR[IDHIT] field refers to the message at the output of the FIFO and is valid while the CAN_IFLAG1[BUF5I] flag is asserted. The CAN_RXFIR register must be read only before clearing the flag, which guarantees that the information refers to the correct frame within the FIFO.

Up to 16 elements of the filter table are individually affected by the Individual Mask Registers (CAN_RXIMRx), according to the setting of CAN_CTRL2[RFFN], allowing very powerful filtering criteria to be defined. If the CAN_MCR[IRMQ] bit is negated, then the FIFO filter table is affected by CAN_RXFGMASK.

42.5.7.1 Rx FIFO under DMA Operation

The receive-only FIFO can support DMA, this feature is enabled by asserting both the CAN_MCR[RFEN] and CAN_MCR[DMA] bits. The reset value of CAN_MCR[DMA] bit is zero to maintain backward compatibility with previous versions of the module that did not have the DMA feature.

The DMA controller can read the received message by reading a Message Buffer structure at the FIFO output port at the 0x80-0x8C address range.

When CAN_MCR[DMA] is asserted the CPU must not access the FIFO output port address range. Before enabling the CAN_MCR[DMA], the CPU must service the IFLAGs asserted in the Rx FIFO region. Otherwise, these IFLAGs may show that the FIFO has data to be serviced, and mistakenly generate a DMA request. Before disabling the CAN_MCR[DMA], the CPU must perform a clear FIFO operation.

The CAN_IFLAG1[BUF5I] (Frames available in Rx FIFO) is asserted when there is at least one frame available to be read from the FIFO, consequently a DMA request is generated simultaneously. Upon receiving the request, the DMA controller can read the message (accessing the output of the FIFO as a Message Buffer). The DMA reading process must end by reading address 0x8C, which clears the CAN_IFLAG1[BUF5I] and updates both the FIFO output with the next message (if FIFO is not empty) and the CAN_RXFIR register with the attributes of the new message. If there are more messages stored in the FIFO, the CAN_IFLAG1[BUF5I] will be re-asserted and another DMA request is issued. Otherwise, the flag remains negated.

NOTE

CAN_RXFIR register contents cannot be read after DMA completes the FIFO read. The IDHIT information is also available in the C/S word at address 0x080 (see Rx FIFO structure.

The CAN_IFLAG1[BUF6I] and CAN_IFLAG1[BUF7I] are not used when the DMA feature is enabled.

When FlexCAN is working with DMA, the CPU does not receive any Rx FIFO interruption and must not clear the related IFLAGs. In addition, the related IMASKs are not used to mask the generation of DMA requests.

42.5.7.2 Clear FIFO Operation

When CAN_MCR[RFEN] is asserted, the clear FIFO operation is a feature used to empty FIFO contents. With CAN_MCR[RFEN] asserted the Clear FIFO occurs when the CPU writes 1 in CAN_IFLAG1[BUF0I]. This operation can only be performed in Freeze

Mode and is blocked by hardware in other modes. This operation does not clear the FIFO IFLAGs, consequently the CPU must service all FIFO IFLAGs before execute the clear FIFO task.

When Rx FIFO is working with DMA, the clear FIFO operation clears the CAN_IFLAG1[BUF5I] and the DMA request is canceled.

CAUTION

Clear FIFO operation does not clear IFLAGs, except when CAN_MCR[DMA] is asserted, in this case only the CAN_IFLAG1[BUF5I] is cleared.

42.5.8 CAN protocol related features

This section describes the CAN protocol related features.

42.5.8.1 Remote frames

Remote frame is a special kind of frame. The user can program a mailbox to be a Remote Request Frame by configuring the mailbox as Transmit with the RTR bit set to '1'. After the remote request frame is transmitted successfully, the mailbox becomes a Receive Message Buffer, with the same ID as before.

When a remote request frame is received by FlexCAN, it can be treated in three ways, depending on Remote Request Storing (CTRL2[RRS]) and Rx FIFO Enable (MCR[RFEN]) bits:

- If RRS is negated the frame's ID is compared to the IDs of the Transmit Message Buffers with the CODE field 0b1010. If there is a matching ID, then this mailbox frame will be transmitted. Note that if the matching mailbox has the RTR bit set, then FlexCAN will transmit a remote frame as a response. The received remote request frame is not stored in a receive buffer. It is only used to trigger a transmission of a frame in response. The mask registers are not used in remote frame matching, and all ID bits (except RTR) of the incoming received frame should match. In the case that a remote request frame is received and matches a mailbox, this message buffer immediately enters the internal arbitration process, but is considered as a normal Tx mailbox, with no higher priority. The data length of this frame is independent of the DLC field in the remote frame that initiated its transmission.

- If RRS is asserted the frame's ID is compared to the IDs of the receive mailboxes with the CODE field 0b0100, 0b0010 or 0b0110. If there is a matching ID, then this mailbox will store the remote frame in the same fashion of a data frame. No automatic remote response frame will be generated. The mask registers are used in the matching process.
- If RFEN is asserted FlexCAN will not generate an automatic response for remote request frames that match the FIFO filtering criteria. If the remote frame matches one of the target IDs, it will be stored in the FIFO and presented to the CPU. Note that for filtering formats A and B, it is possible to select whether remote frames are accepted or not. For format C, remote frames are always accepted (if they match the ID). Remote Request Frames are considered as normal frames, and generate a FIFO overflow when a successful reception occurs and the FIFO is already full.

42.5.8.2 Overload frames

FlexCAN does transmit overload frames due to detection of following conditions on CAN bus:

- Detection of a dominant bit in the first/second bit of Intermission
- Detection of a dominant bit at the 7th bit (last) of End of Frame field (Rx frames)
- Detection of a dominant bit at the 8th bit (last) of Error Frame Delimiter or Overload Frame Delimiter

42.5.8.3 Time stamp

The value of the Free Running Timer is sampled at the beginning of the Identifier field on the CAN bus, and is stored at the end of "move-in" in the TIME STAMP field, providing network behavior with respect to time.

The Free Running Timer is clocked by the FlexCAN bit-clock, which defines the baud rate on the CAN bus. During a message transmission/reception, it increments by one for each bit that is received or transmitted. When there is no message on the bus, it counts using the previously programmed baud rate.

The Free Running Timer is not incremented during Disable, Doze, Stop, and Freeze modes. It can be reset upon a specific frame reception, enabling network time synchronization. See the TSYN description in Control 1 Register (CAN_CTRL1).

42.5.8.4 Protocol timing

The following figure shows the structure of the clock generation circuitry that feeds the CAN Protocol Engine (PE) submodule. The clock source bit CLKSRC in the CAN_CTRL1 Register defines whether the internal clock is connected to the output of a crystal oscillator (Oscillator Clock) or to the Peripheral Clock. In order to guarantee reliable operation, the clock source should be selected while the module is in Disable Mode (MDIS bit set in the Module Configuration Register).

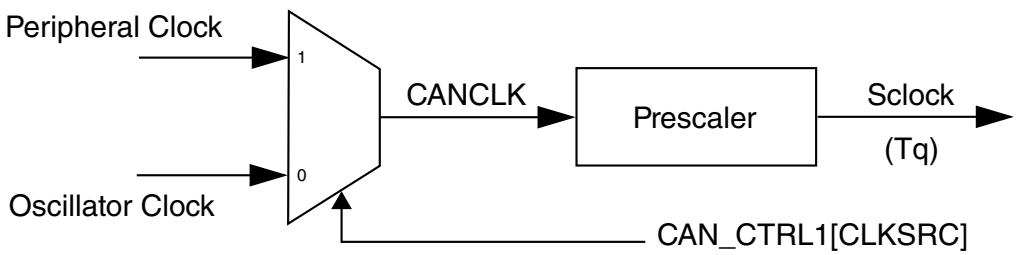


Figure 42-2. CAN engine clocking scheme

The oscillator clock should be selected whenever a tight tolerance (up to 0.1%) is required in the CAN bus timing. The crystal oscillator clock has better jitter performance than the peripheral clock.

The FlexCAN module supports a variety of means to setup bit timing parameters that are required by the CAN protocol. The Control 1 Register (CAN_CTRL1) has various fields used to control bit timing parameters: PRESDIV, PROPSEG, PSEG1, PSEG2 and RJW.

The CAN Bit Timing register (CAN_CBT) extends the range of the CAN bit timing variables in CAN_CTRL1.

The PRESDIV field (as well as its extended range EPRESDIV) defines the Prescaler Value (see the equation below) that generates the Serial Clock (Sclock), whose period defines the 'time quantum' used to compose the CAN waveform. A time quantum (Tq) is the atomic unit of time handled by the CAN engine.

$$Tq = \frac{(\text{PRESDIV} + 1)}{f_{\text{CANCLK}}}$$

The bit rate, which defines the rate the CAN message is either received or transmitted, is given by the formula:

CAN Bit Time = (Number of Time Quanta in 1 bit time) * Tq

$$\text{Bit Rate} = \frac{1}{\text{CAN Bit Time}}$$

A bit time is subdivided into three segments[1] (see Figure 42-3 and Table 42-13):

- SYNC_SEG: This segment has a fixed length of one time quantum. Signal edges are expected to happen within this section
- Time Segment 1: This segment includes the Propagation Segment and the Phase Segment 1 of the CAN standard. It can be programmed by setting the PROPSEG and the PSEG1 fields of the CAN_CTRL1 Register so that their sum (plus 2) is in the range of 4 to 16 time quanta. When CAN_CBT[BTF] bit is asserted, FlexCAN uses EPROPSEG and EPSEG1 fields from CAN_CBT register so that their sum (plus 2) is in the range of 2 to 96 time quanta.
- Time Segment 2: This segment represents the Phase Segment 2 of the CAN standard. It can be programmed by setting the PSEG2 field of the CAN_CTRL1 Register (plus 1) to be 2 to 8 time quanta long. When CAN_CBT[BTF] bit is asserted, FlexCAN uses EPSEG2 fields of CAN_CBT register so that its value (plus 1) is in the range of 2 to 32 time quanta. The Time Segnment 2 cannot be smaller than the Information Processing Time (IPT), which value is 2 time quanta in FlexCAN.

NOTE

The bit time defined by the above time segments must not be smaller than 5 time quanta. For bit time calculations, use an Information Processing Time (IPT) of 2, which is the value implemented in the FlexCAN module.

1. For further explanation of the underlying concepts, see ISO 11898-1. See also the CAN 2.0A/B protocol specification for bit timing.

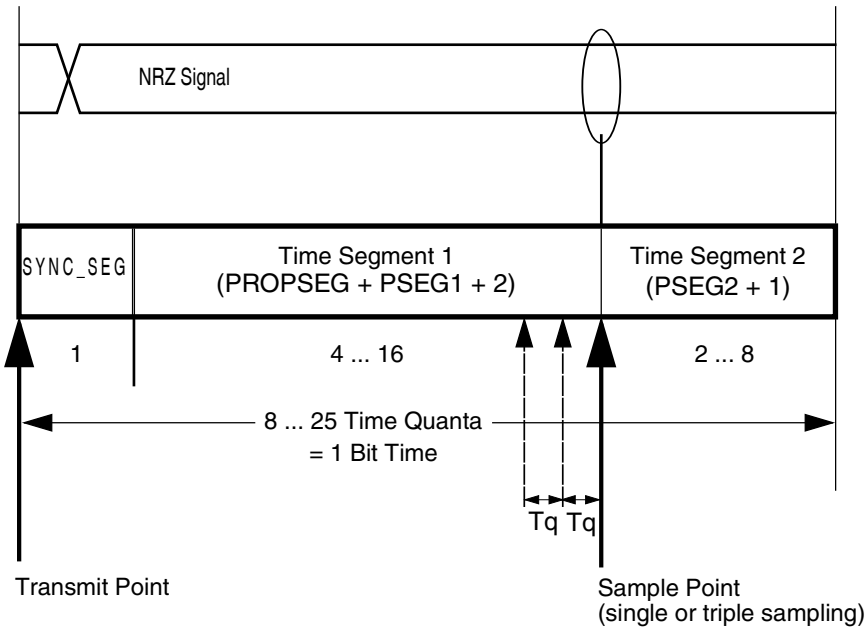


Figure 42-3. Segments within the bit time (example using CAN_CTRL1 bit timing variables for Classical CAN format)

Table 42-13. Time segment syntax

Syntax	Description
SYNC_SEG	System expects transitions to occur on the bus during this period.
TSEG1	Corresponds to the sum of PROPSEG and PSEG1.
TSEG2	Corresponds to the PSEG2 value.
Transmit Point	A node in transmit mode transfers a new value to the CAN bus at this point.
Sample Point	A node samples the bus at this point. If the three samples per bit option is selected, then this point marks the position of the third sample.

The following table gives some examples of the CAN compliant segment settings for Classical CAN format (Bosch CAN 2.0B) messages.

Table 42-14. Bosch CAN 2.0B standard compliant bit time segment settings

Time segment 1	Time segment 2	Re-synchronization jump width
5 .. 10	2	1 .. 2
4 .. 11	3	1 .. 3
5 .. 12	4	1 .. 4
6 .. 13	5	1 .. 4
7 .. 14	6	1 .. 4
8 .. 15	7	1 .. 4
9 .. 16	8	1 .. 4

Note

The user must ensure the bit time settings are in compliance with the CAN Protocol standard (ISO 11898-1).

Whenever CAN bit is used as a measure of time duration (e.g. estimating the occurrence of a CAN bit event in a message), the number of peripheral clocks in one CAN bit (NumClkBit) can be calculated as:

$$\text{NumClkBit} = \frac{f_{SYS}}{f_{CANCLK}} \text{ X } (\text{PRESDIV} + 1) \text{ X } (\text{PROPSEG} + \text{PSEG1} + \text{PSEG2} + 4)$$

where:

- NumClkBit is the number of peripheral clocks in one CAN bit;
- f_{CANCLK} is the Protocol Engine (PE) Clock (see Figure "CAN Engine Clocking Scheme"), in Hz;
- f_{SYS} is the frequency of operation of the system (CHI) clock, in Hz;
- PSEG1 is the value in CAN_CTRL1[PSEG1] field;
- PSEG2 is the value in CAN_CTRL1[PSEG2] field;
- PROPSEG is the value in CAN_CTRL1[PROPSEG] field;
- PRESDIV is the value in CAN_CTRL1[PRESDIV] field.

The formula above is also applicable to the alternative CAN bit timing variables described in the CAN Bit Timing Register (CAN_CBT).

For example, 180 CAN bits = (180 x NumClkBit) peripheral clock periods.

42.5.8.5 Arbitration and matching timing

During normal reception and transmission, the matching, arbitration, move-in and move-out processes are executed during certain time windows inside the CAN frame, as shown in the following figures.

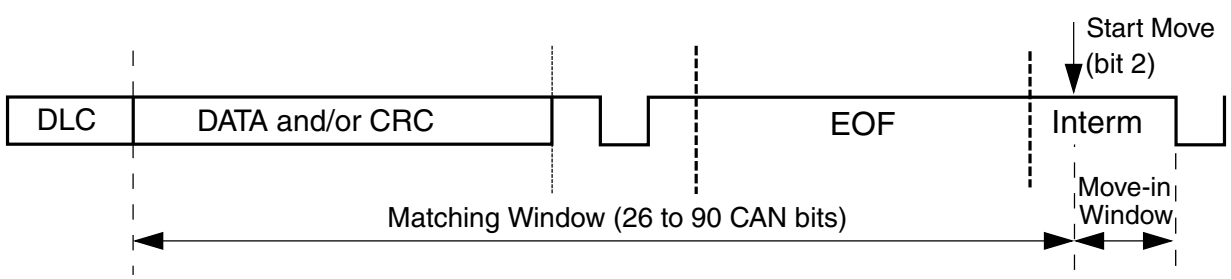


Figure 42-4. Matching and move-in time windows

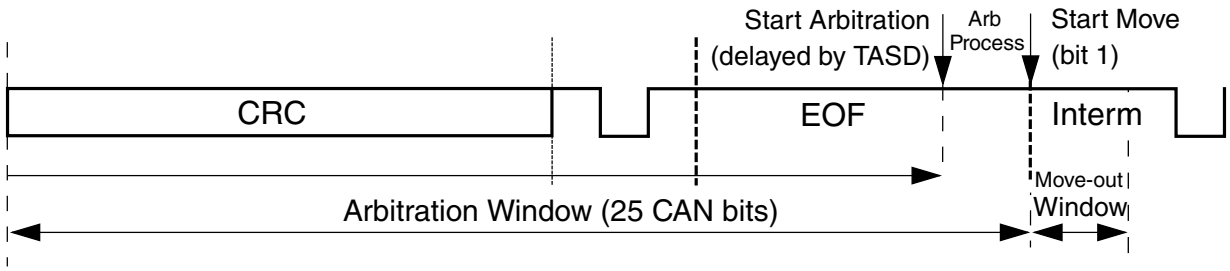


Figure 42-5. Arbitration and move-out time windows

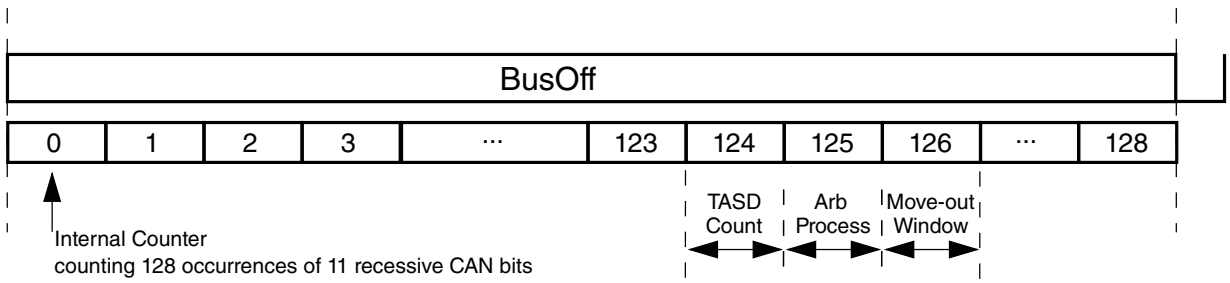


Figure 42-6. Arbitration at the end of bus off and move-out time windows

NOTE

In the preceding figures, the matching and arbitration timing does not take into account the delay caused by the concurrent memory access due to the CPU or other internal FlexCAN sub-blocks.

42.5.8.6 Tx Arbitration start delay

The Tx Arbitration Start Delay (TASD) bit field in Control 2 register (CAN_CTRL2[TASD]) is a variable that indicates the number of CAN bits used by FlexCAN to delay the Tx Arbitration process start point from the first bit of CRC field of the current frame. This variable can be written only in Freeze mode because it is blocked by hardware in other modes.

The transmission performance is impacted by the ability of the CPU to reconfigure Message Buffers (MBs) for transmission after the end of the internal Arbitration process, where FlexCAN finds the winner MB for transmission (see Arbitration process). If the Arbitration ends too early before the first bit of Intermission field, then there is a chance that the CPU reconfigures some Tx MBs and the winner MB is no longer the best candidate to be transmitted.

TASD is useful to optimize the transmission performance by defining the Arbitration start point, as shown in the next figure, based on factors such as:

- The peripheral-to-oscillator clock ratio

- CAN bit timing variables that determine the CAN bit rate
- The number of Message Buffers (MBs) in use by the Matching and Arbitration processes.

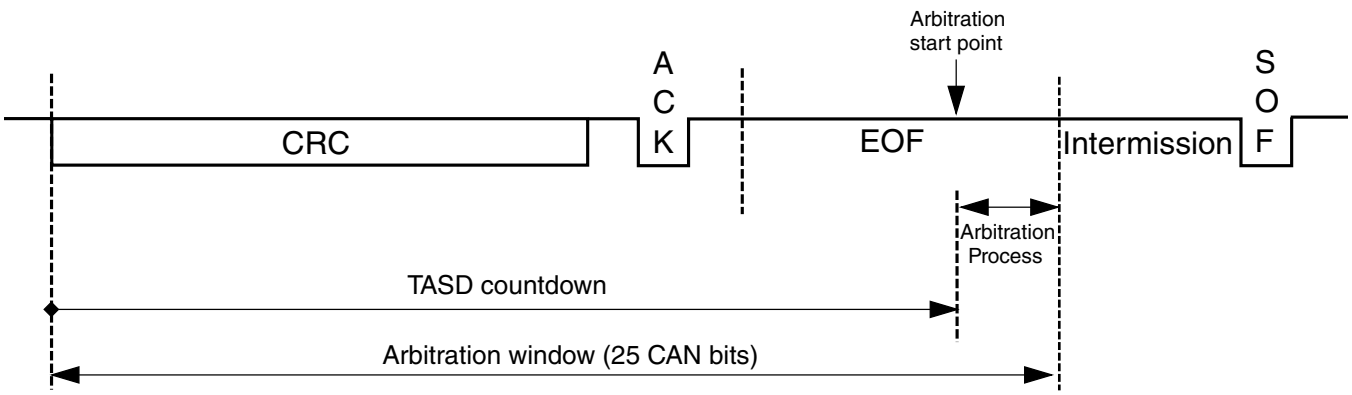


Figure 42-7. Optimal Tx Arbitration start point

The duration of an Arbitration process, in terms of CAN bits, is directly proportional to the number of available MBs and to the CAN bit rate, and inversely proportional to the peripheral clock frequency.

The optimal Arbitration timing is that in which the last MB is scanned right before the first bit of the Intermission field of a CAN frame. For instance, if there are few MBs and the peripheral/oscillator clock ratio is high and the CAN baud rate is low, then the Arbitration can be placed closer to the frame's end, adding more delay to its start point, and vice-versa.

If TASD is set to 0 then the Arbitration start is not delayed and more time is reserved for Arbitration. On the other hand, if TASD is close to 24 then the CPU can configure a Tx MB later and less time is reserved for Arbitration. If too little time is reserved for Arbitration the FlexCAN may be not be able to find a winner MB in time to be transmitted with the best chance to win the bus arbitration against external nodes on the CAN bus.

The optimal TASD value can be calculated as follows:

$$TASD = 25 - \left(\frac{f_{CANCLK} \times [\, MAXMB + 3 - (RFEN \times 8) - (RFEN \times RFFN \times 2)\,] \times 2}{f_{SYS} \times [1 + (PSEG1 + 1) + (PSEG2 + 1) + (PROPSEG + 1)\,] \times (PRESDIV + 1)} \right)$$

where:

- MAXMB is the value in CAN_CTRL1[MAXMB] field
- f_{CANCLK} is the oscillator clock, in Hz
- f_{SYS} is the peripheral clock, in Hz

- RFEN is the value in CAN_CTRL1[RFEN] bit
- RFFN is the value in CAN_CTRL2[RFFN] field
- PSEG1 is the value in CAN_CTRL1[PSEG1] field
- PSEG2 is the value in CAN_CTRL1[PSEG2] field
- PROPSEG is the value in CAN_CTRL1[PROPSEG] field
- PRESDIV is the value in CAN_CTRL1[PRESDIV] field

See also Protocol timing for more details.

42.5.9 Clock domains and restrictions

The FlexCAN module has two clock domains asynchronous to each other:

- The Bus Domain feeds the Control Host Interface (CHI) submodule and is derived from the peripheral clock.
- The Oscillator Domain feeds the CAN Protocol Engine (PE) submodule and is derived directly from a crystal oscillator clock, so that very low jitter performance can be achieved on the CAN bus.

When CAN_CTRL1[CLKSRC] bit is set, synchronous operation occurs because both domains are connected to the peripheral clock (creating a 1:1 ratio between the peripheral and oscillator clocks).

When the two domains are connected to clocks with different frequencies and/or phases, there are restrictions on the frequency relationship between the two clock domains. In the case of asynchronous operation, the Bus Domain clock frequency must always be greater than the Oscillator Domain clock frequency.

NOTE

Asynchronous operation with a 1:1 ratio between peripheral and oscillator clocks is not allowed.

When doing matching and arbitration, FlexCAN needs to scan the whole Message Buffer memory during the time slot of one CAN frame, comprised of a number of CAN bits. In order to have sufficient time to do that, the following requirements must be observed:

- The peripheral clock frequency can not be smaller than the oscillator clock frequency
- For 16 Mailboxes, the minimum number of peripheral clocks per CAN bit is 16

The minimum number of peripheral clocks per CAN bit determines the minimum peripheral clock frequency for an expected CAN bit rate. The CAN bit rate depends on the number of time quanta in a CAN bit, that can be defined by adjusting one or more of the bit timing values contained in either the Control 1 Register (CAN_CTRL1) or CAN Bit Time register (CAN_CBT). The time quantum (Tq) is defined in Protocol timing. The minimum number of time quanta per CAN bit must be 8; therefore, the oscillator clock frequency should be at least 8 times the CAN bit rate.

42.5.10 Modes of operation details

The FlexCAN module has functional modes and low-power modes. See Modes of operation for an introductory description of all the modes of operation. The following sub-sections contain functional details on Freeze mode and the low-power modes.

CAUTION

"Permanent Dominant" failure on CAN Bus line is not supported by FlexCAN. If a Low-Power request or Freeze mode request is done during a "Permanent Dominant", the corresponding acknowledge can never be asserted.

42.5.10.1 Freeze mode

This mode is requested either by the CPU through the assertion of the HALT bit in the CAN_MCR Register or when the chip is put into Debug mode. In both cases it is also necessary that the FRZ bit is asserted in the CAN_MCR Register and the module is not in a low-power mode.

The acknowledgement is obtained through the assertion by the FlexCAN of FRZ_ACK bit in the same register. The CPU must only consider the FlexCAN in Freeze mode when both request and acknowledgement conditions are satisfied.

When Freeze mode is requested, FlexCAN does the following:

- Waits to be in either Intermission, Passive Error, Bus Off or Idle state
- Waits for all internal activities like arbitration, matching, move-in and move-out to finish. A pending move-in does not prevent going to Freeze mode.
- Ignores the Rx input pin and drives the Tx pin as recessive
- Stops the prescaler, thus halting all CAN protocol activities

- Grants write access to the Error Counters Register, which is read-only in other modes
- Sets the NOT_RDY and FRZ_ACK bits in CAN_MCR

After requesting Freeze mode, the user must wait for the FRZ_ACK bit to be asserted in CAN_MCR before executing any other action, otherwise FlexCAN may operate in an unpredictable way. In Freeze mode, all memory mapped registers are accessible, except for CAN_CTRL1[CLKSRC] bit that can be read but cannot be written.

Exiting Freeze mode is done in one of the following ways:

- CPU negates the FRZ bit in the CAN_MCR Register
- The chip is removed from Debug Mode and/or the HALT bit is negated

The FRZ_ACK bit is negated after the protocol engine recognizes the negation of the freeze request. When out of Freeze mode, FlexCAN tries to re-synchronize to the CAN bus by waiting for 11 consecutive recessive bits.

42.5.10.2 Module Disable mode

This low power mode is normally used to temporarily disable a complete FlexCAN block, with no power consumption. It is requested by the CPU through the assertion of the CAN_MCR[MDIS] bit, and the acknowledgement is obtained through the assertion by the FlexCAN of the CAN_MCR[LPMACK] bit. The CPU must only consider the FlexCAN in Disable mode when both request and acknowledgement conditions are satisfied.

If the module is disabled during Freeze mode, it requests to disable the clocks to the PE and CHI sub-modules, sets the LPMACK bit and negates the FRZACK bit.

If the module is disabled during transmission or reception, FlexCAN does the following:

- Waits to be in either Idle or Bus Off state, or else waits for the third bit of Intermission and then checks it to be recessive
- Waits for all internal activities like arbitration, matching, move-in and move-out to finish. A pending move-in is not taken into account.
- Ignores its Rx input pin and drives its Tx pin as recessive
- Shuts down the clocks to the PE and CHI sub-modules
- Sets the NOTRDY and LPMACK bits in CAN_MCR

The Bus Interface Unit continues to operate, enabling the CPU to access memory mapped registers, except the Rx Mailboxes Global Mask Registers, the Rx Buffer 14 Mask Register, the Rx Buffer 15 Mask Register, the Rx FIFO Global Mask Register. The Rx FIFO Information Register, the Message Buffers, the Rx Individual Mask Registers, and the reserved words within RAM may not be accessed when the module is in Disable Mode. Exiting from this mode is done by negating the MDIS bit by the CPU, which causes the FlexCAN to request to resume the clocks and negate the LPMACK bit after the CAN protocol engine recognizes the negation of disable mode requested by the CPU.

42.5.10.3 Doze mode

This is a system low power mode in which the CPU bus is kept alive and a global Doze mode request is sent to all peripherals asking them to enter low-power mode. When Doze mode is globally requested, the DOZE bit in CAN_MCR Register needs to have been asserted previously for Doze mode to be triggered. The acknowledgement is obtained through the assertion by the FlexCAN of the LPMACK bit in the same register. The CPU must only consider the FlexCAN in Doze mode when both request and acknowledgement conditions are satisfied.

If Doze mode is triggered during Freeze mode, FlexCAN requests to shut down the clocks to the PE and CHI sub-modules, sets the LPMACK bit and negates the FRZACK bit. If Doze Mode is triggered during transmission or reception, FlexCAN does the following:

- Waits to be in either Idle or Bus Off state, or else waits for the third bit of Intermission and checks it to be recessive
- Waits for all internal activities like arbitration, matching, move-in and move-out to finish. A pending move-in is not taken into account.
- Ignores its Rx input pin and drives its Tx pin as recessive
- Shuts down the clocks to the PE and CHI sub-modules
- Sets the NOTRDY and LPMACK bits in CAN_MCR

The Bus Interface Unit continues to operate, enabling the CPU to access memory mapped registers, except the Rx Mailboxes Global Mask Registers, the Rx Buffer 14 Mask Register, the Rx Buffer 15 Mask Register, the Rx FIFO Global Mask Register. The Rx FIFO Information Register, the Message Buffers, the Rx Individual Mask Registers, and the reserved words within RAM may not be accessed when the module is in Doze Mode.

Exiting Doze mode is done in one of the following ways:

- CPU removing the Doze mode request
- CPU negating the DOZE bit of the CAN_MCR Register
- Self Wake mechanism

In the Self Wake mechanism, if the SLFWAK bit in CAN_MCR Register was set at the time FlexCAN entered Doze mode, then upon detection of a recessive to dominant transition on the CAN bus, FlexCAN negates the DOZE bit, requests to resume its clocks and negates the LPMACK after the CAN protocol engine recognizes the negation of the Doze mode request. It also sets the WAKINT bit in the ESR Register and, if enabled by the WAKMSK bit in CAN_MCR, generates a Wake Up interrupt to the CPU. FlexCAN will then wait for 11 consecutive recessive bits to synchronize to the CAN bus. As a consequence, it will not receive the frame that woke it up. The following table details the effect of SLFWAK and WAKMSK upon wake-up from Doze mode.

Table 42-15. Wake-up from Doze mode

SLFWAK	WAKINT	WAKMSK	FlexCAN clocks enabled	Wake-up interrupt generated
0	-	-	No	No
0	-	-	No	No
1	0	0	No	No
1	0	1	No	No
1	1	0	Yes	No
1	1	1	Yes	Yes

The sensitivity to CAN bus activity can be modified by applying a low-pass filter function to the Rx CAN input line while in Doze Mode. See the WAKSRC bit in the description of the Module Configuration Register (CAN_MCR). This feature can be used to protect FlexCAN from waking up due to short glitches on the CAN bus lines. Such glitches can result from electromagnetic interference within noisy environments.

42.5.10.4 Stop mode

This is a system low-power mode in which all chip clocks can be stopped for maximum power savings. The Stop mode is globally requested by the CPU and the acknowledgement is obtained through the assertion by the FlexCAN of a Stop Acknowledgement signal. The CPU must only consider the FlexCAN in Stop mode when both request and acknowledgement conditions are satisfied.

If FlexCAN receives the global Stop mode request during Freeze mode, it sets the LPMACK bit, negates the FRZACK bit and then sends the Stop Acknowledge signal to the CPU, in order to shut down the clocks globally.

If Stop mode is requested during transmission or reception, FlexCAN does the following:

- Waits to be in either Idle or Bus Off state, or else waits for the third bit of Intermission and checks it to be recessive
- Waits for all internal activities like arbitration, matching, move-in and move-out to finish. A pending move-in is not taken into account.
- Ignores its Rx input pin and drives its Tx pin as recessive
- Sets the NOTRDY and LPMACK bits in CAN_MCR
- Sends a Stop Acknowledge signal to the CPU, so that it can shut down the clocks globally

Stop mode is exited when the CPU resumes the clocks and removes the Stop Mode request. This can be as a result of the Self Wake mechanism.

In the Self Wake mechanism, if the SLFWAK bit in CAN_MCR Register was set at the time FlexCAN entered Stop mode, then upon detection of a recessive to dominant transition on the CAN bus, FlexCAN sets the WAKINT bit in the CAN_ESR Register and, if enabled by the WAKMSK bit in CAN_MCR, generates a Wake Up interrupt to the CPU. Upon receiving the interrupt, the CPU should resume the clocks and remove the Stop mode request. FlexCAN will then wait for 11 consecutive recessive bits to synchronize to the CAN bus. As a consequence, it will not receive the frame that woke it up. The following table details the effect of SLFWAK and WAKMSK upon wake-up from Stop mode. Note that wake-up from Stop mode only works when both bits are asserted.

After the CAN protocol engine recognizes the negation of the Stop mode request, the FlexCAN negates the LPMACK bit. FlexCAN will then wait for 11 consecutive recessive bits to synchronize to the CAN bus. As a consequence, it will not receive the frame that woke it up.

Table 42-16. Wake-up from Stop Mode

SLFWAK	WAKINT	WAKMSK	Chip clocks enabled	Wake-up interrupt generated
0	-	-	No	No
0	-	-	No	No
1	0	0	No	No

Table continues on the next page...

Table 42-16. Wake-up from Stop Mode (continued)

SLFWAK	WAKINT	WAKMSK	Chip clocks enabled	Wake-up interrupt generated
1	0	1	No	No
1	1	0	No	No
1	1	1	Yes	Yes

The sensitivity to CAN bus activity can be modified by applying a low-pass filter function to the Rx CAN input line while in Stop mode. See the WAKSRC bit in in the description of the Module Configuration Register (CAN_MCR). This feature can be used to protect FlexCAN from waking up due to short glitches on the CAN bus lines. Such glitches can result from electromagnetic interference within noisy environments.

42.5.11 Interrupts

The module has many interrupt sources: interrupts due to message buffers and interrupts due to the ORed interrupts from MBs, Bus Off, Bus Off Done, Error, Wake Up, Tx Warning, and Rx Warning.

Each one of the message buffers can be an interrupt source, if its corresponding IMASK bit is set. There is no distinction between Tx and Rx interrupts for a particular buffer, under the assumption that the buffer is initialized for either transmission or reception. Each of the buffers has an assigned flag bit in the CAN_IFLAG registers. The bit is set when the corresponding buffer completes a successful transfer and is cleared when the CPU writes it to 1 (unless another interrupt is generated at the same time).

Note

It must be guaranteed that the CPU clears only the bit causing the current interrupt. For this reason, bit manipulation instructions (BSET) must not be used to clear interrupt flags. These instructions may cause accidental clearing of interrupt flags which are set after entering the current interrupt service routine.

If the Rx FIFO is enabled (CAN_MCR[RFEN] = 1) and DMA is disabled (CAN_MCR[DMA] = 0), the interrupts corresponding to MBs 0 to 7 have different meanings. Bit 7 of the CAN_IFLAG1 register becomes the "FIFO Overflow" flag; bit 6 becomes the "FIFO Warning" flag, bit 5 becomes the "Frames Available in FIFO" flag and bits 4-0 are unused. See the description of the Interrupt Flags 1 Register (CAN_IFLAG1) for more information.

If both Rx FIFO and DMA are enabled (CAN_MCR[RFEN] and CAN_MCR[DMA] = 1) the FlexCAN does not generate any FIFO interrupt. Bit 5 of the CAN_IFLAG1 register still indicates "Frames Available in FIFO" and generates a DMA request. Bits 7, 6, 4-0 are unused.

For a combined interrupt where multiple MB interrupt sources are OR'd together, the interrupt is generated when any of the associated MBs (or FIFO, if applicable) generates an interrupt. In this case, the CPU must read the CAN_IFLAG registers to determine which MB or FIFO source caused the interrupt.

The interrupt sources for Bus Off, Bus Off Done, Error, Wake Up, Tx Warning and Rx Warning generate interrupts like the MB interrupt sources, and can be read from CAN_ESR1 register. The Bus Off, Error, Tx Warning, and Rx Warning interrupt mask bits are located in the CAN_CTRL1 Register; the Wake-Up interrupt mask bit is located in the CAN_MCR.

42.5.12 Bus interface

The CPU access to FlexCAN registers are subject to the following rules:

- Unrestricted read and write access to supervisor registers (registers identified with S/U in Table "Module Memory Map" in Supervisor Mode or with S only) results in access error.
- Read and write access to implemented reserved address space results in access error.
- Write access to positions whose bits are all currently read-only results in access error. If at least one of the bits is not read-only then no access error is issued. Write permission to positions or some of their bits can change depending on the mode of operation or transitory state. Refer to register and bit descriptions for details.
- Read and write access to unimplemented address space results in access error.
- Read and write access to RAM located positions during Low Power Mode results in access error.
- If MAXMB in CAN MCR register is programmed with a value smaller than the available number of MBs, then the unused memory space can be used as general purpose RAM space. Note that reserved words within RAM cannot be used. As an example, suppose FlexCAN's RAM can support up to 16 MBs, CAN_CTRL2[RFFN] is 0x0, and CAN_MCR[MAXMB] is programmed with zero. The maximum number of MBs in this case becomes one. The RAM starts at 0x0080, and the space from 0x0080 to 0x008F is used by the one MB. The memory space from 0x0090 to 0x017F is available. The space between 0x0180 and 0x087F is

reserved. The space from 0x0880 to 0x0883 is used by the one Individual Mask and the available memory in the Mask Registers space would be from 0x0884 to 0x08BF. From 0x08C0 through 0x09DF there are reserved words for internal use which cannot be used as general purpose RAM. As a general rule, free memory space for general purpose depends only on MAXMB.

42.6 Initialization/application information

This section provide instructions for initializing the FlexCAN module.

42.6.1 FlexCAN initialization sequence

The FlexCAN module may be reset in three ways:

- Chip level hard reset, which resets all memory mapped registers asynchronously
- SOFTRST bit in MCR, which resets some of the memory mapped registers synchronously. See Table 42-2 to see what registers are affected by soft reset.
- Chip level soft reset, which has the same effect as the SOFTRST bit in MCR

Soft reset is synchronous and has to follow an internal request/acknowledge procedure across clock domains. Therefore, it may take some time to fully propagate its effects. The CAN_MCR[SOFTRST] bit remains asserted while soft reset is pending, so software can poll this bit to know when the reset has completed. Also, soft reset can not be applied while clocks are shut down in a low power mode. The low power mode should be exited and the clocks resumed before applying soft reset.

The clock source should be selected while the module is in Disable mode (see CAN_CTRL1[CLKSRC] bit). After the clock source is selected and the module is enabled (CAN_MCR[MDIS] bit negated), FlexCAN automatically goes to Freeze mode. In Freeze mode, FlexCAN is un-synchronized to the CAN bus, the HALT and FRZ bits in CAN_MCR Register are set, the internal state machines are disabled and the FRZACK and NOTRDY bits in the CAN_MCR Register are set. The Tx pin is in recessive state and FlexCAN does not initiate any transmission or reception of CAN frames. Note that the Message Buffers and the Rx Individual Mask Registers are not affected by reset, so they are not automatically initialized.

For any configuration change/initialization it is required that FlexCAN is put into Freeze mode (see Freeze mode). The following is a generic initialization sequence applicable to the FlexCAN module:

- Initialize the Module Configuration Register (CAN_MCR)
  - Enable the individual filtering per MB and reception queue features by setting the IRMQ bit
  - Enable the warning interrupts by setting the WRNEN bit
  - If required, disable frame self reception by setting the SRXDIS bit
  - Enable the Rx FIFO by setting the RFEN bit
  - If Rx FIFO is enabled and DMA is required, set DMA bit
  - Enable the abort mechanism by setting the AEN bit
  - Enable the local priority feature by setting the LPRIOEN bit
- Initialize the Control 1 Register (CAN_CTRL1) and optionally the CAN Bit Timing Register (CAN_CBT).
  - Determine the bit timing parameters: PROPSEG, PSEG1, PSEG2, RJW
  - Optionally determine the bit timing parameters: EPROPSEG, EPSEG1, EPSEG2, ERJW
  - Determine the bit rate by programming the PRESDIV field and optionally the EPRESDIV field
  - Determine the internal arbitration mode (LBUF bit)
- Initialize the Message Buffers
  - The Control and Status word of all Message Buffers must be initialized
  - If Rx FIFO was enabled, the ID filter table must be initialized
  - Other entries in each Message Buffer should be initialized as required
- Initialize the Rx Individual Mask Registers (CAN_RXIMRn)
- Set required interrupt mask bits in the CAN_IMASK Registers (for all MB interrupts), in CAN_MCR Register for Wake-Up interrupt and in CAN_CTRL1 / CAN_CTRL2 Registers (for Bus Off and Error interrupts)
- Negate the HALT bit in CAN_MCR

After the last step listed above, FlexCAN attempts to synchronize to the CAN bus.

Chapter 43
Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI)

43.1 Chip-specific Information for this Module

43.1.1 SPI Modules Configuration

This device contains two SPI modules.

43.1.2 SPI clocking

The SPI module is clocked by the internal bus clock (the DSPI refers to it as system clock). The module has an internal divider, with a minimum divide is two. So, the SPI can run at a maximum frequency of bus clock/2.

43.1.3 Number of CTARs

SPI CTAR registers define different transfer attribute configurations. The SPI module supports up to eight CTAR registers. This device supports two CTARs on all instances of the SPI.

In master mode, the CTAR registers define combinations of transfer attributes, such as frame size, clock phase, clock polarity, data bit ordering, baud rate, and various delays. In slave mode only CTAR0 is used, and a subset of its bitfields sets the slave transfer attributes.

43.1.4 TX FIFO size

Table 43-1. SPI transmit FIFO size

SPI Module	Transmit FIFO size
SPI0	4
SPI1	1

43.1.5 RX FIFO Size

SPI supports up to 16-bit frame size during reception.

Table 43-2. SPI receive FIFO size

SPI Module	Receive FIFO size
SPI0	4
SPI1	1

43.1.6 Number of PCS signals

The following table shows the number of peripheral chip select signals available per SPI module.

Table 43-3. SPI PCS signals

SPI Module	PCS Signals
SPI0	For packages with greater than 64 pins: SPI_PCS[5:0] For packages with 64 pins: SPI_PCS[4:0]
SPI1	For packages with greater than 64 pins: SPI_PCS[3:0] For packages with 64 pins: SPI_PCS[1:0]

43.1.7 SPI Operation in Low Power Modes

In VLPR and VLPW modes the SPI is functional; however, the reduced system frequency also reduces the max frequency of operation for the SPI. In VLPR and VLPW modes the max SPI_CLK frequency is 2MHz.

In stop and VLPS modes, the clocks to the SPI module are disabled. The module is not functional, but it is powered so that it retains state.

There is one way to wake from stop mode via the SPI, which is explained in the following section.

43.1.7.1 Using GPIO Interrupt to Wake from stop mode

Here are the steps to use a GPIO to create a wakeup upon reception of SPI data in slave mode:

1. Point the GPIO interrupt vector to the desired interrupt handler.
2. Enable the GPIO input to generate an interrupt on either the rising or falling edge (depending on the polarity of the chip select signal).
3. Enter Stop or VLPS mode and Wait for the GPIO interrupt.

NOTE

It is likely that in using this approach the first word of data from the SPI host might not be received correctly. This is dependent on the transfer rate used for the SPI, the delay between chip select assertion and presentation of data, and the system interrupt latency.

43.1.8 SPI Doze Mode

The Doze mode for the SPI module is the same as the Wait and VLPW modes for the chip.

43.1.9 SPI Interrupts

The SPI has multiple sources of interrupt requests. However, these sources are OR'd together to generate a single interrupt request per SPI module to the interrupt controller. When an SPI interrupt occurs, read the SPI_SR to determine the exact interrupt source.

43.1.10 SPI clocks

This table shows the SPI module clocks and the corresponding chip clocks.

Table 43-4. SPI clock connections

Module clock	Chip clock
System Clock	Bus Clock

43.2 Introduction

The serial peripheral interface (SPI) module provides a synchronous serial bus for communication between a chip and an external peripheral device.

43.2.1 Block Diagram

The block diagram of this module is as follows:

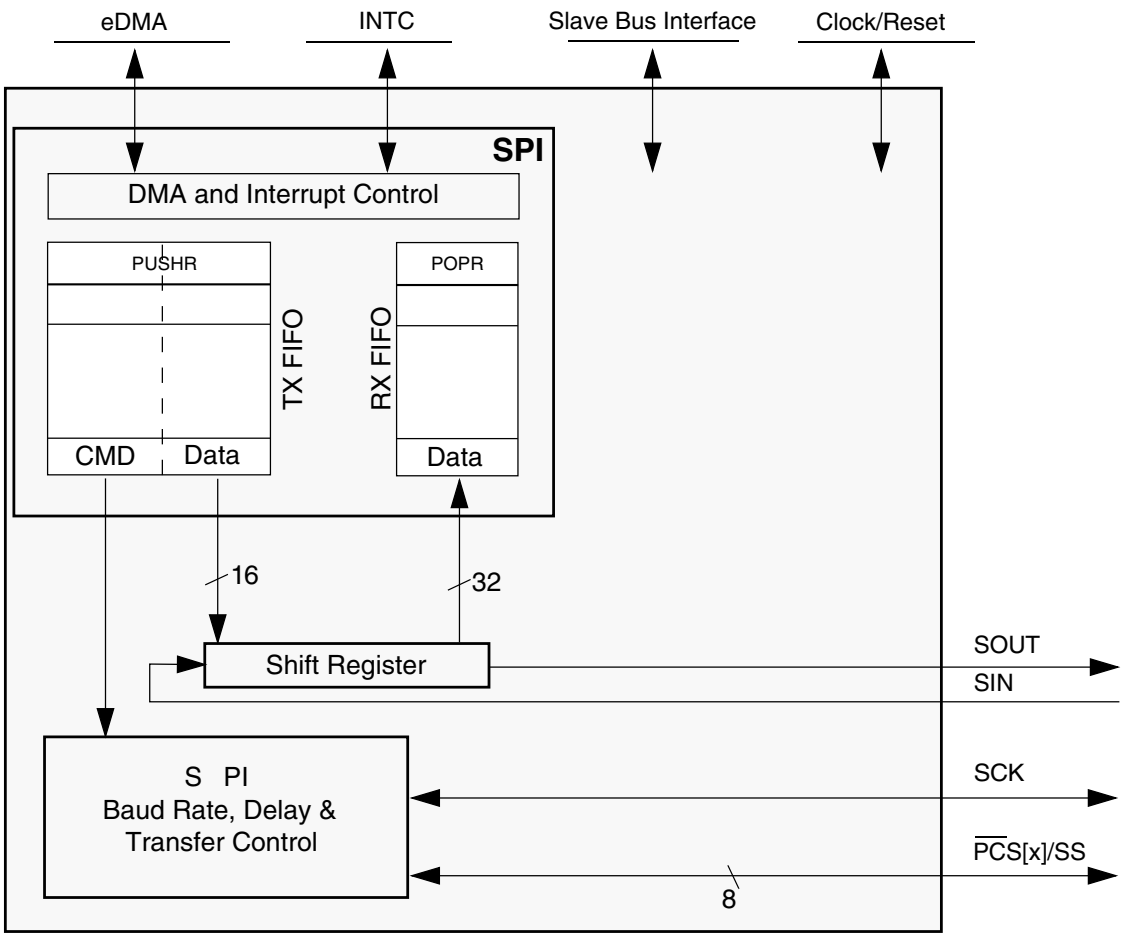


Figure 43-1. SPI Block Diagram

43.2.2 Features

The module supports the following features:

- Full-duplex, three-wire synchronous transfers

- Master mode
- Slave mode
- Data streaming operation in Slave mode with continuous slave selection
- Buffered transmit operation using the transmit first in first out (TX FIFO) with depth of 4 entries
- Buffered receive operation using the receive FIFO (RX FIFO) with depth of 4 entries
- TX and RX FIFOs can be disabled individually for low-latency updates to SPI queues
- Visibility into TX and RX FIFOs for ease of debugging
- Programmable transfer attributes on a per-frame basis:
  - two transfer attribute registers
  - Serial clock (SCK) with programmable polarity and phase
  - Various programmable delays
  - Programmable serial frame size: 4 to 16 bits
    - SPI frames longer than 16 bits can be supported using the continuous selection format.
  - Continuously held chip select capability
- 6 peripheral chip selects (PCSes), expandable to 64 with external demultiplexer
- Deglitching support for up to 32 peripheral chip selects (PCSes) with external demultiplexer
- DMA support for adding entries to TX FIFO and removing entries from RX FIFO:
  - TX FIFO is not full (TFFF)
  - RX FIFO is not empty (RFDF)
- Interrupt conditions:
  - End of Queue reached (EOQF)
  - TX FIFO is not full (TFFF)
  - Transfer of current frame complete (TCF)
  - Attempt to transmit with an empty Transmit FIFO (TFUF)

- RX FIFO is not empty (RFDF)
- Frame received while Receive FIFO is full (RFOF)

- Global interrupt request line
- Modified SPI transfer formats for communication with slower peripheral devices
- Power-saving architectural features:
  - Support for Stop mode
  - Support for Doze mode

43.2.3 Interface configurations

43.2.3.1 SPI configuration

The Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI) configuration allows the module to send and receive serial data. This configuration allows the module to operate as a basic SPI block with internal FIFOs supporting external queue operation. Transmitted data and received data reside in separate FIFOs. The host CPU or a DMA controller read the received data from the Receive FIFO and write transmit data to the Transmit FIFO.

For queued operations, the SPI queues can reside in system RAM, external to the module. Data transfers between the queues and the module FIFOs are accomplished by a DMA controller or host CPU. The following figure shows a system example with DMA, SPI, and external queues in system RAM.

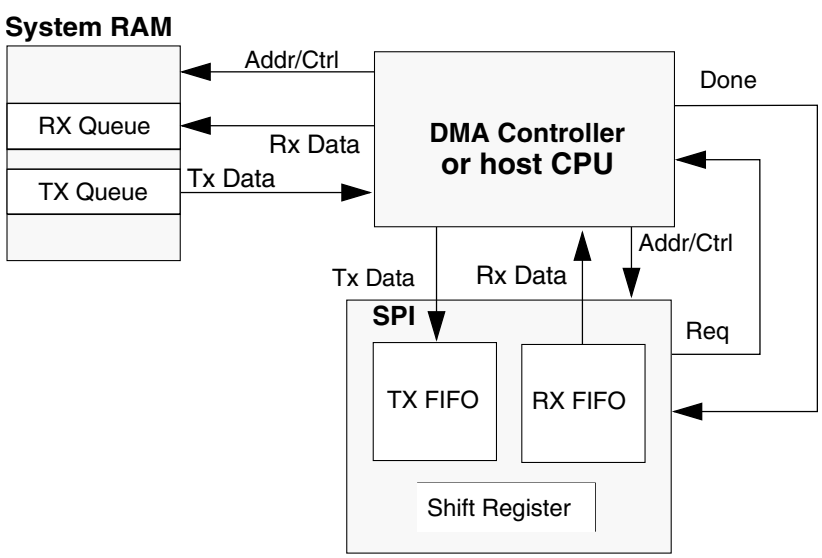


Figure 43-2. SPI with queues and DMA

43.2.4 Modes of Operation

The module supports the following modes of operation that can be divided into two categories:

- Module-specific modes:
  - Master mode
  - Slave mode
  - Module Disable mode
- Chip-specific modes:
  - External Stop mode
  - Debug mode

The module enters module-specific modes when the host writes a module register. The chip-specific modes are controlled by signals external to the module. The chip-specific modes are modes that a chip may enter in parallel to the block-specific modes.

43.2.4.1 Master Mode

Master mode allows the module to initiate and control serial communication. In this mode, these signals are controlled by the module and configured as outputs:

- SCK
- SOUT
- PCS[*x*]

43.2.4.2 Slave Mode

Slave mode allows the module to communicate with SPI bus masters. In this mode, the module responds to externally controlled serial transfers. The SCK signal and the PCS[0]/$\overline{\text{SS}}$ signals are configured as inputs and driven by an SPI bus master.

43.2.4.3 Module Disable Mode

The Module Disable mode can be used for chip power management. The clock to the non-memory mapped logic in the module can be stopped while in the Module Disable mode.

43.2.4.4 External Stop Mode

External Stop mode is used for chip power management. The module supports the Peripheral Bus Stop mode mechanism. When a request is made to enter External Stop mode, it acknowledges the request and completes the transfer that is in progress. When the module reaches the frame boundary, it signals that the protocol clock to the module may be shut off.

43.2.4.5 Debug Mode

Debug mode is used for system development and debugging. The MCR[FRZ] bit controls module behavior in the Debug mode:

- If the bit is set, the module stops all serial transfers, when the chip is in debug mode.
- If the bit is cleared, the chip debug mode has no effect on the module.

43.3 Module signal descriptions

This table describes the signals on the boundary of the module that may connect off chip (in alphabetical order).

Table 43-5. Module signal descriptions

Signal	Master mode	Slave mode	I/O
PCS0/$\overline{SS}$	Peripheral Chip Select 0 (O)	Slave Select (I)	I/O
PCS[1:3]	Peripheral Chip Selects 1–3	(Unused)	O
PCS4	Peripheral Chip Select 4	(Unused)	O
PCS5/ $\overline{PCSS}$	Peripheral Chip Select 5 /Peripheral Chip Select Strobe	(Unused)	O
SCK	Serial Clock (O)	Serial Clock (I)	I/O
SIN	Serial Data In	Serial Data In	I
SOUT	Serial Data Out	Serial Data Out	O

43.3.1 PCS0/$\overline{SS}$—Peripheral Chip Select/Slave Select

Master mode: Peripheral Chip Select 0 (O)—Selects an SPI slave to receive data transmitted from the module.

Slave mode: Slave Select (I)—Selects the module to receive data transmitted from an SPI master.

NOTE

Do not tie the SPI slave select pin to ground. Otherwise, SPI cannot function properly.

43.3.2 PCS1–PCS3—Peripheral Chip Selects 1–3

Master mode: Peripheral Chip Selects 1–3 (O)—Select an SPI slave to receive data transmitted by the module.

Slave mode: Unused

43.3.3 PCS4—Peripheral Chip Select 4

Master mode: Peripheral Chip Select 4 (O)—Selects an SPI slave to receive data transmitted by the module.

Slave mode: Unused

43.3.4 PCS5/$\overline{PCSS}$—Peripheral Chip Select 5/Peripheral Chip Select Strobe

Master mode:

- Peripheral Chip Select 5 (O)—Used only when the peripheral-chip-select strobe is disabled (MCR[PCSSE]). Selects an SPI slave to receive data transmitted by the module.
- Peripheral Chip Select Strobe (O)—Used only when the peripheral-chip-select strobe is enabled (MCR[PCSSE]). Strobes an off-module peripheral-chip-select demultiplexer, which decodes the module's PCS signals other than PCS5, preventing glitches on the demultiplexer outputs.

Slave mode: Unused

43.3.5 SCK—Serial Clock

Master mode: Serial Clock (O)—Supplies a clock signal from the module to SPI slaves.

Slave mode: Serial Clock (I)—Supplies a clock signal to the module from an SPI master.

43.3.6 SIN—Serial Input

Master mode: Serial Input (I)—Receives serial data.

Slave mode: Serial Input (I)—Receives serial data.

43.3.7 SOUT—Serial Output

Master mode: Serial Output (O)—Transmits serial data.

Slave mode: Serial Output (O)—Transmits serial data.

43.4 Memory Map/Register Definition

Register accesses to memory addresses that are reserved or undefined result in a transfer error. Any Write access to the POPR and RXFRn also results in a transfer error.

SPI memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4002_C000	Module Configuration Register (SPI0_MCR)	32	R/W	0000_4001h	43.4.1/1042
4002_C008	Transfer Count Register (SPI0_TCR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.2/1045
4002_C00C	Clock and Transfer Attributes Register (In Master Mode) (SPI0_CTAR0)	32	R/W	7800_0000h	43.4.3/1046
4002_C00C	Clock and Transfer Attributes Register (In Slave Mode) (SPI0_CTAR0_SLAVE)	32	R/W	7800_0000h	43.4.4/1050
4002_C010	Clock and Transfer Attributes Register (In Master Mode) (SPI0_CTAR1)	32	R/W	7800_0000h	43.4.3/1046
4002_C02C	Status Register (SPI0_SR)	32	R/W	0200_0000h	43.4.5/1052
4002_C030	DMA/Interrupt Request Select and Enable Register (SPI0_RSER)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.6/1055
4002_C034	PUSH TX FIFO Register In Master Mode (SPI0_PUSHR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.7/1057
4002_C034	PUSH TX FIFO Register In Slave Mode (SPI0_PUSHR_SLAVE)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.8/1059
4002_C038	POP RX FIFO Register (SPI0_POPR)	32	R	0000_0000h	43.4.9/1059

Table continues on the next page...

SPI memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4002_C03C	Transmit FIFO Registers (SPI0_TXFR0)	32	R	0000_0000h	43.4.10/ 1060
4002_C040	Transmit FIFO Registers (SPI0_TXFR1)	32	R	0000_0000h	43.4.10/ 1060
4002_C044	Transmit FIFO Registers (SPI0_TXFR2)	32	R	0000_0000h	43.4.10/ 1060
4002_C048	Transmit FIFO Registers (SPI0_TXFR3)	32	R	0000_0000h	43.4.10/ 1060
4002_C07C	Receive FIFO Registers (SPI0_RXFR0)	32	R	0000_0000h	43.4.11/ 1060
4002_C080	Receive FIFO Registers (SPI0_RXFR1)	32	R	0000_0000h	43.4.11/ 1060
4002_C084	Receive FIFO Registers (SPI0_RXFR2)	32	R	0000_0000h	43.4.11/ 1060
4002_C088	Receive FIFO Registers (SPI0_RXFR3)	32	R	0000_0000h	43.4.11/ 1060
4002_D000	Module Configuration Register (SPI1_MCR)	32	R/W	0000_4001h	43.4.1/1042
4002_D008	Transfer Count Register (SPI1_TCR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.2/1045
4002_D00C	Clock and Transfer Attributes Register (In Master Mode) (SPI1_CTAR0)	32	R/W	7800_0000h	43.4.3/1046
4002_D00C	Clock and Transfer Attributes Register (In Slave Mode) (SPI1_CTAR0_SLAVE)	32	R/W	7800_0000h	43.4.4/1050
4002_D010	Clock and Transfer Attributes Register (In Master Mode) (SPI1_CTAR1)	32	R/W	7800_0000h	43.4.3/1046
4002_D02C	Status Register (SPI1_SR)	32	R/W	0200_0000h	43.4.5/1052
4002_D030	DMA/Interrupt Request Select and Enable Register (SPI1_RSER)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.6/1055
4002_D034	PUSH TX FIFO Register In Master Mode (SPI1_PUSHR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.7/1057
4002_D034	PUSH TX FIFO Register In Slave Mode (SPI1_PUSHR_SLAVE)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	43.4.8/1059
4002_D038	POP RX FIFO Register (SPI1_POPR)	32	R	0000_0000h	43.4.9/1059
4002_D03C	Transmit FIFO Registers (SPI1_TXFR0)	32	R	0000_0000h	43.4.10/ 1060
4002_D040	Transmit FIFO Registers (SPI1_TXFR1)	32	R	0000_0000h	43.4.10/ 1060
4002_D044	Transmit FIFO Registers (SPI1_TXFR2)	32	R	0000_0000h	43.4.10/ 1060
4002_D048	Transmit FIFO Registers (SPI1_TXFR3)	32	R	0000_0000h	43.4.10/ 1060
4002_D07C	Receive FIFO Registers (SPI1_RXFR0)	32	R	0000_0000h	43.4.11/ 1060
4002_D080	Receive FIFO Registers (SPI1_RXFR1)	32	R	0000_0000h	43.4.11/ 1060

Table continues on the next page...

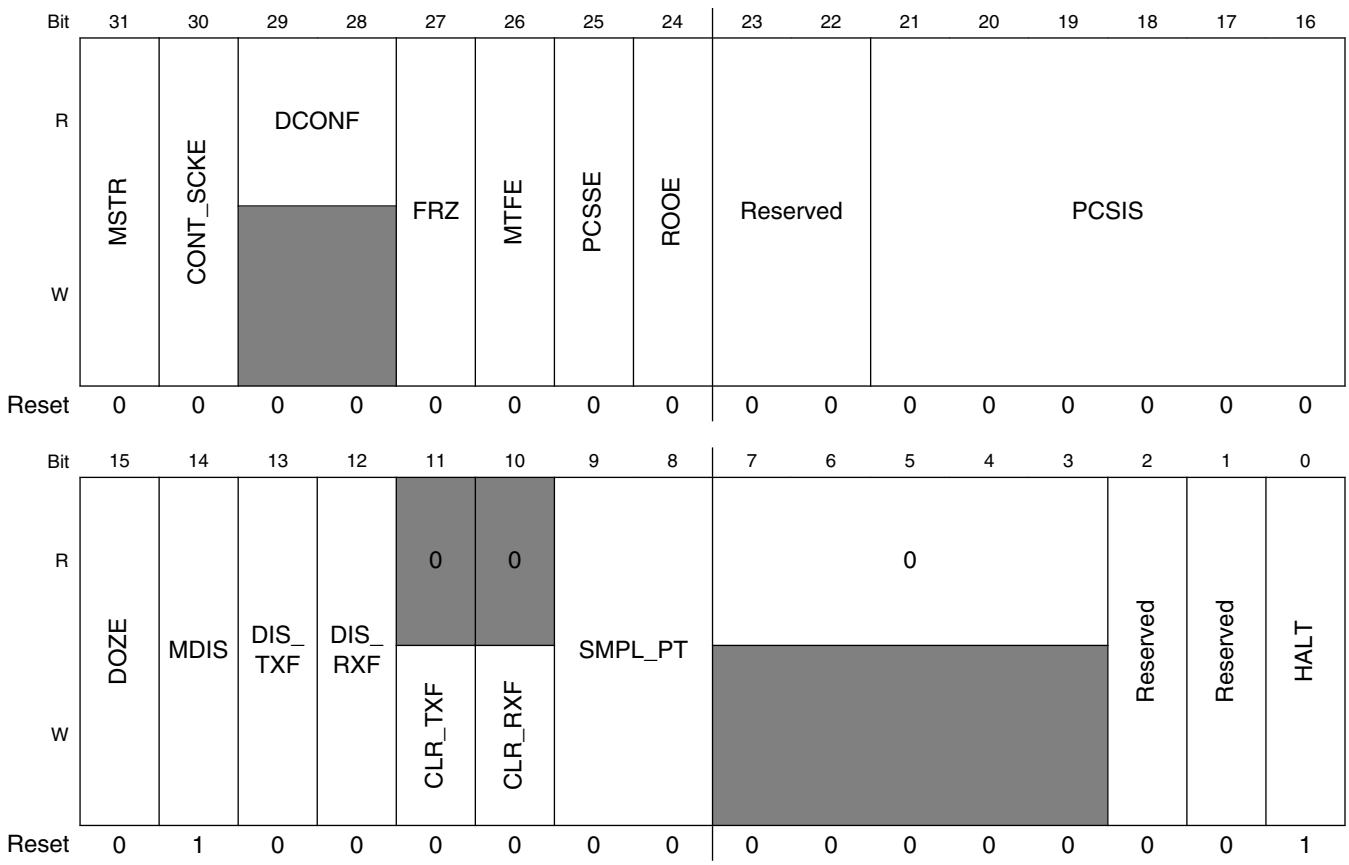
SPI memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4002_D084	Receive FIFO Registers (SPI1_RXFR2)	32	R	0000_0000h	43.4.11/ 1060
4002_D088	Receive FIFO Registers (SPI1_RXFR3)	32	R	0000_0000h	43.4.11/ 1060

43.4.1 Module Configuration Register (SPIx_MCR)

Contains bits to configure various attributes associated with the module operations. The HALT and MDIS bits can be changed at any time, but the effect takes place only on the next frame boundary. Only the HALT and MDIS bits in the MCR can be changed, while the module is in the Running state.

Address: Base address + 0h offset



SPIx_MCR field descriptions

Field	Description
31 MSTR	Master/Slave Mode Select Enables either Master mode (if supported) or Slave mode (if supported) operation. 0 Enables Slave mode 1 Enables Master mode
30 CONT_SCKE	Continuous SCK Enable Enables the Serial Communication Clock (SCK) to run continuously. 0 Continuous SCK disabled. 1 Continuous SCK enabled.
29–28 DCONF	SPI Configuration. Selects among the different configurations of the module. 00 SPI 01 Reserved 10 Reserved 11 Reserved
27 FRZ	Freeze Enables transfers to be stopped on the next frame boundary when the device enters Debug mode. 0 Do not halt serial transfers in Debug mode. 1 Halt serial transfers in Debug mode.
26 MTFE	Modified Transfer Format Enable Enables a modified transfer format to be used. 0 Modified SPI transfer format disabled. 1 Modified SPI transfer format enabled.
25 PCSSE	Peripheral Chip Select Strobe Enable Enables the PCS5/ $\overline{\text{PCSS}}$ to operate as a PCS Strobe output signal. 0 PCS5/ $\overline{\text{PCSS}}$ is used as the Peripheral Chip Select[5] signal. 1 PCS5/ $\overline{\text{PCSS}}$ is used as an active-low PCS Strobe signal.
24 ROOE	Receive FIFO Overflow Overwrite Enable In the RX FIFO overflow condition, configures the module to ignore the incoming serial data or overwrite existing data. If the RX FIFO is full and new data is received, the data from the transfer, generating the overflow, is ignored or shifted into the shift register. 0 Incoming data is ignored. 1 Incoming data is shifted into the shift register.
23–22 Reserved	Always write the reset value to this field. This field is reserved.
21–16 PCSIS	Peripheral Chip Select x Inactive State

Table continues on the next page...

SPIx_MCR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	Determines the inactive state of PCSx. Refer to the chip-specific SPI information for the number of PCS signals used in this chip. **NOTE:** The effect of this bit only takes place when module is enabled. Ensure that this bit is configured correctly before enabling the SPI interface. 0 The inactive state of PCSx is low. 1 The inactive state of PCSx is high.
15 DOZE	Doze Enable Provides support for an externally controlled Doze mode power-saving mechanism. 0 Doze mode has no effect on the module. 1 Doze mode disables the module.
14 MDIS	Module Disable Allows the clock to be stopped to the non-memory mapped logic in the module effectively putting it in a software-controlled power-saving state. The reset value of the MDIS bit is parameterized, with a default reset value of 1. When the module is used in Slave Mode, it is recommended to leave this bit 0, because a slave doesn't have control over master transactions. 0 Enables the module clocks. 1 Allows external logic to disable the module clocks.
13 DIS_TXF	Disable Transmit FIFO When the TX FIFO is disabled, the transmit part of the module operates as a simplified double-buffered SPI. This bit can be written only when the MDIS bit is cleared. 0 TX FIFO is enabled. 1 TX FIFO is disabled.
12 DIS_RXF	Disable Receive FIFO When the RX FIFO is disabled, the receive part of the module operates as a simplified double-buffered SPI. This bit can only be written when the MDIS bit is cleared. 0 RX FIFO is enabled. 1 RX FIFO is disabled.
11 CLR_TXF	Clear TX FIFO Flushes the TX FIFO. Writing a 1 to CLR_TXF clears the TX FIFO Counter. The CLR_TXF bit is always read as zero. 0 Do not clear the TX FIFO counter. 1 Clear the TX FIFO counter.
10 CLR_RXF	CLR_RXF Flushes the RX FIFO. Writing a 1 to CLR_RXF clears the RX Counter. The CLR_RXF bit is always read as zero. 0 Do not clear the RX FIFO counter. 1 Clear the RX FIFO counter.
9–8 SMPL_PT	Sample Point

Table continues on the next page...

SPIx_MCR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	Controls when the module master samples SIN in Modified Transfer Format. This field is valid only when CPHA bit in CTARn[CPHA] is 0. 00 0 protocol clock cycles between SCK edge and SIN sample 01 1 protocol clock cycle between SCK edge and SIN sample 10 2 protocol clock cycles between SCK edge and SIN sample 11 Reserved
7–3 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
2 Reserved	This field is reserved.
1 Reserved	This field is reserved.
0 HALT	Halt The HALT bit starts and stops frame transfers. See Start and Stop of Module transfers 0 Start transfers. 1 Stop transfers.

43.4.2 Transfer Count Register (SPIx_TCR)

TCR contains a counter that indicates the number of SPI transfers made. The transfer counter is intended to assist in queue management. Do not write the TCR when the module is in the Running state.

Address: Base address + 8h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	SPI_TCNT																0															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

SPIx_TCR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 SPI_TCNT	SPI Transfer Counter Counts the number of SPI transfers the module makes. The SPI_TCNT field increments every time the last bit of an SPI frame is transmitted. A value written to SPI_TCNT presets the counter to that value. SPI_TCNT is reset to zero at the beginning of the frame when the CTCNT field is set in the executing SPI command. The Transfer Counter wraps around; incrementing the counter past 65535 resets the counter to zero.
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

43.4.3 Clock and Transfer Attributes Register (In Master Mode) (SPIx_CTAR*n*)

CTAR registers are used to define different transfer attributes. Do not write to the CTAR registers while the module is in the Running state.

In Master mode, the CTAR registers define combinations of transfer attributes such as frame size, clock phase and polarity, data bit ordering, baud rate, and various delays. In slave mode, a subset of the bitfields in CTAR0 are used to set the slave transfer attributes.

When the module is configured as a SPI master, the CTAS field in the command portion of the TX FIFO entry selects which of the CTAR registers is used. When the module is configured as an SPI bus slave, it uses the CTAR0 register.

Address: Base address + Ch offset + (4d × i), where i=0d to 1d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R W	DBR	FMSZ				CPOL	CPHA	LSBFE	PCSSCK		PASC		PDT		PBR	
Reset	0	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R W	CSSCK				ASC				DT				BR			
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

SPIx_CTAR*n* field descriptions

Field	Description
31 DBR	Double Baud Rate Doubles the effective baud rate of the Serial Communications Clock (SCK). This field is used only in master mode. It effectively halves the Baud Rate division ratio, supporting faster frequencies, and odd division ratios for the Serial Communications Clock (SCK). When the DBR bit is set, the duty cycle of the Serial Communications Clock (SCK) depends on the value in the Baud Rate Prescaler and the Clock Phase bit as listed in the following table. See the BR field description for details on how to compute the baud rate.

Table 43-6. SPI SCK Duty Cycle

DBR	CPHA	PBR	SCK Duty Cycle
0	any	any	50/50
1	0	00	50/50
1	0	01	33/66
1	0	10	40/60

Table continues on the next page...

SPIx_CTAR*n* field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	Table 43-6. SPI SCK Duty Cycle (continued)

DBR	CPHA	PBR	SCK Duty Cycle
1	0	11	43/57
1	1	00	50/50
1	1	01	66/33
1	1	10	60/40
1	1	11	57/43

0 The baud rate is computed normally with a 50/50 duty cycle.
1 The baud rate is doubled with the duty cycle depending on the Baud Rate Prescaler.

30–27 FMSZ	Frame Size The number of bits transferred per frame is equal to the FMSZ value plus 1. Regardless of the transmission mode, the minimum valid frame size value is 4.
26 CPOL	Clock Polarity Selects the inactive state of the Serial Communications Clock (SCK). This bit is used in both master and slave mode. For successful communication between serial devices, the devices must have identical clock polarities. When the Continuous Selection Format is selected, switching between clock polarities without stopping the module can cause errors in the transfer due to the peripheral device interpreting the switch of clock polarity as a valid clock edge. **NOTE:** In case of Continuous SCK mode, when the module goes in low power mode(disabled), inactive state of SCK is not guaranted. 0 The inactive state value of SCK is low. 1 The inactive state value of SCK is high.
25 CPHA	Clock Phase Selects which edge of SCK causes data to change and which edge causes data to be captured. This bit is used in both master and slave mode. For successful communication between serial devices, the devices must have identical clock phase settings. In Continuous SCK mode, the bit value is ignored and the transfers are done as if the CPHA bit is set to 1. 0 Data is captured on the leading edge of SCK and changed on the following edge. 1 Data is changed on the leading edge of SCK and captured on the following edge.
24 LSBFE	LSB First Specifies whether the LSB or MSB of the frame is transferred first. 0 Data is transferred MSB first. 1 Data is transferred LSB first.
23–22 PCSSCK	PCS to SCK Delay Prescaler Selects the prescaler value for the delay between assertion of PCS and the first edge of the SCK. See the CSSCK field description for information on how to compute the PCS to SCK Delay. Refer PCS to SCK Delay (t_{CSC}) for more details.

Table continues on the next page...

SPIx_CTAR*n* field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	00 PCS to SCK Prescaler value is 1. 01 PCS to SCK Prescaler value is 3. 10 PCS to SCK Prescaler value is 5. 11 PCS to SCK Prescaler value is 7.
21–20 PASC	After SCK Delay Prescaler Selects the prescaler value for the delay between the last edge of SCK and the negation of PCS. See the ASC field description for information on how to compute the After SCK Delay. Refer After SCK Delay (t_{ASC}) for more details. 00 Delay after Transfer Prescaler value is 1. 01 Delay after Transfer Prescaler value is 3. 10 Delay after Transfer Prescaler value is 5. 11 Delay after Transfer Prescaler value is 7.
19–18 PDT	Delay after Transfer Prescaler Selects the prescaler value for the delay between the negation of the PCS signal at the end of a frame and the assertion of PCS at the beginning of the next frame. The PDT field is only used in master mode. See the DT field description for details on how to compute the Delay after Transfer. Refer Delay after Transfer (t_{DT}) for more details. 00 Delay after Transfer Prescaler value is 1. 01 Delay after Transfer Prescaler value is 3. 10 Delay after Transfer Prescaler value is 5. 11 Delay after Transfer Prescaler value is 7.
17–16 PBR	Baud Rate Prescaler Selects the prescaler value for the baud rate. This field is used only in master mode. The baud rate is the frequency of the SCK. The protocol clock is divided by the prescaler value before the baud rate selection takes place. See the BR field description for details on how to compute the baud rate. 00 Baud Rate Prescaler value is 2. 01 Baud Rate Prescaler value is 3. 10 Baud Rate Prescaler value is 5. 11 Baud Rate Prescaler value is 7.
15–12 CSSCK	PCS to SCK Delay Scaler Selects the scaler value for the PCS to SCK delay. This field is used only in master mode. The PCS to SCK Delay is the delay between the assertion of PCS and the first edge of the SCK. The delay is a multiple of the protocol clock period, and it is computed according to the following equation: $t_{CSC} = (1/f_P) \times PCSSCK \times CSSCK$. The following table lists the delay scaler values.

Table 43-7. Delay Scaler Encoding

Field Value	Delay Scaler Value
0000	2
0001	4
0010	8

Table continues on the next page...

SPIx_CTAR*n* field descriptions (continued)

<table>
<tr><th>Field</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>
Table 43-7. Delay Scaler Encoding (continued)
<table>
<tr><th>Field Value</th><th>Delay Scaler Value</th></tr>
<tr><td>0011</td><td>16</td></tr>
<tr><td>0100</td><td>32</td></tr>
<tr><td>0101</td><td>64</td></tr>
<tr><td>0110</td><td>128</td></tr>
<tr><td>0111</td><td>256</td></tr>
<tr><td>1000</td><td>512</td></tr>
<tr><td>1001</td><td>1024</td></tr>
<tr><td>1010</td><td>2048</td></tr>
<tr><td>1011</td><td>4096</td></tr>
<tr><td>1100</td><td>8192</td></tr>
<tr><td>1101</td><td>16384</td></tr>
<tr><td>1110</td><td>32768</td></tr>
<tr><td>1111</td><td>65536</td></tr>
</table>
Refer PCS to SCK Delay (t_{CSC}) for more details.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>11–8
ASC</td><td>After SCK Delay Scaler

Selects the scaler value for the After SCK Delay. This field is used only in master mode. The After SCK Delay is the delay between the last edge of SCK and the negation of PCS. The delay is a multiple of the protocol clock period, and it is computed according to the following equation:

$t_{ASC} = (1/f_P) \times PASC \times ASC$

See Delay Scaler Encoding table in CTARn[CSSCK] bit field description for scaler values. Refer After SCK Delay (t_{ASC}) for more details.</td></tr>
<tr><td>7–4
DT</td><td>Delay After Transfer Scaler

Selects the Delay after Transfer Scaler. This field is used only in master mode. The Delay after Transfer is the time between the negation of the PCS signal at the end of a frame and the assertion of PCS at the beginning of the next frame.

In the Continuous Serial Communications Clock operation, the DT value is fixed to one SCK clock period, The Delay after Transfer is a multiple of the protocol clock period, and it is computed according to the following equation:

$t_{DT} = (1/f_P) \times PDT \times DT$

See Delay Scaler Encoding table in CTARn[CSSCK] bit field description for scaler values.</td></tr>
<tr><td>BR</td><td>Baud Rate Scaler

Selects the scaler value for the baud rate. This field is used only in master mode. The prescaled protocol clock is divided by the Baud Rate Scaler to generate the frequency of the SCK. The baud rate is computed according to the following equation:

SCK baud rate = $(f_P / PBR) \times [(1+DBR)/BR]$

The following table lists the baud rate scaler values.</td></tr>
</table>

Table continues on the next page...

SPIx_CTAR*n* field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	Table 43-8. Baud Rate Scaler

CTARn[BR]	Baud Rate Scaler Value
0000	2
0001	4
0010	6
0011	8
0100	16
0101	32
0110	64
0111	128
1000	256
1001	512
1010	1024
1011	2048
1100	4096
1101	8192
1110	16384
1111	32768

43.4.4 Clock and Transfer Attributes Register (In Slave Mode) (SPIx_CTAR*n*_SLAVE)

When the module is configured as an SPI bus slave, the CTAR0 register is used.

Address: Base address + Ch offset + (0d × i), where i=0d to 0d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	Reserved	FMSZ				CPOL	CPHA	0		Reserved	Reserved					
W																
Reset	0	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	Reserved															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

SPIx_CTAR*n*_SLAVE field descriptions

Field	Description
31 Reserved	Always write the reset value to this field. This field is reserved.
30–27 FMSZ	Frame Size The number of bits transfered per frame is equal to the FMSZ field value plus 1. Note that the minimum valid value of frame size is 4.
26 CPOL	Clock Polarity Selects the inactive state of the Serial Communications Clock (SCK). **NOTE:** In case of Continuous SCK mode, when the module goes in low power mode(disabled), inactive state of SCK is not guaranted. 0 The inactive state value of SCK is low. 1 The inactive state value of SCK is high.
25 CPHA	Clock Phase Selects which edge of SCK causes data to change and which edge causes data to be captured. This bit is used in both master and slave mode. For successful communication between serial devices, the devices must have identical clock phase settings. In Continuous SCK mode, the bit value is ignored and the transfers are done as if the CPHA bit is set to 1. 0 Data is captured on the leading edge of SCK and changed on the following edge. 1 Data is changed on the leading edge of SCK and captured on the following edge.
24–23 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
22 Reserved	This field is reserved.
Reserved	This field is reserved.

43.4.5 Status Register (SPIx_SR)

SR contains status and flag bits. The bits reflect the status of the module and indicate the occurrence of events that can generate interrupt or DMA requests. Software can clear flag bits in the SR by writing a 1 to them. Writing a 0 to a flag bit has no effect. This register may not be writable in Module Disable mode due to the use of power saving mechanisms.

Address: Base address + 2Ch offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	TCF	TXRXS	0	EOQF	TFUF	0	TFFF	0	0	0	0	0	RFOF	0	RFDF	0
W	w1c			w1c	w1c		w1c						w1c		w1c	
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	TXCTR				TXNXTPTR				RXCTR				POPNXTPTR			
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

SPIx_SR field descriptions

Field	Description
31 TCF	Transfer Complete Flag Indicates that all bits in a frame have been shifted out. TCF remains set until it is cleared by writing a 1 to it. 0 Transfer not complete. 1 Transfer complete.
30 TXRXS	TX and RX Status Reflects the run status of the module.

Table continues on the next page...

SPIx_SR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Transmit and receive operations are disabled (The module is in Stopped state). 1 Transmit and receive operations are enabled (The module is in Running state).
29 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
28 EOQF	End of Queue Flag Indicates that the last entry in a queue has been transmitted when the module is in Master mode. The EOQF bit is set when the TX FIFO entry has the EOQ bit set in the command halfword and the end of the transfer is reached. The EOQF bit remains set until cleared by writing a 1 to it. When the EOQF bit is set, the TXRXS bit is automatically cleared. 0 EOQ is not set in the executing command. 1 EOQ is set in the executing SPI command.
27 TFUF	Transmit FIFO Underflow Flag Indicates an underflow condition in the TX FIFO. The transmit underflow condition is detected only for SPI blocks operating in Slave mode and SPI configuration. TFUF is set when the TX FIFO of the module operating in SPI Slave mode is empty and an external SPI master initiates a transfer. The TFUF bit remains set until cleared by writing 1 to it. 0 No TX FIFO underflow. 1 TX FIFO underflow has occurred.
26 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
25 TFFF	Transmit FIFO Fill Flag Provides a method for the module to request more entries to be added to the TX FIFO. The TFFF bit is set while the TX FIFO is not full. The TFFF bit can be cleared by writing 1 to it or by acknowledgement from the DMA controller to the TX FIFO full request. **NOTE:** The reset value of this bit is 0 when the module is disabled,(MCR[MDIS]=1). 0 TX FIFO is full. 1 TX FIFO is not full.
24 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
23 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
22 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
21 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
20 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
19 RFOF	Receive FIFO Overflow Flag Indicates an overflow condition in the RX FIFO. The field is set when the RX FIFO and shift register are full and a transfer is initiated. The bit remains set until it is cleared by writing a 1 to it. 0 No Rx FIFO overflow. 1 Rx FIFO overflow has occurred.

Table continues on the next page...

SPIx_SR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
18 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
17 RFDF	Receive FIFO Drain Flag Provides a method for the module to request that entries be removed from the RX FIFO. The bit is set while the RX FIFO is not empty. The RFDF bit can be cleared by writing 1 to it or by acknowledgement from the DMA controller when the RX FIFO is empty. 0 RX FIFO is empty. 1 RX FIFO is not empty.
16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
15–12 TXCTR	TX FIFO Counter Indicates the number of valid entries in the TX FIFO. The TXCTR is incremented every time the PUSHR is written. The TXCTR is decremented every time an SPI command is executed and the SPI data is transferred to the shift register.
11–8 TXNXTPTR	Transmit Next Pointer Indicates which TX FIFO entry is transmitted during the next transfer. The TXNXTPTR field is updated every time SPI data is transferred from the TX FIFO to the shift register.
7–4 RXCTR	RX FIFO Counter Indicates the number of entries in the RX FIFO. The RXCTR is decremented every time the POPR is read. The RXCTR is incremented every time data is transferred from the shift register to the RX FIFO.
POPNXTPTR	Pop Next Pointer Contains a pointer to the RX FIFO entry to be returned when the POPR is read. The POPNXTPTR is updated when the POPR is read.

43.4.6 DMA/Interrupt Request Select and Enable Register (SPIx_RSER)

RSER controls DMA and interrupt requests. Do not write to the RSER while the module is in the Running state.

Address: Base address + 30h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R W	TCF_RE	Reserved	Reserved	EOQF_RE	TFUF_RE	Reserved	TFFF_RE	TFFF_DIRS	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	RFOF_RE	Reserved	RFDF_RE	RFDF_DIRS
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	Reserved	Reserved	0													
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

SPIx_RSER field descriptions

Field	Description
31 TCF_RE	Transmission Complete Request Enable Enables TCF flag in the SR to generate an interrupt request. 0 TCF interrupt requests are disabled. 1 TCF interrupt requests are enabled.
30 Reserved	Always write the reset value to this field. This field is reserved.
29 Reserved	Always write the reset value to this field. This field is reserved.
28 EOQF_RE	Finished Request Enable Enables the EOQF flag in the SR to generate an interrupt request. 0 EOQF interrupt requests are disabled. 1 EOQF interrupt requests are enabled.
27 TFUF_RE	Transmit FIFO Underflow Request Enable Enables the TFUF flag in the SR to generate an interrupt request.

Table continues on the next page...

SPIx_RSER field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 TFUF interrupt requests are disabled. 1 TFUF interrupt requests are enabled.
26 Reserved	Always write the reset value to this field. This field is reserved.
25 TFFF_RE	Transmit FIFO Fill Request Enable Enables the TFFF flag in the SR to generate a request. The TFFF_DIRS bit selects between generating an interrupt request or a DMA request. 0 TFFF interrupts or DMA requests are disabled. 1 TFFF interrupts or DMA requests are enabled.
24 TFFF_DIRS	Transmit FIFO Fill DMA or Interrupt Request Select Selects between generating a DMA request or an interrupt request. When SR[TFFF] and RSER[TFFF_RE] are set, this field selects between generating an interrupt request or a DMA request. 0 TFFF flag generates interrupt requests. 1 TFFF flag generates DMA requests.
23 Reserved	Always write the reset value to this field. This field is reserved.
22 Reserved	Always write the reset value to this field. This field is reserved.
21 Reserved	Always write the reset value to this field. This field is reserved.
20 Reserved	Always write the reset value to this field. This field is reserved.
19 RFOF_RE	Receive FIFO Overflow Request Enable Enables the RFOF flag in the SR to generate an interrupt request. 0 RFOF interrupt requests are disabled. 1 RFOF interrupt requests are enabled.
18 Reserved	Always write the reset value to this field. This field is reserved.
17 RFDF_RE	Receive FIFO Drain Request Enable Enables the RFDF flag in the SR to generate a request. The RFDF_DIRS bit selects between generating an interrupt request or a DMA request. 0 RFDF interrupt or DMA requests are disabled. 1 RFDF interrupt or DMA requests are enabled.
16 RFDF_DIRS	Receive FIFO Drain DMA or Interrupt Request Select

Table continues on the next page...

SPIx_RSER field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	Selects between generating a DMA request or an interrupt request. When the RFDF flag bit in the SR is set, and the RFDF_RE bit in the RSER is set, the RFDF_DIRS bit selects between generating an interrupt request or a DMA request. 0 Interrupt request. 1 DMA request.
15 Reserved	Always write the reset value to this field. This field is reserved.
14 Reserved	Always write the reset value to this field. This field is reserved.
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

43.4.7 PUSH TX FIFO Register In Master Mode (SPIx_PUSHR)

Specifies data to be transferred to the TX FIFO. An 8- or 16-bit write access transfers all 32 bits to the TX FIFO. In Master mode, the register transfers 16 bits of data and 16 bits of command information. A read access of PUSHR returns the topmost TX FIFO entry.

When the module is disabled, writing to this register does not update the FIFO. Therefore, any reads performed while the module is disabled return the last PUSHR write performed while the module was still enabled.

Address: Base address + 34h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R W	CONT	CTAS			EOQ	CTCNT	Reserved		Reserved		PCS					
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R W	TXDATA															
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

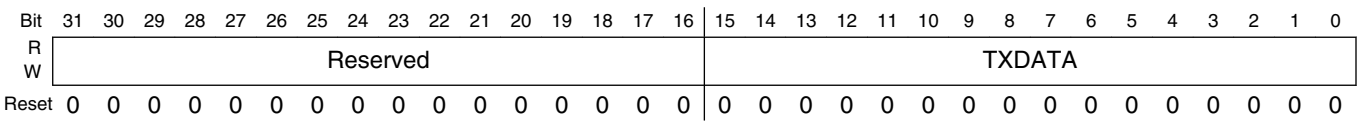
SPIx_PUSHR field descriptions

Field	Description
31 CONT	Continuous Peripheral Chip Select Enable Selects a continuous selection format. The bit is used in SPI Master mode. The bit enables the selected PCS signals to remain asserted between transfers. 0 Return PCSn signals to their inactive state between transfers. 1 Keep PCSn signals asserted between transfers.
30–28 CTAS	Clock and Transfer Attributes Select Selects which CTAR to use in master mode to specify the transfer attributes for the associated SPI frame. In SPI Slave mode, CTAR0 is used.See the chip specific section for details to determine how many CTARs this device has. You should not program a value in this field for a register that is not present. 000 CTAR0 001 CTAR1 010 Reserved 011 Reserved 100 Reserved 101 Reserved 110 Reserved 111 Reserved
27 EOQ	End Of Queue Host software uses this bit to signal to the module that the current SPI transfer is the last in a queue. At the end of the transfer, the EOQF bit in the SR is set. 0 The SPI data is not the last data to transfer. 1 The SPI data is the last data to transfer.
26 CTCNT	Clear Transfer Counter Clears the TCNT field in the TCR register. The TCNT field is cleared before the module starts transmitting the current SPI frame. 0 Do not clear the TCR[TCNT] field. 1 Clear the TCR[TCNT] field.
25–24 Reserved	Always write the reset value to this field. This field is reserved.
23–22 Reserved	Always write the reset value to this field. This field is reserved.
21–16 PCS	Select which PCS signals are to be asserted for the transfer. Refer to the chip-specific SPI information for the number of PCS signals used in this chip. 0 Negate the PCS[x] signal. 1 Assert the PCS[x] signal.
TXDATA	Transmit Data Holds SPI data to be transferred according to the associated SPI command.

43.4.8 PUSH TX FIFO Register In Slave Mode (SPIx_PUSHR_SLAVE)

Specifies data to be transferred to the TX FIFO in slave mode. An 8- or 16-bit write access to PUSHR transfers the 16-bit TXDATA field to the TX FIFO.

Address: Base address + 34h offset



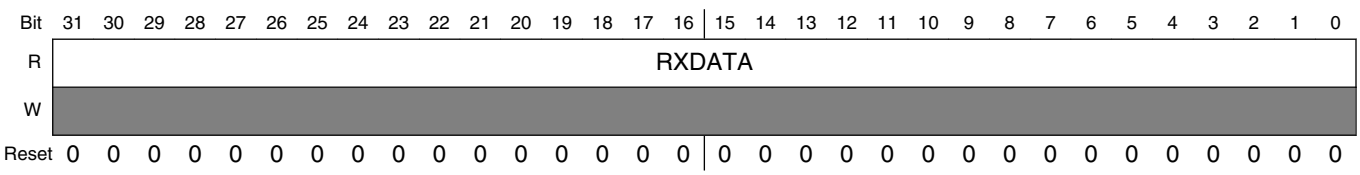
SPIx_PUSHR_SLAVE field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved.
TXDATA	Transmit Data Holds SPI data to be transferred according to the associated SPI command.

43.4.9 POP RX FIFO Register (SPIx_POPR)

POPR is used to read the RX FIFO. Eight- or sixteen-bit read accesses to the POPR have the same effect on the RX FIFO as 32-bit read accesses. A write to this register will generate a Transfer Error.

Address: Base address + 38h offset



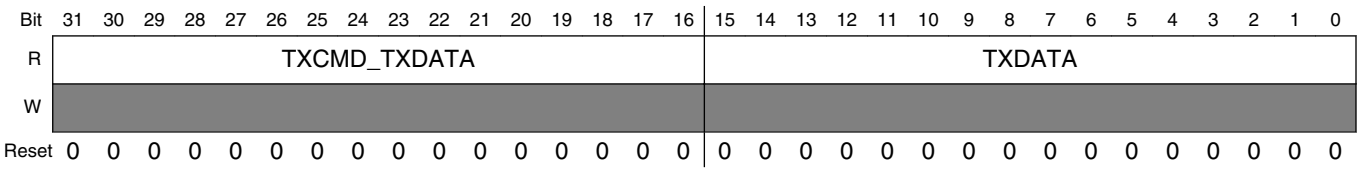
SPIx_POPR field descriptions

Field	Description
RXDATA	Received Data Contains the SPI data from the RX FIFO entry to which the Pop Next Data Pointer points.

43.4.10 Transmit FIFO Registers (SPIx_TXFR*n*)

TXFRn registers provide visibility into the TX FIFO for debugging purposes. Each register is an entry in the TX FIFO. The registers are read-only and cannot be modified. Reading the TXFRx registers does not alter the state of the TX FIFO.

Address: Base address + 3Ch offset + (4d × i), where i=0d to 3d



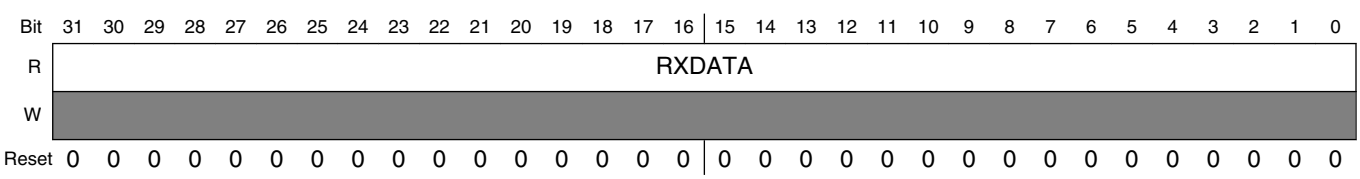
SPIx_TXFR*n* field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 TXCMD_ TXDATA	Transmit Command or Transmit Data In Master mode the TXCMD field contains the command that sets the transfer attributes for the SPI data. In Slave mode, this field is reserved.
TXDATA	Transmit Data Contains the SPI data to be shifted out.

43.4.11 Receive FIFO Registers (SPIx_RXFR*n*)

RXFRn provide visibility into the RX FIFO for debugging purposes. Each register is an entry in the RX FIFO. The RXFR registers are read-only. Reading the RXFRx registers does not alter the state of the RX FIFO.

Address: Base address + 7Ch offset + (4d × i), where i=0d to 3d



SPIx_RXFR*n* field descriptions

Field	Description
RXDATA	Receive Data Contains the received SPI data.

SPIx_RXFR*n* field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description

43.5 Functional description

The module supports full-duplex, synchronous serial communications between chips and peripheral devices. The SPI configuration transfers data serially using a shift register and a selection of programmable transfer attributes.

The module has the following configuration

- The SPI Configuration in which the module operates as a basic SPI or a queued SPI.

The DCONF field in the Module Configuration Register (MCR) determines the module Configuration. SPI configuration is selected when DCONF within SPIx_MCR is 0b00.

The CTARn registers hold clock and transfer attributes. The SPI configuration allows to select which CTAR to use on a frame by frame basis by setting a field in the SPI command.

See Clock and Transfer Attributes Register (In Master Mode) (SPI_CTAR*n*) for information on the fields of CTAR registers.

Typical master to slave connections are shown in the following figure. When a data transfer operation is performed, data is serially shifted a predetermined number of bit positions. Because the modules are linked, data is exchanged between the master and the slave. The data that was in the master shift register is now in the shift register of the slave, and vice versa. At the end of a transfer, the Transfer Control Flag(TCF) bit in the Shift Register(SR) is set to indicate a completed frame transfer.

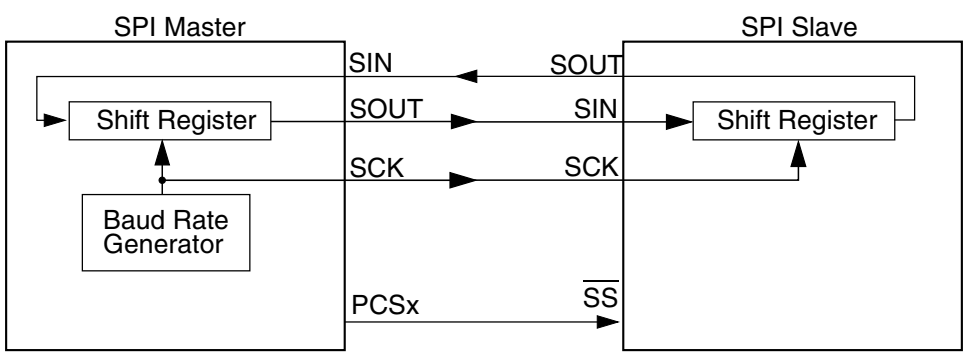


Figure 43-3. Serial protocol overview

Generally, more than one slave device can be connected to the module master. 6 Peripheral Chip Select (PCS) signals of the module masters can be used to select which of the slaves to communicate with. Refer to the chip specific section for details on the number of PCS signals used in this chip.

The SPI configuration shares transfer protocol and timing properties which are described independently of the configuration in Transfer formats. The transfer rate and delay settings are described in Module baud rate and clock delay generation.

43.5.1 Start and Stop of module transfers

The module has two operating states: Stopped and Running. Both the states are independent of it's configuration. The default state of the module is Stopped. In the Stopped state, no serial transfers are initiated in Master mode and no transfers are responded to in Slave mode. The Stopped state is also a safe state for writing the various configuration registers of the module without causing undetermined results. In the Running state serial transfers take place.

The TXRXS bit in the SR indicates the state of module. The bit is set if the module is in Running state.

The module starts or transitions to Running when all of the following conditions are true:

- SR[EOQF] bit is clear
- Chip is not in the Debug mode or the MCR[FRZ] bit is clear
- MCR[HALT] bit is clear

The module stops or transitions from Running to Stopped after the current frame when any one of the following conditions exist:

- SR[EOQF] bit is set
- Chip in the Debug mode and the MCR[FRZ] bit is set
- MCR[HALT] bit is set

State transitions from Running to Stopped occur on the next frame boundary if a transfer is in progress, or immediately if no transfers are in progress.

43.5.2 Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI) configuration

The SPI configuration transfers data serially using a shift register and a selection of programmable transfer attributes. The module is in SPI configuration when the DCONF field in the MCR is 0b00. The SPI frames can be 32 bits long. The host CPU or a DMA controller transfers the SPI data from the external to the module RAM queues to a TX FIFO buffer. The received data is stored in entries in the RX FIFO buffer. The host CPU or the DMA controller transfers the received data from the RX FIFO to memory external to the module. The operation of FIFO buffers is described in the following sections:

- Transmit First In First Out (TX FIFO) buffering mechanism
- Transmit First In First Out (TX FIFO) buffering mechanism
- Receive First In First Out (RX FIFO) buffering mechanism

The interrupt and DMA request conditions are described in Interrupts/DMA requests.

The SPI configuration supports two block-specific modes—Master mode and Slave mode.In Master mode the module initiates and controls the transfer according to the fields of the executing SPI Command. In Slave mode, the module responds only to transfers initiated by a bus master external to it and the SPI command field space is reserved.

43.5.2.1 Master mode

In SPI Master mode, the module initiates the serial transfers by controlling the SCK and the PCS signals. The executing SPI Command determines which CTARs will be used to set the transfer attributes and which PCS signals to assert. The command field also contains various bits that help with queue management and transfer protocol. See PUSH TX FIFO Register In Master Mode (SPI_PUSHR) for details on the SPI command fields. The data in the executing TX FIFO entry is loaded into the shift register and shifted out on the Serial Out (SOUT) pin. In SPI Master mode, each SPI frame to be transmitted has a command associated with it, allowing for transfer attribute control on a frame by frame basis.

43.5.2.2 Slave mode

In SPI Slave mode the module responds to transfers initiated by an SPI bus master. It does not initiate transfers. Certain transfer attributes such as clock polarity, clock phase, and frame size must be set for successful communication with an SPI master. The SPI Slave mode transfer attributes are set in the CTAR0. The data is shifted out with MSB first. Shifting out of LSB is not supported in this mode.

43.5.2.3 FIFO disable operation

The FIFO disable mechanisms allow SPI transfers without using the TX FIFO or RX FIFO. The module operates as a double-buffered simplified SPI when the FIFOs are disabled. The Transmit and Receive side of the FIFOs are disabled separately. Setting the MCR[DIS_TXF] bit disables the TX FIFO, and setting the MCR[DIS_RXF] bit disables the RX FIFO.

The FIFO disable mechanisms are transparent to the user and to host software. Transmit data and commands are written to the PUSHR and received data is read from the POPR.

When the TX FIFO is disabled:
- SR[TFFF], SR[TFUF] and SR[TXCTR] behave as if there is a one-entry FIFO
- The contents of TXFRs, SR[TXNXTPTR] are undefined

Similarly, when the RX FIFO is disabled, the RFDF, RFOF, and RXCTR fields in the SR behave as if there is a one-entry FIFO, but the contents of the RXFR registers and POPNXTPTR are undefined.

43.5.2.4 Transmit First In First Out (TX FIFO) buffering mechanism

The TX FIFO functions as a buffer of SPI data for transmission. The TX FIFO holds 4 words, each consisting of SPI data. The number of entries in the TX FIFO is device-specific. SPI data is added to the TX FIFO by writing to the Data Field of module PUSH FIFO Register (PUSHR). TX FIFO entries can only be removed from the TX FIFO by being shifted out or by flushing the TX FIFO.

The TX FIFO Counter field (TXCTR) in the module Status Register (SR) indicates the number of valid entries in the TX FIFO. The TXCTR is updated every time a 8- or 16-bit write takes place to PUSHR[TXDATA] or SPI data is transferred into the shift register from the TX FIFO.

The TXNXTPTR field indicates the TX FIFO Entry that will be transmitted during the next transfer. The TXNXTPTR field is incremented every time SPI data is transferred from the TX FIFO to the shift register. The maximum value of the field is equal to the maximum implemented TXFR number and it rolls over after reaching the maximum.

43.5.2.4.1 Filling the TX FIFO

Host software or other intelligent blocks can add (push) entries to the TX FIFO by writing to the PUSHR. When the TX FIFO is not full, the TX FIFO Fill Flag (TFFF) in the SR is set. The TFFF bit is cleared when TX FIFO is full and the DMA controller

indicates that a write to PUSHR is complete. Writing a '1' to the TFFF bit also clears it. The TFFF can generate a DMA request or an interrupt request. See Transmit FIFO Fill Interrupt or DMA Request for details.

The module ignores attempts to push data to a full TX FIFO, and the state of the TX FIFO does not change and no error condition is indicated.

43.5.2.4.2 Draining the TX FIFO

The TX FIFO entries are removed (drained) by shifting SPI data out through the shift register. Entries are transferred from the TX FIFO to the shift register and shifted out as long as there are valid entries in the TX FIFO. Every time an entry is transferred from the TX FIFO to the shift register, the TX FIFO Counter decrements by one. At the end of a transfer, the TCF bit in the SR is set to indicate the completion of a transfer. The TX FIFO is flushed by writing a '1' to the CLR_TXF bit in MCR.

If an external bus master initiates a transfer with a module slave while the slave's TX FIFO is empty, the Transmit FIFO Underflow Flag (TFUF) in the slave's SR is set. See Transmit FIFO Underflow Interrupt Request for details.

43.5.2.5 Receive First In First Out (RX FIFO) buffering mechanism

The RX FIFO functions as a buffer for data received on the SIN pin. The RX FIFO holds 4 received SPI data frames. The number of entries in the RX FIFO is device-specific. SPI data is added to the RX FIFO at the completion of a transfer when the received data in the shift register is transferred into the RX FIFO. SPI data are removed (popped) from the RX FIFO by reading the module POP RX FIFO Register (POPR). RX FIFO entries can only be removed from the RX FIFO by reading the POPR or by flushing the RX FIFO.

The RX FIFO Counter field (RXCTR) in the module's Status Register (SR) indicates the number of valid entries in the RX FIFO. The RXCTR is updated every time the POPR is read or SPI data is copied from the shift register to the RX FIFO.

The POPNXTPTR field in the SR points to the RX FIFO entry that is returned when the POPR is read. The POPNXTPTR contains the positive offset from RXFR0 in a number of 32-bit registers. For example, POPNXTPTR equal to two means that the RXFR2 contains the received SPI data that will be returned when the POPR is read. The POPNXTPTR field is incremented every time the POPR is read. The maximum value of the field is equal to the maximum implemented RXFR number and it rolls over after reaching the maximum.

43.5.2.5.1 Filling the RX FIFO

The RX FIFO is filled with the received SPI data from the shift register. While the RX FIFO is not full, SPI frames from the shift register are transferred to the RX FIFO. Every time an SPI frame is transferred to the RX FIFO, the RX FIFO Counter is incremented by one.

If the RX FIFO and shift register are full and a transfer is initiated, the RFOF bit in the SR is set indicating an overflow condition. Depending on the state of the ROOE bit in the MCR, the data from the transfer that generated the overflow is either ignored or shifted in to the shift register. If the ROOE bit is set, the incoming data is shifted in to the shift register. If the ROOE bit is cleared, the incoming data is ignored.

43.5.2.5.2 Draining the RX FIFO

Host CPU or a DMA can remove (pop) entries from the RX FIFO by reading the module POP RX FIFO Register (POPR). A read of the POPR decrements the RX FIFO Counter by one. Attempts to pop data from an empty RX FIFO are ignored and the RX FIFO Counter remains unchanged. The data, read from the empty RX FIFO, is undetermined.

When the RX FIFO is not empty, the RX FIFO Drain Flag (RFDF) in the SR is set. The RFDF bit is cleared when the RX_FIFO is empty and the DMA controller indicates that a read from POPR is complete or by writing a 1 to it.

43.5.3 Module baud rate and clock delay generation

The SCK frequency and the delay values for serial transfer are generated by dividing the system clock frequency by a prescaler and a scaler with the option for doubling the baud rate. The following figure shows conceptually how the SCK signal is generated.

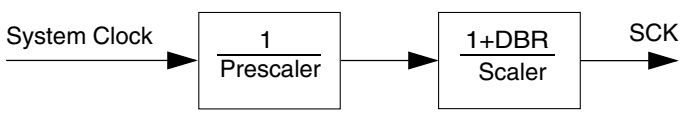


Figure 43-4. Communications clock prescalers and scalers

43.5.3.1 Baud rate generator

The baud rate is the frequency of the SCK. The protocol clock is divided by a prescaler (PBR) and scaler (BR) to produce SCK with the possibility of halving the scaler division. The DBR, PBR, and BR fields in the CTARs select the frequency of SCK by the formula in the BR field description. The following table shows an example of how to compute the baud rate.

Table 43-9. Baud rate computation example

f_P	PBR	Prescaler	BR	Scaler	DBR	Baud rate
100 MHz	0b00	2	0b0000	2	0	25 Mb/s
20 MHz	0b00	2	0b0000	2	1	10 Mb/s

NOTE

The clock frequencies mentioned in the preceding table are given as an example. Refer to the clocking chapter for the frequency used to drive this module in the device.

43.5.3.2 PCS to SCK Delay (t_{CSC})

The PCS to SCK delay is the length of time from assertion of the PCS signal to the first SCK edge. See Figure 43-6 for an illustration of the PCS to SCK delay. The PCSSCK and CSSCK fields in the CTAR*x* registers select the PCS to SCK delay by the formula in the CSSCK field description. The following table shows an example of how to compute the PCS to SCK delay.

Table 43-10. PCS to SCK delay computation example

f_{SYS}	PCSSCK	Prescaler	CSSCK	Scaler	PCS to SCK Delay
100 MHz	0b01	3	0b0100	32	0.96 µs

NOTE

The clock frequency mentioned in the preceding table is given as an example. Refer to the clocking chapter for the frequency used to drive this module in the device.

43.5.3.3 After SCK Delay (t_{ASC})

The After SCK Delay is the length of time between the last edge of SCK and the negation of PCS. See Figure 43-6 and Figure 43-7 for illustrations of the After SCK delay. The PASC and ASC fields in the CTAR*x* registers select the After SCK Delay by the formula in the ASC field description. The following table shows an example of how to compute the After SCK delay.

Table 43-11. After SCK Delay computation example

f_P	PASC	Prescaler	ASC	Scaler	After SCK Delay
100 MHz	0b01	3	0b0100	32	0.96 µs

NOTE

The clock frequency mentioned in the preceding table is given as an example. Refer to the clocking chapter for the frequency used to drive this module in the device.

43.5.3.4 Delay after Transfer (t_{DT})

The Delay after Transfer is the minimum time between negation of the PCS signal for a frame and the assertion of the PCS signal for the next frame. See Figure 43-6 for an illustration of the Delay after Transfer. The PDT and DT fields in the CTAR*x* registers select the Delay after Transfer by the formula in the DT field description. The following table shows an example of how to compute the Delay after Transfer.

Table 43-12. Delay after Transfer computation example

f_P	PDT	Prescaler	DT	Scaler	Delay after Transfer
100 MHz	0b01	3	0b1110	32768	0.98 ms

NOTE

The clock frequency mentioned in the preceding table is given as an example. Refer to the clocking chapter for the frequency used to drive this module in the device.

When in Non-Continuous Clock mode the t_{DT} delay is configured according to the equation specified in the CTAR[DT] field description. When in Continuous Clock mode, the delay is fixed at 1 SCK period.

43.5.3.5 Peripheral Chip Select Strobe Enable ($\overline{\text{PCSS}}$)

The $\overline{\text{PCSS}}$ signal provides a delay to allow the PCS signals to settle after a transition occurs thereby avoiding glitches. When the Module is in Master mode and the PCSSE bit is set in the MCR, $\overline{\text{PCSS}}$ provides a signal for an external demultiplexer to decode peripheral chip selects other than PCS5 into glitch-free PCS signals. The following figure shows the timing of the $\overline{\text{PCSS}}$ signal relative to PCS signals.

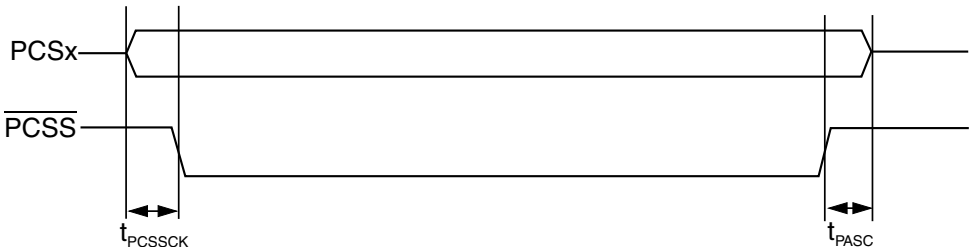


Figure 43-5. Peripheral Chip Select Strobe timing

The delay between the assertion of the PCS signals and the assertion of $\overline{\text{PCSS}}$ is selected by the PCSSCK field in the CTAR based on the following formula:

$$t_{\text{PCSSCK}} = \frac{1}{f_{\text{P}}} \times \text{PCSSCK}$$

At the end of the transfer, the delay between $\overline{\text{PCSS}}$ negation and PCS negation is selected by the PASC field in the CTAR based on the following formula:

$$t_{\text{PASC}} = \frac{1}{f_{\text{P}}} \times \text{PASC}$$

The following table shows an example of how to compute the t_{pcssck} delay.

Table 43-13. Peripheral Chip Select Strobe Assert computation example

f_P	PCSSCK	Prescaler	Delay before Transfer
100 MHz	0b11	7	70.0 ns

The following table shows an example of how to compute the t_{pasc} delay.

Table 43-14. Peripheral Chip Select Strobe Negate computation example

f_P	PASC	Prescaler	Delay after Transfer
100 MHz	0b11	7	70.0 ns

The $\overline{\text{PCSS}}$ signal is not supported when Continuous Serial Communication SCK mode is enabled.

NOTE

The clock frequency mentioned in the preceding tables is given as an example. Refer to the clocking chapter for the frequency used to drive this module in the device.

43.5.4 Transfer formats

The SPI serial communication is controlled by the Serial Communications Clock (SCK) signal and the PCS signals. The SCK signal provided by the master device synchronizes shifting and sampling of the data on the SIN and SOUT pins. The PCS signals serve as enable signals for the slave devices.

In Master mode, the CPOL and CPHA bits in the Clock and Transfer Attributes Registers (CTARn) select the polarity and phase of the serial clock, SCK.

- CPOL - Selects the idle state polarity of the SCK
- CPHA - Selects if the data on SOUT is valid before or on the first SCK edge

Even though the bus slave does not control the SCK signal, in Slave mode the values of CPOL and CPHA must be identical to the master device settings to ensure proper transmission. In SPI Slave mode, only CTAR0 is used.

The module supports four different transfer formats:

- Classic SPI with CPHA=0
- Classic SPI with CPHA=1
- Modified Transfer Format with CPHA = 0
- Modified Transfer Format with CPHA = 1

A modified transfer format is supported to allow for high-speed communication with peripherals that require longer setup times. The module can sample the incoming data later than halfway through the cycle to give the peripheral more setup time. The MTFE bit in the MCR selects between Classic SPI Format and Modified Transfer Format.

In the interface configurations, the module provides the option of keeping the PCS signals asserted between frames. See Continuous Selection Format for details.

43.5.4.1 Classic SPI Transfer Format (CPHA = 0)

The transfer format shown in following figure is used to communicate with peripheral SPI slave devices where the first data bit is available on the first clock edge. In this format, the master and slave sample their SIN pins on the odd-numbered SCK edges and change the data on their SOUT pins on the even-numbered SCK edges.

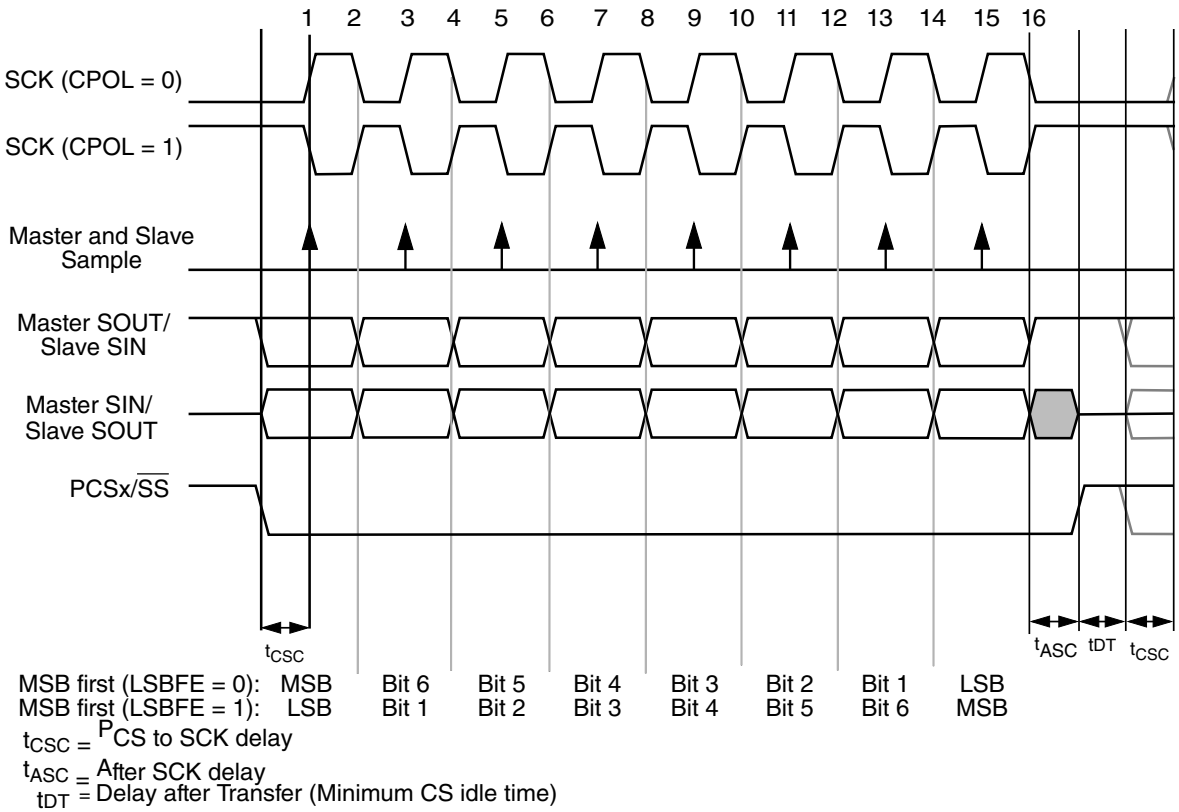


Figure 43-6. Module transfer timing diagram (MTFE=0, CPHA=0, FMSZ=8)

The master initiates the transfer by placing its first data bit on the SOUT pin and asserting the appropriate peripheral chip select signals to the slave device. The slave responds by placing its first data bit on its SOUT pin. After the t_{CSC} delay elapses, the master outputs the first edge of SCK. The master and slave devices use this edge to sample the first input data bit on their serial data input signals. At the second edge of the SCK, the master and slave devices place their second data bit on their serial data output signals. For the rest of the frame the master and the slave sample their SIN pins on the odd-numbered clock edges and changes the data on their SOUT pins on the even-numbered clock edges. After the last clock edge occurs, a delay of t_{ASC} is inserted before the master negates the PCS signals. A delay of t_{DT} is inserted before a new frame transfer can be initiated by the master.

43.5.4.2 Classic SPI Transfer Format (CPHA = 1)

This transfer format shown in the following figure is used to communicate with peripheral SPI slave devices that require the first SCK edge before the first data bit becomes available on the slave SOUT pin. In this format, the master and slave devices change the data on their SOUT pins on the odd-numbered SCK edges and sample the data on their SIN pins on the even-numbered SCK edges.

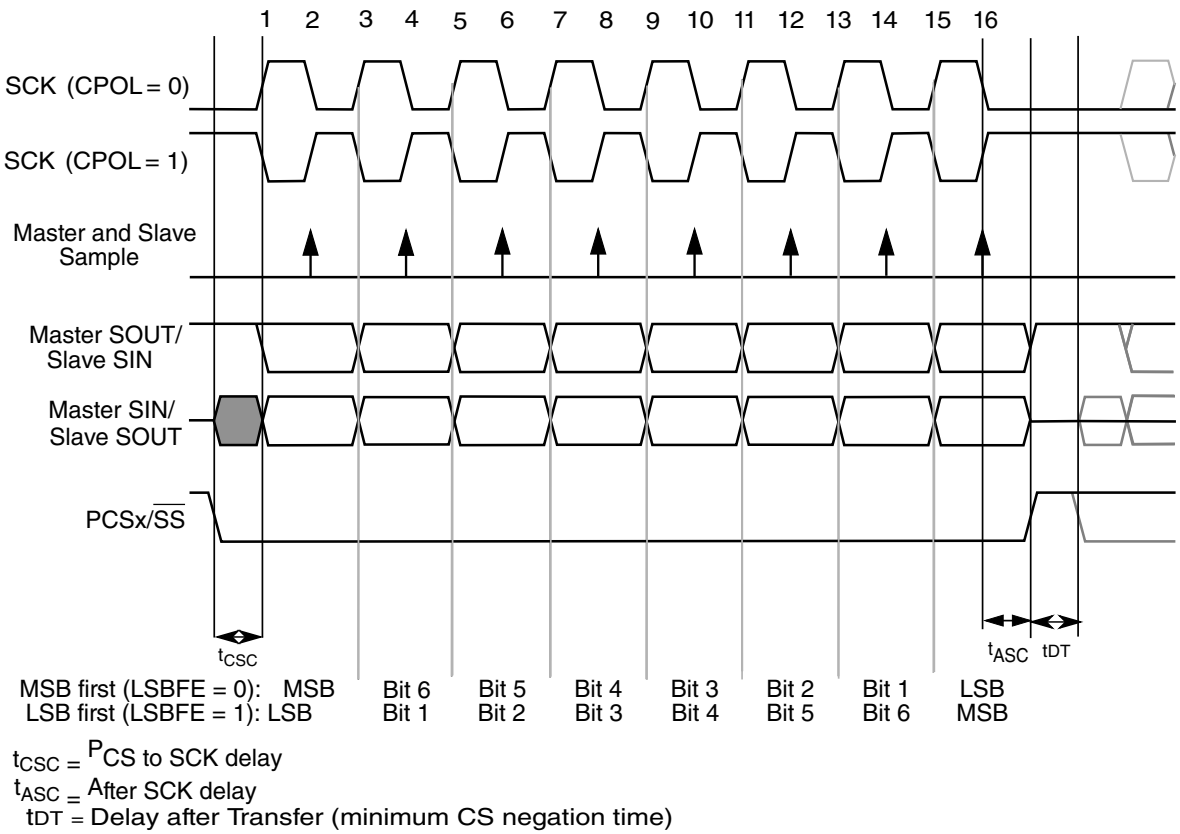


Figure 43-7. Module transfer timing diagram (MTFE=0, CPHA=1, FMSZ=8)

The master initiates the transfer by asserting the PCS signal to the slave. After the t_{CSC} delay has elapsed, the master generates the first SCK edge and at the same time places valid data on the master SOUT pin. The slave responds to the first SCK edge by placing its first data bit on its slave SOUT pin.

At the second edge of the SCK the master and slave sample their SIN pins. For the rest of the frame the master and the slave change the data on their SOUT pins on the odd-numbered clock edges and sample their SIN pins on the even-numbered clock edges. After the last clock edge occurs, a delay of t_{ASC} is inserted before the master negates the PCS signal. A delay of t_{DT} is inserted before a new frame transfer can be initiated by the master.

43.5.4.3 Modified SPI Transfer Format (MTFE = 1, CPHA = 0)

In this Modified Transfer Format both the master and the slave sample later in the SCK period than in Classic SPI mode to allow the logic to tolerate more delays in device pads and board traces. These delays become a more significant fraction of the SCK period as the SCK period decreases with increasing baud rates.

The master and the slave place data on the SOUT pins at the assertion of the PCS signal. After the PCS to SCK delay has elapsed the first SCK edge is generated. The slave samples the master SOUT signal on every odd numbered SCK edge. The DSPI in the slave mode when the MTFE bit is set also places new data on the slave SOUT on every odd numbered clock edge. Regular external slave, configured with CPHA=0 format drives its SOUT output at every even numbered SCK clock edge.

The DSPI master places its second data bit on the SOUT line one protocol clock after odd numbered SCK edge if the protocol clock frequency to SCK frequency ratio is higher than three. If this ratio is below four the master changes SOUT at odd numbered SCK edge. The point where the master samples the SIN is selected by the DSPI_MCR[SMPL_PT] field. The master sample point can be delayed by one or two protocol clock cycles. The SMPL_PT field should be set to 0 if the protocol to SCK frequency ratio is less than 4. However if this ratio is less than 4, the actual sample point is delayed by one protocol clock cycle automatically by the design.

The following timing diagrams illustrate the DSPI operation with MTFE=1. Timing delays shown are:

- T_{csc} - PCS to SCK assertion delay
- T_{acs} - After SCK PCS negation delay
- T_{su_ms} - master SIN setup time
- T_{hd_ms} - master SIN hold time
- T_{vd_sl} - slave data output valid time, time between slave data output SCK driving edge and data becomes valid.
- T_{su_sl} - data setup time on slave data input
- T_{hd_sl} - data hold time on slave data input
- T_{sys} - protocol clock period.

The following figure shows the modified transfer format for CPHA = 0 and Fsys/Fsck = 4. Only the condition where CPOL = 0 is illustrated. Solid triangles show the data sampling clock edges. The two possible slave behavior are shown.

- Signal, marked "SOUT of Ext Slave", presents regular SPI slave serial output.
- Signal, marked "SOUT of DSPI Slave", presents DSPI in the slave mode with MTFE bit set.

Other MTFE = 1 diagrams show DSPI SIN input as being driven by a regular external SPI slave, configured according DSPI master CPHA programming.

Note

In the following diagrams, f_{sys} represents the protocol clock frequency from which the Baud frequency f_{sck} is derived.

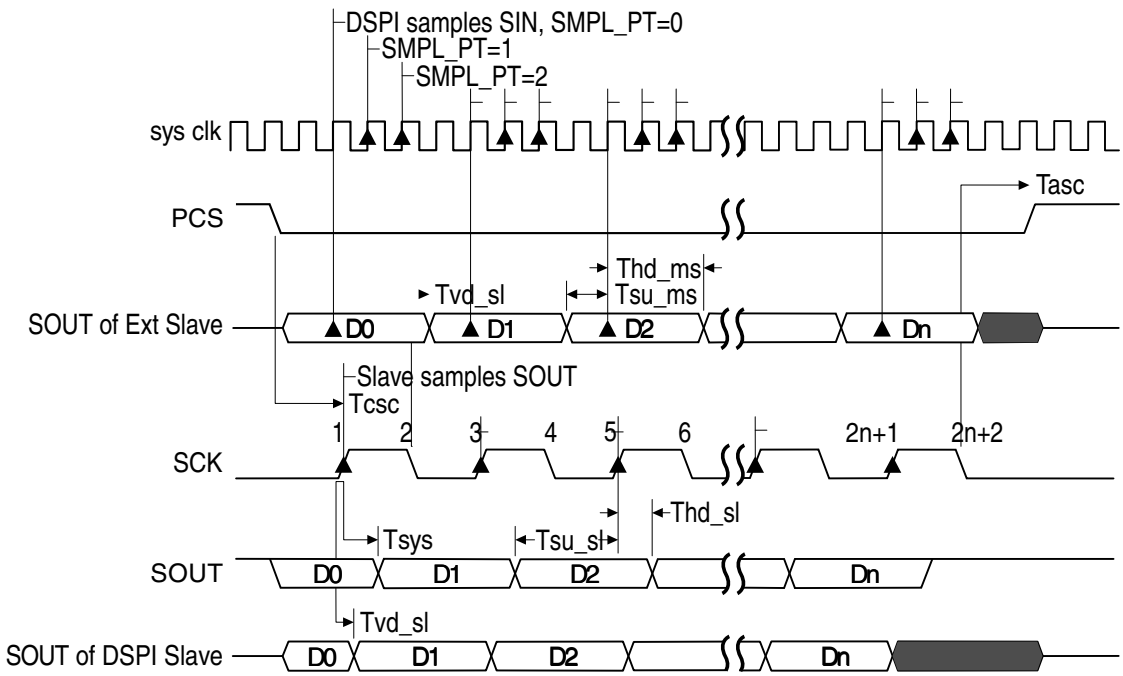


Figure 43-8. DSPI Modified Transfer Format (MTFE=1, CPHA=0, $f_{sck} = f_{sys}/4$)

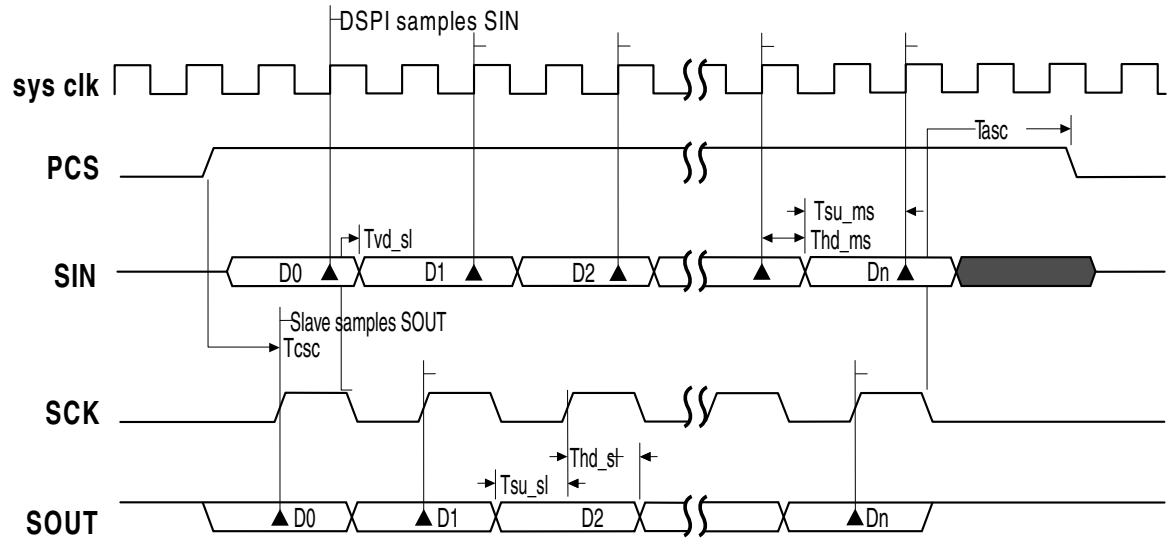


Figure 43-9. DSPI Modified Transfer Format (MTFE=1, CPHA=0, $f_{sck} = f_{sys}/2$)

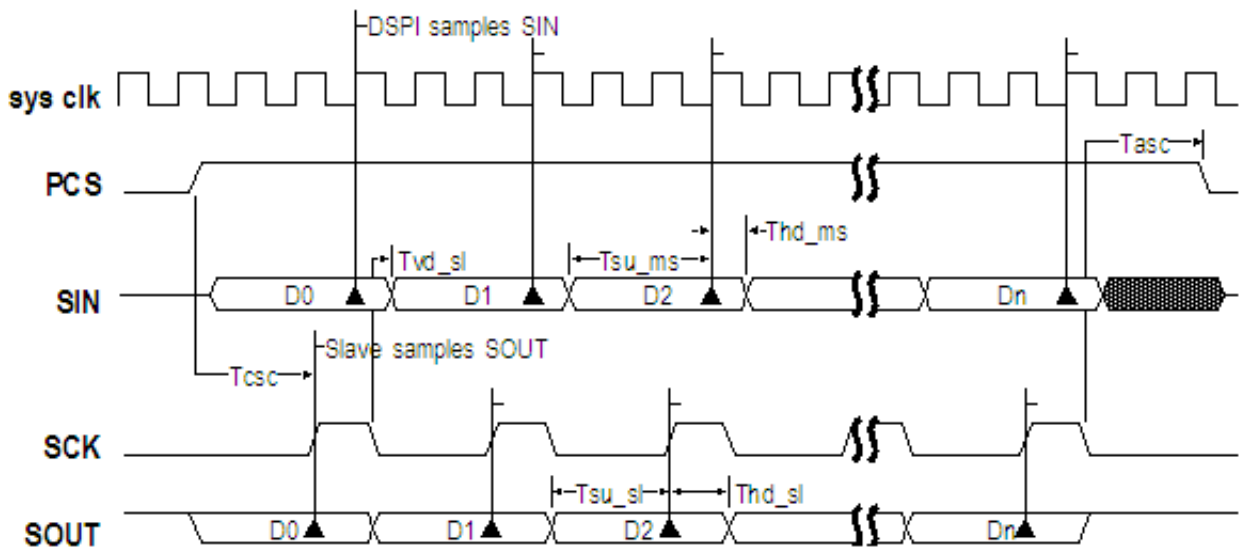


Figure 43-10. DSPI Modified Transfer Format (MTFE=1, CPHA=0, $f_{sck} = f_{sys}/3$)

43.5.4.4 Modified SPI Transfer Format (MTFE = 1, CPHA = 1)

The following figures show the Modified Transfer Format for CPHA = 1. Only the condition, where CPOL = 0 is shown. At the start of a transfer the DSPI asserts the PCS signal to the slave device. After the PCS to SCK delay has elapsed the master and the slave put data on their SOUT pins at the first edge of SCK . The slave samples the master SOUT signal on the even numbered edges of SCK. The master samples the slave SOUT

signal on the odd numbered SCK edges starting with the third SCK edge. The slave samples the last bit on the last edge of the SCK. The master samples the last slave SOUT bit one half SCK cycle after the last edge of SCK. No clock edge will be visible on the master SCK pin during the sampling of the last bit. **The SCK to PCS delay and the After SCK delay must be greater or equal to half of the SCK period.**

NOTE

When MTFE=1 with continuous SCK enabled (MCR [CONT_SCKE] =1) in master mode, configure CTAR[LSBFE]=0 for correct operations while receiving unequal length frames. If PUSHR[CONT] is also set for back to back frame transfer, also configure the frame size of the first frame as less than or equal to the frame size of the next frame. In this scenario, make sure that for all received frames, the bits are read equal to their respective frame sizes and any extra bits during POP operation are masked.

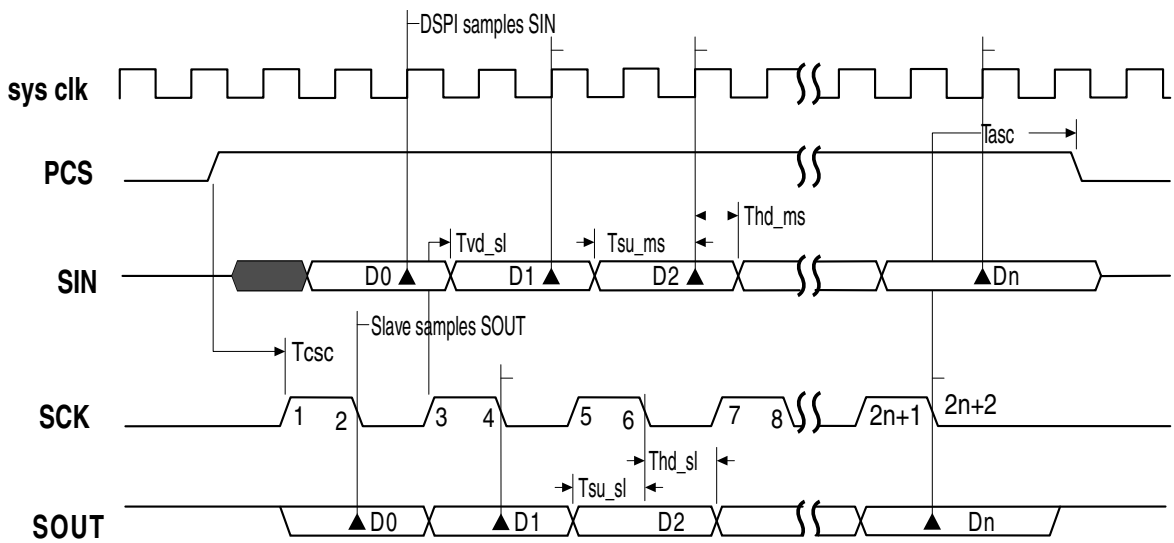


Figure 43-11. DSPI Modified Transfer Format (MTFE=1, CPHA=1, $f_{sck} = f_{sys}/2$)

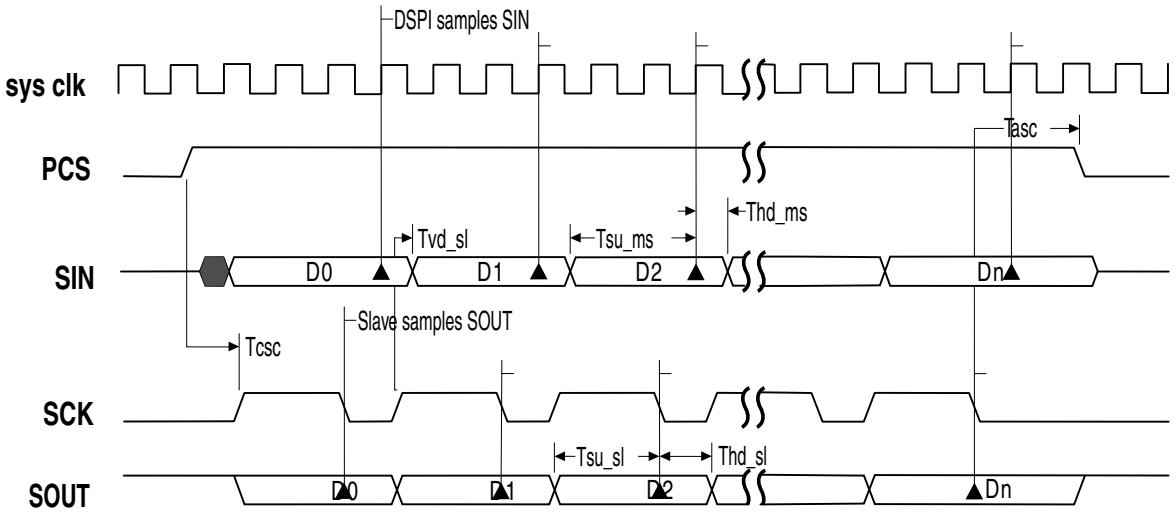


Figure 43-12. DSPI Modified Transfer Format (MTFE=1, CPHA=1, $f_{sck} = f_{sys}/3$)

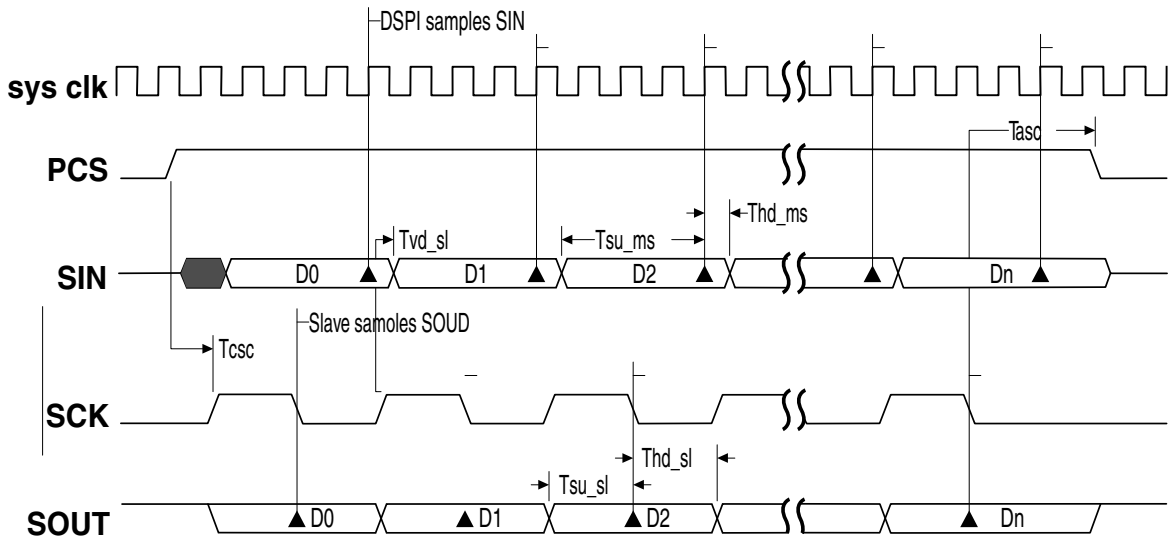


Figure 43-13. DSPI Modified Transfer Format (MTFE=1, CPHA=1, $f_{sck} = f_{sys}/4$)

43.5.4.5 Continuous Selection Format

Some peripherals must be deselected between every transfer. Other peripherals must remain selected between several sequential serial transfers. The Continuous Selection Format provides the flexibility to handle the following case. The Continuous Selection Format is enabled for the SPI configuration by setting the CONT bit in the SPI command.

When the CONT bit = 0, the module drives the asserted Chip Select signals to their idle states in between frames. The idle states of the Chip Select signals are selected by the PCSISn bits in the MCR. The following timing diagram is for two four-bit transfers with CPHA = 1 and CONT = 0.

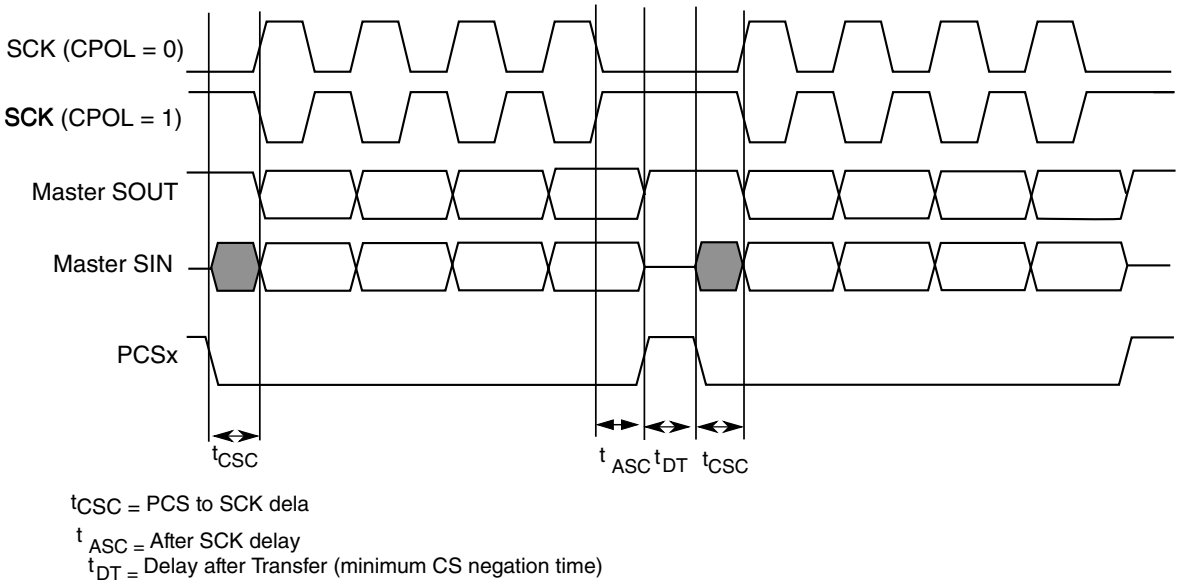


Figure 43-14. Example of non-continuous format (CPHA=1, CONT=0)

When the CONT bit = 1, the PCS signal remains asserted for the duration of the two transfers. The Delay between Transfers (t_{DT}) is not inserted between the transfers. The following figure shows the timing diagram for two four-bit transfers with CPHA = 1 and CONT = 1.

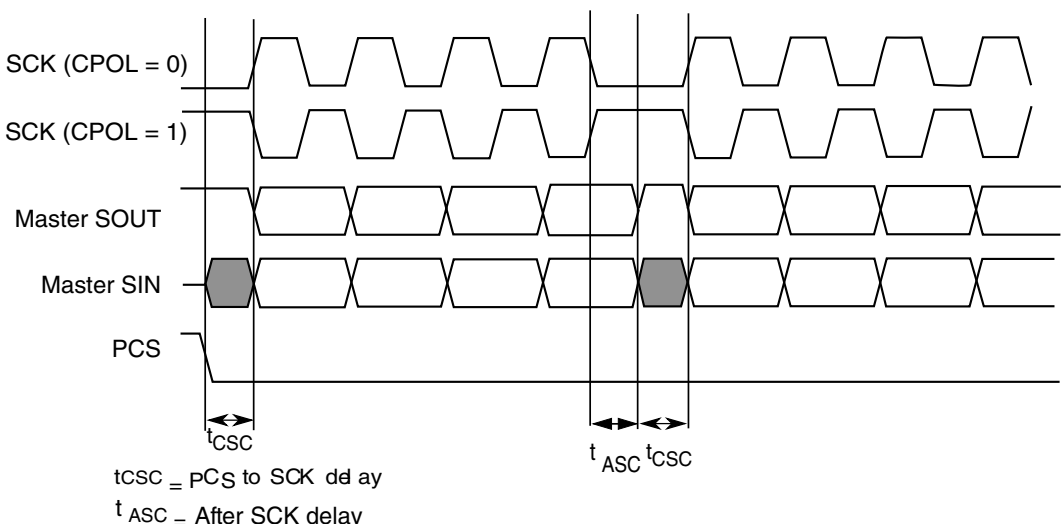


Figure 43-15. Example of continuous transfer (CPHA=1, CONT=1)

When using the module with continuous selection follow these rules:

- All transmit commands must have the same PCSn bits programming.
- The CTARs, selected by transmit commands, must be programmed with the same transfer attributes. Only FMSZ field can be programmed differently in these CTARs.

- When transmitting multiple frames in this mode, the user software must ensure that the last frame has the PUSHR[CONT] bit deasserted in Master mode and the user software must provide sufficient frames in the TX_FIFO to be sent out in Slave mode and the master deasserts the PCSn at end of transmission of the last frame.
- PUSHR[CONT] must be deasserted before asserting MCR[HALT] in master mode. This will make sure that the PCSn signals are deasserted. Asserting MCR[HALT] during continuous transfer will cause the PCSn signals to remain asserted and hence Slave Device cannot transition from Running to Stopped state.

NOTE

User must fill the TX FIFO with the number of entries that will be concatenated together under one PCS assertion for both master and slave before the TX FIFO becomes empty.

When operating in Slave mode, ensure that when the last entry in the TX FIFO is completely transmitted, that is, the corresponding TCF flag is asserted and TXFIFO is empty, the slave is deselected for any further serial communication; otherwise, an underflow error occurs.

43.5.5 Continuous Serial Communications Clock

The module provides the option of generating a Continuous SCK signal for slave peripherals that require a continuous clock.

Continuous SCK is enabled by setting the CONT_SCKE bit in the MCR. Enabling this bit generates the Continuous SCK only if MCR[HALT] bit is low. Continuous SCK is valid in all configurations.

Continuous SCK is only supported for CPHA=1. Clearing CPHA is ignored if the CONT_SCKE bit is set. Continuous SCK is supported for Modified Transfer Format.

Clock and transfer attributes for the Continuous SCK mode are set according to the following rules:

- When the module is in SPI configuration, CTAR0 is used initially. At the start of each SPI frame transfer, the CTAR specified by the CTAS for the frame is used.
- In all configurations, the currently selected CTAR remains in use until the start of a frame with a different CTAR specified, or the Continuous SCK mode is terminated.

It is recommended to keep the baud rate the same while using the Continuous SCK. Switching clock polarity between frames while using Continuous SCK can cause errors in the transfer. Continuous SCK operation is not guaranteed if the module is put into the External Stop mode or Module Disable mode.

Enabling Continuous SCK disables the PCS to SCK delay and the Delay after Transfer (t_{DT}) is fixed to one SCK cycle. The following figure is the timing diagram for Continuous SCK format with Continuous Selection disabled.

NOTE

In Continuous SCK mode, for the SPI transfer CTAR0 should always be used, and the TX FIFO must be cleared using the MCR[CLR_TXF] field before initiating transfer.

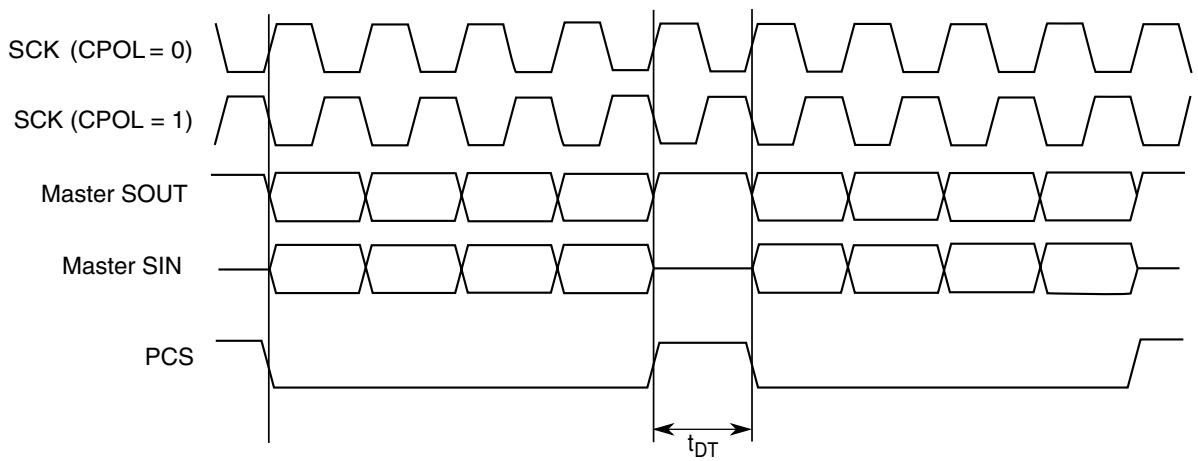


Figure 43-16. Continuous SCK Timing Diagram (CONT=0)

If the CONT bit in the TX FIFO entry is set, PCS remains asserted between the transfers. Under certain conditions, SCK can continue with PCS asserted, but with no data being shifted out of SOUT, that is, SOUT pulled high. This can cause the slave to receive incorrect data. Those conditions include:

- Continuous SCK with CONT bit set, but no data in the TX FIFO.
- Continuous SCK with CONT bit set and entering Stopped state (refer to Start and Stop of module transfers).
- Continuous SCK with CONT bit set and entering Stop mode or Module Disable mode.

The following figure shows timing diagram for Continuous SCK format with Continuous Selection enabled.

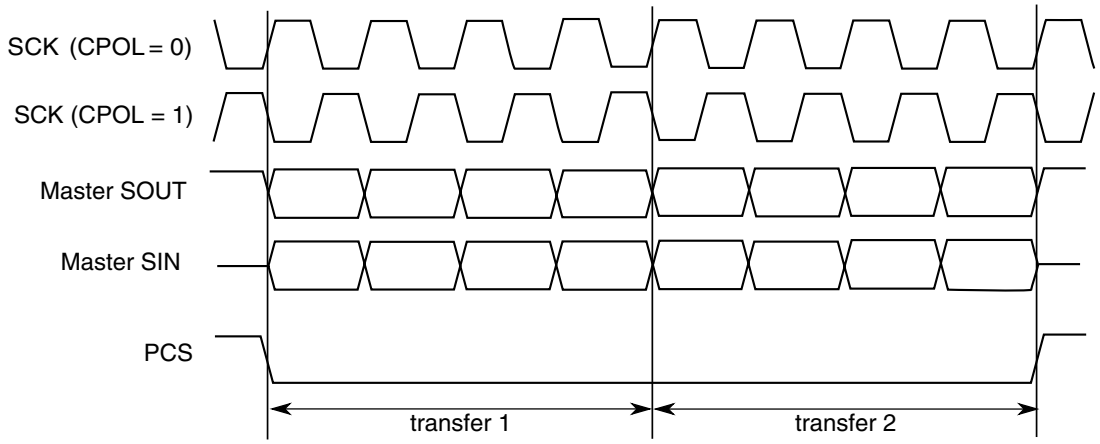


Figure 43-17. Continuous SCK timing diagram (CONT=1)

43.5.6 Slave Mode Operation Constraints

Slave mode logic shift register is buffered. This allows data streaming operation, when the module is permanently selected and data is shifted in with a constant rate.

The transmit data is transferred at second SCK clock edge of the each frame to the shift register if the $\overline{SS}$ signal is asserted and any time when transmit data is ready and $\overline{SS}$ signal is negated.

Received data is transferred to the receive buffer at last SCK edge of each frame, defined by frame size programmed to the CTAR0/1 register. Then the data from the buffer is transferred to the RXFIFO or DDR register.

If the $\overline{SS}$ negates before that last SCK edge, the data from shift register is lost.

43.5.7 Interrupts/DMA requests

The module has several conditions that can generate only interrupt requests and two conditions that can generate interrupt or DMA requests. The following table lists these conditions.

Table 43-15. Interrupt and DMA request conditions

Condition	Flag	Interrupt	DMA
End of Queue (EOQ)	EOQF	Yes	-
TX FIFO Fill	TFFF	Yes	Yes
Transfer Complete	TCF	Yes	-
TX FIFO Underflow	TFUF	Yes	-

Table continues on the next page...

Table 43-15. Interrupt and DMA request conditions (continued)

Condition	Flag	Interrupt	DMA
RX FIFO Drain	RFDF	Yes	Yes
RX FIFO Overflow	RFOF	Yes	-

Each condition has a flag bit in the module Status Register (SR) and a Request Enable bit in the DMA/Interrupt Request Select and Enable Register (RSER). Certain flags (as shown in above table) generate interrupt requests or DMA requests depending on configuration of RSER register.

The module also provides a global interrupt request line, which is asserted when any of individual interrupt requests lines is asserted.

43.5.7.1 End Of Queue interrupt request

The End Of Queue (EOQ) interrupt request indicates that the end of a transmit queue is reached. The module generates the interrupt request when EOQ interrupt requests are enabled (RSER[EOQF_RE]) and the EOQ bit in the executing SPI command is 1.

The module generates the interrupt request when the last bit of the SPI frame with EOQ bit set is transmitted.

43.5.7.2 Transmit FIFO Fill Interrupt or DMA Request

The Transmit FIFO Fill Request indicates that the TX FIFO is not full. The Transmit FIFO Fill Request is generated when the number of entries in the TX FIFO is less than the maximum number of possible entries, and the TFFF_RE bit in the RSER is set. The TFFF_DIRS bit in the RSER selects whether a DMA request or an interrupt request is generated.

NOTE

TFFF flag clears automatically when DMA is used to fill TX FIFO.

To clear TFFF when not using DMA, follow these steps for every PUSH performed using CPU to fill TX FIFO:

1. Wait until TFFF = 1.
2. Write data to PUSHR using CPU.
3. Clear TFFF by writing a 1 to its location. If TX FIFO is not full, this flag will not clear.

43.5.7.3 Transfer Complete Interrupt Request

The Transfer Complete Request indicates the end of the transfer of a serial frame. The Transfer Complete Request is generated at the end of each frame transfer when the TCF_RE bit is set in the RSER.

43.5.7.4 Transmit FIFO Underflow Interrupt Request

The Transmit FIFO Underflow Request indicates that an underflow condition in the TX FIFO has occurred. The transmit underflow condition is detected only for the module operating in Slave mode and SPI configuration . The TFUF bit is set when the TX FIFO of the module is empty, and a transfer is initiated from an external SPI master. If the TFUF bit is set while the TFUF_RE bit in the RSER is set, an interrupt request is generated.

43.5.7.5 Receive FIFO Drain Interrupt or DMA Request

The Receive FIFO Drain Request indicates that the RX FIFO is not empty. The Receive FIFO Drain Request is generated when the number of entries in the RX FIFO is not zero, and the RFDF_RE bit in the RSER is set. The RFDF_DIRS bit in the RSER selects whether a DMA request or an interrupt request is generated.

43.5.7.6 Receive FIFO Overflow Interrupt Request

The Receive FIFO Overflow Request indicates that an overflow condition in the RX FIFO has occurred. A Receive FIFO Overflow request is generated when RX FIFO and shift register are full and a transfer is initiated. The RFOF_RE bit in the RSER must be set for the interrupt request to be generated.

Depending on the state of the ROOE bit in the MCR, the data from the transfer that generated the overflow is either ignored or shifted in to the shift register. If the ROOE bit is set, the incoming data is shifted in to the shift register. If the ROOE bit is cleared, the incoming data is ignored.

43.5.8 Power saving features

The module supports following power-saving strategies:

- External Stop mode
- Module Disable mode – Clock gating of non-memory mapped logic

43.5.8.1 Stop mode (External Stop mode)

This module supports the Stop mode protocol. When a request is made to enter External Stop mode, the module acknowledges the request . If a serial transfer is in progress, then this module waits until it reaches the frame boundary before it is ready to have its clocks shut off . While the clocks are shut off, this module's memory-mapped logic is not accessible. This also puts the module in STOPPED state. The SR[TXRXS] bit is cleared to indicate STOPPED state. The states of the interrupt and DMA request signals cannot be changed while in External Stop mode.

43.5.8.2 Module Disable mode

Module Disable mode is a block-specific mode that the module can enter to save power. Host CPU can initiate the Module Disable mode by setting the MDIS bit in the MCR. The Module Disable mode can also be initiated by hardware.

When the MDIS bit is set, the module negates the Clock Enable signal at the next frame boundary. Once the Clock Enable signal is negated, it is said to have entered Module Disable Mode. This also puts the module in STOPPED state. The SR[TXRXS] bit is cleared to indicate STOPPED state.If implemented, the Clock Enable signal can stop the clock to the non-memory mapped logic. When Clock Enable is negated, the module is in a dormant state, but the memory mapped registers are still accessible. Certain read or write operations have a different effect when the module is in the Module Disable mode. Reading the RX FIFO Pop Register does not change the state of the RX FIFO. Similarly, writing to the PUSHR Register does not change the state of the TX FIFO. Clearing either of the FIFOs has no effect in the Module Disable mode. Changes to the DIS_TXF and DIS_RXF fields of the MCR have no effect in the Module Disable mode. In the Module Disable mode, all status bits and register flags in the module return the correct values when read, but writing to them has no effect. Writing to the TCR during Module Disable mode has no effect. Interrupt and DMA request signals cannot be cleared while in the Module Disable mode.

43.6 Initialization/application information

This section describes how to initialize the module.

43.6.1 How to manage queues

The queues are not part of the module, but it includes features in support of queue management. Queues are primarily supported in SPI configuration.

1. When module executes last command word from a queue, the EOQ bit in the command word is set to indicate it that this is the last entry in the queue.
2. At the end of the transfer, corresponding to the command word with EOQ set is sampled, the EOQ flag (EOQF) in the SR is set.
3. The setting of the EOQF flag disables serial transmission and reception of data, putting the module in the Stopped state. The TXRXS bit is cleared to indicate the Stopped state.
4. The DMA can continue to fill TX FIFO until it is full or step 5 occurs.
5. Disable DMA transfers by disabling the DMA enable request for the DMA channel assigned to TX FIFO and RX FIFO. This is done by clearing the corresponding DMA enable request bits in the DMA Controller.
6. Ensure all received data in RX FIFO has been transferred to memory receive queue by reading the RXCNT in SR or by checking RFDF in the SR after each read operation of the POPR.
7. Modify DMA descriptor of TX and RX channels for new queues
8. Flush TX FIFO by writing a 1 to the CLR_TXF bit in the MCR. Flush RX FIFO by writing a '1' to the CLR_RXF bit in the MCR.
9. Clear transfer count either by setting CTCNT bit in the command word of the first entry in the new queue or via CPU writing directly to SPI_TCNT field in the TCR.
10. Enable DMA channel by enabling the DMA enable request for the DMA channel assigned to the module TX FIFO, and RX FIFO by setting the corresponding DMA set enable request bit.
11. Enable serial transmission and serial reception of data by clearing the EOQF bit.

43.6.2 Switching Master and Slave mode

When changing modes in the module, follow the steps below to guarantee proper operation.

1. Halt it by setting MCR[HALT].
2. Clear the transmit and receive FIFOs by writing a 1 to the CLR_TXF and CLR_RXF bits in MCR.
3. Set the appropriate mode in MCR[MSTR] and enable it by clearing MCR[HALT].

43.6.3 Initializing Module in Master/Slave Modes

Once the appropriate mode in MCR[MSTR] is configured, the module is enabled by clearing MCR[HALT]. It should be ensured that module Slave is enabled before enabling it's Master. This ensures the Slave is ready to be communicated with, before Master initializes communication.

43.6.4 Baud rate settings

The following table shows the baud rate that is generated based on the combination of the baud rate prescaler PBR and the baud rate scaler BR in the CTARs. The values calculated assume a 100 MHz protocol frequency and the double baud rate DBR bit is cleared.

NOTE

The clock frequency mentioned above is given as an example in this chapter. See the clocking chapter for the frequency used to drive this module in the device.

Table 43-16. Baud rate values (bps)

		Baud rate divider prescaler values			
		2	3	5	7
Baud Rate Scaler Values	2	25.0M	16.7M	10.0M	7.14M
	4	12.5M	8.33M	5.00M	3.57M
	6	8.33M	5.56M	3.33M	2.38M
	8	6.25M	4.17M	2.50M	1.79M
	16	3.12M	2.08M	1.25M	893k
	32	1.56M	1.04M	625k	446k
	64	781k	521k	312k	223k
	128	391k	260k	156k	112k
	256	195k	130k	78.1k	55.8k
	512	97.7k	65.1k	39.1k	27.9k
	1024	48.8k	32.6k	19.5k	14.0k
	2048	24.4k	16.3k	9.77k	6.98k

Table continues on the next page...

Table 43-16. Baud rate values (bps) (continued)

		Baud rate divider prescaler values			
		2	3	5	7
	4096	12.2k	8.14k	4.88k	3.49k
	8192	6.10k	4.07k	2.44k	1.74k
	16384	3.05k	2.04k	1.22k	872
	32768	1.53k	1.02k	610	436

43.6.5 Delay settings

The following table shows the values for the Delay after Transfer (t_{DT}) and CS to SCK Delay (T_{CSC}) that can be generated based on the prescaler values and the scaler values set in the CTARs. The values calculated assume a 100 MHz protocol frequency.

NOTE

The clock frequency mentioned above is given as an example in this chapter. See the clocking chapter for the frequency used to drive this module in the device.

Table 43-17. Delay values

		Delay prescaler values			
		1	3	5	7
Delay scaler values	2	20.0 ns	60.0 ns	100.0 ns	140.0 ns
	4	40.0 ns	120.0 ns	200.0 ns	280.0 ns
	8	80.0 ns	240.0 ns	400.0 ns	560.0 ns
	16	160.0 ns	480.0 ns	800.0 ns	1.1 µs
	32	320.0 ns	960.0 ns	1.6 µs	2.2 µs
	64	640.0 ns	1.9 µs	3.2 µs	4.5 µs
	128	1.3 µs	3.8 µs	6.4 µs	9.0 µs
	256	2.6 µs	7.7 µs	12.8 µs	17.9 µs
	512	5.1 µs	15.4 µs	25.6 µs	35.8 µs
	1024	10.2 µs	30.7 µs	51.2 µs	71.7 µs
	2048	20.5 µs	61.4 µs	102.4 µs	143.4 µs
	4096	41.0 µs	122.9 µs	204.8 µs	286.7 µs
	8192	81.9 µs	245.8 µs	409.6 µs	573.4 µs
	16384	163.8 µs	491.5 µs	819.2 µs	1.1 ms
	32768	327.7 µs	983.0 µs	1.6 ms	2.3 ms
	65536	655.4 µs	2.0 ms	3.3 ms	4.6 ms

43.6.6 Calculation of FIFO pointer addresses

Complete visibility of the FIFO contents is available through the FIFO registers, and valid entries can be identified through a memory-mapped pointer and counter for each FIFO. The pointer to the first-in entry in each FIFO is memory mapped. For the TX FIFO the first-in pointer is the Transmit Next Pointer (TXNXTPTR). For the RX FIFO the first-in pointer is the Pop Next Pointer (POPNXTPTR). The following figure illustrates the concept of first-in and last-in FIFO entries along with the FIFO Counter. The TX FIFO is chosen for the illustration, but the concepts carry over. See Transmit First In First Out (TX FIFO) buffering mechanism and Receive First In First Out (RX FIFO) buffering mechanism for details on the FIFO operation.

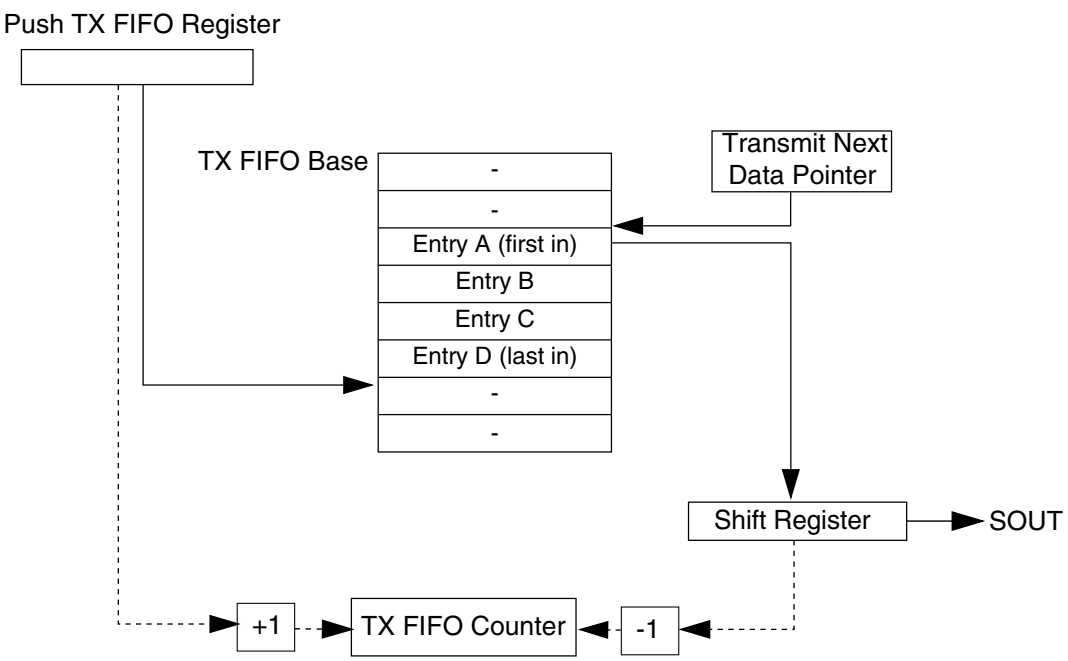


Figure 43-18. TX FIFO pointers and counter

43.6.6.1 Address Calculation for the First-in Entry and Last-in Entry in the TX FIFO

The memory address of the first-in entry in the TX FIFO is computed by the following equation:

$$\text{First-in EntryAddress} = \text{TXFIFOBase} + \left(4 \times \text{TXNXTPTR}\right)$$

The memory address of the last-in entry in the TX FIFO is computed by the following equation:

$$\text{Last-in Entry address} = \text{TXFIFO Base} + 4 \times (\text{TXCTR} + \text{TXNXTPTR} - 1) \bmod (\text{TXFIFO depth})$$

TX FIFO Base - Base address of TX FIFO
TXCTR - TX FIFO Counter
TXNXTPTR - Transmit Next Pointer
TX FIFO Depth - Transmit FIFO depth, implementation specific

43.6.6.2 Address Calculation for the First-in Entry and Last-in Entry in the RX FIFO

The memory address of the first-in entry in the RX FIFO is computed by the following equation:

$$\text{First-in Entry Address} = \text{RX FIFO Base} + (4 \times \text{POPNXTPTR})$$

The memory address of the last-in entry in the RX FIFO is computed by the following equation:

$$\text{Last-in Entry address} = \text{RX FIFO Base} + 4 \times (\text{RXCTR} + \text{POPNXTPTR} - 1) \bmod (\text{RXFIFO depth})$$

RX FIFO Base - Base address of RX FIFO
RXCTR - RX FIFO counter
POPNXTPTR - Pop Next Pointer
RX FIFO Depth - Receive FIFO depth, implementation specific

Chapter 44
Low Power Inter-Integrated Circuit (LPI2C)

44.1 Chip-specific Information for this Module

44.1.1 LPI2C instantiation information

This device has two LPI2C modules. The LPI2C module provides a low power I2C module that can operate in low power stop modes if required.

Each of the two LPI2C modules has a 4 word (32-bit) FIFO for transmit and receive of messages.

NOTE

FIFO only applies to master, but not slave.

NOTE

For LPI2C*x*_SCFGR1[TXCFG]: Transmit Flag Configuration. The transmit data flag will always assert before a NACK is detected at the end of a slave-transmit transfer. This can cause an extra word to be written to the transmit data FIFO.

NOTE

For LPI2C*x*_SCFGR1[RXSTALL]: In the VLPS mode, RXSTALL must be enabled for LPI2C slave to work.

44.2 Introduction

44.2.1 Overview

The LPI2C is a low power Inter-Integrated Circuit (I2C) module that supports an efficient interface to an I2C bus as a master and/or a slave. The LPI2C can continue operating in stop modes provided an appropriate clock is available and is designed for low CPU overhead with DMA offloading of FIFO register accesses. The LPI2C implements logic support for standard-mode, fast-mode, fast-mode plus and ultra-fast modes of operation. The LPI2C module also complies with the System Management Bus (SMBus) Specification, version 2.

44.2.2 Features

The LPI2C supports the following features of the I2C specification:

- Standard, Fast, Fast+ and Ultra Fast modes are supported.
- HS-mode supported in slave mode.
- HS-mode supported for master mode, provided SCL pin implements current source pull-up (device specific).
- Multi-master support including synchronization and arbitration.
- Clock stretching.
- General call, 7-bit and 10-bit addressing.
- Software reset, START byte and Device ID require software support.

The LPI2C master supports the following features:

- Command/transmit FIFO of 4 words.
- Receive FIFO of 4 words.
- Command FIFO will wait for idle I2C bus before initiating transfer
- Command FIFO can initiate (repeated) START and STOP conditions and one or more master-receiver transfers.
- STOP condition can be generated from command FIFO or automatically when the transmit FIFO is empty.
- Host request input can be used to control the start time of an I2C bus transfer.
- Flexible receive data match can generate interrupt on data match and/or discard unwanted data.
- Flag and optional interrupt to signal Repeated START condition, STOP condition, loss of arbitration, unexpected NACK and command word errors.
- Supports configurable bus idle timeout and pin stuck low timeout.

The LPI2C slave supports the following features:

- Separate I2C slave registers to minimize software overhead due to master/slave switching.
- Support for 7-bit or 10-bit addressing, address range, SMBus alert and general call address.
- Transmit data register supporting interrupt or DMA requests.
- Receive data register supporting interrupt or DMA requests.
- Software controllable ACK or NACK, with optional clock stretching on ACK/NACK bit.
- Configurable clock stretching to avoid transmit FIFO underrun and receive FIFO overrun.
- Flag and optional interrupt at end of packet, STOP condition or bit error detection.

44.2.3 Block Diagram

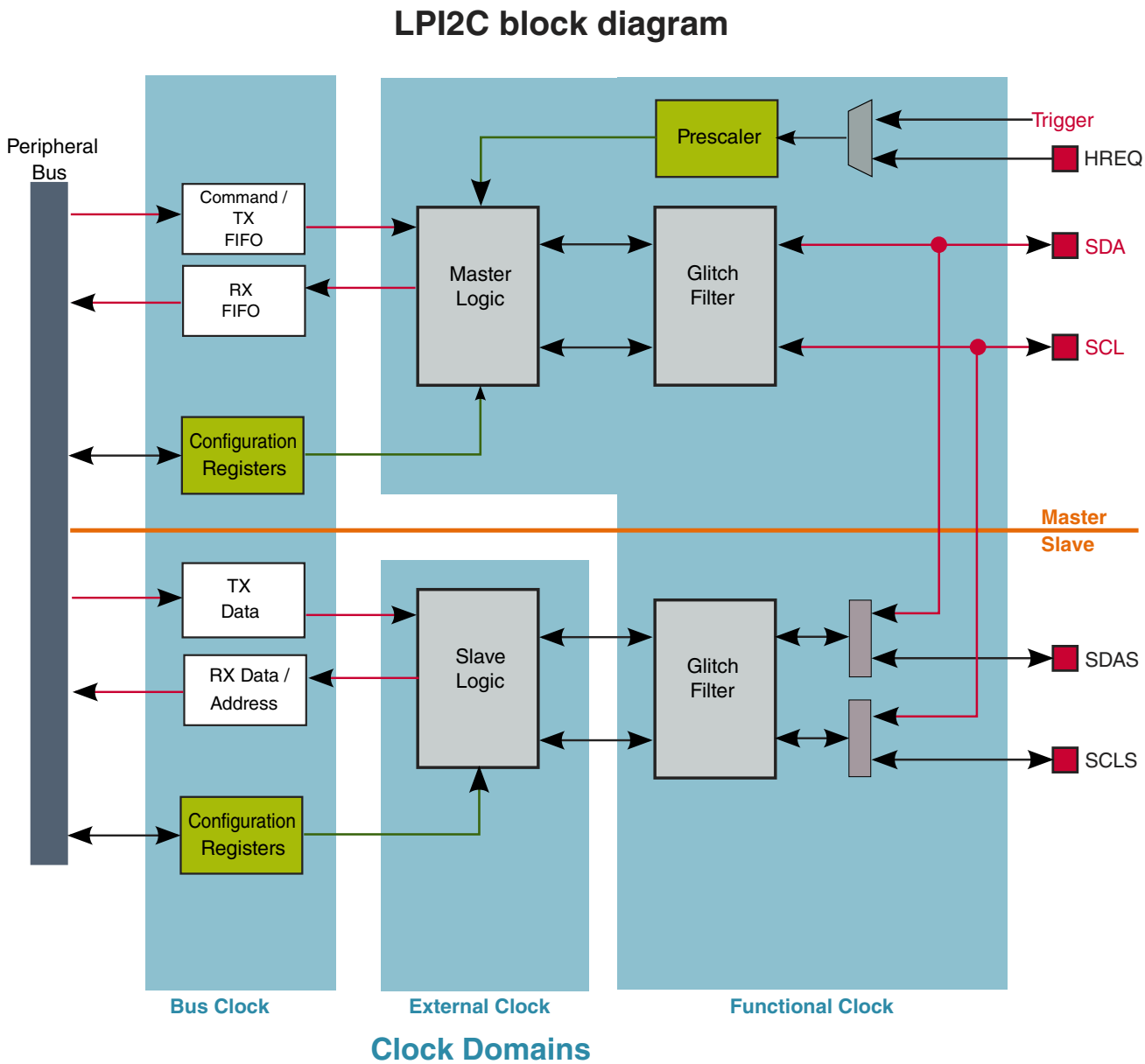


Figure 44-1. LPI2C block diagram

44.2.4 Modes of operation

The LPI2C module supports the chip modes described in the following table.

Table 44-1. Chip modes supported by the LPI2C module

Chip mode	LPI2C Operation
Run	Normal operation
Stop/Wait	Can continue operating provided the Doze Enable bit (MCR[DOZEN]) is set and the LPI2C is using an external or internal clock source which remains operating during stop/wait modes.
Low Leakage Stop	The Doze Enable (MCR[DOZEN]) bit is ignored and the LPI2C will wait for the current transfer to complete any pending operation before acknowledging low leakage mode entry.
Debug	Can continue operating provided the Debug Enable bit (MCR[DBGE]) is set.

44.2.5 Signal Descriptions

Signal	Description	I/O
SCL	LPI2C clock line. In 4-wire mode, this is the SCL input pin.	I/O
SDA	LPI2C data line. In 4-wire mode, this is the SDA input pin.	I/O
HREQ	Host request, can initiate an LPI2C master transfer if asserted and the I2C bus is idle.	I
SCLS	Secondary I2C clock line. In 4-wire mode, this is the SCL output pin. If LPI2C master/slave are configured to use separate pins, this the LPI2C slave SCL pin.	I/O
SDAS	Secondary I2C data line. In 4-wire mode, this is the SDA output pin. If LPI2C master/slave are configured to use separate pins, this the LPI2C slave SDA pin.	I/O

44.3 Memory Map and Registers

LPI2C memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4006_6000	Version ID Register (LPI2C0_VERID)	32	R	See section	44.3.1/1098
4006_6004	Parameter Register (LPI2C0_PARAM)	32	R	See section	44.3.2/1098
4006_6010	Master Control Register (LPI2C0_MCR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	44.3.3/1099

Table continues on the next page...

LPI2C memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4006_6014	Master Status Register (LPI2C0_MSR)	32	R/W	0000_0001h	44.3.4/1100
4006_6018	Master Interrupt Enable Register (LPI2C0_MIER)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	44.3.5/1102
4006_601C	Master DMA Enable Register (LPI2C0_MDER)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	44.3.6/1104
4006_6020	Master Configuration Register 0 (LPI2C0_MCFGR0)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	44.3.7/1105
4006_6024	Master Configuration Register 1 (LPI2C0_MCFGR1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	44.3.8/1106
4006_6028	Master Configuration Register 2 (LPI2C0_MCFGR2)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	44.3.9/1108
4006_602C	Master Configuration Register 3 (LPI2C0_MCFGR3)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	44.3.10/ 1109
4006_6040	Master Data Match Register (LPI2C0_MDMR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	44.3.11/ 1109
4006_6048	Master Clock Configuration Register 0 (LPI2C0_MCCR0)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	44.3.12/ 1110
4006_6050	Master Clock Configuration Register 1 (LPI2C0_MCCR1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	44.3.13/ 1111
4006_6058	Master FIFO Control Register (LPI2C0_MFCR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	44.3.14/ 1112
4006_605C	Master FIFO Status Register (LPI2C0_MFSR)	32	R	0000_0000h	44.3.15/ 1112
4006_6060	Master Transmit Data Register (LPI2C0_MTDR)	32	W	0000_0000h	44.3.16/ 1113
4006_6070	Master Receive Data Register (LPI2C0_MRDR)	32	R	0000_4000h	44.3.17/ 1114
4006_6110	Slave Control Register (LPI2C0_SCR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	44.3.18/ 1115
4006_6114	Slave Status Register (LPI2C0_SSR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	44.3.19/ 1116
4006_6118	Slave Interrupt Enable Register (LPI2C0_SIER)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	44.3.20/ 1119
4006_611C	Slave DMA Enable Register (LPI2C0_SDER)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	44.3.21/ 1120
4006_6124	Slave Configuration Register 1 (LPI2C0_SCFGR1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	44.3.22/ 1121
4006_6128	Slave Configuration Register 2 (LPI2C0_SCFGR2)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	44.3.23/ 1123
4006_6140	Slave Address Match Register (LPI2C0_SAMR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	44.3.24/ 1124
4006_6150	Slave Address Status Register (LPI2C0_SASR)	32	R	0000_4000h	44.3.25/ 1125
4006_6154	Slave Transmit ACK Register (LPI2C0_STAR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	44.3.26/ 1126
4006_6160	Slave Transmit Data Register (LPI2C0_STDR)	32	W	0000_0000h	44.3.27/ 1126

Table continues on the next page...

LPI2C memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4006_6170	Slave Receive Data Register (LPI2C0_SRDR)	32	R	0000_4000h	44.3.28/ 1127
4006_7000	Version ID Register (LPI2C1_VERID)	32	R	See section	44.3.1/1098
4006_7004	Parameter Register (LPI2C1_PARAM)	32	R	See section	44.3.2/1098
4006_7010	Master Control Register (LPI2C1_MCR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	44.3.3/1099
4006_7014	Master Status Register (LPI2C1_MSR)	32	R/W	0000_0001h	44.3.4/1100
4006_7018	Master Interrupt Enable Register (LPI2C1_MIER)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	44.3.5/1102
4006_701C	Master DMA Enable Register (LPI2C1_MDER)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	44.3.6/1104
4006_7020	Master Configuration Register 0 (LPI2C1_MCFGR0)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	44.3.7/1105
4006_7024	Master Configuration Register 1 (LPI2C1_MCFGR1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	44.3.8/1106
4006_7028	Master Configuration Register 2 (LPI2C1_MCFGR2)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	44.3.9/1108
4006_702C	Master Configuration Register 3 (LPI2C1_MCFGR3)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	44.3.10/ 1109
4006_7040	Master Data Match Register (LPI2C1_MDMR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	44.3.11/ 1109
4006_7048	Master Clock Configuration Register 0 (LPI2C1_MCCR0)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	44.3.12/ 1110
4006_7050	Master Clock Configuration Register 1 (LPI2C1_MCCR1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	44.3.13/ 1111
4006_7058	Master FIFO Control Register (LPI2C1_MFCR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	44.3.14/ 1112
4006_705C	Master FIFO Status Register (LPI2C1_MFSR)	32	R	0000_0000h	44.3.15/ 1112
4006_7060	Master Transmit Data Register (LPI2C1_MTDR)	32	W	0000_0000h	44.3.16/ 1113
4006_7070	Master Receive Data Register (LPI2C1_MRDR)	32	R	0000_4000h	44.3.17/ 1114
4006_7110	Slave Control Register (LPI2C1_SCR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	44.3.18/ 1115
4006_7114	Slave Status Register (LPI2C1_SSR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	44.3.19/ 1116
4006_7118	Slave Interrupt Enable Register (LPI2C1_SIER)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	44.3.20/ 1119
4006_711C	Slave DMA Enable Register (LPI2C1_SDER)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	44.3.21/ 1120
4006_7124	Slave Configuration Register 1 (LPI2C1_SCFGR1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	44.3.22/ 1121
4006_7128	Slave Configuration Register 2 (LPI2C1_SCFGR2)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	44.3.23/ 1123
4006_7140	Slave Address Match Register (LPI2C1_SAMR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	44.3.24/ 1124
4006_7150	Slave Address Status Register (LPI2C1_SASR)	32	R	0000_4000h	44.3.25/ 1125

Table continues on the next page...

LPI2C memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4006_7154	Slave Transmit ACK Register (LPI2C1_STAR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	44.3.26/ 1126
4006_7160	Slave Transmit Data Register (LPI2C1_STDR)	32	W	0000_0000h	44.3.27/ 1126
4006_7170	Slave Receive Data Register (LPI2C1_SRDR)	32	R	0000_4000h	44.3.28/ 1127

44.3.1 Version ID Register (LPI2Cx_VERID)

.

Address: Base address + 0h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	MAJOR								MINOR								FEATURE															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1

LPI2Cx_VERID field descriptions

Field	Description
31–24 MAJOR	Major Version Number This read only field returns the major version number for the specification.
23–16 MINOR	Minor Version Number This read only field returns the minor version number for the specification.
FEATURE	Feature Specification Number This read only field returns the feature set number. 0x0002 Master only with standard feature set. 0x0003 Master and slave with standard feature set.

44.3.2 Parameter Register (LPI2Cx_PARAM)

.

Address: Base address + 4h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																0				MRXFIFO				0				MTXFIFO			
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0

LPI2Cx_PARAM field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
15–12 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
11–8 MRXFIFO	Master Receive FIFO Size The number of words in the master receive FIFO is 2^MRXFIFO.
7–4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
MTXFIFO	Master Transmit FIFO Size The number of words in the master transmit FIFO is 2^MTXFIFO.

44.3.3 Master Control Register (LPI2Cx_MCR)

Address: Base address + 10h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0						0	0	0				DBGEN	DOZEN	RST	MEN
W							RRF	RTF								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

LPI2Cx_MCR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–10 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

Table continues on the next page...

LPI2Cx_MCR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
9 RRF	Reset Receive FIFO 0 No effect. 1 Receive FIFO is reset.
8 RTF	Reset Transmit FIFO 0 No effect. 1 Transmit FIFO is reset.
7–4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
3 DBGEN	Debug Enable 0 Master is disabled in debug mode. 1 Master is enabled in debug mode.
2 DOZEN	Doze mode enable Enables or disables Doze mode for the master. 0 Master is enabled in Doze mode. 1 Master is disabled in Doze mode.
1 RST	Software Reset Reset all internal master logic and registers, except the Master Control Register. Remains set until cleared by software. 0 Master logic is not reset. 1 Master logic is reset.
0 MEN	Master Enable 0 Master logic is disabled. 1 Master logic is enabled.

44.3.4 Master Status Register (LPI2Cx_MSR)

Address: Base address + 14h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0						BBF	MBF	0							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0	DMF	PLTF	FEF	ALF	NDF	SDF	EPF	0						RDF	TDF
W		w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1

LPI2Cx_MSR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–26 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
25 BBF	Bus Busy Flag 0 I2C Bus is idle. 1 I2C Bus is busy.
24 MBF	Master Busy Flag 0 I2C Master is idle. 1 I2C Master is busy.
23–15 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
14 DMF	Data Match Flag Indicates that the received data has matched the MATCH0 and/or MATCH1 fields as configured by MATCFG. Received data that is discarded due to CMD field does not cause this flag to set. 0 Have not received matching data. 1 Have received matching data.
13 PLTF	Pin Low Timeout Flag Will set when the SCL and/or SDA input is low for more than PINLOW cycles, even when the LPI2C master is idle. Software is responsible for resolving the pin low condition. This flag cannot be cleared for as long as the pin low timeout continues and must be cleared before the LPI2C can initiate a START condition. 0 Pin low timeout has not occurred or is disabled. 1 Pin low timeout has occurred.
12 FEF	FIFO Error Flag Detects an attempt to send or receive data without first generating a (repeated) START condition. This can occur if the transmit FIFO underflows when the AUTOSTOP bit is set. When this flag is set, the LPI2C master will send a STOP condition (if busy) and will not initiate a new START condition until this flag has been cleared. 0 No error. 1 Master sending or receiving data without START condition.
11 ALF	Arbitration Lost Flag This flag will set if the LPI2C master transmits a logic one and detects a logic zero on the I2C bus, or if it detects a START or STOP condition while it is transmitting data. When this flag sets, the LPI2C master will release the bus (go idle) and will not initiate a new START condition until this flag has been cleared. 0 Master has not lost arbitration. 1 Master has lost arbitration.
10 NDF	NACK Detect Flag This flag will set if the LPI2C master detects a NACK when transmitting an address or data. If a NACK is expected for a given address (as configured by the command word) then the flag will set if a NACK is not generated. When set, the master will transmit a STOP condition and will not initiate a new START condition until this flag has been cleared.

Table continues on the next page...

LPI2Cx_MSR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Unexpected NACK not detected. 1 Unexpected NACK was detected.
9 SDF	STOP Detect Flag This flag will set when the LPI2C master generates a STOP condition. 0 Master has not generated a STOP condition. 1 Master has generated a STOP condition.
8 EPF	End Packet Flag This flag will set when the LPI2C master generates either a repeated START or a STOP condition. It does not set when the master first generates a START condition. 0 Master has not generated a STOP or Repeated START condition. 1 Master has generated a STOP or Repeated START condition.
7–2 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
1 RDF	Receive Data Flag The Receive Data Flag is set whenever the number of words in the receive FIFO is greater than RXWATER. 0 Receive Data is not ready. 1 Receive data is ready.
0 TDF	Transmit Data Flag The Transmit Data Flag is set whenever the number of words in the transmit FIFO is equal or less than TXWATER. 0 Transmit data not requested. 1 Transmit data is requested.

44.3.5 Master Interrupt Enable Register (LPI2Cx_MIER)

Address: Base address + 18h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

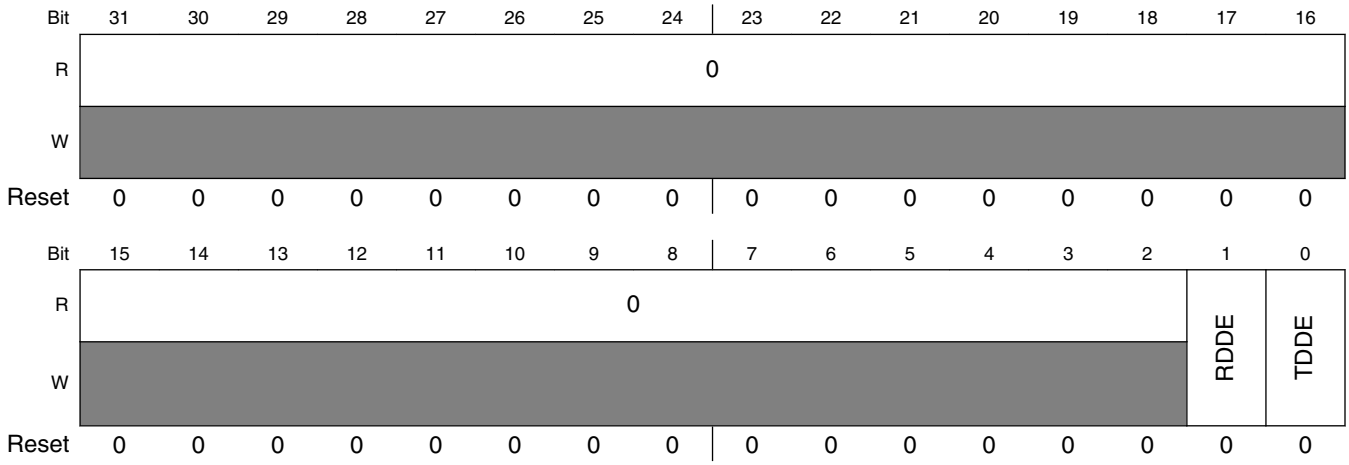
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0	DMIE	PLTIE	FEIE	ALIE	NDIE	SDIE	EPIE	0						RDIE	TDIE
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

LPI2Cx_MIER field descriptions

Field	Description
31–15 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
14 DMIE	Data Match Interrupt Enable 0 Interrupt disabled. 1 Interrupt enabled.
13 PLTIE	Pin Low Timeout Interrupt Enable 0 Interrupt disabled. 1 Interrupt enabled.
12 FEIE	FIFO Error Interrupt Enable 0 Interrupt disabled. 1 Interrupt enabled.
11 ALIE	Arbitration Lost Interrupt Enable 0 Interrupt disabled. 1 Interrupt enabled.
10 NDIE	NACK Detect Interrupt Enable 0 Interrupt disabled. 1 Interrupt enabled.
9 SDIE	STOP Detect Interrupt Enable 0 Interrupt disabled. 1 Interrupt enabled.
8 EPIE	End Packet Interrupt Enable 0 Interrupt disabled. 1 Interrupt enabled.
7–2 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
1 RDIE	Receive Data Interrupt Enable 0 Interrupt disabled. 1 Interrupt enabled.
0 TDIE	Transmit Data Interrupt Enable 0 Interrupt disabled. 1 Interrupt enabled

44.3.6 Master DMA Enable Register (LPI2Cx_MDER)

Address: Base address + 1Ch offset

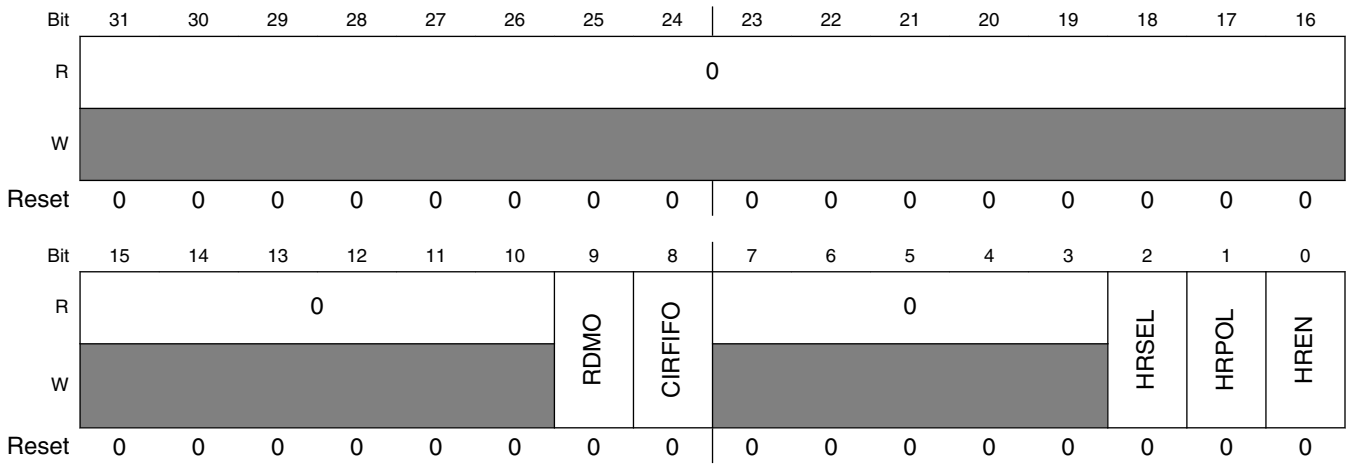


LPI2Cx_MDER field descriptions

Field	Description
31–2 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
1 RDDE	Receive Data DMA Enable 0 DMA request disabled. 1 DMA request enabled.
0 TDDE	Transmit Data DMA Enable 0 DMA request disabled. 1 DMA request enabled

44.3.7 Master Configuration Register 0 (LPI2Cx_MCFGR0)

Address: Base address + 20h offset



LPI2Cx_MCFGR0 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–10 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
9 RDMO	Receive Data Match Only When enabled, all received data that does not cause DMF to set is discarded. Once DMF is set, the RDMO configuration is ignored. When disabling RDMO, clear RDMO before clearing DMF to ensure no receive data is lost. 0 Received data is stored in the receive FIFO as normal. 1 Received data is discarded unless the RMF is set.
8 CIRFIFO	Circular FIFO Enable When enabled, the transmit FIFO read pointer is saved to a temporary register. The transmit FIFO will be emptied as normal, but once the LPI2C master is idle and the transmit FIFO is empty, then the read pointer value will be restored from the temporary register. This will cause the contents of the transmit FIFO to be cycled through repeatedly. If AUTOSTOP is set, a STOP condition will be sent whenever the transmit FIFO is empty and the read pointer is restored. 0 Circular FIFO is disabled. 1 Circular FIFO is enabled.
7–3 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
2 HRSEL	Host Request Select Selects the source of the host request input. 0 Host request input is pin LPI2C_HREQ. 1 Host request input is input trigger.
1 HRPOL	Host Request Polarity

Table continues on the next page...

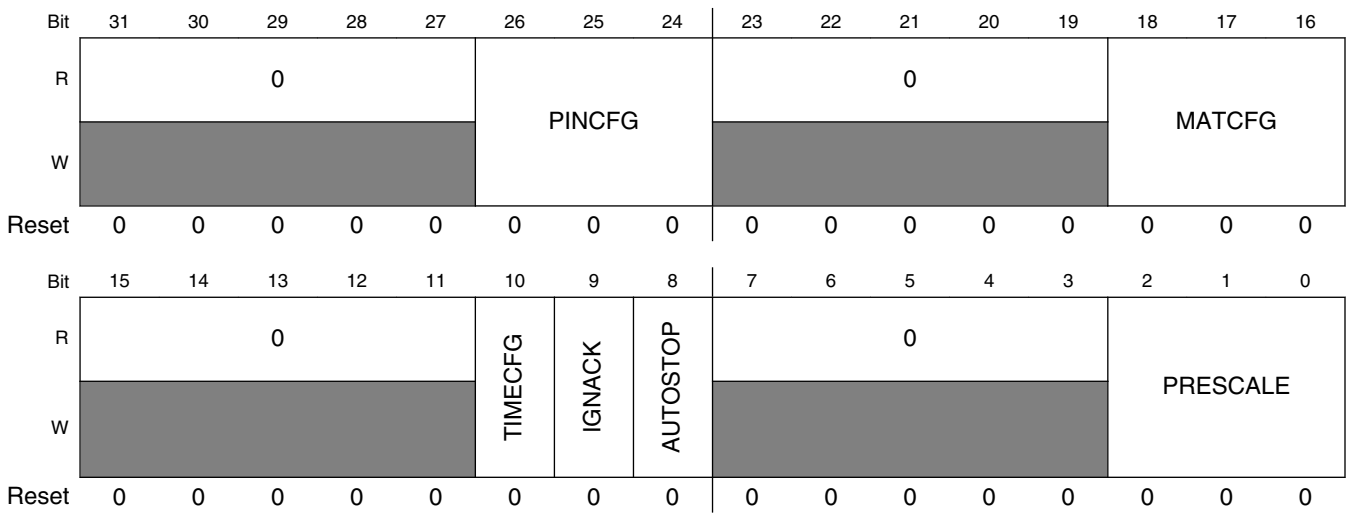
LPI2Cx_MCFGR0 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	Configures the polarity of the host request input pin. 0 Active low. 1 Active high.
0 HREN	Host Request Enable When enabled, the LPI2C master will only initiate a START condition if the host request input is asserted and the bus is idle. A repeated START is not affected by the host request. 0 Host request input is disabled. 1 Host request input is enabled.

44.3.8 Master Configuration Register 1 (LPI2Cx_MCFGR1)

The MCFGR1 should only be written when the I2C Master is disabled.

Address: Base address + 24h offset



LPI2Cx_MCFGR1 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–27 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
26–24 PINCFG	Pin Configuration Configures the pin mode. 000 LPI2C configured for 2-pin open drain mode. 001 LPI2C configured for 2-pin output only mode (ultra-fast mode). 010 LPI2C configured for 2-pin push-pull mode. 011 LPI2C configured for 4-pin push-pull mode. 100 LPI2C configured for 2-pin open drain mode with separate LPI2C slave.

Table continues on the next page...

LPI2Cx_MCFGR1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	101 LPI2C configured for 2-pin output only mode (ultra-fast mode) with separate LPI2C slave. 110 LPI2C configured for 2-pin push-pull mode with separate LPI2C slave. 111 LPI2C configured for 4-pin push-pull mode (inverted outputs).
23–19 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
18–16 MATCFG	Match Configuration Configures the condition that will cause the DMF to set. 000 Match disabled. 001 Reserved. 010 Match enabled (1st data word equals MATCH0 OR MATCH1). 011 Match enabled (any data word equals MATCH0 OR MATCH1). 100 Match enabled (1st data word equals MATCH0 AND 2nd data word equals MATCH1). 101 Match enabled (any data word equals MATCH0 AND next data word equals MATCH1). 110 Match enabled (1st data word AND MATCH1 equals MATCH0 AND MATCH1). 111 Match enabled (any data word AND MATCH1 equals MATCH0 AND MATCH1).
15–11 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
10 TIMECFG	Timeout Configuration 0 Pin Low Timeout Flag will set if SCL is low for longer than the configured timeout. 1 Pin Low Timeout Flag will set if either SCL or SDA is low for longer than the configured timeout.
9 IGNACK	When set, the received NACK field is ignored and assumed to be ACK. This bit is required to be set in Ultra-Fast Mode. 0 LPI2C Master will receive ACK and NACK normally. 1 LPI2C Master will treat a received NACK as if it was an ACK.
8 AUTOSTOP	Automatic STOP Generation When enabled, a STOP condition is generated whenever the LPI2C master is busy and the transmit FIFO is empty. The STOP condition can also be generated using a transmit FIFO command. 0 No effect. 1 STOP condition is automatically generated whenever the transmit FIFO is empty and LPI2C master is busy.
7–3 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
PRESCALE	Prescaler Configures the clock prescaler used for all LPI2C master logic, except the digital glitch filters. 000 Divide by 1. 001 Divide by 2. 010 Divide by 4. 011 Divide by 8. 100 Divide by 16. 101 Divide by 32.

Table continues on the next page...

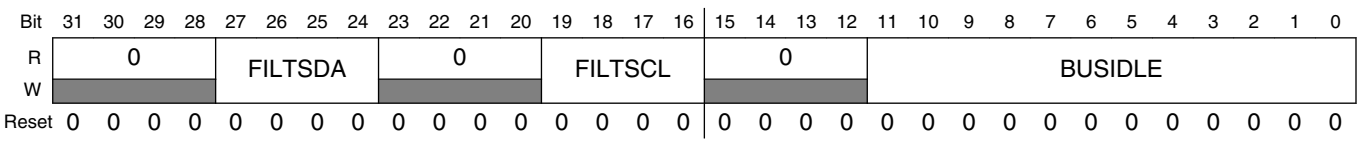
LPI2Cx_MCFGR1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	110 Divide by 64. 111 Divide by 128.

44.3.9 Master Configuration Register 2 (LPI2Cx_MCFGR2)

The MCFGR2 should only be written when the I2C Master is disabled.

Address: Base address + 28h offset



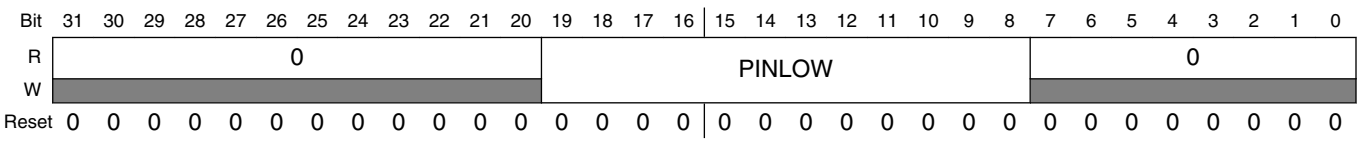
LPI2Cx_MCFGR2 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–28 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
27–24 FILTSDA	Glitch Filter SDA Configures the I2C master digital glitch filters for SDA input, a configuration of 0 will disable the glitch filter. Glitches equal to or less than FILTSDA cycles long will be filtered out and ignored. The latency through the glitch filter is equal to FILTSDA cycles and must be configured less than the minimum SCL low or high period. The glitch filter cycle count is not affected by the PRESCALE configuration and is automatically bypassed in High Speed mode.
23–20 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
19–16 FILTSCL	Glitch Filter SCL Configures the I2C master digital glitch filters for SCL input, a configuration of 0 will disable the glitch filter. Glitches equal to or less than FILTSCL cycles long will be filtered out and ignored. The latency through the glitch filter is equal to FILTSCL cycles and must be configured less than the minimum SCL low or high period. The glitch filter cycle count is not affected by the PRESCALE configuration and is automatically bypassed in High Speed mode.
15–12 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
BUSIDLE	Bus Idle Timeout Configures the bus idle timeout period in clock cycles. If both SCL and SDA are high for longer than BUSIDLE cycles, then the I2C bus is assumed to be idle and the master can generate a START condition. When set to zero, this feature is disabled.

44.3.10 Master Configuration Register 3 (LPI2Cx_MCFGR3)

The MCFGR3 should only be written when the I2C Master is disabled.

Address: Base address + 2Ch offset

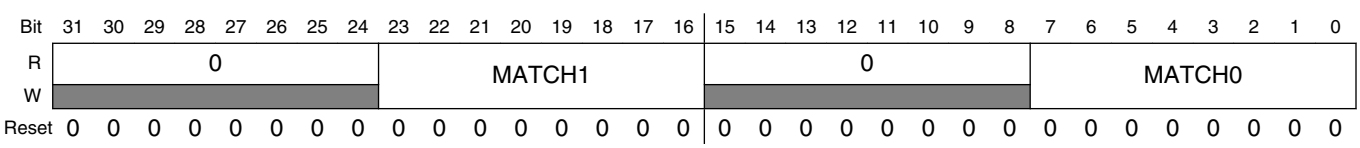


LPI2Cx_MCFGR3 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–20 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
19–8 PINLOW	Pin Low Timeout Configures the pin low timeout flag in clock cycles. If SCL and/or SDA is low for longer than (PINLOW * 256) cycles then PLTF is set. When set to zero, this feature is disabled.
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

44.3.11 Master Data Match Register (LPI2Cx_MDMR)

Address: Base address + 40h offset



LPI2Cx_MDMR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–24 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
23–16 MATCH1	Match 1 Value Compared against the received data when receive data match is enabled.
15–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
MATCH0	Match 0 Value Compared against the received data when receive data match is enabled.

44.3.12 Master Clock Configuration Register 0 (LPI2Cx_MCCR0)

The MCCR0 cannot be changed when the I2C master is enabled and is used for standard, fast, fast-mode plus and ultra-fast transfers.

Address: Base address + 48h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0		DATAVD						0		SETHOLD						0		CLKHI						0		CLKLO					
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

LPI2Cx_MCCR0 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–30 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
29–24 DATAVD	Data Valid Delay Minimum number of cycles (minus one) that is used as the data hold time for SDA. Must be configured less than the minimum SCL low period.
23–22 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
21–16 SETHOLD	Setup Hold Delay Minimum number of cycles (minus one) that is used by the master as the setup and hold time for a (repeated) START condition and setup time for a STOP condition. The setup time is extended by the time it takes to detect a rising edge on the external SCL pin. Ignoring any additional board delay due to external loading, this is equal to (2 + FILTSCL) / 2^PRESCALE cycles.
15–14 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
13–8 CLKHI	Clock High Period Minimum number of cycles (minus one) that the SCL clock is driven high by the master. The SCL high time is extended by the time it takes to detect a rising edge on the external SCL pin. Ignoring any additional board delay due to external loading, this is equal to (2 + FILTSCL) / 2^PRESCALE cycles.
7–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
CLKLO	Clock Low Period Minimum number of cycles (minus one) that the SCL clock is driven low by the master. This value is also used for the minimum bus free time between a STOP and a START condition.

44.3.13 Master Clock Configuration Register 1 (LPI2Cx_MCCR1)

The MCCR1 cannot be changed when the I2C master is enabled and is used for high speed mode transfers. The separate clock configuration for high speed mode allows arbitration to take place in Fast mode (with timing configured by MCCR0), before switching to high speed mode (with timing configured by MCCR1).

Address: Base address + 50h offset

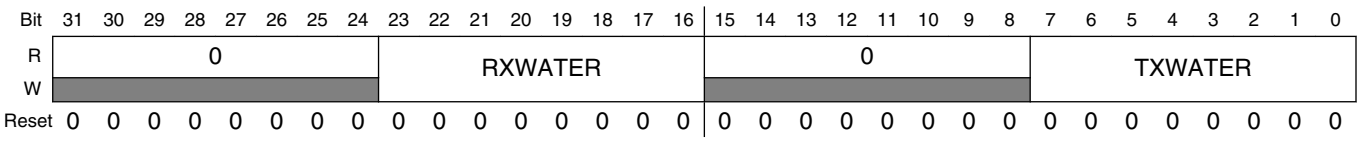
Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0		DATAVD						0		SETHOLD						0		CLKHI						0		CLKLO					
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

LPI2Cx_MCCR1 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–30 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
29–24 DATAVD	Data Valid Delay Minimum number of cycles (minus one) that is used as the data hold time for SDA. Must be configured less than the minimum SCL low period.
23–22 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
21–16 SETHOLD	Setup Hold Delay Minimum number of cycles (minus one) that is used by the master as the setup and hold time for a (repeated) START condition and setup time for a STOP condition. The setup time is extended by the time it takes to detect a rising edge on the external SCL pin. Ignoring any additional board delay due to external loading, this is equal to (2 + FILTSCL) / 2^PRESCALE cycles.
15–14 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
13–8 CLKHI	Clock High Period Minimum number of cycles (minus one) that the SCL clock is driven high by the master. The SCL high time is extended by the time it takes to detect a rising edge on the external SCL pin. Ignoring any additional board delay due to external loading, this is equal to (2 + FILTSCL) / 2^PRESCALE cycles.
7–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
CLKLO	Clock Low Period Minimum number of cycles (minus one) that the SCL clock is driven low by the master. This value is also used for the minimum bus free time between a STOP and a START condition.

44.3.14 Master FIFO Control Register (LPI2Cx_MFCR)

Address: Base address + 58h offset

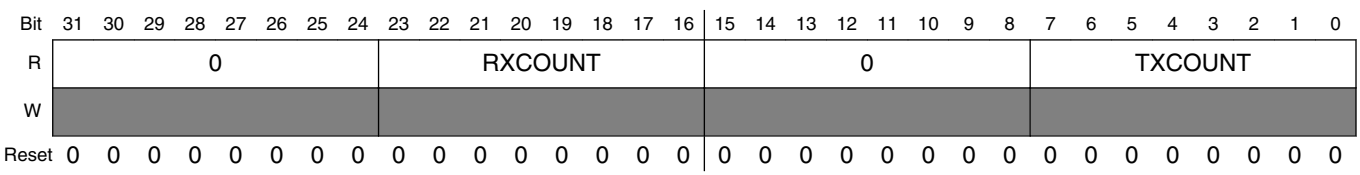


LPI2Cx_MFCR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–24 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
23–16 RXWATER	Receive FIFO Watermark The Receive Data Flag is set whenever the number of words in the receive FIFO is greater than RXWATER. Writing a value equal or greater than the FIFO size will be truncated.
15–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
TXWATER	Transmit FIFO Watermark The Transmit Data Flag is set whenever the number of words in the transmit FIFO is equal or less than TXWATER. Writing a value equal or greater than the FIFO size will be truncated.

44.3.15 Master FIFO Status Register (LPI2Cx_MFSR)

Address: Base address + 5Ch offset



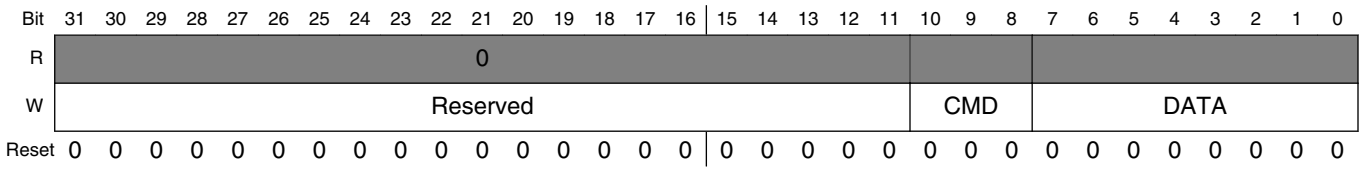
LPI2Cx_MFSR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–24 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
23–16 RXCOUNT	Receive FIFO Count Returns the number of words in the receive FIFO.
15–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
TXCOUNT	Transmit FIFO Count Returns the number of words in the transmit FIFO.

44.3.16 Master Transmit Data Register (LPI2Cx_MTDR)

An 8-bit write to the CMD field will store the data in the Command FIFO, but does not increment the FIFO write pointer. An 8-bit write to the DATA field will zero extend the CMD field unless the CMD field has been written separately since the last FIFO write, it also increments the FIFO write pointer. A 16-bit or 32-bit will write both the CMD and DATA fields and increment the FIFO.

Address: Base address + 60h offset

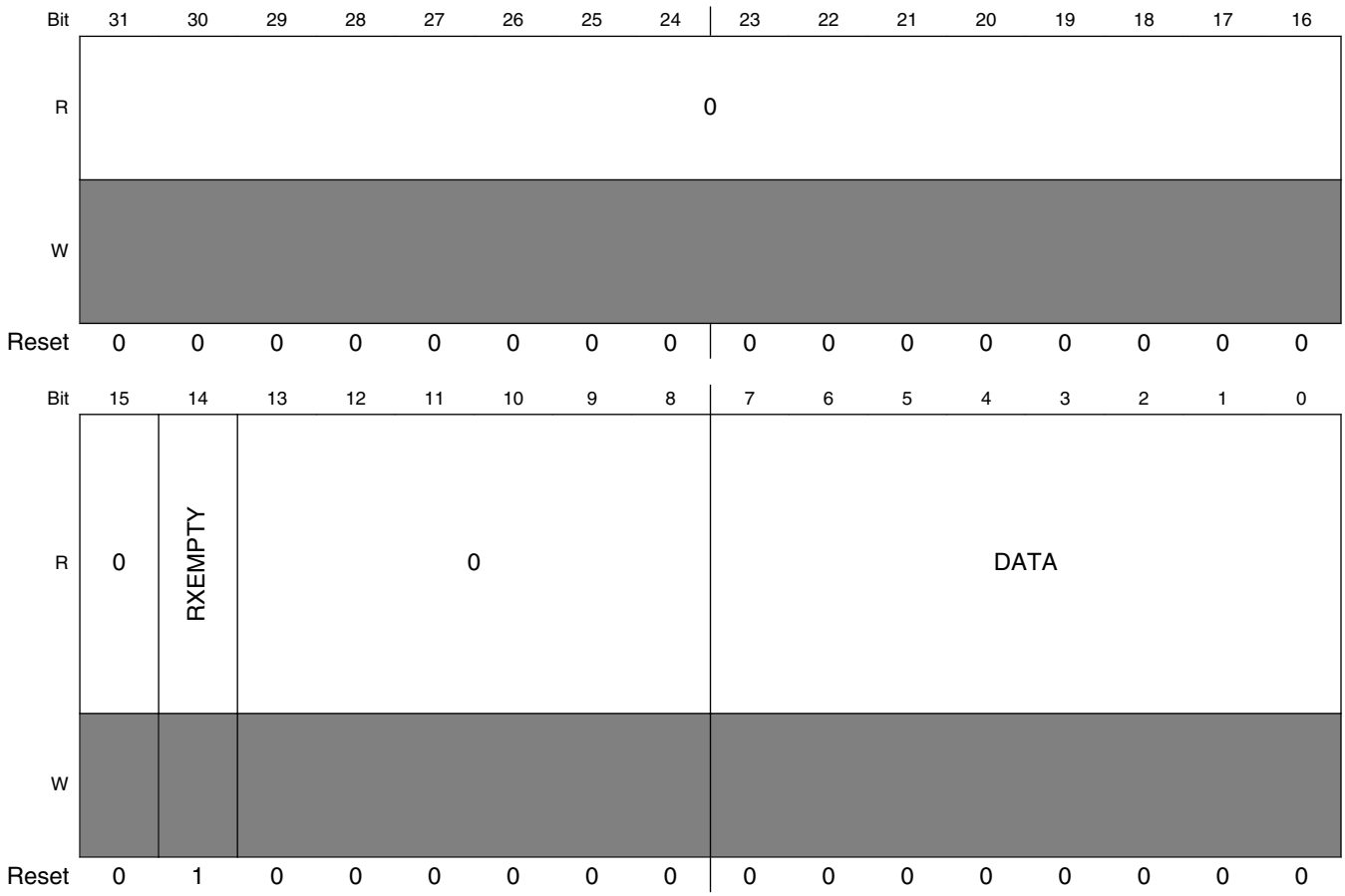


LPI2Cx_MTDR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–11 Reserved	This field is reserved.
10–8 CMD	Command Data 000 Transmit DATA[7:0]. 001 Receive (DATA[7:0] + 1) bytes. 010 Generate STOP condition. 011 Receive and discard (DATA[7:0] + 1) bytes. 100 Generate (repeated) START and transmit address in DATA[7:0]. 101 Generate (repeated) START and transmit address in DATA[7:0]. This transfer expects a NACK to be returned. 110 Generate (repeated) START and transmit address in DATA[7:0] using high speed mode. 111 Generate (repeated) START and transmit address in DATA[7:0] using high speed mode. This transfer expects a NACK to be returned.
DATA	Transmit Data Performing an 8-bit write to DATA will zero extend the CMD field.

44.3.17 Master Receive Data Register (LPI2Cx_MRDR)

Address: Base address + 70h offset

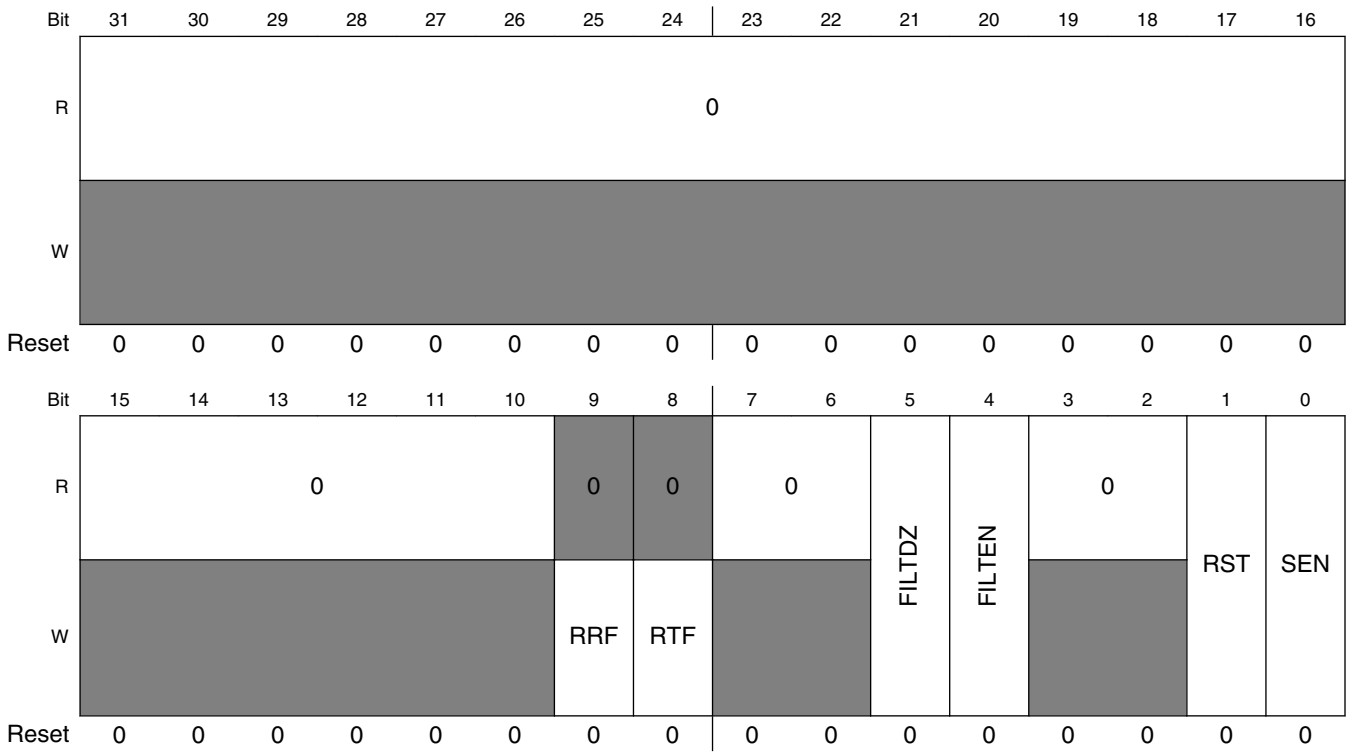


LPI2Cx_MRDR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–15 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
14 RXEMPTY	RX Empty 0 Receive FIFO is not empty. 1 Receive FIFO is empty.
13–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
DATA	Receive Data Reading this register returns the data received by the I2C master that has not been discarded. Receive data can be discarded due to the CMD field or the master can be configured to discard non-matching data.

44.3.18 Slave Control Register (LPI2Cx_SCR)

Address: Base address + 110h offset



LPI2Cx_SCR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–10 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
9 RRF	Reset Receive FIFO 0 No effect. 1 Receive Data Register is now empty.
8 RTF	Reset Transmit FIFO 0 No effect. 1 Transmit Data Register is now empty.
7–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
5 FILTDZ	Filter Doze Enable 0 Filter remains enabled in Doze mode. 1 Filter is disabled in Doze mode.
4 FILTEN	Filter Enable 0 Disable digital filter and output delay counter for slave mode. 1 Enable digital filter and output delay counter for slave mode.

Table continues on the next page...

LPI2Cx_SCR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
3–2 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
1 RST	Software Reset 0 Slave logic is not reset. 1 Slave logic is reset.
0 SEN	Slave Enable 0 Slave mode is disabled. 1 Slave mode is enabled.

44.3.19 Slave Status Register (LPI2Cx_SSR)

Address: Base address + 114h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0						BBF	SBF	0							
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	SARF	GCF	AM1F	AM0F	FEF	BEF	SDF	RSF	0				TAF	AVF	RDF	TDF
W					w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

LPI2Cx_SSR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–26 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
25 BBF	Bus Busy Flag

Table continues on the next page...

LPI2Cx_SSR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 I2C Bus is idle. 1 I2C Bus is busy.
24 SBF	Slave Busy Flag 0 I2C Slave is idle. 1 I2C Slave is busy.
23–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
15 SARF	SMBus Alert Response Flag This flag is cleared by reading the Address Status Register. This flag cannot generate an asynchronous wakeup. 0 SMBus Alert Response disabled or not detected. 1 SMBus Alert Response enabled and detected.
14 GCF	General Call Flag This flag is cleared by reading the Address Status Register. This flag cannot generate an asynchronous wakeup. 0 Slave has not detected the General Call Address or General Call Address disabled. 1 Slave has detected the General Call Address.
13 AM1F	Address Match 1 Flag Indicates that the received address has matched the ADDR1 field or ADDR0 to ADDR1 range as configured by ADDRCFG. This flag is cleared by reading the Address Status Register. This flag cannot generate an asynchronous wakeup. 0 Have not received ADDR1 or ADDR0/ADDR1 range matching address. 1 Have received ADDR1 or ADDR0/ADDR1 range matching address.
12 AM0F	Address Match 0 Flag Indicates that the received address has matched the ADDR0 field as configured by ADDRCFG. This flag is cleared by reading the Address Status Register. This flag cannot generate an asynchronous wakeup. 0 Have not received ADDR0 matching address. 1 Have received ADDR0 matching address.
11 FEF	FIFO Error Flag FIFO error flag can only set when clock stretching is disabled. 0 FIFO underflow or overflow not detected. 1 FIFO underflow or overflow detected.
10 BEF	Bit Error Flag This flag will set if the LPI2C slave transmits a logic one and detects a logic zero on the I2C bus. The slave will ignore the rest of the transfer until the next (repeated) START condition. 0 Slave has not detected a bit error. 1 Slave has detected a bit error.

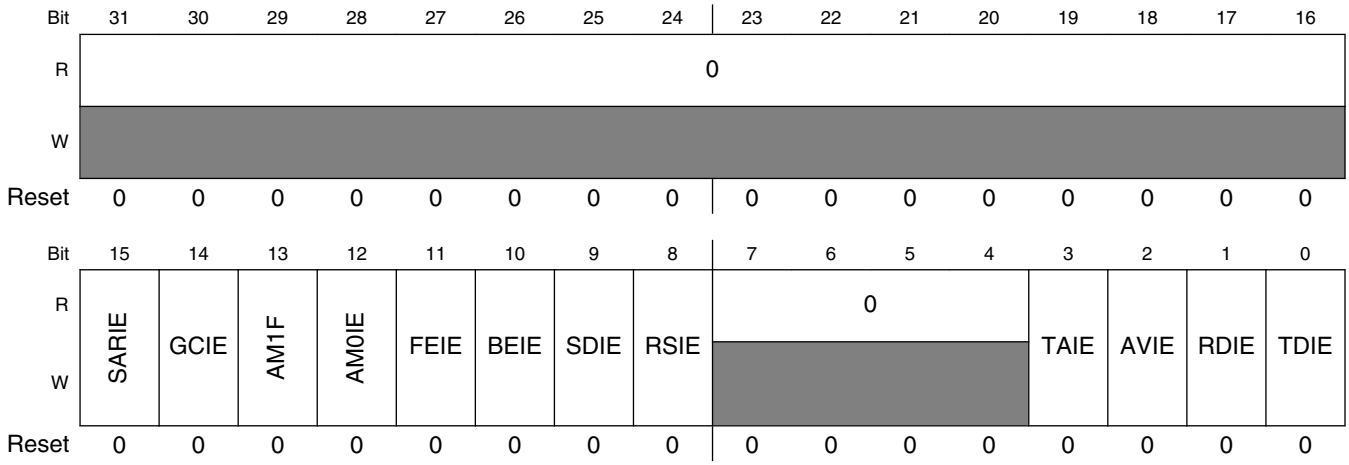
Table continues on the next page...

LPI2Cx_SSR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
9 SDF	STOP Detect Flag This flag will set when the LPI2C slave detects a STOP condition, provided the LPI2C slave matched the last address byte. 0 Slave has not detected a STOP condition. 1 Slave has detected a STOP condition.
8 RSF	Repeated Start Flag This flag will set when the LPI2C slave detects a repeated START condition, provided the LPI2C slave matched the last address byte. It does not set when the slave first detects a START condition. 0 Slave has not detected a Repeated START condition. 1 Slave has detected a Repeated START condition.
7–4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
3 TAF	Transmit ACK Flag This flag is cleared by writing the transmit ACK register. 0 Transmit ACK/NACK is not required. 1 Transmit ACK/NACK is required.
2 AVF	Address Valid Flag This flag is cleared by reading the address status register. When RXCFG is set, this flag is also cleared by reading the receive data register. 0 Address Status Register is not valid. 1 Address Status Register is valid.
1 RDF	Receive Data Flag This flag is cleared by reading the receive data register. When RXCFG is set, this flag is not cleared when reading the receive data register and AVF is set. 0 Receive Data is not ready. 1 Receive data is ready.
0 TDF	Transmit Data Flag This flag is cleared by writing the transmit data register. When TXCFG is clear, it is also cleared if a NACK or Repeated START or STOP condition is detected. 0 Transmit data not requested. 1 Transmit data is requested.

44.3.20 Slave Interrupt Enable Register (LPI2Cx_SIER)

Address: Base address + 118h offset



LPI2Cx_SIER field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
15 SARIE	SMBus Alert Response Interrupt Enable 0 Interrupt disabled. 1 Interrupt enabled.
14 GCIE	General Call Interrupt Enable 0 Interrupt disabled. 1 Interrupt enabled.
13 AM1F	Address Match 1 Interrupt Enable 0 Interrupt disabled. 1 Interrupt enabled.
12 AM0IE	Address Match 0 Interrupt Enable 0 Interrupt enabled. 1 Interrupt disabled.
11 FEIE	FIFO Error Interrupt Enable 0 Interrupt disabled. 1 Interrupt enabled.
10 BEIE	Bit Error Interrupt Enable 0 Interrupt disabled. 1 Interrupt enabled.
9 SDIE	STOP Detect Interrupt Enable

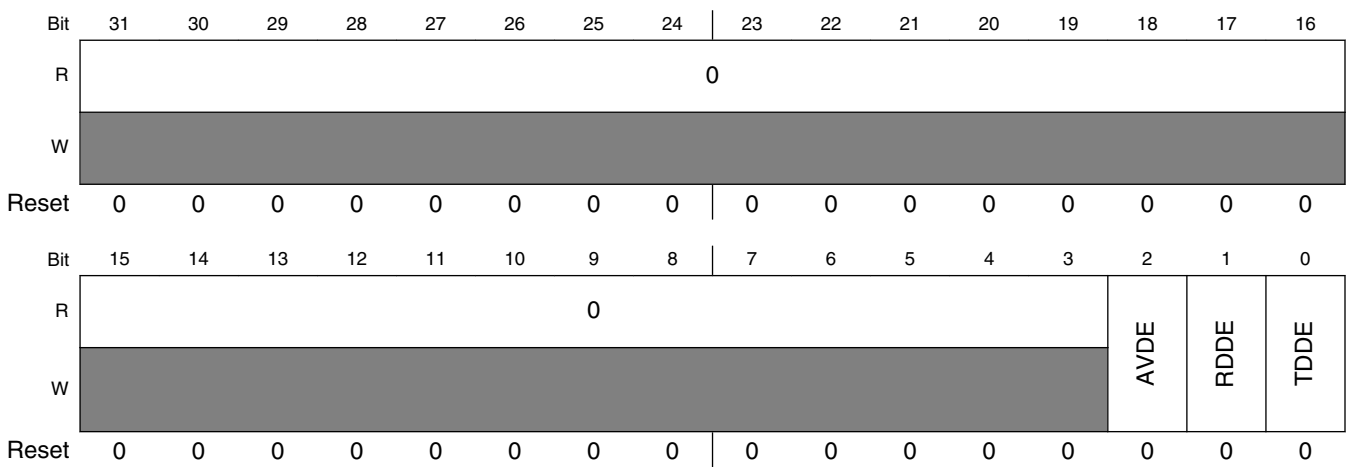
Table continues on the next page...

LPI2Cx_SIER field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Interrupt disabled. 1 Interrupt enabled.
8 RSIE	Repeated Start Interrupt Enable 0 Interrupt disabled. 1 Interrupt enabled.
7–4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
3 TAIE	Transmit ACK Interrupt Enable 0 Interrupt disabled. 1 Interrupt enabled.
2 AVIE	Address Valid Interrupt Enable 0 Interrupt disabled. 1 Interrupt enabled.
1 RDIE	Receive Data Interrupt Enable 0 Interrupt disabled. 1 Interrupt enabled.
0 TDIE	Transmit Data Interrupt Enable 0 Interrupt disabled. 1 Interrupt enabled

44.3.21 Slave DMA Enable Register (LPI2Cx_SDER)

Address: Base address + 11Ch offset



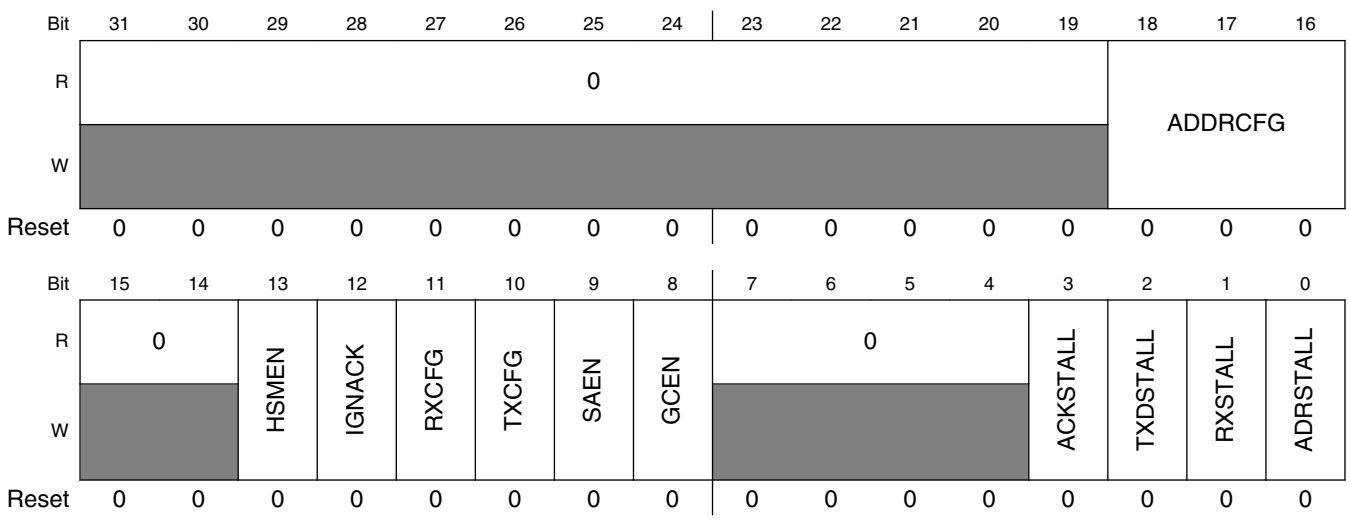
LPI2Cx_SDER field descriptions

Field	Description
31–3 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
2 AVDE	Address Valid DMA Enable The Address Valid DMA request is shared with the Receive Data DMA request. If both are enabled, then set RXCFG to allow the DMA to read the address from the Receive Data Register. 0 DMA request disabled. 1 DMA request enabled.
1 RDDE	Receive Data DMA Enable 0 DMA request disabled. 1 DMA request enabled.
0 TDDE	Transmit Data DMA Enable 0 DMA request disabled. 1 DMA request enabled

44.3.22 Slave Configuration Register 1 (LPI2Cx_SCFGR1)

The SCFGR1 should only be written when the I2C Slave is disabled.

Address: Base address + 124h offset



LPI2Cx_SCFGR1 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–19 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
18–16 ADDRCFG	Address Configuration

Table continues on the next page...

LPI2Cx_SCFGR1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	Configures the condition that will cause an address to match. 000 Address match 0 (7-bit). 001 Address match 0 (10-bit). 010 Address match 0 (7-bit) or Address match 1 (7-bit). 011 Address match 0 (10-bit) or Address match 1 (10-bit). 100 Address match 0 (7-bit) or Address match 1 (10-bit). 101 Address match 0 (10-bit) or Address match 1 (7-bit). 110 From Address match 0 (7-bit) to Address match 1 (7-bit). 111 From Address match 0 (10-bit) to Address match 1 (10-bit).
15–14 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
13 HSMEN	High Speed Mode Enable Enables detection of the High-speed Mode master code of slave address 0000_1XX, but does not cause an address match on this code. When set and any Hs-mode master code is detected, the FILTEN and ACKSTALL bits are ignored until the next STOP condition is detected. 0 Disables detection of Hs-mode master code. 1 Enables detection of Hs-mode master code.
12 IGNACK	Ignore NACK When set, the LPI2C slave will continue transfers after a NACK is detected. This bit is required to be set in Ultra-Fast Mode. 0 Slave will end transfer when NACK detected. 1 Slave will not end transfer when NACK detected.
11 RXCFG	Receive Data Configuration 0 Reading the receive data register will return receive data and clear the receive data flag. 1 Reading the receive data register when the address valid flag is set will return the address status register and clear the address valid flag. Reading the receive data register when the address valid flag is clear will return receive data and clear the receive data flag.
10 TXCFG	Transmit Flag Configuration The transmit data flag will always assert before a NACK is detected at the end of a slave-transmit transfer. This can cause an extra word to be written to the transmit data FIFO. When TXCFG=0, the transmit data register is automatically emptied when a slave-transmit transfer is detected. This cause the transmit data flag to assert whenever a slave-transmit transfer is detected and negate at the end of the slave-transmit transfer. When TXCFG=1, the transmit data flag will assert whenver the transit data register is empty and negate when the transmit data register is full. This allows the transmit data register to be filled before a slave-transmit transfer is detected, but can cause the transmit data register to be written before a NACK is detected on the last byte of a slave transmit transfer. 0 Transmit Data Flag will only assert during a slave-transmit transfer when the transmit data register is empty. 1 Transmit Data Flag will assert whenever the transmit data register is empty.
9 SAEN	SMBus Alert Enable

Table continues on the next page...

LPI2Cx_SCFGR1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Disables match on SMBus Alert. 1 Enables match on SMBus Alert.
8 GCEN	General Call Enable 0 General Call address is disabled. 1 General call address is enabled.
7–4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
3 ACKSTALL	ACK SCL Stall Enables SCL clock stretching during slave-transmit address byte(s) and slave-receiver address and data byte(s) to allow software to write the Transmit ACK Register before the ACK or NACK is transmitted. Clock stretching occurs when transmitting the 9th bit and is therefore not compatible with high speed mode. When ACKSTALL is enabled, there is no need to set either RXSTALL or ADRSTALL 0 Clock stretching disabled. 1 Clock stretching enabled.
2 TXDSTALL	TX Data SCL Stall Enables SCL clock stretching when the transmit data flag is set during a slave-transmit transfer. Clock stretching occurs following the 9th bit and is therefore compatible with high speed mode. 0 Clock stretching disabled. 1 Clock stretching enabled.
1 RXSTALL	RX SCL Stall Enables SCL clock stretching when receive data flag is set during a slave-receive transfer. Clock stretching occurs following the 9th bit and is therefore compatible with high speed mode. 0 Clock stretching disabled. 1 Clock stretching enabled.
0 ADRSTALL	Address SCL Stall Enables SCL clock stretching when the address valid flag is asserted. Clock stretching only occurs following the 9th bit and is therefore compatible with high speed mode. 0 Clock stretching disabled. 1 Clock stretching enabled.

44.3.23 Slave Configuration Register 2 (LPI2Cx_SCFGR2)

The SCFGR2 should only be written when the I2C Slave is disabled.

Address: Base address + 128h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0				FILTSDA				0				FILTSCL				0		DATAVD						0				CLKHOLD			
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

LPI2Cx_SCFGR2 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–28 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
27–24 FILTSDA	Glitch Filter SDA Configures the I2C slave digital glitch filters for SDA input, a configuration of 0 will disable the glitch filter. Glitches equal to or less than FILTSDA cycles long will be filtered out and ignored. The latency through the glitch filter is equal to FILTSDA+3 cycles and must be configured less than the minimum SCL low or high period. The glitch filter cycle count is not affected by the PRESCALE configuration, and is disabled in high speed mode.
23–20 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
19–16 FILTSCL	Glitch Filter SCL Configures the I2C slave digital glitch filters for SCL input, a configuration of 0 will disable the glitch filter. Glitches equal to or less than FILTSCL cycles long will be filtered out and ignored. The latency through the glitch filter is equal to FILTSCL+3 cycles and must be configured less than the minimum SCL low or high period. The glitch filter cycle count is not affected by the PRESCALE configuration, and is disabled in high speed mode.
15–14 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
13–8 DATAVD	Data Valid Delay Configures the SDA data valid delay time for the I2C slave equal to FILTSCL+DATAVD+3 cycles. This data valid delay must be configured to less than the minimum SCL low period. The I2C slave data valid delay time is not affected by the PRESCALE configuration, and is disabled in high speed mode.
7–4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
CLKHOLD	Clock Hold Time Configures the minimum clock hold time for the I2C slave, when clock stretching is enabled. The minimum hold time is equal to CLKHOLD+3 cycles. The I2C slave clock hold time is not affected by the PRESCALE configuration, and is disabled in high speed mode.

44.3.24 Slave Address Match Register (LPI2Cx_SAMR)

Address: Base address + 140h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0					ADDR1										0
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0					ADDR0										0
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

LPI2Cx_SAMR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–27 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
26–17 ADDR1	Address 1 Value Compared against the received address to detect the Slave Address. In 10-bit mode, the first address byte is compared to { 11110, ADDR1[10:9] } and the second address byte is compared to ADDR1[8:1]. In 7-bit mode, the address is compared to ADDR1[7:1].
16–11 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
10–1 ADDR0	Address 0 Value Compared against the received address to detect the Slave Address. In 10-bit mode, the first address byte is compared to { 11110, ADDR0[10:9] } and the second address byte is compared to ADDR0[8:1]. In 7-bit mode, the address is compared to ADDR0[7:1].
0 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

44.3.25 Slave Address Status Register (LPI2Cx_SASR)

Address: Base address + 150h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0															
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0	ANV	0			RADDR										
W																
Reset	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

LPI2Cx_SASR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–15 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
14 ANV	Address Not Valid 0 RADDR is valid. 1 RADDR is not valid.
13–11 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
RADDR	Received Address RADDR updates whenever the AMF is set and the AMF is cleared by reading this register. In 7-bit mode, the address byte is store in RADDR[7:0]. In 10-bit mode, the first address byte is { 11110, RADDR[10:9],

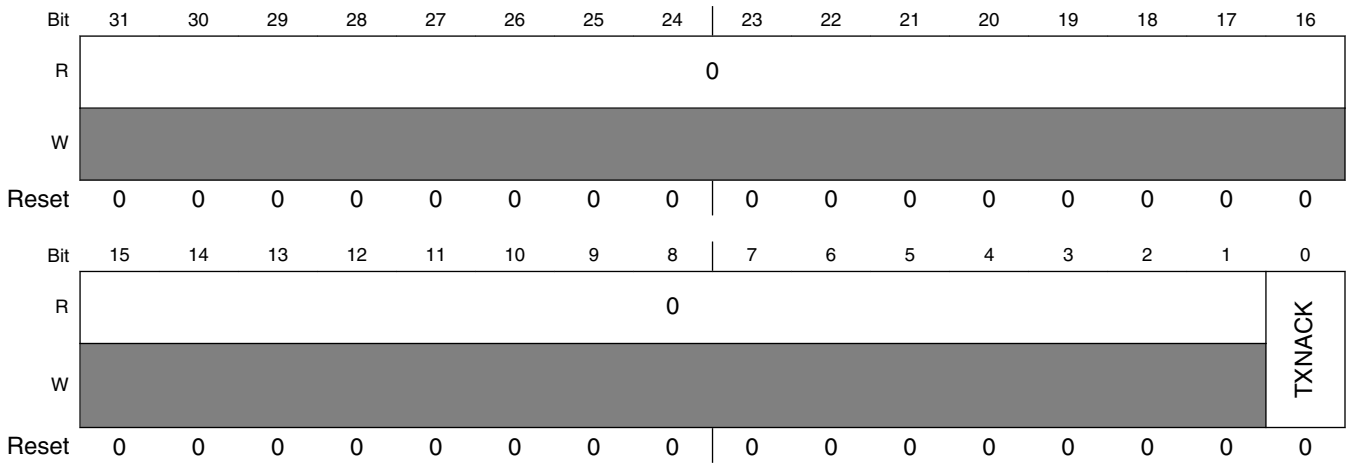
Table continues on the next page...

LPI2Cx_SASR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	RADDR[0] } and the second address byte is RADDR[8:1]. The R/W bit is therefore always stored in RADDR[0].

44.3.26 Slave Transmit ACK Register (LPI2Cx_STAR)

Address: Base address + 154h offset

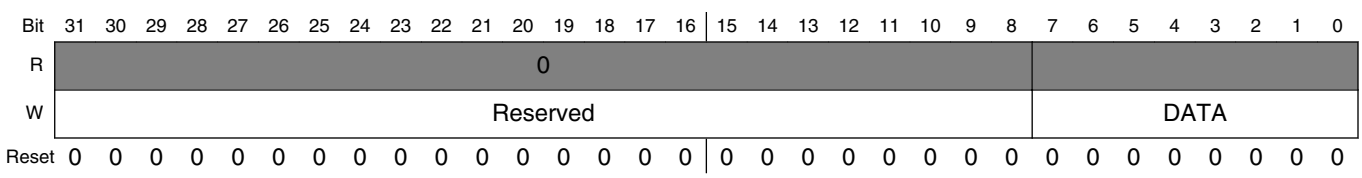


LPI2Cx_STAR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–1 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
0 TXNACK	Transmit NACK When NACKSTALL is set, must be written once for each matching address byte and each received word. Can also be written when LPI2C Slave is disabled or idle to configure the default ACK/NACK. 0 Transmit ACK for received word. 1 Transmit NACK for received word.

44.3.27 Slave Transmit Data Register (LPI2Cx_STDR)

Address: Base address + 160h offset

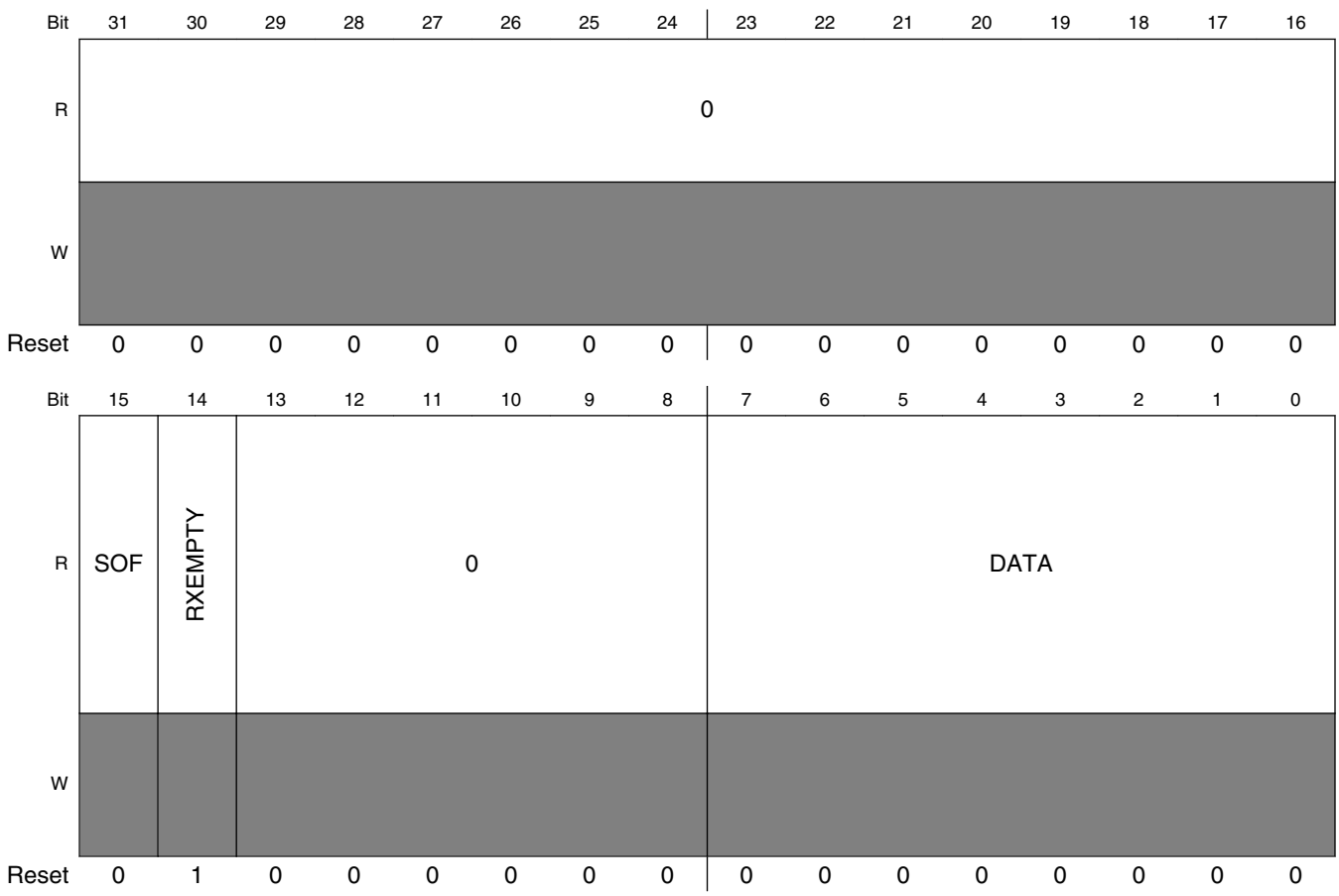


LPI2Cx_STDR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–8 Reserved	This field is reserved.
DATA	Transmit Data Writing this register will store I2C slave transmit data in the transmit register.

44.3.28 Slave Receive Data Register (LPI2Cx_SRDR)

Address: Base address + 170h offset



LPI2Cx_SRDR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
15 SOF	Start Of Frame 0 Indicates this is not the first data word since a (repeated) START or STOP condition. 1 Indicates this is the first data word since a (repeated) START or STOP condition.

Table continues on the next page...

LPI2Cx_SRDR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
14 RXEMPTY	RX Empty 0 The Receive Data Register is not empty. 1 The Receive Data Register is empty.
13–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
DATA	Receive Data Reading this register returns the data received by the I2C slave.

44.4 Functional description

44.4.1 Clocking and Resets

44.4.1.1 Functional clock

The LPI2C functional clock is asynchronous to the bus clock and can remain enabled in low power modes to support I2C bus transfers by the LPI2C master. It is also used by the LPI2C slave to support digital filter and data hold time configurations. The LPI2C master divides the functional clock by a prescaler and the resulting frequency must be at least eight times faster than the I2C bus bandwidth.

44.4.1.2 External clock

The LPI2C slave logic is clocked directly from the external pins LPI2C_SCL and LPI2C_SDA (or LPI2C_SCLS and LPI2C_SDAS if master and slave are implemented on separate pins). This allows the LPI2C slave to remain operational, even when the LPI2C functional clock is disabled. Note that the LPI2C slave digital filter must be disabled if the LPI2C functional clock is disabled and this can effect compliance with some of the timing parameters of the I2C specification, such as the data hold time.

44.4.1.3 Bus clock

The bus clock is only used for bus accesses to the control and configuration registers. The bus clock frequency must be sufficient to support the data bandwidth requirements of the LPI2C master and slave registers.

44.4.1.4 Chip reset

The logic and registers for the LPI2C master and slave are reset to their default state on a chip reset.

44.4.1.5 Software reset

The LPI2C master implements a software reset bit in its Control Register. The MCR[RST] will reset all master logic and registers to their default state, except for the MCR itself.

The LPI2C slave implements a software reset bit in its Control Register. The SCR[RST] will reset all slave logic and registers to their default state, except for the SCR itself.

44.4.1.6 FIFO reset

The LPI2C master implements write-only control bits that resets the transmit FIFO (MCR[RTF] and receive FIFO (MCR[RRF]). A FIFO is empty after being reset.

The LPI2C slave implements write-only control bits that resets the transmit data register (SCR[RTF] and receive data register (SCR[RRF]). A data register is empty after being reset.

44.4.2 Master Mode

The LPI2C master logic operates independently from the slave logic to perform all master mode transfers on the I2C bus.

44.4.2.1 Transmit and Command FIFO

The transmit FIFO stores command data to initiate the various I2C operations. The following operations can be initiated through commands in the transmit FIFO:

- START or Repeated START condition with address byte and expecting ACK or NACK.
- Transmit data (this is the default for zero extended byte writes to the transmit FIFO).
- Receive 1-256 bytes of data (can also be configured to discard receive data and not store in receive FIFO).
- STOP condition (can also be configured to send STOP condition when transmit FIFO is empty).

Multiple transmit and receive commands can be inserted between the START condition and STOP conditon, transmit and receive commands must not be interleaved in order to comply with the I2C specification. The receive data command and the receive data and discard command can be interleaved to ensure only the desired received data is stored in the receive FIFO (or compared with the data match logic).

The LPI2C master supports 10-bit addressing through a (repeated) START condition, followed by a transmit byte with the second address byte, followed by any number of data bytes with the master-transmit data.

A START or Repeated START condition that is expecting a NACK (for example, hs-mode master code) must be followed by a STOP or (repeated) START condition.

44.4.2.2 Master Operation

Whenever the LPI2C is enabled, it monitors the I2C bus to detect when the I2C bus is idle (MSR[BBF]). The I2C bus is no longer considered idle if either SCL or SDA are low and becomes idle if a STOP condition is detected or if a bus idle timeout is detected (as configured by MCFGR2[BUSIDLE]). Once the I2C bus is idle, the transmit FIFO is not empty, and the host request is either asserted or disabled, then the LPI2C master will initiate a transfer on the I2C bus. This involves the following steps:

- Wait the bus idle time equal to (MCCR0[CLKLO] + 1) multiplied by the prescaler.
- Transmit a START condition and address byte using the timing configuration in MCCR0, if a high speed mode transfer is configured then timing configuration from MCCR1 is used instead.
- Perform master-transmit or master-receive transfers, as configured by the transmit FIFO.
- Transmit a Repeated START or STOP condition as configured by the transmit FIFO and/or MCFGR1[AUTOSTOP]. A repeated START can change which timing configuration register is used.

When the LPI2C master is disabled (either due to MCR[MEN] being clear or automatically due to mode entry), the LPI2C will continue to empty the transmit FIFO until a STOP condition is transmitted. However, it will no longer stall the I2C bus waiting for the transmit or receive FIFO and once the transmit FIFO is empty it will generate a STOP condition automatically.

The LPI2C master can stall the I2C bus under certain conditions, this will result in SCL pulled low continuously on the first bit of a byte until the condition is removed:

- LPI2C master is enabled and busy, transmit FIFO is empty, and MCFGR1[AUTOSTOP] is clear.
- LPI2C master is enabled and receiving data, receive data is not being discarded (due to command or receive data match), and receive FIFO is full.

44.4.2.3 Receive FIFO and Data Match

The receive FIFO is used to store receive data during master-receiver transfers. Receive data can also be configured to discard receive data instead of storing in the receive FIFO, this is configured by the command word in the transmit FIFO.

Receive data supports a receive data match function that can match received data against one of two bytes or against a masked data byte. The data match function can also be configured to compare only the first one or two received data words since the last (repeated) START condition. Receive data that is already discarded due to the command word cannot cause the data match to set and will delay the match on first received data word until after the discarded data is received. The receiver match function can also be configured to discard all receive data until a data match is detected, using the MCFGR0[RDMO] control bit. When clearing the MCFGR0[RDMO] control bit following a data match, clear MCFGR0[RDMO] before clearing MSR[DMF] to allow all subsequent data to be received.

44.4.2.4 Timing Parameters

The following timing parameters can be configured by the LPI2C master. Parameters are configured separately for high speed mode (MCCR1) and other modes (MCCR0). This allows the high speed mode master code to be sent using the regular timing parameters and then switch to the high speed mode timing (following a repeated START) until the next STOP condition.

The LPI2C master timing parameters in LPI2C functional clock cycles are configured as follows. They must be configured to meet the I2C timing specification for the required mode.

- Bus idle time is always (MCCR0[CLKLO] + 1) multiplied by the prescaler. This is extended by the time it takes to detect external SDA rising edge.
- START or repeated START hold time is equal to (MCCR0/1[SETHOLD] + 1) multiplied by the prescaler.
- START, or repeated START, or STOP setup time is equal to (MCCR0/1[SETHOLD] + 1) multiplied by the prescaler. This is extended by the time it takes to detect external SCL rising edge.
- SCL low time (before clock stretching) is equal to (MCCR0/1[CLKLO] + 1) multiplied by the prescaler.
- SCL high time is equal to (MCCR0/1[CLKHI] + 1) multiplied by the prescaler. This is extended by the time it takes to detect external SCL rising edge.
- SDA output delay is equal to (MCCR0/1[DATAVD] + 1) multiplied by the prescaler.

The time taken to detect an external rising edge depends on a number of factors including the bus loading and external pull-up resistor sizing. The minimum delay equals two plus the pin input digital filter setting (which are configured separately for SCL and SDA), divided by the prescaler (since the pin input digital filters are not affected by the prescaler setting).

The following timing restrictions must be enforced to avoid unexpected START or STOP conditions on the I2C bus or unexpected START or STOP conditions detected by the LPI2C master. They can be summarized as SDA cannot change when SCL is high outside of a transmitted (repeated) START or STOP condition.

Table 44-2. Timing Parameters

Timing Parameter	Minimum	Maximum	Comment
CLKLO	0x03	-	CLKLO must also be greater than delay through the SCL filter.
CLKHI	0x01	-	
SETHOLD	0x02	-	
DATAVD	0x01	CLKLO - [(FILTSDA+2) / (2 ^ PRESCALER)]	DATAVD must be less than CLKLO minus delay through the SDA filter.
FILTSCL	0x00	[CLKLO × (2 ^ PRESCALER)] - 3	
FILTSDA	FILTSCL	[CLKLO × (2 ^ PRESCALER)] - 3	Does not apply if compensating for board level skew between SCL and SDA.
BUSIDLE	(CLKLO+SETHOLD+2) × 2	-	Must also be greater than CLKHI+1.

The timing parameters must be configured to meet the requirements of the I2C specification, this will depend on the mode being supported, the frequency of the LPI2C functional clock. Some example configurations are provided below.

Table 44-3. LPI2C Example Timing Configurations

I2C Mode	Clock Frequency	Baud Rate	PRESCALER	FILTSCL/ FILTSDA	SETHOLD	CLKLO	CLKHI	DATAVD
Fast	8 MHz	400 kbps	0x0	0x0/0x0	0x04	0x0B	0x05	0x02
Fast+	8 MHz	1 Mbps	0x0	0x0/0x0	0x02	0x03	0x01	0x01
Fast	48 MHz	400 kbps	0x2	0x1/0x1	0x07	0x11	0x0B	0x03
Fast+	48 MHz	1 Mbps	0x2	0x1/0x1	0x03	0x06	0x04	0x04
Fast+	48 MHz	1 Mbps	0x0	0x1/0x1	0x1D	0x18	0x13	0x0F
HS-mode	48 MHz	3.2 Mbps	0x0	0x0/0x0	0x07	0x08	0x03	0x01
Fast	60 MHz	400 kbps	0x1	0x2/0x2	0x11	0x28	0x21	0x08
Fast+	60 MHz	1 Mbps	0x1	0x2/0x2	0x07	0x0F	0x0B	0x01
HS-mode	60 MHz	3.33 Mbps	0x1	0x0/0x0	0x04	0x03	0x04	0x01
Ultrafast	60 MHz	5 Mbps	0x0	0x0/0x0	0x02	0x05	0x03	0x01

The formula to calculate number of cycles per bit is as follows:

*Baud rate divide = ((CLKLO+CLKHI+2)*2^PRESCALER) + ROUNDDOWN((2+FILTSCL)/2^PRESCALER)*

This assumes SCL will pull high within 1 cycle of the LPI2C functional clock, this will depend on the pullup resistor and loading on the SCL pin.

44.4.2.5 Error Conditions

The LPI2C master will monitor for errors while it is active, the following conditions will generate an error flag and block a new START condition from being sent until the flag is cleared by software:

- START or STOP condition detected and not generated by LPI2C master (sets MSR[ALF]).
- Transmitting data on SDA and different value being received (sets MSR[ALF]).
- NACK detected when transmitting data, provided MCFGR1[IGNACK] is clear (sets MSR[NDF]).
- NACK detected and expecting ACK for address byte, provided MCFGR1[IGNACK] is clear (sets MSR[NDF]).
- ACK detected and expecting NACK for address byte, provided MCFGR1[IGNACK] is clear (sets MSR[NDF]).

- Transmit FIFO requesting to transmit or receive data without a START condition (sets MSR[FEF]).
- SCL (or SDA if MCFGR1[TIMECFG] is set) is low for (MCFGR2[TIMELOW] * 256) prescaler cycles without a pin transition (sets MSR[PLTF]).

Software must respond to the MSR[PTLF] flag to terminate the existing command either cleanly (by clearing MCR[MEN]) or abruptly (by setting MCR[SWRST]).

The MCFGR2[BUSIDLE] field can be used to force the I2C bus to be considered idle when SCL and SDA remain high for (BUSIDLE+1) prescaler cycles. The I2C bus is normally considered idle when the LPI2C master is first enabled, but when BUSIDLE is configured greater than zero then SCL and/or SDA must be high for (BUSIDLE+1) prescaler cycles before the I2C bus is first considered idle.

44.4.2.6 Pin Configuration

The LPI2C master defaults to open-drain configuration of the LPI2C_SDA and LPI2C_SCL pins. Support for true open drain is device specific and requires the pins where LPI2C pins are muxed to support true open drain. Support for high speed mode is also device specific and requires the LPI2C_SCL pin to support the current source pull-up required in the I2C specification.

The LPI2C master also supports the output only push-pull function required for I2C ultra-fast mode using the LPI2C_SDA and LPI2C_SCL pins. Support for ultra-fast mode also requires the IGNACK bit to be set.

A push-pull 2 wire configuration is also available to the LPI2C master that may support a partial high speed mode provided the LPI2C is the only master and all I2C pins on the bus are at the same voltage. This will configure the LPI2C_SCL pin as push-pull for every clock except the 9th clock pulse to allow high speed mode compatible slaves to perform clock stretching. In this mode, the LPI2C_SDA pin is tristated for master-receive data bits and master-transmit ACK/NACK bits.

The push-pull 4 wire configuration separates the SCL input and output and the SDA input and output onto separate pins, with SCL/SDA used as the input pins and SCLS/SDAS used as the output pins with configurable polarity. This simplifies the external connections when connecting the I2C bus to external level shifters. The LPI2C master logic and LPI2C slave logic are not able to connect to separate I2C buses when using this configuration.

44.4.3 Slave Mode

The LPI2C slave logic operates independently from the master logic to perform all slave mode transfers on the I2C bus.

44.4.3.1 Address Match

The LPI2C slave can be configured to match one of two addresses using either 7-bit or 10-bit addressing modes for each address, or to match a range of addresses in either 7-bit or 10-bit addressing modes. Separately, it can be configured to match the General Call Address or the SMBus Alert Address and generate appropriate flags. The LPI2C slave can also be configured to detect the high speed mode master code and to disable the digital filters and output valid delay time until the next STOP condition is detected.

Once a valid address is matched, the LPI2C slave will automatically perform slave-transmit or slave-receive transfers until a NACK is detected (unless IGNACK is set), a bit error is detected (the LPI2C slave is driving SDA, but a different value is sampled), or a (repeated) START or STOP condition is detected.

44.4.3.2 Transmit and Receive

The transmit and receive data registers are double buffered and only update during a slave-transmit and slave-receive transfer respectively. The slave address that was received can be configured to be read from either the receive data register (for example, when using DMA to transfer data) or from the address status register. The transmit data register can be configured to only request data once a slave-transmit transfer is detected or to request new data whenever the transmit data register is empty.

The transmit data register should only be written when the transmit data flag is set. The receive data register should only be read when the received data flag is set (or the address valid flag is set and RXCFG=1). The address status register should only be read when the address valid flag is set.

44.4.3.3 Clock Stretching

The LPI2C slave supports many configurable options for when clock stretching is performed. The following conditions can be configured to perform clock stretching.

- During 9th clock pulse of address byte and address valid flag is set.
- During 9th clock pulse of slave-transmit transfer and transmit data flag is set.
- During 9th clock pulse of slave-receive transfer and receive data flag is set.

- During 8th clock pulse of address byte or slave-receive transfer and transmit ACK flag is set. This is disabled in high speed mode.
- Clock stretching can also be extended for CLKHOLD cycles to allow additional setup time to sample the SDA pin externally. This is disabled in high speed mode.

Unless extended by the CLKHOLD configuration, clock stretching will extend for one peripheral bus clock cycle after SDA updates when clock stretching is enabled.

44.4.3.4 Timing Parameters

The LPI2C slave can configure the following timing parameters, these parameters are disabled when SCR[FILTEN] is clear, when SCR[FILTDZ] is set in Doze mode, and when LPI2C slave detects high speed mode. When disabled, the LPI2C slave is clocked directly from the I2C bus and may not satisfy all timing requirements of the I2C specification (such as SDA minimum hold time in Standard/Fast mode).

- SDA data valid time from SCL negation to SDA update.
- SCL hold time when clock stretching is enabled to increase setup time when sampling SDA externally.
- SCL glitch filter time.
- SDA glitch filter time.

The LPI2C slave imposes the following restrictions on the timing parameters.

- FILTSDA must be configured to greater than or equal to FILTSCL (unless compensating for board level skew between SDA and SCL).
- DATAVD must be configured less than the minimum SCL low period.

44.4.3.5 Error Conditions

The LPI2C slave can detect the following error conditions.

- Bit error flag will set when the LPI2C slave is driving SDA, but samples a different value than what is expected.
- FIFO error flag will set due to a transmit data underrun or a receive data overrun. Clock stretching can be enabled to eliminate the possibility of underrun and overrun occurring.
- FIFO error flag will also set due to an address overrun when RXCFG is set, otherwise an address overrun is not flagged. Clock stretching can be enabled to eliminate the possibility of overrun occurring.

The LPI2C slave does not implement a timeout due to SCL and/or SDA being stuck low. If this detection is required, the LPI2C master logic should be used and software can reset the LPI2C slave when this condition is detected.

44.4.4 Interrupts and DMA Requests

The LPI2C master and slave interrupts may be combined depending on the device.

The LPI2C master and slave transmit DMA requests may be combined depending on the device.

The LPI2C master and slave receive DMA requests may be combined depending on the device.

44.4.4.1 Master mode

The following table illustrates the master mode sources that can generate the LPI2C master interrupt and LPI2C master transmit/receive DMA requests.

Table 44-4. Master Interrupts and DMA Requests

Flag	Description	Interrupt	DMA Request	Low Power Wakeup
TDF	Data can be written to transmit FIFO, as configured by TXWATER.	Y	TX	Y
RDF	Data can be read from the receive FIFO, as configured by RXWATER.	Y	RX	Y
EPF	Master has transmitted Repeated START or STOP condition.	Y	N	Y
SDF	Master has transmitted STOP condition.	Y	N	Y
NDF	Master detected NACK during address byte when expecting ACK, master detected ACK during address byte and expecting NACK, or master detected NACK during master-transmitter data byte.	Y	N	Y
ALF	Master lost arbitration due to START/STOP condition detected at	Y	N	Y

Table continues on the next page...

Table 44-4. Master Interrupts and DMA Requests (continued)

Flag	Description	Interrupt	DMA Request	Low Power Wakeup
	wrong time, or Master was transmitting data but received different data than what was transmitted.			
FEF	Master expecting START condition in command FIFO and next entry in FIFO is not START condition.	Y	N	Y
PLTF	Pin low timeout is enabled and SCL (or SDA if configured) is low for longer than the configured timeout.	Y	N	Y
DMF	Received data matches the configured data match, and receive data not discarded due to command FIFO entry.	Y	N	Y
MBF	LPI2C master is busy transmitting/receiving data.	N	N	N
BBF	LPI2C master is enabled and activity detected on I2C bus, but STOP condition has not been detected and bus idle timeout (if enabled) has not occurred.	N	N	N

44.4.4.2 Slave mode

The following table illustrates the slave mode sources that can generate the LPI2C slave interrupt and the LPI2C slave transmit/receive DMA requests.

Table 44-5. Slave Interrupts and DMA Requests

Flag	Description	Interrupt	DMA Request	Low Power Wakeup
TDF	Data can be written to transmit data register.	Y	TX	Y
RDF	Data can be read from the receive data register.	Y	RX	Y

Table continues on the next page...

Table 44-5. Slave Interrupts and DMA Requests (continued)

Flag	Description	Interrupt	DMA Request	Low Power Wakeup
AVF	Address can be read from the address status register.	Y	RX	Y
TAF	ACK/NACK can be written to the transmit ACK register.	Y	N	Y
RSF	Slave has detected an address match followed by a Repeated START condition.	Y	N	Y
SDF	Slave has detected an address match followed by a STOP condition.	Y	N	Y
BEF	Slave was transmitting data, but received different data than what was transmitted.	Y	N	Y
FEF	Transmit data underrun, receive data overrun or address status overrun (when RXCFG=1). This flag can only set when clock stretching is disabled.	Y	N	Y
AM0F	Slave detected address match with ADDR0 field.	Y	N	N
AM1F	Slave detected address match with ADDR1 field or address range.	Y	N	N
GCF	Slave detected address match with general call address.	Y	N	N
SARF	Slave detected address match with SMBus alert address.	Y	N	N
SBF	LPI2C slave is busy receiving address byte or transmitting/receiving data.	N	N	N
BBF	LPI2C slave is enabled and START condition detected on I2C bus, but STOP condition has not been detected.	N	N	N

44.4.5 Peripheral Triggers

The connection of the LPI2C peripheral triggers with other peripherals are device specific.

44.4.5.1 Master Output Trigger

The LPI2C master generates an output trigger that can be connected to other peripherals on the device. The master output trigger asserts on both a Repeated START or STOP condition and remains asserted for one cycle of the LPI2C functional clock divided by the prescaler.

44.4.5.2 Slave Output Trigger

The LPI2C slave generates an output trigger that can be connected to other peripherals on the device. The slave output trigger asserts on both a Repeated START or STOP condition that occurs following a slave address match. It remains asserted until the next slave SCL pin negation.

44.4.5.3 Input Trigger

The LPI2C input trigger can be selected in place of the LPI2C_HREQ pin to control the start of a LPI2C master bus transfer. The input trigger must assert for longer than one LPI2C functional clock cycle to be detected.

44.5 Application Information

Chapter 45
Universal Asynchronous Receiver/Transmitter (UART)

45.1 Chip-specific Information for this Module

45.1.1 UART configuration information

This section describes how each module is configured on this device.

1. Standard features of all UARTs:
   - RS-485 support
   - Hardware flow control (RTS/CTS)
   - 9-bit UART to support address mark with parity
   - MSB/LSB configuration on data
2. UART0 and UART1 are clocked from the core clock, the remaining UARTs are clocked on the bus clock. The maximum baud rate is 1/16 of related source clock frequency.
3. IrDA is available on all UARTs
4. UART0 contains the standard features plus ISO7816
5. UART0 contains 8-entry transmit and 8-entry receive FIFOs
6. All other UARTs contain a 1-entry transmit and receive FIFOs

NOTE

The USB DP/DM pin can be configured as UART TX/RX according to SIM_MISCCTRL[UARTSELONUSB]. For more details, see UART Over USB Capability section in the USBFSOTG chapter.

NOTE

ISO7816 is not supported on UART1 and UART2, therefore related registers are not applicable for this device.

45.1.2 UART wakeup

The UART can be configured to generate an interrupt/wakeup on the first active edge that it receives.

45.1.3 UART interrupts

The UART has multiple sources of interrupt requests. However, some of these sources are OR'd together to generate a single interrupt request. See below for the mapping of the individual interrupt sources to the interrupt request:

The status interrupt combines the following interrupt sources:

Source	UART 0	UART 1	UART 2
Transmit data empty	x	x	x
Transmit complete	x	x	x
Idle line	x	x	x
Receive data full	x	x	x
LIN break detect	x	x	x
RxD pin active edge	x	x	x
Initial character detect	x	—	—

The error interrupt combines the following interrupt sources:

Source	UART 0	UART 1	UART 2
Receiver overrun	x	x	x
Noise flag	x	x	x
Framing error	x	x	x
Parity error	x	x	x
Transmitter buffer overflow	x	x	x
Receiver buffer overflow	x	x	x
Receiver buffer underflow	x	x	x
Transmit threshold (ISO7816)	x	—	—
Receiver threshold (ISO7816)	x	—	—
Wait timer (ISO7816)	x	—	—
Character wait timer (ISO7816)	x	—	—
Block wait timer (ISO7816)	x	—	—
Guard time violation (ISO7816)	x	—	—

Table continues on the next page...

Source	UART 0	UART 1	UART 2
ATR duration timer (ISO7816)	x	—	—

45.2 Introduction

The UART allows asynchronous serial communication with peripheral devices and CPUs.

45.2.1 Features

The UART includes the following features:

- Full-duplex operation
- Standard mark/space non-return-to-zero (NRZ) format
- Selectable IrDA 1.4 return-to-zero-inverted (RZI) format with programmable pulse width
- 13-bit baud rate selection with /32 fractional divide, based on the module clock frequency
- Programmable 8-bit or 9-bit data format
- Programmable 1 or 2 stop bits in a data frame.
- Separately enabled transmitter and receiver
- Programmable transmitter output polarity
- Programmable receive input polarity
- Up to 16-bit break character transmission.
- 11-bit break character detection option
- Independent FIFO structure for transmit and receive
- Two receiver wakeup methods:
  - Idle line wakeup
  - Address mark wakeup
- Address match feature in the receiver to reduce address mark wakeup ISR overhead

- Ability to select MSB or LSB to be first bit on wire
- Hardware flow control support for request to send (RTS) and clear to send (CTS) signals
- Support for ISO 7816 protocol to interface with SIM cards and smart cards
  - Support for T=0 and T=1 protocols
  - Automatic retransmission of NACK'd packets with programmable retry threshold
  - Support for 11 and 12 ETU transfers
  - Detection of initial packet and automated transfer parameter programming
  - Interrupt-driven operation with seven ISO-7816 specific interrupts:
    - Wait time violated
    - Character wait time violated
    - Block wait time violated
    - Initial frame detected
    - Transmit error threshold exceeded
    - Receive error threshold exceeded
    - Guard time violated
- Interrupt-driven operation with flags, not specific to ISO-7816 support
  - Transmitter data buffer at or below watermark
  - Transmission complete
  - Receiver data buffer at or above watermark
  - Idle receiver input
  - Receiver data buffer overrun
  - Receiver data buffer underflow
  - Transmit data buffer overflow
  - Noise error
  - Framing error
  - Parity error

  - Active edge on receive pin
  - LIN break detect
- Receiver framing error detection
- Hardware parity generation and checking
- 1/16 bit-time noise detection
- DMA interface

45.2.2 Modes of operation

The UART functions in the same way in all the normal modes.

It has the following low power modes:

- Wait mode
- Stop mode

45.2.2.1 Run mode

This is the normal mode of operation.

45.2.2.2 Wait mode

UART operation in the Wait mode depends on the state of the C1[UARTSWAI] field.

- If C1[UARTSWAI] is cleared, and the CPU is in Wait mode, the UART operates normally.
- If C1[UARTSWAI] is set, and the CPU is in Wait mode, the UART clock generation ceases and the UART module enters a power conservation state.

C1[UARTSWAI] does not initiate any power down or power up procedures for the ISO-7816 smartcard interface.

Setting C1[UARTSWAI] does not affect the state of the C2[RE] or C2[TE].

If C1[UARTSWAI] is set, any ongoing transmission or reception stops at the Wait mode entry. The transmission or reception resumes when either an internal or external interrupt brings the CPU out of Wait mode. Bringing the CPU out of Wait mode by reset aborts any ongoing transmission or reception and resets the UART.

45.2.2.3 Stop mode

The UART is inactive during Stop mode for reduced power consumption. The STOP instruction does not affect the UART register states, but the UART module clock is disabled. The UART operation resumes after an external interrupt brings the CPU out of Stop mode. Bringing the CPU out of Stop mode by reset aborts any ongoing transmission or reception and resets the UART. Entering or leaving Stop mode does not initiate any power down or power up procedures for the ISO-7816 smartcard interface.

45.3 UART signal descriptions

The UART signals are shown in the following table.

Table 45-1. UART signal descriptions

Signal	Description	I/O
$\overline{\text{CTS}}$	Clear to send	I
$\overline{\text{RTS}}$	Request to send	O
RXD	Receive data	I
TXD	Transmit data	O

45.3.1 Detailed signal descriptions

The detailed signal descriptions of the UART are shown in the following table.

Table 45-2. UART—Detailed signal descriptions

Signal	I/O	Description	
$\overline{\text{CTS}}$	I	Clear to send. Indicates whether the UART can start transmitting data when flow control is enabled.	
		State meaning	Asserted—Data transmission can start. Negated—Data transmission cannot start.
		Timing	Assertion—When transmitting device's $\overline{\text{RTS}}$ asserts. Negation—When transmitting device's $\overline{\text{RTS}}$ deasserts.

Table continues on the next page...

Table 45-2. UART—Detailed signal descriptions (continued)

Signal	I/O	Description	
$\overline{\text{RTS}}$	O	Request to send. When driven by the receiver, indicates whether the UART is ready to receive data. When driven by the transmitter, can enable an external transceiver during transmission.	
		State meaning	Asserted—When driven by the receiver, ready to receive data. When driven by the transmitter, enable the external transmitter. Negated—When driven by the receiver, not ready to receive data. When driven by the transmitter, disable the external transmitter.
		Timing	Assertion—Can occur at any time; can assert asynchronously to the other input signals. Negation—Can occur at any time; can deassert asynchronously to the other input signals.
RXD	I	Receive data. Serial data input to receiver.	
		State meaning	Whether RXD is interpreted as a 1 or 0 depends on the bit encoding method along with other configuration settings.
		Timing	Sampled at a frequency determined by the module clock divided by the baud rate.
TXD	O	Transmit data. Serial data output from transmitter.	
		State meaning	Whether TXD is interpreted as a 1 or 0 depends on the bit encoding method along with other configuration settings.
		Timing	Driven at the beginning or within a bit time according to the bit encoding method along with other configuration settings. Otherwise, transmissions are independent of reception timing.

45.4 Memory map and registers

This section provides a detailed description of all memory and registers.

Accessing reserved addresses within the memory map results in a transfer error. None of the contents of the implemented addresses are modified as a result of that access.

Only byte accesses are supported.

UART memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4006_A000	UART Baud Rate Registers: High (UART0_BDH)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.1/1152
4006_A001	UART Baud Rate Registers: Low (UART0_BDL)	8	R/W	04h	45.4.2/1153
4006_A002	UART Control Register 1 (UART0_C1)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.3/1154
4006_A003	UART Control Register 2 (UART0_C2)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.4/1155
4006_A004	UART Status Register 1 (UART0_S1)	8	R	C0h	45.4.5/1157

Table continues on the next page...

UART memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4006_A005	UART Status Register 2 (UART0_S2)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.6/1160
4006_A006	UART Control Register 3 (UART0_C3)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.7/1162
4006_A007	UART Data Register (UART0_D)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.8/1163
4006_A008	UART Match Address Registers 1 (UART0_MA1)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.9/1165
4006_A009	UART Match Address Registers 2 (UART0_MA2)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.10/ 1165
4006_A00A	UART Control Register 4 (UART0_C4)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.11/ 1165
4006_A00B	UART Control Register 5 (UART0_C5)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.12/ 1166
4006_A00C	UART Extended Data Register (UART0_ED)	8	R	00h	45.4.13/ 1167
4006_A00D	UART Modem Register (UART0_MODEM)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.14/ 1168
4006_A00E	UART Infrared Register (UART0_IR)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.15/ 1169
4006_A010	UART FIFO Parameters (UART0_PFIFO)	8	R/W	See section	45.4.16/ 1170
4006_A011	UART FIFO Control Register (UART0_CFIFO)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.17/ 1172
4006_A012	UART FIFO Status Register (UART0_SFIFO)	8	R/W	C0h	45.4.18/ 1173
4006_A013	UART FIFO Transmit Watermark (UART0_TWFIFO)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.19/ 1174
4006_A014	UART FIFO Transmit Count (UART0_TCFIFO)	8	R	00h	45.4.20/ 1175
4006_A015	UART FIFO Receive Watermark (UART0_RWFIFO)	8	R/W	01h	45.4.21/ 1175
4006_A016	UART FIFO Receive Count (UART0_RCFIFO)	8	R	00h	45.4.22/ 1176
4006_A018	UART 7816 Control Register (UART0_C7816)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.23/ 1176
4006_A019	UART 7816 Interrupt Enable Register (UART0_IE7816)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.24/ 1178
4006_A01A	UART 7816 Interrupt Status Register (UART0_IS7816)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.25/ 1179
4006_A01B	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register (UART0_WP7816)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.26/ 1181
4006_A01C	UART 7816 Wait N Register (UART0_WN7816)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.27/ 1181
4006_A01D	UART 7816 Wait FD Register (UART0_WF7816)	8	R/W	01h	45.4.28/ 1182
4006_A01E	UART 7816 Error Threshold Register (UART0_ET7816)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.29/ 1182

Table continues on the next page...

UART memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4006_A01F	UART 7816 Transmit Length Register (UART0_TL7816)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.30/ 1183
4006_A03A	UART 7816 ATR Duration Timer Register A (UART0_AP7816A_T0)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.31/ 1183
4006_A03B	UART 7816 ATR Duration Timer Register B (UART0_AP7816B_T0)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.32/ 1184
4006_A03C	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register A (UART0_WP7816A_T0)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.33/ 1185
4006_A03C	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register A (UART0_WP7816A_T1)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.34/ 1185
4006_A03D	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register B (UART0_WP7816B_T0)	8	R/W	14h	45.4.35/ 1186
4006_A03D	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register B (UART0_WP7816B_T1)	8	R/W	14h	45.4.36/ 1186
4006_A03E	UART 7816 Wait and Guard Parameter Register (UART0_WGP7816_T1)	8	R/W	06h	45.4.37/ 1187
4006_A03F	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register C (UART0_WP7816C_T1)	8	R/W	0Bh	45.4.38/ 1187
4006_B000	UART Baud Rate Registers: High (UART1_BDH)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.1/1152
4006_B001	UART Baud Rate Registers: Low (UART1_BDL)	8	R/W	04h	45.4.2/1153
4006_B002	UART Control Register 1 (UART1_C1)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.3/1154
4006_B003	UART Control Register 2 (UART1_C2)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.4/1155
4006_B004	UART Status Register 1 (UART1_S1)	8	R	C0h	45.4.5/1157
4006_B005	UART Status Register 2 (UART1_S2)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.6/1160
4006_B006	UART Control Register 3 (UART1_C3)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.7/1162
4006_B007	UART Data Register (UART1_D)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.8/1163
4006_B008	UART Match Address Registers 1 (UART1_MA1)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.9/1165
4006_B009	UART Match Address Registers 2 (UART1_MA2)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.10/ 1165
4006_B00A	UART Control Register 4 (UART1_C4)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.11/ 1165
4006_B00B	UART Control Register 5 (UART1_C5)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.12/ 1166
4006_B00C	UART Extended Data Register (UART1_ED)	8	R	00h	45.4.13/ 1167
4006_B00D	UART Modem Register (UART1_MODEM)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.14/ 1168
4006_B00E	UART Infrared Register (UART1_IR)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.15/ 1169
4006_B010	UART FIFO Parameters (UART1_PFIFO)	8	R/W	See section	45.4.16/ 1170
4006_B011	UART FIFO Control Register (UART1_CFIFO)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.17/ 1172

Table continues on the next page...

UART memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4006_B012	UART FIFO Status Register (UART1_SFIFO)	8	R/W	C0h	45.4.18/ 1173
4006_B013	UART FIFO Transmit Watermark (UART1_TWFIFO)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.19/ 1174
4006_B014	UART FIFO Transmit Count (UART1_TCFIFO)	8	R	00h	45.4.20/ 1175
4006_B015	UART FIFO Receive Watermark (UART1_RWFIFO)	8	R/W	01h	45.4.21/ 1175
4006_B016	UART FIFO Receive Count (UART1_RCFIFO)	8	R	00h	45.4.22/ 1176
4006_B018	UART 7816 Control Register (UART1_C7816)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.23/ 1176
4006_B019	UART 7816 Interrupt Enable Register (UART1_IE7816)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.24/ 1178
4006_B01A	UART 7816 Interrupt Status Register (UART1_IS7816)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.25/ 1179
4006_B01B	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register (UART1_WP7816)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.26/ 1181
4006_B01C	UART 7816 Wait N Register (UART1_WN7816)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.27/ 1181
4006_B01D	UART 7816 Wait FD Register (UART1_WF7816)	8	R/W	01h	45.4.28/ 1182
4006_B01E	UART 7816 Error Threshold Register (UART1_ET7816)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.29/ 1182
4006_B01F	UART 7816 Transmit Length Register (UART1_TL7816)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.30/ 1183
4006_B03A	UART 7816 ATR Duration Timer Register A (UART1_AP7816A_T0)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.31/ 1183
4006_B03B	UART 7816 ATR Duration Timer Register B (UART1_AP7816B_T0)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.32/ 1184
4006_B03C	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register A (UART1_WP7816A_T0)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.33/ 1185
4006_B03C	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register A (UART1_WP7816A_T1)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.34/ 1185
4006_B03D	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register B (UART1_WP7816B_T0)	8	R/W	14h	45.4.35/ 1186
4006_B03D	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register B (UART1_WP7816B_T1)	8	R/W	14h	45.4.36/ 1186
4006_B03E	UART 7816 Wait and Guard Parameter Register (UART1_WGP7816_T1)	8	R/W	06h	45.4.37/ 1187
4006_B03F	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register C (UART1_WP7816C_T1)	8	R/W	0Bh	45.4.38/ 1187
4006_C000	UART Baud Rate Registers: High (UART2_BDH)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.1/1152
4006_C001	UART Baud Rate Registers: Low (UART2_BDL)	8	R/W	04h	45.4.2/1153

Table continues on the next page...

UART memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4006_C002	UART Control Register 1 (UART2_C1)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.3/1154
4006_C003	UART Control Register 2 (UART2_C2)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.4/1155
4006_C004	UART Status Register 1 (UART2_S1)	8	R	C0h	45.4.5/1157
4006_C005	UART Status Register 2 (UART2_S2)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.6/1160
4006_C006	UART Control Register 3 (UART2_C3)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.7/1162
4006_C007	UART Data Register (UART2_D)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.8/1163
4006_C008	UART Match Address Registers 1 (UART2_MA1)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.9/1165
4006_C009	UART Match Address Registers 2 (UART2_MA2)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.10/ 1165
4006_C00A	UART Control Register 4 (UART2_C4)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.11/ 1165
4006_C00B	UART Control Register 5 (UART2_C5)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.12/ 1166
4006_C00C	UART Extended Data Register (UART2_ED)	8	R	00h	45.4.13/ 1167
4006_C00D	UART Modem Register (UART2_MODEM)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.14/ 1168
4006_C00E	UART Infrared Register (UART2_IR)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.15/ 1169
4006_C010	UART FIFO Parameters (UART2_PFIFO)	8	R/W	See section	45.4.16/ 1170
4006_C011	UART FIFO Control Register (UART2_CFIFO)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.17/ 1172
4006_C012	UART FIFO Status Register (UART2_SFIFO)	8	R/W	C0h	45.4.18/ 1173
4006_C013	UART FIFO Transmit Watermark (UART2_TWFIFO)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.19/ 1174
4006_C014	UART FIFO Transmit Count (UART2_TCFIFO)	8	R	00h	45.4.20/ 1175
4006_C015	UART FIFO Receive Watermark (UART2_RWFIFO)	8	R/W	01h	45.4.21/ 1175
4006_C016	UART FIFO Receive Count (UART2_RCFIFO)	8	R	00h	45.4.22/ 1176
4006_C018	UART 7816 Control Register (UART2_C7816)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.23/ 1176
4006_C019	UART 7816 Interrupt Enable Register (UART2_IE7816)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.24/ 1178
4006_C01A	UART 7816 Interrupt Status Register (UART2_IS7816)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.25/ 1179
4006_C01B	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register (UART2_WP7816)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.26/ 1181
4006_C01C	UART 7816 Wait N Register (UART2_WN7816)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.27/ 1181

Table continues on the next page...

UART memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4006_C01D	UART 7816 Wait FD Register (UART2_WF7816)	8	R/W	01h	45.4.28/ 1182
4006_C01E	UART 7816 Error Threshold Register (UART2_ET7816)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.29/ 1182
4006_C01F	UART 7816 Transmit Length Register (UART2_TL7816)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.30/ 1183
4006_C03A	UART 7816 ATR Duration Timer Register A (UART2_AP7816A_T0)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.31/ 1183
4006_C03B	UART 7816 ATR Duration Timer Register B (UART2_AP7816B_T0)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.32/ 1184
4006_C03C	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register A (UART2_WP7816A_T0)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.33/ 1185
4006_C03C	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register A (UART2_WP7816A_T1)	8	R/W	00h	45.4.34/ 1185
4006_C03D	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register B (UART2_WP7816B_T0)	8	R/W	14h	45.4.35/ 1186
4006_C03D	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register B (UART2_WP7816B_T1)	8	R/W	14h	45.4.36/ 1186
4006_C03E	UART 7816 Wait and Guard Parameter Register (UART2_WGP7816_T1)	8	R/W	06h	45.4.37/ 1187
4006_C03F	UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register C (UART2_WP7816C_T1)	8	R/W	0Bh	45.4.38/ 1187

45.4.1 UART Baud Rate Registers: High (UARTx_BDH)

This register, along with the BDL register, controls the prescale divisor for UART baud rate generation. To update the 13-bit baud rate setting (SBR[12:0]), first write to BDH to buffer the high half of the new value and then write to BDL. The working value in BDH does not change until BDL is written.

BDL is reset to a nonzero value, but after reset, the baud rate generator remains disabled until the first time the receiver or transmitter is enabled, that is, when C2[RE] or C2[TE] is set.

Address: Base address + 0h offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	LBKDIE	RXEDGIE	SBNS	SBR				
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_BDH field descriptions

Field	Description
7 LBKDIE	LIN Break Detect Interrupt or DMA Request Enable Enables the LIN break detect flag, LBKDIF, to generate interrupt requests based on the state of LBKDDMAS. or DMA transfer requests, 0 LBKDIF interrupt and DMA transfer requests disabled. 1 LBKDIF interrupt or DMA transfer requests enabled.
6 RXEDGIE	RxD Input Active Edge Interrupt Enable Enables the receive input active edge, RXEDGIF, to generate interrupt requests. 0 Hardware interrupts from RXEDGIF disabled using polling. 1 RXEDGIF interrupt request enabled.
5 SBNS	Stop Bit Number Select SBNS selects the number of stop bits present in a data frame. This field valid for all 8, 9 and 10 bit data formats available. This field is not valid when C7816[ISO7816E] is enabled. 0 Data frame consists of a single stop bit. 1 Data frame consists of two stop bits.
SBR	UART Baud Rate Bits The baud rate for the UART is determined by the 13 SBR fields. See Baud rate generation for details. **NOTE:** • The baud rate generator is disabled until C2[TE] or C2[RE] is set for the first time after reset.The baud rate generator is disabled when SBR = 0. • Writing to BDH has no effect without writing to BDL, because writing to BDH puts the data in a temporary location until BDL is written.

45.4.2 UART Baud Rate Registers: Low (UARTx_BDL)

This register, along with the BDH register, controls the prescale divisor for UART baud rate generation. To update the 13-bit baud rate setting, SBR[12:0], first write to BDH to buffer the high half of the new value and then write to BDL. The working value in BDH does not change until BDL is written. BDL is reset to a nonzero value, but after reset, the baud rate generator remains disabled until the first time the receiver or transmitter is enabled, that is, when C2[RE] or C2[TE] is set.

Address: Base address + 1h offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	SBR							
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0

UARTx_BDL field descriptions

Field	Description
SBR	UART Baud Rate Bits

UARTx_BDL field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	The baud rate for the UART is determined by the 13 SBR fields. See Baud rate generation for details. **NOTE:** • The baud rate generator is disabled until C2[TE] or C2[RE] is set for the first time after reset.The baud rate generator is disabled when SBR = 0. • Writing to BDH has no effect without writing to BDL, because writing to BDH puts the data in a temporary location until BDL is written. • When the 1/32 narrow pulse width is selected for infrared (IrDA), the baud rate fields must be even, the least significant bit is 0. See MODEM register for more details.

45.4.3 UART Control Register 1 (UARTx_C1)

This read/write register controls various optional features of the UART system.

Address: Base address + 2h offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	LOOPS	UARTSWAI	RSRC	M	WAKE	ILT	PE	PT
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_C1 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 LOOPS	Loop Mode Select When LOOPS is set, the RxD pin is disconnected from the UART and the transmitter output is internally connected to the receiver input. The transmitter and the receiver must be enabled to use the loop function. 0 Normal operation. 1 Loop mode where transmitter output is internally connected to receiver input. The receiver input is determined by RSRC.
6 UARTSWAI	UART Stops in Wait Mode 0 UART clock continues to run in Wait mode. 1 UART clock freezes while CPU is in Wait mode.
5 RSRC	Receiver Source Select This field has no meaning or effect unless the LOOPS field is set. When LOOPS is set, the RSRC field determines the source for the receiver shift register input. 0 Selects internal loop back mode. The receiver input is internally connected to transmitter output. 1 Single wire UART mode where the receiver input is connected to the transmit pin input signal.
4 M	9-bit or 8-bit Mode Select This field must be set when C7816[ISO_7816E] is set/enabled. 0 Normal—start + 8 data bits (MSB/LSB first as determined by MSBF) + stop. 1 Use—start + 9 data bits (MSB/LSB first as determined by MSBF) + stop.
3 WAKE	Receiver Wakeup Method Select

Table continues on the next page...

UARTx_C1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	Determines which condition wakes the UART: • Address mark in the most significant bit position of a received data character, or • An idle condition on the receive pin input signal. 0 Idle line wakeup. 1 Address mark wakeup.
2 ILT	Idle Line Type Select Determines when the receiver starts counting logic 1s as idle character bits. The count begins either after a valid start bit or after the stop bit. If the count begins after the start bit, then a string of logic 1s preceding the stop bit can cause false recognition of an idle character. Beginning the count after the stop bit avoids false idle character recognition, but requires properly synchronized transmissions. **NOTE:** • In case the UART is programmed with ILT = 1, a logic of 1'b0 is automatically shifted after a received stop bit, therefore resetting the idle count. • In case the UART is programmed for IDLE line wakeup (RWU = 1 and WAKE = 0), ILT has no effect on when the receiver starts counting logic 1s as idle character bits. In idle line wakeup, an idle character is recognized at anytime the receiver sees 10, 11, or 12 1s depending on the M, PE, and C4[M10] fields. 0 Idle character bit count starts after start bit. 1 Idle character bit count starts after stop bit.
1 PE	Parity Enable Enables the parity function. When parity is enabled, parity function inserts a parity bit in the bit position immediately preceding the stop bit. This field must be set when C7816[ISO_7816E] is set/enabled. 0 Parity function disabled. 1 Parity function enabled.
0 PT	Parity Type Determines whether the UART generates and checks for even parity or odd parity. With even parity, an even number of 1s clears the parity bit and an odd number of 1s sets the parity bit. With odd parity, an odd number of 1s clears the parity bit and an even number of 1s sets the parity bit. This field must be cleared when C7816[ISO_7816E] is set/enabled. 0 Even parity. 1 Odd parity.

45.4.4 UART Control Register 2 (UARTx_C2)

This register can be read or written at any time.

Address: Base address + 3h offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	TIE	TCIE	RIE	ILIE	TE	RE	RWU	SBK
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_C2 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 TIE	Transmitter Interrupt or DMA Transfer Enable. Enables S1[TDRE] to generate interrupt requests or DMA transfer requests, based on the state of C5[TDMAS]. **NOTE:** If C2[TIE] and C5[TDMAS] are both set, then TCIE must be cleared, and D[D] must not be written unless servicing a DMA request. 0 TDRE interrupt and DMA transfer requests disabled. 1 TDRE interrupt or DMA transfer requests enabled.
6 TCIE	Transmission Complete Interrupt Enable Enables the transmission complete flag, S1[TC], to generate interrupt requests . 0 TC interrupt requests disabled. 1 TC interrupt requests enabled.
5 RIE	Receiver Full Interrupt or DMA Transfer Enable Enables S1[RDRF] to generate interrupt requests or DMA transfer requests, based on the state of C5[RDMAS]. 0 RDRF interrupt and DMA transfer requests disabled. 1 RDRF interrupt or DMA transfer requests enabled.
4 ILIE	Idle Line Interrupt Enable Enables the idle line flag, S1[IDLE], to generate interrupt requests 0 IDLE interrupt requests disabled. 1 IDLE interrupt requests enabled.
3 TE	Transmitter Enable Enables the UART transmitter. TE can be used to queue an idle preamble by clearing and then setting TE. When C7816[ISO_7816E] is set/enabled and C7816[TTYPE] = 1, this field is automatically cleared after the requested block has been transmitted. This condition is detected when TL7816[TLEN] = 0 and four additional characters are transmitted. 0 Transmitter off. 1 Transmitter on.
2 RE	Receiver Enable Enables the UART receiver. 0 Receiver off. 1 Receiver on.
1 RWU	Receiver Wakeup Control This field can be set to place the UART receiver in a standby state. RWU automatically clears when an RWU event occurs, that is, an IDLE event when C1[WAKE] is clear or an address match when C1[WAKE] is set. This field must be cleared when C7816[ISO_7816E] is set. **NOTE:** RWU must be set only with C1[WAKE] = 0 (wakeup on idle) if the channel is currently not idle. This can be determined by S2[RAF]. If the flag is set to wake up an IDLE event and the channel

Table continues on the next page...

UARTx_C2 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	is already idle, it is possible that the UART will discard data. This is because the data must be received or a LIN break detected after an IDLE is detected before IDLE is allowed to reasserted. 0 Normal operation. 1 RWU enables the wakeup function and inhibits further receiver interrupt requests. Normally, hardware wakes the receiver by automatically clearing RWU.
0 SBK	Send Break Toggling SBK sends one break character from the following: See Transmitting break characters for the number of logic 0s for the different configurations. Toggling implies clearing the SBK field before the break character has finished transmitting. As long as SBK is set, the transmitter continues to send complete break characters (10, 11, or 12 bits, or 13 or 14 bits). Ensure that C2[TE] is asserted atleast 1 clock before assertion of this bit. • 10, 11, or 12 logic 0s if S2[BRK13] is cleared • 13 or 14 logic 0s if S2[BRK13] is set. This field must be cleared when C7816[ISO_7816E] is set. 0 Normal transmitter operation. 1 Queue break characters to be sent.

45.4.5 UART Status Register 1 (UARTx_S1)

The S1 register provides inputs to the MCU for generation of UART interrupts or DMA requests. This register can also be polled by the MCU to check the status of its fields. To clear a flag, the status register should be read followed by a read or write to D register, depending on the interrupt flag type. Other instructions can be executed between the two steps as long the handling of I/O is not compromised, but the order of operations is important for flag clearing. When a flag is configured to trigger a DMA request, assertion of the associated DMA done signal from the DMA controller clears the flag.

NOTE

- If the condition that results in the assertion of the flag, interrupt, or DMA request is not resolved prior to clearing the flag, the flag, and interrupt/DMA request, reasserts. For example, if the DMA or interrupt service routine fails to write sufficient data to the transmit buffer to raise it above the watermark level, the flag reasserts and generates another interrupt or DMA request.
- Reading an empty data register to clear one of the flags of the S1 register causes the FIFO pointers to become misaligned. A receive FIFO flush reinitializes the pointers. A better way to prevent this situation is to always leave one

byte in FIFO and this byte will be read eventually in clearing the flag bit.

Address: Base address + 4h offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	TDRE	TC	RDRF	IDLE	OR	NF	FE	PF
Write								
Reset	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_S1 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 TDRE	Transmit Data Register Empty Flag TDRE will set when the number of datawords in the transmit buffer (D and C3[T8])is equal to or less than the number indicated by TWFIFO[TXWATER]. A character that is in the process of being transmitted is not included in the count. To clear TDRE, read S1 when TDRE is set and then write to the UART data register (D). For more efficient interrupt servicing, all data except the final value to be written to the buffer must be written to D/C3[T8]. Then S1 can be read before writing the final data value, resulting in the clearing of the TRDE flag. This is more efficient because the TDRE reasserts until the watermark has been exceeded. So, attempting to clear the TDRE with every write will be ineffective until sufficient data has been written. 0 The amount of data in the transmit buffer is greater than the value indicated by TWFIFO[TXWATER]. 1 The amount of data in the transmit buffer is less than or equal to the value indicated by TWFIFO[TXWATER] at some point in time since the flag has been cleared.
6 TC	Transmit Complete Flag TC is set when the transmit buffer is empty and no data, preamble, or break character is being transmitted. When TC is set, the transmit data output signal becomes idle (logic 1). TC is cleared by reading S1 with TC set and then doing one of the following: When C7816[ISO_7816E] is set/enabled, this field is set after any NACK signal has been received, but prior to any corresponding guard times expiring. • Writing to D to transmit new data. • Queuing a preamble by clearing and then setting C2[TE]. • Queuing a break character by writing 1 to SBK in C2. 0 Transmitter active (sending data, a preamble, or a break). 1 Transmitter idle (transmission activity complete).
5 RDRF	Receive Data Register Full Flag RDRF is set when the number of datawords in the receive buffer is equal to or more than the number indicated by RWFIFO[RXWATER]. A dataword that is in the process of being received is not included in the count. To clear RDRF, read S1 when RDRF is set and then read D. For more efficient interrupt and DMA operation, read all data except the final value from the buffer, using D/C3[T8]/ED. Then read S1 and the final data value, resulting in the clearing of the RDRF flag. Even if RDRF is set, data will continue to be received until an overrun condition occurs.RDRF is prevented from setting while S2[LBKDE] is set. Additionally, when S2[LBKDE] is set, the received datawords are stored in the receive buffer but over-write each other. 0 The number of datawords in the receive buffer is less than the number indicated by RXWATER. 1 The number of datawords in the receive buffer is equal to or greater than the number indicated by RXWATER at some point in time since this flag was last cleared.
4 IDLE	Idle Line Flag

Table continues on the next page...

UARTx_S1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	After the IDLE flag is cleared, a frame must be received (although not necessarily stored in the data buffer, for example if C2[RWU] is set), or a LIN break character must set the S2[LBKDIF] flag before an idle condition can set the IDLE flag. To clear IDLE, read UART status S1 with IDLE set and then read D. IDLE is set when either of the following appear on the receiver input: • 10 consecutive logic 1s if C1[M] = 0 • 11 consecutive logic 1s if C1[M] = 1 and C4[M10] = 0 • 12 consecutive logic 1s if C1[M] = 1, C4[M10] = 1, and C1[PE] = 1 Idle detection is not supported when7816Eis set/enabled and hence this flag is ignored. **NOTE:** When RWU is set and WAKE is cleared, an idle line condition sets the IDLE flag if RWUID is set, else the IDLE flag does not become set. 0 Receiver input is either active now or has never become active since the IDLE flag was last cleared. 1 Receiver input has become idle or the flag has not been cleared since it last asserted.
3 OR	Receiver Overrun Flag OR is set when software fails to prevent the receive data register from overflowing with data. The OR bit is set immediately after the stop bit has been completely received for the dataword that overflows the buffer and all the other error flags (FE, NF, and PF) are prevented from setting. The data in the shift register is lost, but the data already in the UART data registers is not affected. If the OR flag is set, no data is stored in the data buffer even if sufficient room exists. Additionally, while the OR flag is set, the RDRF and IDLE flags are blocked from asserting, that is, transition from an inactive to an active state. To clear OR, read S1 when OR is set and then read D. See functional description for more details regarding the operation of the OR bit.If LBKDE is enabled and a LIN Break is detected, the OR field asserts if S2[LBKDIF] is not cleared before the next data character is received. In 7816 mode, it is possible to configure a NACK to be returned by programing C7816[ONACK]. 0 No overrun has occurred since the last time the flag was cleared. 1 Overrun has occurred or the overrun flag has not been cleared since the last overrun occured.
2 NF	Noise Flag NF is set when the UART detects noise on the receiver input. NF does not become set in the case of an overrun or while the LIN break detect feature is enabled (S2[LBKDE] = 1). When NF is set, it indicates only that a dataword has been received with noise since the last time it was cleared. There is no guarantee that the first dataword read from the receive buffer has noise or that there is only one dataword in the buffer that was received with noise unless the receive buffer has a depth of one. To clear NF, read S1 and then read D. 0 No noise detected since the last time this flag was cleared. If the receive buffer has a depth greater than 1 then there may be data in the receiver buffer that was received with noise. 1 At least one dataword was received with noise detected since the last time the flag was cleared.
1 FE	Framing Error Flag FE is set when a logic 0 is accepted as the stop bit. When BDH[SBNS] is set, then FE will set when a logic 0 is accepted for either of the two stop bits. FE does not set in the case of an overrun or while the LIN break detect feature is enabled (S2[LBKDE] = 1). FE inhibits further data reception until it is cleared. To clear FE, read S1 with FE set and then read D. The last data in the receive buffer represents the data that was received with the frame error enabled. Framing errors are not supported when 7816E is set/enabled. However, if this flag is set, data is still not received in 7816 mode. 0 No framing error detected. 1 Framing error.

Table continues on the next page...

UARTx_S1 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
0 PF	Parity Error Flag PF is set when PE is set and the parity of the received data does not match its parity bit. The PF is not set in the case of an overrun condition. When PF is set, it indicates only that a dataword was received with parity error since the last time it was cleared. There is no guarantee that the first dataword read from the receive buffer has a parity error or that there is only one dataword in the buffer that was received with a parity error, unless the receive buffer has a depth of one. To clear PF, read S1 and then read D., S2[LBKDE] is disabled,Within the receive buffer structure the received dataword is tagged if it is received with a parity error. This information is available by reading the ED register prior to reading the D register. 0 No parity error detected since the last time this flag was cleared. If the receive buffer has a depth greater than 1, then there may be data in the receive buffer what was received with a parity error. 1 At least one dataword was received with a parity error since the last time this flag was cleared.

45.4.6 UART Status Register 2 (UARTx_S2)

The S2 register provides inputs to the MCU for generation of UART interrupts or DMA requests. Also, this register can be polled by the MCU to check the status of these bits. This register can be read or written at any time, with the exception of the MSBF and RXINV bits, which should be changed by the user only between transmit and receive packets.

Address: Base address + 5h offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	LBKDIF	RXEDGIF	MSBF	RXINV	RWUID	BRK13	LBKDE	RAF
Write	w1c	w1c						
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_S2 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 LBKDIF	LIN Break Detect Interrupt Flag LBKDIF is set when LBKDE is set and a LIN break character is detected on the receiver input. The LIN break characters are 11 consecutive logic 0s if C1[M] = 0 or 12 consecutive logic 0s if C1[M] = 1. LBKDIF is set after receiving the last LIN break character. LBKDIF is cleared by writing a 1 to it. 0 No LIN break character detected. 1 LIN break character detected.
6 RXEDGIF	RxD Pin Active Edge Interrupt Flag RXEDGIF is set when an active edge occurs on the RxD pin. The active edge is falling if RXINV = 0, and rising if RXINV=1. RXEDGIF is cleared by writing a 1 to it. See for additional details. RXEDGIF description **NOTE:** The active edge is detected only in two wire mode and on receiving data coming from the RxD pin.

Table continues on the next page...

UARTx_S2 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 No active edge on the receive pin has occurred. 1 An active edge on the receive pin has occurred.
5 MSBF	Most Significant Bit First Setting this field reverses the order of the bits that are transmitted and received on the wire. This field does not affect the polarity of the bits, the location of the parity bit, or the location of the start or stop bits. This field is automatically set when C7816[INIT] and C7816[ISO7816E] are enabled and an initial character is detected in T = 0 protocol mode. 0 LSB (bit0) is the first bit that is transmitted following the start bit. Further, the first bit received after the start bit is identified as bit0. 1 MSB (bit8, bit7 or bit6) is the first bit that is transmitted following the start bit, depending on the setting of C1[M] and C1[PE]. Further, the first bit received after the start bit is identified as bit8, bit7, or bit6, depending on the setting of C1[M] and C1[PE].
4 RXINV	Receive Data Inversion Setting this field reverses the polarity of the received data input. In NRZ format, a one is represented by a mark and a zero is represented by a space for normal polarity, and the opposite for inverted polarity. In IrDA format, a zero is represented by short high pulse in the middle of a bit time remaining idle low for a one for normal polarity. A zero is represented by a short low pulse in the middle of a bit time remaining idle high for a one for inverted polarity.This field is automatically set when C7816[INIT] and C7816[ISO7816E] are enabled and an initial character is detected in T = 0 protocol mode. **NOTE:** Setting RXINV inverts the RxD input for data bits, start and stop bits, break, and idle. When C7816[ISO7816E] is set/enabled, only the data bits and the parity bit are inverted. 0 Receive data is not inverted. 1 Receive data is inverted.
3 RWUID	Receive Wakeup Idle Detect When RWU is set and WAKE is cleared, this field controls whether the idle character that wakes the receiver sets S1[IDLE]. This field must be cleared when C7816[ISO7816E] is set/enabled. 0 S1[IDLE] is not set upon detection of an idle character. 1 S1[IDLE] is set upon detection of an idle character.
2 BRK13	Break Transmit Character Length Determines whether the transmit break character is 10, 11, or 12 bits long, or 13 or 14 bits long. See for the length of the break character for the different configurations. The detection of a framing error is not affected by this field. Transmitting break characters 0 Break character is 10, 11, or 12 bits long. 1 Break character is 13 or 14 bits long.
1 LBKDE	LIN Break Detection Enable Enables the LIN Break detection feature. While LBKDE is set, S1[RDRF], S1[NF], S1[FE], and S1[PF] are prevented from setting. When LBKDE is set, see . Overrun operationLBKDE must be cleared when C7816[ISO7816E] is set. 0 Break character detection is disabled. 1 Break character is detected at length of 11 bit times if C1[M] = 0 or 12 bits time if C1[M] = 1.
0 RAF	Receiver Active Flag

Table continues on the next page...

UARTx_S2 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	RAF is set when the UART receiver detects a logic 0 during the RT1 time period of the start bit search. RAF is cleared when the receiver detects an idle character when C7816[ISO7816E] is cleared/disabled. When C7816[ISO7816E] is enabled, the RAF is cleared if the C7816[TTYPE] = 0 expires or the C7816[TTYPE] = 1 expires. **NOTE:** In case C7816[ISO7816E] is set and C7816[TTYPE] = 0, it is possible to configure the guard time to 12. However, if a NACK is required to be transmitted, the data transfer actually takes 13 ETU with the 13th ETU slot being a inactive buffer. Therefore, in this situation, the RAF may deassert one ETU prior to actually being inactive. 0 UART receiver idle/inactive waiting for a start bit. 1 UART receiver active, RxD input not idle.

45.4.7 UART Control Register 3 (UARTx_C3)

Writing R8 does not have any effect. TXDIR and TXINV can be changed only between transmit and receive packets.

Address: Base address + 6h offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	R8	T8	TXDIR	TXINV	ORIE	NEIE	FEIE	PEIE
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_C3 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 R8	Received Bit 8 R8 is the ninth data bit received when the UART is configured for 9-bit data format, that is, if C1[M] = 1 or C4[M10] = 1. The R8 value corresponds to the current data value in the UARTx_D register. To read the 9th bit, read the value of UARTx_C3[R8], then read the UARTx_D register.
6 T8	Transmit Bit 8 T8 is the ninth data bit transmitted when the UART is configured for 9-bit data format, that is, if C1[M] = 1 or C4[M10] = 1. **NOTE:** If the value of T8 is the same as in the previous transmission, T8 does not have to be rewritten. The same value is transmitted until T8 is rewritten. To correctly transmit the 9th bit, write UARTx_C3[T8] to the desired value, then write the UARTx_D register with the remaining data.
5 TXDIR	Transmitter Pin Data Direction in Single-Wire mode Determines whether the TXD pin is used as an input or output in the single-wire mode of operation. This field is relevant only to the single wire mode. When C7816[ISO7816E] is set/enabled and C7816[TTYPE] = 1, this field is automatically cleared after the requested block is transmitted. This condition is detected when TL7816[TLEN] = 0 and 4 additional characters are transmitted. Additionally, if C7816[ISO7816E] is set/enabled and C7816[TTYPE] = 0 and a NACK is being transmitted, the hardware automatically

Table continues on the next page...

UARTx_C3 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	overrides this field as needed. In this situation, TXDIR does not reflect the temporary state associated with the NACK. 0 TXD pin is an input in single wire mode. 1 TXD pin is an output in single wire mode.
4 TXINV	Transmit Data Inversion. Setting this field reverses the polarity of the transmitted data output. In NRZ format, a one is represented by a mark and a zero is represented by a space for normal polarity, and the opposite for inverted polarity. In IrDA format, a zero is represented by short high pulse in the middle of a bit time remaining idle low for a one for normal polarity, and a zero is represented by short low pulse in the middle of a bit time remaining idle high for a one for inverted polarity.This field is automatically set when C7816[INIT] and C7816[ISO7816E] are enabled and an initial character is detected in T = 0 protocol mode. **NOTE:** Setting TXINV inverts all transmitted values, including idle, break, start, and stop bits. In loop mode, if TXINV is set, the receiver gets the transmit inversion bit when RXINV is disabled. When C7816[ISO7816E] is set/enabled then only the transmitted data bits and parity bit are inverted. 0 Transmit data is not inverted. 1 Transmit data is inverted.
3 ORIE	Overrun Error Interrupt Enable Enables the overrun error flag, S1[OR], to generate interrupt requests. 0 OR interrupts are disabled. 1 OR interrupt requests are enabled.
2 NEIE	Noise Error Interrupt Enable Enables the noise flag, S1[NF], to generate interrupt requests. 0 NF interrupt requests are disabled. 1 NF interrupt requests are enabled.
1 FEIE	Framing Error Interrupt Enable Enables the framing error flag, S1[FE], to generate interrupt requests. 0 FE interrupt requests are disabled. 1 FE interrupt requests are enabled.
0 PEIE	Parity Error Interrupt Enable Enables the parity error flag, S1[PF], to generate interrupt requests. 0 PF interrupt requests are disabled. 1 PF interrupt requests are enabled.

45.4.8 UART Data Register (UARTx_D)

This register is actually two separate registers. Reads return the contents of the read-only receive data register and writes go to the write-only transmit data register.

NOTE

- In 8-bit or 9-bit data format, only UART data register (D) needs to be accessed to clear the S1[RDRF] bit (assuming receiver buffer level is less than RWFIFO[RXWATER]). The C3 register needs to be read, prior to the D register, only if the ninth bit of data needs to be captured. Similarly, the ED register needs to be read, prior to the D register, only if the additional flag data for the dataword needs to be captured.
- In the normal 8-bit mode (M bit cleared) if the parity is enabled, you get seven data bits and one parity bit. That one parity bit is loaded into the D register. So, for the data bits, mask off the parity bit from the value you read out of this register.
- When transmitting in 9-bit data format and using 8-bit write instructions, write first to transmit bit 8 in UART control register 3 (C3[T8]), then D. A write to C3[T8] stores the data in a temporary register. If D register is written first, and then the new data on data bus is stored in D, the temporary value written by the last write to C3[T8] gets stored in the C3[T8] register.

Address: Base address + 7h offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	RT							
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_D field descriptions

Field	Description
RT	Reads return the contents of the read-only receive data register and writes go to the write-only transmit data register.

45.4.9 UART Match Address Registers 1 (UARTx_MA1)

The MA1 and MA2 registers are compared to input data addresses when the most significant bit is set and the associated C4[MAEN] field is set. If a match occurs, the following data is transferred to the data register. If a match fails, the following data is discarded. These registers can be read and written at anytime.

Address: Base address + 8h offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	MA							
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_MA1 field descriptions

Field	Description
MA	Match Address

45.4.10 UART Match Address Registers 2 (UARTx_MA2)

These registers can be read and written at anytime. The MA1 and MA2 registers are compared to input data addresses when the most significant bit is set and the associated C4[MAEN] field is set. If a match occurs, the following data is transferred to the data register. If a match fails, the following data is discarded.

Address: Base address + 9h offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	MA							
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_MA2 field descriptions

Field	Description
MA	Match Address

45.4.11 UART Control Register 4 (UARTx_C4)

Address: Base address + Ah offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	MAEN1	MAEN2	M10	BRFA				
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_C4 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 MAEN1	Match Address Mode Enable 1 See Match address operation for more information. 0 All data received is transferred to the data buffer if MAEN2 is cleared. 1 All data received with the most significant bit cleared, is discarded. All data received with the most significant bit set, is compared with contents of MA1 register. If no match occurs, the data is discarded. If match occurs, data is transferred to the data buffer. This field must be cleared when C7816[ISO7816E] is set/enabled.
6 MAEN2	Match Address Mode Enable 2 See Match address operation for more information. 0 All data received is transferred to the data buffer if MAEN1 is cleared. 1 All data received with the most significant bit cleared, is discarded. All data received with the most significant bit set, is compared with contents of MA2 register. If no match occurs, the data is discarded. If a match occurs, data is transferred to the data buffer. This field must be cleared when C7816[ISO7816E] is set/enabled.
5 M10	10-bit Mode select Causes a tenth, non-memory mapped bit to be part of the serial transmission. This tenth bit is generated and interpreted as a parity bit. The M10 field does not affect the LIN send or detect break behavior. If M10 is set, then both C1[M] and C1[PE] must also be set. This field must be cleared when C7816[ISO7816E] is set/enabled. See Data format (non ISO-7816) for more information. 0 The parity bit is the ninth bit in the serial transmission. 1 The parity bit is the tenth bit in the serial transmission.
BRFA	Baud Rate Fine Adjust This bit field is used to add more timing resolution to the average baud frequency, in increments of 1/32. See Baud rate generation for more information.

45.4.12 UART Control Register 5 (UARTx_C5)

Address: Base address + Bh offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	TDMAS	0	RDMAS	0	LBKDDMAS	0		
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_C5 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 TDMAS	Transmitter DMA Select Configures the transmit data register empty flag, S1[TDRE], to generate interrupt or DMA requests if C2[TIE] is set.

Table continues on the next page...

UARTx_C5 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	NOTE: • If C2[TIE] is cleared, TDRE DMA and TDRE interrupt request signals are not asserted when the TDRE flag is set, regardless of the state of TDMAS. • If C2[TIE] and TDMAS are both set, then C2[TCIE] must be cleared, and D must not be written unless a DMA request is being serviced. 0 If C2[TIE] is set and the S1[TDRE] flag is set, the TDRE interrupt request signal is asserted to request interrupt service. 1 If C2[TIE] is set and the S1[TDRE] flag is set, the TDRE DMA request signal is asserted to request a DMA transfer.
6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
5 RDMAS	Receiver Full DMA Select Configures the receiver data register full flag, S1[RDRF], to generate interrupt or DMA requests if C2[RIE] is set. **NOTE:** If C2[RIE] is cleared, and S1[RDRF] is set, the RDRF DMA and RDFR interrupt request signals are not asserted, regardless of the state of RDMAS. 0 If C2[RIE] and S1[RDRF] are set, the RDFR interrupt request signal is asserted to request an interrupt service. 1 If C2[RIE] and S1[RDRF] are set, the RDRF DMA request signal is asserted to request a DMA transfer.
4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
3 LBKDDMAS	LIN Break Detect DMA Select Bit Configures the LIN break detect flag, S2[LBKDIF], to generate interrupt or DMA requests if BDH[LBKDIE] is set. **NOTE:** If BDH[LBKDIE] is cleared, and S2[LBKDIF] is set, the LBKDIF DMA and LBKDIF interrupt signals are not asserted, regardless of the state of LBKDDMAS. 0 If BDH[LBKDIE] and S2[LBKDIF] are set, the LBKDIF interrupt signal is asserted to request an interrupt service. 1 If BDH[LBKDIE] and S2[LBKDIF] are set, the LBKDIF DMA request signal is asserted to request a DMA transfer.
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

45.4.13 UART Extended Data Register (UARTx_ED)

This register contains additional information flags that are stored with a received dataword. This register may be read at any time but contains valid data only if there is a dataword in the receive FIFO.

NOTE

- The data contained in this register represents additional information regarding the conditions on which a dataword was received. The importance of this data varies with the

application, and in some cases maybe completely optional. These fields automatically update to reflect the conditions of the next dataword whenever D is read.

- If S1[NF] and S1[PF] have not been set since the last time the receive buffer was empty, the NOISY and PARITYE fields will be zero.

Address: Base address + Ch offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	NOISY	PARITYE	0					
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_ED field descriptions

Field	Description
7 NOISY	The current received dataword contained in D and C3[R8] was received with noise. 0 The dataword was received without noise. 1 The data was received with noise.
6 PARITYE	The current received dataword contained in D and C3[R8] was received with a parity error. 0 The dataword was received without a parity error. 1 The dataword was received with a parity error.
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

45.4.14 UART Modem Register (UARTx_MODEM)

The MODEM register controls options for setting the modem configuration.

NOTE

RXRTSE, TXRTSPOL, TXRTSE, and TXCTSE must all be cleared when C7816[ISO7816EN] is enabled. This will cause the RTS to deassert during ISO-7816 wait times. The ISO-7816 protocol does not use the RTS and CTS signals.

Address: Base address + Dh offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0				RXRTSE	TXRTSPOL	TXRTSE	TXCTSE
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_MODEM field descriptions

Field	Description
7–4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
3 RXRTSE	Receiver request-to-send enable Allows the RTS output to control the CTS input of the transmitting device to prevent receiver overrun. **NOTE:** Do not set both RXRTSE and TXRTSE. 0 The receiver has no effect on RTS. 1 RTS is deasserted if the number of characters in the receiver data register (FIFO) is equal to or greater than RWFIFO[RXWATER]. RTS is asserted when the number of characters in the receiver data register (FIFO) is less than RWFIFO[RXWATER]. See Hardware flow control
2 TXRTSPOL	Transmitter request-to-send polarity Controls the polarity of the transmitter RTS. TXRTSPOL does not affect the polarity of the receiver RTS. RTS will remain negated in the active low state unless TXRTSE is set. 0 Transmitter RTS is active low. 1 Transmitter RTS is active high.
1 TXRTSE	Transmitter request-to-send enable Controls RTS before and after a transmission. 0 The transmitter has no effect on RTS. 1 When a character is placed into an empty transmitter data buffer , RTS asserts one bit time before the start bit is transmitted. RTS deasserts one bit time after all characters in the transmitter data buffer and shift register are completely sent, including the last stop bit. (FIFO) **NOTE:** Ensure that C2[TE] is asserted before assertion of this bit.
0 TXCTSE	Transmitter clear-to-send enable TXCTSE controls the operation of the transmitter. TXCTSE can be set independently from the state of TXRTSE and RXRTSE. 0 CTS has no effect on the transmitter. 1 Enables clear-to-send operation. The transmitter checks the state of CTS each time it is ready to send a character. If CTS is asserted, the character is sent. If CTS is deasserted, the signal TXD remains in the mark state and transmission is delayed until CTS is asserted. Changes in CTS as a character is being sent do not affect its transmission.

45.4.15 UART Infrared Register (UARTx_IR)

The IR register controls options for setting the infrared configuration.

Address: Base address + Eh offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0					IREN	TNP	
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_IR field descriptions

Field	Description
7–3 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
2 IREN	Infrared enable Enables/disables the infrared modulation/demodulation. 0 IR disabled. 1 IR enabled.
TNP	Transmitter narrow pulse Enables whether the UART transmits a 1/16, 3/16, 1/32, or 1/4 narrow pulse. 00 3/16. 01 1/16. 10 1/32. 11 1/4.

45.4.16 UART FIFO Parameters (UARTx_PFIFO)

This register provides the ability for the programmer to turn on and off FIFO functionality. It also provides the size of the FIFO that has been implemented. This register may be read at any time. This register must be written only when C2[RE] and C2[TE] are cleared/not set and when the data buffer/FIFO is empty.

Address: Base address + 10h offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	TXFE	TXFIFOSIZE			RXFE	RXFIFOSIZE		
Write								
Reset	0	*	*	*	0	*	*	*

* Notes:
- TXFIFOSIZE field: The reset value depends on whether the specific UART instance supports the FIFO and on the size of that FIFO. See the Chip Configuration details for more information on the FIFO size supported for each UART instance.
- RXFIFOSIZE field: The reset value depends on whether the specific UART instance supports the FIFO and on the size of that FIFO. See the Chip Configuration details for more information on the FIFO size supported for each UART instance.

UARTx_PFIFO field descriptions

Field	Description
7 TXFE	Transmit FIFO Enable When this field is set, the built in FIFO structure for the transmit buffer is enabled. The size of the FIFO structure is indicated by TXFIFOSIZE. If this field is not set, the transmit buffer operates as a FIFO of depth one dataword regardless of the value in TXFIFOSIZE. Both C2[TE] and C2[RE] must be cleared

Table continues on the next page...

UARTx_PFIFO field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	prior to changing this field. Additionally, TXFLUSH and RXFLUSH commands must be issued immediately after changing this field. 0 Transmit FIFO is not enabled. Buffer is depth 1. (Legacy support). 1 Transmit FIFO is enabled. Buffer is depth indicated by TXFIFOSIZE.
6–4 TXFIFOSIZE	Transmit FIFO. Buffer Depth The maximum number of transmit datawords that can be stored in the transmit buffer. This field is read only. 000 Transmit FIFO/Buffer depth = 1 dataword. 001 Transmit FIFO/Buffer depth = 4 datawords. 010 Transmit FIFO/Buffer depth = 8 datawords. 011 Transmit FIFO/Buffer depth = 16 datawords. 100 Transmit FIFO/Buffer depth = 32 datawords. 101 Transmit FIFO/Buffer depth = 64 datawords. 110 Transmit FIFO/Buffer depth = 128 datawords. 111 Reserved.
3 RXFE	Receive FIFO Enable When this field is set, the built in FIFO structure for the receive buffer is enabled. The size of the FIFO structure is indicated by the RXFIFOSIZE field. If this field is not set, the receive buffer operates as a FIFO of depth one dataword regardless of the value in RXFIFOSIZE. Both C2[TE] and C2[RE] must be cleared prior to changing this field. Additionally, TXFLUSH and RXFLUSH commands must be issued immediately after changing this field. 0 Receive FIFO is not enabled. Buffer is depth 1. (Legacy support) 1 Receive FIFO is enabled. Buffer is depth indicted by RXFIFOSIZE.
RXFIFOSIZE	Receive FIFO. Buffer Depth The maximum number of receive datawords that can be stored in the receive buffer before an overrun occurs. This field is read only. 000 Receive FIFO/Buffer depth = 1 dataword. 001 Receive FIFO/Buffer depth = 4 datawords. 010 Receive FIFO/Buffer depth = 8 datawords. 011 Receive FIFO/Buffer depth = 16 datawords. 100 Receive FIFO/Buffer depth = 32 datawords. 101 Receive FIFO/Buffer depth = 64 datawords. 110 Receive FIFO/Buffer depth = 128 datawords. 111 Reserved.

45.4.17 UART FIFO Control Register (UARTx_CFIFO)

This register provides the ability to program various control fields for FIFO operation. This register may be read or written at any time. Note that writing to TXFLUSH and RXFLUSH may result in data loss and requires careful action to prevent unintended/ unpredictable behavior. Therefore, it is recommended that TE and RE be cleared prior to flushing the corresponding FIFO.

Address: Base address + 11h offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0	0	0			RXOFE	TXOFE	RXUFE
Write	TXFLUSH	RXFLUSH						
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_CFIFO field descriptions

Field	Description
7 TXFLUSH	Transmit FIFO/Buffer Flush Writing to this field causes all data that is stored in the transmit FIFO/buffer to be flushed. This does not affect data that is in the transmit shift register. 0 No flush operation occurs. 1 All data in the transmit FIFO/Buffer is cleared out.
6 RXFLUSH	Receive FIFO/Buffer Flush Writing to this field causes all data that is stored in the receive FIFO/buffer to be flushed. This does not affect data that is in the receive shift register. 0 No flush operation occurs. 1 All data in the receive FIFO/buffer is cleared out.
5–3 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
2 RXOFE	Receive FIFO Overflow Interrupt Enable When this field is set, the RXOF flag generates an interrupt to the host. 0 RXOF flag does not generate an interrupt to the host. 1 RXOF flag generates an interrupt to the host.
1 TXOFE	Transmit FIFO Overflow Interrupt Enable When this field is set, the TXOF flag generates an interrupt to the host. 0 TXOF flag does not generate an interrupt to the host. 1 TXOF flag generates an interrupt to the host.
0 RXUFE	Receive FIFO Underflow Interrupt Enable When this field is set, the RXUF flag generates an interrupt to the host.

Table continues on the next page...

UARTx_CFIFO field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 RXUF flag does not generate an interrupt to the host. 1 RXUF flag generates an interrupt to the host.

45.4.18 UART FIFO Status Register (UARTx_SFIFO)

This register provides status information regarding the transmit and receiver buffers/ FIFOs, including interrupt information. This register may be written to or read at any time.

Address: Base address + 12h offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	TXEMPT	RXEMPT	0			RXOF	TXOF	RXUF
Write						w1c	w1c	w1c
Reset	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_SFIFO field descriptions

Field	Description
7 TXEMPT	Transmit Buffer/FIFO Empty Asserts when there is no data in the Transmit FIFO/buffer. This field does not take into account data that is in the transmit shift register. 0 Transmit buffer is not empty. 1 Transmit buffer is empty.
6 RXEMPT	Receive Buffer/FIFO Empty Asserts when there is no data in the receive FIFO/Buffer. This field does not take into account data that is in the receive shift register. 0 Receive buffer is not empty. 1 Receive buffer is empty.
5–3 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
2 RXOF	Receiver Buffer Overflow Flag Indicates that more data has been written to the receive buffer than it can hold. This field will assert regardless of the value of CFIFO[RXOFE]. However, an interrupt will be issued to the host only if CFIFO[RXOFE] is set. This flag is cleared by writing a 1. 0 No receive buffer overflow has occurred since the last time the flag was cleared. 1 At least one receive buffer overflow has occurred since the last time the flag was cleared.
1 TXOF	Transmitter Buffer Overflow Flag

Table continues on the next page...

UARTx_SFIFO field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	Indicates that more data has been written to the transmit buffer than it can hold. This field will assert regardless of the value of CFIFO[TXOFE]. However, an interrupt will be issued to the host only if CFIFO[TXOFE] is set. This flag is cleared by writing a 1. 0 No transmit buffer overflow has occurred since the last time the flag was cleared. 1 At least one transmit buffer overflow has occurred since the last time the flag was cleared.
0 RXUF	Receiver Buffer Underflow Flag Indicates that more data has been read from the receive buffer than was present. This field will assert regardless of the value of CFIFO[RXUFE]. However, an interrupt will be issued to the host only if CFIFO[RXUFE] is set. This flag is cleared by writing a 1. 0 No receive buffer underflow has occurred since the last time the flag was cleared. 1 At least one receive buffer underflow has occurred since the last time the flag was cleared.

45.4.19 UART FIFO Transmit Watermark (UARTx_TWFIFO)

This register provides the ability to set a programmable threshold for notification of needing additional transmit data. This register may be read at any time but must be written only when C2[TE] is not set. Changing the value of the watermark will not clear the S1[TDRE] flag.

Address: Base address + 13h offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	TXWATER							
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_TWFIFO field descriptions

Field	Description
TXWATER	Transmit Watermark When the number of datawords in the transmit FIFO/buffer is equal to or less than the value in this register field, an interrupt via S1[TDRE] or a DMA request via C5[TDMAS] is generated as determined by C5[TDMAS] and C2[TIE]. For proper operation, the value in TXWATER must be set to be less than the size of the transmit buffer/FIFO size as indicated by PFIFO[TXFIFOSIZE] and PFIFO[TXFE].

45.4.20 UART FIFO Transmit Count (UARTx_TCFIFO)

This is a read only register that indicates how many datawords are currently in the transmit buffer/FIFO. It may be read at any time.

Address: Base address + 14h offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	TXCOUNT							
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_TCFIFO field descriptions

Field	Description
TXCOUNT	Transmit Counter The value in this register indicates the number of datawords that are in the transmit FIFO/buffer. If a dataword is being transmitted, that is, in the transmit shift register, it is not included in the count. This value may be used in conjunction with PFIFO[TXFIFOSIZE] to calculate how much room is left in the transmit FIFO/buffer.

45.4.21 UART FIFO Receive Watermark (UARTx_RWFIFO)

This register provides the ability to set a programmable threshold for notification of the need to remove data from the receiver FIFO/buffer. This register may be read at any time but must be written only when C2[RE] is not asserted. Changing the value in this register will not clear S1[RDRF].

Address: Base address + 15h offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	RXWATER							
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1

UARTx_RWFIFO field descriptions

Field	Description
RXWATER	Receive Watermark When the number of datawords in the receive FIFO/buffer is equal to or greater than the value in this register field, an interrupt via S1[RDRF] or a DMA request via C5[RDMAS] is generated as determined by C5[RDMAS] and C2[RIE]. For proper operation, the value in RXWATER must be set to be less than the receive FIFO/buffer size as indicated by PFIFO[RXFIFOSIZE] and PFIFO[RXFE] and must be greater than 0.

45.4.22 UART FIFO Receive Count (UARTx_RCFIFO)

This is a read only register that indicates how many datawords are currently in the receive FIFO/buffer. It may be read at any time.

Address: Base address + 16h offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	RXCOUNT							
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_RCFIFO field descriptions

Field	Description
RXCOUNT	Receive Counter The value in this register indicates the number of datawords that are in the receive FIFO/buffer. If a dataword is being received, that is, in the receive shift register, it is not included in the count. This value may be used in conjunction with PFIFO[RXFIFOSIZE] to calculate how much room is left in the receive FIFO/buffer.

45.4.23 UART 7816 Control Register (UARTx_C7816)

The C7816 register is the primary control register for ISO-7816 specific functionality. This register is specific to 7816 functionality and the values in this register have no effect on UART operation and should be ignored if ISO_7816E is not set/enabled. This register may be read at any time but values must be changed only when ISO_7816E is not set.

Address: Base address + 18h offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0			ONACK	ANACK	INIT	TTYPE	ISO_7816E
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_C7816 field descriptions

Field	Description
7–5 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
4 ONACK	Generate NACK on Overflow When this field is set, the receiver automatically generates a NACK response if a receive buffer overrun occurs, as indicated by S1[OR]. In many systems, this results in the transmitter resending the packet that overflowed until the retransmit threshold for that transmitter is reached. A NACK is generated only if TTYPE=0. This field operates independently of ANACK. See . Overrun NACK considerations

Table continues on the next page...

UARTx_C7816 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 The received data does not generate a NACK when the receipt of the data results in an overflow event. 1 If the receiver buffer overflows, a NACK is automatically sent on a received character.
3 ANACK	Generate NACK on Error When this field is set, the receiver automatically generates a NACK response if a parity error occurs or if INIT is set and an invalid initial character is detected. A NACK is generated only if TTYPE = 0. If ANACK is set, the UART attempts to retransmit the data indefinitely. To stop retransmission attempts, clear C2[TE] or ISO_7816E and do not set until S1[TC] sets C2[TE] again. 0 No NACK is automatically generated. 1 A NACK is automatically generated if a parity error is detected or if an invalid initial character is detected.
2 INIT	Detect Initial Character When this field is set, all received characters are searched for a valid initial character. If an invalid initial character is identified, and ANACK is set, a NACK is sent. All received data is discarded and error flags blocked (S1[NF], S1[OR], S1[FE], S1[PF], IS7816[WT], IS7816[CWT], IS7816[BWT], IS7816[ADT], IS7816[GTV]) until a valid initial character is detected. Upon detecting a valid initial character, the configuration values S2[MSBF], C3[TXINV], and S2[RXINV] are automatically updated to reflect the initial character that was received. The actual INIT data value is not stored in the receive buffer. Additionally, upon detection of a valid initial character, IS7816[INITD] is set and an interrupt issued as programmed by IE7816[INITDE]. When a valid initial character is detected, INIT is automatically cleared. This Initial Character Detect feature is supported only in T = 0 protocol mode. 0 Normal operating mode. Receiver does not seek to identify initial character. 1 Receiver searches for initial character.
1 TTYPE	Transfer Type Indicates the transfer protocol being used. See ISO-7816 / smartcard support for more details. 0 T = 0 per the ISO-7816 specification. 1 T = 1 per the ISO-7816 specification.
0 ISO_7816E	ISO-7816 Functionality Enabled Indicates that the UART is operating according to the ISO-7816 protocol. **NOTE:** This field must be modified only when no transmit or receive is occurring. If this field is changed during a data transfer, the data being transmitted or received may be transferred incorrectly. 0 ISO-7816 functionality is turned off/not enabled. 1 ISO-7816 functionality is turned on/enabled.

45.4.24 UART 7816 Interrupt Enable Register (UARTx_IE7816)

The IE7816 register controls which flags result in an interrupt being issued. This register is specific to 7816 functionality, the corresponding flags that drive the interrupts are not asserted when 7816E is not set/enabled. However, these flags may remain set if they are asserted while 7816E was set and not subsequently cleared. This register may be read or written to at any time.

Address: Base address + 19h offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	WTE	CWTE	BWTE	INITDE	ADTE	GTVE	TXTE	RXTE
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_IE7816 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 WTE	Wait Timer Interrupt Enable 0 The assertion of IS7816[WT] does not result in the generation of an interrupt. 1 The assertion of IS7816[WT] results in the generation of an interrupt.
6 CWTE	Character Wait Timer Interrupt Enable 0 The assertion of IS7816[CWT] does not result in the generation of an interrupt. 1 The assertion of IS7816[CWT] results in the generation of an interrupt.
5 BWTE	Block Wait Timer Interrupt Enable 0 The assertion of IS7816[BWT] does not result in the generation of an interrupt. 1 The assertion of IS7816[BWT] results in the generation of an interrupt.
4 INITDE	Initial Character Detected Interrupt Enable 0 The assertion of IS7816[INITD] does not result in the generation of an interrupt. 1 The assertion of IS7816[INITD] results in the generation of an interrupt.
3 ADTE	ATR Duration Timer Interrupt Enable 0 The assertion of IS7816[ADT] does not result in the generation of an interrupt. 1 The assertion of IS7816[ADT] results in the generation of an interrupt.
2 GTVE	Guard Timer Violated Interrupt Enable 0 The assertion of IS7816[GTV] does not result in the generation of an interrupt. 1 The assertion of IS7816[GTV] results in the generation of an interrupt.
1 TXTE	Transmit Threshold Exceeded Interrupt Enable 0 The assertion of IS7816[TXT] does not result in the generation of an interrupt. 1 The assertion of IS7816[TXT] results in the generation of an interrupt.
0 RXTE	Receive Threshold Exceeded Interrupt Enable 0 The assertion of IS7816[RXT] does not result in the generation of an interrupt. 1 The assertion of IS7816[RXT] results in the generation of an interrupt.

45.4.25 UART 7816 Interrupt Status Register (UARTx_IS7816)

The IS7816 register provides a mechanism to read and clear the interrupt flags. All flags/ interrupts are cleared by writing a 1 to the field location. Writing a 0 has no effect. All bits are "sticky", meaning they indicate that only the flag condition that occurred since the last time the bit was cleared, not that the condition currently exists. The status flags are set regardless of whether the corresponding field in the IE7816 is set or cleared. The IE7816 controls only if an interrupt is issued to the host processor. This register is specific to 7816 functionality and the values in this register have no affect on UART operation and should be ignored if 7816E is not set/enabled. This register may be read or written at anytime.

Address: Base address + 1Ah offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	WT	CWT	BWT	INITD	ADT	GTV	TXT	RXT
Write	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_IS7816 field descriptions

Field	Description
7 WT	Wait Timer Interrupt Indicates that the wait time, the time between the leading edge of a character being transmitted and the leading edge of the next response character, has exceeded the programmed value. This flag asserts only when C7816[TTYPE] = 0. This interrupt is cleared by writing 1. 0 Wait time (WT) has not been violated. 1 Wait time (WT) has been violated.
6 CWT	Character Wait Timer Interrupt Indicates that the character wait time, the time between the leading edges of two consecutive characters in a block, has exceeded the programmed value. This flag asserts only when C7816[TTYPE] = 1. This interrupt is cleared by writing 1. 0 Character wait time (CWT) has not been violated. 1 Character wait time (CWT) has been violated.
5 BWT	Block Wait Timer Interrupt Indicates that the block wait time, the time between the leading edge of first received character of a block and the leading edge of the last character the previously transmitted block, has exceeded the programmed value. This flag asserts only when C7816[TTYPE] = 1.This interrupt is cleared by writing 1. 0 Block wait time (BWT) has not been violated. 1 Block wait time (BWT) has been violated.
4 INITD	Initial Character Detected Interrupt Indicates that a valid initial character is received. This interrupt is cleared by writing 1.

Table continues on the next page...

UARTx_IS7816 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 A valid initial character has not been received. 1 A valid initial character has been received.
3 ADT	ATR Duration Time Interrupt Indicates that the ATR duration time, the time between the leading edge of the TS character being received and the leading edge of the next response character, has exceeded the programmed value. This flag asserts only when C7816[TTYPE] = 0. This interrupt is cleared by writing 1. 0 ATR Duration time (ADT) has not been violated. 1 ATR Duration time (ADT) has been violated.
2 GTV	Guard Timer Violated Interrupt Indicates that one or more of the character guard time, block guard time, or guard time are violated. This interrupt is cleared by writing 1. 0 A guard time (GT, CGT, or BGT) has not been violated. 1 A guard time (GT, CGT, or BGT) has been violated.
1 TXT	Transmit Threshold Exceeded Interrupt Indicates that the transmit NACK threshold has been exceeded as indicated by ET7816[TXTHRESHOLD]. Regardless of whether this flag is set, the UART continues to retransmit indefinitely. This flag asserts only when C7816[TTYPE] = 0. If 7816E is cleared/disabled, ANACK is cleared/disabled, C2[TE] is cleared/disabled, C7816[TTYPE] = 1, or packet is transferred without receiving a NACK, the internal NACK detection counter is cleared and the count restarts from zero on the next received NACK. This interrupt is cleared by writing 1. 0 The number of retries and corresponding NACKS does not exceed the value in ET7816[TXTHRESHOLD]. 1 The number of retries and corresponding NACKS exceeds the value in ET7816[TXTHRESHOLD].
0 RXT	Receive Threshold Exceeded Interrupt Indicates that there are more than ET7816[RXTHRESHOLD] consecutive NACKS generated in response to parity errors on received data. This flag requires ANACK to be set. Additionally, this flag asserts only when C7816[TTYPE] = 0. Clearing this field also resets the counter keeping track of consecutive NACKS. The UART will continue to attempt to receive data regardless of whether this flag is set. If 7816E is cleared/disabled, RE is cleared/disabled, C7816[TTYPE] = 1, or packet is received without needing to issue a NACK, the internal NACK detection counter is cleared and the count restarts from zero on the next transmitted NACK. This interrupt is cleared by writing 1. 0 The number of consecutive NACKS generated as a result of parity errors and buffer overruns is less than or equal to the value in ET7816[RXTHRESHOLD]. 1 The number of consecutive NACKS generated as a result of parity errors and buffer overruns is greater than the value in ET7816[RXTHRESHOLD].

45.4.26 UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register (UARTx_WP7816)

The WP7816 register contains the WTX variable used in the generation of the block wait timer. This register may be read at any time. This register must be written to only when C7816[ISO_7816E] is not set.

Address: Base address + 1Bh offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	WTX							
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_WP7816 field descriptions

Field	Description
WTX	Wait Time Multiplier (C7816[TTYPE] = 1) Used to calculate the value used for the BWT counter. It represents a value between 0 and 255. This value is used only when C7816[TTYPE] = 1. See Wait time and guard time parameters.

45.4.27 UART 7816 Wait N Register (UARTx_WN7816)

The WN7816 register contains a parameter that is used in the calculation of the guard time counter. This register may be read at any time. This register must be written to only when C7816[ISO_7816E] is not set.

Address: Base address + 1Ch offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	GTN							
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_WN7816 field descriptions

Field	Description
GTN	Guard Band N Defines a parameter used in the calculation of GT, CGT, and BGT counters. The value represents an integer number between 0 and 255. See Wait time and guard time parameters .

45.4.28 UART 7816 Wait FD Register (UARTx_WF7816)

The WF7816 contains parameters that are used in the generation of various counters including GT, CGT, BGT, WT, and BWT. This register may be read at any time. This register must be written to only when C7816[ISO_7816E] is not set.

Address: Base address + 1Dh offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	GTFD							
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1

UARTx_WF7816 field descriptions

Field	Description
GTFD	FD Multiplier Used as another multiplier in the calculation of BWT. This value represents a number between 1 and 255. The value of 0 is invalid. This value is not used in baud rate generation. See Wait time and guard time parameters and Baud rate generation .

45.4.29 UART 7816 Error Threshold Register (UARTx_ET7816)

The ET7816 register contains fields that determine the number of NACKs that must be received or transmitted before the host processor is notified. This register may be read at anytime. This register must be written to only when C7816[ISO_7816E] is not set.

Address: Base address + 1Eh offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	TXTHRESHOLD				RXTHRESHOLD			
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_ET7816 field descriptions

Field	Description
7–4 TXTHRESHOLD	Transmit NACK Threshold The value written to this field indicates the maximum number of failed attempts (NACKs) a transmitted character can have before the host processor is notified. This field is meaningful only when C7816[TTYPE] = 0 and C7816[ANACK] = 1. The value read from this field represents the number of consecutive NACKs that have been received since the last successful transmission. This counter saturates at 4'hF and does not wrap around. Regardless of how many NACKs that are received, the UART continues to retransmit indefinitely. This flag only asserts when C7816[TTYPE] = 0. For additional information see the IS7816[TXT] field description. 0 TXT asserts on the first NACK that is received. 1 TXT asserts on the second NACK that is received.

Table continues on the next page...

UARTx_ET7816 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
RXTHRESHOLD	Receive NACK Threshold The value written to this field indicates the maximum number of consecutive NACKs generated as a result of a parity error or receiver buffer overruns before the host processor is notified. After the counter exceeds that value in the field, the IS7816[RXT] is asserted. This field is meaningful only when C7816[TTYPE] = 0. The value read from this field represents the number of consecutive NACKs that have been transmitted since the last successful reception. This counter saturates at 4'hF and does not wrap around. Regardless of the number of NACKs sent, the UART continues to receive valid packets indefinitely. For additional information, see IS7816[RXT] field description.

45.4.30 UART 7816 Transmit Length Register (UARTx_TL7816)

The TL7816 register is used to indicate the number of characters contained in the block being transmitted. This register is used only when C7816[TTYPE] = 1. This register may be read at anytime. This register must be written only when C2[TE] is not enabled.

Address: Base address + 1Fh offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	TLEN							
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_TL7816 field descriptions

Field	Description
TLEN	Transmit Length This value plus four indicates the number of characters contained in the block being transmitted. This register is automatically decremented by 1 for each character in the information field portion of the block. Additionally, this register is automatically decremented by 1 for the first character of a CRC in the epilogue field. Therefore, this register must be programmed with the number of bytes in the data packet if an LRC is being transmitted, and the number of bytes + 1 if a CRC is being transmitted. This register is not decremented for characters that are assumed to be part of the Prologue field, that is, the first three characters transmitted in a block, or the LRC or last CRC character in the Epilogue field, that is, the last character transmitted. This field must be programed or adjusted only when C2[TE] is cleared.

45.4.31 UART 7816 ATR Duration Timer Register A (UARTx_AP7816A_T0)

The AP7816A_T0 register contains variables used in the generation of the ATR Duration Timer. This register may be read at any time. This register must be written to only when C7816[ISO_7816E] is not set, except when writing 0 to clear the ADT Counter.

NOTE

The ADT Counter starts counting on detection of the complete TS Character. It must be noted that by this time, exactly 10 ETUs have elapsed since the start bit of the TS character. The user must take this into account while programming this register.

Address: Base address + 3Ah offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	ADTI_H							
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_AP7816A_T0 field descriptions

Field	Description
ADTI_H	ATR Duration Time Integer High (C7816[TTYPE] = 0) Used to calculate the value used for the ADT Counter. This register field provides the most significant byte of the 16 bit ATR Duration Time Integer field ADTI formed by {AP7816A_T0[ADTI_H], AP7816B_T0[ADTI_L]}. Programming a value of ADTI = 0 disables the ADT counter. This value is used only when C7816[TTYPE] = 0. See ATR Duration Time Counter.

45.4.32 UART 7816 ATR Duration Timer Register B (UARTx_AP7816B_T0)

The AP7816B_T0 register contains variables used in the generation of the ATR Duration Timer. This register may be read at any time. This register must be written to only when C7816[ISO_7816E] is not set, except when writing 0 to clear the ADT Counter.

NOTE

The ADT Counter starts counting on detection of the complete TS Character. It must be noted that by this time, exactly 10 ETUs have elapsed since the start bit of the TS character. The user must take this into account while programming this register.

Address: Base address + 3Bh offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	ADTI_L							
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_AP7816B_T0 field descriptions

Field	Description
ADTI_L	ATR Duration Time Integer Low (C7816[TTYPE] = 0)

UARTx_AP7816B_T0 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	Used to calculate the value used for the ADT counter. This register field provides the least significant byte of the 16 bit ATR Duration Time Integer field ADTI formed by {AP7816A_T0[ADTI_H], AP7816B_T0[ADTI_L]}. Programming a value of ADTI = 0 disables the ADT counter. This value is used only when C7816[TTYPE] = 0. See ATR Duration Time Counter.

45.4.33 UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register A (UARTx_WP7816A_T0)

The WP7816A_T0 register contains constants used in the generation of various wait time counters. To save register space, this register is used differently when C7816[TTYPE] = 0 and C7816[TTYPE] = 1. This register may be read at any time. This register must be written to only when C7816[ISO_7816E] is not set.

Address: Base address + 3Ch offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	WI_H							
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_WP7816A_T0 field descriptions

Field	Description
WI_H	Wait Time Integer High (C7816[TTYPE] = 0) Used to calculate the value used for the WT counter. This register field provides the most significant byte of the 16 bit Wait Time Integer field WI formed by {WP7816A_T0[WI_H], WP7816B_T0[WI_L]}. The value of WI = 0 is invalid and must not be programmed. This value is used only when C7816[TTYPE] = 0. See Wait time and guard time parameters.

45.4.34 UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register A (UARTx_WP7816A_T1)

The WP7816A_T1 register contains constants used in the generation of various wait time counters. To save register space, this register is used differently when C7816[TTYPE] = 0 and C7816[TTYPE] = 1. This register may be read at any time. This register must be written to only when C7816[ISO_7816E] is not set.

Address: Base address + 3Ch offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	BWI_H							
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

UARTx_WP7816A_T1 field descriptions

Field	Description
BWI_H	Block Wait Time Integer High (C7816[TTYPE] = 1) Used to calculate the value used for the BWT counter. This register field provides the most significant byte of the 16 bit Block Wait Time Integer field BWI formed by {WP7816A_T1[BWI_H], WP7816B_T1[BWI_L]}. The value of BWI = 0 is invalid and should not be programmed. This value is used only when C7816[TTYPE] = 1. See Wait time and guard time parameters.

45.4.35 UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register B (UARTx_WP7816B_T0)

The WP7816B_T0 register contains constants used in the generation of various wait time counters. To save register space, this register is used differently when C7816[TTYPE] = 0 and C7816[TTYPE] = 1. This register may be read at any time. This register must be written to only when C7816[ISO_7816E] is not set.

Address: Base address + 3Dh offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	WI_L							
Reset	0	0	0	1	0	1	0	0

UARTx_WP7816B_T0 field descriptions

Field	Description
WI_L	Wait Time Integer Low (C7816[TTYPE] = 0) Used to calculate the value used for the WT counter. This register field provides the least significant byte of the 16 bit Wait Time Integer field WI formed by {WP7816A_T0[WI_H], WP7816B_T0[WI_L]} . The value of WI = 0 is invalid and must not be programmed. This value is used only when C7816[TTYPE] = 0. See Wait time and guard time parameters.

45.4.36 UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register B (UARTx_WP7816B_T1)

The WP7816B_T1 register contains constants used in the generation of various wait time counters. To save register space, this register is used differently when C7816[TTYPE] = 0 and C7816[TTYPE] = 1. This register may be read at any time. This register must be written to only when C7816[ISO_7816E] is not set.

Address: Base address + 3Dh offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	BWI_L							
Reset	0	0	0	1	0	1	0	0

UARTx_WP7816B_T1 field descriptions

Field	Description
BWI_L	Block Wait Time Integer Low (C7816[TTYPE] = 1) Used to calculate the value used for the BWT counter. This register field provides the least significant byte of the 16 bit Block Wait Time Integer field BWI formed by {WP7816A_T1[BWI_H], WP7816B_T1[BWI_L]}. The value of BWI = 0 is invalid and should not be programmed. This value is used only when C7816[TTYPE] = 1. See Wait time and guard time parameters.

45.4.37 UART 7816 Wait and Guard Parameter Register (UARTx_WGP7816_T1)

The WGP7816_T1 register contains constants used in the generation of various wait and guard timer counters. This register may be read at any time. This register must be written to only when C7816[ISO_7816E] is not set.

Address: Base address + 3Eh offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read Write	CWI1				BGI			
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0

UARTx_WGP7816_T1 field descriptions

Field	Description
7–4 CWI1	Character Wait Time Integer 1 (C7816[TTYPE] = 1) Used to calculate the value used for the CWT counter. It represents a value between 0 and 15. This value is used only when C7816[TTYPE] = 1. See Wait time and guard time parameters .
BGI	Block Guard Time Integer (C7816[TTYPE] = 1) Used to calculate the value used for the BGT counter. It represent a value between 0 and 15. This value is used only when C7816[TTYPE] = 1. See Wait time and guard time parameters .

45.4.38 UART 7816 Wait Parameter Register C (UARTx_WP7816C_T1)

The WP7816C_T1 register contains constants used in the generation of various wait timer counters. This register may be read at any time. This register must be written to only when C7816[ISO_7816E] is not set.

Address: Base address + 3Fh offset

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Read	0				CWI2			
Write								
Reset	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	1

UARTx_WP7816C_T1 field descriptions

Field	Description
7–5 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
CWI2	Character Wait Time Integer 2 (C7816[TTYPE] = 1) Used to calculate the value used for the CWT counter. It represents a value between 0 and 31. This value is used only when C7816[TTYPE] = 1. See Wait time and guard time parameters .

45.5 Functional description

This section provides a complete functional description of the UART block.

The UART allows full duplex, asynchronous, NRZ serial communication between the CPU and remote devices, including other CPUs. The UART transmitter and receiver operate independently, although they use the same baud rate generator. The CPU monitors the status of the UART, writes the data to be transmitted, and processes received data.

45.5.1 Transmitter

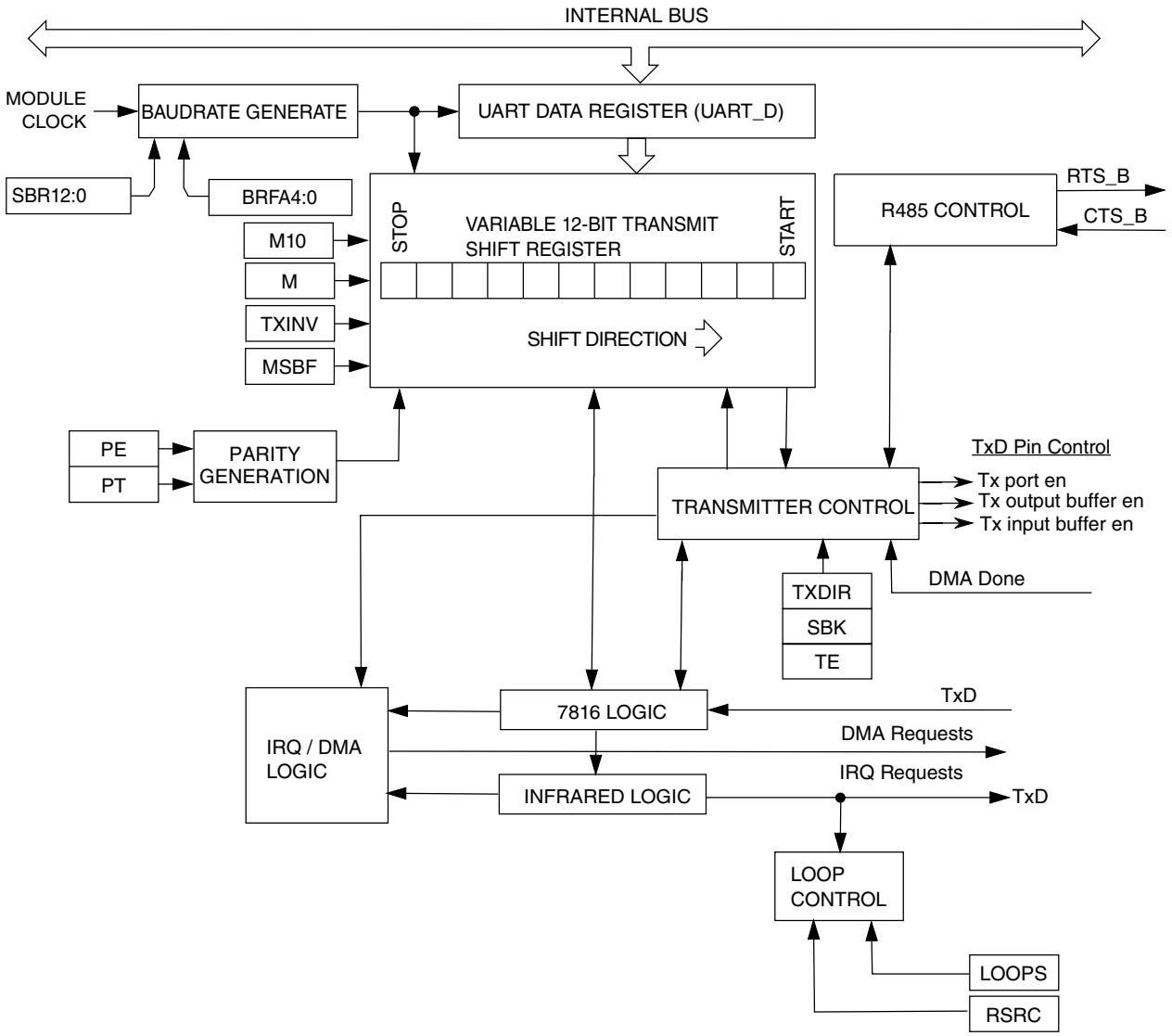


Figure 45-1. Transmitter Block Diagram

45.5.1.1 Transmitter character length

The UART transmitter can accommodate either 8, 9, or 10-bit data characters. The state of the C1[M] and C1[PE] bits and the C4[M10] bit determine the length of data characters. When transmitting 9-bit data, bit C3[T8] is the ninth bit (bit 8).

45.5.1.2 Transmission bit order

When S2[MSBF] is set, the UART automatically transmits the MSB of the data word as the first bit after the start bit. Similarly, the LSB of the data word is transmitted immediately preceding the parity bit, or the stop bit if parity is not enabled. All necessary bit ordering is handled automatically by the module. Therefore, the format of the data written to D for transmission is completely independent of the S2[MSBF] setting.

45.5.1.3 Character transmission

To transmit data, the MCU writes the data bits to the UART transmit buffer using UART data registers C3[T8] and D. Data in the transmit buffer is then transferred to the transmitter shift register as needed. The transmit shift register then shifts a frame out through the transmit data output signal after it has prefaced it with any required start and stop bits. The UART data registers, C3[T8] and D, provide access to the transmit buffer structure.

The UART also sets a flag, the transmit data register empty flag S1[TDRE], and generates an interrupt or DMA request (C5[TDMAS]) whenever the number of datawords in the transmit buffer is equal to or less than the value indicated by TWFIFO[TXWATER]. The transmit driver routine may respond to this flag by writing additional datawords to the transmit buffer using C3[T8]/D as space permits.

See Application information for specific programing sequences.

Setting C2[TE] automatically loads the transmit shift register with the following preamble:

Table 45-3. Transmit preamble length

BDH[SBNS]	C1[M]	C4[M10]	C1[PE]	Bits transmitted
0	0	—	—	10
1	0	—	—	11
0	1	0	—	11
1	1	0	—	12
0	1	1	1	12
1	1	1	1	13

After the preamble shifts out, control logic transfers the data from the D register into the transmit shift register. The transmitter automatically transmits the correct start bit and stop bit before and after the dataword. The number of stop bits transmitted after the dataword can be programmed using BDH[SBNS] field.

When C7816[ISO_7816E] = 1, setting C2[TE] does not result in a preamble being generated. The transmitter starts transmitting as soon as the corresponding guard time expires. When C7816[TTYPE] = 0, the value in GT is used. When C7816[TTYPE] = 1, the value in BGT is used, because C2[TE] will remain asserted until the end of the block transfer. C2[TE] is automatically cleared when C7816[TTYPE] = 1 and the block being transmitted has completed. When C7816[TTYPE] = 0, the transmitter listens for a NACK indication. If no NACK is received, it is assumed that the character was correctly received. If a NACK is received, the transmitter resends the data, assuming that the number of retries for that character, that is, the number of NACKs received, is less than or equal to the value in ET7816[TXTHRESHOLD].

Hardware supports odd or even parity. When parity is enabled, the bit immediately preceding the stop bit is the parity bit.

When the transmit shift register is not transmitting a frame, the transmit data output signal goes to the idle condition, logic 1. If at any time software clears C2[TE], the transmitter enable signal goes low and the transmit signal goes idle.

If the software clears C2[TE] while a transmission is in progress, the character in the transmit shift register continues to shift out, provided S1[TC] was cleared during the data write sequence. To clear S1[TC], the S1 register must be read followed by a write to D register.

If S1[TC] is cleared during character transmission and C2[TE] is cleared, the transmission enable signal is deasserted at the completion of the current frame. Following this, the transmit data out signal enters the idle state even if there is data pending in the UART transmit data buffer. To ensure that all the data written in the FIFO is transmitted on the link before clearing C2[TE], wait for S1[TC] to set. Alternatively, the same can be achieved by setting TWFIFO[TXWATER] to 0x0 and waiting for S1[TDRE] to set.

45.5.1.4 Transmitting break characters

Setting C2[SBK] loads the transmit shift register with a break character. A break character contains all logic 0s and has no start, stop, or parity bit. Break character length depends on C1[M], C1[PE], S2[BRK13], BDH[SBNS] and C4[M10]. See the following table.

Table 45-4. Transmit break character length

S2[BRK13]	BDH[SBNS]	C1[M]	C4[M10]	C1[PE]	Bits transmitted
0	0	0	—	—	10
0	1	0	—	—	11
0	0	1	0	—	11

Table continues on the next page...

Table 45-4. Transmit break character length (continued)

S2[BRK13]	BDH[SBNS]	C1[M]	C4[M10]	C1[PE]	Bits transmitted
0	1	1	0	—	12
0	0	1	1	1	12
0	1	1	1	1	13
1	0	0	—	—	13
1	0	1	—	—	14
1	1	0	—	—	15
1	1	1	—	—	16

As long as C2[SBK] is set, the transmitter logic continuously loads break characters into the transmit shift register. After the software clears C2[SBK], the shift register finishes transmitting the last break character and then transmits at least one logic 1. The automatic logic 1 at the end of a break character guarantees the recognition of the start bit of the next character. Break bits are not supported when C7816[ISO_7816E] is set/enabled.

NOTE

When queuing a break character, it will be transmitted following the completion of the data value currently being shifted out from the shift register. This means that, if data is queued in the data buffer to be transmitted, the break character preempts that queued data. The queued data is then transmitted after the break character is complete.

45.5.1.5 Idle characters

An idle character contains all logic 1s and has no start, stop, or parity bit. Idle character length depends on C1[M], C1[PE], BDH[SBNS] and C4[M10]. The preamble is a synchronizing idle character that begins the first transmission initiated after setting C2[TE]. When C7816[ISO_7816E] is set/enabled, idle characters are not sent or detected. When data is not being transmitted, the data I/O line is in an inactive state.

If C2[TE] is cleared during a transmission, the transmit data output signal becomes idle after completion of the transmission in progress. Clearing and then setting C2[TE] during a transmission queues an idle character to be sent after the dataword currently being transmitted.

Note

When queuing an idle character, the idle character will be transmitted following the completion of the data value currently being shifted out from the shift register. This means that if data

is queued in the data buffer to be transmitted, the idle character preempts that queued data. The queued data is then transmitted after the idle character is complete.

If C2[TE] is cleared and the transmission is completed, the UART is not the master of the TXD pin.

45.5.1.6 Hardware flow control

The transmitter supports hardware flow control by gating the transmission with the value of CTS. If the clear-to-send operation is enabled, the character is transmitted when CTS is asserted. If CTS is deasserted in the middle of a transmission with characters remaining in the receiver data buffer, the character in the shift register is sent and TXD remains in the mark state until CTS is reasserted.

If the clear-to-send operation is disabled, the transmitter ignores the state of CTS. Also, if the transmitter is forced to send a continuous low condition because it is sending a break character, the transmitter ignores the state of CTS regardless of whether the clear-to-send operation is enabled.

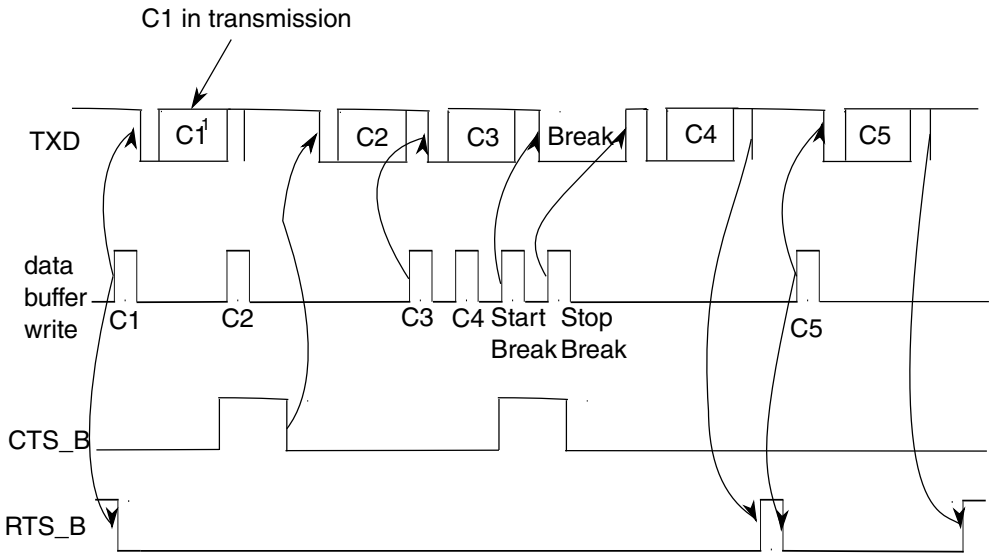
The transmitter's CTS signal can also be enabled even if the same UART receiver's RTS signal is disabled.

45.5.1.7 Transceiver driver enable

The transmitter can use RTS as an enable signal for the driver of an external transceiver. See Transceiver driver enable using RTS for details. If the request-to-send operation is enabled, when a character is placed into an empty transmitter data buffer, RTS asserts one bit time before the start bit is transmitted. RTS remains asserted for the whole time that the transmitter data buffer has any characters. RTS deasserts one bit time after all characters in the transmitter data buffer and shift register are completely sent, including the last stop bit. Transmitting a break character also asserts RTS, with the same assertion and deassertion timing as having a character in the transmitter data buffer.

The transmitter's RTS signal asserts only when the transmitter is enabled. However, the transmitter's RTS signal is unaffected by its CTS signal. RTS will remain asserted until the transfer is completed, even if the transmitter is disabled mid-way through a data transfer.

The following figure shows the functional timing information for the transmitter. Along with the actual character itself, TXD shows the start bit. The stop bit is also indicated, with a dashed line if necessary.



1. Cn = transmit characters

Figure 45-2. Transmitter RTS and CTS timing diagram

45.5.2 Receiver

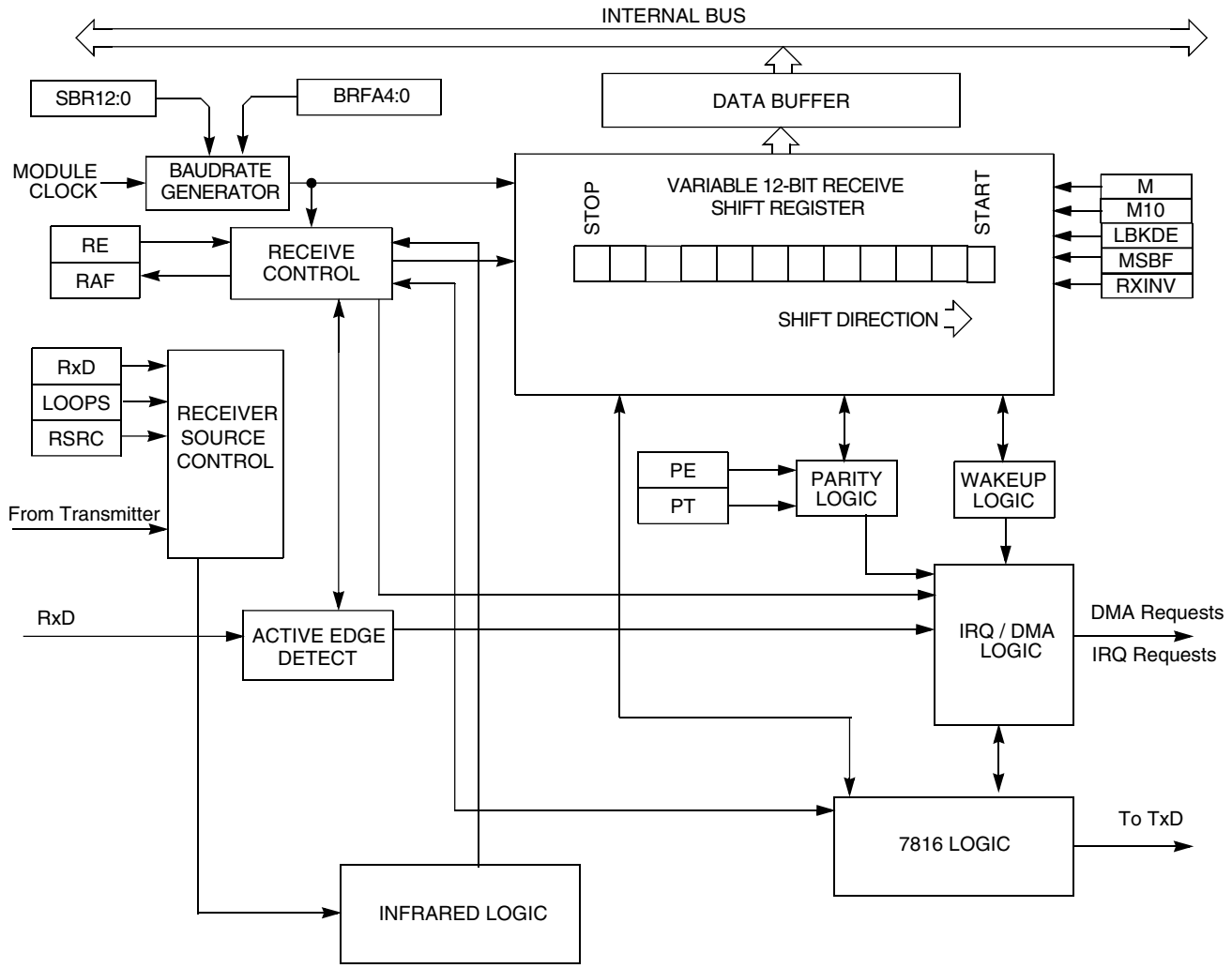


Figure 45-3. UART receiver block diagram

45.5.2.1 Receiver character length

The UART receiver can accommodate 8-, 9-, or 10-bit data characters. The states of C1[M], C1[PE], BDH[SBNS] and C4[M10] determine the length of data characters. When receiving 9 or 10-bit data, C3[R8] is the ninth bit (bit 8).

45.5.2.2 Receiver bit ordering

When S2[MSBF] is set, the receiver operates such that the first bit received after the start bit is the MSB of the dataword. Similarly, the bit received immediately preceding the parity bit, or the stop bit if parity is not enabled, is treated as the LSB for the dataword. All necessary bit ordering is handled automatically by the module. Therefore, the format of the data read from receive data buffer is completely independent of S2[MSBF].

45.5.2.3 Character reception

During UART reception, the receive shift register shifts a frame in from the unsynchronized receiver input signal. After a complete frame shifts into the receive shift register, the data portion of the frame transfers to the UART receive buffer. Additionally, the noise and parity error flags that are calculated during the receive process are also captured in the UART receive buffer. The receive data buffer is accessible via the D and C3[T8] registers. Additional received information flags regarding the receive dataword can be read in ED register. S1[RDRF] is set if the number of resulting datawords in the receive buffer is equal to or greater than the number indicated by RWFIFO[RXWATER]. If the C2[RIE] is also set, RDRF generates an RDRF interrupt request. Alternatively, by programming C5[RDMAS], a DMA request can be generated.

When C7816[ISO_7816E] is set/enabled and C7816[TTYPE] = 0, character reception operates slightly differently. Upon receipt of the parity bit, the validity of the parity bit is checked. If C7816[ANACK] is set and the parity check fails, or if INIT and the received character is not a valid initial character, then a NACK is sent by the receiver. If the number of consecutive receive errors exceeds the threshold set by ET7816[RXTHRESHOLD], then IS7816[RXT] is set and an interrupt generated if IE7816[RXTE] is set. If an error is detected due to parity or an invalid initial character, the data is not transferred from the receive shift register to the receive buffer. Instead, the data is overwritten by the next incoming data.

When the C7816[ISO_7816E] is set/enabled, C7816[ONACK] is set/enabled, and the received character results in the receive buffer overflowing, a NACK is issued by the receiver. Additionally, S1[OR] is set and an interrupt is issued if required, and the data in the shift register is discarded.

45.5.2.4 Data sampling

The receiver samples the unsynchronized receiver input signal at the RT clock rate. The RT clock is an internal signal with a frequency 16 times the baud rate. To adjust for baud rate mismatch, the RT clock (see the following figure) is re-synchronized:

- After every start bit.
- After the receiver detects a data bit change from logic 1 to logic 0 (after the majority of data bit samples at RT8, RT9, and RT10 returns a valid logic 1 and the majority of the next RT8, RT9, and RT10 samples returns a valid logic 0).

To locate the start bit, data recovery logic does an asynchronous search for a logic 0 preceded by three logic 1s. When the falling edge of a possible start bit occurs, the RT clock begins to count to 16.

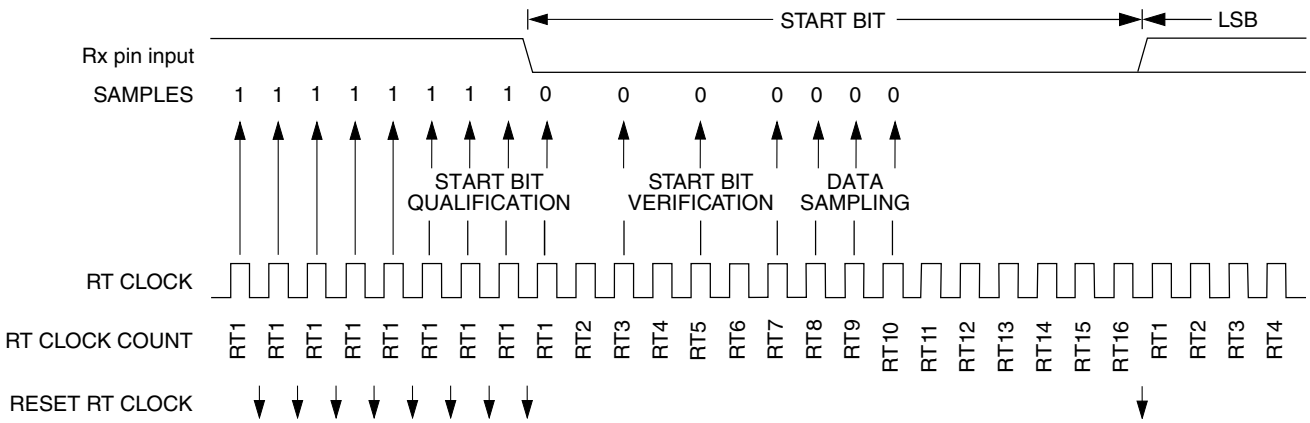


Figure 45-4. Receiver data sampling

To verify the start bit and to detect noise, data recovery logic takes samples at RT3, RT5, and RT7 when C7816[ISO_7816E] is cleared/disabled and RT8, RT9 and RT10 when C7816[ISO_7816E] is set/enabled. The following table summarizes the results of the start bit verification samples.

Table 45-5. Start bit verification

RT3, RT5, and RT7 samples RT8, RT9, RT10 samples when 7816E	Start bit verification	Noise flag
000	Yes	0
001	Yes	1
010	Yes	1
011	No	0
100	Yes	1
101	No	0
110	No	0
111	No	0

If start bit verification is not successful, the RT clock is reset and a new search for a start bit begins.

To determine the value of a data bit and to detect noise, recovery logic takes samples at RT8, RT9, and RT10. The following table summarizes the results of the data bit samples.

Table 45-6. Data bit recovery

RT8, RT9, and RT10 samples	Data bit determination	Noise flag
000	0	0
001	0	1
010	0	1
011	1	1
100	0	1
101	1	1
110	1	1
111	1	0

Note

The RT8, RT9, and RT10 samples do not affect start bit verification. If any or all of the RT8, RT9, and RT10 start bit samples are logic 1s following a successful start bit verification, the noise flag (S1[NF]) is set and the receiver assumes that the bit is a start bit (logic 0). With the exception of when C7816[ISO_7816E] is set/enabled, where the values of RT8, RT9 and RT10 exclusively determine if a start bit exists.

To verify a stop bit and to detect noise, recovery logic takes samples at RT8, RT9, and RT10. The following table summarizes the results of the stop bit samples. In the event that C7816[ISO_7816E] is set/enabled and C7816[TTYPE] = 0, verification of a stop bit does not take place. Rather, starting with RT8 the receiver transmits a NACK as programmed until time RT9 of the following time period. Framing Error detection is not supported when C7816[ISO_7816E] is set/enabled.

Table 45-7. Stop bit recovery

RT8, RT9, and RT10 samples	Framing error flag	Noise flag
000	1	0
001	1	1
010	1	1
011	0	1
100	1	1
101	0	1
110	0	1
111	0	0

In the following figure, the verification samples RT3 and RT5 determine that the first low detected was noise and not the beginning of a start bit. In this example C7816[ISO_7816E] = 0. The RT clock is reset and the start bit search begins again. The noise flag is not set because the noise occurred before the start bit was found.

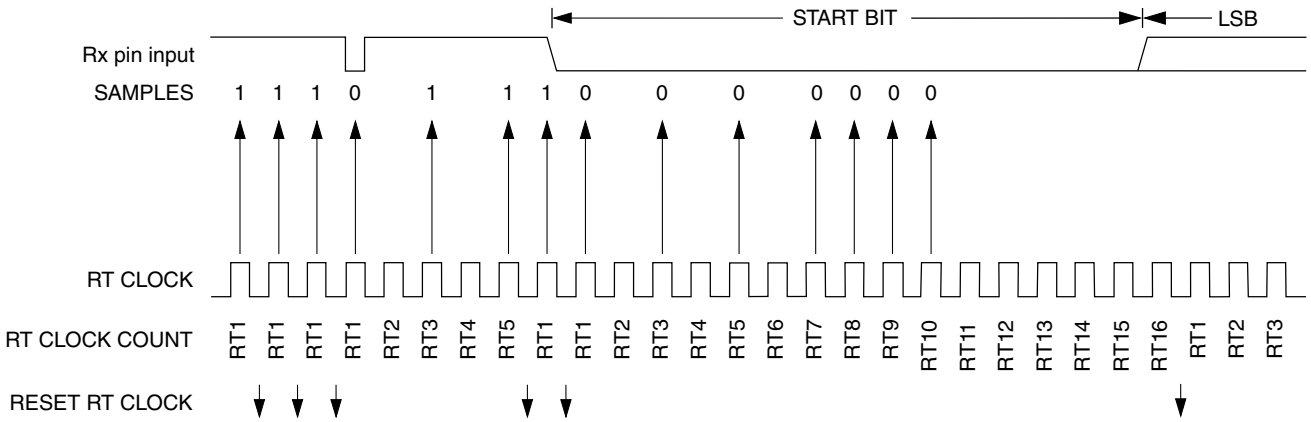


Figure 45-5. Start bit search example 1 (C7816[ISO_7816E] = 0)

In the following figure, verification sample at RT3 is high. In this example C7816[ISO_7816E] = 0. The RT3 sample sets the noise flag. Although the perceived bit time is misaligned, the data samples RT8, RT9, and RT10 are within the bit time and data recovery is successful.

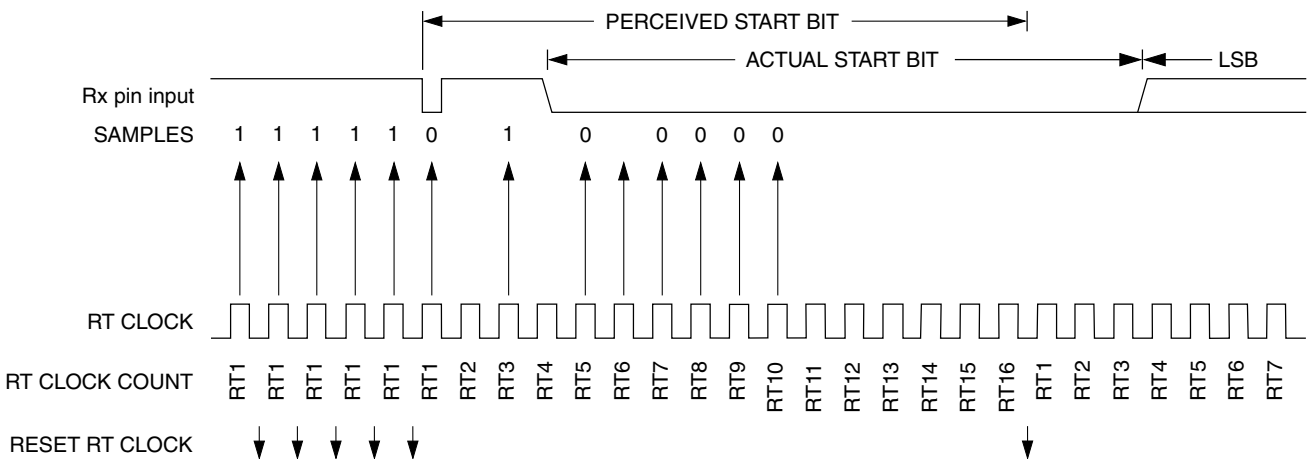


Figure 45-6. Start bit search example 2 (C7816[ISO_7816E] = 0)

In the following figure, a large burst of noise is perceived as the beginning of a start bit, although the test sample at RT5 is high. In this example C7816[ISO_7816E] = 0. The RT5 sample sets the noise flag. Although this is a worst-case misalignment of perceived bit time, the data samples RT8, RT9, and RT10 are within the bit time and data recovery is successful.

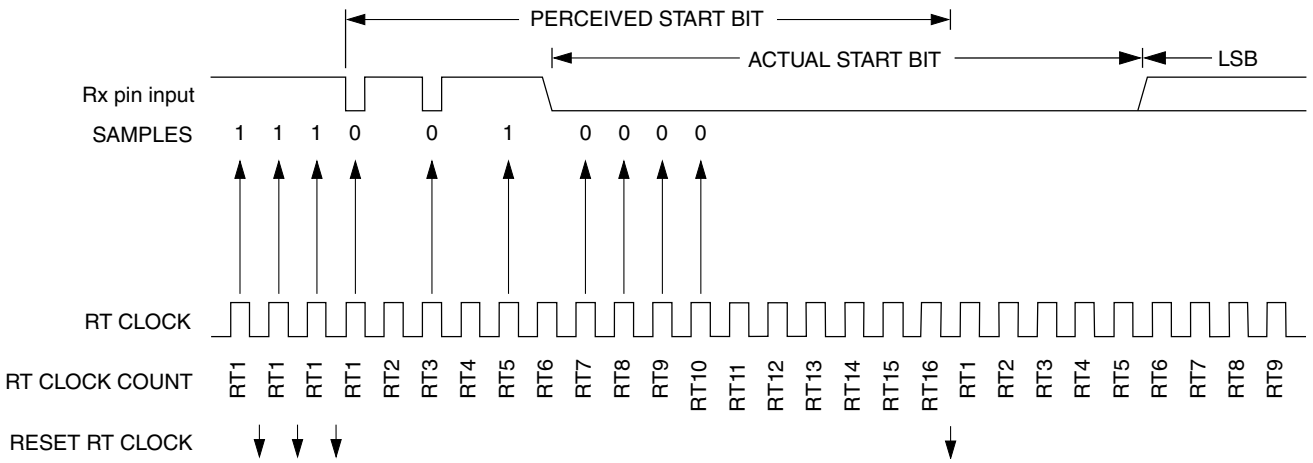


Figure 45-7. Start bit search example 3 (C7816[ISO_7816E] = 0)

The following figure shows the effect of noise early in the start bit time. In this example C7816[ISO_7816E] = 0. Although this noise does not affect proper synchronization with the start bit time, it does set the noise flag.

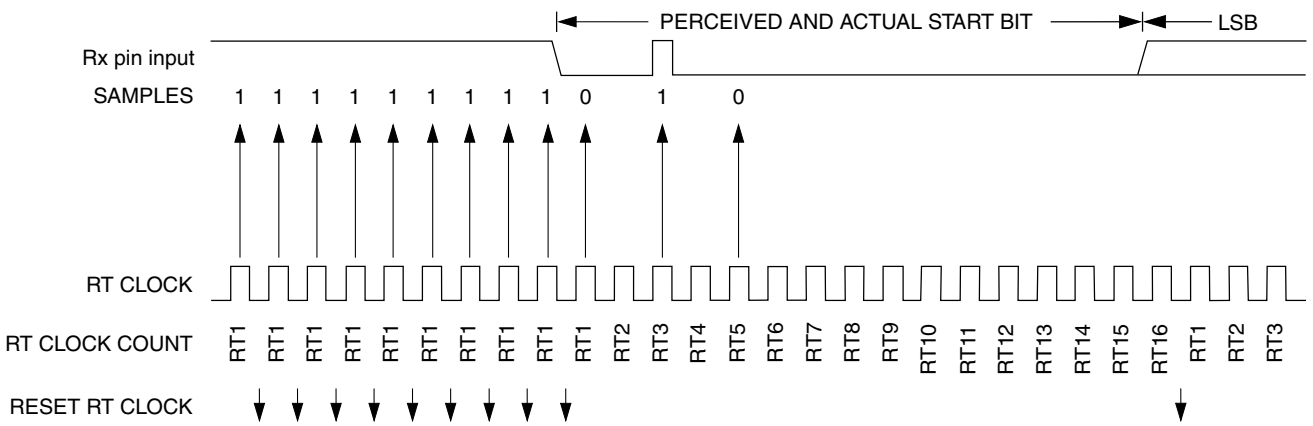


Figure 45-8. Start bit search example 4 (C7816[ISO_7816E] = 0)

The following figure shows a burst of noise near the beginning of the start bit that resets the RT clock. In this example C7816[ISO_7816E] = 0. The sample after the reset is low but is not preceded by three high samples that would qualify as a falling edge. Depending on the timing of the start bit search and on the data, the frame may be missed entirely or it may set the framing error flag.

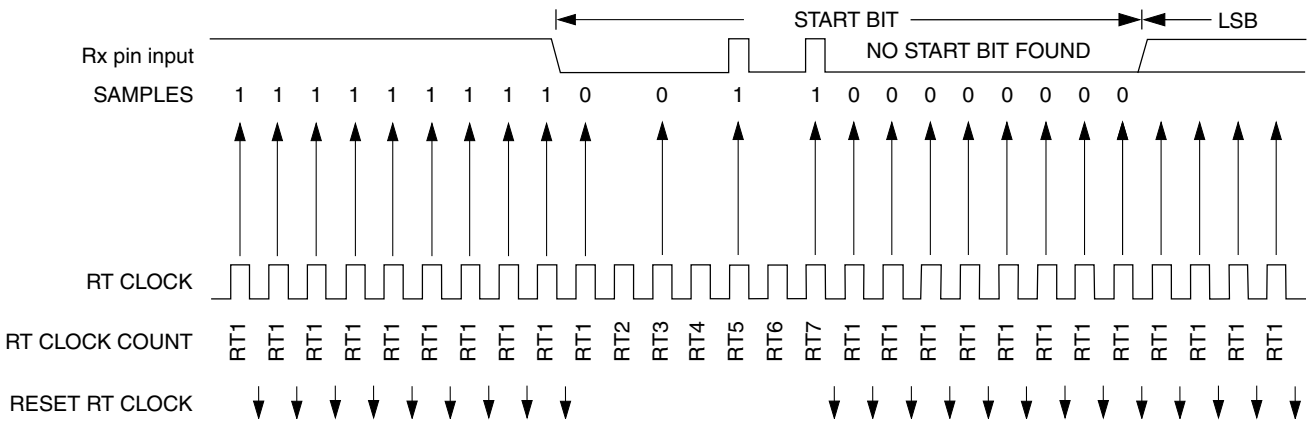


Figure 45-9. Start bit search example 5 (C7816[ISO_7816E] = 0)

In the following figure, a noise burst makes the majority of data samples RT8, RT9, and RT10 high. In this example C7816[ISO_7816E] = 0. This sets the noise flag but does not reset the RT clock. In start bits only, the RT8, RT9, and RT10 data samples are ignored. In this example, if C7816[ISO_7816E] = 1 then a start bit would not have been detected at all since at least two of the three samples (RT8, RT9, RT10) were high.

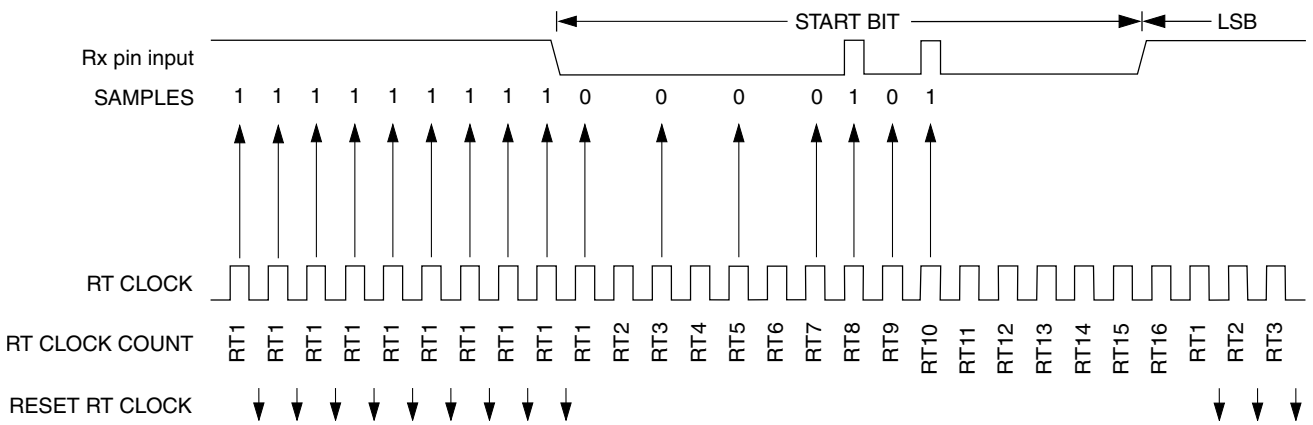


Figure 45-10. Start bit search example 6

45.5.2.5 Framing errors

If the data recovery logic does not detect a logic 1 where the stop bit should be in an incoming frame, it sets the framing error flag, S1[FE], if S2[LBKDE] is disabled. When S2[LBKDE] is disabled, a break character also sets the S1[FE] because a break character has no stop bit. S1[FE] is set at the same time that received data is placed in the receive data buffer. Framing errors are not supported when C7816[ISO7816E] is set/enabled. However, if S1[FE] is set, data will not be received when C7816[ISO7816E] is set.

45.5.2.6 Receiving break characters

The UART recognizes a break character when a start bit is followed by eight, nine, or ten logic 0 data bits and a logic 0 where the stop bit should be. Receiving a break character has these effects on UART registers:

- Sets the framing error flag, S1[FE].
- Writes an all 0 dataword to the data buffer, which may cause S1[RDRF] to set, depending on the watermark and number of values in the data buffer.
- May set the overrun flag, S1[OR], noise flag, S1[NF], parity error flag, S1[PE], or the receiver active flag, S2[RAF].

The detection threshold for a break character can be adjusted when using an internal oscillator in a LIN system by setting S2[LBKDE]. The UART break character detection threshold depends on C1[M], C1[PE], S2[LBKDE] and C4[M10]. See the following table.

Table 45-8. Receive break character detection threshold

LBKDE	SBNS	M	M10	PE	Threshold (bits)
0	0	0	—	—	10
0	1	0	—	—	11
0	0	1	0	—	11
0	1	1	0	—	12
0	0	1	1	1	12
0	1	1	1	1	13
1	—	0	—	—	11
1	—	1	—	—	12

While S2[LBKDE] is set, it will have these effects on the UART registers:

- Prevents S1[RDRF], S1[FE], S1[NF], and S1[PF] from being set. However, if they are already set, they will remain set.
- Sets the LIN break detect interrupt flag, S2[LBKDIF], if a LIN break character is received.

Break characters are not detected or supported when C7816[ISO_7816E] is set/enabled.

45.5.2.7 Hardware flow control

To support hardware flow control, the receiver can be programmed to automatically deassert and assert RTS.

- RTS remains asserted until the transfer is complete, even if the transmitter is disabled midway through a data transfer. See Transceiver driver enable using RTS for more details.
- If the receiver request-to-send functionality is enabled, the receiver automatically deasserts RTS if the number of characters in the receiver data register is equal to or greater than receiver data buffer's watermark, RWFIFO[RXWATER].
- The receiver asserts RTS when the number of characters in the receiver data register is less than the watermark. It is not affected if RDRF is asserted.
- Even if RTS is deasserted, the receiver continues to receive characters until the receiver data buffer is full or is overrun.
- If the receiver request-to-send functionality is disabled, the receiver RTS remains deasserted.

The following figure shows receiver hardware flow control functional timing. Along with the actual character itself, RXD shows the start bit. The stop bit can also indicated, with a dashed line, if necessary. The watermark is set to 2.

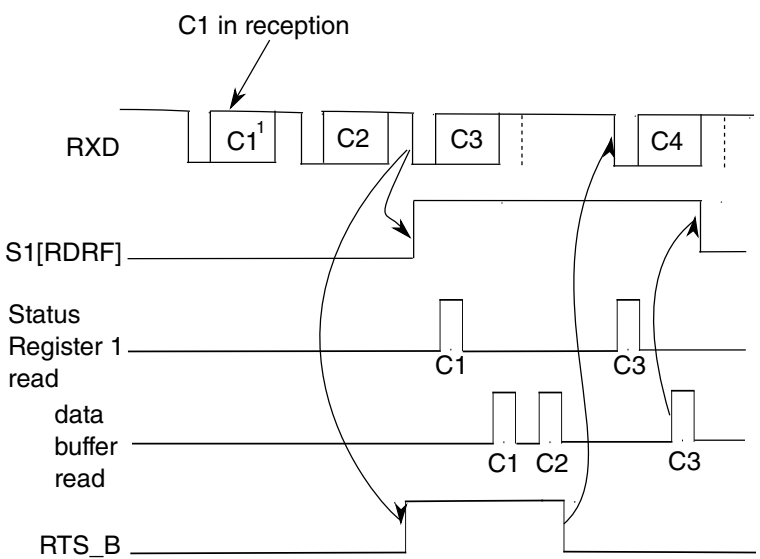


Figure 45-11. Receiver hardware flow control timing diagram

45.5.2.8 Infrared decoder

The infrared decoder converts the received character from the IrDA format to the NRZ format used by the receiver. It also has a 16-RT clock counter that filters noise and indicates when a 1 is received.

45.5.2.8.1 Start bit detection

When S2[RXINV] is cleared, the first rising edge of the received character corresponds to the start bit. The infrared decoder resets its counter. At this time, the receiver also begins its start bit detection process. After the start bit is detected, the receiver synchronizes its bit times to this start bit time. For the rest of the character reception, the infrared decoder's counter and the receiver's bit time counter count independently from each other.

45.5.2.8.2 Noise filtering

Any further rising edges detected during the first half of the infrared decoder counter are ignored by the decoder. Any pulses less than one RT clocks can be undetected by it regardless of whether it is seen in the first or second half of the count.

45.5.2.8.3 Low-bit detection

During the second half of the decoder count, a rising edge is decoded as a 0, which is sent to the receiver. The decoder counter is also reset.

45.5.2.8.4 High-bit detection

At 16-RT clocks after the previous rising edge, if a rising edge is not seen, then the decoder sends a 1 to the receiver.

If the next bit is a 0, which arrives late, then a low-bit is detected according to Low-bit detection. The value sent to the receiver is changed from 1 to a 0. Then, if a noise pulse occurs outside the receiver's bit time sampling period, then the delay of a 0 is not recorded as noise.

45.5.2.9 Baud rate tolerance

A transmitting device may be operating at a baud rate below or above the receiver baud rate. Accumulated bit time misalignment can cause one of the three stop bit data samples (RT8, RT9, and RT10) to fall outside the actual stop bit. A noise error will occur if the

RT8, RT9, and RT10 samples are not all the same logical values. A framing error will occur if the receiver clock is misaligned in such a way that the majority of the RT8, RT9, and RT10 stop bit samples are a logic 0.

As the receiver samples an incoming frame, it resynchronizes the RT clock on any valid falling edge within the frame. Resynchronization within frames corrects a misalignment between transmitter bit times and receiver bit times.

45.5.2.9.1 Slow data tolerance

The following figure shows how much a slow received frame can be misaligned without causing a noise error or a framing error. The slow stop bit begins at RT8 instead of RT1 but arrives in time for the stop bit data samples at RT8, RT9, and RT10.

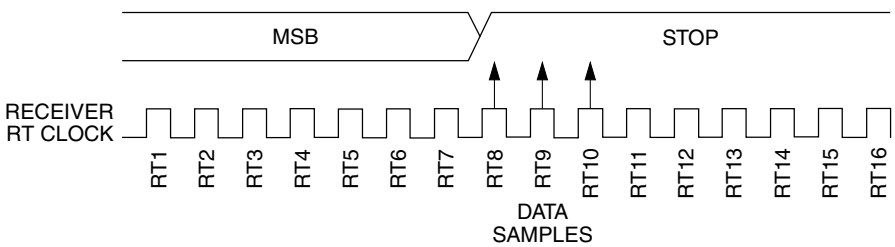


Figure 45-12. Slow data

For an 8-bit data character, data sampling of the stop bit takes the receiver 154 RT cycles (9 bit times × 16 RT cycles + 10 RT cycles).

With the misaligned character shown in the Figure 45-12, the receiver counts 154 RT cycles at the point when the count of the transmitting device is 147 RT cycles (9 bit times × 16 RT cycles + 3 RT cycles).

The maximum percent difference between the receiver count and the transmitter count of a slow 8-bit data character with no errors is:

$$((154 - 147) \div 154) \times 100 = 4.54\%$$

For a 9-bit data character, data sampling of the stop bit takes the receiver 170 RT cycles (10 bit times × 16 RT cycles + 10 RT cycles).

With the misaligned character shown in the Figure 45-12, the receiver counts 170 RT cycles at the point when the count of the transmitting device is 163 RT cycles (10 bit times × 16 RT cycles + 3 RT cycles).

The maximum percent difference between the receiver count and the transmitter count of a slow 9-bit character with no errors is:

$$((170 - 163) \div 170) \times 100 = 4.12\%$$

45.5.2.9.2 Fast data tolerance

The following figure shows how much a fast received frame can be misaligned. The fast stop bit ends at RT10 instead of RT16 but is still sampled at RT8, RT9, and RT10.

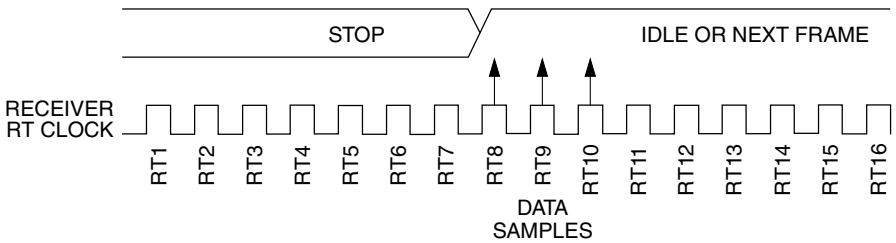


Figure 45-13. Fast data

For an 8-bit data character, data sampling of the stop bit takes the receiver 154 RT cycles (9 bit times × 16 RT cycles + 10 RT cycles).

With the misaligned character shown in the Figure 45-13, the receiver counts 154 RT cycles at the point when the count of the transmitting device is 160 RT cycles (10 bit times × 16 RT cycles).

The maximum percent difference between the receiver count and the transmitter count of a fast 8-bit character with no errors is:

$$((154 - 160) \div 154) \times 100 = 3.90\%$$

For a 9-bit data character, data sampling of the stop bit takes the receiver 170 RT cycles (10 bit times × 16 RT cycles + 10 RT cycles).

With the misaligned character shown in the Figure 45-13, the receiver counts 170 RT cycles at the point when the count of the transmitting device is 176 RT cycles (11 bit times × 16 RT cycles).

The maximum percent difference between the receiver count and the transmitter count of a fast 9-bit character with no errors is:

$$((170 - 176) \div 170) \times 100 = 3.53\%$$

45.5.2.10 Receiver wakeup

C1[WAKE] determines how the UART is brought out of the standby state to process an incoming message. C1[WAKE] enables either idle line wakeup or address mark wakeup.

Receiver wakeup is not supported when C7816[ISO_7816E] is set/enabled because multi-receiver systems are not allowed.

45.5.2.10.1 Idle input line wakeup (C1[WAKE] = 0)

In this wakeup method, an idle condition on the unsynchronized receiver input signal clears C2[RWU] and wakes the UART. The initial frame or frames of every message contain addressing information. All receivers evaluate the addressing information, and receivers for which the message is addressed process the frames that follow. Any receiver for which a message is not addressed can set its C2[RWU] and return to the standby state. C2[RWU] remains set and the receiver remains in standby until another idle character appears on the unsynchronized receiver input signal.

Idle line wakeup requires that messages be separated by at least one idle character and that no message contains idle characters.

When C2[RWU] is 1 and S2[RWUID] is 0, the idle character that wakes the receiver does not set S1[IDLE] or the receive data register full flag, S1[RDRF]. The receiver wakes and waits for the first data character of the next message which is stored in the receive data buffer. When S2[RWUID] and C2[RWU] are set and C1[WAKE] is cleared, any idle condition sets S1[IDLE] and generates an interrupt if enabled.

Idle input line wakeup is not supported when C7816[ISO_7816E] is set/enabled.

45.5.2.10.2 Address mark wakeup (C1[WAKE] = 1)

In this wakeup method, a logic 1 in the bit position immediately preceding the stop bit of a frame clears C2[RWU] and wakes the UART. A logic 1 in the bit position immediately preceeding the stop bit marks a frame as an address frame that contains addressing information. All receivers evaluate the addressing information, and the receivers for which the message is addressed process the frames that follow. Any receiver for which a message is not addressed can set its C2[RWU] and return to the standby state. C2[RWU] remains set and the receiver remains in standby until another address frame appears on the unsynchronized receiver input signal.

A logic 1 in the bit position immediately preceding the stop bit clears the receiver's C2[RWU] after the stop bit is received and places the received data into the receiver data buffer. Note that if Match Address operation is enabled i.e. C4[MAEN1] or C4[MAEN2] is set, then received frame is transferred to receive buffer only if the comparison matches.

Address mark wakeup allows messages to contain idle characters but requires that the bit position immediately preceding the stop bit be reserved for use in address frames.

If module is in standby mode and nothing triggers to wake the UART, no error flag is set even if an invalid error condition is detected on the receiving data line.

Address mark wakeup is not supported when C7816[ISO_7816E] is set/enabled.

45.5.2.10.3 Match address operation

Match address operation is enabled when C4[MAEN1] or C4[MAEN2] is set. In this function, a frame received by the RX pin with a logic 1 in the bit position of the address mark is considered an address and is compared with the associated MA1 or MA2 register. The frame is transferred to the receive buffer, and S1[RDRF] is set, only if the comparison matches. All subsequent frames received with a logic 0 in the bit position of the address mark are considered to be data associated with the address and are transferred to the receive data buffer. If no marked address match occurs, then no transfer is made to the receive data buffer, and all following frames with logic 0 in the bit position of the address mark are also discarded. If both C4[MAEN1] and C4[MAEN2] are negated, the receiver operates normally and all data received is transferred to the receive data buffer.

Match address operation functions in the same way for both MA1 and MA2 registers. Note that the position of the address mark is the same as the Parity Bit when parity is enabled for 8 bit and 9 bit data formats.

- If only one of C4[MAEN1] and C4[MAEN2] is asserted, a marked address is compared only with the associated match register and data is transferred to the receive data buffer only on a match.
- If C4[MAEN1] and C4[MAEN2] are asserted, a marked address is compared with both match registers and data is transferred only on a match with either register.

Address match operation is not supported when C7816[ISO_7816E] is set/enabled.

45.5.3 Baud rate generation

A 13-bit modulus counter and a 5-bit fractional fine-adjust counter in the baud rate generator derive the baud rate for both the receiver and the transmitter. The value from 1 to 8191 written to SBR[12:0] determines the module clock divisor. The SBR bits are in the UART baud rate registers, BDH and BDL. The baud rate clock is synchronized with the module clock and drives the receiver. The fractional fine-adjust counter adds fractional delays to the baud rate clock to allow fine trimming of the baud rate to match the system baud rate. The transmitter is driven by the baud rate clock divided by 16. The receiver has an acquisition rate of 16 samples per bit time.

Baud rate generation is subject to two sources of error:

- Integer division of the module clock may not give the exact target frequency. This error can be reduced with the fine-adjust counter.
- Synchronization with the module clock can cause phase shift.

The Table 45-9 lists the available baud divisor fine adjust values.

UART baud rate = UART module clock / (16 × (SBR[12:0] + BRFD))

The following table lists some examples of achieving target baud rates with a module clock frequency of 10.2 MHz, with and without fractional fine adjustment.

Table 45-9. Baud rates (example: module clock = 10.2 MHz)

Bits SBR (decimal)	Bits BRFA	BRFD value	Receiver clock (Hz)	Transmitter clock (Hz)	Target Baud rate	Error (%)
17	00000	0	600,000.0	37,500.0	38,400	2.3
16	10011	19/32=0.59375	614,689.3	38,418.08	38,400	0.047
33	00000	0	309,090.9	19,318.2	19,200	0.62
33	00110	6/32=0.1875	307,344.6	19,209.04	19,200	0.047
66	00000	0	154,545.5	9659.1	9600	0.62
133	00000	0	76,691.7	4793.2	4800	0.14
266	00000	0	38,345.9	2396.6	2400	0.14
531	00000	0	19,209.0	1200.6	1200	0.11
1062	00000	0	9604.5	600.3	600	0.05
2125	00000	0	4800.0	300.0	300	0.00
4250	00000	0	2400.0	150.0	150	0.00
5795	00000	0	1760.1	110.0	110	0.00

Table 45-10. Baud rate fine adjust

BRFA	Baud Rate Fractional Divisor (BRFD)
0 0 0 0 0	0/32 = 0
0 0 0 0 1	1/32 = 0.03125
0 0 0 1 0	2/32 = 0.0625
0 0 0 1 1	3/32 = 0.09375
0 0 1 0 0	4/32 = 0.125
0 0 1 0 1	5/32 = 0.15625
0 0 1 1 0	6/32 = 0.1875
0 0 1 1 1	7/32 = 0.21875
0 1 0 0 0	8/32 = 0.25
0 1 0 0 1	9/32 = 0.28125
0 1 0 1 0	10/32 = 0.3125

Table continues on the next page...

Table 45-10. Baud rate fine adjust (continued)

BRFA	Baud Rate Fractional Divisor (BRFD)
0 1 0 1 1	11/32 = 0.34375
0 1 1 0 0	12/32 = 0.375
0 1 1 0 1	13/32 = 0.40625
0 1 1 1 0	14/32 = 0.4375
0 1 1 1 1	15/32 = 0.46875
1 0 0 0 0	16/32 = 0.5
1 0 0 0 1	17/32 = 0.53125
1 0 0 1 0	18/32 = 0.5625
1 0 0 1 1	19/32 = 0.59375
1 0 1 0 0	20/32 = 0.625
1 0 1 0 1	21/32 = 0.65625
1 0 1 1 0	22/32 = 0.6875
1 0 1 1 1	23/32 = 0.71875
1 1 0 0 0	24/32 = 0.75
1 1 0 0 1	25/32 = 0.78125
1 1 0 1 0	26/32 = 0.8125
1 1 0 1 1	27/32 = 0.84375
1 1 1 0 0	28/32 = 0.875
1 1 1 0 1	29/32 = 0.90625
1 1 1 1 0	30/32 = 0.9375
1 1 1 1 1	31/32 = 0.96875

45.5.4 Data format (non ISO-7816)

Each data character is contained in a frame that includes a start bit and a stop bit. The rest of the data format depends upon C1[M], C1[PE], S2[MSBF], BDH[SBNS] and C4[M10].

45.5.4.1 Eight-bit configuration

Clearing C1[M] configures the UART for 8-bit data characters, that is, eight bits are memory mapped in D. A frame with eight data bits has a total of 10 bits (This becomes 11 bits if BDH[SBNS] = 1). The most significant bit of the eight data bits can be used as an address mark to wake the receiver. If the most significant bit is used in this way, then it serves as an address or data indication, leaving the remaining seven bits as actual data. When C1[PE] is set, the eighth data bit is automatically calculated as the parity bit. See the following table.

Table 45-11. Configuration of 8-bit data format

UART_C1[PE]	Start bit	Data bits	Address bits	Parity bits	Stop bit
0	1	8	0	0	1
0	1	7	1	0	1
1	1	7	0	1	1

NOTE

In the last column of the above table, the number of stop bits become 2 when BDH[SBNS] is set.

45.5.4.2 Nine-bit configuration

When C1[M] is set and C4[M10] is cleared and BDH[SBNS] is cleared, the UART is configured for 9-bit data characters. If C1[PE] is enabled, the ninth bit is either C3[T8/R8] or the internally generated parity bit. This results in a frame consisting of a total of 11 bits. In the event that the ninth data bit is selected to be C3[T8], it will remain unchanged after transmission and can be used repeatedly without rewriting it, unless the value needs to be changed. This feature may be useful when the ninth data bit is being used as an address mark.

When C1[M] and C4[M10] are set and BDH[SBNS] is cleared, the UART is configured for 9-bit data characters, but the frame consists of a total of 12 bits. The 12 bits include the start and stop bits, the 9 data character bits, and a tenth internal data bit. Note that if C4[M10] is set, C1[PE] must also be set. In this case, the tenth bit is the internally generated parity bit. The ninth bit can either be used as an address mark or a ninth data bit.

See the following table.

Table 45-12. Configuration of 9-bit data formats

C1[PE]	UC1[M]	C1[M10]	Start bit	Data bits	Address bits	Parity bits	Stop bit
0	0	0	See Eight-bit configuration				
0	0	1	Invalid configuration				
0	1	0	1	9	0	0	1
0	1	0	1	8	1	0	1
0	1	1	Invalid Configuration				
1	0	0	See Eight-bit configuration				
1	0	1	Invalid Configuration				

Table continues on the next page...

Table 45-12. Configuration of 9-bit data formats (continued)

C1[PE]	UC1[M]	C1[M10]	Start bit	Data bits	Address bits	Parity bits	Stop bit
1	1	0	1	8	0	1	1
1	1	1	1	9	0	1	1
1	1	1	1	8	1	1	1

NOTE

In the last column of the above table, the number of stop bits become 2 when BDH[SBNS] is set.

Note

Unless in 9-bit mode with M10 set, do not use address mark wakeup with parity enabled.

45.5.4.3 Timing examples

Timing examples of these configurations in the NRZ mark/space data format are illustrated in the following figures. The timing examples show all of the configurations in the following sub-sections along with the LSB and MSB first variations. This section explains the data formats available assuming single stop bit mode is selected.

45.5.4.3.1 Eight-bit format with parity disabled

The most significant bit can be used for address mark wakeup.

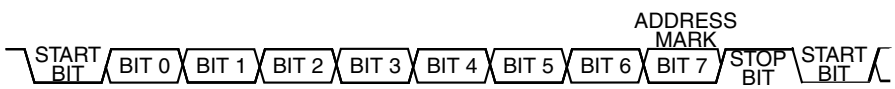


Figure 45-14. Eight bits of data with LSB first

Figure 45-15. Eight bits of data with MSB first

45.5.4.3.2 Eight-bit format with parity enabled

Figure 45-16. Seven bits of data with LSB first and parity

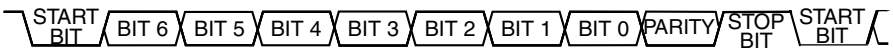


Figure 45-17. Seven bits of data with MSB first and parity

45.5.4.3.3 Nine-bit format with parity disabled

The most significant bit can be used for address mark wakeup.

Figure 45-18. Nine bits of data with LSB first

Figure 45-19. Nine bits of data with MSB first

45.5.4.3.4 Nine-bit format with parity enabled

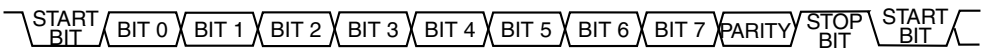


Figure 45-20. Eight bits of data with LSB first and parity

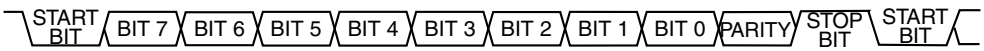


Figure 45-21. Eight bits of data with MSB first and parity

45.5.4.3.5 Non-memory mapped tenth bit for parity

The most significant memory-mapped bit can be used for address mark wakeup.

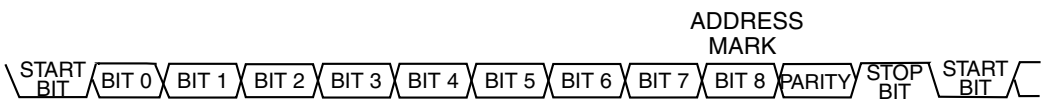


Figure 45-22. Nine bits of data with LSB first and parity

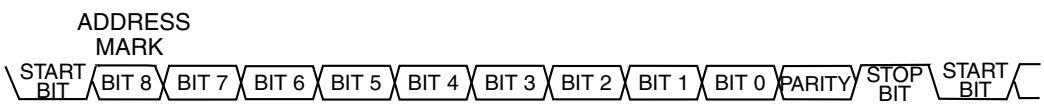


Figure 45-23. Nine bits of data with MSB first and parity

45.5.5 Single-wire operation

Normally, the UART uses two pins for transmitting and receiving. In single wire operation, the RXD pin is disconnected from the UART and the UART implements a half-duplex serial connection. The UART uses the TXD pin for both receiving and transmitting.

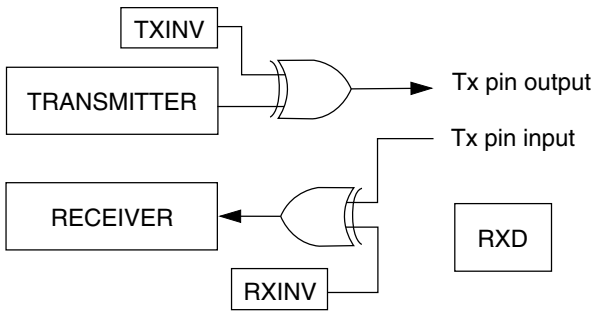


Figure 45-24. Single-wire operation (C1[LOOPS] = 1, C1[RSRC] = 1)

Enable single wire operation by setting C1[LOOPS] and the receiver source field, C1[RSRC]. Setting C1[LOOPS] disables the path from the unsynchronized receiver input signal to the receiver. Setting C1[RSRC] connects the receiver input to the output of the TXD pin driver. Both the transmitter and receiver must be enabled (C2[TE] = 1 and C2[RE] = 1). When C7816[ISO_7816EN] is set, it is not required that both C2[TE] and C2[RE] are set.

45.5.6 Loop operation

In loop operation, the transmitter output goes to the receiver input. The unsynchronized receiver input signal is disconnected from the UART.

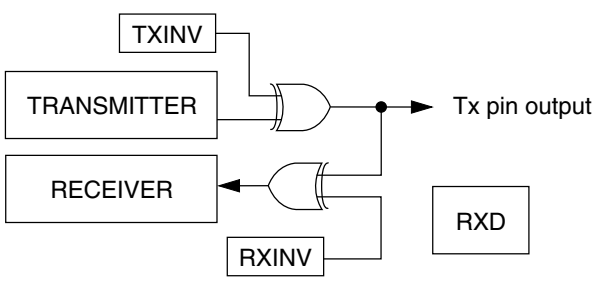


Figure 45-25. Loop operation (C1[LOOPS] = 1, C1[RSRC] = 0)

Enable loop operation by setting C1[LOOPS] and clearing C1[RSRC]. Setting C1[LOOPS] disables the path from the unsynchronized receiver input signal to the receiver. Clearing C1[RSRC] connects the transmitter output to the receiver input. Both the transmitter and receiver must be enabled (C2[TE] = 1 and C2[RE] = 1). When C7816[ISO_7816EN] is set, it is not required that both C2[TE] and C2[RE] are set.

45.5.7 ISO-7816/smartcard support

The UART provides mechanisms to support the ISO-7816 protocol that is commonly used to interface with smartcards. The ISO-7816 protocol is an NRZ, single wire, half-duplex interface. The TxD pin is used in open-drain mode because the data signal is used for both transmitting and receiving. There are multiple subprotocols within the ISO-7816 standard. The UART supports both T = 0 and T = 1 protocols. The module also provides for automated initial character detection and configuration, which allows for support of both direct convention and inverse convention data formats. A variety of interrupts specific to 7816 are provided in addition to the general interrupts to assist software. Additionally, the module is able to provide automated NACK responses and has programmed automated retransmission of failed packets. An assortment of programmable timeouts and guard band times are also supported.

The term elemental time unit (ETU) is frequently used in the context of ISO-7816. This concept is used to relate the frequency that the system (UART) is running at and the frequency that data is being transmitted and received. One ETU represents the time it takes to transmit or receive a single bit. For example, a standard 7816 packet, excluding any guard time or NACK elements is 10 ETUs (start bit, 8 data bits, and a parity bit). Guard times and wait times are also measured in ETUs.,

NOTE

The ISO-7816 specification may have certain configuration options that are reserved. To maintain maximum flexibility to support future 7816 enhancements or devices that may not strictly conform to the specification, the UART does not prevent those options being used. Further, the UART may provide configuration options that exceed the flexibility of options explicitly allowed by the 7816 specification. Failure to correctly configure the UART may result in unexpected behavior or incompatibility with the ISO-7816 specification.

45.5.7.1 Initial characters

In ISO-7816 with T = 0 mode, the UART can be configured to use C7816[INIT] to detect the next valid initial character, referred to by the ISO-7816 specifically as a TS character. When the initial character is detected, the UART provides the host processor with an interrupt if IE7816[INITDE] is set. Additionally, the UART will alter S2[MSBF],

C3[TXINV], and S2[RXINV] automatically, based on the initial character. The corresponding initial character and resulting register settings are listed in the following table.

Table 45-13. Initial character automated settings

Initial character (bit 1-10)	Initial character (hex)	MSBF	TXINV	RXINV
LHHL LLL LLH inverse convention	3F	1	1	1
LHHL HHH LLH direct convention	3B	0	0	0

S2[MSBF], C3[TXINV], and S2[RXINV] must be reset to their default values before C7816[INIT] is set. Once C7816[INIT] is set, the receiver searches all received data for the first valid initial character. Detecting a Direct Convention Initial Character will cause no change to S2[MSBF], C3[TXINV], and S2[RXINV], while detecting an Inverse Convention Initial Character will cause these fields to set automatically. All data received, which is not a valid initial character, is ignored and all flags resulting from the invalid data are blocked from asserting. If C7816[ANACK] is set, a NACK is returned for invalid received initial characters and an RXT interrupt is generated as programmed.

45.5.7.2 Protocol T = 0

When T = 0 protocol is selected, a relatively complex error detection scheme is used. Data characters are formatted as illustrated in the following figure. This scheme is also used for answer to reset and Peripheral Pin Select (PPS) formats.

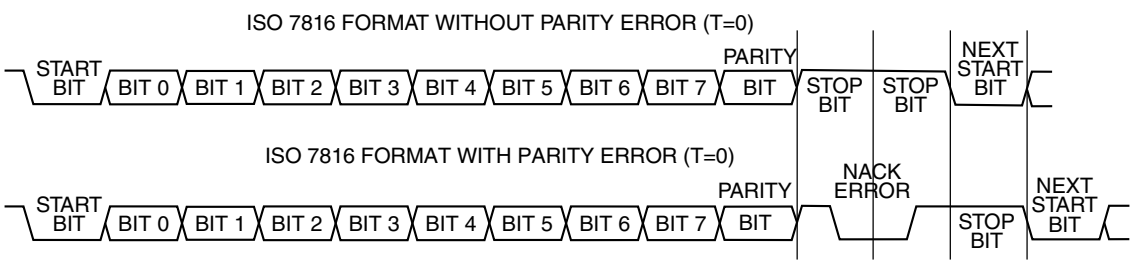


Figure 45-26. ISO-7816 T = 0 data format

As with other protocols supported by the UART, the data character includes a start bit. However, in this case, there are two stop bits rather than the typical single stop bit. In addition to a standard even parity check, the receiver has the ability to generate and return a NACK during the second half of the first stop bit period. The NACK must be at least

one time period (ETU) in length and no more than two time periods (ETU) in length. The transmitter must wait for at least two time units (ETU) after detection of the error signal before attempting to retransmit the character.

It is assumed that the UART and the device (smartcard) know in advance which device is receiving and which is transmitting. No special mechanism is supplied by the UART to control receive and transmit in the mode other than C2[TE] and C2[RE]. Initial Character Detect feature is also supported in this mode.

45.5.7.3 Protocol T = 1

When T = 1 protocol is selected, the NACK error detection scheme is not used. Rather, the parity bit is used on a character basis and a CRC or LRC is used on the block basis, that is, for each group of characters. In this mode, the data format allows for a single stop bit although additional inactive bit periods may be present between the stop bit and the next start bit. Data characters are formatted as illustrated in the following figure.

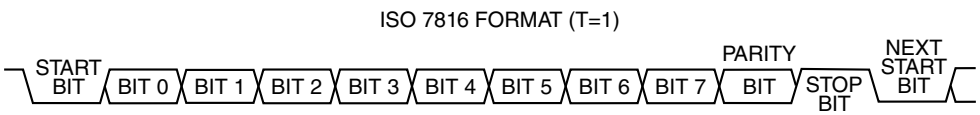


Figure 45-27. ISO 7816 T=1 data format

The smallest data unit that is transferred is a block. A block is made up of several data characters and may vary in size depending on the block type. The UART does not provide a mechanism to decode the block type. As part of the block, an LRC or CRC is included. The UART does not calculate the CRC or LRC for transmitted blocks, nor does it verify the validity of the CRC or LRC for received blocks. The 7816 protocol requires that the initiator and the smartcard (device) takes alternate turns in transmitting and receiving blocks. When the UART detects that the last character in a block has been transmitted it will automatically clear C2[TE], C3[TXDIR] and enter receive mode. Therefore, the software must program the transmit buffer with the next data to be transmitted and then enable C2[TE] and set C3[TXDIR], once the software has determined that the last character of the received block has been received. The UART detects that the last character of the transmit block has been sent when TL7816[TLEN] = 0 and four additional characters have been sent. The four additional characters are made up of three prior to TL7816[TLEN] decrementing (prologue) and one after TL7816[TLEN] = 0, the final character of the epilogue.

45.5.7.4 Wait time and guard time parameters

The ISO-7816 specification defines several wait time and guard time parameters. The UART allows for flexible configuration and violation detection of these settings. On reset, the wait time (IS7816[WT]) defaults to 9600 ETUs and guard time (GT) to 12 ETUs. These values are controlled by parameters in the WP7816, WN7816, and WF7816 registers. Additionally, the value of C7816[TTYPE] also factors into the calculation. The formulae used to calculate the number ETUs for each wait time and guard time value are shown in Table 45-14.

Wait time (WT) is defined as the maximum allowable time between the leading edge of a character transmitted by the smartcard device and the leading edge of the previous character that was transmitted by the UART or the device. Similarly, character wait time (CWT) is defined as the maximum allowable time between the leading edge of two characters within the same block. Block wait time (BWT) is defined as the maximum time between the leading edge character of the last block received by the smartcard device and the leading edge of the first character transmitted by the smartcard device.

Guard time (GT) is defined as the minimum allowable time between the leading edge of two consecutive characters. Character guard time (CGT) is the minimum allowable time between the leading edges of two consecutive characters in the same direction, that is, transmission or reception. Block guard time (BGT) is the minimum allowable time between the leading edges of two consecutive characters in opposite directions, that is, transmission then reception or reception then transmission.

The GT and WT counters reset whenever C7816[TTYPE] = 1 or C7816[ISO_7816E] = 0 or a new dataword start bit has been received or transmitted as specified by the counter descriptions. The CWT, CGT, BWT, BGT counters reset whenever C7816[TTYPE] = 0 or C7816[ISO_7816E] = 0 or a new dataword start bit is received or transmitted as specified by the counter descriptions. When C7816[TTYPE] = 1, some of the counter values require an assumption regarding the first data transferred when the UART first starts. This assumption is required when the 7816E is disabled, when transition from C7816[TTYPE] = 0 to C7816[TTYPE] = 1 or when coming out of reset. In this case, it is assumed that the previous non-existent transfer was a received transfer.

The UART will automatically handle GT, CGT, and BGT such that the UART will not send a packet before the corresponding guard time expiring.

Table 45-14. Wait and guard time calculations

Parameter	Reset value [ETU]	C7816[TTYPE] = 0 [ETU]	C7816[TTYPE] = 1 [ETU]
Wait time (WT)	9600	WI × 480	Not used
Character wait time (CWT)	Not used	Not used	$2^{(CWI1)}$ + CWI2

Table continues on the next page...

Table 45-14. Wait and guard time calculations (continued)

Parameter	Reset value [ETU]	C7816[TTYPE] = 0 [ETU]	C7816[TTYPE] = 1 [ETU]
Block wait time (BWT)	Not used	Not used	(11 + (BWI × 960 × GTFD)) * (WTX + 1)
Guard time (GT)	12	**GTN not equal to 255** 12 + GTN **GTN equal to 255** 12	Not used
Character guard time (CGT)	Not used	Not used	**GTN not equal to 255** 12 + GTN **GTN equal to 255** 11
Block guard time (BGT)	Not used	Not used	16 + BGI

NOTE

- User must ensure that the Character Wait time (CWT) programmed using the formula above is atleast 12. Values smaller than 12 are invalid and will lead to unexpected CWT interrupts.
- The 16 bit Wait Time integer WI is formed by concatenation of {WP7816A_T0[WI_H], WP7816B_T0[WI_L]}.
- The 16 bit Block Wait Time integer BWI is formed by concatenation of {WP7816A_T1[BWI_H], WP7816B_T1[BWI_L]}.

45.5.7.5 ATR Duration Time Counter

The ISO-7816 specification defines a specific time (in etus) within which the terminal must receive the ATR (Answer to Reset), failing which the terminal must abort the card session by initiating the deactivation sequence.

UART supports this in hardware via the ATR Duration Time (ATD) Counter which can be programmed using AP7816a_T0 and AP7816b_T0 registers. The value loaded into the ADT (ATR Duration Time) counter is given by the concatenation of the register fields as shown; ADT = {AP7816a_T0[ADTI_H], AP7816a_T0[ADTI_L]}. This counter begins to count on detection of the TS character which is detected when IS7816[INITD] flag is

set. Once the ATR process is completed, the ATD Counter must be disabled by writing 0 to AP7816x_T0 registers, in order to prevent the false occurrence of the ATD Duration Time interrupt IS7816[ATD]. Note that this feature is only supported in T = 0 mode.

NOTE

The ADT counter starts counting on detection of the complete TS Character. It must be noted that by this time, exactly 10 ETUs have elapsed since the start bit of the TS character. The user must take this into account while programming AP7816a_T0 and AP7816b_T0 registers.

45.5.7.6 Baud rate generation

The value in WF7816[GTFD] does not impact the clock frequency. SBR and BRFD are used to generate the clock frequency. This clock frequency is used by the UART only and is not seen by the smartcard device. The transmitter clocks operates at 1/16 the frequency of the receive clock so that the receiver is able to sample the received value 16 times during the ETU.

45.5.7.7 UART restrictions in ISO-7816 operation

Due to the flexibility of the UART module, there are several features and interrupts that are not supported while running in ISO-7816 mode. These restrictions are documented within the register field definitions.

45.5.8 Infrared interface

The UART provides the capability of transmitting narrow pulses to an IR LED and receiving narrow pulses and transforming them to serial bits, which are sent to the UART. The IrDA physical layer specification defines a half-duplex infrared communication link for exchanging data. The full standard includes data rates up to 16 Mbits/s. This design covers data rates only between 2.4 kbits/s and 115.2 kbits/s.

The UART has an infrared transmit encoder and receive decoder. The UART transmits serial bits of data that are encoded by the infrared submodule to transmit a narrow pulse for every zero bit. No pulse is transmitted for every one bit. When receiving data, the IR pulses are detected using an IR photo diode and transformed to CMOS levels by the IR receive decoder, external from the MCU. The narrow pulses are then stretched by the infrared receive decoder to get back to a serial bit stream to be received by the UART.

The polarity of transmitted pulses and expected receive pulses can be inverted so that a direct connection can be made to external IrDA transceiver modules that use active low pulses.

The infrared submodule receives its clock sources from the UART. One of these two clocks are selected in the infrared submodule to generate either 3/16, 1/16, 1/32, or 1/4 narrow pulses during transmission.

45.5.8.1 Infrared transmit encoder

The infrared transmit encoder converts serial bits of data from transmit shift register to the TXD signal. A narrow pulse is transmitted for a zero bit and no pulse for a one bit. The narrow pulse is sent in the middle of the bit with a duration of 1/32, 1/16, 3/16, or 1/4 of a bit time. A narrow high pulse is transmitted for a zero bit when C3[TXINV] is cleared, while a narrow low pulse is transmitted for a zero bit when C3[TXINV] is set.

45.5.8.2 Infrared receive decoder

The infrared receive block converts data from the RXD signal to the receive shift register. A narrow pulse is expected for each zero received and no pulse is expected for each one received. A narrow high pulse is expected for a zero bit when S2[RXINV] is cleared, while a narrow low pulse is expected for a zero bit when S2[RXINV] is set. This receive decoder meets the edge jitter requirement as defined by the IrDA serial infrared physical layer specification.

45.6 Reset

All registers reset to a particular value are indicated in Memory map and registers.

45.7 System level interrupt sources

There are several interrupt signals that are sent from the UART. The following table lists the interrupt sources generated by the UART. The local enables for the UART interrupt sources are described in this table. Details regarding the individual operation of each interrupt are contained under various sub-sections of Memory map and registers. However, RXEDGIF description also outlines additional details regarding the RXEDGIF interrupt because of its complexity of operation. Any of the UART interrupt requests listed in the table can be used to bring the CPU out of Wait mode.

Table 45-15. UART interrupt sources

Interrupt Source	Flag	Local enable	DMA select
Transmitter	TDRE	TIE	TDMAS = 0
Transmitter	TC	TCIE	-
Receiver	IDLE	ILIE	-
Receiver	RDRF	RIE	RDMAS = 0
Receiver	LBKDIF	LBKDIE	LBKDDMAS = 0
Receiver	RXEDGIF	RXEDGIE	-
Receiver	OR	ORIE	-
Receiver	NF	NEIE	-
Receiver	FE	FEIE	-
Receiver	PF	PEIE	-
Receiver	RXUF	RXUFE	-
Transmitter	TXOF	TXOFE	-
Receiver	WT	WTWE	-
Receiver	CWT	CWTE	-
Receiver	BWT	BWTE	-
Receiver	INITD	INITDE	-
Receiver	TXT	TXTE	-
Receiver	RXT	RXTE	-
Receiver	GTV	GTVE	-

45.7.1 RXEDGIF description

S2[RXEDGIF] is set when an active edge is detected on the RxD pin. Therefore, the active edge can be detected only when in two wire mode. A RXEDGIF interrupt is generated only when S2[RXEDGIF] is set. If RXEDGIE is not enabled before S2[RXEDGIF] is set, an interrupt is not generated.

45.7.1.1 RxD edge detect sensitivity

Edge sensitivity can be software programmed to be either falling or rising. The polarity of the edge sensitivity is selected using S2[RXINV]. To detect the falling edge, S2[RXINV] is programmed to 0. To detect the rising edge, S2[RXINV] is programmed to 1.

Synchronizing logic is used prior to detect edges. Prior to detecting an edge, the receive data on RxD input must be at the deasserted logic level. A falling edge is detected when the RxD input signal is seen as a logic 1 (the deasserted level) during one module clock

cycle, and then a logic 0 (the asserted level) during the next cycle. A rising edge is detected when the input is seen as a logic 0 during one module clock cycle and then a logic 1 during the next cycle.

45.7.1.2 Clearing RXEDGIF interrupt request

Writing a logic 1 to S2[RXEDGIF] immediately clears the RXEDGIF interrupt request even if the RxD input remains asserted. S2[RXEDGIF] remains set if another active edge is detected on RxD while attempting to clear S2[RXEDGIF] by writing a 1 to it.

45.7.1.3 Exit from low-power modes

The receive input active edge detect circuit is still active on low power modes (Wait and Stop). An active edge on the receive input brings the CPU out of low power mode if the interrupt is not masked (S2[RXEDGIF] = 1).

45.8 DMA operation

In the transmitter, S1[TDRE] can be configured to assert a DMA transfer request. In the receiver, S1[RDRF],and S2[LBKDIF] can be configured to assert a DMA transfer request. The following table shows the configuration field settings required to configure each flag for DMA operation.

Table 45-16. DMA configuration

Flag	Request enable bit	DMA select bit
TDRE	TIE = 1	TDMAS = 1
RDRF	RIE = 1	RDMAS = 1
LBKDIF	LBKDIE = 1	LBKDDMAS = 1

When a flag is configured for a DMA request, its associated DMA request is asserted when the flag is set. When S1[RDRF] is configured as a DMA request, the clearing mechanism of reading S1, followed by reading D, does not clear the associated flag. The DMA request remains asserted until an indication is received that the DMA transactions are done. When this indication is received, the flag bit and the associated DMA request is cleared. If the DMA operation failed to remove the situation that caused the DMA request, another request is issued.

45.9 Application information

This section describes the UART application information.

45.9.1 Transmit/receive data buffer operation

The UART has independent receive and transmit buffers. The size of these buffers may vary depending on the implementation of the module. The implemented size of the buffers is a fixed constant via PFIFO[TXFIFOSIZE] and PFIFO[RXFIFOSIZE]. Additionally, legacy support is provided that allows for the FIFO structure to operate as a depth of one. This is the default/reset behavior of the module and can be adjusted using the PFIFO[RXFE] and PFIFO[TXFE] bits. Individual watermark levels are also provided for transmit and receive.

There are multiple ways to ensure that a data block, which is a set of characters, has completed transmission. These methods include:

1. Set TXFIFO[TXWATER] to 0. TDRE asserts when there is no further data in the transmit buffer. Alternatively the S1[TC] flag can be used to indicate when the transmit shift register is also empty.
2. Poll TCFIFO[TXCOUNT]. Assuming that only data for a data block has been put into the data buffer, when TCFIFO[TXCOUNT] = 0, all data has been transmitted or is in the process of transmission.
3. S1[TC] can be monitored. When S1[TC] asserts, it indicates that all data has been transmitted and there is no data currently being transmitted in the shift register.

45.9.2 ISO-7816 initialization sequence

This section outlines how to program the UART for ISO-7816 operation. Elements such as procedures to power up or power down the smartcard, and when to take those actions, are beyond the scope of this description. To set up the UART for ISO-7816 operation:

1. Select a baud rate. Write this value to the UART baud registers (BDH/L) to begin the baud rate generator. Remember that the baud rate generator is disabled when the baud rate is zero. Writing to the BDH has no effect without also writing to BDL. According to the 7816 specification the initial (default) baud rating setting should be Fi = 372 and Di = 1 and a maximum frequency of 5 MHz. In other words, the BDH,

BDL, and C4 registers should be programmed such that the transmission frequency provided to the smartcard device must be 1/372th of the clock and must not exceed 5 MHz.

2. Write to set BDH[LBKDIE] = 0.
3. Write to C1 to configure word length, parity, and other configuration fields (LOOPS, RSRC) and set C1[M] = 1, C1[PE] = 1, and C1[PT] = 0.
4. Write to set S2[RWUID] = 0 and S2[LBKDE] = 0.
5. Write to set MODEM[RXRTSE] = 0, MODEM[TXRTSPOL] = 0, MODEM[TXRTSE] = 0, and MODEM[TXCTSE] = 0.
6. Write to set up interrupt enable fields desired (C3[ORIE], C3[NEIE], C3[PEIE], and C3[FEIE])
7. Write to set C4[MAEN1] = 0 and C4[MAEN2] = 0.
8. Write to C5 register and configure DMA control register fields as desired for application.
9. Write to set C7816[INIT] = 1,C7816[TTYPE] = 0, and C7816[ISO_7816E] = 1. Program C7816[ONACK] and C7816[ANACK] as desired.
10. Write to IE7816 to set interrupt enable parameters as desired.
11. Write to ET7816 and set as desired.
12. Write to set C2[ILIE] = 0, C2[RE] = 1, C2[TE] = 1, C2[RWU] = 0, and C2[SBK] = 0. Set up interrupt enables C2[TIE], C2[TCIE], and C2[RIE] as desired.

At this time, the UART will start listening for an initial character. After being identified, it will automatically adjust S2[MSBF], C3[TXINV], and S2[RXINV]. The software must then receive and process an answer to reset. Upon processing the answer to reset, the software must write to set C2[RE] = 0 and C2[TE] = 0. The software should then adjust 7816 specific and UART generic parameters to match and configure data that was received during the answer on reset period. After the new settings have been programmed, including the new baud rate and C7816[TTYPE], C2[RE] and C2[TE] can be reenabled as required.

45.9.2.1 Transmission procedure for (C7816[TTYPE] = 0)

When the protocol selected is C7816[TTYPE] = 0, it is assumed that the software has a prior knowledge of who should be transmitting and receiving. Therefore, no mechanism is provided for automated transmission/receipt control. The software must monitor

S1[TDRE], or configure for an interrupt, and provide additional data for transmission, as appropriate. Additionally, software should set C2[TE] = 1 and control TXDIR whenever it is the UART's turn to transmit information. For ease of monitoring, it is suggested that only data be transmitted until the next receiver/transmit switchover is loaded into the transmit FIFO/buffer.

45.9.2.2 Transmission procedure for (C7816[TTYPE] = 1)

When the protocol selected is C7816[TTYPE] = 1, data is transferred in blocks. Before starting a transmission, the software must write the size, in number of bytes, for the Information Field portion of the block into TLEN. If a CRC is being transmitted for the block, the value in TLEN must be one more than the size of the information field. The software must then set C2[TE] = 1 and C2[RE] = 1. The software must then monitor S1[TDRE]/interrupt and write the prologue, information, and epilogue field to the transmit buffer. TLEN automatically decrements, except for prologue bytes and the final epilogue byte. When the final epilogue byte has been transmitted, the UART automatically clears C2[TE] and C3[TXDIR] to 0, and the UART automatically starts capturing the response to the block that was transmitted. After the software has detected the receipt of the response, the transmission process must be repeated as needed with sufficient urgency to ensure that the block wait time and character wait times are not violated.

45.9.3 Initialization sequence (non ISO-7816)

To initiate a UART transmission:

1. Configure the UART.
    a. Select a baud rate. Write this value to the UART baud registers (BDH/L) to begin the baud rate generator. Remember that the baud rate generator is disabled when the baud rate is zero. Writing to the BDH has no effect without also writing to BDL.
    b. Write to C1 to configure word length, parity, and other configuration bits (LOOPS, RSRC, M, WAKE, ILT, PE, and PT). Write to C4, MA1, and MA2 to configure.
    c. Enable the transmitter, interrupts, receiver, and wakeup as required, by writing to C2 (TIE, TCIE, RIE, ILIE, TE, RE, RWU, and SBK), S2 (MSBF and BRK13), and C3 (ORIE, NEIE, PEIE, and FEIE). A preamble or idle character is then shifted out of the transmitter shift register.

2. Transmit procedure for each byte.
    a. Monitor S1[TDRE] by reading S1 or responding to the TDRE interrupt. The amount of free space in the transmit buffer directly using TCFIFO[TXCOUNT] can also be monitored.
    b. If the TDRE flag is set, or there is space in the transmit buffer, write the data to be transmitted to (C3[T8]/D). A new transmission will not result until data exists in the transmit buffer.
3. Repeat step 2 for each subsequent transmission.

Note

During normal operation, S1[TDRE] is set when the shift register is loaded with the next data to be transmitted from the transmit buffer and the number of datawords contained in the transmit buffer is less than or equal to the value in TWFIFO[TXWATER]. This occurs 9/16ths of a bit time after the start of the stop bit of the previous frame.

To separate messages with preambles with minimum idle line time, use this sequence between messages.

1. Write the last dataword of the first message to C3[T8]/D.
2. Wait for S1[TDRE] to go high with TWFIFO[TXWATER] = 0, indicating the transfer of the last frame to the transmit shift register.
3. Queue a preamble by clearing and then setting C2[TE].
4. Write the first and subsequent datawords of the second message to C3[T8]/D.

45.9.4 Overrun (OR) flag implications

To be flexible, the overrun flag (OR) operates slight differently depending on the mode of operation. There may be implications that need to be carefully considered. This section clarifies the behavior and the resulting implications. Regardless of mode, if a dataword is received while S1[OR] is set, S1[RDRF] and S1[IDLE] are blocked from asserting. If S1[RDRF] or S1[IDLE] were previously asserted, they will remain asserted until cleared.

45.9.4.1 Overrun operation

The assertion of S1[OR] indicates that a significant event has occurred. The assertion indicates that received data has been lost because there was a lack of room to store it in the data buffer. Therefore, while S1[OR] is set, no further data is stored in the data buffer until S1[OR] is cleared. This ensures that the application will be able to handle the overrun condition.

In most applications, because the total amount of lost data is known, the application will attempt to return the system to a known state. Before S1[OR] is cleared, all received data will be dropped. For this, the software does the following.

1. Remove data from the receive data buffer. This could be done by reading data from the data buffer and processing it if the data in the FIFO was still valuable when the overrun event occurred, or using CFIFO[RXFLUSH] to clear the buffer.
2. Clear S1[OR]. Note that if data was cleared using CFIFO[RXFLUSH], then clearing S1[OR] will result in SFIFO[RXUF] asserting. This is because the only way to clear S1[OR] requires reading additional information from the FIFO. Care should be taken to disable the SFIFO[RXUF] interrupt prior to clearing the OR flag and then clearing SFIFO[RXUF] after the OR flag has been cleared.

Note that, in some applications, if an overrun event is responded to fast enough, the lost data can be recovered. For example, when C7816[ISO_7816E] is asserted, C7816[TTYPE]=1 and C7816[ONACK] = 1, the application may reasonably be able to determine whether the lost data will be resent by the device. In this scenario, flushing the receiver data buffer may not be required. Rather, if S1[OR] is cleared, the lost data may be resent and therefore may be recoverable.

When LIN break detect (LBKDE) is asserted, S1[OR] has significantly different behavior than in other modes. S1[OR] will be set, regardless of how much space is actually available in the data buffer, if a LIN break character has been detected and the corresponding flag, S2[LBKDIF], is not cleared before the first data character is received after S2[LBKDIF] asserted. This behavior is intended to allow the software sufficient time to read the LIN break character from the data buffer to ensure that a break character was actually detected. The checking of the break character was used on some older implementations and is therefore supported for legacy reasons. Applications that do not require this checking can simply clear S2[LBKDIF] without checking the stored value to ensure it is a break character.

45.9.5 Overrun NACK considerations

When C7816[ISO_7816E] is enabled and C7816[TTYPE] = 0, the retransmission feature of the 7816 protocol can be used to help avoid lost data when the data buffer overflows. Using C7816[ONACK], the module can be programmed to issue a NACK on an overflow event. Assuming that the smartcard device has implemented retransmission, the lost data will be retransmitted. While useful, there is a programming implication that may require special consideration. The need to transmit a NACK must be determined and committed to prior to the dataword being fully received. While the NACK is being received, it is possible that the application code will read the data buffer such that sufficient room will be made to store the dataword that is being NACKed. Even if room has been made in the data buffer after the transmission of a NACK is completed, the received data will always be discarded as a result of an overflow and the ET7816[RXTHRESHOLD] value will be incremented by one. However, if sufficient space now exists to write the received data which was NACK'ed, S1[OR] will be blocked and kept from asserting.

45.9.6 Match address registers

The two match address registers allow a second match address function for a broadcast or general call address to the serial bus, as an example.

45.9.7 Modem feature

This section describes the modem features.

45.9.7.1 Ready-to-receive using RTS

To help to stop overrun of the receiver data buffer, the RTS signal can be used by the receiver to indicate to another UART that it is ready to receive data. The other UART can send the data when its CTS signal is asserted. This handshaking conforms to the TIA-232-E standard. A transceiver is necessary if the required voltage levels of the communication link do not match the voltage levels of the UART's RTS and CTS signals.

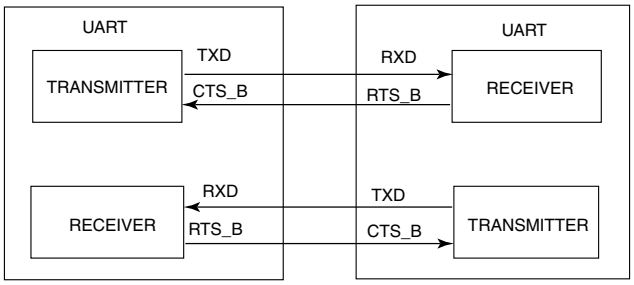


Figure 45-28. Ready-to-receive

The transmitter's CTS signal can be used for hardware flow control whether its RTS signal is used for hardware flow control, transceiver driver enable, or not at all.

45.9.7.2 Transceiver driver enable using RTS

RS-485 is a multiple drop communication protocol in which the UART transceiver's driver is 3-stated unless the UART is driving. The RTS signal can be used by the transmitter to enable the driver of a transceiver. The polarity of RTS can be matched to the polarity of the transceiver's driver enable signal. See the following figure.

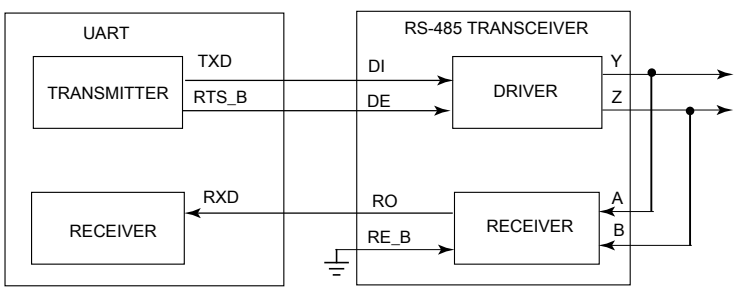


Figure 45-29. Transceiver driver enable using RTS

In the figure, the receiver enable signal is asserted. Another option for this connection is to connect RTS_B to both DE and RE_B. The transceiver's receiver is disabled while driving. A pullup can pull RXD to a non-floating value during this time. This option can be refined further by operating the UART in single wire mode, freeing the RXD pin for other uses.

45.9.8 IrDA minimum pulse width

The IrDA specifies a minimum pulse width of 1.6 µs. The UART hardware does not include a mechanism to restrict/force the pulse width to be greater than or equal to 1.6 µs. However, configuring the baud rate to 115.2 kbit/s and the narrow pulse width to 3/16 of a bit time results in a pulse width of 1.6 µs.

45.9.9 Clearing 7816 wait timer (WT, BWT, CWT) interrupts

The 7816 wait timer interrupts associated with IS7816[WT], IS7816[BWT], and IS7816[CWT] will automatically reassert if they are cleared and the wait time is still violated. This behavior is similar to most of the other interrupts on the UART. In most cases, if the condition that caused the interrupt to trigger still exists when the interrupt is cleared, then the interrupt will reassert. For example, consider the following scenario:

1. IS7816[WT] is programmed to assert after 9600 cycles of unresponsiveness.
2. The 9600 cycles pass without a response resulting in the WT interrupt asserting.
3. The IS7816[WT] is cleared at cycle 9700 by the interrupt service routine.
4. After the WT interrupt has been cleared, the smartcard remains unresponsive. At cycle 9701 the WT interrupt will be reasserted.

If the intent of clearing the interrupt is such that it does not reassert, the interrupt service routine must remove or clear the condition that originally caused the interrupt to assert prior to clearing the interrupt. There are multiple ways that this can be accomplished, including ensuring that an event that results in the wait timer resetting occurs, such as, the transmission of another packet.

45.9.10 Legacy and reverse compatibility considerations

Recent versions of the UART have added several new features. Whenever reasonably possible, reverse compatibility was maintained. However, in some cases this was either not feasible or the behavior was deemed as not intended. This section describes several differences to legacy operation that resulted from these recent enhancements. If application code from previous versions is used, it must be reviewed and modified to take the following items into account. Depending on the application code, additional items that are not listed here may also need to be considered.

1. Various reserved registers and register bits are used, such as, MSFB and M10.
2. This module now generates an error when invalid address spaces are used.
3. While documentation indicated otherwise, in some cases it was possible for S1[IDLE] to assert even if S1[OR] was set.
4. S1[OR] will be set only if the data buffer (FIFO) does not have sufficient room. Previously, the data buffer was always a fixed size of one and the S1[OR] flag would set so long as S1[RDRF] was set even if there was room in the data buffer. While the clearing mechanism has remained the same for S1[RDRF], keeping the OR flag assertion tied to the RDRF event rather than the data buffer being full would have greatly reduced the usefulness of the buffer when its size is larger than one.

5. Previously, when C2[RWU] was set (and WAKE = 0), the IDLE flag could reassert up to every bit period causing an interrupt and requiring the host processor to reassert C2[RWU]. This behavior has been modified. Now, when C2[RWU] is set (and WAKE = 0), at least one non-idle bit must be detected before an idle can be detected.

Chapter 46
Low Power Universal Asynchronous Receiver/ Transmitter (LPUART)

46.1 Chip-specific Information for this Module

46.1.1 LPUART0 overview

The LPUART0 module supports basic UART with DMA interface function and x4 to x32 oversampling of baud-rate.

The module can remain functional in Stop and VLPS mode provided the clock it is using remains enabled.

This module supports LIN slave operation.

NOTE

The USB DP/DM pin can be configured as UART TX/RX according to SIM_MISCCTRL[UARTSELONUSB]. For more details, see UART Over USB Capability section in the USBFSOTG chapter.

46.2 Introduction

46.2.1 Features

Features of the LPUART module include:

- Full-duplex, standard non-return-to-zero (NRZ) format

- Programmable baud rates (13-bit modulo divider) with configurable oversampling ratio from 4x to 32x
- Transmit and receive baud rate can operate asynchronous to the bus clock:
  - Baud rate can be configured independently of the bus clock frequency
  - Supports operation in Stop modes
- Interrupt, DMA or polled operation:
  - Transmit data register empty and transmission complete
  - Receive data register full
  - Receive overrun, parity error, framing error, and noise error
  - Idle receiver detect
  - Active edge on receive pin
  - Break detect supporting LIN
  - Receive data match
- Hardware parity generation and checking
- Programmable 8-bit, 9-bit or 10-bit character length
- Programmable 1-bit or 2-bit stop bits
- Three receiver wakeup methods:
  - Idle line wakeup
  - Address mark wakeup
  - Receive data match
- Automatic address matching to reduce ISR overhead:
  - Address mark matching
  - Idle line address matching
  - Address match start, address match end
- Optional 13-bit break character generation / 11-bit break character detection
- Configurable idle length detection supporting 1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 32, 64 or 128 idle characters
- Selectable transmitter output and receiver input polarity
- Hardware flow control support for request to send (RTS) and clear to send (CTS) signals
- Selectable IrDA 1.4 return-to-zero-inverted (RZI) format with programmable pulse width

46.2.2 Modes of operation

46.2.2.1 Stop mode

The LPUART will remain functional during Stop mode, provided the asynchronous transmit and receive clock remains enabled. The LPUART can generate an interrupt or DMA request to cause a wakeup from Stop mode.

46.2.2.2 Wait mode

The LPUART can be configured to Stop in Wait modes, when the DOZEEN bit is set. The transmitter and receiver will finish transmitting/receiving the current word.

46.2.2.3 Debug mode

The LPUART remains functional in debug mode.

46.2.3 Signal Descriptions

Signal	Description	I/O
LPUART_TX	Transmit data. This pin is normally an output, but is an input (tristated) in single wire mode whenever the transmitter is disabled or transmit direction is configured for receive data.	I/O
LPUART_RX	Receive data.	I
LPUART_CTS	Clear to send.	I
LPUART_RTS	Request to send.	O

46.2.4 Block diagram

The following figure shows the transmitter portion of the LPUART.

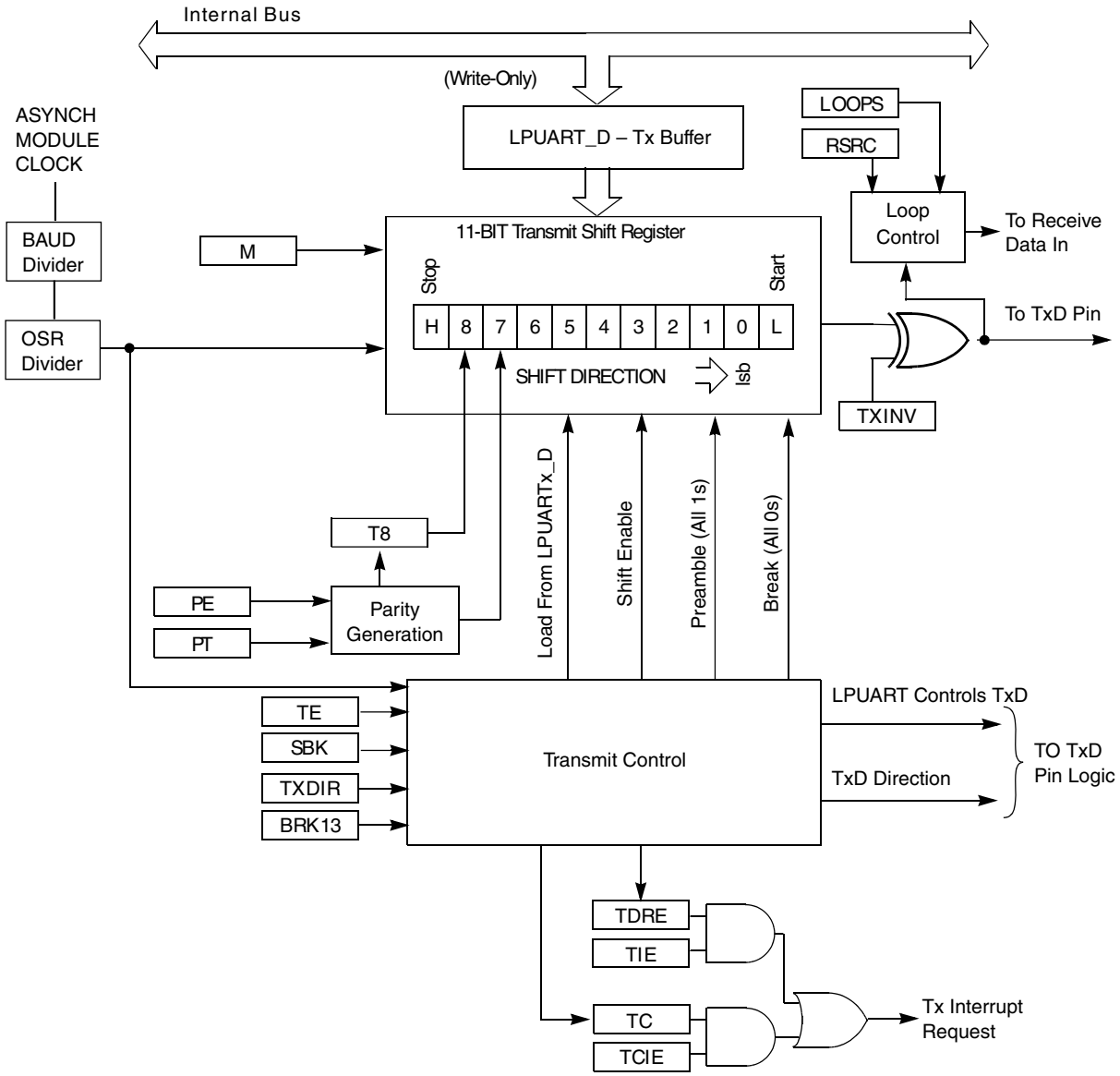


Figure 46-1. LPUART transmitter block diagram

The following figure shows the receiver portion of the LPUART.

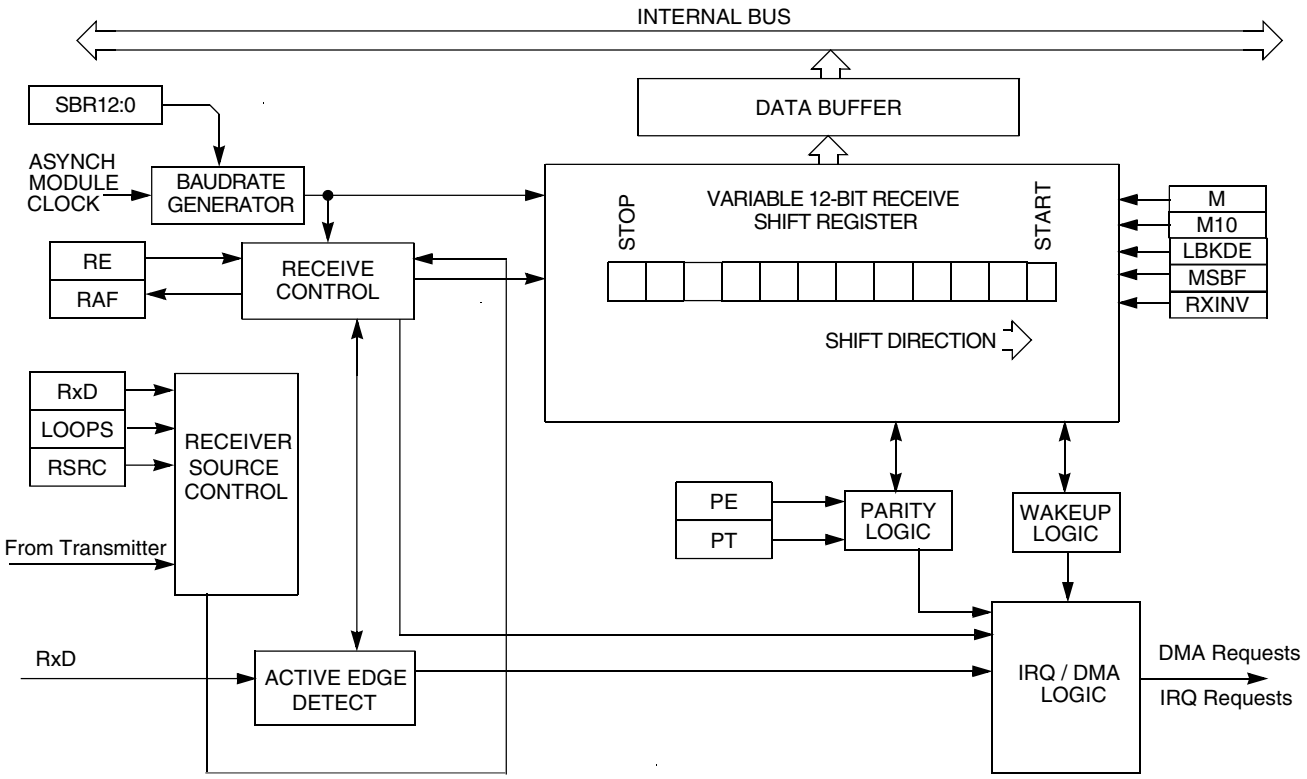


Figure 46-2. LPUART receiver block diagram

46.3 Register definition

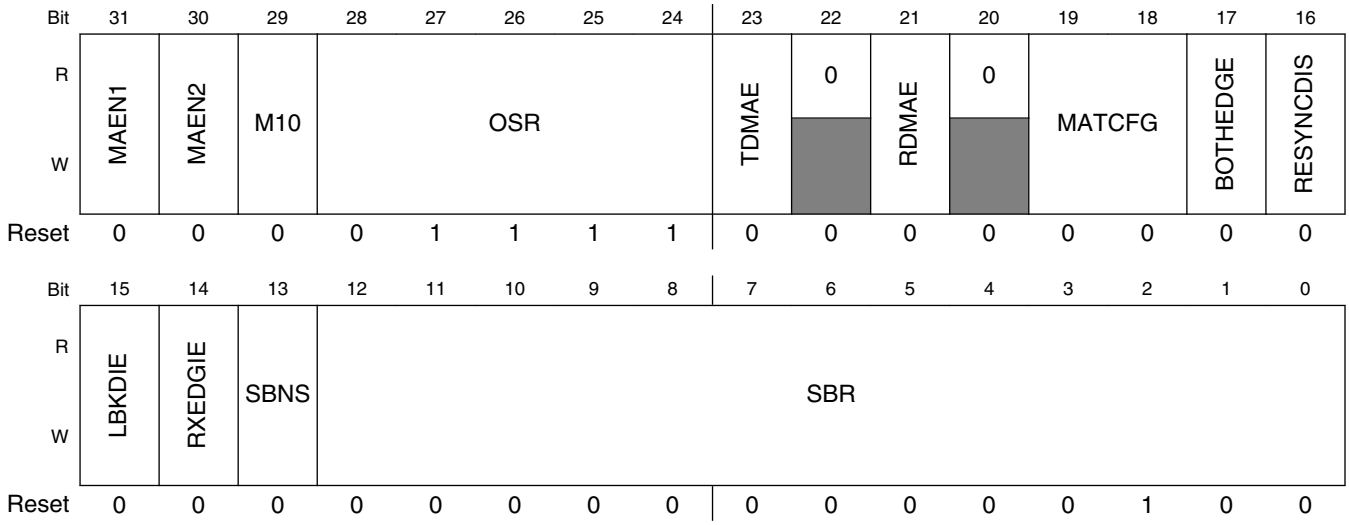
The LPUART includes registers to control baud rate, select LPUART options, report LPUART status, and for transmit/receive data. Access to an address outside the valid memory map will generate a bus error.

LPUART memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4002_A000	LPUART Baud Rate Register (LPUART0_BAUD)	32	R/W	0F00_0004h	46.3.1/1238
4002_A004	LPUART Status Register (LPUART0_STAT)	32	R/W	00C0_0000h	46.3.2/1240
4002_A008	LPUART Control Register (LPUART0_CTRL)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	46.3.3/1244
4002_A00C	LPUART Data Register (LPUART0_DATA)	32	R/W	0000_1000h	46.3.4/1249
4002_A010	LPUART Match Address Register (LPUART0_MATCH)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	46.3.5/1251
4002_A014	LPUART Modem IrDA Register (LPUART0_MODIR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	46.3.6/1251

46.3.1 LPUART Baud Rate Register (LPUARTx_BAUD)

Address: 4002_A000h base + 0h offset = 4002_A000h



LPUARTx_BAUD field descriptions

Field	Description
31 MAEN1	Match Address Mode Enable 1 0 Normal operation. 1 Enables automatic address matching or data matching mode for MATCH[MA1].
30 MAEN2	Match Address Mode Enable 2 0 Normal operation. 1 Enables automatic address matching or data matching mode for MATCH[MA2].
29 M10	10-bit Mode select The M10 bit causes a tenth bit to be part of the serial transmission. This bit should only be changed when the transmitter and receiver are both disabled. 0 Receiver and transmitter use 8-bit or 9-bit data characters. 1 Receiver and transmitter use 10-bit data characters.
28–24 OSR	Oversampling Ratio This field configures the oversampling ratio for the receiver between 4x (00011) and 32x (11111). Writing an invalid oversampling ratio (for example, a value not between 4x and 32x) will default to an oversampling ratio of 16 (01111). The OSR field should only be changed when the transmitter and receiver are both disabled. Note that the oversampling ratio = OSR + 1.
23 TDMAE	Transmitter DMA Enable TDMAE configures the transmit data register empty flag, LPUART_STAT[TDRE], to generate a DMA request. 0 DMA request disabled. 1 DMA request enabled.

Table continues on the next page...

LPUARTx_BAUD field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
22 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
21 RDMAE	Receiver Full DMA Enable RDMAE configures the receiver data register full flag, LPUART_STAT[RDRF], to generate a DMA request. 0 DMA request disabled. 1 DMA request enabled.
20 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
19–18 MATCFG	Match Configuration Configures the match addressing mode used. 00 Address Match Wakeup 01 Idle Match Wakeup 10 Match On and Match Off 11 Enables RWU on Data Match and Match On/Off for transmitter CTS input
17 BOTHEDGE	Both Edge Sampling Enables sampling of the received data on both edges of the baud rate clock, effectively doubling the number of times the receiver samples the input data for a given oversampling ratio. This bit must be set for oversampling ratios between x4 and x7 and is optional for higher oversampling ratios. This bit should only be changed when the receiver is disabled. 0 Receiver samples input data using the rising edge of the baud rate clock. 1 Receiver samples input data using the rising and falling edge of the baud rate clock.
16 RESYNCDIS	Resynchronization Disable When set, disables the resynchronization of the received data word when a data one followed by data zero transition is detected. This bit should only be changed when the receiver is disabled. 0 Resynchronization during received data word is supported 1 Resynchronization during received data word is disabled
15 LBKDIE	LIN Break Detect Interrupt Enable LBKDIE enables the LIN break detect flag, LBKDIF, to generate interrupt requests. 0 Hardware interrupts from LPUART_STAT[LBKDIF] disabled (use polling). 1 Hardware interrupt requested when LPUART_STAT[LBKDIF] flag is 1.
14 RXEDGIE	RX Input Active Edge Interrupt Enable Enables the receive input active edge, RXEDGIF, to generate interrupt requests. Changing CTRL[LOOP] or CTRL[RSRC] when RXEDGIE is set can cause the RXEDGIF to set. 0 Hardware interrupts from LPUART_STAT[RXEDGIF] disabled (use polling). 1 Hardware interrupt requested when LPUART_STAT[RXEDGIF] flag is 1.
13 SBNS	Stop Bit Number Select SBNS determines whether data characters are one or two stop bits. This bit should only be changed when the transmitter and receiver are both disabled.

Table continues on the next page...

LPUARTx_BAUD field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 One stop bit. 1 Two stop bits.
SBR	Baud Rate Modulo Divisor. The 13 bits in SBR[12:0] set the modulo divide rate for the baud rate generator. When SBR is 1 - 8191, the baud rate equals "baud clock / ((OSR+1) × SBR)". The 13-bit baud rate setting [SBR12:SBR0] must only be updated when the transmitter and receiver are both disabled (LPUART_CTRL[RE] and LPUART_CTRL[TE] are both 0).

46.3.2 LPUART Status Register (LPUARTx_STAT)

Address: 4002_A000h base + 4h offset = 4002_A004h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	LBKDIF	RXEDGIF	MSBF	RXINV	RWUID	BRK13	LBKDE	RAF	TDRE	TC	RDRF	IDLE	OR	NF	FE	PF
W	w1c	w1c										w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c	w1c
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	MA1F	MA2F	0													
W	w1c	w1c														
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

LPUARTx_STAT field descriptions

Field	Description
31 LBKDIF	LIN Break Detect Interrupt Flag LBKDIF is set when the LIN break detect circuitry is enabled and a LIN break character is detected. LBKDIF is cleared by writing a 1 to it.

Table continues on the next page...

LPUARTx_STAT field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 No LIN break character has been detected. 1 LIN break character has been detected.
30 RXEDGIF	LPUART_RX Pin Active Edge Interrupt Flag RXEDGIF is set when an active edge, falling if RXINV = 0, rising if RXINV=1, on the LPUART_RX pin occurs. RXEDGIF is cleared by writing a 1 to it. 0 No active edge on the receive pin has occurred. 1 An active edge on the receive pin has occurred.
29 MSBF	MSB First Setting this bit reverses the order of the bits that are transmitted and received on the wire. This bit does not affect the polarity of the bits, the location of the parity bit or the location of the start or stop bits. This bit should only be changed when the transmitter and receiver are both disabled. 0 LSB (bit0) is the first bit that is transmitted following the start bit. Further, the first bit received after the start bit is identified as bit0. 1 MSB (bit9, bit8, bit7 or bit6) is the first bit that is transmitted following the start bit depending on the setting of CTRL[M], CTRL[PE] and BAUD[M10]. Further, the first bit received after the start bit is identified as bit9, bit8, bit7 or bit6 depending on the setting of CTRL[M] and CTRL[PE].
28 RXINV	Receive Data Inversion Setting this bit reverses the polarity of the received data input. **NOTE:** Setting RXINV inverts the LPUART_RX input for all cases: data bits, start and stop bits, break, and idle. 0 Receive data not inverted. 1 Receive data inverted.
27 RWUID	Receive Wake Up Idle Detect For RWU on idle character, RWUID controls whether the idle character that wakes up the receiver sets the IDLE bit. For address match wakeup, RWUID controls if the IDLE bit is set when the address does not match. This bit should only be changed when the receiver is disabled. 0 During receive standby state (RWU = 1), the IDLE bit does not get set upon detection of an idle character. During address match wakeup, the IDLE bit does not get set when an address does not match. 1 During receive standby state (RWU = 1), the IDLE bit gets set upon detection of an idle character. During address match wakeup, the IDLE bit does get set when an address does not match.
26 BRK13	Break Character Generation Length BRK13 selects a longer transmitted break character length. Detection of a framing error is not affected by the state of this bit. This bit should only be changed when the transmitter is disabled. 0 Break character is transmitted with length of 10 bit times (if M = 0, SBNS = 0) or 11 (if M = 1, SBNS = 0 or M = 0, SBNS = 1) or 12 (if M = 1, SBNS = 1 or M10 = 1, SNBS = 0) or 13 (if M10 = 1, SNBS = 1). 1 Break character is transmitted with length of 13 bit times (if M = 0, SBNS = 0) or 14 (if M = 1, SBNS = 0 or M = 0, SBNS = 1) or 15 (if M = 1, SBNS = 1 or M10 = 1, SNBS = 0) or 16 (if M10 = 1, SNBS = 1).
25 LBKDE	LIN Break Detection Enable LBKDE selects a longer break character detection length. While LBKDE is set, receive data is not stored in the receive data buffer.

Table continues on the next page...

LPUARTx_STAT field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Break character is detected at length 10 bit times (if M = 0, SBNS = 0) or 11 (if M = 1, SBNS = 0 or M = 0, SBNS = 1) or 12 (if M = 1, SBNS = 1 or M10 = 1, SNBS = 0) or 13 (if M10 = 1, SNBS = 1). 1 Break character is detected at length of 11 bit times (if M = 0, SBNS = 0) or 12 (if M = 1, SBNS = 0 or M = 0, SBNS = 1) or 14 (if M = 1, SBNS = 1 or M10 = 1, SNBS = 0) or 15 (if M10 = 1, SNBS = 1).
24 RAF	Receiver Active Flag RAF is set when the receiver detects the beginning of a valid start bit, and RAF is cleared automatically when the receiver detects an idle line. 0 LPUART receiver idle waiting for a start bit. 1 LPUART receiver active (LPUART_RX input not idle).
23 TDRE	Transmit Data Register Empty Flag TDRE will set when the transmit data register (LPUART_DATA) is empty. To clear TDRE, write to the LPUART data register (LPUART_DATA). TDRE is not affected by a character that is in the process of being transmitted, it is updated at the start of each transmitted character. 0 Transmit data buffer full. 1 Transmit data buffer empty.
22 TC	Transmission Complete Flag TC is cleared when there is a transmission in progress or when a preamble or break character is loaded. TC is set when the transmit buffer is empty and no data, preamble, or break character is being transmitted. When TC is set, the transmit data output signal becomes idle (logic 1). TC is cleared by writing to LPUART_DATA to transmit new data, queuing a preamble by clearing and then setting LPUART_CTRL[TE], queuing a break character by writing 1 to LPUART_CTRL[SBK]. 0 Transmitter active (sending data, a preamble, or a break). 1 Transmitter idle (transmission activity complete).
21 RDRF	Receive Data Register Full Flag RDRF is set when the receive buffer (LPUART_DATA) is full. To clear RDRF, read the LPUART_DATA register. A character that is in the process of being received does not cause a change in RDRF until the entire character is received. Even if RDRF is set, the character will continue to be received until an overrun condition occurs once the entire character is received. 0 Receive data buffer empty. 1 Receive data buffer full.
20 IDLE	Idle Line Flag IDLE is set when the LPUART receive line becomes idle for a full character time after a period of activity. When ILT is cleared, the receiver starts counting idle bit times after the start bit. If the receive character is all 1s, these bit times and the stop bits time count toward the full character time of logic high, 10 to 13 bit times, needed for the receiver to detect an idle line. When ILT is set, the receiver doesn't start counting idle bit times until after the stop bits. The stop bits and any logic high bit times at the end of the previous character do not count toward the full character time of logic high needed for the receiver to detect an idle line. To clear IDLE, write logic 1 to the IDLE flag. After IDLE has been cleared, it cannot become set again until after a new character has been stored in the receive buffer or a LIN break character has set the LBKDIF flag . IDLE is set only once even if the receive line remains idle for an extended period.

Table continues on the next page...

LPUARTx_STAT field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 No idle line detected. 1 Idle line was detected.
19 OR	Receiver Overrun Flag OR is set when software fails to prevent the receive data register from overflowing with data. The OR bit is set immediately after the stop bit has been completely received for the dataword that overflows the buffer and all the other error flags (FE, NF, and PF) are prevented from setting. The data in the shift register is lost, but the data already in the LPUART data registers is not affected. If LBKDE is enabled and a LIN Break is detected, the OR field asserts if LBKDIF is not cleared before the next data character is received. While the OR flag is set, no additional data is stored in the data buffer even if sufficient room exists. To clear OR, write logic 1 to the OR flag. 0 No overrun. 1 Receive overrun (new LPUART data lost).
18 NF	Noise Flag The advanced sampling technique used in the receiver takes three samples in each of the received bits. If any of these samples disagrees with the rest of the samples within any bit time in the frame then noise is detected for that character. NF is set whenever the next character to be read from LPUART_DATA was received with noise detected within the character. To clear NF, write logic one to the NF. 0 No noise detected. 1 Noise detected in the received character in LPUART_DATA.
17 FE	Framing Error Flag FE is set whenever the next character to be read from LPUART_DATA was received with logic 0 detected where a stop bit was expected. To clear FE, write logic one to the FE. 0 No framing error detected. This does not guarantee the framing is correct. 1 Framing error.
16 PF	Parity Error Flag PF is set whenever the next character to be read from LPUART_DATA was received when parity is enabled (PE = 1) and the parity bit in the received character does not agree with the expected parity value. To clear PF, write a logic one to the PF. 0 No parity error. 1 Parity error.
15 MA1F	Match 1 Flag MA1F is set whenever the next character to be read from LPUART_DATA matches MA1. To clear MA1F, write a logic one to the MA1F. 0 Received data is not equal to MA1 1 Received data is equal to MA1
14 MA2F	Match 2 Flag MA2F is set whenever the next character to be read from LPUART_DATA matches MA2. To clear MA2F, write a logic one to the MA2F. 0 Received data is not equal to MA2 1 Received data is equal to MA2

Table continues on the next page...

LPUARTx_STAT field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

46.3.3 LPUART Control Register (LPUARTx_CTRL)

This read/write register controls various optional features of the LPUART system. This register should only be altered when the transmitter and receiver are both disabled.

Address: 4002_A000h base + 8h offset = 4002_A008h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R W	R8T9	R9T8	TXDIR	TXINV	ORIE	NEIE	FEIE	PEIE	TIE	TCIE	RIE	ILIE	TE	RE	RWU	SBK
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R W	MA1IE	MA2IE	0			IDLECFG			LOOPS	DOZEEN	RSRC	M	WAKE	ILT	PE	PT
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

LPUARTx_CTRL field descriptions

Field	Description
31 R8T9	Receive Bit 8 / Transmit Bit 9 R8 is the ninth data bit received when the LPUART is configured for 9-bit or 10-bit data formats. When reading 9-bit or 10-bit data, read R8 before reading LPUART_DATA. T9 is the tenth data bit received when the LPUART is configured for 10-bit data formats. When writing 10-bit data, write T9 before writing LPUART_DATA. If T9 does not need to change from its previous value, such as when it is used to generate address mark or parity, they it need not be written each time LPUART_DATA is written.
30 R9T8	Receive Bit 9 / Transmit Bit 8 R9 is the tenth data bit received when the LPUART is configured for 10-bit data formats. When reading 10-bit data, read R9 before reading LPUART_DATA T8 is the ninth data bit received when the LPUART is configured for 9-bit or 10-bit data formats. When writing 9-bit or 10-bit data, write T8 before writing LPUART_DATA. If T8 does not need to change from its previous value, such as when it is used to generate address mark or parity, they it need not be written each time LPUART_DATA is written.

Table continues on the next page...

LPUARTx_CTRL field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
29 TXDIR	LPUART_TX Pin Direction in Single-Wire Mode When the LPUART is configured for single-wire half-duplex operation (LOOPS = RSRC = 1), this bit determines the direction of data at the LPUART_TX pin. When clearing TXDIR, the transmitter will finish receiving the current character (if any) before the receiver starts receiving data from the LPUART_TX pin. 0 LPUART_TX pin is an input in single-wire mode. 1 LPUART_TX pin is an output in single-wire mode.
28 TXINV	Transmit Data Inversion Setting this bit reverses the polarity of the transmitted data output. **NOTE:** Setting TXINV inverts the LPUART_TX output for all cases: data bits, start and stop bits, break, and idle. 0 Transmit data not inverted. 1 Transmit data inverted.
27 ORIE	Overrun Interrupt Enable This bit enables the overrun flag (OR) to generate hardware interrupt requests. 0 OR interrupts disabled; use polling. 1 Hardware interrupt requested when OR is set.
26 NEIE	Noise Error Interrupt Enable This bit enables the noise flag (NF) to generate hardware interrupt requests. 0 NF interrupts disabled; use polling. 1 Hardware interrupt requested when NF is set.
25 FEIE	Framing Error Interrupt Enable This bit enables the framing error flag (FE) to generate hardware interrupt requests. 0 FE interrupts disabled; use polling. 1 Hardware interrupt requested when FE is set.
24 PEIE	Parity Error Interrupt Enable This bit enables the parity error flag (PF) to generate hardware interrupt requests. 0 PF interrupts disabled; use polling). 1 Hardware interrupt requested when PF is set.
23 TIE	Transmit Interrupt Enable Enables STAT[TDRE] to generate interrupt requests. 0 Hardware interrupts from TDRE disabled; use polling. 1 Hardware interrupt requested when TDRE flag is 1.
22 TCIE	Transmission Complete Interrupt Enable for TCIE enables the transmission complete flag, TC, to generate interrupt requests. 0 Hardware interrupts from TC disabled; use polling. 1 Hardware interrupt requested when TC flag is 1.

Table continues on the next page...

LPUARTx_CTRL field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
21 RIE	Receiver Interrupt Enable Enables STAT[RDRF] to generate interrupt requests. 0 Hardware interrupts from RDRF disabled; use polling. 1 Hardware interrupt requested when RDRF flag is 1.
20 ILIE	Idle Line Interrupt Enable ILIE enables the idle line flag, STAT[IDLE], to generate interrupt requests. 0 Hardware interrupts from IDLE disabled; use polling. 1 Hardware interrupt requested when IDLE flag is 1.
19 TE	Transmitter Enable Enables the LPUART transmitter. TE can also be used to queue an idle preamble by clearing and then setting TE. When TE is cleared, this register bit will read as 1 until the transmitter has completed the current character and the LPUART_TX pin is tristated. 0 Transmitter disabled. 1 Transmitter enabled.
18 RE	Receiver Enable Enables the LPUART receiver. When RE is written to 0, this register bit will read as 1 until the receiver finishes receiving the current character (if any). 0 Receiver disabled. 1 Receiver enabled.
17 RWU	Receiver Wakeup Control This field can be set to place the LPUART receiver in a standby state. RWU automatically clears when an RWU event occurs, that is, an IDLE event when CTRL[WAKE] is clear or an address match when CTRL[WAKE] is set with STAT[RWUID] is clear. **NOTE:** RWU must be set only with CTRL[WAKE] = 0 (wakeup on idle) if the channel is currently not idle. This can be determined by STAT[RAF]. If the flag is set to wake up an IDLE event and the channel is already idle, it is possible that the LPUART will discard data. This is because the data must be received or a LIN break detected after an IDLE is detected before IDLE is allowed to be reasserted. 0 Normal receiver operation. 1 LPUART receiver in standby waiting for wakeup condition.
16 SBK	Send Break Writing a 1 and then a 0 to SBK queues a break character in the transmit data stream. Additional break characters of 10 to 13, or 13 to 16 if LPUART_STATBRK13] is set, bit times of logic 0 are queued as long as SBK is set. Depending on the timing of the set and clear of SBK relative to the information currently being transmitted, a second break character may be queued before software clears SBK. 0 Normal transmitter operation. 1 Queue break character(s) to be sent.
15 MA1IE	Match 1 Interrupt Enable

Table continues on the next page...

LPUARTx_CTRL field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 MA1F interrupt disabled 1 MA1F interrupt enabled
14 MA2IE	Match 2 Interrupt Enable 0 MA2F interrupt disabled 1 MA2F interrupt enabled
13–11 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
10–8 IDLECFG	Idle Configuration Configures the number of idle characters that must be received before the IDLE flag is set. 000 1 idle character 001 2 idle characters 010 4 idle characters 011 8 idle characters 100 16 idle characters 101 32 idle characters 110 64 idle characters 111 128 idle characters
7 LOOPS	Loop Mode Select When LOOPS is set, the LPUART_RX pin is disconnected from the LPUART and the transmitter output is internally connected to the receiver input. The transmitter and the receiver must be enabled to use the loop function. 0 Normal operation - LPUART_RX and LPUART_TX use separate pins. 1 Loop mode or single-wire mode where transmitter outputs are internally connected to receiver input (see RSRC bit).
6 DOZEEN	Doze Enable 0 LPUART is enabled in Doze mode. 1 LPUART is disabled in Doze mode.
5 RSRC	Receiver Source Select This field has no meaning or effect unless the LOOPS field is set. When LOOPS is set, the RSRC field determines the source for the receiver shift register input. 0 Provided LOOPS is set, RSRC is cleared, selects internal loop back mode and the LPUART does not use the LPUART_RX pin. 1 Single-wire LPUART mode where the LPUART_TX pin is connected to the transmitter output and receiver input.
4 M	9-Bit or 8-Bit Mode Select 0 Receiver and transmitter use 8-bit data characters. 1 Receiver and transmitter use 9-bit data characters.
3 WAKE	Receiver Wakeup Method Select Determines which condition wakes the LPUART when RWU=1: • Address mark in the most significant bit position of a received data character, or • An idle condition on the receive pin input signal.

Table continues on the next page...

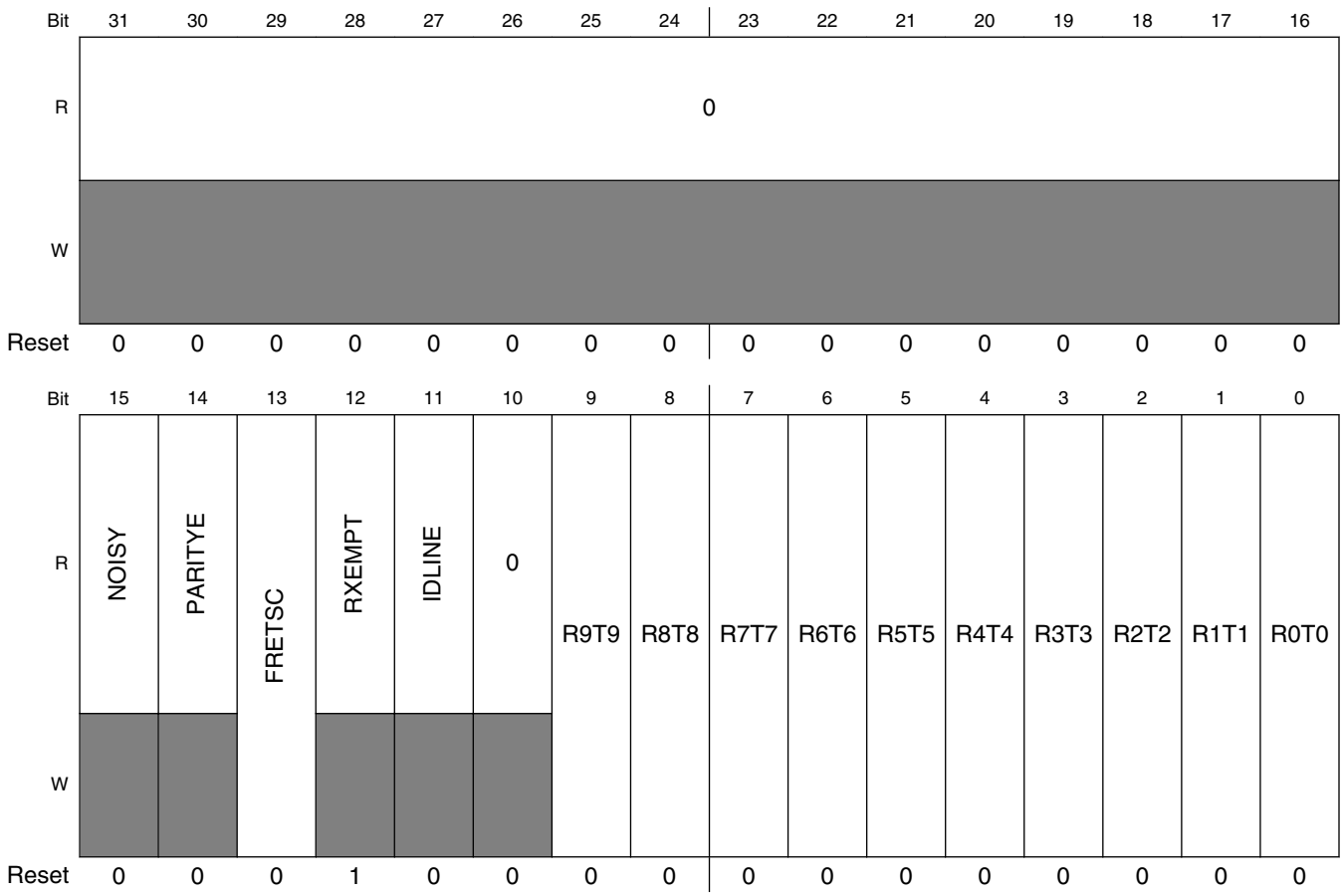
LPUARTx_CTRL field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Configures RWU for idle-line wakeup. 1 Configures RWU with address-mark wakeup.
2 ILT	Idle Line Type Select Determines when the receiver starts counting logic 1s as idle character bits. The count begins either after a valid start bit or after the stop bit. If the count begins after the start bit, then a string of logic 1s preceding the stop bit can cause false recognition of an idle character. Beginning the count after the stop bit avoids false idle character recognition, but requires properly synchronized transmissions. **NOTE:** In case the LPUART is programmed with ILT = 1, a logic 0 is automatically shifted after a received stop bit, therefore resetting the idle count. 0 Idle character bit count starts after start bit. 1 Idle character bit count starts after stop bit.
1 PE	Parity Enable Enables hardware parity generation and checking. When parity is enabled, the bit immediately before the stop bit is treated as the parity bit. 0 No hardware parity generation or checking. 1 Parity enabled.
0 PT	Parity Type Provided parity is enabled (PE = 1), this bit selects even or odd parity. Odd parity means the total number of 1s in the data character, including the parity bit, is odd. Even parity means the total number of 1s in the data character, including the parity bit, is even. 0 Even parity. 1 Odd parity.

46.3.4 LPUART Data Register (LPUARTx_DATA)

This register is actually two separate registers. Reads return the contents of the read-only receive data buffer and writes go to the write-only transmit data buffer. Reads and writes of this register are also involved in the automatic flag clearing mechanisms for some of the LPUART status flags.

Address: 4002_A000h base + Ch offset = 4002_A00Ch



LPUARTx_DATA field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
15 NOISY	The current received dataword contained in DATA[R9:R0] was received with noise. 0 The dataword was received without noise. 1 The data was received with noise.

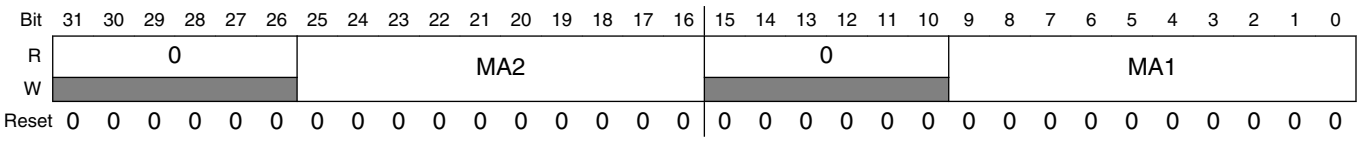
Table continues on the next page...

LPUARTx_DATA field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
14 PARITYE	The current received dataword contained in DATA[R9:R0] was received with a parity error. 0 The dataword was received without a parity error. 1 The dataword was received with a parity error.
13 FRETSC	Frame Error / Transmit Special Character For reads, indicates the current received dataword contained in DATA[R9:R0] was received with a frame error. For writes, indicates a break or idle character is to be transmitted instead of the contents in DATA[T9:T0]. T9 is used to indicate a break character when 0 and a idle character when 1, he contents of DATA[T8:T0] should be zero. 0 The dataword was received without a frame error on read, transmit a normal character on write. 1 The dataword was received with a frame error, transmit an idle or break character on transmit.
12 RXEMPT	Receive Buffer Empty Asserts when there is no data in the receive buffer. This field does not take into account data that is in the receive shift register. 0 Receive buffer contains valid data. 1 Receive buffer is empty, data returned on read is not valid.
11 IDLINE	Idle Line Indicates the receiver line was idle before receiving the character in DATA[9:0]. Unlike the IDLE flag, this bit can set for the first character received when the receiver is first enabled. 0 Receiver was not idle before receiving this character. 1 Receiver was idle before receiving this character.
10 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
9 R9T9	Read receive data buffer 9 or write transmit data buffer 9.
8 R8T8	Read receive data buffer 8 or write transmit data buffer 8.
7 R7T7	Read receive data buffer 7 or write transmit data buffer 7.
6 R6T6	Read receive data buffer 6 or write transmit data buffer 6.
5 R5T5	Read receive data buffer 5 or write transmit data buffer 5.
4 R4T4	Read receive data buffer 4 or write transmit data buffer 4.
3 R3T3	Read receive data buffer 3 or write transmit data buffer 3.
2 R2T2	Read receive data buffer 2 or write transmit data buffer 2.
1 R1T1	Read receive data buffer 1 or write transmit data buffer 1.
0 R0T0	Read receive data buffer 0 or write transmit data buffer 0.

46.3.5 LPUART Match Address Register (LPUARTx_MATCH)

Address: 4002_A000h base + 10h offset = 4002_A010h



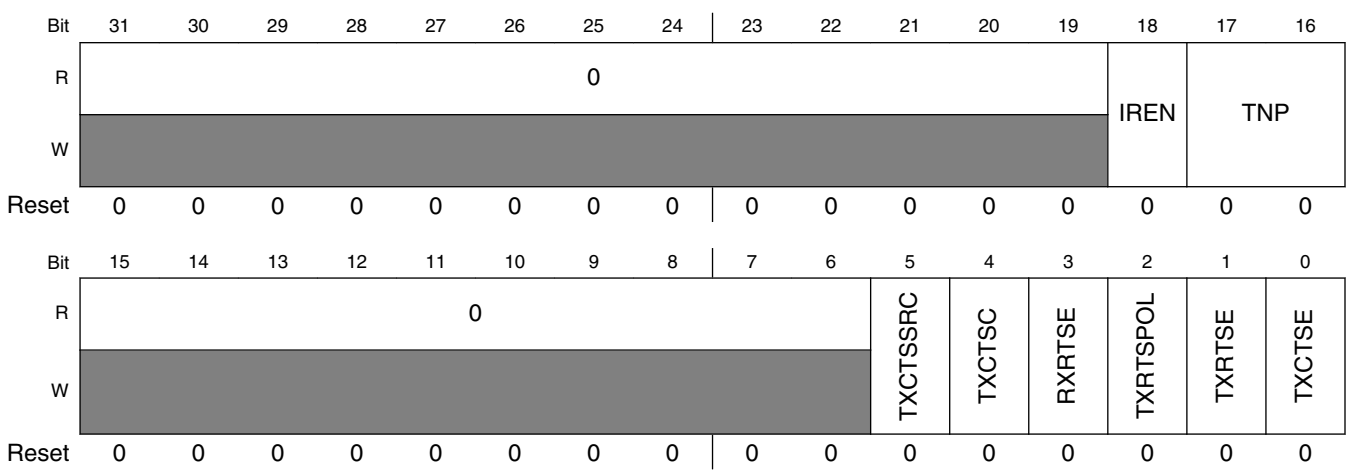
LPUARTx_MATCH field descriptions

Field	Description
31–26 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
25–16 MA2	Match Address 2 The MA1 and MA2 registers are compared to input data addresses when the most significant bit is set and the associated BAUD[MAEN] bit is set. If a match occurs, the following data is transferred to the data register. If a match fails, the following data is discarded. Software should only write a MA register when the associated BAUD[MAEN] bit is clear.
15–10 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
MA1	Match Address 1 The MA1 and MA2 registers are compared to input data addresses when the most significant bit is set and the associated BAUD[MAEN] bit is set. If a match occurs, the following data is transferred to the data register. If a match fails, the following data is discarded. Software should only write a MA register when the associated BAUD[MAEN] bit is clear.

46.3.6 LPUART Modem IrDA Register (LPUARTx_MODIR)

The MODEM register controls options for setting the modem configuration.

Address: 4002_A000h base + 14h offset = 4002_A014h



LPUARTx_MODIR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–19 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
18 IREN	Infrared enable Enables/disables the infrared modulation/demodulation. 0 IR disabled. 1 IR enabled.
17–16 TNP	Transmitter narrow pulse Enables whether the LPUART transmits a 1/OSR, 2/OSR, 3/OSR or 4/OSR narrow pulse. 00 1/OSR. 01 2/OSR. 10 3/OSR. 11 4/OSR.
15–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
5 TXCTSSRC	Transmit CTS Source Configures the source of the CTS input. 0 CTS input is the LPUART_CTS pin. 1 CTS input is the inverted Receiver Match result.
4 TXCTSC	Transmit CTS Configuration Configures if the CTS state is checked at the start of each character or only when the transmitter is idle. 0 CTS input is sampled at the start of each character. 1 CTS input is sampled when the transmitter is idle.
3 RXRTSE	Receiver request-to-send enable Allows the RTS output to control the CTS input of the transmitting device to prevent receiver overrun. **NOTE:** Do not set both RXRTSE and TXRTSE. 0 The receiver has no effect on RTS. 1 RTS is deasserted if the receiver data register is full or a start bit has been detected that would cause the receiver data register to become full. RTS is asserted if the receiver data register is not full and has not detected a start bit that would cause the receiver data register to become full.
2 TXRTSPOL	Transmitter request-to-send polarity Controls the polarity of the transmitter RTS. TXRTSPOL does not affect the polarity of the receiver RTS. RTS will remain negated in the active low state unless TXRTSE is set. 0 Transmitter RTS is active low. 1 Transmitter RTS is active high.
1 TXRTSE	Transmitter request-to-send enable Controls RTS before and after a transmission.

Table continues on the next page...

LPUARTx_MODIR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 The transmitter has no effect on RTS. 1 When a character is placed into an empty transmitter data buffer , RTS asserts one bit time before the start bit is transmitted. RTS deasserts one bit time after all characters in the transmitter data buffer and shift register are completely sent, including the last stop bit.
0 TXCTSE	Transmitter clear-to-send enable TXCTSE controls the operation of the transmitter. TXCTSE can be set independently from the state of TXRTSE and RXRTSE. 0 CTS has no effect on the transmitter. 1 Enables clear-to-send operation. The transmitter checks the state of CTS each time it is ready to send a character. If CTS is asserted, the character is sent. If CTS is deasserted, the signal TXD remains in the mark state and transmission is delayed until CTS is asserted. Changes in CTS as a character is being sent do not affect its transmission.

46.4 Functional description

The LPUART supports full-duplex, asynchronous, NRZ serial communication and comprises a baud rate generator, transmitter, and receiver block. The transmitter and receiver operate independently, although they use the same baud rate generator. The following describes each of the blocks of the LPUART.

46.4.1 Baud rate generation

A 13-bit modulus counter in the baud rate generator derive the baud rate for both the receiver and the transmitter. The value from 1 to 8191 written to SBR[12:0] determines the baud clock divisor for the asynchronous LPUART baud clock. The SBR bits are in the LPUART baud rate registers, BDH and BDL. The baud rate clock drives the receiver, while the transmitter is driven by the baud rate clock divided by the over sampling ratio. Depending on the over sampling ratio, the receiver has an acquisition rate of 4 to 32 samples per bit time.

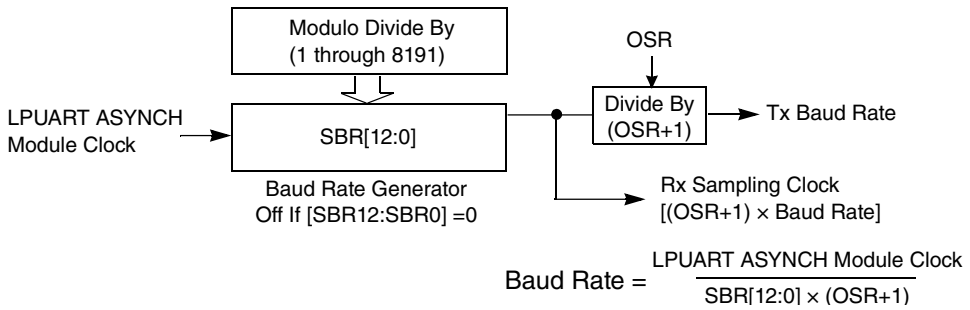


Figure 46-3. LPUART baud rate generation

Baud rate generation is subject to two sources of error:

- Integer division of the asynchronous LPUART baud clock may not give the exact target frequency.
- Synchronization with the asynchronous LPUART baud clock can cause phase shift.

46.4.2 Transmitter functional description

This section describes the overall block diagram for the LPUART transmitter, as well as specialized functions for sending break and idle characters.

The transmitter output (LPUART_TX) idle state defaults to logic high, CTRL[TXINV] is cleared following reset. The transmitter output is inverted by setting CTRL[TXINV]. The transmitter is enabled by setting the CTRL[TE] bit. This queues a preamble character that is one full character frame of the idle state. The transmitter then remains idle until data is available in the transmit data buffer. Programs store data into the transmit data buffer by writing to the LPUART data register.

The central element of the LPUART transmitter is the transmit shift register that is 10-bit to 13 bits long depending on the setting in the CTRL[M], BAUD[M10] and BAUD[SBNS] control bits. For the remainder of this section, assume CTRL[M], BAUD[M10] and BAUD[SBNS] are cleared, selecting the normal 8-bit data mode. In 8-bit data mode, the shift register holds a start bit, eight data bits, and a stop bit. When the transmit shift register is available for a new character, the value waiting in the transmit data register is transferred to the shift register, synchronized with the baud rate clock, and the transmit data register empty (STAT[TDRE]) status flag is set to indicate another character may be written to the transmit data buffer at LPUART_DATA.

If no new character is waiting in the transmit data buffer after a stop bit is shifted out the LPUART_TX pin, the transmitter sets the transmit complete flag and enters an idle mode, with LPUART_TX high, waiting for more characters to transmit.

Writing 0 to CTRL[TE] does not immediately disable the transmitter. The current transmit activity in progress must first be completed (that could include a data character, idle character or break character), although the transmitter will not start transmitting another character.

46.4.2.1 Send break and queued idle

The LPUART_CTRL[SBK] bit sends break characters originally used to gain the attention of old teletype receivers. Break characters are a full character time of logic 0, 10-bit to 12-bit times including the start and stop bits. A longer break of 13-bit times can be enabled by setting LPUART_STAT[BRK13]. Normally, a program would wait for LPUART_STAT[TDRE] to become set to indicate the last character of a message has moved to the transmit shifter, write 1, and then write 0 to the LPUART_CTRL[SBK] bit. This action queues a break character to be sent as soon as the shifter is available. If LPUART_CTRL[SBK] remains 1 when the queued break moves into the shifter, synchronized to the baud rate clock, an additional break character is queued. If the receiving device is another LPUART, the break characters are received as 0s in all data bits and a framing error (LPUART_STAT[FE] = 1) occurs.

A break character can also be transmitted by writing to the LPUART_DATA register with bit 13 set and the data bits clear. This supports transmitting the break character as part of the normal data stream and also allows the DMA to transmit a break character.

When idle-line wakeup is used, a full character time of idle (logic 1) is needed between messages to wake up any sleeping receivers. Normally, a program would wait for LPUART_STAT[TDRE] to become set to indicate the last character of a message has moved to the transmit shifter, then write 0 and then write 1 to the LPUART_CTRL[TE] bit. This action queues an idle character to be sent as soon as the shifter is available. As long as the character in the shifter does not finish while LPUART_CTRL[TE] is cleared, the LPUART transmitter never actually releases control of the LPUART_TX pin.

An idle character can also be transmitted by writing to the LPUART_DATA register with bit 13 set and the data bits also set. This supports transmitting the idle character as part of the normal data stream and also allows the DMA to transmit a break character.

The length of the break character is affected by the LPUART_STAT[BRK13], LPUART_CTRL[M], LPUART_BAUD[M10] and LPUART_BAUD[SNBS] bits as shown below.

Table 46-1. Break character length

BRK13	M	M10	SBNS	Break character length
0	0	0	0	10 bit times
0	0	0	1	11 bit times
0	1	0	0	11 bit times
0	1	0	1	12 bit times
0	X	1	0	12 bit times
0	X	1	1	13 bit times
1	0	0	0	13 bit times
1	0	0	1	13 bit times
1	1	0	0	14 bit times
1	1	0	1	14 bit times
1	X	1	0	15 bit times
1	X	1	1	15 bit times

46.4.2.2 Hardware flow control

The transmitter supports hardware flow control by gating the transmission with the value of CTS. If the clear-to-send operation is enabled, the character is transmitted when CTS is asserted. If CTS is deasserted in the middle of a transmission with characters remaining in the receiver data buffer, the character in the shift register is sent and LPUART_TX remains in the mark state until CTS is reasserted.

If the clear-to-send operation is disabled, the transmitter ignores the state of CTS.

The transmitter's CTS signal can also be enabled even if the same LPUART receiver's RTS signal is disabled.

46.4.2.3 Transceiver driver enable

The transmitter can use LPUART_RTS as an enable signal for the driver of an external transceiver. See Transceiver driver enable using LPUART_RTS for details. If the request-to-send operation is enabled, when a character is placed into an empty transmitter data buffer, LPUART_RTS asserts one bit time before the start bit is transmitted. LPUART_RTS remains asserted for the whole time that the transmitter data buffer has any characters. LPUART_RTS deasserts one bit time after all characters in the transmitter data buffer and shift register are completely sent, including the last stop bit. Transmitting a break character also asserts LPUART_RTS, with the same assertion and deassertion timing as having a character in the transmitter data buffer.

The transmitter's LPUART_RTS signal asserts only when the transmitter is enabled. However, the transmitter's LPUART_RTS signal is unaffected by its LPUART_CTS signal. LPUART_RTS will remain asserted until the transfer is completed, even if the transmitter is disabled mid-way through a data transfer.

46.4.3 Receiver functional description

In this section, the receiver block diagram is a guide for the overall receiver functional description. Next, the data sampling technique used to reconstruct receiver data is described in more detail. Finally, different variations of the receiver wakeup function are explained.

The receiver input is inverted by setting LPUART_STAT[RXINV]. The receiver is enabled by setting the LPUART_CTRL[RE] bit. Character frames consist of a start bit of logic 0, eight to ten data bits (msb or lsb first), and one or two stop bits of logic 1. For information about 9-bit or 10-bit data mode, refer to 8-bit, 9-bit and 10-bit data modes. For the remainder of this discussion, assume the LPUART is configured for normal 8-bit data mode.

After receiving the stop bit into the receive shifter, and provided the receive data register is not already full, the data character is transferred to the receive data register and the receive data register full (LPUART_STAT[RDRF]) status flag is set. If LPUART_STAT[RDRF] was already set indicating the receive data register (buffer) was already full, the overrun (OR) status flag is set and the new data is lost. Because the LPUART receiver is double-buffered, the program has one full character time after LPUART_STAT[RDRF] is set before the data in the receive data buffer must be read to avoid a receiver overrun.

When a program detects that the receive data register is full (LPUART_STAT[RDRF] = 1), it gets the data from the receive data register by reading LPUART_DATA. Refer to Interrupts and status flags for details about flag clearing.

46.4.3.1 Data sampling technique

The LPUART receiver supports a configurable oversampling rate of between 4× and 32× of the baud rate clock for sampling. The receiver starts by taking logic level samples at the oversampling rate times the baud rate to search for a falling edge on the LPUART_RX serial data input pin. A falling edge is defined as a logic 0 sample after three consecutive logic 1 samples. The oversampling baud rate clock divides the bit time into 4 to 32 segments from 1 to OSR (where OSR is the configured oversampling ratio). When a falling edge is located, three more samples are taken at (OSR/2), (OSR/2)+1, and

(OSR/2)+2 to make sure this was a real start bit and not merely noise. If at least two of these three samples are 0, the receiver assumes it is synchronized to a received character. If another falling edge is detected before the receiver is considered synchronized, the receiver restarts the sampling from the first segment.

The receiver then samples each bit time, including the start and stop bits, at (OSR/2), (OSR/2)+1, and (OSR/2)+2 to determine the logic level for that bit. The logic level is interpreted to be that of the majority of the samples taken during the bit time. If any sample in any bit time, including the start and stop bits, in a character frame fails to agree with the logic level for that bit, the noise flag (LPUART_STAT[NF]) is set when the received character is transferred to the receive data buffer.

When the LPUART receiver is configured to sample on both edges of the baud rate clock, the number of segments in each received bit is effectively doubled (from 1 to OSR×2). The start and data bits are then sampled at OSR, OSR+1 and OSR+2. Sampling on both edges of the clock must be enabled for oversampling rates of 4× to 7× and is optional for higher oversampling rates.

The falling edge detection logic continuously looks for falling edges. If an edge is detected, the sample clock is resynchronized to bit times (unless resynchronization has been disabled). This improves the reliability of the receiver in the presence of noise or mismatched baud rates. It does not improve worst case analysis because some characters do not have any extra falling edges anywhere in the character frame.

In the case of a framing error, provided the received character was not a break character, the sampling logic that searches for a falling edge is filled with three logic 1 samples so that a new start bit can be detected almost immediately.

46.4.3.2 Receiver wakeup operation

Receiver wakeup and receiver address matching is a hardware mechanism that allows an LPUART receiver to ignore the characters in a message intended for a different receiver.

During receiver wakeup, all receivers evaluate the first character(s) of each message, and as soon as they determine the message is intended for a different receiver, they write logic 1 to the receiver wake up control bit (LPUART_CTRL[RWU]). When RWU bit and LPUART_S2[RWUID] bit are set, the status flags associated with the receiver, with the exception of the idle bit, IDLE, are inhibited from setting, thus eliminating the software overhead for handling the unimportant message characters. At the end of a message, or at the beginning of the next message, all receivers automatically force LPUART_CTRL[RWU] to 0 so all receivers wake up in time to look at the first character(s) of the next message.

During receiver address matching, the address matching is performed in hardware and the LPUART receiver will ignore all characters that do not meet the address match requirements.

Table 46-2. Receiver Wakeup Options

RWU	MA1 | MA2	MATCFG	WAKE:RWUID	Receiver Wakeup
0	0	X	X	Normal operation
1	0	00	00	Receiver wakeup on idle line, IDLE flag not set
1	0	00	01	Receiver wakeup on idle line, IDLE flag set
1	0	00	10	Receiver wakeup on address mark
1	1	11	X0	Receiver wakeup on data match
0	1	00	X0	Address mark address match, IDLE flag not set for discarded characters
0	1	00	X1	Address mark address match, IDLE flag set for discarded characters
0	1	01	X0	Idle line address match
0	1	10	X0	Address match on and address match off, IDLE flag not set for discarded characters
0	1	10	X1	Address match on and address match off, IDLE flag set for discarded characters

46.4.3.2.1 Idle-line wakeup

When wake is cleared, the receiver is configured for idle-line wakeup. In this mode, LPUART_CTRL[RWU] is cleared automatically when the receiver detects a full character time of the idle-line level. The LPUART_CTRL[M] and LPUART_BAUD[M10] control bit selects 8-bit to 10-bit data mode and the LPUART_BAUD[SBNS] bit selects 1-bit or 2-bit stop bit number that determines how many bit times of idle are needed to constitute a full character time, 10 to 13 bit times because of the start and stop bits.

When LPUART_CTRL[RWU] is one and LPUART_STAT[RWUID] is zero, the idle condition that wakes up the receiver does not set the LPUART_STAT[IDLE] flag. The receiver wakes up and waits for the first data character of the next message that sets the

LPUART_STAT[RDRF] flag and generates an interrupt if enabled. When LPUART_STAT[RWUID] is one, any idle condition sets the LPUART_STAT[IDLE] flag and generates an interrupt if enabled, regardless of whether LPUART_CTRL[RWU] is zero or one.

The idle-line type (LPUART_CTRL[ILT]) control bit selects one of two ways to detect an idle line. When LPUART_CTRL[ILT] is cleared, the idle bit counter starts after the start bit so the stop bit and any logic 1s at the end of a character count toward the full character time of idle. When LPUART_CTRL[ILT] is set, the idle bit counter does not start until after the stop bit time, so the idle detection is not affected by the data in the last character of the previous message.

46.4.3.2.2 Address-mark wakeup

When LPUART_CTRL[WAKE] is set, the receiver is configured for address-mark wakeup. In this mode, LPUART_CTRL[RWU] is cleared automatically when the receiver detects a logic 1 in the most significant bit of a received character.

Address-mark wakeup allows messages to contain idle characters, but requires the MSB be reserved for use in address frames. The logic 1 in the MSB of an address frame clears the LPUART_CTRL[RWU] bit before the stop bits are received and sets the LPUART_STAT[RDRF] flag. In this case, the character with the MSB set is received even though the receiver was sleeping during most of this character time.

46.4.3.2.3 Data match wakeup

When LPUART_CTRL[RWU] is set and LPUART_BAUD[MATCFG] equals 11, the receiver is configured for data match wakeup. In this mode, LPUART_CTRL[RWU] is cleared automatically when the receiver detects a character that matches MATCH[MA1] field when BAUD[MAEN1] is set, or that matches MATCH[MA2] when BAUD[MAEN2] is set.

46.4.3.2.4 Address Match operation

Address match operation is enabled when the LPUART_BAUD[MAEN1] or LPUART_BAUD[MAEN2] bit is set and LPUART_BAUD[MATCFG] is equal to 00. In this function, a character received by the LPUART_RX pin with a logic 1 in the bit position immediately preceding the stop bit is considered an address and is compared with the associated MATCH[MA1] or MATCH[MA2] field. The character is only transferred to the receive buffer, and LPUART_STAT[RDRF] is set, if the comparison matches. All subsequent characters received with a logic 0 in the bit position immediately preceding the stop bit are considered to be data associated with the address and are transferred to the receive data buffer. If no marked address match occurs then no transfer

is made to the receive data buffer, and all following characters with logic zero in the bit position immediately preceding the stop bit are also discarded. If both the LPUART_BAUD[MAEN1] and LPUART_BAUD[MAEN2] bits are negated, the receiver operates normally and all data received is transferred to the receive data buffer.

Address match operation functions in the same way for both MATCH[MA1] and MATCH[MA2] fields.

- If only one of LPUART_BAUD[MAEN1] and LPUART_BAUD[MAEN2] is asserted, a marked address is compared only with the associated match register and data is transferred to the receive data buffer only on a match.
- If LPUART_BAUD[MAEN1] and LPUART_BAUD[MAEN2] are asserted, a marked address is compared with both match registers and data is transferred only on a match with either register.

46.4.3.2.5 Idle Match operation

Idle match operation is enabled when the LPUART_BAUD[MAEN1] or LPUART_BAUD[MAEN2] bit is set and LPUART_BAUD[MATCFG] is equal to 01. In this function, the first character received by the LPUART_RX pin after an idle line condition is considered an address and is compared with the associated MA1 or MA2 register. The character is only transferred to the receive buffer, and LPUART_STAT[RDRF] is set, if the comparison matches. All subsequent characters are considered to be data associated with the address and are transferred to the receive data buffer until the next idle line condition is detected. If no address match occurs then no transfer is made to the receive data buffer, and all following frames until the next idle condition are also discarded. If both the LPUART_BAUD[MAEN1] and LPUART_BAUD[MAEN2] bits are negated, the receiver operates normally and all data received is transferred to the receive data buffer.

Idle match operation functions in the same way for both MA1 and MA2 registers.

- If only one of LPUART_BAUD[MAEN1] and LPUART_BAUD[MAEN2] is asserted, the first character after an idle line is compared only with the associated match register and data is transferred to the receive data buffer only on a match.
- If LPUART_BAUD[MAEN1] and LPUART_BAUD[MAEN2] are asserted, the first character after an idle line is compared with both match registers and data is transferred only on a match with either register.

46.4.3.2.6 Match On Match Off operation

Match on, match off operation is enabled when both LPUART_BAUD[MAEN1] and LPUART_BAUD[MAEN2] are set and LPUART_BAUD[MATCFG] is equal to 10. In this function, a character received by the LPUART_RX pin that matches MATCH[MA1] is received and transferred to the receive buffer, and LPUART_STAT[RDRF] is set. All subsequent characters are considered to be data and are also transferred to the receive data buffer, until a character is received that matches MATCH[MA2] register. The character that matches MATCH[MA2] and all following characters are discarded, this continues until another character that matches MATCH[MA1] is received. If both the LPUART_BAUD[MAEN1] and LPUART_BAUD[MAEN2] bits are negated, the receiver operates normally and all data received is transferred to the receive data buffer.

NOTE

Match on, match off operation requires both LPUART_BAUD[MAEN1] and LPUART_BAUD[MAEN2] to be asserted.

46.4.3.3 Hardware flow control

To support hardware flow control, the receiver can be programmed to automatically deassert and assert LPUART_RTS.

- LPUART_RTS remains asserted until the transfer is complete, even if the transmitter is disabled midway through a data transfer. See Transceiver driver enable using LPUART_RTS for more details.
- If the receiver request-to-send functionality is enabled, the receiver automatically deasserts LPUART_RTS if the number of characters in the receiver data register is full or a start bit is detected that will cause the receiver data register to be full.
- The receiver asserts LPUART_RTS when the number of characters in the receiver data register is not full and has not detected a start bit that will cause the receiver data register to be full. It is not affected if STAT[RDRF] is asserted.
- Even if LPUART_RTS is deasserted, the receiver continues to receive characters until the receiver data buffer is overrun.
- If the receiver request-to-send functionality is disabled, the receiver LPUART_RTS remains deasserted.

46.4.3.4 Infrared decoder

The infrared decoder converts the received character from the IrDA format to the NRZ format used by the receiver. It also has a OSR oversampling baud rate clock counter that filters noise and indicates when a 1 is received.

46.4.3.4.1 Start bit detection

When STAT[RXINV] is cleared, the first falling edge of the received character corresponds to the start bit. The infrared decoder resets its counter. At this time, the receiver also begins its start bit detection process. After the start bit is detected, the receiver synchronizes its bit times to this start bit time. For the rest of the character reception, the infrared decoder's counter and the receiver's bit time counter count independently from each other.

46.4.3.4.2 Noise filtering

Any further rising edges detected during the first half of the infrared decoder counter are ignored by the decoder. Any pulses less than one oversampling baud clock can be undetected by it regardless of whether it is seen in the first or second half of the count.

46.4.3.4.3 Low-bit detection

During the second half of the decoder count, a rising edge is decoded as a 0, which is sent to the receiver. The decoder counter is also reset.

46.4.3.4.4 High-bit detection

At OSR oversampling baud rate clocks after the previous rising edge, if a rising edge is not seen, then the decoder sends a 1 to the receiver.

If the next bit is a 0, which arrives late, then a low-bit is detected according to Low-bit detection. The value sent to the receiver is changed from 1 to a 0. Then, if a noise pulse occurs outside the receiver's bit time sampling period, then the delay of a 0 is not recorded as noise.

46.4.4 Additional LPUART functions

The following sections describe additional LPUART functions.

46.4.4.1 8-bit, 9-bit and 10-bit data modes

The LPUART transmitter and receiver can be configured to operate in 9-bit data mode by setting the LPUART_CTRL[M] or 10-bit data mode by setting LPUART_CTRL[M10]. In 9-bit mode, there is a ninth data bit in 10-bit mode there is a tenth data bit. For the transmit data buffer, these bits are stored in LPUART_CTRL[T8] and LPUART_CTRL[T9]. For the receiver, these bits are held in LPUART_CTRL[R8] and LPUART_CTRL[R9]. They are also accessible via 16-bit or 32-bit accesses to the LPUART_DATA register.

For coherent 8-bit writes to the transmit data buffer, write to LPUART_CTRL[T8] and LPUART_CTRL[T9] before writing to LPUART_DATA[7:0]. For 16-bit and 32-bit writes to the LPUART_DATA register all 10 transmit bits are written to the transmit data buffer at the same time.

If the bit values to be transmitted as the ninth and tenth bit of a new character are the same as for the previous character, it is not necessary to write to LPUART_CTRL[T8] and LPUART_CTRL[T9] again. When data is transferred from the transmit data buffer to the transmit shifter, the value in LPUART_CTRL[T8] and LPUART_CTRL[T9] is copied at the same time data is transferred from LPUART_DATA[7:0] to the shifter.

The 9-bit data mode is typically used with parity to allow eight bits of data plus the parity in the ninth bit, or it is used with address-mark wakeup so the ninth data bit can serve as the wakeup bit. The 10-bit data mode is typically used with parity and address-mark wakeup so the ninth data bit can serve as the wakeup bit and the tenth bit as the parity bit. In custom protocols, the ninth and/or tenth bits can also serve as software-controlled markers.

46.4.4.2 Idle length

An idle character is a character where the start bit, all data bits and stop bits are in the mark postion. The CTRL[ILT] register can be configured to start detecting an idle character from the previous start bit (any data bits and stop bits count towards the idle character detection) or from the previous stop bit.

The number of idle characters that must be received before an idle line condition is detected can also be configured using the CTRL[IDLECFG] field. This field configures the number of idle characters that must be received before the STAT[IDLE] flag is set, the STAT[RAF] flag is cleared and the DATA[IDLINE] flag is set with the next received character.

Idle-line wakeup and idle match operation are also affected by the CTRL[IDLECFG] field. When address match or match on/off operation is enabled, setting the STAT[RWUID] bit will cause any discarded characters to be treated as if they were idle characters.

46.4.4.3 Loop mode

When LPUART_CTRL[LOOPS] is set, the LPUART_CTRL[RSRC] bit in the same register chooses between loop mode (LPUART_CTRL[RSRC] = 0) or single-wire mode (LPUART_CTRL[RSRC] = 1). Loop mode is sometimes used to check software, independent of connections in the external system, to help isolate system problems. In this mode, the transmitter output is internally connected to the receiver input and the LPUART_RX pin is not used by the LPUART.

46.4.4.4 Single-wire operation

When LPUART_CTRL[LOOPS] is set, the RSRC bit in the same register chooses between loop mode (LPUART_CTRL[RSRC] = 0) or single-wire mode (LPUART_CTRL[RSRC] = 1). Single-wire mode implements a half-duplex serial connection. The receiver is internally connected to the transmitter output and to the LPUART_TX pin (the LPUART_RX pin is not used).

In single-wire mode, the LPUART_CTRL[TXDIR] bit controls the direction of serial data on the LPUART_TX pin. When LPUART_CTRL[TXDIR] is cleared, the LPUART_TX pin is an input to the receiver and the transmitter is temporarily disconnected from the LPUART_TX pin so an external device can send serial data to the receiver. When LPUART_CTRL[TXDIR] is set, the LPUART_TX pin is an output driven by the transmitter, the internal loop back connection is disabled, and as a result the receiver cannot receive characters that are sent out by the transmitter.

46.4.5 Infrared interface

The LPUART provides the capability of transmitting narrow pulses to an IR LED and receiving narrow pulses and transforming them to serial bits, which are sent to the LPUART. The IrDA physical layer specification defines a half-duplex infrared communication link for exchanging data. The full standard includes data rates up to 16 Mbits/s. This design covers data rates only between 2.4 kbits/s and 115.2 kbits/s.

The LPUART has an infrared transmit encoder and receive decoder. The LPUART transmits serial bits of data that are encoded by the infrared submodule to transmit a narrow pulse for every zero bit. No pulse is transmitted for every one bit. When receiving data, the IR pulses are detected using an IR photo diode and transformed to CMOS levels by the IR receive decoder, external from the LPUART. The narrow pulses are then stretched by the infrared receive decoder to get back to a serial bit stream to be received by the LPUART. The polarity of transmitted pulses and expected receive pulses can be inverted so that a direct connection can be made to external IrDA transceiver modules that use active high pulses.

The infrared submodule receives its clock sources from the LPUART. One of these two clocks are selected in the infrared submodule to generate either 1/OSR, 2/OSR, 3/OSR, or 4/OSR narrow pulses during transmission.

46.4.5.1 Infrared transmit encoder

The infrared transmit encoder converts serial bits of data from transmit shift register to the LPUART_TX signal. A narrow pulse is transmitted for a zero bit and no pulse for a one bit. The narrow pulse is sent at the start of the bit with a duration of 1/OSR, 2/OSR, 3/OSR, or 4/OSR of a bit time. A narrow low pulse is transmitted for a zero bit when LPUART_CTRL[TXINV] is cleared, while a narrow high pulse is transmitted for a zero bit when LPUART_CTRL[TXINV] is set.

46.4.5.2 Infrared receive decoder

The infrared receive block converts data from the LPUART_RX signal to the receive shift register. A narrow pulse is expected for each zero received and no pulse is expected for each one received. A narrow low pulse is expected for a zero bit when LPUART_STAT[RXINV] is cleared, while a narrow high pulse is expected for a zero bit when LPUART_STAT[RXINV] is set. This receive decoder meets the edge jitter requirement as defined by the IrDA serial infrared physical layer specification.

46.4.6 Interrupts and status flags

The LPUART transmitter has two status flags that can optionally generate hardware interrupt requests. Transmit data register empty LPUART_STAT[TDRE]) indicates when there is room in the transmit data buffer to write another transmit character to LPUART_DATA. If the transmit interrupt enable LPUART_CTRL[TIE]) bit is set, a hardware interrupt is requested when LPUART_STAT[TDRE] is set. Transmit complete

(LPUART_STAT[TC]) indicates that the transmitter is finished transmitting all data, preamble, and break characters and is idle with LPUART_TX at the inactive level. This flag is often used in systems with modems to determine when it is safe to turn off the modem. If the transmit complete interrupt enable (LPUART_CTRL[TCIE]) bit is set, a hardware interrupt is requested when LPUART_STAT[TC] is set. Instead of hardware interrupts, software polling may be used to monitor the LPUART_STAT[TDRE] and LPUART_STAT[TC] status flags if the corresponding LPUART_CTRL[TIE] or LPUART_CTRL[TCIE] local interrupt masks are cleared.

When a program detects that the receive data register is full (LPUART_STAT[RDRF] = 1), it gets the data from the receive data register by reading LPUART_DATA. The LPUART_STAT[RDRF] flag is cleared by reading LPUART_DATA.

The IDLE status flag includes logic that prevents it from getting set repeatedly when the LPUART_RX line remains idle for an extended period of time. IDLE is cleared by writing 1 to the LPUART_STAT[IDLE] flag. After LPUART_STAT[IDLE] has been cleared, it cannot become set again until the receiver has received at least one new character and has set LPUART_STAT[RDRF].

If the associated error was detected in the received character that caused LPUART_STAT[RDRF] to be set, the error flags - noise flag (LPUART_STAT[NF]), framing error (LPUART_STAT[FE]), and parity error flag (LPUART_STAT[PF]) - are set at the same time as LPUART_STAT[RDRF]. These flags are not set in overrun cases.

If LPUART_STAT[RDRF] was already set when a new character is ready to be transferred from the receive shifter to the receive data buffer, the overrun (LPUART_STAT[OR]) flag is set instead of the data along with any associated NF, FE, or PF condition is lost.

If the received character matches the contents of MATCH[MA1] and/or MATCH[MA2] then the LPUART_STAT[MA1F] and/or LPUART_STAT[MA2F] flags are set at the same time that LPUART_STAT[RDRF] is set.

At any time, an active edge on the LPUART_RX serial data input pin causes the LPUART_STAT[RXEDGIF] flag to set. The LPUART_STAT[RXEDGIF] flag is cleared by writing a 1 to it. This function depends on the receiver being enabled (LPUART_CTRL[RE] = 1).

Chapter 47
Flexible I/O (FlexIO)

47.1 Chip-specific Information for this Module

47.1.1 FlexIO Instantiation

This section summarize the features and module configurations of FlexIO.

This device contain one FlexIO modules with 8 pins, 4 counters and 4 shifters.

Amongst other features, the FlexIO module in this device supports:
- Emulation in serial only communication protocols

47.1.2 FlexIO Trigger Options

FlexIO has a selectable trigger input source controlled by FlexIO_TIMCTLn[TRGSEL] (4-bit field) to use for starting the counter and/or reloading the counter. The options available are shown in the following table.

Table 47-1. FlexIO Trigger Options

FlexIO_TIMCTLn[TRGSEL] (4-bit field)	Selected Source
0000	External Trigger
0001	CMP0
0010	Reserved
0011	Reserved
0100	PIT Ch0 Output
0101	PIT Ch1 Output
0110	PIT Ch2 Output
0111	PIT Ch3 Output

Table continues on the next page...

Table 47-1. FlexIO Trigger Options (continued)

FlexIO_TIMCTLn[TRGSEL] (4-bit field)	Selected Source
1000	TPM0 Overflow
1001	TPM1 Overflow
1010	TPM2 Overflow
1011	Reserved
1100	RTC Alarm
1101	RTC Seconds
1110	LPTMR Output
1111	Reserved

47.2 Introduction

47.2.1 Overview

The FlexIO is a highly configurable module providing a wide range of functionality including:

- Emulation of a variety of serial communication protocols
- Flexible 16-bit timers with support for a variety of trigger, reset, enable and disable conditions

These functions are provided by the FlexIO while adhering to the following key objectives:

- Low software/CPU overhead: less overhead than software bit-banging, more overhead than dedicated peripheral IP.
- Area/Power efficient implementation: more efficient than integrating multiple peripherals for each desired protocol.

47.2.2 Features

The FlexIO module is capable of supporting a wide range of protocols including, but not limited to:

- UART
- I2C
- SPI

- I2S
- PWM/Waveform generation

The following key features are provided:

- Array of 32-bit shift registers with transmit, receive and data match modes
- Double buffered shifter operation for continuous data transfer
- Shifter concatenation to support large transfer sizes
- Automatic start/stop bit generation
- Interrupt, DMA or polled transmit/receive operation
- Programmable baud rates independent of bus clock frequency, with support for asynchronous operation during stop modes
- Highly flexible 16-bit timers with support for a variety of internal or external trigger, reset, enable and disable conditions

47.2.3 Block Diagram

The following diagram gives a high-level overview of the configuration of FlexIO timers and shifters.

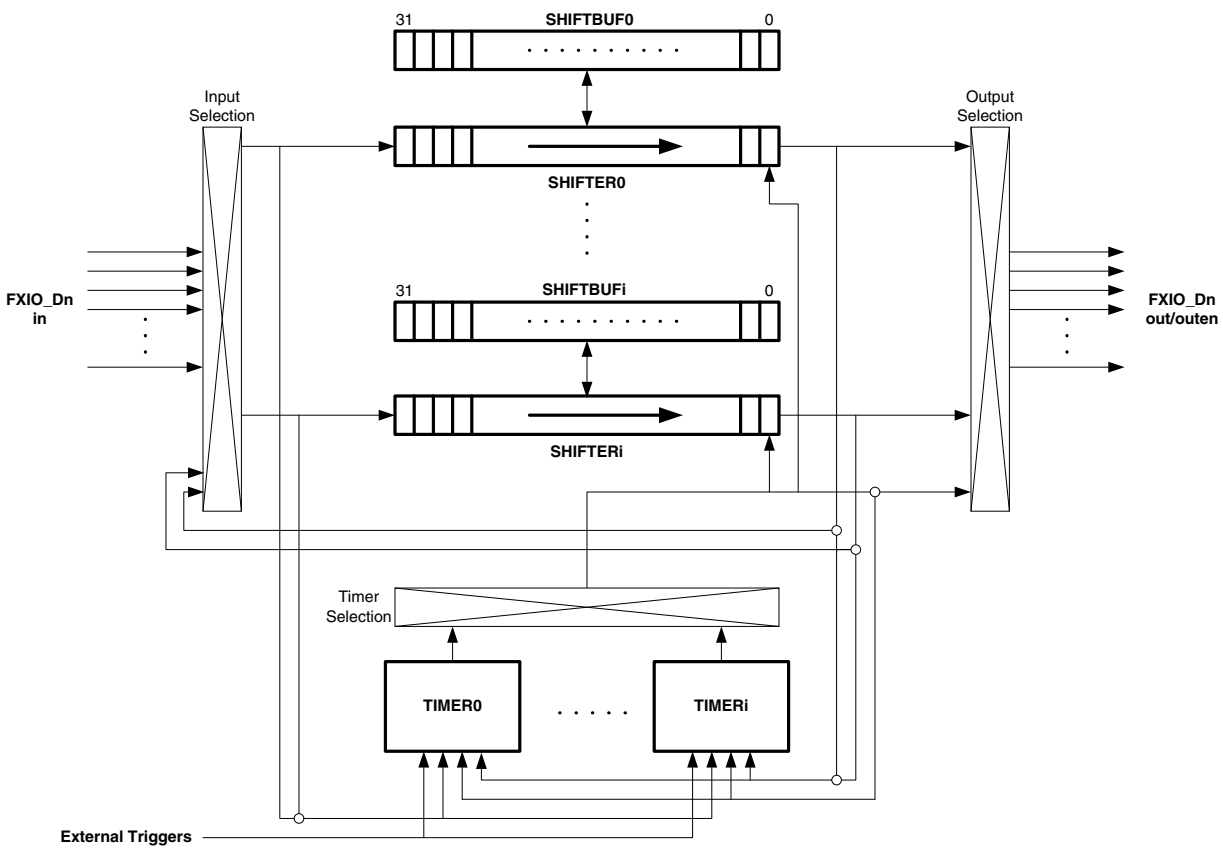


Figure 47-1. FlexIO block diagram

47.2.4 Modes of operation

The FlexIO module supports the chip modes described in the following table.

Table 47-2. Chip modes supported by the FlexIO module

Chip mode	FlexIO Operation
Run	Normal operation
Stop/Wait	Can continue operating provided the Doze Enable bit (CTRL[DOZEN]) is set and the FlexIO is using an external or internal clock source which remains operating during stop/wait modes.
Low Leakage Stop	The Doze Enable (CTRL[DOZEN]) bit is ignored and the FlexIO will wait for all Timers to complete any pending operation before acknowledging low leakage mode entry.
Debug	Can continue operating provided the Debug Enable bit (CTRL[DBGE]) is set.

47.2.5 FlexIO Signal Descriptions

Signal	Description	I/O
FXIO_Dn (n=0...7)	Bidirectional FlexIO Shifter and Timer pin inputs/outputs	I/O

47.3 Memory Map and Registers

FLEXIO memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4005_F000	Version ID Register (FLEXIO_VERID)	32	R	0101_0000h	47.3.1/1274
4005_F004	Parameter Register (FLEXIO_PARAM)	32	R	See section	47.3.2/1275
4005_F008	FlexIO Control Register (FLEXIO_CTRL)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	47.3.3/1276
4005_F00C	Pin State Register (FLEXIO_PIN)	32	R	0000_0000h	47.3.4/1277
4005_F010	Shifter Status Register (FLEXIO_SHIFTSTAT)	32	w1c	0000_0000h	47.3.5/1277
4005_F014	Shifter Error Register (FLEXIO_SHIFTERR)	32	w1c	0000_0000h	47.3.6/1278
4005_F018	Timer Status Register (FLEXIO_TIMSTAT)	32	w1c	0000_0000h	47.3.7/1279
4005_F020	Shifter Status Interrupt Enable (FLEXIO_SHIFTSIEN)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	47.3.8/1280
4005_F024	Shifter Error Interrupt Enable (FLEXIO_SHIFTEIEN)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	47.3.9/1280

Table continues on the next page...

FLEXIO memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4005_F028	Timer Interrupt Enable Register (FLEXIO_TIMIEN)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	47.3.10/ 1281
4005_F030	Shifter Status DMA Enable (FLEXIO_SHIFTSDEN)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	47.3.11/ 1281
4005_F080	Shifter Control N Register (FLEXIO_SHIFTCTL0)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	47.3.12/ 1282
4005_F084	Shifter Control N Register (FLEXIO_SHIFTCTL1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	47.3.12/ 1282
4005_F088	Shifter Control N Register (FLEXIO_SHIFTCTL2)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	47.3.12/ 1282
4005_F08C	Shifter Control N Register (FLEXIO_SHIFTCTL3)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	47.3.12/ 1282
4005_F100	Shifter Configuration N Register (FLEXIO_SHIFTCFG0)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	47.3.13/ 1283
4005_F104	Shifter Configuration N Register (FLEXIO_SHIFTCFG1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	47.3.13/ 1283
4005_F108	Shifter Configuration N Register (FLEXIO_SHIFTCFG2)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	47.3.13/ 1283
4005_F10C	Shifter Configuration N Register (FLEXIO_SHIFTCFG3)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	47.3.13/ 1283
4005_F200	Shifter Buffer N Register (FLEXIO_SHIFTBUF0)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	47.3.14/ 1284
4005_F204	Shifter Buffer N Register (FLEXIO_SHIFTBUF1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	47.3.14/ 1284
4005_F208	Shifter Buffer N Register (FLEXIO_SHIFTBUF2)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	47.3.14/ 1284
4005_F20C	Shifter Buffer N Register (FLEXIO_SHIFTBUF3)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	47.3.14/ 1284
4005_F280	Shifter Buffer N Bit Swapped Register (FLEXIO_SHIFTBUFBIS0)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	47.3.15/ 1285
4005_F284	Shifter Buffer N Bit Swapped Register (FLEXIO_SHIFTBUFBIS1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	47.3.15/ 1285
4005_F288	Shifter Buffer N Bit Swapped Register (FLEXIO_SHIFTBUFBIS2)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	47.3.15/ 1285
4005_F28C	Shifter Buffer N Bit Swapped Register (FLEXIO_SHIFTBUFBIS3)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	47.3.15/ 1285
4005_F300	Shifter Buffer N Byte Swapped Register (FLEXIO_SHIFTBUFBYS0)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	47.3.16/ 1285
4005_F304	Shifter Buffer N Byte Swapped Register (FLEXIO_SHIFTBUFBYS1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	47.3.16/ 1285
4005_F308	Shifter Buffer N Byte Swapped Register (FLEXIO_SHIFTBUFBYS2)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	47.3.16/ 1285
4005_F30C	Shifter Buffer N Byte Swapped Register (FLEXIO_SHIFTBUFBYS3)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	47.3.16/ 1285

Table continues on the next page...

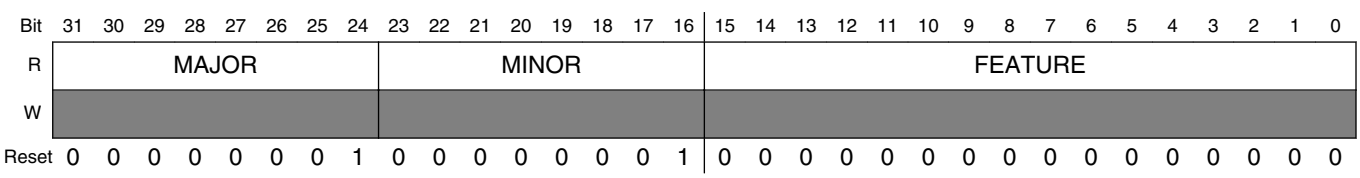
FLEXIO memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4005_F380	Shifter Buffer N Bit Byte Swapped Register (FLEXIO_SHIFTBUFBBS0)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	47.3.17/ 1286
4005_F384	Shifter Buffer N Bit Byte Swapped Register (FLEXIO_SHIFTBUFBBS1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	47.3.17/ 1286
4005_F388	Shifter Buffer N Bit Byte Swapped Register (FLEXIO_SHIFTBUFBBS2)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	47.3.17/ 1286
4005_F38C	Shifter Buffer N Bit Byte Swapped Register (FLEXIO_SHIFTBUFBBS3)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	47.3.17/ 1286
4005_F400	Timer Control N Register (FLEXIO_TIMCTL0)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	47.3.18/ 1286
4005_F404	Timer Control N Register (FLEXIO_TIMCTL1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	47.3.18/ 1286
4005_F408	Timer Control N Register (FLEXIO_TIMCTL2)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	47.3.18/ 1286
4005_F40C	Timer Control N Register (FLEXIO_TIMCTL3)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	47.3.18/ 1286
4005_F480	Timer Configuration N Register (FLEXIO_TIMCFG0)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	47.3.19/ 1288
4005_F484	Timer Configuration N Register (FLEXIO_TIMCFG1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	47.3.19/ 1288
4005_F488	Timer Configuration N Register (FLEXIO_TIMCFG2)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	47.3.19/ 1288
4005_F48C	Timer Configuration N Register (FLEXIO_TIMCFG3)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	47.3.19/ 1288
4005_F500	Timer Compare N Register (FLEXIO_TIMCMP0)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	47.3.20/ 1290
4005_F504	Timer Compare N Register (FLEXIO_TIMCMP1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	47.3.20/ 1290
4005_F508	Timer Compare N Register (FLEXIO_TIMCMP2)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	47.3.20/ 1290
4005_F50C	Timer Compare N Register (FLEXIO_TIMCMP3)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	47.3.20/ 1290

47.3.1 Version ID Register (FLEXIO_VERID)

.

Address: 4005_F000h base + 0h offset = 4005_F000h



FLEXIO_VERID field descriptions

Field	Description
31–24 MAJOR	Major Version Number This read only field returns the major version number for the module specification.
23–16 MINOR	Minor Version Number This read only field returns the minor version number for the module specification.
FEATURE	Feature Specification Number This read only field returns the feature set number. 0x0000 Standard features implemented. 0x0001 Supports state, logic and parallel modes.

47.3.2 Parameter Register (FLEXIO_PARAM)

.

Address: 4005_F000h base + 4h offset = 4005_F004h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	TRIGGER								PIN								TIMER								SHIFTER							
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0

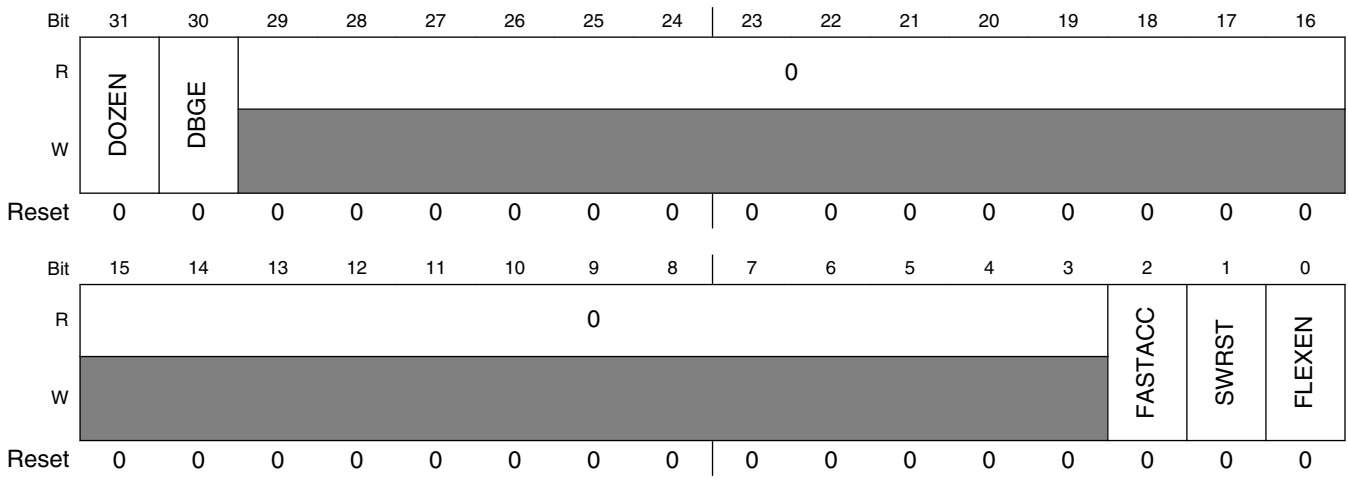
FLEXIO_PARAM field descriptions

Field	Description
31–24 TRIGGER	Trigger Number Number of external triggers implemented.
23–16 PIN	Pin Number Number of Pins implemented.
15–8 TIMER	Timer Number Number of Timers implemented.
SHIFTER	Shifter Number Number of Shifters implemented.

47.3.3 FlexIO Control Register (FLEXIO_CTRL)

.

Address: 4005_F000h base + 8h offset = 4005_F008h



FLEXIO_CTRL field descriptions

Field	Description
31 DOZEN	Doze Enable Disables FlexIO operation in Doze modes. This field is ignored and the FlexIO always disabled in low-leakage stop modes. 0 FlexIO enabled in Doze modes. 1 FlexIO disabled in Doze modes.
30 DBGE	Debug Enable Enables FlexIO operation in Debug mode. 0 FlexIO is disabled in debug modes. 1 FlexIO is enabled in debug modes
29–3 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
2 FASTACC	Fast Access Enables fast register accesses to FlexIO registers, but requires the FlexIO clock to be at least twice the frequency of the bus clock. 0 Configures for normal register accesses to FlexIO 1 Configures for fast register accesses to FlexIO
1 SWRST	Software Reset The FlexIO Control Register is not affected by the software reset, all other logic in the FlexIO is affected by the software reset and register accesses are ignored until this bit is cleared. This register bit will remain set until cleared by software, and the reset has cleared in the FlexIO clock domain.

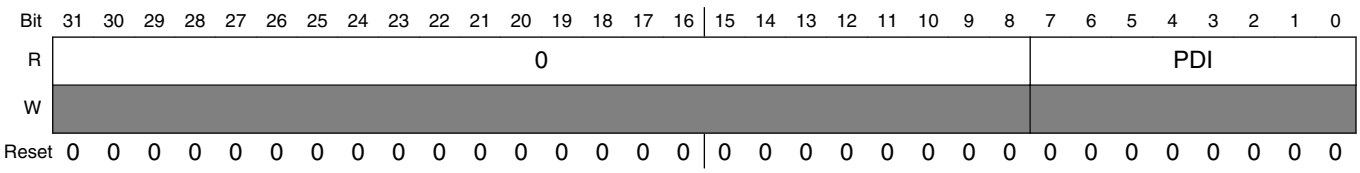
Table continues on the next page...

FLEXIO_CTRL field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Software reset is disabled 1 Software reset is enabled, all FlexIO registers except the Control Register are reset.
0 FLEXEN	FlexIO Enable 0 FlexIO module is disabled. 1 FlexIO module is enabled.

47.3.4 Pin State Register (FLEXIO_PIN)

Address: 4005_F000h base + Ch offset = 4005_F00Ch



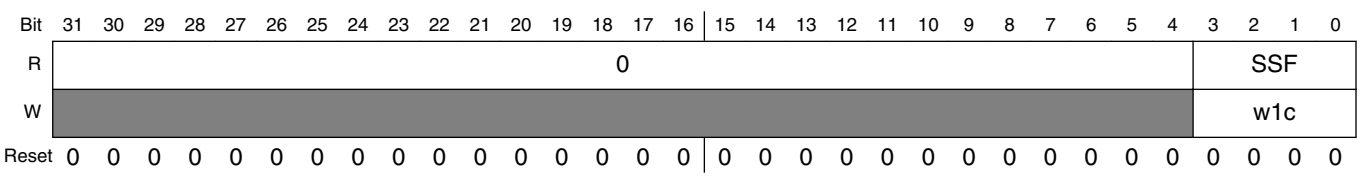
FLEXIO_PIN field descriptions

Field	Description
31–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
PDI	Pin Data Input Returns the input data on each of the FlexIO pins.

47.3.5 Shifter Status Register (FLEXIO_SHIFTSTAT)

.

Address: 4005_F000h base + 10h offset = 4005_F010h



FLEXIO_SHIFTSTAT field descriptions

Field	Description
31–4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
SSF	Shifter Status Flag

Table continues on the next page...

FLEXIO_SHIFTSTAT field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	The shifter status flag is updated when one of the following events occurs: For SMOD=Receive, the status flag is set when SHIFTBUF has been loaded with data from Shifter (SHIFTBUF is full), and the status flag is cleared when SHIFTBUF register is read. For SMOD=Transmit, the status flag is set when SHIFTBUF data has been transferred to the Shifter (SHIFTBUF is empty) or when initially configured for SMOD=Transmit, and the status flag is cleared when the SHIFTBUF register is written. For SMOD=Match Store, the status flag is set when a match has occured between SHIFTBUF and Shifter, and the status flag is cleared when the SHIFTBUF register is read. For SMOD=Match Continuous, returns the current match result between the SHIFTBUF and Shifter. The status flag can also be cleared by writing a logic one to the flag for all modes except Match Continuous. 0 Status flag is clear 1 Status flag is set

47.3.6 Shifter Error Register (FLEXIO_SHIFTERR)

.

Address: 4005_F000h base + 14h offset = 4005_F014h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																												SEF			
W																													w1c			
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

FLEXIO_SHIFTERR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
SEF	Shifter Error Flags The shifter error flag is set when one of the following events occurs: For SMOD=Receive, indicates Shifter was ready to store new data into SHIFTBUF before the previous data was read from SHIFTBUF (SHIFTBUF Overrun), or indicates that the received start or stop bit does not match the expected value. For SMOD=Transmit, indicates Shifter was ready to load new data from SHIFTBUF before new data had been written into SHIFTBUF (SHIFTBUF Underrun). For SMOD=Match Store, indicates a match event occured before the previous match data was read from SHIFTBUF (SHIFTBUF Overrun). For SMOD=Match Continuous, the error flag is set when a match has occured between SHIFTBUF and Shifter.

Table continues on the next page...

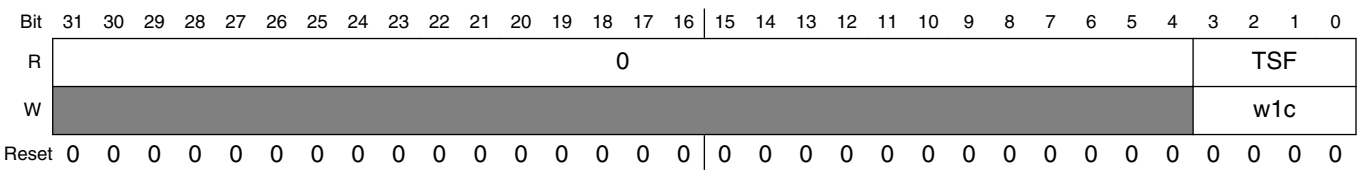
FLEXIO_SHIFTERR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	Can be cleared by writing logic one to the flag. For SMOD=Match Continuous, can also be cleared when the SHIFTBUF register is read. 0 Shifter Error Flag is clear 1 Shifter Error Flag is set

47.3.7 Timer Status Register (FLEXIO_TIMSTAT)

.

Address: 4005_F000h base + 18h offset = 4005_F018h



FLEXIO_TIMSTAT field descriptions

Field	Description
31–4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
TSF	Timer Status Flags The timer status flag sets depending on the timer mode, and can be cleared by writing logic one to the flag. In 8-bit counter mode, the timer status flag is set when the upper 8-bit counter equals zero and decrements, this also causes the counter to reload with the value in the compare register. In 8-bit PWM mode, the timer status flag is set when the upper 8-bit counter equals zero and decrements, this also causes the counter to reload with the value in the compare register.. In 16-bit counter mode, the timer status flag is set when the 16-bit counter equals zero and decrements, this also causes the counter to reload with the value in the compare register.. 0 Timer Status Flag is clear 1 Timer Status Flag is set

47.3.8 Shifter Status Interrupt Enable (FLEXIO_SHIFTSIEN)

.

Address: 4005_F000h base + 20h offset = 4005_F020h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																												SSIE			
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

FLEXIO_SHIFTSIEN field descriptions

Field	Description
31–4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
SSIE	Shifter Status Interrupt Enable Enables interrupt generation when corresponding SSF is set. 0 Shifter Status Flag interrupt disabled 1 Shifter Status Flag interrupt enabled

47.3.9 Shifter Error Interrupt Enable (FLEXIO_SHIFTEIEN)

.

Address: 4005_F000h base + 24h offset = 4005_F024h

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																												SEIE			
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

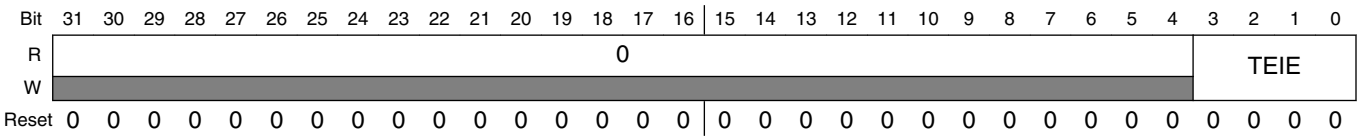
FLEXIO_SHIFTEIEN field descriptions

Field	Description
31–4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
SEIE	Shifter Error Interrupt Enable Enables interrupt generation when corresponding SEF is set. 0 Shifter Error Flag interrupt disabled 1 Shifter Error Flag interrupt enabled

47.3.10 Timer Interrupt Enable Register (FLEXIO_TIMIEN)

.

Address: 4005_F000h base + 28h offset = 4005_F028h



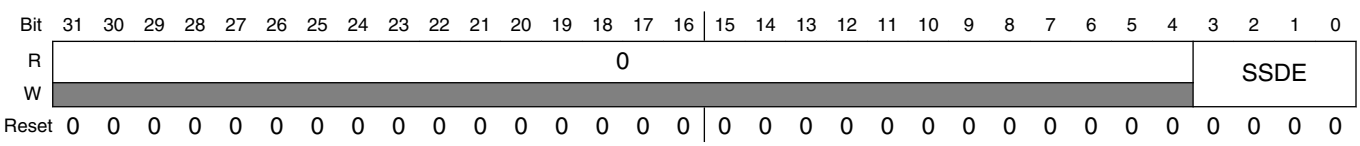
FLEXIO_TIMIEN field descriptions

Field	Description
31–4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
TEIE	Timer Status Interrupt Enable Enables interrupt generation when corresponding TSF is set. 0 Timer Status Flag interrupt is disabled 1 Timer Status Flag interrupt is enabled

47.3.11 Shifter Status DMA Enable (FLEXIO_SHIFTSDEN)

.

Address: 4005_F000h base + 30h offset = 4005_F030h



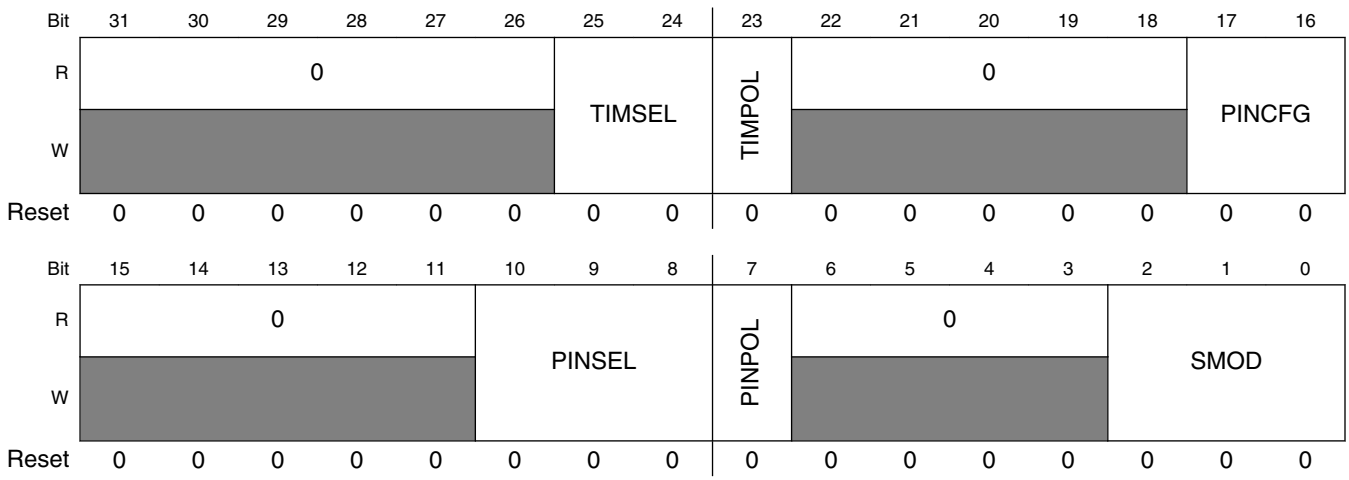
FLEXIO_SHIFTSDEN field descriptions

Field	Description
31–4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
SSDE	Shifter Status DMA Enable Enables DMA request generation when corresponding SSF is set. 0 Shifter Status Flag DMA request is disabled 1 Shifter Status Flag DMA request is enabled

47.3.12 Shifter Control N Register (FLEXIO_SHIFTCTL*n*)

.

Address: 4005_F000h base + 80h offset + (4d × i), where i=0d to 3d



FLEXIO_SHIFTCTL*n* field descriptions

Field	Description
31–26 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
25–24 TIMSEL	Timer Select Selects which Timer is used for controlling the logic/shift register and generating the Shift clock.
23 TIMPOL	Timer Polarity 0 Shift on posedge of Shift clock 1 Shift on negedge of Shift clock
22–18 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
17–16 PINCFG	Shifter Pin Configuration 00 Shifter pin output disabled 01 Shifter pin open drain or bidirectional output enable 10 Shifter pin bidirectional output data 11 Shifter pin output
15–11 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
10–8 PINSEL	Shifter Pin Select Selects which pin is used by the Shifter input or output.
7 PINPOL	Shifter Pin Polarity 0 Pin is active high 1 Pin is active low

Table continues on the next page...

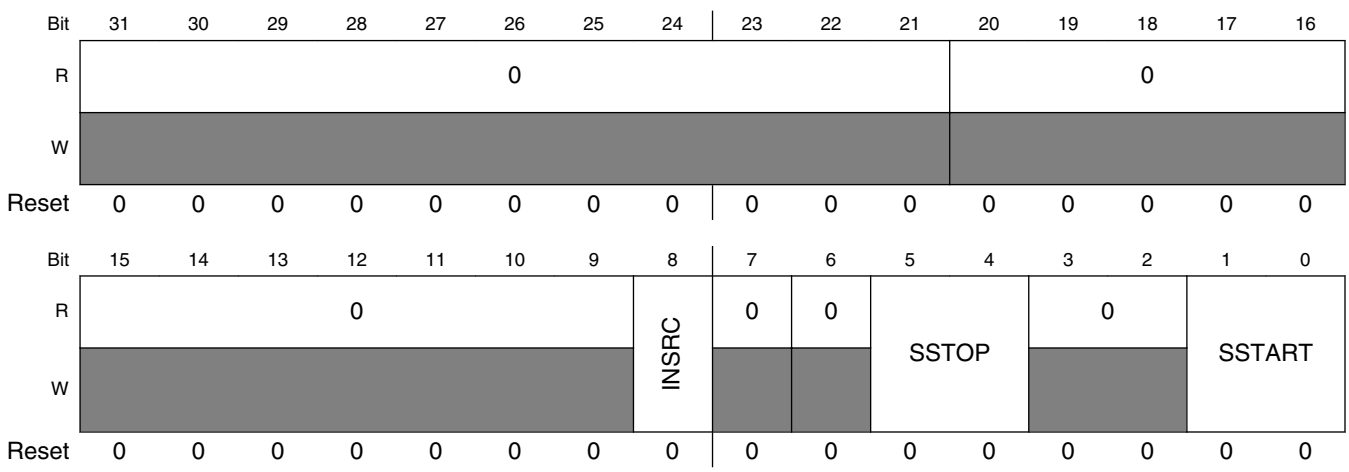
FLEXIO_SHIFTCTL*n* field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
6–3 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
SMOD	Shifter Mode Configures the mode of the Shifter. 000 Disabled. 001 Receive mode. Captures the current Shifter content into the SHIFTBUF on expiration of the Timer. 010 Transmit mode. Load SHIFTBUF contents into the Shifter on expiration of the Timer. 011 Reserved. 100 Match Store mode. Shifter data is compared to SHIFTBUF content on expiration of the Timer. 101 Match Continuous mode. Shifter data is continuously compared to SHIFTBUF contents. 110 Reserved. 111 Reserved.

47.3.13 Shifter Configuration N Register (FLEXIO_SHIFTCFG*n*)

.

Address: 4005_F000h base + 100h offset + (4d × i), where i=0d to 3d



FLEXIO_SHIFTCFG*n* field descriptions

Field	Description
31–21 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
20–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
15–9 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
8 INSRC	Input Source

Table continues on the next page...

FLEXIO_SHIFTCFG*n* field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	Selects the input source for the shifter. 0 Pin 1 Shifter N+1 Output
7 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
5–4 SSTOP	Shifter Stop bit For SMOD=Transmit, this field allows automatic stop bit insertion if the selected timer has also enabled a stop bit. For SMOD=Receive or Match Store, this field allows automatic stop bit checking if the selected timer has also enabled a stop bit. 00 Stop bit disabled for transmitter/receiver/match store 01 Reserved for transmitter/receiver/match store 10 Transmitter outputs stop bit value 0 on store, receiver/match store sets error flag if stop bit is not 0 11 Transmitter outputs stop bit value 1 on store, receiver/match store sets error flag if stop bit is not 1
3–2 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
SSTART	Shifter Start bit For SMOD=Transmit, this field allows automatic start bit insertion if the selected timer has also enabled a start bit. For SMOD=Receive or Match Store, this field allows automatic start bit checking if the selected timer has also enabled a start bit. 00 Start bit disabled for transmitter/receiver/match store, transmitter loads data on enable 01 Start bit disabled for transmitter/receiver/match store, transmitter loads data on first shift 10 Transmitter outputs start bit value 0 before loading data on first shift, receiver/match store sets error flag if start bit is not 0 11 Transmitter outputs start bit value 1 before loading data on first shift, receiver/match store sets error flag if start bit is not 1

47.3.14 Shifter Buffer N Register (FLEXIO_SHIFTBUF*n*)

.

Address: 4005_F000h base + 200h offset + (4d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R W	SHIFTBUF																															
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

FLEXIO_SHIFTBUF*n* field descriptions

Field	Description
SHIFTBUF	Shift Buffer Shift buffer data is used for a variety of functions depending on the SMOD setting: For SMOD=Receive, Shifter data is transferred into SHIFTBUF at the expiration of Timer. For SMOD=Transmit, SHIFTBUF data is transferred into the Shifter before the Timer begins. For SMOD=Match Store/Continuous, SHIFTBUF[31:16] contains the data to be matched with the Shifter contents. The Match is checked either continuosly (Match Continous mode) or when the Timer expires (Match Store mode). SHIFTBUF[15:0] can be used to mask the match result (1=mask, 0=no mask). In Match Store mode, Shifter data [31:16] is written to SHIFTBUF[31:16] whenever a match event occurs.

47.3.15 Shifter Buffer N Bit Swapped Register (FLEXIO_SHIFTBUFBIS*n*)

.

Address: 4005_F000h base + 280h offset + (4d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R W	SHIFTBUFBIS																															
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

FLEXIO_SHIFTBUFBIS*n* field descriptions

Field	Description
SHIFTBUFBIS	Shift Buffer Alias to SHIFTBUF register, except reads/writes to this register are bit swapped. Reads return SHIFTBUF[0:31].

47.3.16 Shifter Buffer N Byte Swapped Register (FLEXIO_SHIFTBUFBYS*n*)

.

Address: 4005_F000h base + 300h offset + (4d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R W	SHIFTBUFBYS																															
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

FLEXIO_SHIFTBUFBYS*n* field descriptions

Field	Description
SHIFTBUFBYS	Shift Buffer

FLEXIO_SHIFTBUFBYS*n* field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	Alias to SHIFTBUF register, except reads/writes to this register are byte swapped. Reads return { SHIFTBUF[7:0], SHIFTBUF[15:8], SHIFTBUF[23:16], SHIFTBUF[31:24] }.

47.3.17 Shifter Buffer N Bit Byte Swapped Register (FLEXIO_SHIFTBUFBBS*n*)

.

Address: 4005_F000h base + 380h offset + (4d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R W	SHIFTBUFBBS																															
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

FLEXIO_SHIFTBUFBBS*n* field descriptions

Field	Description
SHIFTBUFBBS	Shift Buffer Alias to SHIFTBUF register, except reads/writes to this register are bit swapped within each byte. Reads return { SHIFTBUF[24:31], SHIFTBUF[16:23], SHIFTBUF[8:15], SHIFTBUF[0:7] }.

47.3.18 Timer Control N Register (FLEXIO_TIMCTL*n*)

.

Address: 4005_F000h base + 400h offset + (4d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0				TRGSEL				TRGPOL	TRGSRC	0				PINCFG	
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0				PINSEL				PINPOL	0					TIMOD	
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

FLEXIO_TIMCTL*n* field descriptions

Field	Description
31–28 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
27–24 TRGSEL	Trigger Select The valid values for TRGSEL will depend on the FLEXIO_PARAM register. • When TRGSRC = 1, the valid values for N will depend on PIN, TIMER, SHIFTER fields in the FLEXIO_PARAM register. • When TRGSRC = 0, the valid values for N will depend on TRIGGER field in FLEXIO_PARAM register. Refer to the chip configuration section for external trigger selection. The internal trigger selection is configured as follows: {N,00} pin 2N input {N,01} shifter N status flag {N,10} pin 2N+1 input {N,11} timer N trigger output
23 TRGPOL	Trigger Polarity 0 Trigger active high 1 Trigger active low
22 TRGSRC	Trigger Source 0 External trigger selected 1 Internal trigger selected
21–18 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
17–16 PINCFG	Timer Pin Configuration 00 Timer pin output disabled 01 Timer pin open drain or bidirectional output enable 10 Timer pin bidirectional output data 11 Timer pin output
15–11 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
10–8 PINSEL	Timer Pin Select Selects which pin is used by the Timer input or output.
7 PINPOL	Timer Pin Polarity 0 Pin is active high 1 Pin is active low
6–2 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
TIMOD	Timer Mode In 8-bit counter mode, the lower 8-bits of the counter and compare register are used to configure the baud rate of the timer shift clock and the upper 8-bits are used to configure the shifter bit count.

Table continues on the next page...

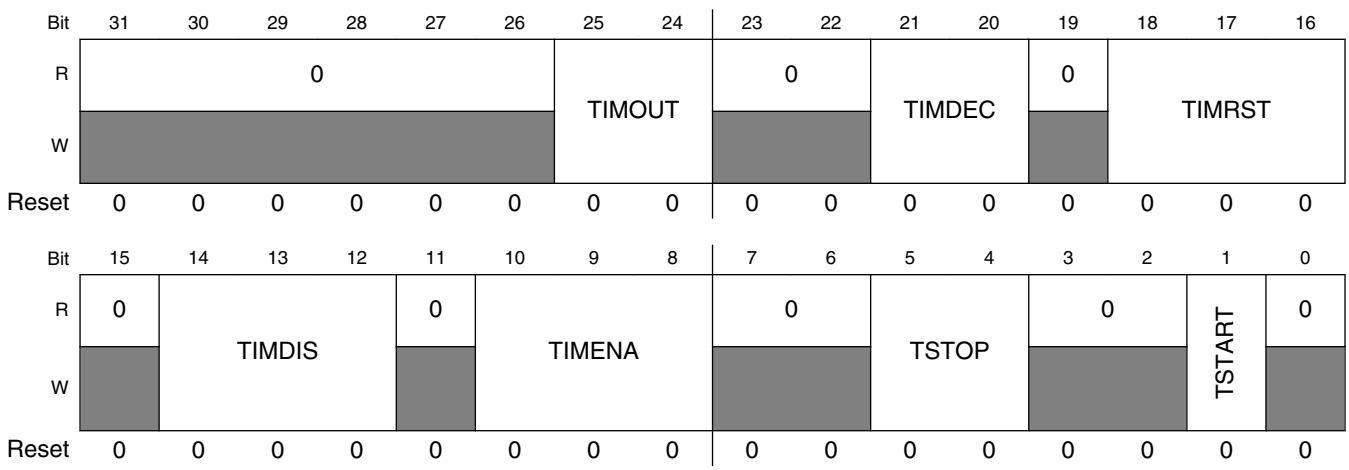
FLEXIO_TIMCTL*n* field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	In 8-bit PWM mode, the lower 8-bits of the counter and compare register are used to configure the high period of the timer shift clock and the upper 8-bits are used to configure the low period of the timer shift clock. The shifter bit count is configured using another timer or external signal. In 16-bit counter mode, the full 16-bits of the counter and compare register are used to configure either the baud rate of the shift clock or the shifter bit count. 00 Timer Disabled. 01 Dual 8-bit counters baud/bit mode. 10 Dual 8-bit counters PWM mode. 11 Single 16-bit counter mode.

47.3.19 Timer Configuration N Register (FLEXIO_TIMCFG*n*)

The options to enable or disable the timer using the Timer N-1 enable or disable are reserved when N is evenly divisible by 4 (eg: Timer 0).

Address: 4005_F000h base + 480h offset + (4d × i), where i=0d to 3d



FLEXIO_TIMCFG*n* field descriptions

Field	Description
31–26 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
25–24 TIMOUT	Timer Output Configures the initial state of the Timer Output and whether it is affected by the Timer reset. 00 Timer output is logic one when enabled and is not affected by timer reset 01 Timer output is logic zero when enabled and is not affected by timer reset 10 Timer output is logic one when enabled and on timer reset 11 Timer output is logic zero when enabled and on timer reset

Table continues on the next page...

FLEXIO_TIMCFG*n* field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
23–22 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
21–20 TIMDEC	Timer Decrement Configures the source of the Timer decrement and the source of the Shift clock. 00 Decrement counter on FlexIO clock, Shift clock equals Timer output. 01 Decrement counter on Trigger input (both edges), Shift clock equals Timer output. 10 Decrement counter on Pin input (both edges), Shift clock equals Pin input. 11 Decrement counter on Trigger input (both edges), Shift clock equals Trigger input.
19 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
18–16 TIMRST	Timer Reset Configures the condition that causes the timer counter (and optionally the timer output) to be reset. In 8-bit counter mode, the timer reset will only reset the lower 8-bits that configure the baud rate. In all other modes, the timer reset will reset the full 16-bits of the counter. 000 Timer never reset 001 Reserved 010 Timer reset on Timer Pin equal to Timer Output 011 Timer reset on Timer Trigger equal to Timer Output 100 Timer reset on Timer Pin rising edge 101 Reserved 110 Timer reset on Trigger rising edge 111 Timer reset on Trigger rising or falling edge
15 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
14–12 TIMDIS	Timer Disable Configures the condition that causes the Timer to be disabled and stop decrementing. 000 Timer never disabled 001 Timer disabled on Timer N-1 disable 010 Timer disabled on Timer compare 011 Timer disabled on Timer compare and Trigger Low 100 Timer disabled on Pin rising or falling edge 101 Timer disabled on Pin rising or falling edge provided Trigger is high 110 Timer disabled on Trigger falling edge 111 Reserved
11 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
10–8 TIMENA	Timer Enable Configures the condition that causes the Timer to be enabled and start decrementing. 000 Timer always enabled 001 Timer enabled on Timer N-1 enable 010 Timer enabled on Trigger high

Table continues on the next page...

FLEXIO_TIMCFG*n* field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	011 Timer enabled on Trigger high and Pin high 100 Timer enabled on Pin rising edge 101 Timer enabled on Pin rising edge and Trigger high 110 Timer enabled on Trigger rising edge 111 Timer enabled on Trigger rising or falling edge
7–6 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
5–4 TSTOP	Timer Stop Bit The stop bit can be added on a timer compare (between each word) or on a timer disable. When stop bit is enabled, configured shifters will output the contents of the stop bit when the timer is disabled. When stop bit is enabled on timer disable, the timer remains disabled until the next rising edge of the shift clock. If configured for both timer compare and timer disable, only one stop bit is inserted on timer disable. 00 Stop bit disabled 01 Stop bit is enabled on timer compare 10 Stop bit is enabled on timer disable 11 Stop bit is enabled on timer compare and timer disable
3–2 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
1 TSTART	Timer Start Bit When start bit is enabled, configured shifters will output the contents of the start bit when the timer is enabled and the timer counter will reload from the compare register on the first rising edge of the shift clock. 0 Start bit disabled 1 Start bit enabled
0 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

47.3.20 Timer Compare N Register (FLEXIO_TIMCMP*n*)

.

Address: 4005_F000h base + 500h offset + (4d × i), where i=0d to 3d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																CMP															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

FLEXIO_TIMCMP*n* field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

Table continues on the next page...

FLEXIO_TIMCMP*n* field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
CMP	Timer Compare Value The timer compare value is loaded into the timer counter when the timer is first enabled, when the timer is reset and when the timer decrements down to zero. In dual 8-bit counters baud/bit mode, the lower 8-bits configures the baud rate divider equal to (CMP[7:0] + 1) * 2. The upper 8-bits configure the number of bits in each word equal to (CMP[15:8] + 1) / 2. In dual 8-bit counters PWM mode, the lower 8-bits configure the high period of the output to (CMP[7:0] + 1) and the upper 8-bits configure the low period of the output to (CMP[15:8] + 1). In 16-bit counter mode, the compare value can be used to generate the baud rate divider (if shift clock source is timer output) to equal (CMP[15:0] + 1) * 2. When the shift clock source is a pin or trigger input, the compare register is used to set the number of bits in each word equal to (CMP[15:0] + 1) / 2.

47.4 Functional description

47.4.1 Shifter operation

Shifters are responsible for buffering and shifting data into or out of the FlexIO. The timing of shift, load and store events are controlled by the Timer assigned to the Shifter via the SHIFTCTL[TIMSEL] register. The Shifters are designed to support either DMA, interrupt or polled operation. The following block diagram provides a detailed view of the Shifter microarchitecture.

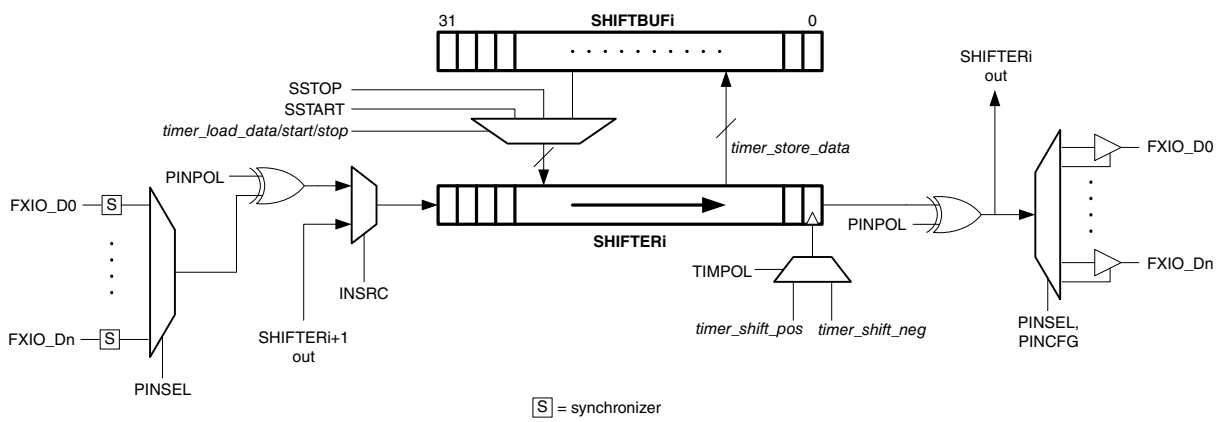


Figure 47-2. Shifter Microarchitecture

47.4.1.1 Transmit Mode

When configured for Transmit mode (SHIFTCTL[SMOD]=Transmit), the shifter will load data from the SHIFTBUF register and shift data out when a load event is signalled by the assigned Timer. An optional start/stop bit can also be automatically loaded before/

after SHIFTBUF data by configuring the SHIFTCFG[SSTART], TIMCFG[TSTART] or SHIFTCFG[SSTOP], TIMCFG[TSTOP] registers in the Shifter and Timer. Note that the shifter will immediately load a stop bit when the Shifter is initially configured for Transmit mode if a stop bit is enabled.

The Shifter Status Flag (SHIFTSTAT[SSF]) and any enabled interrupts or DMA requests will set when data has been loaded from the SHIFTBUF register into the Shifter or when the Shifter is initially configured into Transmit mode. The flag will clear when new data has been written into the SHIFTBUF register.

The Shifter Error Flag (SHIFTERR[SEF]) and any enabled interrupts will set when an attempt to load data from an empty SHIFTBUF register occurs (buffer underrun). The flag can be cleared by writing it with logic 1.

47.4.1.2 Receive Mode

When configured for Receive mode (SHIFTCTL[SMOD]=Receive), the shifter will shift data in and store data into the SHIFTBUF register when a store event is signalled by the assigned Timer. Checking for a start/stop bit can be enabled before/after shifter data is sampled by configuring the SHIFTCFG[SSTART], TIMCFG[TSTART] or SHIFTCFG[SSTOP], TIMCFG[TSTOP] registers in the Shifter and Timer.

The Shifter Status Flag (SHIFTSTAT[SSF]) and any enabled interrupts or DMA requests will set when data has been stored into the SHIFTBUF register from the Shifter. The flag will clear when the data has been read from the SHIFTBUF register.

The Shifter Error Flag (SHIFTERR[SEF]) and any enabled interrupts will set when an attempt to store data into a full SHIFTBUF register occurs (buffer overrun) or when a mismatch occurs on a start/stop bit check. The flag can be cleared by writing it with logic 1.

47.4.1.3 Match Store Mode

When configured for Match Store mode (SHIFTCTL[SMOD]=Match Store), the shifter will shift data in, check for a match result and store matched data into the SHIFTBUF register when a store event is signalled by the assigned Timer. Checking for a start/stop bit can be enabled before/after shifter data is sampled by configuring the SHIFTCFG[SSTART], TIMCFG[TSTART] or SHIFTCFG[SSTOP], TIMCFG[TSTOP] registers in the Shifter and Timer. Up to 16-bits of data can be compared using SHIFTBUF[31:16] to configure the data to be matched and SHIFTBUF[15:0] to mask the match result.

The Shifter Status Flag (SHIFTSTAT[SSF]) and any enabled interrupts or DMA requests will set when a match occurs and matched data has been stored into the SHIFTBUF register from the Shifter. The flag will clear when the matched data has been read from the SHIFTBUF register.

The Shifter Error Flag (SHIFTERR[SEF]) and any enabled interrupts will set when an attempt to store matched data into a full SHIFTBUF register occurs (buffer overrun) or when a mismatch occurs on a start/stop bit check. The flag can be cleared by writing it with logic 1.

47.4.1.4 Match Continuous Mode

When configured for Match Continuous mode (SHIFTCTL[SMOD]=Match Continuous), the shifter will shift data in and continuously check for a match result whenever a shift event is signalled by the assigned Timer. Up to 16-bits of data can be compared using SHIFTBUF[31:16] to configure the data to be matched and SHIFTBUF[15:0] to mask the match result.

The Shifter Status Flag (SHIFTSTAT[SSF]) and any enabled interrupts or DMA requests will set when a match occurs. The flag will clear automatically as soon as there is no longer a match between Shifter data and SHIFTBUF register.

The Shifter Error Flag (SHIFTERR[SEF]) and any enabled interrupts will set when a match occurs. The flag will clear when there is a read from the SHIFTBUF register or it written with logic 1.

47.4.2 Timer operation

The FlexIO 16-bit timers control the loading, shifting and storing of the shift registers, the counters load the contents of the compare register and decrement down to zero on the FlexIO clock. They can perform generic timer functions such as generating a clock or select output or a PWM waveform. Timers can be configured to enable in response to a trigger, pin or shifter condition; decrement always or only on a trigger or pin edge; reset in response to a trigger or pin condition; and disable on a trigger or pin condition or on a timer compare. Timers can optionally include a start condition and/or stop condition.

Each timer operates independently, although a timer can be configured to enable or disable at the same time as the previous timer (eg: timer1 can enable or disable at the same time as timer 0) and a timer output can be used to trigger any other timer. The trigger used by each timer is configured independently and can be configured to be a timer output, shifter status flag, pin input or an external trigger input (refer to the chip

configuration section for details on the external trigger connections). The trigger configuration is separate from the pin configuration, which can be configured for input, output data or output enable.

The Timer Configuration Register (TIMCFGn) should be configured before setting the Timer Mode (TIMOD). Once the TIMOD is configured for the desired mode, when the condition configured by timer enable (TIMENA) is detected then the following events occur.

- Timer counter will load the current value of the Compare Register and start decrementing as configured by TIMDEC.
- Timer output will set depending on the TIMOUT configuration.
- Transmit shifters controlled by this timer will either output their start bit value, or load the shift register from the shift buffer and output the first bit, as configured by SSTART.

The Timer will then generate the timer output and timer shift clock depending on the TIMOD and TIMDEC fields. The shifter clock is either equal to the timer output (when TIMDEC=00 or 01) or equal to the decrement clock (when TIMDEC=10 or 11). When TIMDEC is configured to decrement from a pin or trigger, the timer will decrement on both rising and falling edges.

When the Timer is configured to reset as configured in the TIMRST field then the Timer counter will load the current value of the Compare Register again, the timer output may also be affected by the reset as configured in TIMOUT.

If the Timer start bit is enabled, the timer counter will reload with the compare register on the first rising edge of the shift clock after the timer starts decrementing. If there is no falling edge on the shift clock before the first rising edge (for example, when TIMOUT=1), a shifter that is configured to shift on falling edge and load on the first shift will not load correctly.

When configured for 8-bit counter mode, whenever the lower 8-bit counter decrements to zero the timer output will toggle, the lower 8-bit counter register will reload from the compare register and the upper 8-bit counter will decrement. For 8-bit PWM mode, the lower 8-bit counter will only decrement when the output is high and the upper 8-bit counter will only decrement when the output is low. The timer output will toggle whenever either lower or upper 8-bit counter decrements to zero.

When the timer decrements to zero, a compare event occurs depending on the timer mode. For 8-bit counter or PWM modes, both halves of the counter must equal zero and the upper half must decrement for the timer compare event to occur, while in 16-bit mode the entire counter must equal zero and decrement. The timer compare event will cause the

timer status flag to set, the timer counter to load the contents of the timer compare register, the timer output to toggle, any configured transmit shift registers to load and any configured receive shift registers to store .

When the is Timer is configured to add a stop bit on each compare, the following additional events will occur.

- Transmit shifters controlled by this timer will output their stop bit value (if configured by SSTOP).
- Receive shifters controlled by this timer will store the contents of the shift register in their shift buffer, as configured by SSTOP.
- On the first rising edge of the shifter clock after the compare, the timer counter will reload the current value of the Compare Register.

Transmit shifters must be configured to load on the first shift when the timer is configured to insert a stop bit on each compare.

When the condition configured by timer disable (TIMDIS) is detected, the following events occur.

- Timer counter will reload the current value of the Compare Register and start decrementing as configured by TIMDEC.
- Timer output will clear.
- Transmit shifters controlled by this timer will output their stop bit value (if configured by SSTOP).
- Receive shifters controlled by this timer will store the contents of the shift register in their shift buffer, as configured by SSTOP.

If the timer stop bit is enabled, the timer counter will continue decrementing until the next rising edge of the shift clock is detected, at which point it will finish. A timer enable condition can be detected in the same cycle as a timer disable condition (if timer stop bit is disabled), or on the first rising edge of the shift clock after the disable condition (if stop bit is enabled). Receive shift registers will stop bit enabled will store the contents of the shift register into the shift buffer and verify the state of the input data on the configured shift edge while the timer is in the stop state condition. If there is no configured edge between the timer disable and the next rising edge of the shift clock then the final store and verify do not occur.

47.4.3 Pin operation

The pin configuration for each timer and shifter can be configured to use any FlexIO pin with either polarity. Each timer and shifter can be configured as an input, output data, output enable or bidirectional output. A pin configured for output enable can be used as

an open drain (with inverted polarity, since the output enable assertion would cause logic zero to be output on the pin) or to control the enable on the bidirectional output. Any timer or shifter could be configured to control the output enable for a pin where the bidirectional output data is driven by another timer or shifter.

When configuring a pin as an input (this includes a timer trigger configured as a pin input), the input signal is first synchronized to the FlexIO clock before the signal is used by a timer or shifter. This introduces a small latency of between 0.5 to 1.5 FlexIO clock cycles when using an external pin input to generate an output or control a shifter. This sets the maximum setup time at 1.5 FlexIO clock cycles.

If an input is used by more than one timer or shifter then the synchronization occurs once to ensure any edge is seen on the same cycle by all timers and shifters using that input.

Note that FlexIO pins are also connected internally, configuring a FlexIO shifter or timer to output data on an unused pin will make an internal connection that allows other shifters and timer to use this pin as an input. This allows a shifter output to be used to trigger a timer or a timer output to be shifted into a shifter. This path is also synchronized to the FlexIO clock and therefore incurs a 1 cycle latency.

So when using a Pin input as a Timer Trigger, Timer Clock or Shifter Data Input, the following synchronization delays occur:

1. 0.5 – 1.5 FlexIO clock cycles for external pin
2. 1 FlexIO clock cycle for an internally driven pin

For timing considerations such as output valid time and input setup time for specific applications (SPI Master, SPI Slave, I2C Master, I2S Master, I2S Slave) please refer to the FlexIO Application Information Section.

47.5 Application Information

This section provides examples for a variety of FlexIO module applications.

47.5.1 UART Transmit

UART transmit can be supported using one Timer, one Shifter and one Pin (two Pins if supporting CTS). The start and stop bit insertion is handled automatically and multiple transfers can be supported using DMA controller. The timer status flag can be used to indicate when the stop bit of each word is transmitted.

Break and idle characters require software intervention, before transmitting a break or idle character the SSTART and SSTOP fields should be altered to transmit the required state and the data to transmit must equal 0xFF or 0x00. Supporting a second stop bit requires the stop bit to be inserted into the data stream using software (and increasing the number of bits to transmit). Note that when performing byte writes to SHIFTBUFn (or SHIFTBUFBIS for transmitting MSB first), the rest of the register remains unaltered allowing an address mark bit or additional stop bit to remain undisturbed.

FlexIO does not support automatic insertion of parity bits.

Table 47-3. UART Transmit Configuration

Register	Value	Comments
SHIFTCFGn	0x0000_0032	Configure start bit of 0 and stop bit of 1.
SHIFTCTLn	0x0003_0002	Configure transmit using Timer 0 on posedge of clock with output data on Pin 0. Can invert output data by setting PINPOL, or can support open drain by setting PINPOL=0x1 and PINCFG=0x1.
TIMCMPn	0x0000_0F01	Configure 8-bit transfer with baud rate of divide by 4 of the FlexIO clock. Set TIMCMP[15:8] = (number of bits x 2) - 1. Set TIMCMP[7:0] = (baud rate divider / 2) - 1.
TIMCFGn	0x0000_2222	Configure start bit, stop bit, enable on trigger low and disable on compare. Can support CTS by configuring TIMEN=0x3.
TIMCTLn	0x01C0_0001	Configure dual 8-bit counter using Shifter 0 status flag as inverted internal trigger source. Can support CTS by configuring PINSEL=0x1 (for Pin 1) and PINPOL=0x1.
SHIFTBUFn	Data to transmit	Transmit data can be written to SHIFTBUF[7:0] to initiate an 8-bit transfer, use the Shifter Status Flag to indicate when data can be written using interrupt or DMA request. Can support MSB first transfer by writing to SHIFTBUFBBS[7:0] register instead.

47.5.2 UART Receive

UART receive can be supported using one Timer, one Shifter and one Pin (two Timers and two Pins if supporting RTS). The start and stop bit verification is handled automatically and multiple transfers can be supported using the DMA controller. The timer status flag can be used to indicate when the stop bit of each word is received.

Triple voting of the received data is not supported by FlexIO, data is sampled only once in the middle of each bit. Another timer can be used to implement a glitch filter on the incoming data, another Timer can also be used to detect an idle line of programmable length. Break characters will cause the error flag to set and the shifter buffer register will return 0x00.

FlexIO does not support automatic verification of parity bits.

Table 47-4. UART Receiver Configuration

Register	Value	Comments
SHIFTCFGn	0x0000_0032	Configure start bit of 0 and stop bit of 1.
SHIFTCTLn	0x0080_0001	Configure receive using Timer 0 on negedge of clock with input data on Pin 0. Can invert input data by setting PINPOL.
TIMCMPn	0x0000_0F01	Configure 8-bit transfer with baud rate of divide by 4 of the FlexIO clock. Set TIMCMP[15:8] = (number of bits x 2) - 1. Set TIMCMP[7:0] = (baud rate divider / 2) - 1.
TIMCFGn	0x0204_2422	Configure start bit, stop bit, enable on pin posedge and disable on compare. Enable resynchronization to received data with TIMOUT=0x2 and TIMRST=0x4.
TIMCTLn	0x0000_0081	Configure dual 8-bit counter using inverted Pin 0 input.
SHIFTBUFn	Data to receive	Received data can be read from SHIFTBUFBYS[7:0], use the Shifter Status Flag to indicate when data can be read using interrupt or DMA request. Can support MSB first transfer by reading from SHIFTBUFBIS[7:0] register instead.

The UART Receiver with RTS configuration uses a 2nd Timer to generate the RTS output. The RTS will assert when the start bit is detected and negate when the data is read from the shifter buffer register. No start bit will be detected while the RTS is asserted, the received data is simply ignored.

Table 47-5. UART Receiver with RTS Configuration

Register	Value	Comments
SHIFTCFGn	0x0000_0032	Configure start bit of 0 and stop bit of 1.
SHIFTCTLn	0x0080_0001	Configure receive using Timer 0 on negedge of clock with input data on Pin 0. Can invert input data by setting PINPOL.

Table continues on the next page...

Table 47-5. UART Receiver with RTS Configuration (continued)

Register	Value	Comments
TIMCMPn	0x0000_0F01	Configure 8-bit transfer with baud rate of divide by 4 of the FlexIO clock. Set TIMCMP[15:8] = (number of bits x 2) - 1. Set TIMCMP[7:0] = (baud rate divider / 2) - 1.
TIMCFGn	0x0204_2522	Configure start bit, stop bit, enable on pin posedge with trigger low and disable on compare. Enable resynchronization to received data with TIMOUT=0x2 and TIMRST=0x4.
TIMCTLn	0x03C0_0081	Configure dual 8-bit counter using inverted Pin 0 input. Trigger is internal using inverted Pin 1 input.
TIMCMP(n+1)	0x0000_FFFF	Never compare.
TIMCFG(n+1)	0x0030_6100	Enable on Timer N enable and disable on trigger falling edge. Decrement on trigger to ensure no compare.
TIMCTL(n+1)	0x0143_0083	Configure 16-bit counter and output on Pin 1. Trigger is internal using Shifter 0 flag.
SHIFTBUFn	Data to receive	Received data can be read from SHIFTBUFBYS[7:0], use the Shifter Status Flag to indicate when data can be read using interrupt or DMA request. Can support MSB first transfer by reading from SHIFTBUFBIS[7:0] register instead.

47.5.3 SPI Master

SPI master mode can be supported using two Timers, two Shifters and four Pins. Either CPHA=0 or CPHA=1 can be supported and transfers can be supported using the DMA controller. For CPHA=1, the select can remain asserted for multiple transfers and the timer status flag can be used to indicate the end of the transfer.

The stop bit is used to guarantee a minimum of 1 clock cycle between the slave select negating and before the next transfer. Writing to the transmit buffer by either core or DMA is used to initiate each transfer.

Due to synchronization delays, the setup time for the serial input data is 1.5 FlexIO clock cycles, so the maximum baud rate is divide by 4 of the FlexIO clock frequency.

Table 47-6. SPI Master (CPHA=0) Configuration

Register	Value	Comments
SHIFTCFGn	0x0000_0000	Start and stop bit disabled.
SHIFTCTLn	0x0083_0002	Configure transmit using Timer 0 on negedge of clock with output data on Pin 0.
SHIFTCFG(n+1)	0x0000_0000	Start and stop bit disabled.
SHIFTCTL(n+1)	0x0000_0101	Configure receive using Timer 0 on posedge of clock with input data on Pin 1.
TIMCMPn	0x0000_3F01	Configure 32-bit transfer with baud rate of divide by 4 of the FlexIO clock. Set TIMCMP[15:8] = (number of bits x 2) - 1. Set TIMCMP[7:0] = (baud rate divider / 2) - 1.
TIMCFGn	0x0100_2222	Configure start bit, stop bit, enable on trigger high and disable on compare, initial clock state is logic 0. Set PINPOL to invert the output shift clock.
TIMCTLn	0x01C3_0201	Configure dual 8-bit counter using Pin 2 output (shift clock), with Shifter 0 flag as the inverted trigger.
TIMCMP(n+1)	0x0000_FFFF	Never compare.
TIMCFG(n+1)	0x0000_1100	Enable when Timer 0 is enabled and disable when Timer 0 is disabled.
TIMCTL(n+1)	0x0003_0383	Configure 16-bit counter (never compare) using inverted Pin 3 output (as slave select).
SHIFTBUFn	Data to transmit	Transmit data can be written to SHIFTBUF, use the Shifter Status Flag to indicate when data can be written using interrupt or DMA request. Can support MSB first transfer by writing to SHIFTBUFBBS register instead.
SHIFTBUF(n+1)	Data to receive	Received data can be read from SHIFTBUFBYS, use the Shifter Status Flag to indicate when data can be read using interrupt or DMA request. Can support MSB first transfer by reading from SHIFTBUFBIS register instead.

Table 47-7. SPI Master (CPHA=1) Configuration

Register	Value	Comments
SHIFTCFGn	0x0000_0021	Start bit loads data on first shift.
SHIFTCTLn	0x0003_0002	Configure transmit using Timer 0 on posedge of clock with output data on Pin 0.
SHIFTCFG(n+1)	0x0000_0000	Start and stop bit disabled.

Table continues on the next page...

Table 47-7. SPI Master (CPHA=1) Configuration (continued)

Register	Value	Comments
SHIFTCTL(n+1)	0x0080_0101	Configure receive using Timer 0 on negedge of clock with input data on Pin 1.
TIMCMPn	0x0000_3F01	Configure 32-bit transfer with baud rate of divide by 4 of the FlexIO clock. Set TIMCMP[15:8] = (number of bits x 2) - 1. Set TIMCMP[7:0] = (baud rate divider / 2) - 1.
TIMCFGn	0x0100_2222	Configure start bit, stop bit, enable on trigger high and disable on compare, initial clock state is logic 0. Set PINPOL to invert the output shift clock. Set TIMDIS=3 to keep slave select asserted for as long as there is data in the transmit buffer.
TIMCTLn	0x01C3_0201	Configure dual 8-bit counter using Pin 2 output (shift clock), with Shifter 0 flag as the inverted trigger.
TIMCMP(n+1)	0x0000_FFFF	Never compare.
TIMCFG(n+1)	0x0000_1100	Enable when Timer 0 is enabled and disable when Timer 0 is disabled.
TIMCTL(n+1)	0x0003_0383	Configure 16-bit counter (never compare) using inverted Pin 3 output (as slave select).
SHIFTBUFn	Data to transmit	Transmit data can be written to SHIFTBUF, use the Shifter Status Flag to indicate when data can be written using interrupt or DMA request. Can support MSB first transfer by writing to SHIFTBUFBBS register instead.
SHIFTBUF(n+1)	Data to receive	Received data can be read from SHIFTBUFBYS, use the Shifter Status Flag to indicate when data can be read using interrupt or DMA request. Can support MSB first transfer by reading from SHIFTBUFBIS register instead.

47.5.4 SPI Slave

SPI slave mode can be supported using one Timer, two Shifters and four Pins. Either CPHA=0 or CPHA=1 can be supported and transfers can be supported using the DMA controller. For CPHA=1, the select can remain asserted for multiple transfers and the timer status flag can be used to indicate the end of the transfer.

The transmit data must be written to the transmit buffer register before the external slave select asserts, otherwise the shifter error flag will be set.

Due to synchronization delays, the output valid time for the serial output data is 2.5 FlexIO clock cycles, so the maximum baud rate is divide by 6 of the FlexIO clock frequency.

Table 47-8. SPI Slave (CPHA=0) Configuration

Register	Value	Comments
SHIFTCFGn	0x0000_0000	Start and stop bit disabled.
SHIFTCTLn	0x0083_0002	Configure transmit using Timer 0 on falling edge of shift clock with output data on Pin 0.
SHIFTCFG(n+1)	0x0000_0000	Start and stop bit disabled.
SHIFTCTL(n+1)	0x0000_0101	Configure receive using Timer 0 on rising edge of shift clock with input data on Pin 1.
TIMCMPn	0x0000_003F	Configure 32-bit transfer. Set TIMCMP[15:0] = (number of bits x 2) - 1.
TIMCFGn	0x0120_6000	Configure enable on trigger rising edge, initial clock state is logic 0 and decrement on pin input.
TIMCTLn	0x06C0_0203	Configure 16-bit counter using Pin 2 input (shift clock), with Pin 3 input (slave select) as the inverted trigger.
SHIFTBUFn	Data to transmit	Transmit data can be written to SHIFTBUF, use the Shifter Status Flag to indicate when data can be written using interrupt or DMA request. Can support MSB first transfer by writing to SHIFTBUFBBS register instead.
SHIFTBUF(n+1)	Data to receive	Received data can be read from SHIFTBUFBYS, use the Shifter Status Flag to indicate when data can be read using interrupt or DMA request. Can support MSB first transfer by reading from SHIFTBUFBIS register instead.

Table 47-9. SPI Slave (CPHA=1) Configuration

Register	Value	Comments
SHIFTCFGn	0x0000_0001	Shifter configured to load on first shift and stop bit disabled.
SHIFTCTLn	0x0003_0002	Configure transmit using Timer 0 on rising edge of shift clock with output data on Pin 0.
SHIFTCFG(n+1)	0x0000_0000	Start and stop bit disabled.
SHIFTCTL(n+1)	0x0080_0101	Configure receive using Timer 0 on falling edge of shift clock with input data on Pin 1.
TIMCMPn	0x0000_003F	Configure 32-bit transfer. Set TIMCMP[15:0] = (number of bits x 2) - 1.

Table continues on the next page...

Table 47-9. SPI Slave (CPHA=1) Configuration (continued)

Register	Value	Comments
TIMCFGn	0x0120_6602	Configure start bit, enable on trigger rising edge, disable on trigger falling edge, initial clock state is logic 0 and decrement on pin input.
TIMCTLn	0x06C0_0203	Configure 16-bit counter using Pin 2 input (shift clock), with Pin 3 input (slave select) as the inverted trigger.
SHIFTBUFn	Data to transmit	Transmit data can be written to SHIFTBUF, use the Shifter Status Flag to indicate when data can be written using interrupt or DMA request. Can support MSB first transfer by writing to SHIFTBUFBBS register instead.
SHIFTBUF(n+1)	Data to receive	Received data can be read from SHIFTBUFBYS, use the Shifter Status Flag to indicate when data can be read using interrupt or DMA request. Can support MSB first transfer by reading from SHIFTBUFBIS register instead.

47.5.5 I2C Master

I2C master mode can be supported using two Timers, two Shifters and two Pins. One timer is used to generate the SCL output and one timer is used to control the shifters. The two shifters are used to transmit and receive for every word, when receiving the transmitter must transmit 0xFF to tristate the output. FlexIO inserts a stop bit after every word to generate/verify the ACK/NACK. FlexIO waits for the first write to the transmit data buffer before enabling SCL generation. Data transfers can be supported using the DMA controller and the shifter error flag will set on transmit underrun or receive overflow.

The first timer generates the bit clock for the entire packet (START to Repeated START/ STOP), so the compare register needs to be programmed with the total number of clock edges in the packet (minus one). The timer supports clock stretching using the reset counter when pin equal to output (although this increases both the clock high and clock low periods by at least 1 FlexIO clock cycle each). The second timer uses the SCL input pin to control the transmit/receive shift registers, this enforces an SDA data hold time by an extra 2 FlexIO clock cycles.

Both the transmit and receive shifters need to be serviced for each word in the transfer, the transmit shifter must transmit 0xFF when receiving and the receive shifter returns the data actually present on the SDA pin. The transmit shifter will load 1 additional word on

the last falling edge of SCL pin, this word should be 0x00 if generating a STOP condition or 0xFF if generating a repeated START condition. During the last word of a master-receiver transfer, the transmit SSTOP bit should be set by software to generate a NACK.

The receive shift register will assert an error interrupt if a NACK is detected, but software is responsible for generating the STOP or repeated START condition. If a NACK is detected during master-transmit, the interrupt routine should immediately write the transmit shifter register with 0x00 (if generating STOP) or 0xFF (if generating repeated START). Software should then wait for the next rising edge on SCL and then disable both timers. The transmit shifter should then be disabled after waiting the setup delay for a repeated START or STOP condition.

Due to synchronization delays, the data valid time for the transmit output is 2 FlexIO clock cycles, so the maximum baud rate is divide by 6 of the FlexIO clock frequency.

The I2C master data valid is delayed 2 cycles because the clock output is passed through a synchronizer before clocking the transmit/receive shifter (to guarantee some SDA hold time). Since the SCL output is synchronous with FlexIO clock, the synchronization delay is 1 cycle and then 1 cycle to generate the output.

Table 47-10. I2C Master Configuration

Register	Value	Comments
SHIFTCFGn	0x0000_0032	Start bit enabled (logic 0) and stop bit enabled (logic 1).
SHIFTCTLn	0x0101_0082	Configure transmit using Timer 1 on rising edge of clock with inverted output enable (open drain output) on Pin 0.
SHIFTCFG(n+1)	0x0000_0020	Start bit disabled and stop bit enabled (logic 0) for ACK/NACK detection.
SHIFTCTL(n+1)	0x0180_0001	Configure receive using Timer 1 on falling edge of clock with input data on Pin 0.
TIMCMPn	0x0000_2501	Configure 2 word transfer with baud rate of divide by 4 of the FlexIO clock. Set TIMCMP[15:8] = (number of words x 18) + 1. Set TIMCMP[7:0] = (baud rate divider / 2) - 1.
TIMCFGn	0x0102_2222	Configure start bit, stop bit, enable on trigger high, disable on compare, reset if output equals pin. Initial clock state is logic 0 and is not affected by reset.
TIMCTLn	0x01C1_0101	Configure dual 8-bit counter using Pin 1 output enable (SCL open drain), with Shifter 0 flag as the inverted trigger.
TIMCMP(n+1)	0x0000_000F	Configure 8-bit transfer. Set TIMCMP[15:0] = (number of bits x 2) - 1.
TIMCFG(n+1)	0x0020_1112	Enable when Timer 0 is enabled, disable when Timer 0 is disabled, enable start

Table continues on the next page...

Table 47-10. I2C Master Configuration (continued)

Register	Value	Comments
		bit and stop bit at end of each word, decrement on pin input.
TIMCTL(n+1)	0x01C0_0183	Configure 16-bit counter using inverted Pin 1 input (SCL).
SHIFTBUFn	Data to transmit	Transmit data can be written to SHIFTBUFBBS[7:0], use the Shifter Status Flag to indicate when data can be written using interrupt or DMA request.
SHIFTBUF(n+1)	Data to receive	Received data can be read from SHIFTBUFBIS[7:0], use the Shifter Status Flag to indicate when data can be read using interrupt or DMA request.

47.5.6 I2S Master

I2S master mode can be supported using two Timers, two Shifters and four Pins. One timer is used to generate the bit clock and control the shifters and one timer is used to generate the frame sync. FlexIO waits for the first write to the transmit data buffer before enabling bit clock and frame sync generation. Data transfers can be supported using the DMA controller and the shifter error flag will set on transmit underrun or receive overflow.

The bit clock frequency is an even integer divide of the FlexIO clock frequency, and the initial frame sync assertion occurs at the same time as the first bit clock edge. The timer uses the start bit to ensure the frame sync is generated one clock cycle before the first output data.

Due to synchronization delays, the setup time for the receiver input is 1.5 FlexIO clock cycles, so the maximum baud rate is divide by 4 of the FlexIO clock frequency.

Table 47-11. I2S Master Configuration

Register	Value	Comments
SHIFTCFGn	0x0000_0001	Load transmit data on first shift and stop bit disabled.
SHIFTCTLn	0x0003_0002	Configure transmit using Timer 0 on rising edge of clock with output data on Pin 0.
SHIFTCFG(n+1)	0x0000_0000	Start and stop bit disabled.
SHIFTCTL(n+1)	0x0080_0101	Configure receive using Timer 0 on falling edge of clock with input data on Pin 1.

Table continues on the next page...

Table 47-11. I2S Master Configuration (continued)

Register	Value	Comments
TIMCMPn	0x0000_3F01	Configure 32-bit transfer with baud rate of divide by 4 of the FlexIO clock. Set TIMCMP[15:8] = (number of bits x 2) - 1. Set TIMCMP[7:0] = (baud rate divider / 2) - 1.
TIMCFGn	0x0000_0202	Configure start bit, enable on trigger high and never disable. Initial clock state is logic 1.
TIMCTLn	0x01C3_0201	Configure dual 8-bit counter using Pin 2 output (bit clock), with Shifter 0 flag as the inverted trigger. Set PINPOL to invert the output shift clock.
TIMCMP(n+1)	0x0000_007F	Configure 32-bit transfer with baud rate of divide by 4 of the FlexIO clock. Set TIMCMP[15:0] = (number of bits x baud rate divider) - 1.
TIMCFG(n+1)	0x0000_0100	Enable when Timer 0 is enabled and never disable.
TIMCTL(n+1)	0x0003_0383	Configure 16-bit counter using inverted Pin 3 output (as frame sync).
SHIFTBUFn	Data to transmit	Transmit data can be written to SHIFTBUFBIS, use the Shifter Status Flag to indicate when data can be written using interrupt or DMA request. Can support LSB first transfer by writing to SHIFTBUF register instead.
SHIFTBUF(n+1)	Data to receive	Received data can be read from SHIFTBUFBIS, use the Shifter Status Flag to indicate when data can be read using interrupt or DMA request. Can support LSB first transfer by reading from SHIFTBUF register instead.

47.5.7 I2S Slave

I2S slave mode can be supported using two Timers, two Shifters and four Pins (for single transmit and single receive, other combinations of transmit and receive are possible).

The transmit data must be written to the transmit buffer register before the external frame sync asserts, otherwise the shifter error flag will be set.

Due to synchronization delays, the output valid time for the serial output data is 2.5 FlexIO clock cycles, so the maximum baud rate is divide by 6 of the FlexIO clock frequency.

The output valid time of I2S slave is max 2.5 cycles because there is a maximum 1.5 cycle delay on the clock synchronization plus 1 cycle to output the data

Table 47-12. I2S Slave Configuration

Register	Value	Comments
SHIFTCFGn	0x0000_0000	Start and stop bit disabled.
SHIFTCTLn	0x0103_0002	Configure transmit using Timer 1 on rising edge of shift clock with output data on Pin 0.
SHIFTCFG(n+1)	0x0000_0000	Start and stop bit disabled.
SHIFTCTL(n+1)	0x0180_0101	Configure receive using Timer 1 on falling edge of shift clock with input data on Pin 1.
TIMCMPn	0x0000_007D	Configure two 32-bit transfers per frame. Set TIMCMP[15:0] = (number of bits x 4) - 3.
TIMCFGn	0x0030_2400	Configure enable on pin rising edge (inverted frame sync) and disable on compare, initial clock state is logic 1 and decrement on trigger input (bit clock).
TIMCTLn	0x0440_0383	Configure 16-bit counter using inverted Pin 3 input (frame sync), with Pin 2 input (bit clock) as the trigger.
TIMCMP(n+1)	0x0000_003F	Configure 32-bit transfers. Set TIMCMP[15:0] = (number of bits x 2) - 1.
TIMCFG(n+1)	0x0020_3500	Configure enable on pin rising edge with trigger high and disable on compare with trigger low, initial clock state is logic 0 and decrement on pin input.
TIMCTL(n+1)	0x0340_0203	Configure 16-bit counter using Pin 2 input (bit clock), with Timer 0 output as the trigger.
SHIFTBUFn	Data to transmit	Transmit data can be written to SHIFTBUFBIS, use the Shifter Status Flag to indicate when data can be written using interrupt or DMA request. Can support LSB first transfer by writing to SHIFTBUF register instead.
SHIFTBUF(n+1)	Data to receive	Received data can be read from SHIFTBUFBIS, use the Shifter Status Flag to indicate when data can be read using interrupt or DMA request. Can support LSB first transfer by reading from SHIFTBUF register instead.

Chapter 48
Integrated Interchip Sound (I2S) / Synchronous Audio Interface (SAI)

48.1 Chip-specific Information for this Module

48.1.1 Instantiation information

This device contains two I^2S modules.

As configured on the device, module features include:

- TX data lines per module: 1
- RX data lines per module: 1
- FIFO size (words): 8
- Maximum words per frame: 16
- Maximum bit clock divider: 512

48.1.2 I^2S/SAI clocking

48.1.2.1 Audio Master Clock

The audio master clock (MCLK) is used to generate the bit clock when the receiver or transmitter is configured for an internally generated bit clock. The audio master clock can also be output to or input from a pin. The transmitter and receiver have the same audio master clock inputs.

48.1.2.2 Bit Clock

The I^{2}S/SAI transmitter and receiver support asynchronous bit clocks (BCLKs) that can be generated internally from the audio master clock or supplied externally. The module also supports the option for synchronous operation between the receiver and transmitter product or between two separate I^{2}S/SAI peripherals.

48.1.2.3 Bus Clock

The bus clock is used by the control registers and to generate synchronous interrupts and DMA requests.

48.1.2.4 I^{2}S/SAI clock generation

Each SAI peripheral can control the input clock selection, pin direction and divide ratio of one audio master clock.

The MCLK Input Clock Select bit of the MCLK Control Register (MCR[MICS]) selects the clock input to the I^{2}S/SAI module's MCLK divider.

The following table shows the input clock selection options on this device.

Table 48-1. I2S0 and I2S1MCLK input clock selection

MCR[MICS]	Clock Selection
00	System clock
01	OSCERCLK
10	Not supported
11	MCGPLLCLK, MCGFLLCLK, or IRC48MCLK

The module's MCLK Divide Register (MDR) configures the MCLK divide ratio.

The module's MCLK Output Enable bit of the MCLK Control Register (MCR[MOE]) controls the direction of the MCLK pin. The pin is the input from the pin when MOE is 0, and the pin is the output from the clock divider when MOE is 1.

The transmitter and receiver can independently select between the bus clock and the audio master clocks to generate the bit clock. Each module's Clocking Mode field of the Transmit Configuration 2 Register and Receive Configuration 2 Register (TCR2[MSEL] and RCR2[MSEL]) selects the master clock.

The following tables show the TCR2[MSEL] and RCR2[MSEL] field settings for the module instances on this device.

Table 48-2. I2S0 master clock settings

TCR2[MSEL], RCR2[MSEL]	Master Clock
00	Bus Clock
01	When MOE is 1: MCLK is generated internally from PLL, OSC, or system clock When MOE is 0: I2S0_MCLK
10	I2S1_MCLK
11	Reserved

Table 48-3. I2S1 master clock settings

TCR2[MSEL], RCR2[MSEL]	Master Clock
00	Bus Clock
01	When MOE is 1: MCLK is generated internally from PLL, OSC, or system clock When MOE is 0: I2S1_MCLK
10	I2S0_MCLK
11	Reserved

48.1.2.5 Clock gating and I²S/SAI initialization

The clock to the I²S/SAI module can be gated using a bit in the SIM. To minimize power consumption, these bits are cleared after any reset, which disables the clock to the corresponding module. The clock enable bit should be set by software at the beginning of the module initialization routine to enable the module clock before initialization of any of the I²S/SAI registers.

48.1.3 I²S/SAI operation in low power modes

48.1.3.1 Stop and very low power modes

In Stop mode, the SAI transmitter and/or receiver can continue operating provided the appropriate Stop Enable bit is set (TCSR[STOPE] and/or RCSR[STOPE], respectively), and provided the transmitter and/or receiver is/are using an externally generated bit clock or an Audio Master Clock that remains operating in Stop mode. The SAI transmitter and/or receiver can generate an asynchronous interrupt to wake the CPU from Stop mode.

In VLPS mode, the module behaves as it does in stop mode if VLPS mode is entered from run mode. However, if VLPS mode is entered from VLPR mode, the FIFO might underflow or overflow before wakeup from stop mode due to the limits in bus bandwidth. In VLPW and VLPR modes, the module is limited by the maximum bus clock frequencies.

When operating from an internally generated bit clock or Audio Master Clock that is disabled in stop modes:

In Stop mode, if the Transmitter Stop Enable (TCSR[STOPE]) bit is clear, the transmitter is disabled after completing the current transmit frame, and, if the Receiver Stop Enable (RCSR[STOPE]) bit is clear, the receiver is disabled after completing the current receive frame. Entry into Stop mode is prevented–not acknowledged–while waiting for the transmitter and receiver to be disabled at the end of the current frame.

48.1.3.2 Low-leakage modes

When entering low-leakage modes, the Stop Enable (TCSR[STOPE] and RCSR[STOPE]) bits are ignored and the SAI is disabled after completing the current transmit and receive Frames. Entry into stop mode is prevented (not acknowledged) while waiting for the transmitter and receiver to be disabled at the end of the current frame.

48.2 Introduction

The I^2S (or I2S) module provides a synchronous audio interface (SAI) that supports full-duplex serial interfaces with frame synchronization such as I^2S, AC97, TDM, and codec/DSP interfaces.

48.2.1 Features

Note that some of the features are not supported across all SAI instances; see the chip-specific information in the first section of this chapter.

- Transmitter with independent bit clock and frame sync supporting 1 data line
- Receiver with independent bit clock and frame sync supporting 1 data line
- Maximum Frame Size of 16 words
- Word size of between 8-bits and 32-bits
- Word size configured separately for first word and remaining words in frame
- Asynchronous 8 × 32-bit FIFO for each transmit and receive channel
- Supports graceful restart after FIFO error
- Supports automatic restart after FIFO error without software intervention
- Supports packing of 8-bit and 16-bit data into each 32-bit FIFO word

48.2.2 Block diagram

The following block diagram also shows the module clocks.

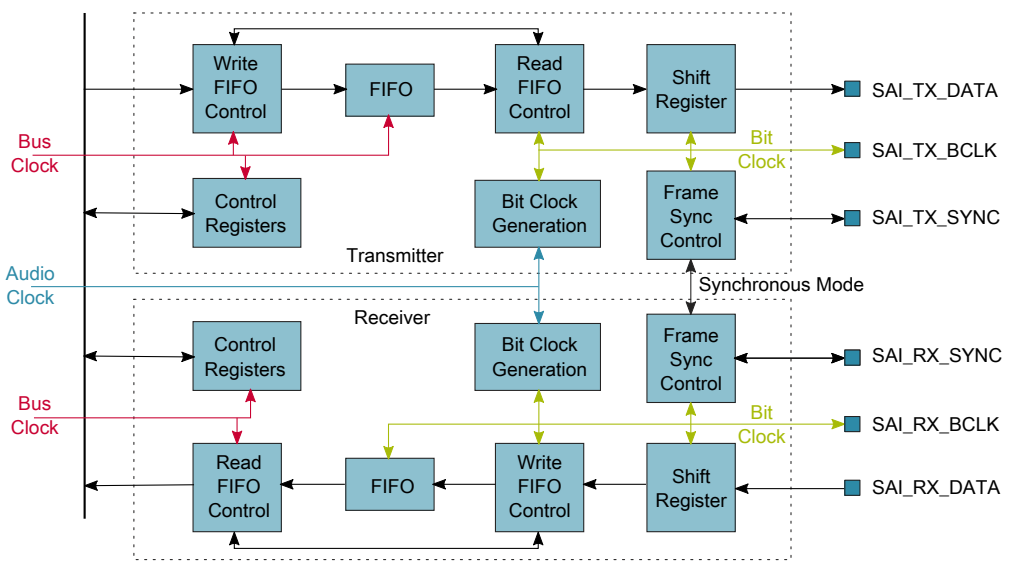


Figure 48-1. I²S/SAI block diagram

48.2.3 Modes of operation

The module operates in these power modes: Run mode, stop modes, low-leakage modes, and Debug mode.

48.2.3.1 Run mode

In Run mode, the SAI transmitter and receiver operate normally.

48.2.3.2 Stop modes

In Stop mode, the SAI transmitter and/or receiver can continue operating provided the appropriate Stop Enable bit is set (TCSR[STOPE] and/or RCSR[STOPE], respectively), and provided the transmitter and/or receiver is/are using an externally generated bit clock or an Audio Master Clock that remains operating in Stop mode. The SAI transmitter and/or receiver can generate an asynchronous interrupt to wake the CPU from Stop mode.

In Stop mode, if the Transmitter Stop Enable (TCSR[STOPE]) bit is clear, the transmitter is disabled after completing the current transmit frame, and, if the Receiver Stop Enable (RCSR[STOPE]) bit is clear, the receiver is disabled after completing the current receive frame. Entry into Stop mode is prevented–not acknowledged–while waiting for the transmitter and receiver to be disabled at the end of the current frame.

48.2.3.3 Low-leakage modes

When entering low-leakage modes, the Stop Enable (TCSR[STOPE] and RCSR[STOPE]) bits are ignored and the SAI is disabled after completing the current transmit and receive Frames. Entry into stop mode is prevented (not acknowledged) while waiting for the transmitter and receiver to be disabled at the end of the current frame.

48.2.3.4 Debug mode

In Debug mode, the SAI transmitter and/or receiver can continue operating provided the Debug Enable bit is set. When TCSR[DBGE] or RCSR[DBGE] bit is clear and Debug mode is entered, the SAI is disabled after completing the current transmit or receive frame. The transmitter and receiver bit clocks are not affected by Debug mode.

48.3 External signals

Name	Function	I/O
SAI_TX_BCLK	Transmit Bit Clock. The bit clock is an input when externally generated and an output when internally generated.	I/O
SAI_TX_SYNC	Transmit Frame Sync. The frame sync is an input sampled synchronously by the bit clock when externally generated and an output generated synchronously by the bit clock when internally generated.	I/O
SAI_TX_DATA	Transmit Data. The transmit data is generated synchronously by the bit clock and is tristated whenever not transmitting a word.	O
SAI_RX_BCLK	Receive Bit Clock. The bit clock is an input when externally generated and an output when internally generated.	I/O
SAI_RX_SYNC	Receive Frame Sync. The frame sync is an input sampled synchronously by the bit clock when externally generated and an output generated synchronously by the bit clock when internally generated.	I/O
SAI_RX_DATA	Receive Data. The receive data is sampled synchronously by the bit clock.	I
SAI_MCLK	Audio Master Clock. The master clock is an input when externally generated and an output when internally generated.	I/O

48.4 Memory map and register definition

A read or write access to an address from offset 0x108 and above will result in a bus error.

I2S memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4002_F000	SAI Transmit Control Register (I2S0_TCSR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	48.4.1/1318
4002_F004	SAI Transmit Configuration 1 Register (I2S0_TCR1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	48.4.2/1321
4002_F008	SAI Transmit Configuration 2 Register (I2S0_TCR2)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	48.4.3/1321
4002_F00C	SAI Transmit Configuration 3 Register (I2S0_TCR3)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	48.4.4/1323
4002_F010	SAI Transmit Configuration 4 Register (I2S0_TCR4)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	48.4.5/1324

Table continues on the next page...

I2S memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4002_F014	SAI Transmit Configuration 5 Register (I2S0_TCR5)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	48.4.6/1326
4002_F020	SAI Transmit Data Register (I2S0_TDR0)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	48.4.7/1326
4002_F040	SAI Transmit FIFO Register (I2S0_TFR0)	32	R	0000_0000h	48.4.8/1327
4002_F060	SAI Transmit Mask Register (I2S0_TMR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	48.4.9/1327
4002_F080	SAI Receive Control Register (I2S0_RCSR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	48.4.10/ 1329
4002_F084	SAI Receive Configuration 1 Register (I2S0_RCR1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	48.4.11/ 1332
4002_F088	SAI Receive Configuration 2 Register (I2S0_RCR2)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	48.4.12/ 1332
4002_F08C	SAI Receive Configuration 3 Register (I2S0_RCR3)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	48.4.13/ 1334
4002_F090	SAI Receive Configuration 4 Register (I2S0_RCR4)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	48.4.14/ 1335
4002_F094	SAI Receive Configuration 5 Register (I2S0_RCR5)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	48.4.15/ 1337
4002_F0A0	SAI Receive Data Register (I2S0_RDR0)	32	R	0000_0000h	48.4.16/ 1337
4002_F0C0	SAI Receive FIFO Register (I2S0_RFR0)	32	R	0000_0000h	48.4.17/ 1338
4002_F0E0	SAI Receive Mask Register (I2S0_RMR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	48.4.18/ 1338
4002_F100	SAI MCLK Control Register (I2S0_MCR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	48.4.19/ 1339
4002_F104	SAI MCLK Divide Register (I2S0_MDR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	48.4.20/ 1340
4003_0000	SAI Transmit Control Register (I2S1_TCSR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	48.4.1/1318
4003_0004	SAI Transmit Configuration 1 Register (I2S1_TCR1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	48.4.2/1321
4003_0008	SAI Transmit Configuration 2 Register (I2S1_TCR2)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	48.4.3/1321
4003_000C	SAI Transmit Configuration 3 Register (I2S1_TCR3)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	48.4.4/1323
4003_0010	SAI Transmit Configuration 4 Register (I2S1_TCR4)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	48.4.5/1324
4003_0014	SAI Transmit Configuration 5 Register (I2S1_TCR5)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	48.4.6/1326
4003_0020	SAI Transmit Data Register (I2S1_TDR0)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	48.4.7/1326
4003_0040	SAI Transmit FIFO Register (I2S1_TFR0)	32	R	0000_0000h	48.4.8/1327
4003_0060	SAI Transmit Mask Register (I2S1_TMR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	48.4.9/1327
4003_0080	SAI Receive Control Register (I2S1_RCSR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	48.4.10/ 1329
4003_0084	SAI Receive Configuration 1 Register (I2S1_RCR1)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	48.4.11/ 1332

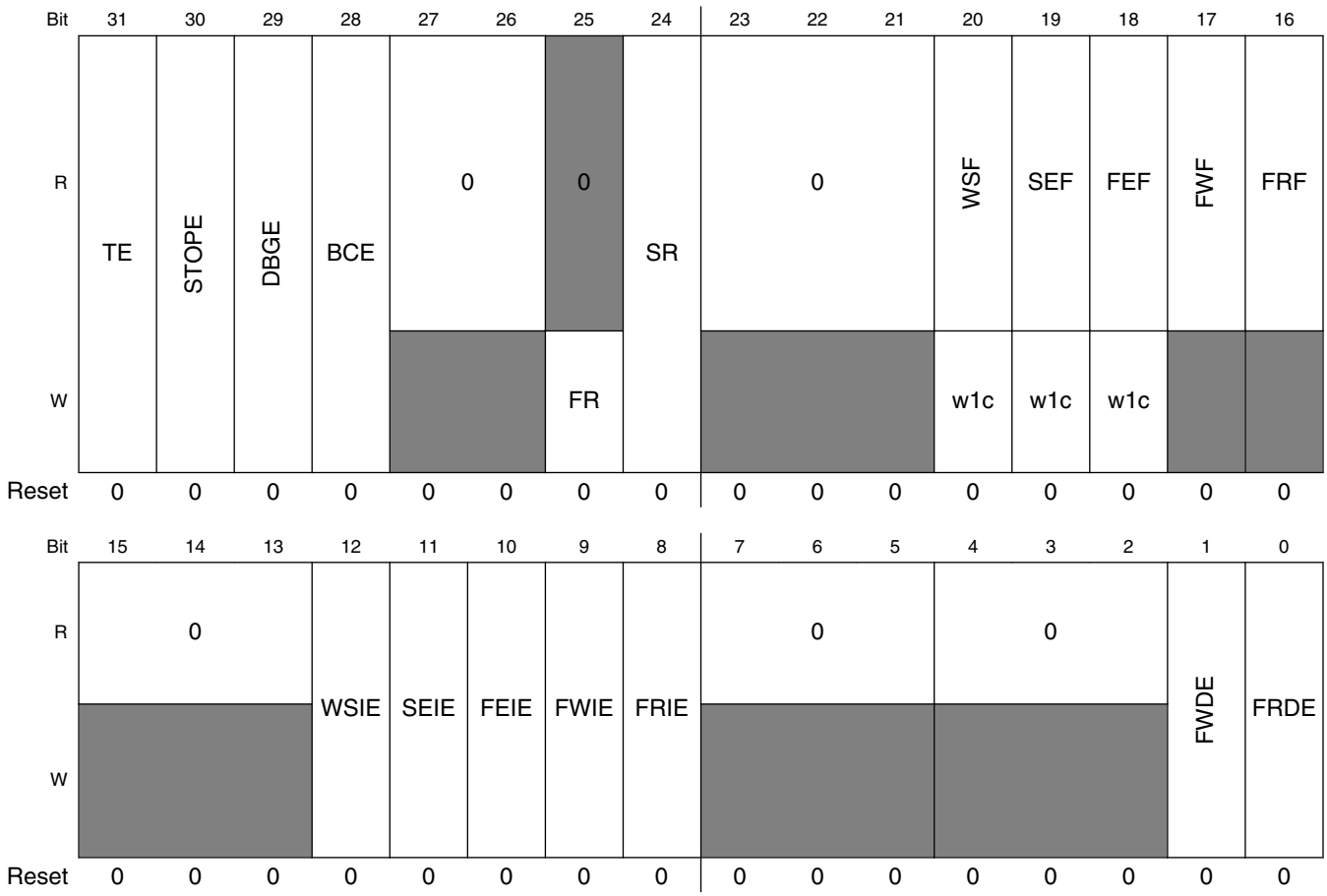
Table continues on the next page...

I2S memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
4003_0088	SAI Receive Configuration 2 Register (I2S1_RCR2)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	48.4.12/ 1332
4003_008C	SAI Receive Configuration 3 Register (I2S1_RCR3)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	48.4.13/ 1334
4003_0090	SAI Receive Configuration 4 Register (I2S1_RCR4)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	48.4.14/ 1335
4003_0094	SAI Receive Configuration 5 Register (I2S1_RCR5)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	48.4.15/ 1337
4003_00A0	SAI Receive Data Register (I2S1_RDR0)	32	R	0000_0000h	48.4.16/ 1337
4003_00C0	SAI Receive FIFO Register (I2S1_RFR0)	32	R	0000_0000h	48.4.17/ 1338
4003_00E0	SAI Receive Mask Register (I2S1_RMR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	48.4.18/ 1338
4003_0100	SAI MCLK Control Register (I2S1_MCR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	48.4.19/ 1339
4003_0104	SAI MCLK Divide Register (I2S1_MDR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	48.4.20/ 1340

48.4.1 SAI Transmit Control Register (I2Sx_TCSR)

Address: Base address + 0h offset



I2Sx_TCSR field descriptions

Field	Description
31 TE	Transmitter Enable Enables/disables the transmitter. When software clears this field, the transmitter remains enabled, and this bit remains set, until the end of the current frame. 0 Transmitter is disabled. 1 Transmitter is enabled, or transmitter has been disabled and has not yet reached end of frame.
30 STOPE	Stop Enable Configures transmitter operation in Stop mode. This field is ignored and the transmitter is disabled in all low-leakage stop modes. 0 Transmitter disabled in Stop mode. 1 Transmitter enabled in Stop mode.
29 DBGE	Debug Enable

Table continues on the next page...

I2Sx_TCSR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	Enables/disables transmitter operation in Debug mode. The transmit bit clock is not affected by debug mode. 0 Transmitter is disabled in Debug mode, after completing the current frame. 1 Transmitter is enabled in Debug mode.
28 BCE	Bit Clock Enable Enables the transmit bit clock, separately from the TE. This field is automatically set whenever TE is set. When software clears this field, the transmit bit clock remains enabled, and this bit remains set, until the end of the current frame. 0 Transmit bit clock is disabled. 1 Transmit bit clock is enabled.
27–26 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
25 FR	FIFO Reset Resets the FIFO pointers. Reading this field will always return zero. FIFO pointers should only be reset when the transmitter is disabled or the FIFO error flag is set. 0 No effect. 1 FIFO reset.
24 SR	Software Reset When set, resets the internal transmitter logic including the FIFO pointers. Software-visible registers are not affected, except for the status registers. 0 No effect. 1 Software reset.
23–21 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
20 WSF	Word Start Flag Indicates that the start of the configured word has been detected. Write a logic 1 to this field to clear this flag. 0 Start of word not detected. 1 Start of word detected.
19 SEF	Sync Error Flag Indicates that an error in the externally-generated frame sync has been detected. Write a logic 1 to this field to clear this flag. 0 Sync error not detected. 1 Frame sync error detected.
18 FEF	FIFO Error Flag Indicates that an enabled transmit FIFO has underrun. Write a logic 1 to this field to clear this flag. 0 Transmit underrun not detected. 1 Transmit underrun detected.

Table continues on the next page...

I2Sx_TCSR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
17 FWF	FIFO Warning Flag Indicates that an enabled transmit FIFO is empty. 0 No enabled transmit FIFO is empty. 1 Enabled transmit FIFO is empty.
16 FRF	FIFO Request Flag Indicates that the number of words in an enabled transmit channel FIFO is less than or equal to the transmit FIFO watermark. 0 Transmit FIFO watermark has not been reached. 1 Transmit FIFO watermark has been reached.
15–13 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
12 WSIE	Word Start Interrupt Enable Enables/disables word start interrupts. 0 Disables interrupt. 1 Enables interrupt.
11 SEIE	Sync Error Interrupt Enable Enables/disables sync error interrupts. 0 Disables interrupt. 1 Enables interrupt.
10 FEIE	FIFO Error Interrupt Enable Enables/disables FIFO error interrupts. 0 Disables the interrupt. 1 Enables the interrupt.
9 FWIE	FIFO Warning Interrupt Enable Enables/disables FIFO warning interrupts. 0 Disables the interrupt. 1 Enables the interrupt.
8 FRIE	FIFO Request Interrupt Enable Enables/disables FIFO request interrupts. 0 Disables the interrupt. 1 Enables the interrupt.
7–5 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
4–2 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
1 FWDE	FIFO Warning DMA Enable

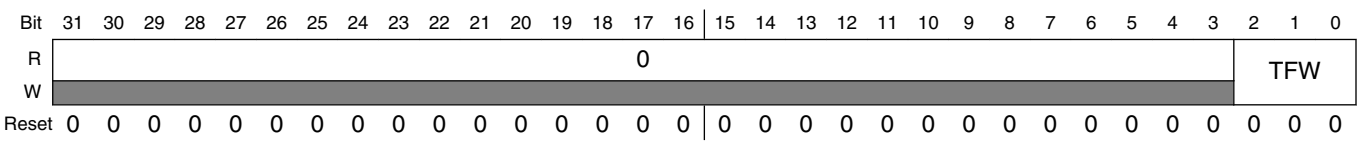
Table continues on the next page...

I2Sx_TCSR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	Enables/disables DMA requests. 0 Disables the DMA request. 1 Enables the DMA request.
0 FRDE	FIFO Request DMA Enable Enables/disables DMA requests. 0 Disables the DMA request. 1 Enables the DMA request.

48.4.2 SAI Transmit Configuration 1 Register (I2Sx_TCR1)

Address: Base address + 4h offset



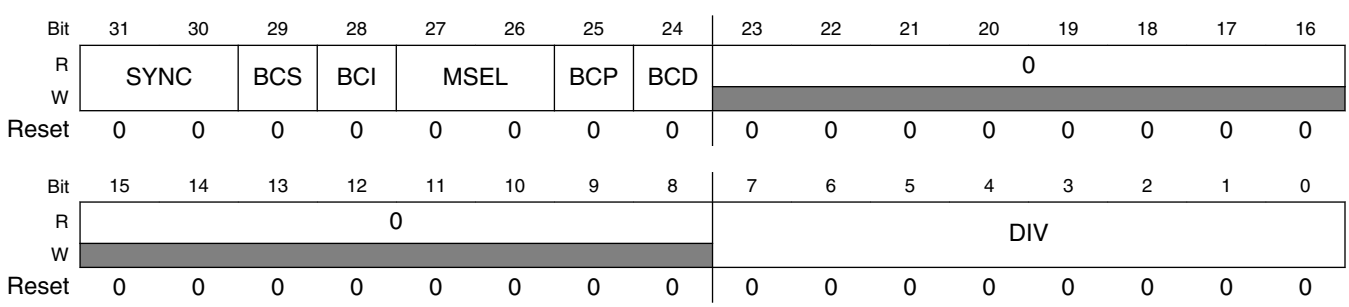
I2Sx_TCR1 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–3 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
TFW	Transmit FIFO Watermark Configures the watermark level for all enabled transmit channels.

48.4.3 SAI Transmit Configuration 2 Register (I2Sx_TCR2)

This register must not be altered when TCSR[TE] is set.

Address: Base address + 8h offset



I2Sx_TCR2 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–30 SYNC	Synchronous Mode Configures between asynchronous and synchronous modes of operation. When configured for a synchronous mode of operation, the receiver must be configured for asynchronous operation. 00 Asynchronous mode. 01 Synchronous with receiver.
29 BCS	Bit Clock Swap This field swaps the bit clock used by the transmitter. When the transmitter is configured in asynchronous mode and this bit is set, the transmitter is clocked by the receiver bit clock (SAI_RX_BCLK). This allows the transmitter and receiver to share the same bit clock, but the transmitter continues to use the transmit frame sync (SAI_TX_SYNC). When the transmitter is configured in synchronous mode, the transmitter BCS field and receiver BCS field must be set to the same value. When both are set, the transmitter and receiver are both clocked by the transmitter bit clock (SAI_TX_BCLK) but use the receiver frame sync (SAI_RX_SYNC). 0 Use the normal bit clock source. 1 Swap the bit clock source.
28 BCI	Bit Clock Input When this field is set and using an internally generated bit clock in either synchronous or asynchronous mode, the bit clock actually used by the transmitter is delayed by the pad output delay (the transmitter is clocked by the pad input as if the clock was externally generated). This has the effect of decreasing the data input setup time, but increasing the data output valid time. The slave mode timing from the datasheet should be used for the transmitter when this bit is set. In synchronous mode, this bit allows the transmitter to use the slave mode timing from the datasheet, while the receiver uses the master mode timing. This field has no effect when configured for an externally generated bit clock . 0 No effect. 1 Internal logic is clocked as if bit clock was externally generated.
27–26 MSEL	MCLK Select Selects the audio Master Clock option used to generate an internally generated bit clock. This field has no effect when configured for an externally generated bit clock. **NOTE:** Depending on the device, some Master Clock options might not be available. See the chip-specific information for the meaning of each option. 00 Bus Clock selected. 01 Master Clock (MCLK) 1 option selected. 10 Master Clock (MCLK) 2 option selected. 11 Master Clock (MCLK) 3 option selected.
25 BCP	Bit Clock Polarity Configures the polarity of the bit clock. 0 Bit clock is active high with drive outputs on rising edge and sample inputs on falling edge. 1 Bit clock is active low with drive outputs on falling edge and sample inputs on rising edge.
24 BCD	Bit Clock Direction

Table continues on the next page...

I2Sx_TCR2 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	Configures the direction of the bit clock. 0 Bit clock is generated externally in Slave mode. 1 Bit clock is generated internally in Master mode.
23–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
DIV	Bit Clock Divide Divides down the audio master clock to generate the bit clock when configured for an internal bit clock. The division value is (DIV + 1) * 2.

48.4.4 SAI Transmit Configuration 3 Register (I2Sx_TCR3)

Address: Base address + Ch offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0								0							TCE
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0												WDFL			
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

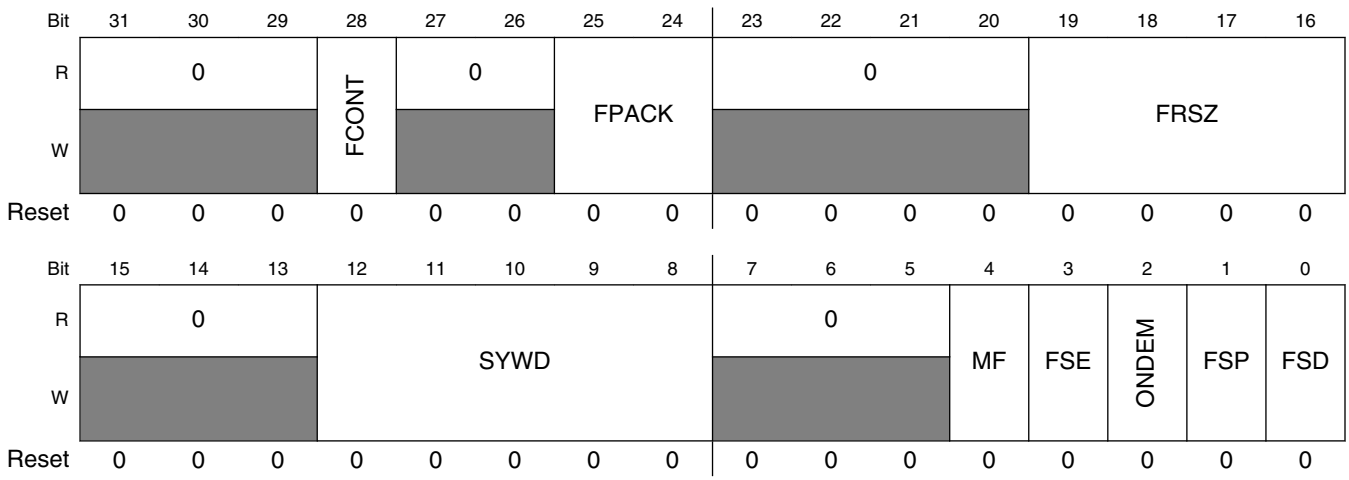
I2Sx_TCR3 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–24 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
23–17 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
16 TCE	Transmit Channel Enable Enables the corresponding data channel for transmit operation. A channel must be enabled before its FIFO is accessed. Changing this field will take effect immediately for generating the FIFO request and warning flags, but at the end of each frame for transmit operation. 0 Transmit data channel N is disabled. 1 Transmit data channel N is enabled.
15–4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
WDFL	Word Flag Configuration Configures which word sets the start of word flag. The value written must be one less than the word number. For example, writing 0 configures the first word in the frame. When configured to a value greater than TCR4[FRSZ], then the start of word flag is never set.

48.4.5 SAI Transmit Configuration 4 Register (I2Sx_TCR4)

This register must not be altered when TCSR[TE] is set.

Address: Base address + 10h offset



I2Sx_TCR4 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–29 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
28 FCONT	FIFO Continue on Error Configures when the SAI will continue transmitting after a FIFO error has been detected. 0 On FIFO error, the SAI will continue from the start of the next frame after the FIFO error flag has been cleared. 1 On FIFO error, the SAI will continue from the same word that caused the FIFO error to set after the FIFO warning flag has been cleared.
27–26 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
25–24 FPACK	FIFO Packing Mode Enables packing of 8-bit data or 16-bit data into each 32-bit FIFO word. If the word size is greater than 8-bit or 16-bit then only the first 8-bit or 16-bits are loaded from the FIFO. The first word in each frame always starts with a new 32-bit FIFO word and the first bit shifted must be configured within the first packed word. When FIFO packing is enabled, the FIFO write pointer will only increment when the full 32-bit FIFO word has been written by software. 00 FIFO packing is disabled 01 Reserved 10 8-bit FIFO packing is enabled 11 16-bit FIFO packing is enabled
23–20 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

Table continues on the next page...

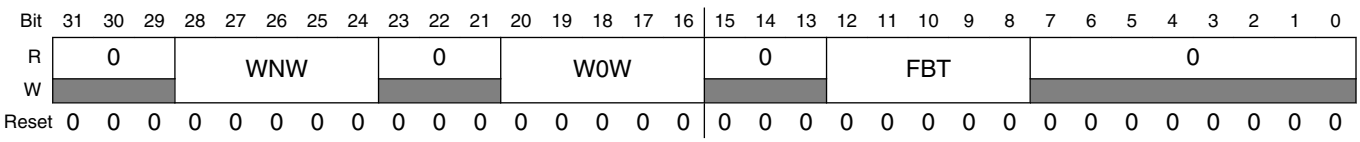
I2Sx_TCR4 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
19–16 FRSZ	Frame size Configures the number of words in each frame. The value written must be one less than the number of words in the frame. For example, write 0 for one word per frame. The maximum supported frame size is 16 words.
15–13 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
12–8 SYWD	Sync Width Configures the length of the frame sync in number of bit clocks. The value written must be one less than the number of bit clocks. For example, write 0 for the frame sync to assert for one bit clock only. The sync width cannot be configured longer than the first word of the frame.
7–5 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
4 MF	MSB First Configures whether the LSB or the MSB is transmitted first. 0 LSB is transmitted first. 1 MSB is transmitted first.
3 FSE	Frame Sync Early 0 Frame sync asserts with the first bit of the frame. 1 Frame sync asserts one bit before the first bit of the frame.
2 ONDEM	On Demand Mode When set, and the frame sync is generated internally, a frame sync is only generated when the FIFO warning flag is clear. 0 Internal frame sync is generated continuously. 1 Internal frame sync is generated when the FIFO warning flag is clear.
1 FSP	Frame Sync Polarity Configures the polarity of the frame sync. 0 Frame sync is active high. 1 Frame sync is active low.
0 FSD	Frame Sync Direction Configures the direction of the frame sync. 0 Frame sync is generated externally in Slave mode. 1 Frame sync is generated internally in Master mode.

48.4.6 SAI Transmit Configuration 5 Register (I2Sx_TCR5)

This register must not be altered when TCSR[TE] is set.

Address: Base address + 14h offset

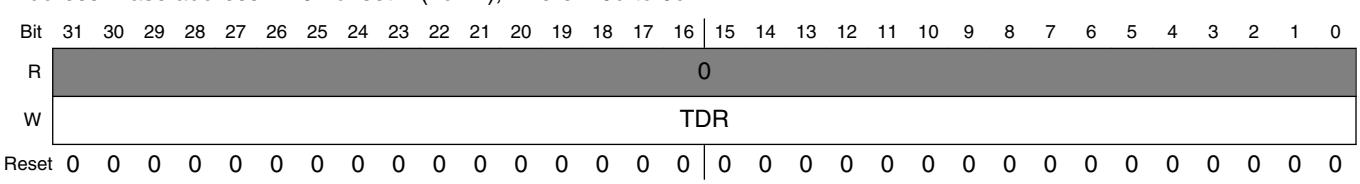


I2Sx_TCR5 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–29 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
28–24 WNW	Word N Width Configures the number of bits in each word, for each word except the first in the frame. The value written must be one less than the number of bits per word. Word width of less than 8 bits is not supported.
23–21 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
20–16 W0W	Word 0 Width Configures the number of bits in the first word in each frame. The value written must be one less than the number of bits in the first word. Word width of less than 8 bits is not supported if there is only one word per frame.
15–13 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
12–8 FBT	First Bit Shifted Configures the bit index for the first bit transmitted for each word in the frame. If configured for MSB First, the index of the next bit transmitted is one less than the current bit transmitted. If configured for LSB First, the index of the next bit transmitted is one more than the current bit transmitted. The value written must be greater than or equal to the word width when configured for MSB First. The value written must be less than or equal to 31-word width when configured for LSB First.
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

48.4.7 SAI Transmit Data Register (I2Sx_TDR*n*)

Address: Base address + 20h offset + (4d × i), where i=0d to 0d



I2S*x*_TDR*n* field descriptions

Field	Description
TDR	Transmit Data Register The corresponding TCR3[TCE] bit must be set before accessing the channel's transmit data register. Writes to this register when the transmit FIFO is not full will push the data written into the transmit data FIFO. Writes to this register when the transmit FIFO is full are ignored.

48.4.8 SAI Transmit FIFO Register (I2S*x*_TFR*n*)

The MSB of the read and write pointers is used to distinguish between FIFO full and empty conditions. If the read and write pointers are identical, then the FIFO is empty. If the read and write pointers are identical except for the MSB, then the FIFO is full.

Address: Base address + 40h offset + (4d × i), where i=0d to 0d

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	0	0											WFP			
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0												RFP			
W																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

I2S*x*_TFR*n* field descriptions

Field	Description
31 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
30–20 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
19–16 WFP	Write FIFO Pointer FIFO write pointer for transmit data channel.
15–4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
RFP	Read FIFO Pointer FIFO read pointer for transmit data channel.

48.4.9 SAI Transmit Mask Register (I2S*x*_TMR)

This register is double-buffered and updates:

1. When TCSR[TE] is first set
2. At the end of each frame.

This allows the masked words in each frame to change from frame to frame.

Address: Base address + 60h offset

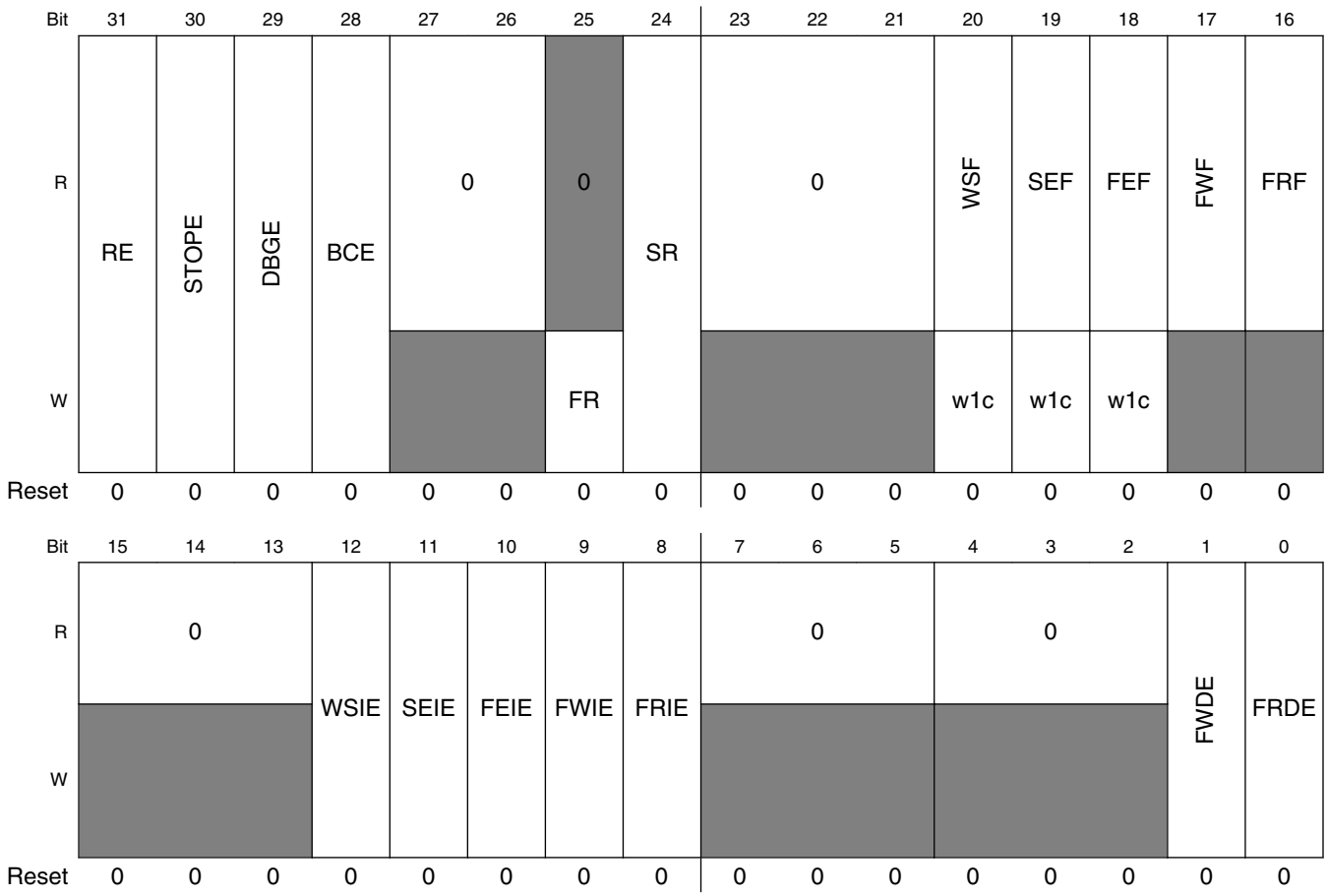
Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																TWM															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

I2Sx_TMR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
TWM	Transmit Word Mask Configures whether the transmit word is masked (transmit data pin tristated and transmit data not read from FIFO) for the corresponding word in the frame. 0 Word N is enabled. 1 Word N is masked. The transmit data pins are tri-stated when masked.

48.4.10 SAI Receive Control Register (I2Sx_RCSR)

Address: Base address + 80h offset



I2Sx_RCSR field descriptions

Field	Description
31 RE	Receiver Enable Enables/disables the receiver. When software clears this field, the receiver remains enabled, and this bit remains set, until the end of the current frame. 0 Receiver is disabled. 1 Receiver is enabled, or receiver has been disabled and has not yet reached end of frame.
30 STOPE	Stop Enable Configures receiver operation in Stop mode. This bit is ignored and the receiver is disabled in all low-leakage stop modes. 0 Receiver disabled in Stop mode. 1 Receiver enabled in Stop mode.
29 DBGE	Debug Enable Enables/disables receiver operation in Debug mode. The receive bit clock is not affected by Debug mode.

Table continues on the next page...

I2Sx_RCSR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Receiver is disabled in Debug mode, after completing the current frame. 1 Receiver is enabled in Debug mode.
28 BCE	Bit Clock Enable Enables the receive bit clock, separately from RE. This field is automatically set whenever RE is set. When software clears this field, the receive bit clock remains enabled, and this field remains set, until the end of the current frame. 0 Receive bit clock is disabled. 1 Receive bit clock is enabled.
27–26 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
25 FR	FIFO Reset Resets the FIFO pointers. Reading this field will always return zero. FIFO pointers should only be reset when the receiver is disabled or the FIFO error flag is set. 0 No effect. 1 FIFO reset.
24 SR	Software Reset Resets the internal receiver logic including the FIFO pointers. Software-visible registers are not affected, except for the status registers. 0 No effect. 1 Software reset.
23–21 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
20 WSF	Word Start Flag Indicates that the start of the configured word has been detected. Write a logic 1 to this field to clear this flag. 0 Start of word not detected. 1 Start of word detected.
19 SEF	Sync Error Flag Indicates that an error in the externally-generated frame sync has been detected. Write a logic 1 to this field to clear this flag. 0 Sync error not detected. 1 Frame sync error detected.
18 FEF	FIFO Error Flag Indicates that an enabled receive FIFO has overflowed. Write a logic 1 to this field to clear this flag. 0 Receive overflow not detected. 1 Receive overflow detected.
17 FWF	FIFO Warning Flag Indicates that an enabled receive FIFO is full.

Table continues on the next page...

I2Sx_RCSR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 No enabled receive FIFO is full. 1 Enabled receive FIFO is full.
16 FRF	FIFO Request Flag Indicates that the number of words in an enabled receive channel FIFO is greater than the receive FIFO watermark. 0 Receive FIFO watermark not reached. 1 Receive FIFO watermark has been reached.
15–13 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
12 WSIE	Word Start Interrupt Enable Enables/disables word start interrupts. 0 Disables interrupt. 1 Enables interrupt.
11 SEIE	Sync Error Interrupt Enable Enables/disables sync error interrupts. 0 Disables interrupt. 1 Enables interrupt.
10 FEIE	FIFO Error Interrupt Enable Enables/disables FIFO error interrupts. 0 Disables the interrupt. 1 Enables the interrupt.
9 FWIE	FIFO Warning Interrupt Enable Enables/disables FIFO warning interrupts. 0 Disables the interrupt. 1 Enables the interrupt.
8 FRIE	FIFO Request Interrupt Enable Enables/disables FIFO request interrupts. 0 Disables the interrupt. 1 Enables the interrupt.
7–5 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
4–2 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
1 FWDE	FIFO Warning DMA Enable Enables/disables DMA requests. 0 Disables the DMA request. 1 Enables the DMA request.

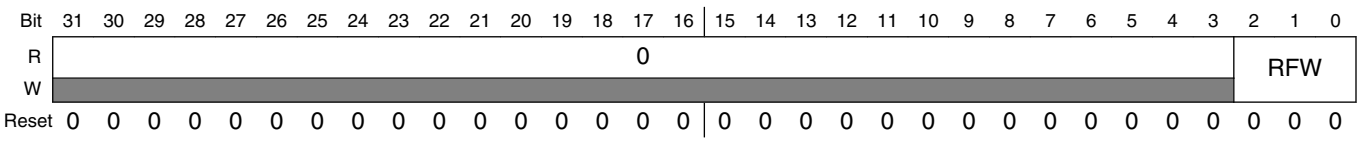
Table continues on the next page...

I2Sx_RCSR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
0 FRDE	FIFO Request DMA Enable Enables/disables DMA requests. 0 Disables the DMA request. 1 Enables the DMA request.

48.4.11 SAI Receive Configuration 1 Register (I2Sx_RCR1)

Address: Base address + 84h offset



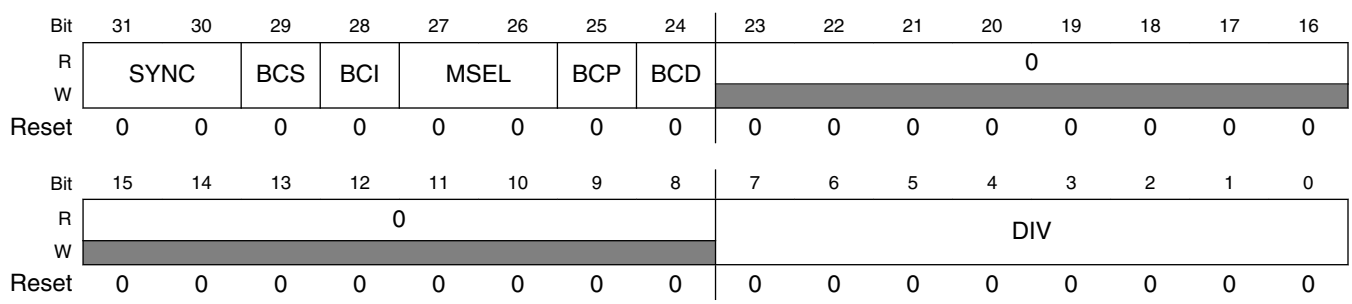
I2Sx_RCR1 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–3 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
RFW	Receive FIFO Watermark Configures the watermark level for all enabled receiver channels.

48.4.12 SAI Receive Configuration 2 Register (I2Sx_RCR2)

This register must not be altered when RCSR[RE] is set.

Address: Base address + 88h offset



I2Sx_RCR2 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–30 SYNC	Synchronous Mode

Table continues on the next page...

I2Sx_RCR2 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	Configures between asynchronous and synchronous modes of operation. When configured for a synchronous mode of operation, the transmitter must be configured for asynchronous operation. 00 Asynchronous mode. 01 Synchronous with transmitter.
29 BCS	Bit Clock Swap This field swaps the bit clock used by the receiver. When the receiver is configured in asynchronous mode and this bit is set, the receiver is clocked by the transmitter bit clock (SAI_TX_BCLK). This allows the transmitter and receiver to share the same bit clock, but the receiver continues to use the receiver frame sync (SAI_RX_SYNC). When the receiver is configured in synchronous mode, the transmitter BCS field and receiver BCS field must be set to the same value. When both are set, the transmitter and receiver are both clocked by the receiver bit clock (SAI_RX_BCLK) but use the transmitter frame sync (SAI_TX_SYNC). 0 Use the normal bit clock source. 1 Swap the bit clock source.
28 BCI	Bit Clock Input When this field is set and using an internally generated bit clock in either synchronous or asynchronous mode, the bit clock actually used by the receiver is delayed by the pad output delay (the receiver is clocked by the pad input as if the clock was externally generated). This has the effect of decreasing the data input setup time, but increasing the data output valid time. The slave mode timing from the datasheet should be used for the receiver when this bit is set. In synchronous mode, this bit allows the receiver to use the slave mode timing from the datasheet, while the transmitter uses the master mode timing. This field has no effect when configured for an externally generated bit clock . 0 No effect. 1 Internal logic is clocked as if bit clock was externally generated.
27–26 MSEL	MCLK Select Selects the audio Master Clock option used to generate an internally generated bit clock. This field has no effect when configured for an externally generated bit clock. **NOTE:** Depending on the device, some Master Clock options might not be available. See the chip-specific information for the availability and chip-specific meaning of each option. 00 Bus Clock selected. 01 Master Clock (MCLK) 1 option selected. 10 Master Clock (MCLK) 2 option selected. 11 Master Clock (MCLK) 3 option selected.
25 BCP	Bit Clock Polarity Configures the polarity of the bit clock. 0 Bit Clock is active high with drive outputs on rising edge and sample inputs on falling edge. 1 Bit Clock is active low with drive outputs on falling edge and sample inputs on rising edge.
24 BCD	Bit Clock Direction Configures the direction of the bit clock.

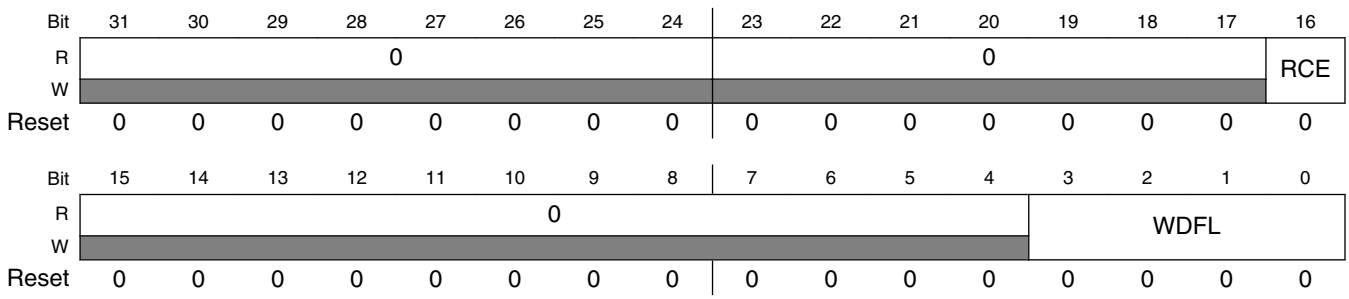
Table continues on the next page...

I2Sx_RCR2 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 Bit clock is generated externally in Slave mode. 1 Bit clock is generated internally in Master mode.
23–8 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
DIV	Bit Clock Divide Divides down the audio master clock to generate the bit clock when configured for an internal bit clock. The division value is (DIV + 1) * 2.

48.4.13 SAI Receive Configuration 3 Register (I2Sx_RCR3)

Address: Base address + 8Ch offset



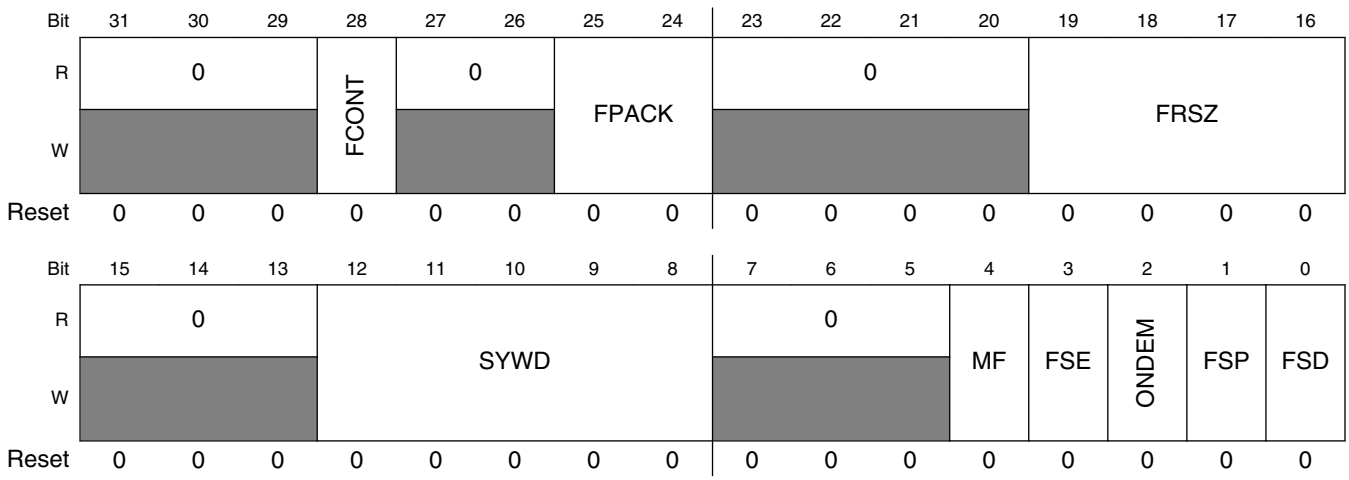
I2Sx_RCR3 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–24 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
23–17 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
16 RCE	Receive Channel Enable Enables the corresponding data channel for receive operation. A channel must be enabled before its FIFO is accessed. Changing this field will take effect immediately for generating the FIFO request and warning flags, but at the end of each frame for receive operation. 0 Receive data channel N is disabled. 1 Receive data channel N is enabled.
15–4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
WDFL	Word Flag Configuration Configures which word the start of word flag is set. The value written should be one less than the word number (for example, write zero to configure for the first word in the frame). When configured to a value greater than the Frame Size field, then the start of word flag is never set.

48.4.14 SAI Receive Configuration 4 Register (I2Sx_RCR4)

This register must not be altered when RCSR[RE] is set.

Address: Base address + 90h offset



I2Sx_RCR4 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–29 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
28 FCONT	FIFO Continue on Error Configures when the SAI will continue receiving after a FIFO error has been detected. 0 On FIFO error, the SAI will continue from the start of the next frame after the FIFO error flag has been cleared. 1 On FIFO error, the SAI will continue from the same word that caused the FIFO error to set after the FIFO warning flag has been cleared.
27–26 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
25–24 FPACK	FIFO Packing Mode Enables packing of 8-bit data or 16-bit data into each 32-bit FIFO word. If the word size is greater than 8-bit or 16-bit then only the first 8-bit or 16-bits are stored to the FIFO. The first word in each frame always starts with a new 32-bit FIFO word and the first bit shifted must be configured within the first packed word. When FIFO packing is enabled, the FIFO read pointer will only increment when the full 32-bit FIFO word has been read by software. 00 FIFO packing is disabled 01 Reserved. 10 8-bit FIFO packing is enabled 11 16-bit FIFO packing is enabled
23–20 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

Table continues on the next page...

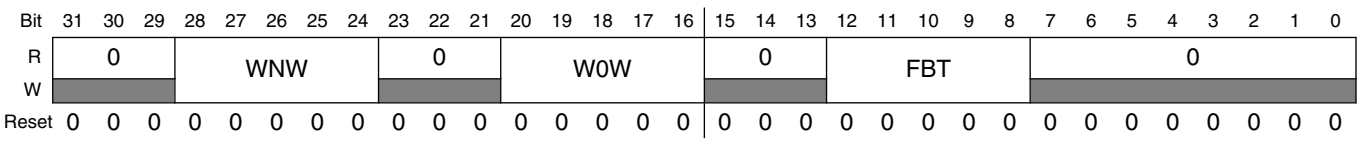
I2Sx_RCR4 field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
19–16 FRSZ	Frame Size Configures the number of words in each frame. The value written must be one less than the number of words in the frame. For example, write 0 for one word per frame. The maximum supported frame size is 16 words.
15–13 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
12–8 SYWD	Sync Width Configures the length of the frame sync in number of bit clocks. The value written must be one less than the number of bit clocks. For example, write 0 for the frame sync to assert for one bit clock only. The sync width cannot be configured longer than the first word of the frame.
7–5 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
4 MF	MSB First Configures whether the LSB or the MSB is received first. 0 LSB is received first. 1 MSB is received first.
3 FSE	Frame Sync Early 0 Frame sync asserts with the first bit of the frame. 1 Frame sync asserts one bit before the first bit of the frame.
2 ONDEM	On Demand Mode When set, and the frame sync is generated internally, a frame sync is only generated when the FIFO warning flag is clear. 0 Internal frame sync is generated continuously. 1 Internal frame sync is generated when the FIFO warning flag is clear.
1 FSP	Frame Sync Polarity Configures the polarity of the frame sync. 0 Frame sync is active high. 1 Frame sync is active low.
0 FSD	Frame Sync Direction Configures the direction of the frame sync. 0 Frame Sync is generated externally in Slave mode. 1 Frame Sync is generated internally in Master mode.

48.4.15 SAI Receive Configuration 5 Register (I2Sx_RCR5)

This register must not be altered when RCSR[RE] is set.

Address: Base address + 94h offset



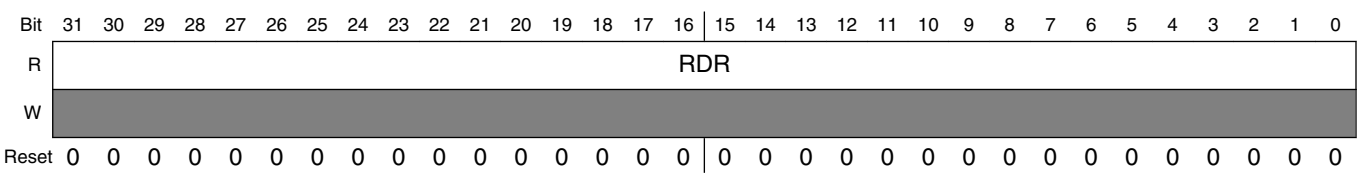
I2Sx_RCR5 field descriptions

Field	Description
31–29 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
28–24 WNW	Word N Width Configures the number of bits in each word, for each word except the first in the frame. The value written must be one less than the number of bits per word. Word width of less than 8 bits is not supported.
23–21 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
20–16 W0W	Word 0 Width Configures the number of bits in the first word in each frame. The value written must be one less than the number of bits in the first word. Word width of less than 8 bits is not supported if there is only one word per frame.
15–13 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
12–8 FBT	First Bit Shifted Configures the bit index for the first bit received for each word in the frame. If configured for MSB First, the index of the next bit received is one less than the current bit received. If configured for LSB First, the index of the next bit received is one more than the current bit received. The value written must be greater than or equal to the word width when configured for MSB First. The value written must be less than or equal to 31-word width when configured for LSB First.
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

48.4.16 SAI Receive Data Register (I2Sx_RDR*n*)

Reading this register introduces one additional peripheral clock wait state on each read.

Address: Base address + A0h offset + (4d × i), where i=0d to 0d



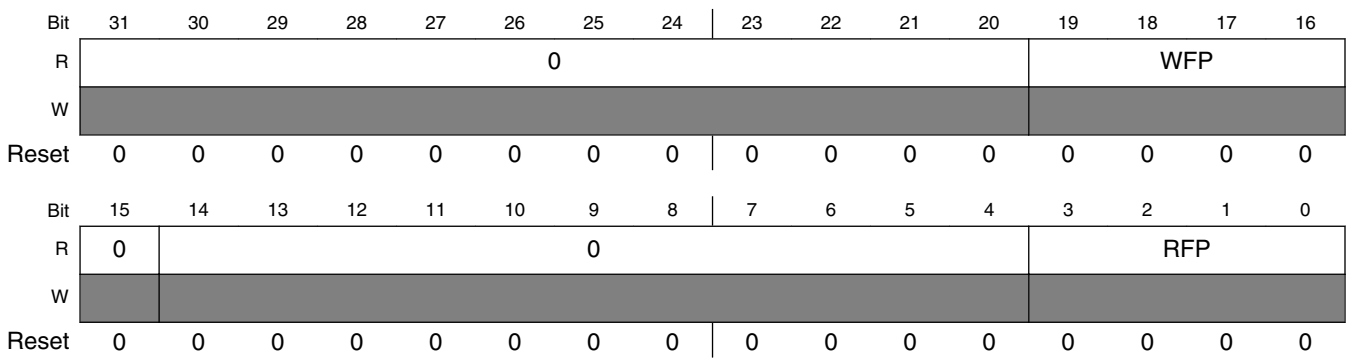
I2S*x*_RDR*n* field descriptions

Field	Description
RDR	Receive Data Register The corresponding RCR3[RCE] bit must be set before accessing the channel's receive data register. Reads from this register when the receive FIFO is not empty will return the data from the top of the receive FIFO. Reads from this register when the receive FIFO is empty are ignored.

48.4.17 SAI Receive FIFO Register (I2S*x*_RFR*n*)

The MSB of the read and write pointers is used to distinguish between FIFO full and empty conditions. If the read and write pointers are identical, then the FIFO is empty. If the read and write pointers are identical except for the MSB, then the FIFO is full.

Address: Base address + C0h offset + (4d × i), where i=0d to 0d



I2S*x*_RFR*n* field descriptions

Field	Description
31–20 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
19–16 WFP	Write FIFO Pointer FIFO write pointer for receive data channel.
15 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
14–4 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
RFP	Read FIFO Pointer FIFO read pointer for receive data channel.

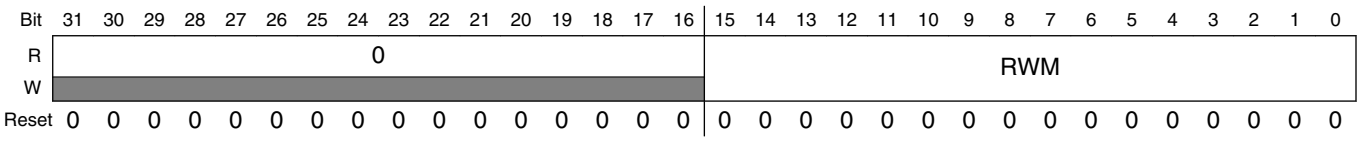
48.4.18 SAI Receive Mask Register (I2S*x*_RMR)

This register is double-buffered and updates:

1. When RCSR[RE] is first set
2. At the end of each frame

This allows the masked words in each frame to change from frame to frame.

Address: Base address + E0h offset



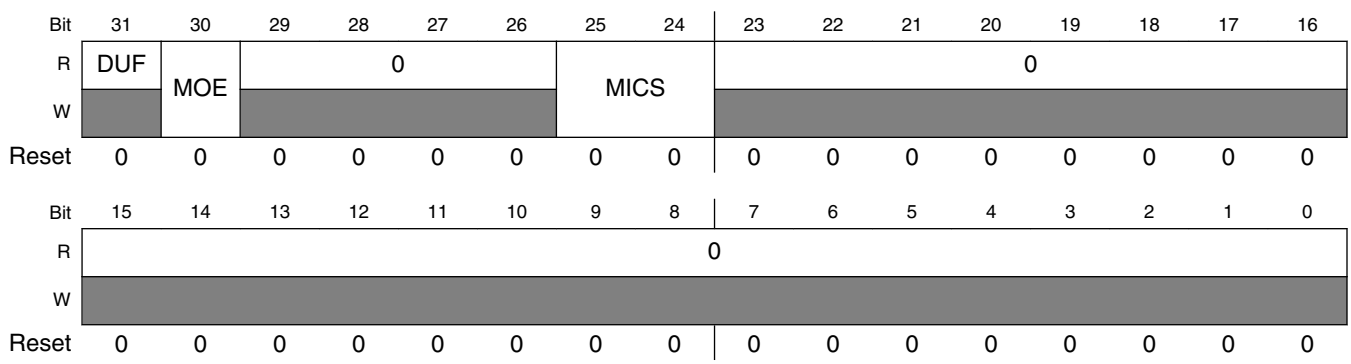
I2Sx_RMR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–16 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
RWM	Receive Word Mask Configures whether the receive word is masked (received data ignored and not written to receive FIFO) for the corresponding word in the frame. 0 Word N is enabled. 1 Word N is masked.

48.4.19 SAI MCLK Control Register (I2Sx_MCR)

The MCLK Control Register (MCR) controls the clock source and direction of the audio master clock.

Address: Base address + 100h offset



I2Sx_MCR field descriptions

Field	Description
31 DUF	Divider Update Flag Provides the status of on-the-fly updates to the MCLK divider ratio.

Table continues on the next page...

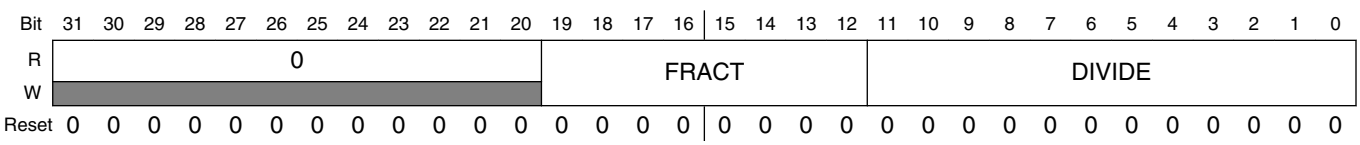
I2Sx_MCR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	0 MCLK divider ratio is not being updated currently. 1 MCLK divider ratio is updating on-the-fly. Further updates to the MCLK divider ratio are blocked while this flag remains set.
30 MOE	MCLK Output Enable Enables the MCLK divider and configures the MCLK signal pin as an output. When software clears this field, it remains set until the MCLK divider is fully disabled. 0 MCLK signal pin is configured as an input that bypasses the MCLK divider. 1 MCLK signal pin is configured as an output from the MCLK divider and the MCLK divider is enabled.
29–26 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
25–24 MICS	MCLK Input Clock Select Selects the clock input to the MCLK divider. This field cannot be changed while the MCLK divider is enabled. See the chip-specific information for the connections to these inputs. 00 MCLK divider input clock 0 is selected. 01 MCLK divider input clock 1 is selected. 10 MCLK divider input clock 2 is selected. 11 MCLK divider input clock 3 is selected.
Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.

48.4.20 SAI MCLK Divide Register (I2Sx_MDR)

The MCLK Divide Register (MDR) configures the MCLK divide ratio. Although the MDR can be changed when the MCLK divider clock is enabled, additional writes to the MDR are blocked while MCR[DUF] is set. Writes to the MDR when the MCLK divided clock is disabled do not set MCR[DUF].

Address: Base address + 104h offset



I2Sx_MDR field descriptions

Field	Description
31–20 Reserved	This field is reserved. This read-only field is reserved and always has the value 0.
19–12 FRACT	MCLK Fraction Sets the MCLK divide ratio such that: MCLK output = MCLK input * ((FRACT + 1) / (DIVIDE + 1)). FRACT must be set equal or less than the value in the DIVIDE field.

Table continues on the next page...

I2Sx_MDR field descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
	NOTE: When using fractional divide values, the MCLK duty cycle will not always be 50/50. See Audio master clock.
DIVIDE	MCLK Divide Sets the MCLK divide ratio such that: MCLK output = MCLK input * ((FRACT + 1) / (DIVIDE + 1)). FRACT must be set equal or less than the value in the DIVIDE field. **NOTE:** When using fractional divide values, the MCLK duty cycle will not always be 50/50. See Audio master clock.

48.5 Functional description

This section provides a complete functional description of the block.

48.5.1 SAI clocking

The SAI clocks include:

- The audio master clock
- The bit clock
- The bus clock

48.5.1.1 Audio master clock

The audio master clock is used to generate the bit clock when the receiver or transmitter is configured for an internally generated bit clock. The transmitter and receiver can independently select between the bus clock and up to three audio master clocks to generate the bit clock.

Each SAI peripheral can control the input clock selection, pin direction and divide ratio of one audio master clock. The input clock selection and pin direction cannot be altered if an SAI module using that audio master clock has been enabled. The MCLK divide ratio can be altered while an SAI is using that master clock, although the change in the divide ratio takes several cycles. MCR[DUF] can be polled to determine when the divide ratio change has completed.

The audio master clock generation and selection is chip-specific. Refer to chip-specific clocking information about how the audio master clocks are generated. A typical implementation appears in the following figure.

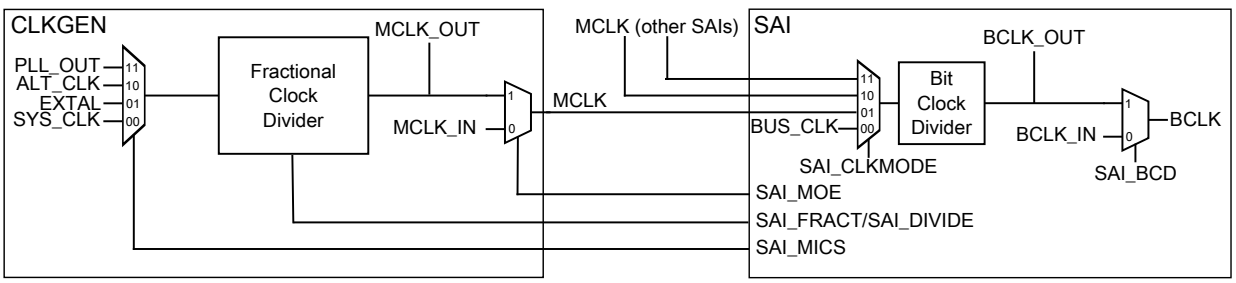


Figure 48-2. SAI master clock generation

The MCLK fractional clock divider uses both clock edges from the input clock to generate a divided down clock that will approximate the output frequency, but without creating any new clock edges. Configuring FRACT and DIVIDE to the same value will result in a divide by 1 clock, while configuring FRACT higher than DIVIDE is not supported. The duty cycle can range from 66/33 when FRACT is set to one less than DIVIDE down to 50/50 for integer divide ratios, and will approach 50/50 for large non-integer divide ratios. There is no cycle to cycle jitter or duty cycle variance when the divide ratio is an integer or half integer, otherwise the divider output will oscillate between the two divided frequencies that are the closest integer or half integer divisors of the divider input clock frequency. The maximum jitter is therefore equal to half the divider input clock period, since both edges of the input clock are used in generating the divided clock.

48.5.1.2 Bit clock

The SAI transmitter and receiver support asynchronous free-running bit clocks that can be generated internally from an audio master clock or supplied externally. There is also the option for synchronous bit clock and frame sync operation between the receiver and transmitter.

Externally generated bit clocks must be:

- Enabled before the SAI transmitter or receiver is enabled
- Disabled after the SAI transmitter or receiver is disabled and completes its current frames

If the SAI transmitter or receiver is using an externally generated bit clock in asynchronous mode and that bit clock is generated by an SAI that is disabled in stop mode, then the transmitter or receiver should be disabled by software before entering stop mode. This issue does not apply when the transmitter or receiver is in a synchronous mode because all synchronous SAIs are enabled and disabled simultaneously.

48.5.1.3 Bus clock

The bus clock is used by the control and configuration registers and to generate synchronous interrupts and DMA requests.

NOTE

Although there is no specific minimum bus clock frequency specified, the bus clock frequency must be fast enough (relative to the bit clock frequency) to ensure that the FIFOs can be serviced, without generating either a transmitter FIFO underrun or receiver FIFO overflow condition.

48.5.2 SAI resets

The SAI is asynchronously reset on system reset. The SAI has a software reset and a FIFO reset.

48.5.2.1 Software reset

The SAI transmitter includes a software reset that resets all transmitter internal logic, including the bit clock generation, status flags, and FIFO pointers. It does not reset the configuration registers. The software reset remains asserted until cleared by software.

The SAI receiver includes a software reset that resets all receiver internal logic, including the bit clock generation, status flags and FIFO pointers. It does not reset the configuration registers. The software reset remains asserted until cleared by software.

48.5.2.2 FIFO reset

The SAI transmitter includes a FIFO reset that synchronizes the FIFO write pointer to the same value as the FIFO read pointer. This empties the FIFO contents and is to be used after TCSR[FEF] is set, and before the FIFO is re-initialized and TCSR[FEF] is cleared. The FIFO reset is asserted for one cycle only.

The SAI receiver includes a FIFO reset that synchronizes the FIFO read pointer to the same value as the FIFO write pointer. This empties the FIFO contents and is to be used after the RCSR[FEF] is set and any remaining data has been read from the FIFO, and before the RCSR[FEF] is cleared. The FIFO reset is asserted for one cycle only.

48.5.3 Synchronous modes

The SAI transmitter and receiver can operate synchronously to each other.

48.5.3.1 Synchronous mode

The SAI transmitter and receiver can be configured to operate with synchronous bit clock and frame sync.

If the transmitter bit clock and frame sync are to be used by both the transmitter and receiver:

- The transmitter must be configured for asynchronous operation and the receiver for synchronous operation.
- In synchronous mode, the receiver is enabled only when both the transmitter and receiver are enabled.
- It is recommended that the transmitter is the last enabled and the first disabled.

If the receiver bit clock and frame sync are to be used by both the transmitter and receiver:

- The receiver must be configured for asynchronous operation and the transmitter for synchronous operation.
- In synchronous mode, the transmitter is enabled only when both the receiver and transmitter are both enabled.
- It is recommended that the receiver is the last enabled and the first disabled.

When operating in synchronous mode, only the bit clock, frame sync, and transmitter/receiver enable are shared. The transmitter and receiver otherwise operate independently, although configuration registers must be configured consistently across both the transmitter and receiver.

48.5.4 Frame sync configuration

When enabled, the SAI continuously transmits and/or receives frames of data. Each frame consists of a fixed number of words and each word consists of a fixed number of bits. Within each frame, any given word can be masked causing the receiver to ignore that word and the transmitter to tri-state for the duration of that word.

The frame sync signal is used to indicate the start of each frame. A valid frame sync requires a rising edge (if active high) or falling edge (if active low) to be detected and the transmitter or receiver cannot be busy with a previous frame. A valid frame sync is also ignored (slave mode) or not generated (master mode) for the first four bit clock cycles after enabling the transmitter or receiver.

The transmitter and receiver frame sync can be configured independently with any of the following options:

- Externally generated or internally generated
- Active high or active low
- Assert with the first bit in frame or asserts one bit early
- Assert for a duration between 1 bit clock and the first word length
- Frame length from 1 to 16 words per frame
- Word length to support 8 to 32 bits per word
  - First word length and remaining word lengths can be configured separately
- Words can be configured to transmit/receive MSB first or LSB first

These configuration options cannot be changed after the SAI transmitter or receiver is enabled.

48.5.5 Data FIFO

Each transmit and receive channel includes a FIFO of size 8 × 32-bit. The FIFO data is accessed using the SAI Transmit/Receive Data Registers.

48.5.5.1 Data alignment

Data in the FIFO can be aligned anywhere within the 32-bit wide register through the use of the First Bit Shifted configuration field, which selects the bit index (between 31 and 0) of the first bit shifted.

Examples of supported data alignment and the required First Bit Shifted configuration are illustrated in Figure 48-3 for LSB First configurations and Figure 48-4 for MSB First configurations.

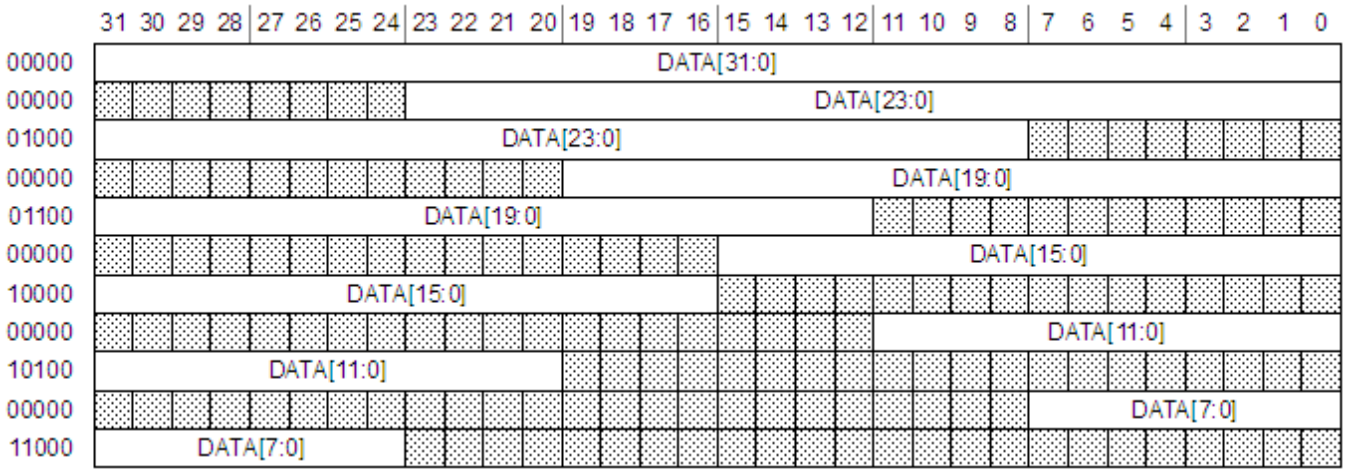


Figure 48-3. SAI first bit shifted, LSB first

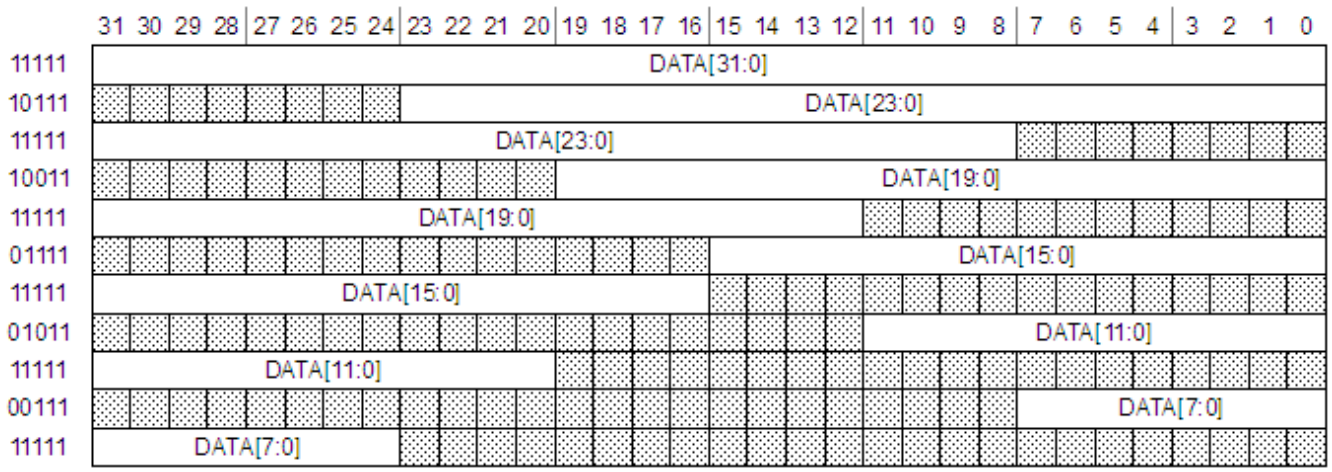


Figure 48-4. SAI first bit shifted, MSB first

48.5.5.2 FIFO pointers

When writing to a TDR, the WFP of the corresponding TFR increments after each valid write. The SAI supports 8-bit, 16-bit and 32-bit writes to the TDR and the FIFO pointer will increment after each individual write. Note that 8-bit writes should only be used when transmitting up to 8-bit data and 16-bit writes should only be used when transmitting up to 16-bit data.

Writes to a TDR are ignored if the corresponding bit of TCR3[TCE] is clear or if the FIFO is full. If the Transmit FIFO is empty, the TDR must be written at least three bit clocks before the start of the next unmasked word to avoid a FIFO underrun.

When reading an RDR, the RFP of the corresponding RFR increments after each valid read. The SAI supports 8-bit, 16-bit and 32-bit reads from the RDR and the FIFO pointer will increment after each individual read. Note that 8-bit reads should only be used when receiving up to 8-bit data and 16-bit reads should only be used when receiving up to 16-bit data.

Reads from an RDR are ignored if the corresponding bit of RCR3[RCE] is clear or if the FIFO is empty. If the Receive FIFO is full, the RDR must be read at least three bit clocks before the end of an unmasked word to avoid a FIFO overrun.

48.5.5.3 FIFO packing

FIFO packing supports storing multiple 8-bit or 16-bit data words in one 32-bit FIFO word for the transmitter and/or receiver. While this can be emulated by adjusting the number of bits per word and number of words per frame (for example, one 32-bit word per frame versus two 16-bit words per frame), FIFO packing does not require even multiples of words per frame and fully supports word masking. When FIFO packing is enabled, the FIFO pointers only increment when the full 32-bit FIFO word has been written (transmit) or read (receive) by software, supporting scenarios where different words within each frame are loaded/stored in different areas of memory.

When 16-bit FIFO packing is enabled for transmit, the transmit shift register is loaded at the start of each frame and after every second unmasked transmit word. The first word transmitted is taken from 16-bit word at byte offset $0 (first bit is selected by TCFG5[FBT] must be configured within this 16-bit word) and the second word transmitted is taken from the 16-bit word at byte offset $2 (first bit is selected by TCSR5[FBT][3:0]). The transmitter will transmit logic zero until the start of the next word once the 16-bit word has been transmitted.

When 16-bit FIFO packing is enabled for receive, the receive shift register is stored after every second unmasked received word, and at the end of each frame if there is an odd number of unmasked received words in each frame. The first word received is stored in the 16-bit word at byte offset $0 (first bit is selected by RCFG5[FBT] and must be configured within this 16-bit word) and the second word received is stored in the 16-bit word at byte offset $2 (first bit is selected by RCSR5[FBT][3:0]). The receiver will ignore received data until the start of the next word once the 16-bit word has been received.

The 8-bit FIFO packing is similar to 16-bit packing except four words are loaded or stored into each 32-bit FIFO word. The first word is loaded/stored in byte offset $0, second word in byte offset $1, third word in byte offset $2 and fourth word in byte offset $3. The TCFG5[FBT] and/or RCFG5[FBT] must be configured within byte offset $0.

48.5.6 Word mask register

The SAI transmitter and receiver each contain a word mask register, namely TMR and RMR, that can be used to mask any word in the frame. Because the word mask register is double buffered, software can update it before the end of each frame to mask a particular word in the next frame.

The TMR causes the Transmit Data pin to be tri-stated for the length of each selected word and the transmit FIFO is not read for masked words.

The RMR causes the received data for each selected word to be discarded and not written to the receive FIFO.

48.5.7 Interrupts and DMA requests

The SAI transmitter and receiver generate separate interrupts and separate DMA requests, but support the same status flags. Asynchronous versions of the transmitter and receiver interrupts are generated to wake up the CPU from stop mode.

48.5.7.1 FIFO request flag

The FIFO request flag is set based on the number of entries in the FIFO and the FIFO watermark configuration.

The transmit FIFO request flag is set when the number of entries in any of the enabled transmit FIFOs is less than or equal to the transmit FIFO watermark configuration and is cleared when the number of entries in each enabled transmit FIFO is greater than the transmit FIFO watermark configuration.

The receive FIFO request flag is set when the number of entries in any of the enabled receive FIFOs is greater than the receive FIFO watermark configuration and is cleared when the number of entries in each enabled receive FIFO is less than or equal to the receive FIFO watermark configuration.

The FIFO request flag can generate an interrupt or a DMA request.

48.5.7.2 FIFO warning flag

The FIFO warning flag is set based on the number of entries in the FIFO.

The transmit warning flag is set when the number of entries in any of the enabled transmit FIFOs is empty and is cleared when the number of entries in each enabled transmit FIFO is not empty.

The receive warning flag is set when the number of entries in any of the enabled receive FIFOs is full and is cleared when the number of entries in each enabled receive FIFO is not full.

The FIFO warning flag can generate an Interrupt or a DMA request.

48.5.7.3 FIFO error flag

The transmit FIFO error flag is set when the any of the enabled transmit FIFOs underflow. After it is set, all enabled transmit channels will transmit zero until TCSR[FEF] is cleared and the next transmit frame starts. All enabled transmit FIFOs must be reset and initialized with new data before TCSR[FEF] is cleared.

When TCR4[FCONT] is set, the FIFO will continue transmitting data following an underflow without software intervention. To ensure that data is transmitted in the correct order, the transmitter will continue from the same word number in the frame that caused the FIFO to underflow, but only after new data has been written to the transmit FIFO. Software should still clear the TCSR[FEF] flag, but without reinitializing the transmit FIFOs.

RCSR[FEF] is set when the any of the enabled receive FIFOs overflow. After it is set, all enabled receive channels discard received data until RCSR[FEF] is cleared and the next next receive frame starts. All enabled receive FIFOs should be emptied before RCSR[FEF] is cleared.

When RCR4[FCONT] is set, the FIFO will continue receiving data following an overflow without software intervention. To ensure that data is received in the correct order, the receiver will continue from the same word number in the frame that caused the FIFO to overflow, but only after data has been read from the receive FIFO. Software should still clear the RCSR[FEF] flag, but without emptying the receive FIFOs.

The FIFO error flag can generate only an interrupt.

48.5.7.4 Sync error flag

The sync error flag, TCSR[SEF] or RCSR[SEF], is set when configured for an externally generated frame sync and the external frame sync asserts when the transmitter or receiver is busy with the previous frame. The external frame sync assertion is ignored and the sync error flag is set. When the sync error flag is set, the transmitter or receiver continues checking for frame sync assertion when idle or at the end of each frame.

The sync error flag can generate an interrupt only.

48.5.7.5 Word start flag

The word start flag is set at the start of the second bit clock for the selected word, as configured by the Word Flag register field.

The word start flag can generate an interrupt only.

Chapter 49
General-Purpose Input/Output (GPIO)

49.1 Chip-specific Information for this Module

49.1.1 Number of GPIO signals

The number of GPIO signals available on the devices covered by this document are detailed in Orderable part numbers .

Eight GPIO pins support a high drive capability - PTB0, PTB1, PTD4, PTD5, PTD6, PTD7, PTC3, and PTC4. All other GPIO support normal drive option only.

PTA4 includes a passive input filter that is enabled or disabled by PORTA_PCR4[PFE] control. This reset default is to have this function disabled.

49.2 Introduction

The GPIO registers support 8-bit, 16-bit or 32-bit accesses.

The GPIO data direction and output data registers control the direction and output data of each pin when the pin is configured for the GPIO function. The GPIO input data register displays the logic value on each pin when the pin is configured for any digital function, provided the corresponding Port Control and Interrupt module for that pin is enabled.

Efficient bit manipulation of the general-purpose outputs is supported through the addition of set, clear, and toggle write-only registers for each port output data register.

49.2.1 Features

Features of the GPIO module include:

- Port Data Input register visible in all digital pin-multiplexing modes
- Port Data Output register with corresponding set/clear/toggle registers
- Port Data Direction register

NOTE

The GPIO module is clocked by system clock.

49.2.2 Modes of operation

The following table depicts different modes of operation and the behavior of the GPIO module in these modes.

Table 49-1. Modes of operation

Modes of operation	Description
Run	The GPIO module operates normally.
Wait	The GPIO module operates normally.
Stop	The GPIO module is disabled.
Debug	The GPIO module operates normally.

49.2.3 GPIO signal descriptions

Table 49-2. GPIO signal descriptions

GPIO signal descriptions	Description	I/O
PORTA31–PORTA0	General-purpose input/output	I/O
PORTB31–PORTB0	General-purpose input/output	I/O
PORTC31–PORTC0	General-purpose input/output	I/O
PORTD31–PORTD0	General-purpose input/output	I/O
PORTE31–PORTE0	General-purpose input/output	I/O

NOTE

Not all pins within each port are implemented on each device. See the chapter on signal multiplexing for the number of GPIO ports available in the device.

49.2.3.1 Detailed signal description

Table 49-3. GPIO interface-detailed signal descriptions

Signal	I/O	Description	
PORTA31–PORTA0 PORTB31–PORTB0 PORTC31–PORTC0 PORTD31–PORTD0 PORTE31–PORTE0	I/O	General-purpose input/output	
		State meaning	Asserted: The pin is logic 1. Deasserted: The pin is logic 0.
		Timing	Assertion: When output, this signal occurs on the rising-edge of the system clock. For input, it may occur at any time and input may be asserted asynchronously to the system clock. Deassertion: When output, this signal occurs on the rising-edge of the system clock. For input, it may occur at any time and input may be asserted asynchronously to the system clock.

NOTE

Not all pins within each port are implemented on each device. See the chapter on signal multiplexing for the number of GPIO ports available in the device.

49.3 Memory map and register definition

Any read or write access to the GPIO memory space that is outside the valid memory map results in a bus error.

GPIO memory map

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
400F_F000	Port Data Output Register (GPIOA_PDOR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	49.3.1/1355
400F_F004	Port Set Output Register (GPIOA_PSOR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	49.3.2/1356
400F_F008	Port Clear Output Register (GPIOA_PCOR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	49.3.3/1356
400F_F00C	Port Toggle Output Register (GPIOA_PTOR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	49.3.4/1357

Table continues on the next page...

GPIO memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
400F_F010	Port Data Input Register (GPIOA_PDIR)	32	R	0000_0000h	49.3.5/1357
400F_F014	Port Data Direction Register (GPIOA_PDDR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	49.3.6/1358
400F_F040	Port Data Output Register (GPIOB_PDOR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	49.3.1/1355
400F_F044	Port Set Output Register (GPIOB_PSOR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	49.3.2/1356
400F_F048	Port Clear Output Register (GPIOB_PCOR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	49.3.3/1356
400F_F04C	Port Toggle Output Register (GPIOB_PTOR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	49.3.4/1357
400F_F050	Port Data Input Register (GPIOB_PDIR)	32	R	0000_0000h	49.3.5/1357
400F_F054	Port Data Direction Register (GPIOB_PDDR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	49.3.6/1358
400F_F080	Port Data Output Register (GPIOC_PDOR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	49.3.1/1355
400F_F084	Port Set Output Register (GPIOC_PSOR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	49.3.2/1356
400F_F088	Port Clear Output Register (GPIOC_PCOR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	49.3.3/1356
400F_F08C	Port Toggle Output Register (GPIOC_PTOR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	49.3.4/1357
400F_F090	Port Data Input Register (GPIOC_PDIR)	32	R	0000_0000h	49.3.5/1357
400F_F094	Port Data Direction Register (GPIOC_PDDR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	49.3.6/1358
400F_F0C0	Port Data Output Register (GPIOD_PDOR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	49.3.1/1355
400F_F0C4	Port Set Output Register (GPIOD_PSOR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	49.3.2/1356
400F_F0C8	Port Clear Output Register (GPIOD_PCOR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	49.3.3/1356
400F_F0CC	Port Toggle Output Register (GPIOD_PTOR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	49.3.4/1357
400F_F0D0	Port Data Input Register (GPIOD_PDIR)	32	R	0000_0000h	49.3.5/1357
400F_F0D4	Port Data Direction Register (GPIOD_PDDR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	49.3.6/1358
400F_F100	Port Data Output Register (GPIOE_PDOR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	49.3.1/1355
400F_F104	Port Set Output Register (GPIOE_PSOR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	49.3.2/1356

Table continues on the next page...

GPIO memory map (continued)

Absolute address (hex)	Register name	Width (in bits)	Access	Reset value	Section/ page
400F_F108	Port Clear Output Register (GPIOE_PCOR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	49.3.3/1356
400F_F10C	Port Toggle Output Register (GPIOE_PTOR)	32	W (always reads 0)	0000_0000h	49.3.4/1357
400F_F110	Port Data Input Register (GPIOE_PDIR)	32	R	0000_0000h	49.3.5/1357
400F_F114	Port Data Direction Register (GPIOE_PDDR)	32	R/W	0000_0000h	49.3.6/1358

49.3.1 Port Data Output Register (GPIOx_PDOR)

This register configures the logic levels that are driven on each general-purpose output pins.

NOTE

Do not modify pin configuration registers associated with pins not available in your selected package. All unbonded pins not available in your package will default to DISABLE state for lowest power consumption.

Address: Base address + 0h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R W	PDO																															
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

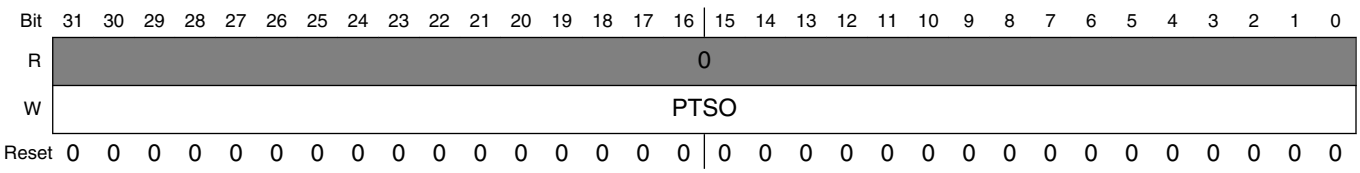
GPIOx_PDOR field descriptions

Field	Description
PDO	Port Data Output Register bits for unbonded pins return a undefined value when read. 0 Logic level 0 is driven on pin, provided pin is configured for general-purpose output. 1 Logic level 1 is driven on pin, provided pin is configured for general-purpose output.

49.3.2 Port Set Output Register (GPIOx_PSOR)

This register configures whether to set the fields of the PDOR.

Address: Base address + 4h offset



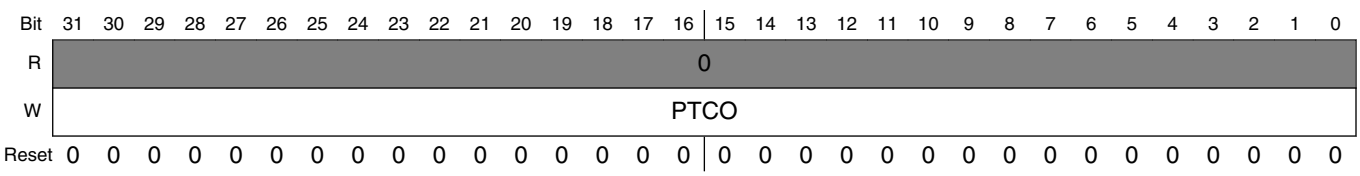
GPIOx_PSOR field descriptions

Field	Description
PTSO	Port Set Output Writing to this register will update the contents of the corresponding bit in the PDOR as follows: 0 Corresponding bit in PDORn does not change. 1 Corresponding bit in PDORn is set to logic 1.

49.3.3 Port Clear Output Register (GPIOx_PCOR)

This register configures whether to clear the fields of PDOR.

Address: Base address + 8h offset



GPIOx_PCOR field descriptions

Field	Description
PTCO	Port Clear Output Writing to this register will update the contents of the corresponding bit in the Port Data Output Register (PDOR) as follows: 0 Corresponding bit in PDORn does not change. 1 Corresponding bit in PDORn is cleared to logic 0.

49.3.4 Port Toggle Output Register (GPIOx_PTOR)

Address: Base address + Ch offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	0																															
W	PTTO																															
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

GPIOx_PTOR field descriptions

Field	Description
PTTO	Port Toggle Output Writing to this register will update the contents of the corresponding bit in the PDOR as follows: 0 Corresponding bit in PDORn does not change. 1 Corresponding bit in PDORn is set to the inverse of its existing logic state.

49.3.5 Port Data Input Register (GPIOx_PDIR)

NOTE

Do not modify pin configuration registers associated with pins not available in your selected package. All unbonded pins not available in your package will default to DISABLE state for lowest power consumption.

Address: Base address + 10h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	PDI																															
W																																
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

GPIOx_PDIR field descriptions

Field	Description
PDI	Port Data Input Reads 0 at the unimplemented pins for a particular device. Pins that are not configured for a digital function read 0. If the Port Control and Interrupt module is disabled, then the corresponding bit in PDIR does not update. 0 Pin logic level is logic 0, or is not configured for use by digital function. 1 Pin logic level is logic 1.

49.3.6 Port Data Direction Register (GPIOx_PDDR)

The PDDR configures the individual port pins for input or output.

Address: Base address + 14h offset

Bit	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R W	PDD																															
Reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

GPIOx_PDDR field descriptions

Field	Description
PDD	Port Data Direction Configures individual port pins for input or output. 0 Pin is configured as general-purpose input, for the GPIO function. 1 Pin is configured as general-purpose output, for the GPIO function.

49.4 Functional description

49.4.1 General-purpose input

The logic state of each pin is available via the Port Data Input registers, provided the pin is configured for a digital function and the corresponding Port Control and Interrupt module is enabled.

The Port Data Input registers return the synchronized pin state after any enabled digital filter in the Port Control and Interrupt module. The input pin synchronizers are shared with the Port Control and Interrupt module, so that if the corresponding Port Control and Interrupt module is disabled, then synchronizers are also disabled. This reduces power consumption when a port is not required for general-purpose input functionality.

49.4.2 General-purpose output

The logic state of each pin can be controlled via the port data output registers and port data direction registers, provided the pin is configured for the GPIO function. The following table depicts the conditions for a pin to be configured as input/output.

If	Then

Table continues on the next page...

A pin is configured for the GPIO function and the corresponding port data direction register bit is clear.	The pin is configured as an input.
A pin is configured for the GPIO function and the corresponding port data direction register bit is set.	The pin is configured as an output and and the logic state of the pin is equal to the corresponding port data output register.

To facilitate efficient bit manipulation on the general-purpose outputs, pin data set, pin data clear, and pin data toggle registers exist to allow one or more outputs within one port to be set, cleared, or toggled from a single register write.

The corresponding Port Control and Interrupt module does not need to be enabled to update the state of the port data direction registers and port data output registers including the set/clear/toggle registers.

Chapter 50
JTAG Controller (JTAGC)

50.1 Introduction

The JTAGC block provides the means to test chip functionality and connectivity while remaining transparent to system logic when not in test mode. Testing is performed via a boundary scan technique, as defined in the IEEE 1149.1-2001 standard. All data input to and output from the JTAGC block is communicated in serial format.

50.1.1 Block diagram

The following is a simplified block diagram of the JTAG Controller (JTAGC) block. Refer to the chip-specific configuration information as well as Register description for more information about the JTAGC registers.

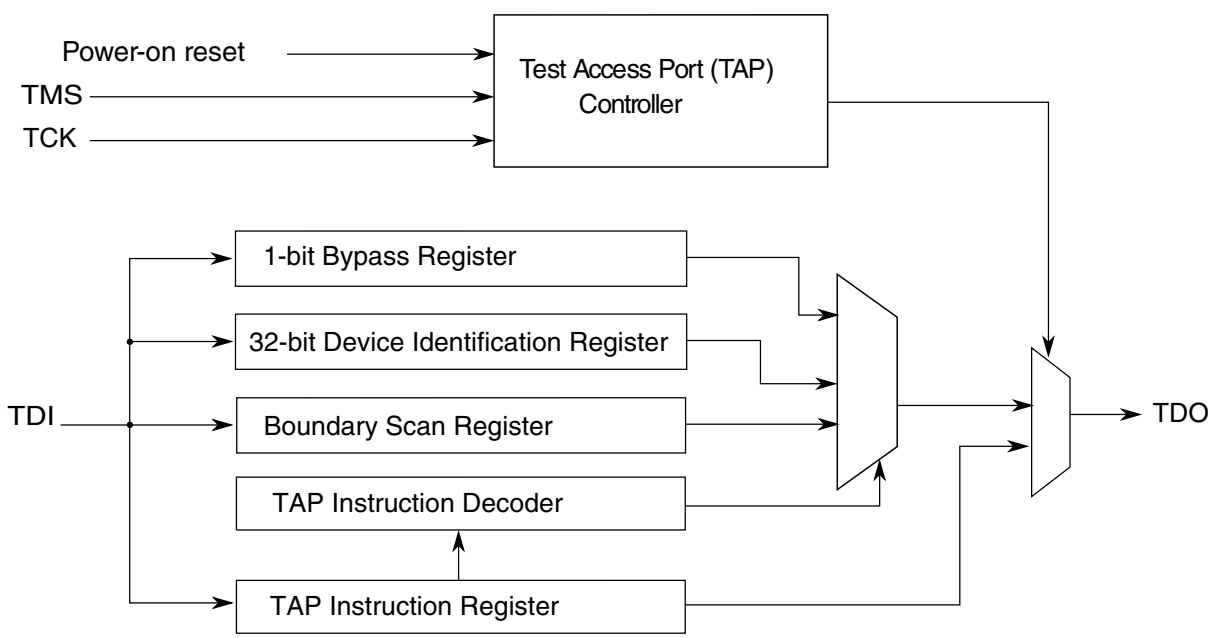


Figure 50-1. JTAG (IEEE 1149.1) block diagram

50.1.2 Features

The JTAGC block is compliant with the IEEE 1149.1-2001 standard, and supports the following features:

- IEEE 1149.1-2001 Test Access Port (TAP) interface
  - 4 pins (TDI, TMS, TCK, and TDO)
- Instruction register that supports several IEEE 1149.1-2001 defined instructions as well as several public and private device-specific instructions. Refer to Table 50-3 for a list of supported instructions.
- Bypass register, boundary scan register, and device identification register.
- TAP controller state machine that controls the operation of the data registers, instruction register and associated circuitry.

50.1.3 Modes of operation

The JTAGC block uses a power-on reset indication as its primary reset signals. Several IEEE 1149.1-2001 defined test modes are supported, as well as a bypass mode.

50.1.3.1 Reset

The JTAGC block is placed in reset when either power-on reset is asserted, or the TMS input is held high for enough consecutive rising edges of TCK to sequence the TAP controller state machine into the Test-Logic-Reset state. Holding TMS high for five consecutive rising edges of TCK guarantees entry into the Test-Logic-Reset state regardless of the current TAP controller state. Asserting power-on reset results in asynchronous entry into the reset state. While in reset, the following actions occur:

- The TAP controller is forced into the Test-Logic-Reset state, thereby disabling the test logic and allowing normal operation of the on-chip system logic to continue unhindered
- The instruction register is loaded with the IDCODE instruction

50.1.3.2 IEEE 1149.1-2001 defined test modes

The JTAGC block supports several IEEE 1149.1-2001 defined test modes. A test mode is selected by loading the appropriate instruction into the instruction register while the JTAGC is enabled. Supported test instructions include EXTEST, HIGHZ, CLAMP, SAMPLE and SAMPLE/PRELOAD. Each instruction defines the set of data register(s) that may operate and interact with the on-chip system logic while the instruction is current. Only one test data register path is enabled to shift data between TDI and TDO for each instruction.

The boundary scan register is enabled for serial access between TDI and TDO when the EXTEST, SAMPLE or SAMPLE/PRELOAD instructions are active. The single-bit bypass register shift stage is enabled for serial access between TDI and TDO when the BYPASS, HIGHZ, CLAMP or reserved instructions are active. The functionality of each test mode is explained in more detail in JTAGC block instructions.

50.1.3.3 Bypass mode

When no test operation is required, the BYPASS instruction can be loaded to place the JTAGC block into bypass mode. While in bypass mode, the single-bit bypass shift register is used to provide a minimum-length serial path to shift data between TDI and TDO.

50.2 External signal description

The JTAGC consists of a set of signals that connect to off chip development tools and allow access to test support functions. The JTAGC signals are outlined in the following table and described in the following sections.

Table 50-1. JTAG signal properties

Name	I/O	Function	Reset State	Pull
TCK	Input	Test Clock	—	Down
TDI	Input	Test Data In	—	Up
TDO	Output	Test Data Out	High Z	—
TMS	Input	Test Mode Select	—	Up

50.2.1 TCK—Test clock input

Test Clock Input (TCK) is an input pin used to synchronize the test logic and control register access through the TAP.

50.2.2 TDI—Test data input

Test Data Input (TDI) is an input pin that receives serial test instructions and data. TDI is sampled on the rising edge of TCK.

50.2.3 TDO—Test data output

Test Data Output (TDO) is an output pin that transmits serial output for test instructions and data. TDO is three-stateable and is actively driven only in the Shift-IR and Shift-DR states of the TAP controller state machine, which is described in TAP controller state machine.

50.2.4 TMS—Test mode select

Test Mode Select (TMS) is an input pin used to sequence the IEEE 1149.1-2001 test control state machine. TMS is sampled on the rising edge of TCK.

50.3 Register description

This section provides a detailed description of the JTAGC block registers accessible through the TAP interface, including data registers and the instruction register. Individual bit-level descriptions and reset states of each register are included. These registers are not memory-mapped and can only be accessed through the TAP.

50.3.1 Instruction register

The JTAGC block uses a 4-bit instruction register as shown in the following figure. The instruction register allows instructions to be loaded into the block to select the test to be performed or the test data register to be accessed or both. Instructions are shifted in through TDI while the TAP controller is in the Shift-IR state, and latched on the falling edge of TCK in the Update-IR state. The latched instruction value can only be changed in the Update-IR and Test-Logic-Reset TAP controller states. Synchronous entry into the

Test-Logic-Reset state results in the IDCODE instruction being loaded on the falling edge of TCK. Asynchronous entry into the Test-Logic-Reset state results in asynchronous loading of the IDCODE instruction. During the Capture-IR TAP controller state, the instruction shift register is loaded with the value 0001b , making this value the register's read value when the TAP controller is sequenced into the Shift-IR state.

	3	2	1	0
R	0	0	0	1
W	Instruction Code			
Reset:	0	0	0	1

Figure 50-2. Instruction register

50.3.2 Bypass register

The bypass register is a single-bit shift register path selected for serial data transfer between TDI and TDO when the BYPASS, CLAMP, HIGHZ or reserve instructions are active. After entry into the Capture-DR state, the single-bit shift register is set to a logic 0. Therefore, the first bit shifted out after selecting the bypass register is always a logic 0.

50.3.3 Device identification register

The device identification (JTAG ID) register, shown in the following figure, allows the revision number, part number, manufacturer, and design center responsible for the design of the part to be determined through the TAP. The device identification register is selected for serial data transfer between TDI and TDO when the IDCODE instruction is active. Entry into the Capture-DR state while the device identification register is selected loads the IDCODE into the shift register to be shifted out on TDO in the Shift-DR state. No action occurs in the Update-DR state.

	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
R	Part Revision Number				Design Center						Part Identification Number					
W																
Reset	PRN				DC						PIN					

	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
R	Part Identification Number				Manufacturer Identity Code											1
W																
Reset	PIN (contd.)				MIC											1

The following table describes the device identification register functions.

Table 50-2. Device identification register field descriptions

Field	Description
PRN	Part Revision Number. Contains the revision number of the part. Value is .
DC	Design Center. Indicates the design center. Value is .
PIN	Part Identification Number. Contains the part number of the device. .
MIC	Manufacturer Identity Code. Contains the reduced Joint Electron Device Engineering Council (JEDEC) ID. Value is 0x00E.
IDCODE ID	IDCODE Register ID. Identifies this register as the device identification register and not the bypass register. Always set to 1.

50.3.4 Boundary scan register

The boundary scan register is connected between TDI and TDO when the EXTEST, SAMPLE or SAMPLE/PRELOAD instructions are active. It is used to capture input pin data, force fixed values on output pins, and select a logic value and direction for bidirectional pins. Each bit of the boundary scan register represents a separate boundary scan register cell, as described in the IEEE 1149.1-2001 standard and discussed in Boundary scan. The size of the boundary scan register and bit ordering is device-dependent and can be found in the device BSDL file.

50.4 Functional description

This section explains the JTAGC functional description.

50.4.1 JTAGC reset configuration

While in reset, the TAP controller is forced into the Test-Logic-Reset state, thus disabling the test logic and allowing normal operation of the on-chip system logic. In addition, the instruction register is loaded with the IDCODE instruction.

50.4.2 IEEE 1149.1-2001 (JTAG) Test Access Port

The JTAGC block uses the IEEE 1149.1-2001 TAP for accessing registers. This port can be shared with other TAP controllers on the MCU. Ownership of the port is determined by the value of the currently loaded instruction.

Data is shifted between TDI and TDO though the selected register starting with the least significant bit, as illustrated in the following figure. This applies for the instruction register, test data registers, and the bypass register.

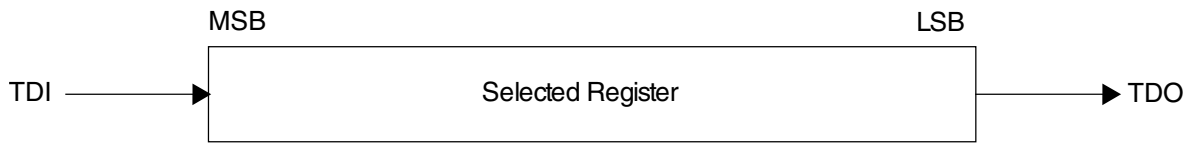
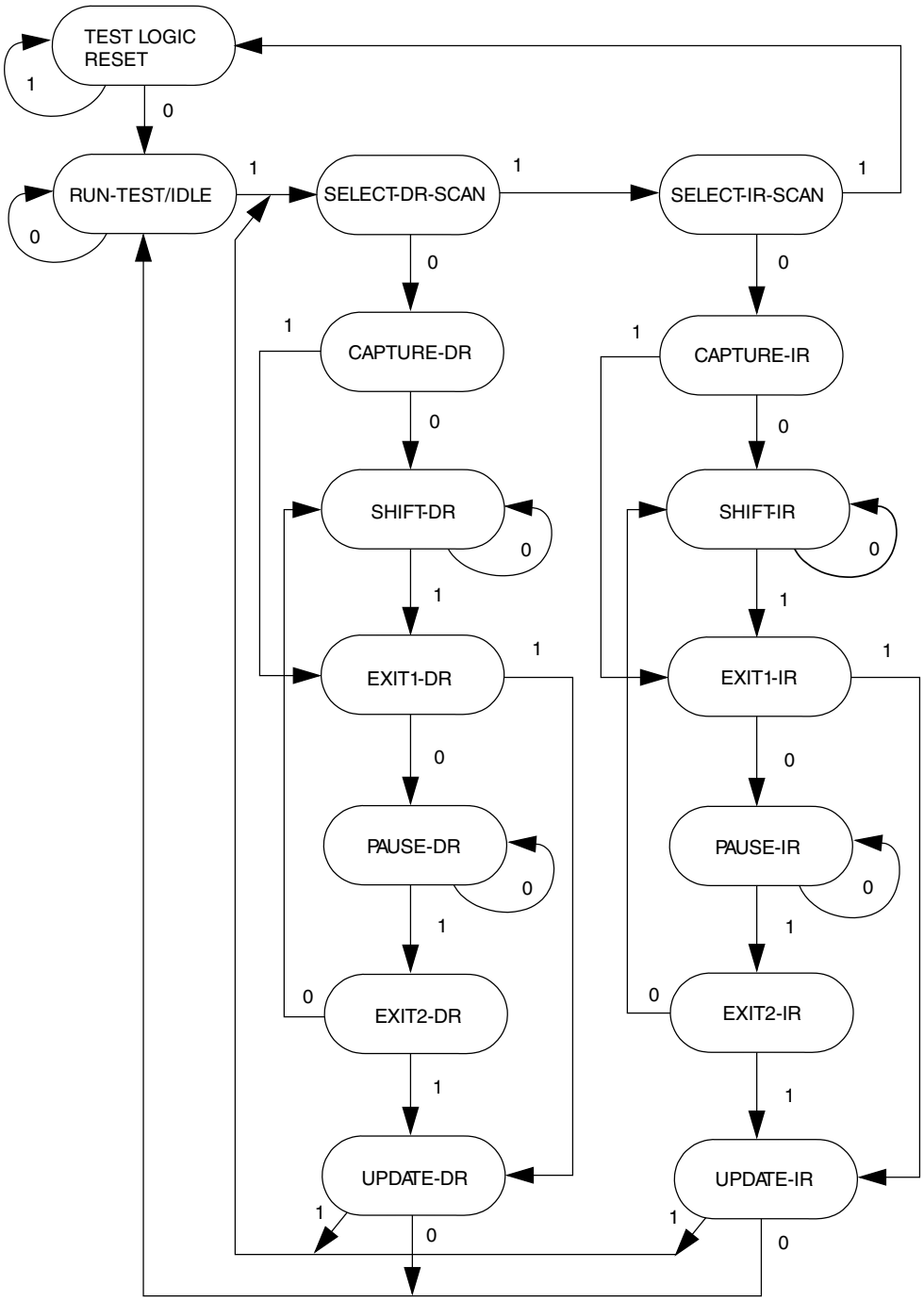


Figure 50-3. Shifting data through a register

50.4.3 TAP controller state machine

The TAP controller is a synchronous state machine that interprets the sequence of logical values on the TMS pin. The following figure shows the machine's states. The value shown next to each state is the value of the TMS signal sampled on the rising edge of the TCK signal. As the following figure shows, holding TMS at logic 1 while clocking TCK through a sufficient number of rising edges also causes the state machine to enter the Test-Logic-Reset state.



The value shown adjacent to each state transition in this figure represents the value of TMS at the time of a rising edge of TCK.

Figure 50-4. IEEE 1149.1-2001 TAP controller finite state machine

50.4.3.1 Enabling the TAP controller

The JTAGC TAP controller is enabled by setting the JTAGC enable to a logic 1 value.

50.4.3.2 Selecting an IEEE 1149.1-2001 register

Access to the JTAGC data registers is achieved by loading the instruction register with any of the JTAGC block instructions while the JTAGC is enabled. Instructions are shifted in via the Select-IR-Scan path and loaded in the Update-IR state. At this point, all data register access is performed via the Select-DR-Scan path.

The Select-DR-Scan path is used to read or write the register data by shifting in the data (LSB first) during the Shift-DR state. When reading a register, the register value is loaded into the IEEE 1149.1-2001 shifter during the Capture-DR state. When writing a register, the value is loaded from the IEEE 1149.1-2001 shifter to the register during the Update-DR state. When reading a register, there is no requirement to shift out the entire register contents. Shifting may be terminated once the required number of bits have been acquired.

50.4.4 JTAGC block instructions

The JTAGC block implements the IEEE 1149.1-2001 defined instructions listed in the following table. This section gives an overview of each instruction; refer to the IEEE 1149.1-2001 standard for more details. All undefined opcodes are reserved.

Table 50-3. 4-bit JTAG instructions

Instruction	Code[3:0]	Instruction summary
IDCODE	0000	Selects device identification register for shift
SAMPLE/PRELOAD	0010	Selects boundary scan register for shifting, sampling, and preloading without disturbing functional operation
SAMPLE	0011	Selects boundary scan register for shifting and sampling without disturbing functional operation
EXTEST	0100	Selects boundary scan register and applies preloaded values to output pins. **NOTE:** Execution of this instruction asserts functional reset.
Factory debug reserved	0101	Intended for factory debug only
Factory debug reserved	0110	Intended for factory debug only
Factory debug reserved	0111	Intended for factory debug only
ARM JTAG-DP Reserved	1000	This instruction goes the ARM JTAG-DP controller. See the ARM JTAG-DP documentation for more information.
HIGHZ	1001	Selects bypass register and three-states all output pins. **NOTE:** Execution of this instruction asserts functional reset.
ARM JTAG-DP Reserved	1010	This instruction goes the ARM JTAG-DP controller. See the ARM JTAG-DP documentation for more information.

Table continues on the next page...

Table 50-3. 4-bit JTAG instructions (continued)

Instruction	Code[3:0]	Instruction summary
ARM JTAG-DP Reserved	1011	This instruction goes the ARM JTAG-DP controller. See the ARM JTAG-DP documentation for more information.
CLAMP	1100	Selects bypass register and applies preloaded values to output pins. **NOTE:** Execution of this instruction asserts functional reset.
ARM JTAG-DP Reserved	1110	This instruction goes the ARM JTAG-DP controller. See the ARM JTAG-DP documentation for more information.
BYPASS	1111	Selects bypass register for data operations

50.4.4.1 IDCODE instruction

IDCODE selects the 32-bit device identification register as the shift path between TDI and TDO. This instruction allows interrogation of the MCU to determine its version number and other part identification data. IDCODE is the instruction placed into the instruction register when the JTAGC block is reset.

50.4.4.2 SAMPLE/PRELOAD instruction

The SAMPLE/PRELOAD instruction has two functions:

- The SAMPLE portion of the instruction obtains a sample of the system data and control signals present at the MCU input pins and just before the boundary scan register cells at the output pins. This sampling occurs on the rising edge of TCK in the Capture-DR state when the SAMPLE/PRELOAD instruction is active. The sampled data is viewed by shifting it through the boundary scan register to the TDO output during the Shift-DR state. Both the data capture and the shift operation are transparent to system operation.
- The PRELOAD portion of the instruction initializes the boundary scan register cells before selecting the EXTEST or CLAMP instructions to perform boundary scan tests. This is achieved by shifting in initialization data to the boundary scan register during the Shift-DR state. The initialization data is transferred to the parallel outputs of the boundary scan register cells on the falling edge of TCK in the Update-DR state. The data is applied to the external output pins by the EXTEST or CLAMP instruction. System operation is not affected.

50.4.4.3 SAMPLE instruction

The SAMPLE instruction obtains a sample of the system data and control signals present at the MCU input pins and just before the boundary scan register cells at the output pins. This sampling occurs on the rising edge of TCK in the Capture-DR state when the SAMPLE instruction is active. The sampled data is viewed by shifting it through the boundary scan register to the TDO output during the Shift-DR state. There is no defined action in the Update-DR state. Both the data capture and the shift operation are transparent to system operation.

50.4.4.4 EXTEST External test instruction

EXTEST selects the boundary scan register as the shift path between TDI and TDO. It allows testing of off-chip circuitry and board-level interconnections by driving preloaded data contained in the boundary scan register onto the system output pins. Typically, the preloaded data is loaded into the boundary scan register using the SAMPLE/PRELOAD instruction before the selection of EXTEST. EXTEST asserts the internal system reset for the MCU to force a predictable internal state while performing external boundary scan operations.

50.4.4.5 HIGHZ instruction

HIGHZ selects the bypass register as the shift path between TDI and TDO. While HIGHZ is active all output drivers are placed in an inactive drive state (e.g., high impedance). HIGHZ also asserts the internal system reset for the MCU to force a predictable internal state.

50.4.4.6 CLAMP instruction

CLAMP allows the state of signals driven from MCU pins to be determined from the boundary scan register while the bypass register is selected as the serial path between TDI and TDO. CLAMP enhances test efficiency by reducing the overall shift path to a single bit (the bypass register) while conducting an EXTEST type of instruction through the boundary scan register. CLAMP also asserts the internal system reset for the MCU to force a predictable internal state.

50.4.4.7 BYPASS instruction

BYPASS selects the bypass register, creating a single-bit shift register path between TDI and TDO. BYPASS enhances test efficiency by reducing the overall shift path when no test operation of the MCU is required. This allows more rapid movement of test data to and from other components on a board that are required to perform test functions. While the BYPASS instruction is active the system logic operates normally.

50.4.5 Boundary scan

The boundary scan technique allows signals at component boundaries to be controlled and observed through the shift-register stage associated with each pad. Each stage is part of a larger boundary scan register cell, and cells for each pad are interconnected serially to form a shift-register chain around the border of the design. The boundary scan register consists of this shift-register chain, and is connected between TDI and TDO when the EXTEST, SAMPLE, or SAMPLE/PRELOAD instructions are loaded. The shift-register chain contains a serial input and serial output, as well as clock and control signals.

50.5 Initialization/Application information

The test logic is a static logic design, and TCK can be stopped in either a high or low state without loss of data. However, the system clock is not synchronized to TCK internally. Any mixed operation using both the test logic and the system functional logic requires external synchronization.

To initialize the JTAGC block and enable access to registers, the following sequence is required:

1. Place the JTAGC in reset through TAP controller state machine transitions controlled by TMS
2. Load the appropriate instruction for the test or action to be performed

Appendix A
Revision history

The following table provides a revision history for this document.

Table A-1. Revision History

Rev. No.	Date	Substantial Changes
2	Dec 2015	Initial public release.
3	May 2016	Added 48-pin QFN package.

How to Reach Us:

Home Page:
nxp.com

Web Support:
nxp.com/support

Document Number KS22P100M120SF0RM
Revision 3, May 2016